

imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 8705i/8795i/8786i

INSTALLATION MANUAL



Canon

October 26, 2021
Rev. 2

Important Notices

Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products.

This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Following "Trademarks" and "Copyright" are not applicable if they are not supported by laws and regulations in the country or region that this document and products are used in.

Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products.

When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

Trademarks

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Canon is under license.

Mopria®, the Mopria® Logo and the Mopria® Alliance logo are registered trademarks and service marks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

Apple, AppleTalk, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, OS X and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, Internet Explorer, Microsoft Edge, Excel and PowerPoint are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Google Cloud Print, Google Chrome and Android are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.

iHQC™ compression technology by I.R.I.S., copyright 2007-2015, All Rights Reserved.

PDF-iHQC™, XPS-iHQC™ technology by I.R.I.S., copyright 2007-2015, All rights Reserved.

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Adobe is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Command WorkStation, EFI, Fiery, FreeForm, Spot-On, and WebTools are trademarks of Electronics For Imaging, Inc. and/or its wholly owned subsidiaries in the U.S. and/or certain other countries.

TORX® is a registered trademark of Acument Intellectual Properties, LLC in the United States.

Matrox is a registered trademark of Matrox Corporation in the Canada.

Other product names and other names in this document are generally registered trademarks or trademarks of the companies.

Copyright

The copyright of this document belongs to Canon Inc. This document may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the prior consent of Canon Inc.
Copyright CANON INC. 2021

Caution

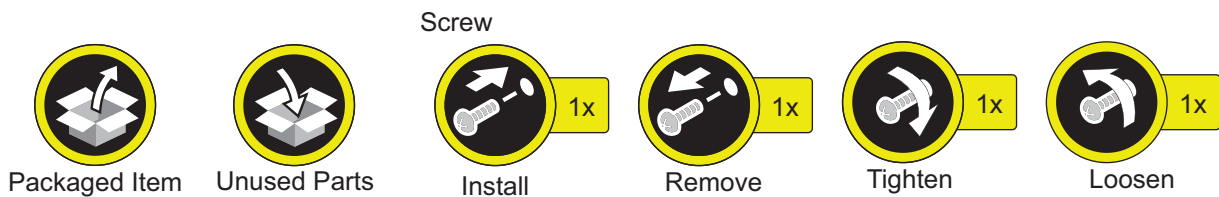
Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Description on the parts included in the package

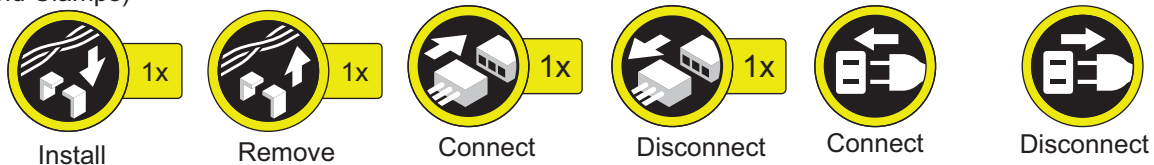
The parts with a diagonal line in the contents list will not be used.

Symbols

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.



Harness
(Common for Guides
and Clamps)



Power



Contents

Safety Precautions	1
Toner Safety.....	2
About Toner.....	2
Handling Adhered Toner.....	2
Checking the Installation Environment.....	2
Checking the Installation Environment.....	2
Points to Note Before Servicing.....	2
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	3
Checking Installation Space.....	3
illustrations.....	4
1. Product Lineup	5
Scanning System Options.....	6
Function Expansion System Options.....	7
Option Combination Table.....	8
Pickup/Delivery System Option.....	9
2. Host Machine	13
How to Utilize This Installation Procedure.....	14
Description on the Parts Included in the Package.....	14
Symbols.....	14
Checking before Installation.....	15
Checking the Power Supply.....	15
Checking the Installation Environment.....	15
Points to Note at Installation Work.....	15
Points to Note When Moving This Host Machine.....	15
Order to Install the Host machine and the Options.....	15
Installation of Host Machine.....	17
Unpacking.....	17
Checking the Contents.....	25
Installation Procedure.....	28
3. Image Reading System Options	96
Printer Cover-H2.....	97
Points to Note before Installation.....	97
Checking the Contents.....	97
Installation Outline Drawing.....	97
Installation Procedure.....	98
Operation Check.....	115
Auto Adjust Gradation.....	116
Reader Heater-P1.....	117
Points to Note before Installation.....	117
Checking the Contents.....	117
Installation Outline Drawing.....	118

Installation Procedure.....	118
-----------------------------	-----

4. Host Machine Options..... 141

Upright Control Panel-J1.....	142
Installation Procedure.....	142
Pre-checks.....	189
NFC Kit-E1/E2.....	193
Points to Note before Installation.....	193
Checking the Contents.....	193
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	193
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	194
Installation Outline Drawing.....	194
Installation Procedure.....	194
Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE.....	212
Points to Note before Installation.....	212
Checking the Contents.....	212
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	212
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	213
Installation Outline Drawing.....	213
Installation Procedure.....	213
Setting after Installation.....	221
Numeric Keypad-A1/A2.....	222
Points to Note before Installation.....	222
Checking the Contents.....	222
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	222
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	223
Installation Outline Drawing.....	223
Installation Procedure.....	223
Utility Tray-B1.....	233
Points to Note at Installation.....	233
Checking the Contents.....	233
Installation Outline Drawing.....	233
Installation Procedure.....	234
Copy Card Reader-F1.....	240
Points to Note at Installation.....	240
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	240
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	240
Installation Outline Drawing.....	241
Checking the Contents.....	241
Installation Procedure.....	243
Checking after Installation.....	256
Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1	257
Points to Note at Installation.....	257
Checking the Contents.....	257
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	258
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	258
Installation Outline Drawing.....	259
Installation Procedure.....	259
Voice Operation Kit-D1.....	266
Points to Note Before Installation.....	266

Checking the Contents.....	266
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	267
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	267
Installation Outline Drawing.....	268
Installation Procedure.....	268
Checking after Installation.....	279
Operation Check.....	279
Voice Guidance Kit-G1.....	280
Points to Note at Installation.....	280
Checking the Contents.....	280
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	281
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	281
Installation Outline Drawing.....	282
Installation Procedure.....	282
Checking after Installation.....	291
Operation Check.....	292
HDD-related Option.....	293
Pre-checks.....	293
Removing the HDD Box Unit.....	294
[TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB).....	298
[TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit.....	304
[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit.....	315
Super G3 FAX Board-AS1.....	328
Product Name.....	328
Points to Note at Installation.....	328
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	328
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	328
Installation Outline Drawing.....	328
Checking the Contents.....	329
Installation Procedure.....	329
Checking the Operation.....	334
Super G3 FAX Board-AS2.....	336
Product Name.....	336
Points to Note at Installation.....	336
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	336
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	336
Installation Outline Drawing.....	336
Checking the Contents.....	337
Installation Procedure.....	337
Checking the Operation.....	341
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1.....	343
Product Name.....	343
Points to Note at Installation.....	343
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	343
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	343
Installation Outline Drawing.....	343
Checking the Contents.....	344
Installation Procedure.....	346
Checking the Operation.....	363
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2.....	365
Product Name.....	365

Points to Note at Installation.....365

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 365

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 365

Installation Outline Drawing..... 365

Checking the Contents..... 366

Installation Procedure..... 367

Checking the Operation..... 382

Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1..... 384

 Product Name..... 384

 Points to Note at Installation..... 384

 Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 384

 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 384

 Installation Outline Drawing..... 385

 Checking the Contents..... 386

 Installation Procedure..... 387

 Checking the Operation..... 394

Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2..... 396

 Product Name..... 396

 Points to Note at Installation..... 396

 Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 396

 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 396

 Installation Outline Drawing..... 397

 Checking the Contents..... 398

 Installation Procedure..... 399

 Checking the Operation..... 405

Double Feeding Detection Kit-B1..... 407

 Pre-checks..... 407

 Installation Procedure..... 407

5. Paper Feed Options..... 418

Paper Deck Unit-E1..... 419

 Checking before Installation..... 419

 Unpacking Procedure..... 419

 Checking the Contents..... 420

 Installation Procedure..... 421

 Checking after Installation..... 441

Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1..... 447

 Checking before Installation..... 447

 Checking the Supplied Parts..... 447

 Installation Procedure..... 448

 Checking after Installation..... 462

POD Deck Lite-C1..... 463

 Checking before Installation..... 463

 Unpacking..... 463

 Checking the Contents..... 464

 Installation Procedure..... 466

 Disposal Parts..... 486

 Paper Positioning Check/Adjustment Procedure..... 486

Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1..... 491

 Checking the Parts to be Installed..... 491

Removing from the Host Machine.....	491
Installation Procedure.....	493
Cassette Heater Unit-38.....	500
Checking the Contents.....	500
Installation Outline Drawing.....	500
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	500
Installation Procedure.....	500

6. Paper Output Options.....507

Document Insertion Unit-N1.....	508
Checking before Installation.....	508
Unpacking Procedure.....	510
Checking the Contents.....	512
Installation Outline Drawing.....	514
Installation Procedure	515
Adjustment.....	543
Checking after Installation.....	550
Paper Folding Unit-J1.....	552
Checking before Installation.....	552
Unpacking.....	552
Checking the Contents.....	562
Installation Procedure	564
Adjustment.....	586
Checking after Installation.....	599
Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO.....	601
Checking before Installation.....	601
Unpacking.....	602
Checking the Contents.....	606
Installation Procedure	607
Adjusting the Height.....	634
Connecting the Cable.....	639
Side Registration/Skew Adjustment.....	644
Peeling and Attaching the Labels.....	651
Puncher Unit-BT1/BS1/BU1	654
Points to Note at Installation.....	654
Points to Note before Installation.....	654
Checking the Contents.....	655
Installation Procedure.....	655
Affixing the A1 Labels.....	663
Adjustments.....	664
Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1.....	677
Checking Before Installation.....	677
Unpacking.....	678
Checking the Contents	687
Installation Procedure	688
Adjustment.....	708
Checking after Installation.....	713
Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1.....	715
Checking before Installation.....	715
Checking the Supplied Parts	715

Installation Procedure 716

Operation Check..... 735

Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1.....736

 Checking before Installation..... 736

 Unpacking and Checking the Contents..... 736

 Installation Procedure 737

 Adjustment.....758

 Operation Check..... 759

Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1..... 760

 Checking before Installation..... 760

 Unpacking..... 761

 Checking the Contents..... 764

 Installation Procedure..... 765

 Affixing the Labels..... 776

 Making Adjustments..... 780

 Making Checks After Completion of Installation Work..... 794

 Detaching from the Upstream Connection Machine..... 796

2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1.....799

 Checking Before Installation..... 799

 Unpacking Procedure..... 799

 Checking the Contents..... 801

 Installation Procedure..... 801

 Disposal Parts Check..... 816

 Operation Check..... 816

 Adjusting the Output Level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor..... 817

 Checking and Adjusting the Punch Hole Position..... 818

Booklet Trimmer-F1.....822

 Pre-checks..... 822

 Unpacking..... 823

 Checking the Contents..... 828

 Installation Procedure..... 829

Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1..... 859

 Pre-checks.....859

 Unpacking..... 860

 Checking the Contents..... 863

 Installation Procedure..... 863

 Connecting the Cables..... 877

Finisher Jogger Kit-A1.....883

 Checking Before Installation..... 883

 Unpacking Procedure..... 883

 Checking the Contents..... 884

 Installation Procedure..... 885

 Checking after Installation..... 893

Revision..... 895

Safety Precautions

Toner Safety.....	2
Checking the Installation Environment	2

Toner Safety

About Toner

Toner is a nontoxic matter composed of plastic, iron and a trace of pigments.

CAUTION:

Never throw toner in flames to avoid explosion.

Handling Adhered Toner

- Use dry tissue paper to wipe off toner adhered to skin or clothes and wash in water.
- Never use warm water for cleaning up toner to prevent toner particles from being gelated to soak into fibers permanently.
- Toner particles are reactive with vinyl polymers. Avoid contacting these materials.

Checking the Installation Environment

Checking the Installation Environment

1. The environment of the installation site must be in the range as shown below. Avoid installation near the faucet, water boiler, humidifier or refrigerator.
Guaranteed range for operation/image Temperature: 10.0 to 30.0 deg C, Humidity: 20 to 80%
2. The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas.
If the area is exposed to direct rays of the sun, provide curtains to the window.
3. Be sure to provide adequate ventilation of the room to keep the work environment comfortable. Room odor can be bothering when running the machine for a long time in a poorly-ventilated room although the ozone amount generated while running this equipment does not harm human health.

Points to Note Before Servicing

- At servicing, be sure to turn OFF the power source according to the specified steps and disconnect the power plug.
- At the time of assembly and disassembly, be sure to place a sheet of paper under the parts to prevent them from being soiled or foreign matter from entering the parts.
- Before installing the parts to the host machine, ensure that they are free of foreign matter.
- Be careful not to be injured by burrs of edges, sharp corners or protrusions.

CAUTION:

Hazardous area such as corners, edges, springs and other sharp sections may be remaining on products. Always be aware of the presence of hazardous area to avoid injury caused by contacting and/or striking those area, by not over-concentrating on service work.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

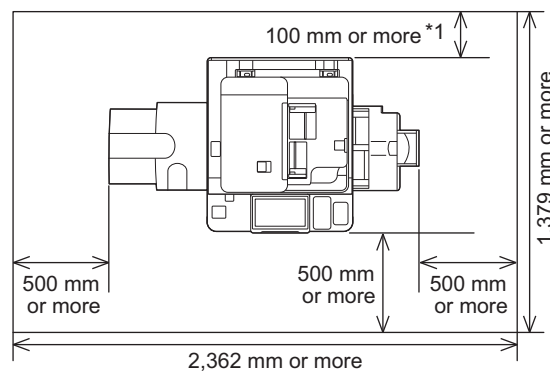
⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Checking Installation Space

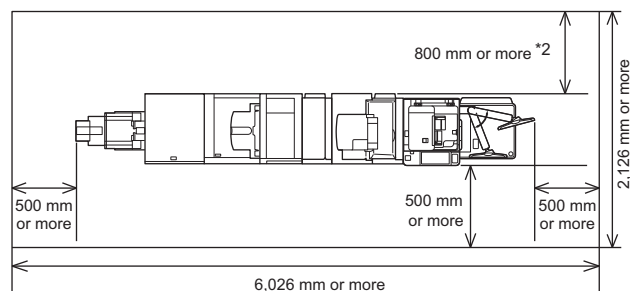
1. The foot of this equipment should be in contact with the floor. This equipment should be kept on the level.
2. The machine must be away from the wall by 100 mm or more to secure a sufficient space to operate the machine.
 - When the Copy Tray-R2 is attached:



NOTE:

*1 Make sure to provide at least 800 mm of space if you install one or more of the following: Booklet Trimmer-F1, Paper Folding Unit-J1, Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1, or Document Insertion Unit-N1.

- When the Booklet Trimmer-F1, Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO, Paper Folding Unit-J1, Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1, Document Insertion Unit-N1, POD Deck Lite-C1, and Upright Control Panel-J1 are attached:



NOTE:

*2 Make sure to provide at least 100 mm of space if none of the Booklet Trimmer-F1, Paper Folding Unit-J1, Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1, or Document Insertion Unit-N1 is installed.

3. To install the host machine, install it in a well-ventilated place. Especially when there are multiple host machines, be sure to locate the machine where the machine is free from direct exhaust of other machines. Be sure to keep the machine away from the air-inlet duct which is used for ventilation of the room.

illustrations

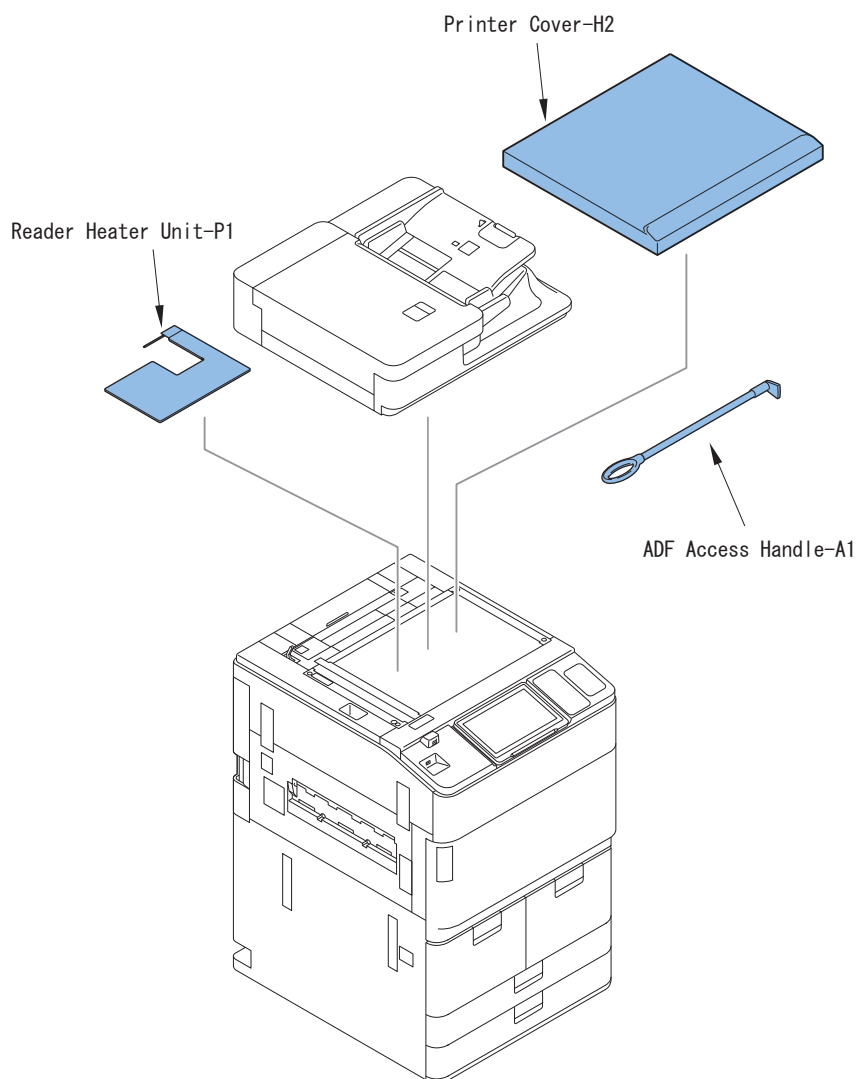
Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.



Product Lineup

Scanning System Options.....	6
Function Expansion System Options	7
Pickup/Delivery System Option.....	9

Scanning System Options



No.	Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
1	"Reader Heater-P1" on page 117	Option for Reader Unit
2	ADF Access Handle-A1	It is the handle to support opening and closing the Feeder.
3	"Printer Cover-H2" on page 97	It is the cover to be installed at the top of the host machine when using this equipment as a printer model.

Function Expansion System Options

No.	Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
1	"Numeric Keypad-A1/A2" on page 222	No particular options and conditions are required.
2	"Upright Control Panel-J1" on page 142	No particular options and conditions are required.
3	"NFC Kit-E1/E2" on page 193	No particular options and conditions are required.
4	" Double Feeding Detection Kit-B1" on page 407	No particular options and conditions are required.
5	" Double Feeding Detection Kit-B1" on page 407	Using with Voice Guidance Kit-G1 and Voice Operation Kit-D1 is not available.
6	"Copy Card Reader-F1" on page 240	Copy Card Reader Attachment-A4 is required. Using with Serial Interface Kit-K3 and Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 is not available.
7	"Copy Card Reader-F1" on page 240	Required when Copy Card Reader-F1 is installed.
8	Card Set-A1 to A6	Copy Card Reader-F1 is required.
9	"Super G3 FAX Board-AS1" on page 328"Super G3 FAX Board-AS2" on page 336	No particular options and conditions are required.
10	"Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1" on page 343"Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2" on page 365	Super G3 FAX Board-AS1/AS2 is required.
11	"Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1" on page 384"Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2" on page 396	Super G3 FAX Board-AS1/AS2 and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1/AS2 is required.
12	imagePASS-Y3 V1.1	No particular options and conditions are required.
13	"Voice Guidance Kit-G1" on page 280	Using with Utility Tray-B1 and Voice Operation Kit-D1 is not available.
14	"Voice Operation Kit-D1" on page 266	Using with Utility Tray-B1 and Voice Guidance Kit-G1 is not available.
15	"Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1" on page 257	Required when the coin manager is connected. Using with Copy Card Reader-F1 and Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 is not available.
16	"Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1" on page 257	Required when the coin manager is connected. Using with Copy Card Reader-F1 and Serial Interface Kit-K3 is not available.
17	"HDD-related Option" on page 293	This is used when the mirroring function is used with HDD Mirroring Kit-J1.
18	"HDD-related Option" on page 293	This is used when the mirroring function is used with HDD Mirroring Kit-J1.
19	"HDD-related Option" on page 293	When performing mirroring, either the Option HDD-N1 (250 GB) or the Option HDD-P1 (1 TB) is required.
20	"HDD-related Option" on page 293	
21	"Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE" on page 212	
22	Power Supply Cable-U1	No particular options and conditions are required.

Required options/conditions for licensed products

At the time of installation, obtain the license number according to the license certificate included and then enter the obtained license number from the Control Panel of the machine. The applicable functions are now enabled.

There is no physical installation work at the time of installation.

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
Remote Fax Kit-A1	No particular options and conditions are required.
IP FAX Expansion Kit-B1	Using with Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1 or Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1 is not available.
PCL Printer Kit-BD1	No particular options and conditions are required.
PCL International Font Set-A1	No particular options and conditions are required.
PCL Asian Font Set-A1	No particular options and conditions are required.
PCL Printer Kit-CK1	No particular options and conditions are required.
PS Printer Kit-BD1	No particular options and conditions are required.
PS Printer Kit-CK1	No particular options and conditions are required.
Barcode Printing Kit-D1	No particular options and conditions are required.

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
Picture Login-A1	No particular options and conditions are required.
Fiery Compose	No particular options and conditions are required.
Fiery Impose	No particular options and conditions are required.
Fiery Impose and Compose	No particular options and conditions are required.
Fiery imageViewer	No particular options and conditions are required.
iR-ADV Security Kit-AG1 for IEEE 2600 Common Criteria Certification	No particular options and conditions are required.
imageRUNNER ADVANCE 8505 License	Speed License option
imageRUNNER ADVANCE 8595 License	Speed License option
imageRUNNER ADVANCE 8586 License	Speed License option

Option Combination Table

NOTE:

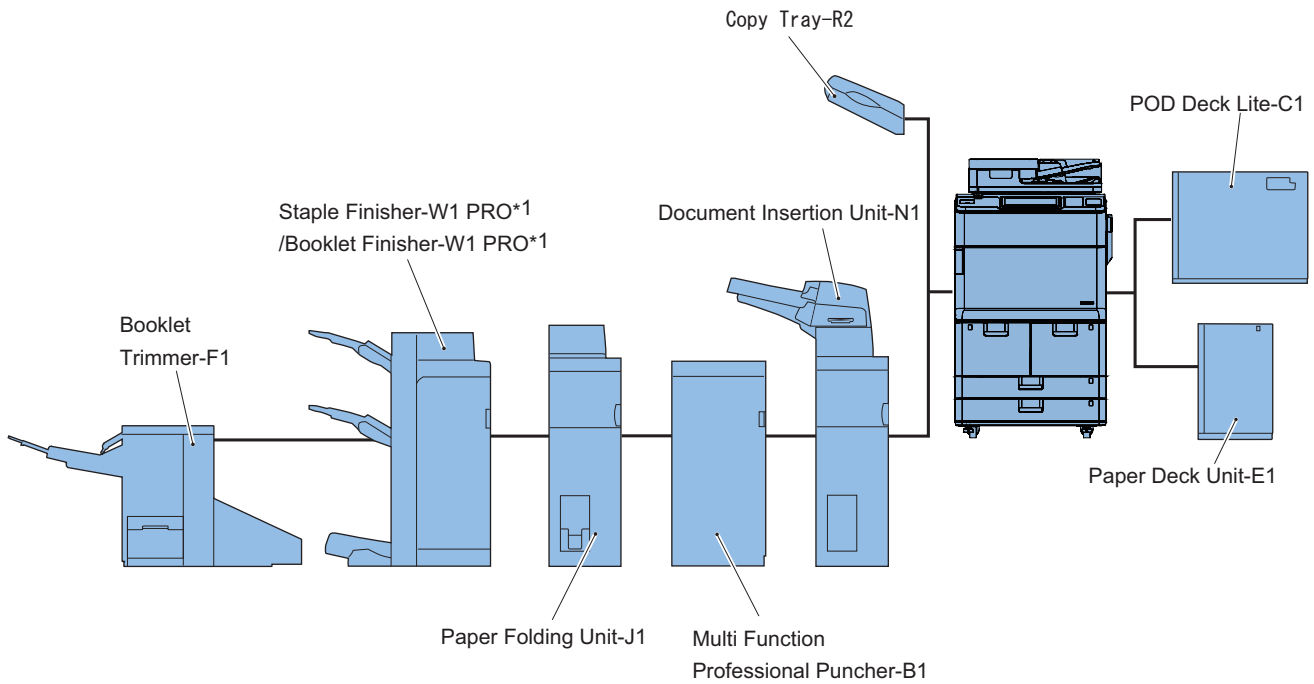
- The following table shows the combination of options installed of the host machine. Before installing the options described in the table, refer to the table shown below to check the combination.

	Copy Card Reader	Voice Operation Kit	Voice Guidance Kit	Utility Tray	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit
Copy Card Reader	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Voice Operation Kit	Yes	-	No	No	Yes	Yes
Voice Guidance Kit	Yes	No	-	No	Yes	Yes
Utility Tray	Yes	No	No	-	Yes	Yes
Serial Interface Kit	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	No
Copy Control Interface Kit	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

Yes: Installable No: Not installable

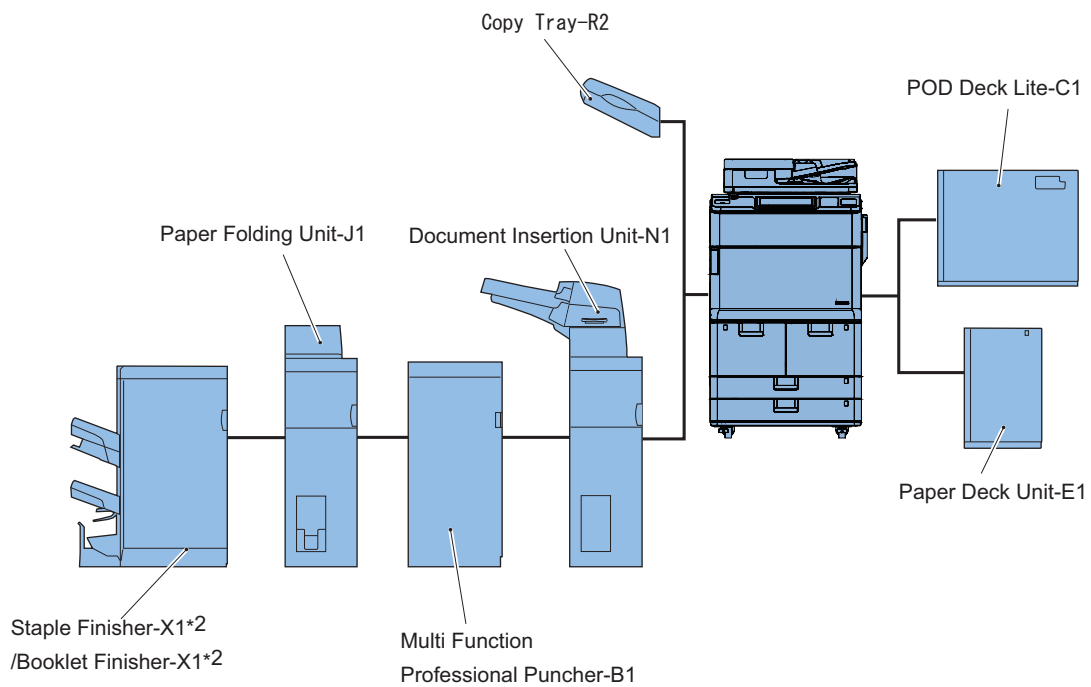
Pickup/Delivery System Option

A. imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 8705 / 8795 / 8786 CAN communication option



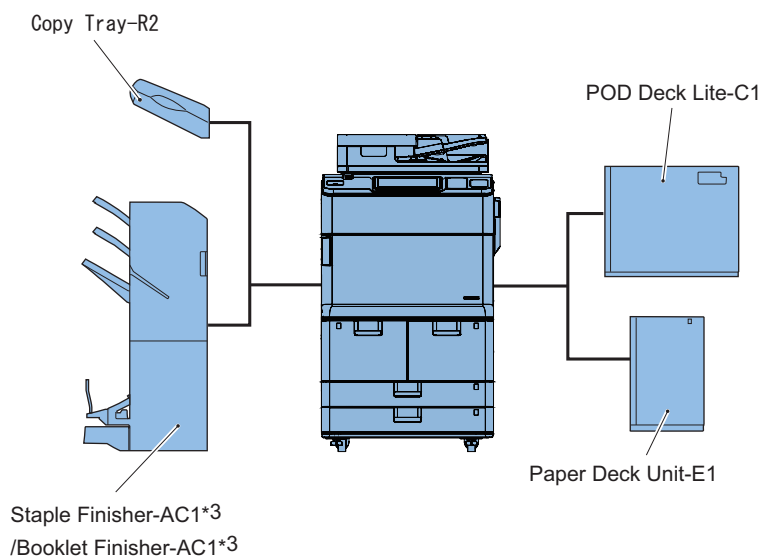
*1: Puncher Unit-BT1 is available as an option.

B. imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 8705 / 8795 / 8786 IPC communication option



*2: Puncher Unit-BE1 and Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1 are available as an option.

C. imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 8786 UFDI communication option



*3: 2/3, 2/4, 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1 are available as an option.

Pickup System Required Options/Conditions

No.	Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
1	"Paper Deck Unit-E1" on page 419	Using with POD Deck Lite-C1 is not available. Pickup method: retard method Pickup capacity: 3,500 sheets (80 g/m ²) Paper type: thin paper, plain paper, heavy paper, color paper, recycled paper, bond paper, pre-punched paper, letterhead Paper size: A4, B5, LTR Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Double feed detection: not available
2	"POD Deck Lite-C1" on page 463	Using with Paper Deck Unit-E1 is not available. Pickup method: air separation method Pickup capacity: 3,500 sheets (80 g/m ²) Paper type: thin paper, plain paper, heavy paper, color paper, recycled paper, pre-punched paper, transparency, labels, tab paper, bond paper, letterhead, postcard Paper size: 13"x19" to A5R Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Double feed detection: not available
3	Tab Feeding Attachment Kit-B1	
4	"Cassette Heater Unit-38" on page 500	For cassette of main body
5	"Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1" on page 447	Option for Paper Deck Unit-E1
6	"Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1" on page 491	Option for POD Deck Lite-C1

Delivery System Required Options/Conditions

Delivery System Required Options/Conditions

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
Copy Tray-R2	Using with delivery-related options is not available. Paper size: Paper available for the host machine Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Tray capacity: 250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
"Document Insertion Unit-N1" on page 508	Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher is required at the downstream side. Pickup capacity: Max. 400 sheets (200 sheets each for Upper Tray and Lower Tray (80 g/m ²)) Paper type: thin paper, plain paper, heavy paper, color paper, recycled paper, pre-punched paper, tab paper, bond paper, letterhead, coated paper Paper size: B5 to 13"X19" Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ²

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
"Paper Folding Unit-J1" on page 552	Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher is required at the downstream side. Folding type: Z-Fold, C-Fold, Half-Fold, Accordion Z-Fold, Double Parallel Fold Paper size: A4R, LTRR (Z-Fold: A3, B4, A4R, LTRR, LGL, 11" x 17") Paper type: thin paper, plain paper, color paper, recycled paper, bond paper Paper weight: 52 to 105 g/m ² (Double Parallel Fold: 52 to 90 g/m ²)
Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1	Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher is required at the downstream side.
"Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO" on page 601	Using with Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO is not available. Paper weight: 52 to 300g/m ² Maximum stacking capacity: 5,000 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) The number of sheets to be stitched: Staple:100 sheets (A4, B5, LTR)
"Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO" on page 601	Using with Staple Finisher-W1 PRO is not available. Paper weight: 52 to 300g/m ² Maximum stacking capacity: 5,000 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) The number of sheets to be stitched: Staple:100 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) Saddle Stitch: 25 sheets
"Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1" on page 677	Using with Booklet Finisher-X1 is not available. Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Maximum stacking capacity: 4,250 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) The number of sheets to be stitched: Staple:100 sheets (A4, B5, LTR)
"Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1" on page 677	Using with Staple Finisher-X1 is not available. Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Maximum stacking capacity: 4,250 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) The number of sheets to be stitched: Staple:100 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) Saddle Stitch: 20 sheets/5 sets (81.4g/m ²)
"Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1" on page 760	Using with Booklet Finisher-AC1 is not available. Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Maximum stacking capacity: 3,500 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) The number of sheets to be stitched: Staple:65 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) Staple-Free Stapling: 4 sheets (81.4g/m ²) Manual Staple: 65 sheets (90g/m ²)
"Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1" on page 760	Using with Staple Finisher-AC1 is not available. Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ² Maximum stacking capacity: 3,500 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) The number of sheets to be stitched: Staple:65 sheets (A4, B5, LTR) Staple-Free Stapling: 4 sheets (81.4g/m ²) Manual Staple: 65 sheets (90g/m ²) Saddle Stitch: 20 sheets/10 sets (81.4g/m ²)
"Finisher Jogger Kit-A1" on page 883	Booklet Finisher-AC1/Staple Finisher-AC1 options
"Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1" on page 715	Booklet Finisher-X1/Staple Finisher-X1 options Paper size: 13" x 19.2" (330.2 x 487.7 mm) to B5 Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m ²
"Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1" on page 736	Booklet Finisher-X1/Staple Finisher-X1 options BF1: 2/3 holes BG1: 2/4 holes BH1: 4 holes Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ²
"Puncher Unit-BT1/BS1/BU1" on page 654	Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO/Staple Finisher-W1 PRO options BS1: 2/ 3 holes BT1: 2/ 4 holes BU1: 4 holes Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ²
"2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1" on page 799	Booklet Finisher-AC1/Staple Finisher-AC1 options Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m ²

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.
Loose Leaf 3-Hole Punch A4/LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Loose Leaf 5-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Velo Bind 11-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Plastic Comb 19-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Twin Loop 21-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Twin Loop 32-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Color Coil 44-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Loose Leaf 2/4-Hole(8.0mm) Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Loose Leaf 2/4-Hole(6.5mm) Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Plastic Comb 21-Hole Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Twin Loop 23/21-Hole(Round) Punch A4/LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Twin Loop 34/32-Hole(Round) Punch A4/LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Twin Loop 23-Hole(Square) Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Twin Loop 34-Hole(Square) Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Color Coil 47-Hole Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
High Durability Color Coil 44-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
High Durability Loose Leaf 3-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
High Durability Plastic Comb 19-Hole Punch LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Velo Bind 12-Hole Punch A4-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Loose Leaf 4-Hole Punch A4/LTR-B1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
MF Professional Puncher Attachment Kit-A1	Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 options
Staple-N1	Plain Staple Cartridge Option for Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO/X1 and Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/X1
Staple-P1	Saddle Staple Cartridge Option for Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO/X1
Staple Cartridge-X1	Plain Staple Cartridge Option for Booklet Finisher-AC1/Staple Finisher-AC1
Staple Cartridge-Y1	Saddle Staple Cartridge Option for Booklet Finisher-AC1
Booklet Trimmer-F1	Upstream requires Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO
Inserter Option controller Kit-A1	To connect the Document Insertion Unit and Staple Finisher-W1/ Booklet Finisher-W1, the Inserter Option Controller Kit is necessary.



Host Machine

How to Utilize This Installation Procedure.....	14
Checking before Installation.....	15
Installation of Host Machine.....	17

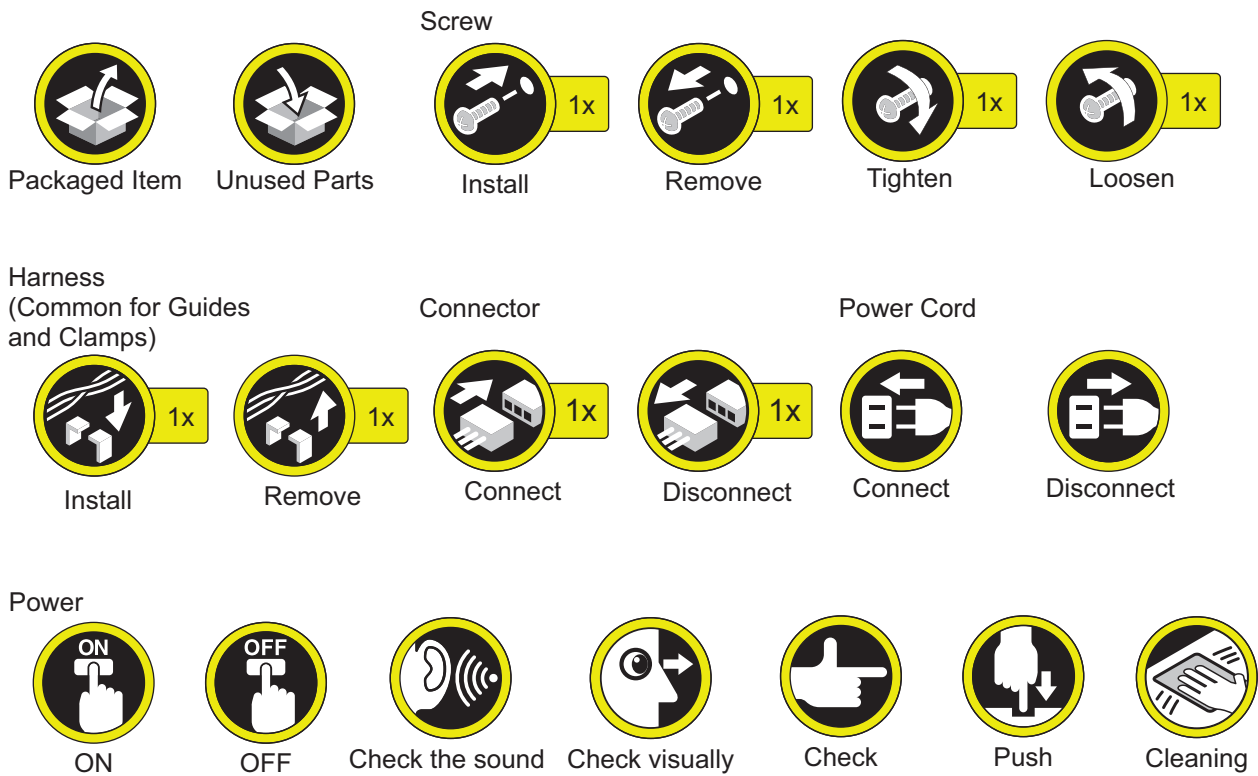
How to Utilize This Installation Procedure

Description on the Parts Included in the Package

The parts with a diagonal line in the contents list will not be used.

Symbols

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.



Checking before Installation

Following shows requirements for the installation site.

Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in the machine to the user's site.

Checking the Power Supply

1. **Be sure to connect the power plug exclusively to an outlet that compiles with the following.**
 - USA : 110-127V +/-10%, 60Hz, 16A
 - EUR/Asia/Oceania/China/Korea : 220-240V +/-10%, 50/60Hz, 10A
 - TW : 110-120V +/-10%, 60Hz, 16A
2. **Install this machine near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.**

Checking the Installation Environment

1. The environment of the installation site must be in the range as shown below. Avoid installation near the faucet, water boiler, humidifier or refrigerator.
Guaranteed range for operation/image Temperature: 10.0 to 30.0 deg C, Humidity: 20 to 80%
2. The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas.
If the area is exposed to direct rays of the sun, provide curtains to the window.
3. Be sure to provide adequate ventilation of the room to keep the work environment comfortable. Room odor can be bothering when running the machine for a long time in a poorly-ventilated room although the ozone amount generated while running this equipment does not harm human health.

Points to Note at Installation Work

Take note of the following points when installing the host machine.

1. **Moving the host machine from a cool place to a warm place can generate condensation, causing moisture beads on the metal surface. Using the host machine while the machine is condensed can cause image failure. Therefore, when moving the machine from a cool place to a warm place to install, unpack the host machine and leave it for 2 hours or more before the installation work so that the machine becomes used to the room temperature.**
2. **Be sure to work with a group of 4 or more people to install the host machine.**

Points to Note When Moving This Host Machine

- When moving this host machine after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps.
If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
- Keep the fixation members and screws that were removed during unpacking or installation as they may be used to transport the machine for relocation or repair.

Order to Install the Host machine and the Options

NOTE:

In the case of installing the host machine and the other options at the same time, follow the order as described below to install the options first so that the installation operability is improved.

1. **Checking before Installation**
2. **Unpacking**
3. **Checking the Contents**
4. **Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)**

5. Installation of the Printer Cover (Only for Machines Equipped with the Printer Cover)
6. Installation of the Covers
7. Installation of the Developing Assembly
8. Installation of the Pickup Assembly
9. Installing the Fixing Assembly
10. Installation of Toner Container
11. Installing the Exhaust Filter
12. Setting the Environment Heater Switch
13. Turning ON the Main Power <Registering the Speed License>
14. Host Machine Settings (Start Setup Guide)
15. Registration of Installation Date Information
16. Installation of the Host machine
17. Other Installation Work
18. Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)
19. Storing the Cleaning Cloth (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)
20. Checking the K paper settings (Only for CHINA)
21. Setting the Deck
22. Setting the Paper Cassette
23. Image Position Adjustment
24. Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF)
25. Checking the Network Connection
26. Network Troubleshooting
27. Installing the Card Reader

NOTE:

When installing the IC Card Reader and the Numeric Keypad at the same time, be sure to install the Numeric Keypad first.

28. Operation when using uniFLOW Online

Installation of Host Machine

NOTE:

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

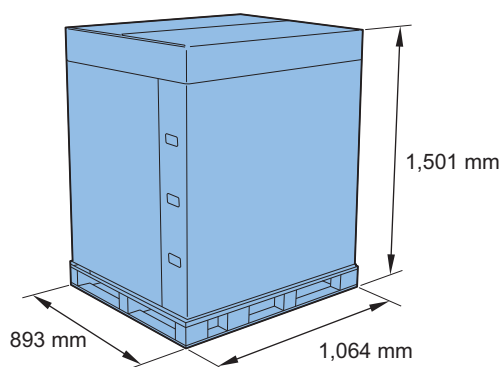
Unpacking

CAUTION:

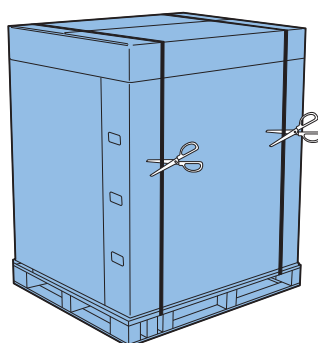
- The host machine weighs about 219 kg (including the DADF). For safety, be sure to work carefully to move and install the machine.
- Be sure to work with a group of 4 or more people to install the host machine.

NOTE:

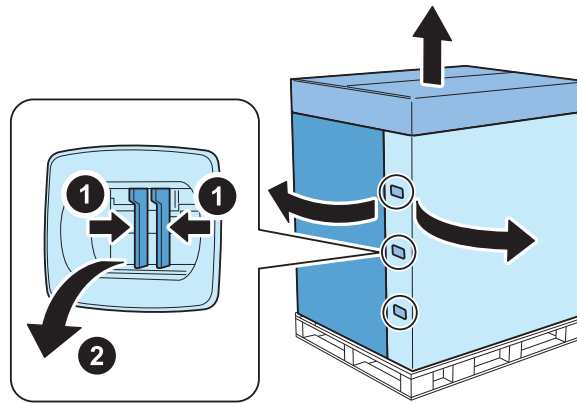
The dimension of the host machine and the transport container is as shown in the figure. Be sure to secure a space to unpack, and then start the installation work.



1. Cut the polyester packing band.



2. Unpack the host machine.



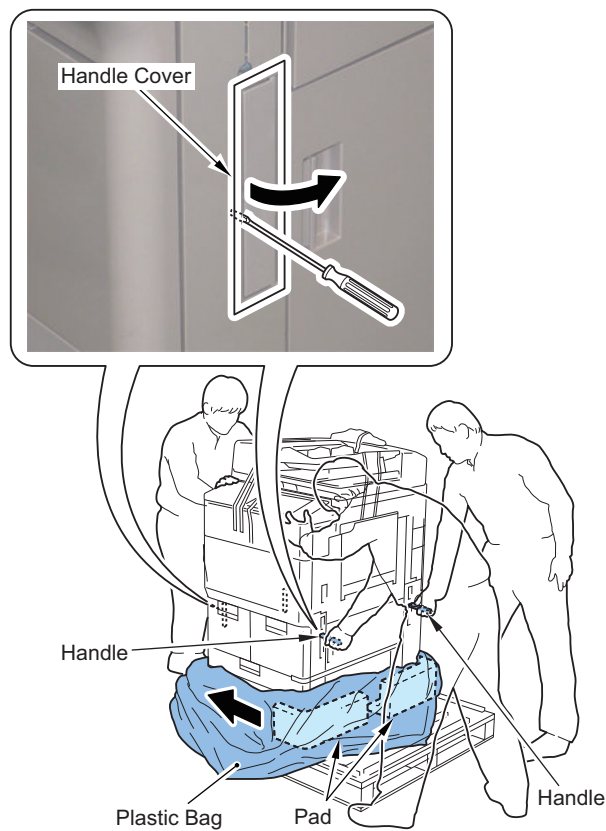
-
- 3. Bring down the Package Box from the pallet.
-
- 4. Pull the plastic bag all the way down.
-
- 5. Open 4 Handle Covers.

Hold the handles at the right side of the host machine and lift the host machine to remove the pad. Put the plastic bag aside in the direction of the arrow.

 - 1 Claw each

CAUTION:

Be sure not to lift the host machine too much. Otherwise, it will lose the balance.

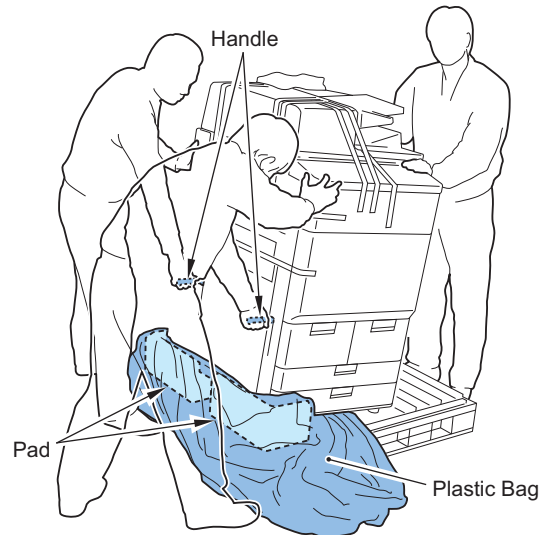




6. Hold the handles at the left side of the host machine and lift the host machine to remove the pad and the plastic bag.

CAUTION:

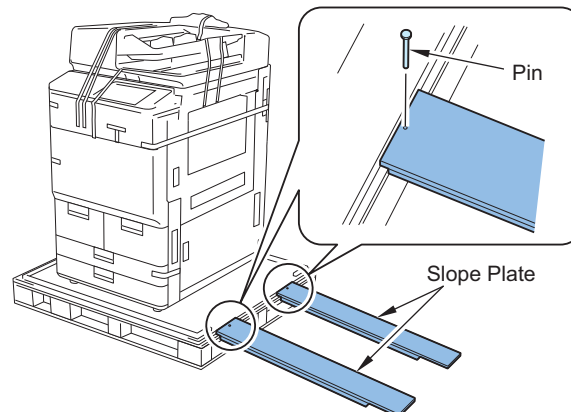
Be sure not to lift the host machine too much. Otherwise, it will lose the balance.



7. Take out the 2 Slope Plates stored at the right side of the Pallet and remove the 2 pins which are secured at the back of the Slope Plate with tape.



8. Turn around the 2 Slope Plates to install as shown in the figure, and then fit the pin-holes of the pallet with the pin-holes of the Slope Plates to put the 2 pins into the holes.

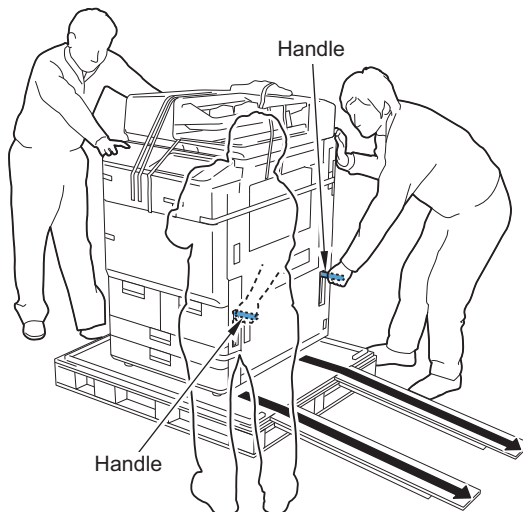




9. Hold the handles at the right side of the host machine, and then, while supporting the corner of the host machine, fit the casters to the center of the Slope Plate to slowly bring the machine down.

CAUTION:

Be careful not to make the casters off from the Slope Plate.

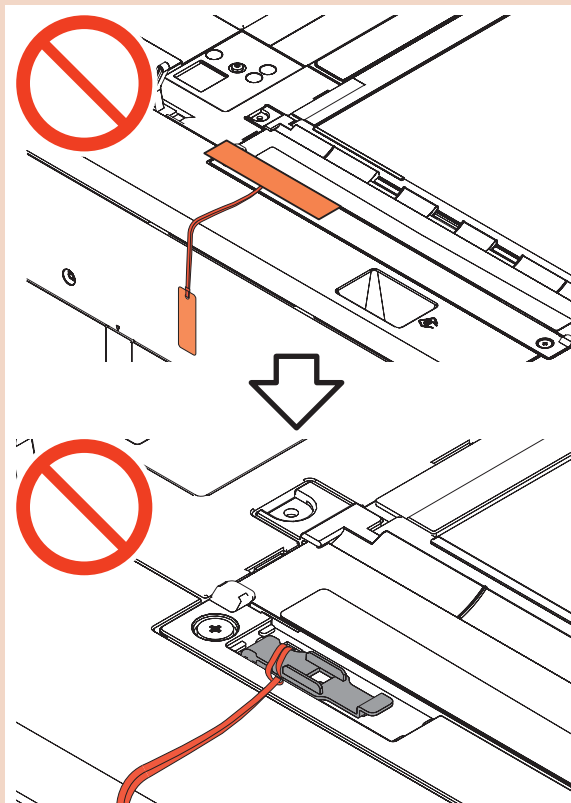


10. Close 4 Handle Covers.

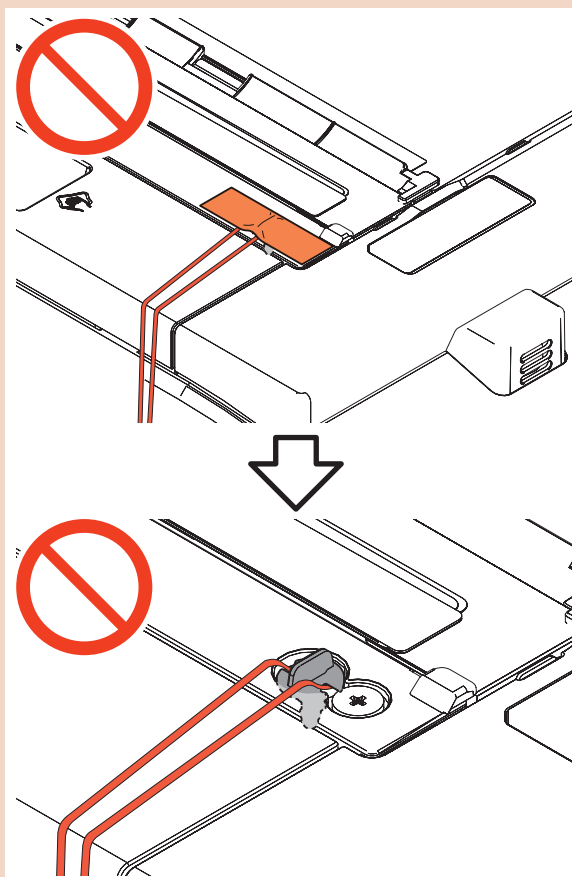
**11. Remove tapes on the exterior surface of the host machine.****CAUTION:**

Do not remove the Scanner Fixation Member until you proceed to [“Installing the Scanner\(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit\)”](#) on page 28. (Only for machines equipped with the Image Reader Unit.)

< Rear side >



< Front side >

**NOTE:**

- When the tape is removed from the Image Reader Unit, the DADF will open. Do not close it in this step.
- Do not remove 5 tapes for tags and a tape for the Filter Cover at this step. These tapes will be removed later on.

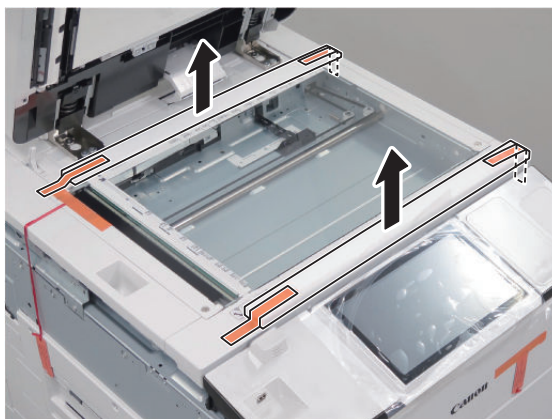




12. Open the DADF and remove tapes on the exterior surface of the host machine. (Only for machines equipped with the Image Reader Unit.)

NOTE:

Remove the Scanner Fixation Member and the Scanner Fixation Screw when you proceed to “Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)” on page 28.

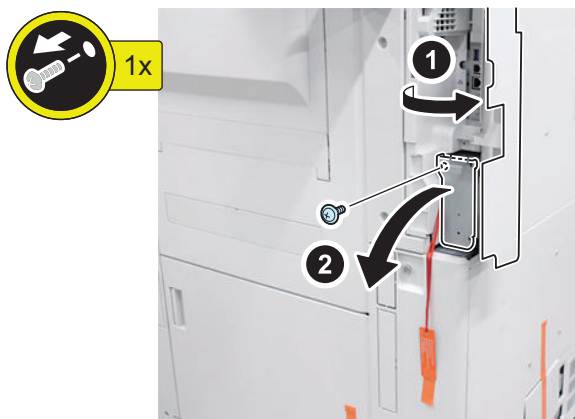


13. Close the DADF. (Only for machines equipped with the Image Reader Unit.)



14. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and Open the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw



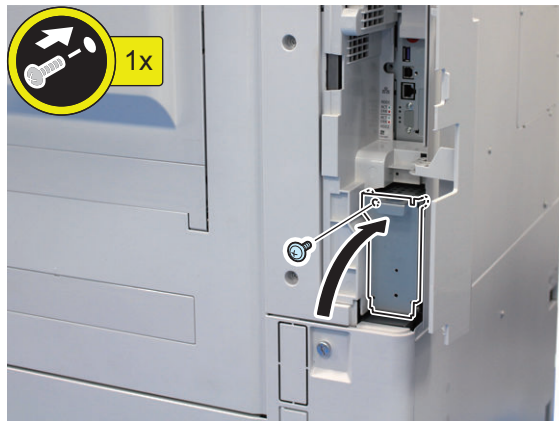


15. Remove the tape securing the tag and remove the package material.




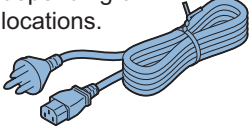




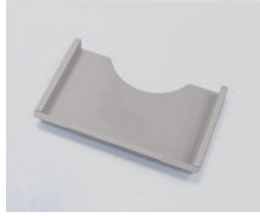


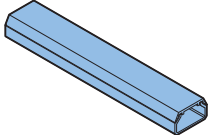
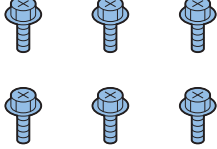

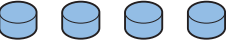
16. Close the HDD Lid.

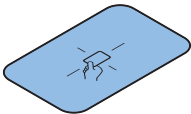
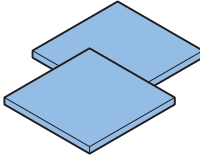
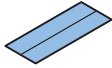

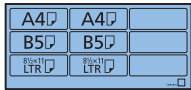
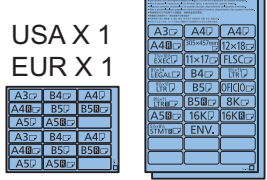
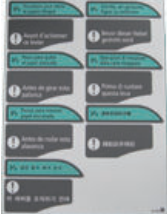



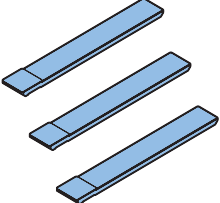
- 1 Screw



17. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.

Checking the Contents

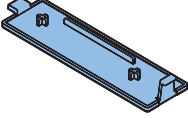

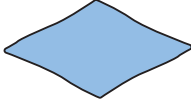

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Developing Assembly X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Power Code X 1 220-240V region only. The connector has a different shape depending on locations. 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Exhaust Filter X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Left Upper Cover X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Right Upper Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Upper Rear Cover X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Service Book Holder X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Finisher Connector Cover X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Cleaning Tool X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Cord Guide X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (RS Tightening ; M4x10) X 6 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 1  <input type="checkbox"/> [13] Rubber Cap X 4 

<input type="checkbox"/> [14] IC Card Reader Sheet X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Cushion X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Double-sided Tape X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Wire Saddle X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [18] Paper Size Label (Deck) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [19] Paper Size Label (Cassette) Asia/Oceania X 2 USA X 1 EUR X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [20] JAM Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [21] Control Panel Language Label X 1 Only for Asia/Oceania Used for Korea 
<input type="checkbox"/> [22] Connection Seal (Front) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [23] Connection Seal (Middle) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [24] Name Plate X 3 	

NOTE:

- [16]: Use this if necessary when installing the IC Card Reader.
- [19]: Number of labels attached to the sheet varies according to location/area.
- [21]: Give this to the user as the user may affix it if necessary (See the User's Guide for the procedure).

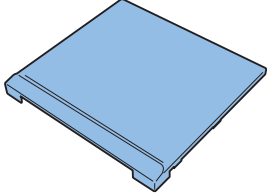
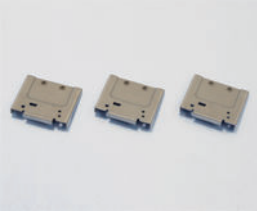


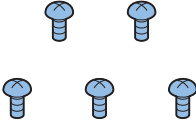
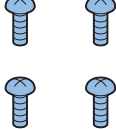

■ Parts Included in the Package of Models with the Image Reader Unit

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Reader Left Upper Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Rubber Cap X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Cleaning Cloth X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Copy Prohibition Label USA X 1 EUR X 1 

NOTE:

[4]: Number of labels attached to the sheet varies according to location/area.

■ Printer Cover (Only for Machines Equipped with the Printer Cover)

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Printer Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Right Cover Support Plate X 3 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Reader Fixation Plate L X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Reader Fixation Plate R X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 5 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening; M4x10) X 4 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (TP; M4x8) X 1 	

● Installation Procedure

■ Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)

NOTE:

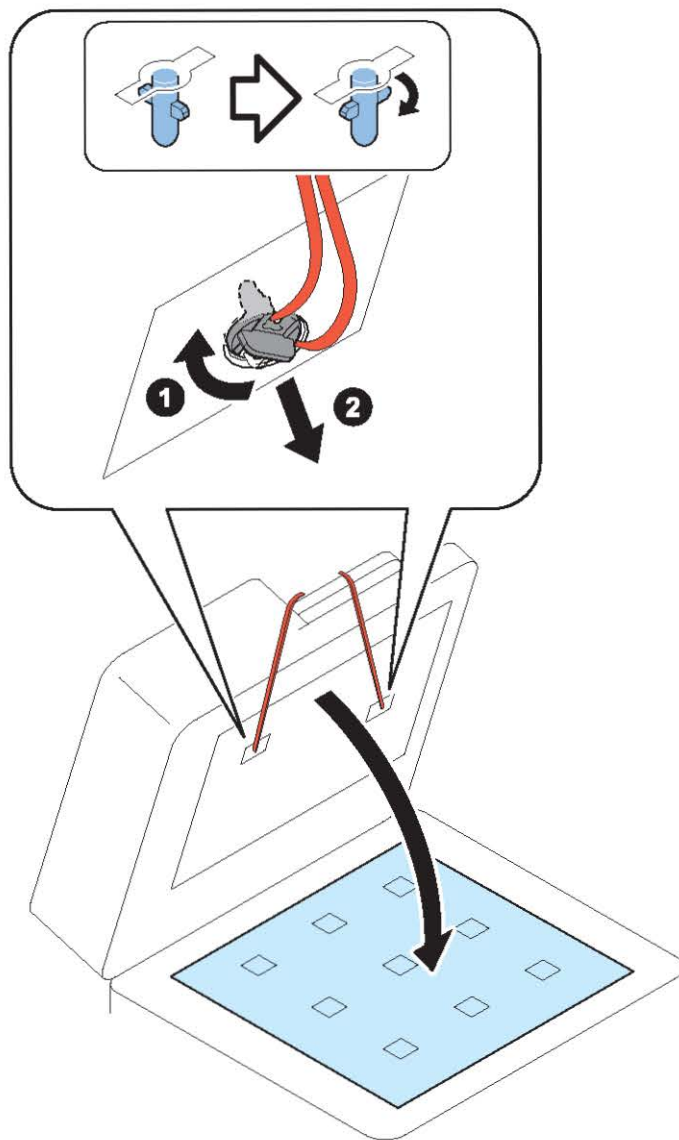
- As the Scanner Fixation Member will be needed when moving the machine, be sure to keep it in a safe place.
- When moving the machine, be sure to execute following service mode (Lv.2), remove the Reader Left Upper, and then install the Scanner Fixation Member. (For details, refer to "When Relocating the Machine".)
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > RD-SHPOS



1. Open the ADF.



2.

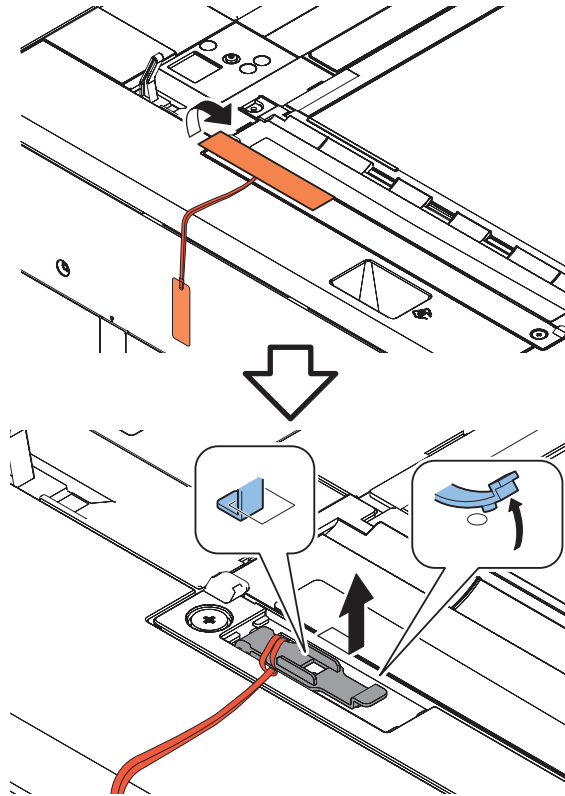




3.

NOTE:

Be sure to keep the Scanner Fixation Member in a safe place for moving the machine.

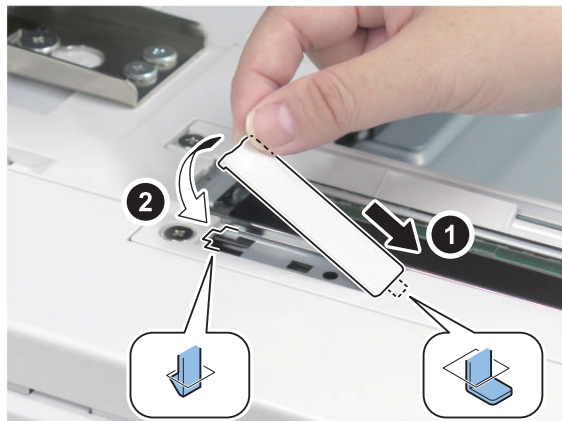
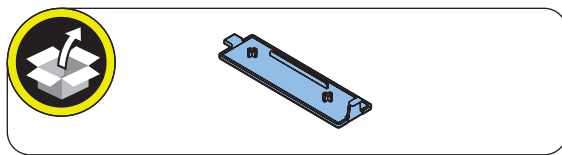


NOTE:

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 8.



4.

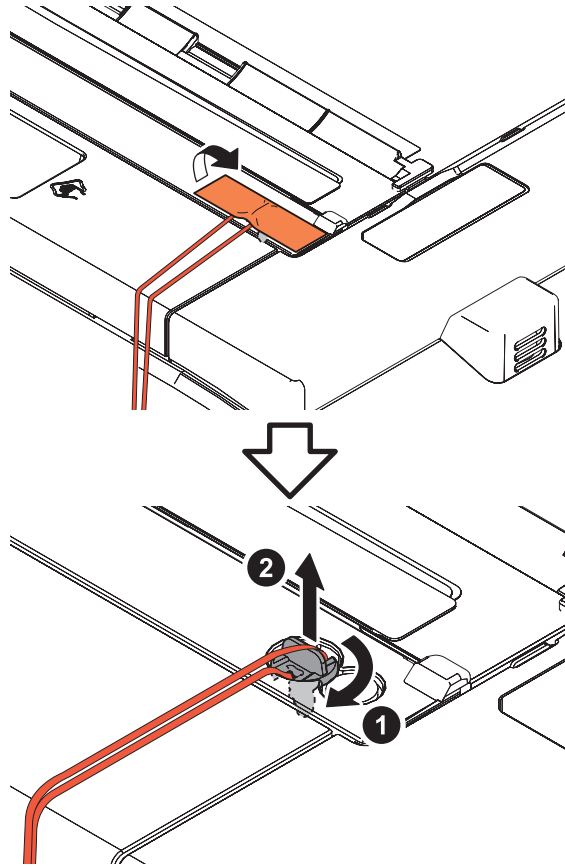




5.

NOTE:

Be sure to keep the Scanner Fixation Member in a safe place for moving the machine.

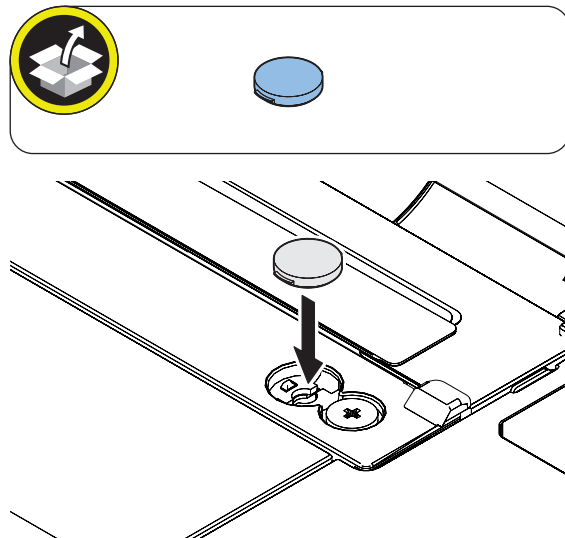


NOTE:

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 10.

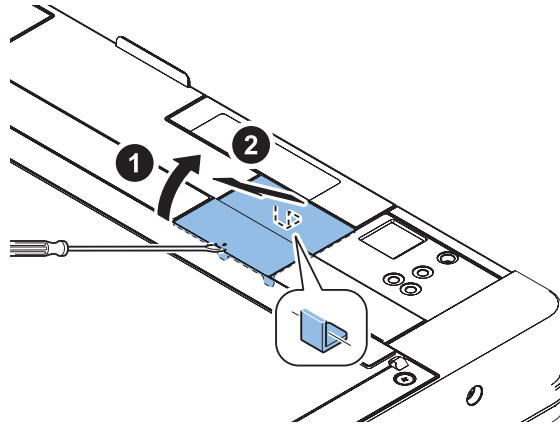


6.





7.

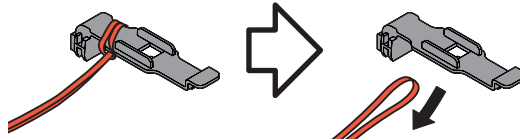


NOTE:

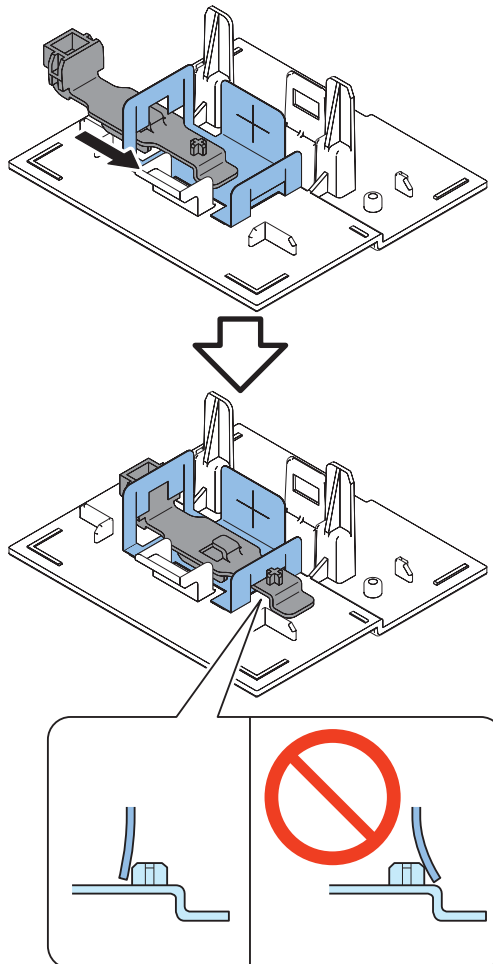
The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 9.



8.

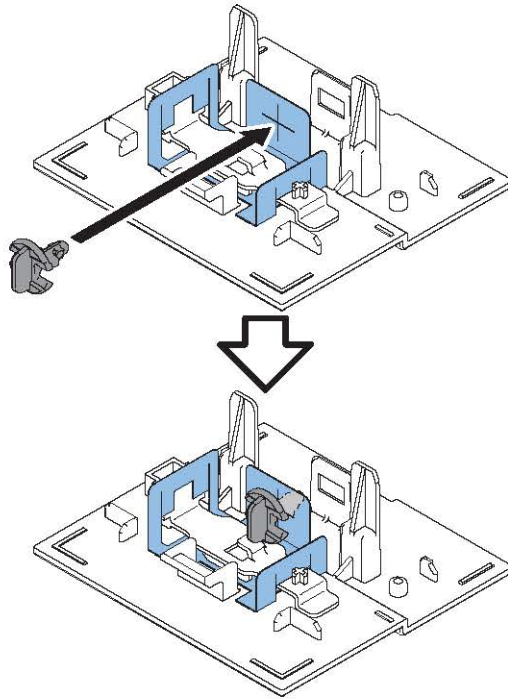


9.

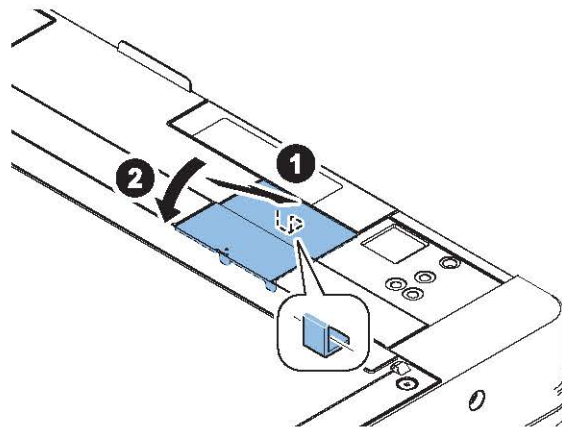




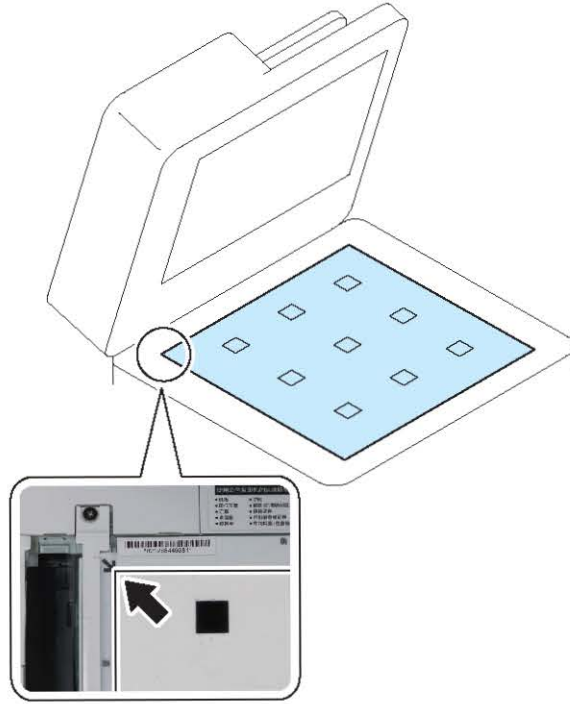
10.



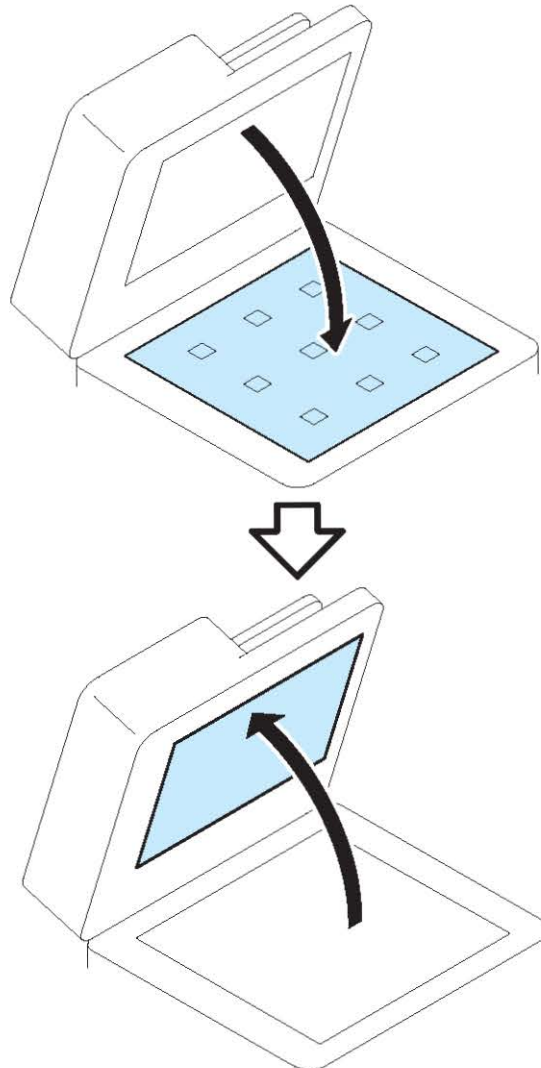
11.



□
12.



□
13.

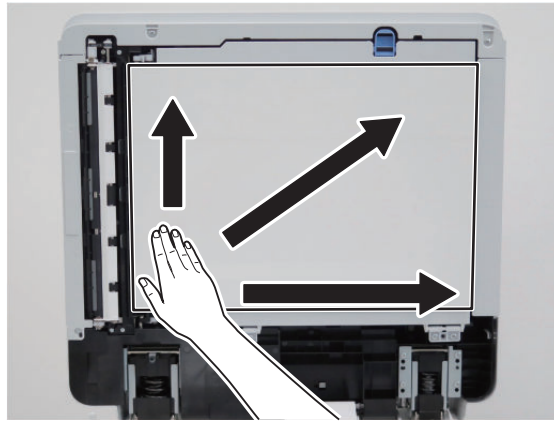




14.

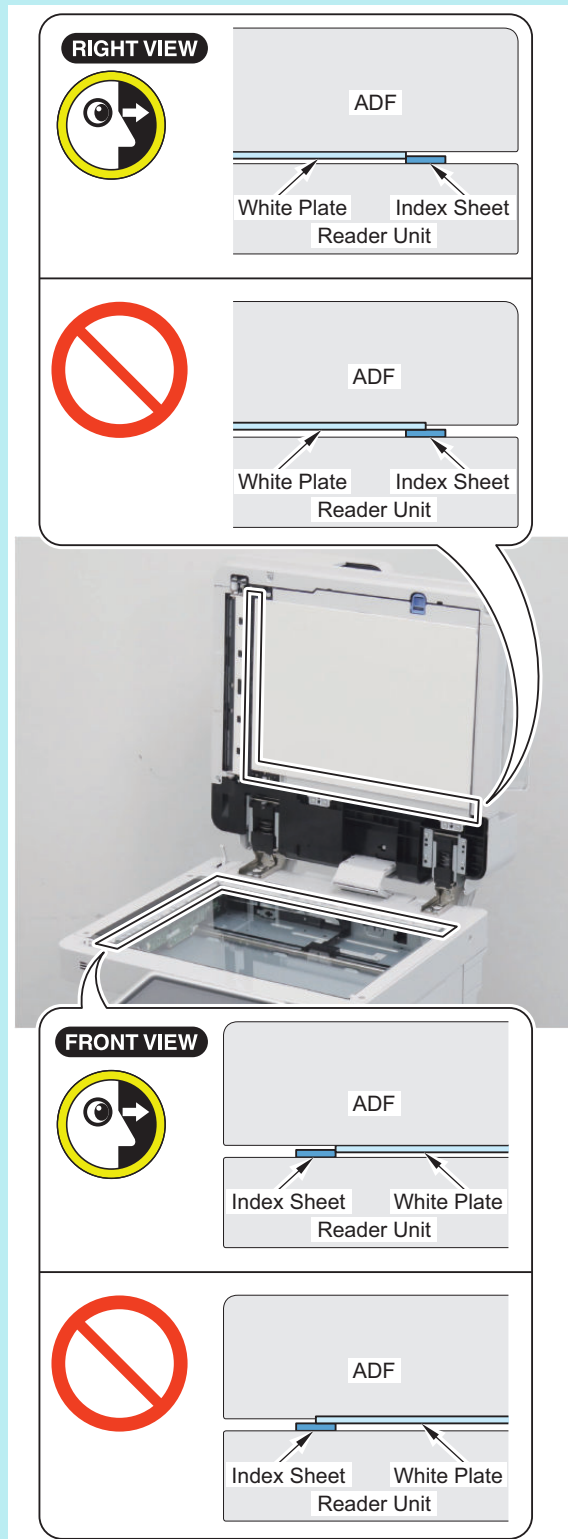
CAUTION:

If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



**15. Close the ADF.****NOTE:**

- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.

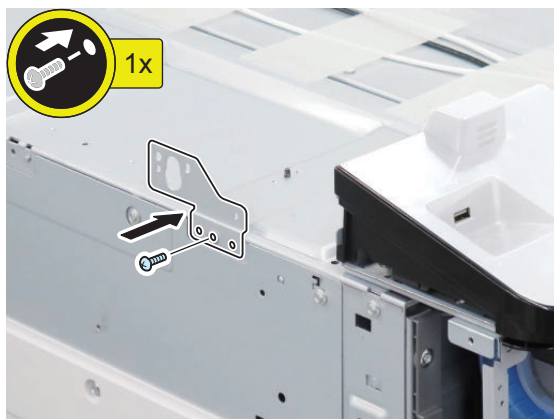
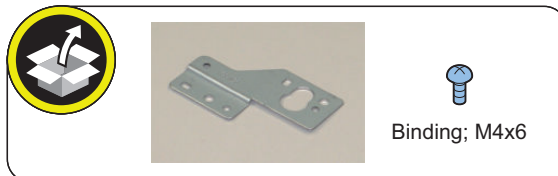


■ Installation of the Printer Cover (Only for Machines Equipped with the Printer Cover)



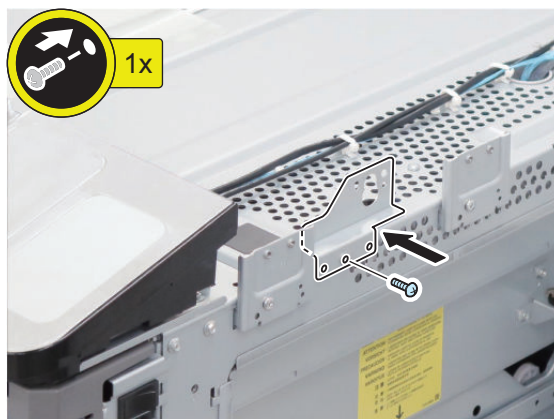
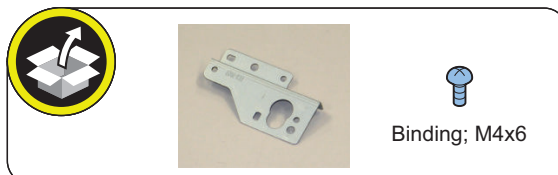
1. Install the Reader Fixation Plate L.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding: M4x6)



2. Open the Multi-purpose Tray, and install the Reader Fixation Plate R.

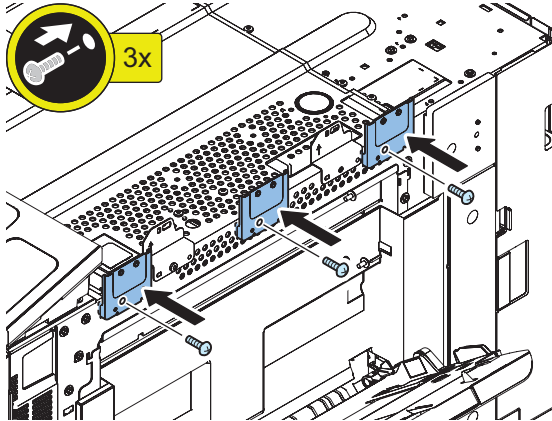
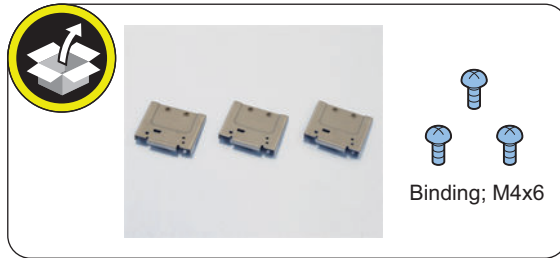
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding: M4x6)





3. Install the 3 Right Cover Support Plates.

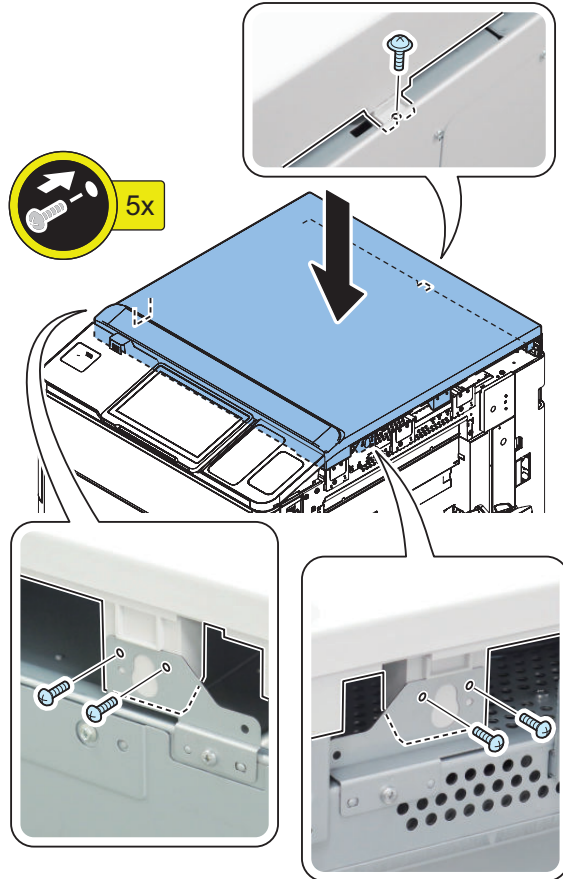
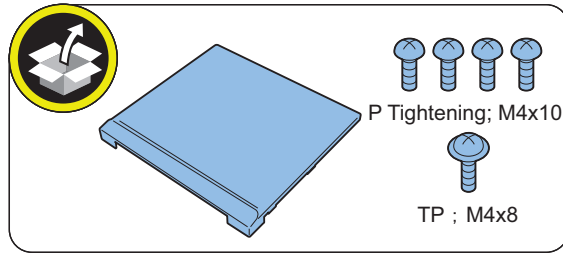
- 2 Hooks each
- 1 Screw each (Binding; M4x6)





4. Install the Printer Cover.

- 4 Screws (P Tightening; M4x10)
- 1 Screw (TP: M4x8)



5. Close the Multi-purpose Tray.

■ Installation of the Covers

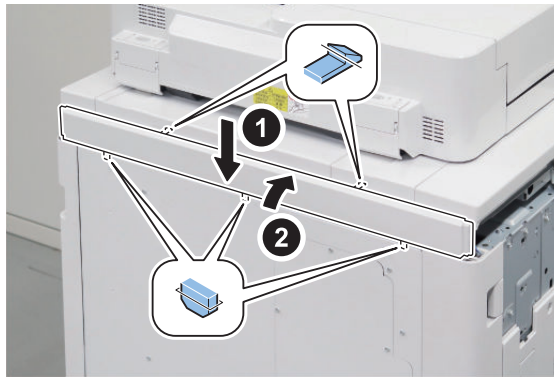
NOTE:

The installation procedure is the same between the Flat Control Panel model and the Upright Control Panel model.



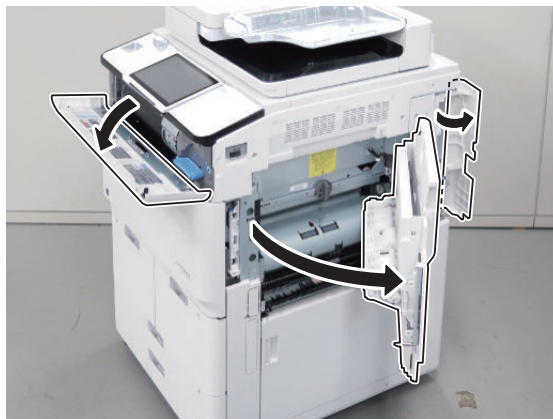
1. Install the Upper Rear Cover.

- 3 Protrusions
- 2 Claws



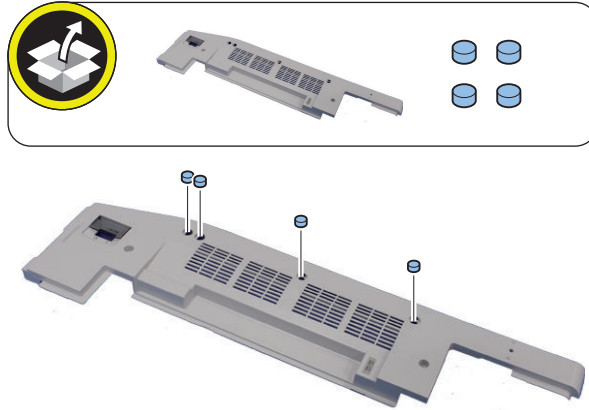
2. Open the covers.

- Toner Replacement Cover
- Right Cover
- Right Rear Cover 1



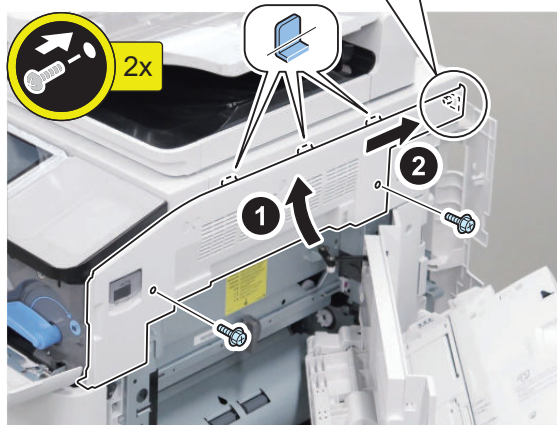
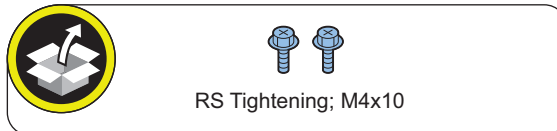


3. Install the 4 Rubber Caps to the Right Upper Cover.



4. Install the Right Upper Cover by fitting its hole onto the boss of the Upper Rear Cover.

- 3 Protrusions
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)

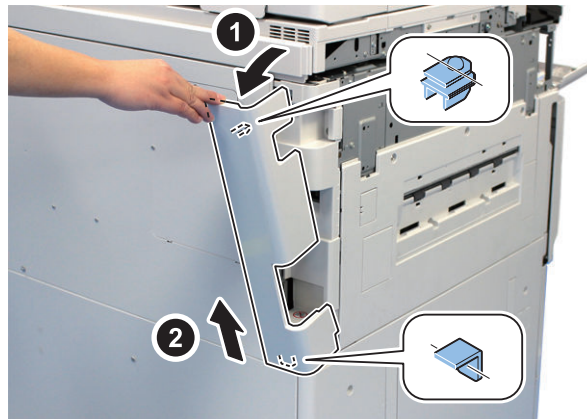


5. Close the Right Cover and Right Rear Cover 1.



6. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

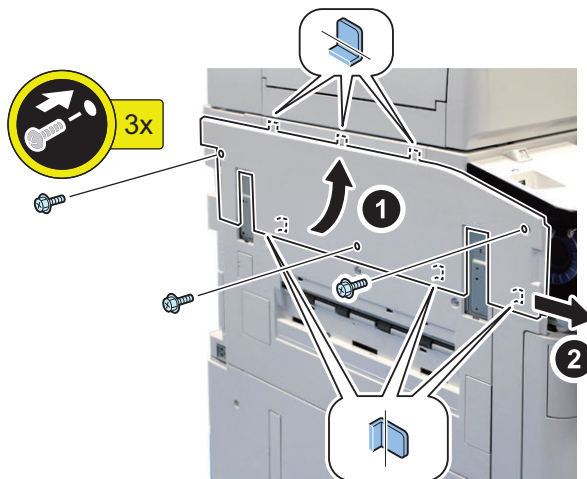
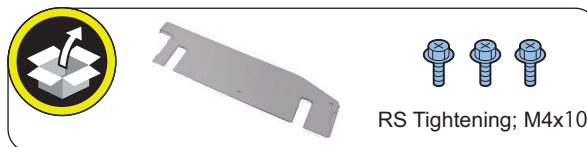


7. Install the Left Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow.

- 3 Protrusions
- 3 Hooks
- 3 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)

CAUTION:

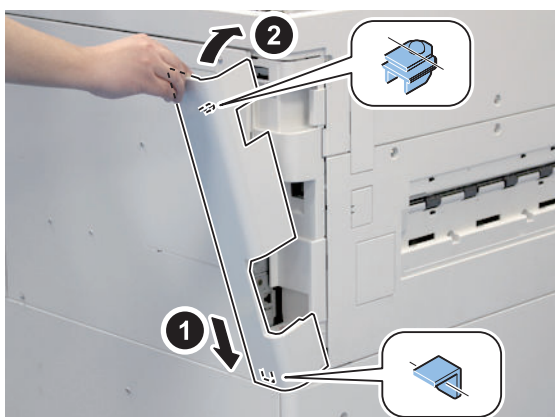
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.





8. Install the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



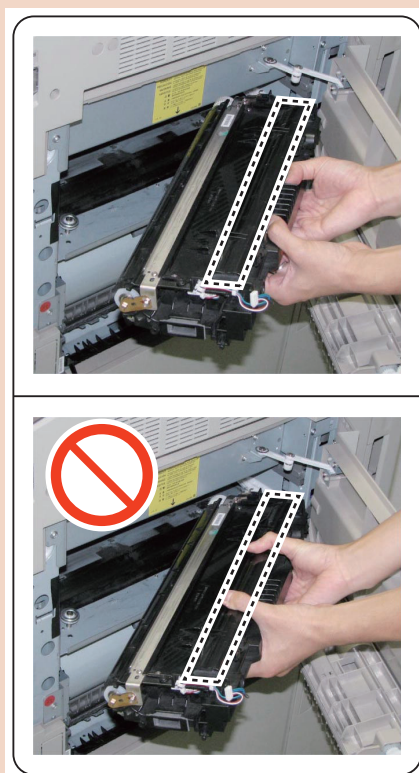
9. Close the Toner Replacement Cover.

■ Installation of the Developing Assembly

CAUTION:

How to Hold the Developing Assembly

- When holding the Developing Assembly, be sure to hold the handle of the Developing Assembly as shown in the figure.
- Do not touch the shutter area of the Developing Assembly. The shutter area is slippery, so it may cause a fall of the assembly.

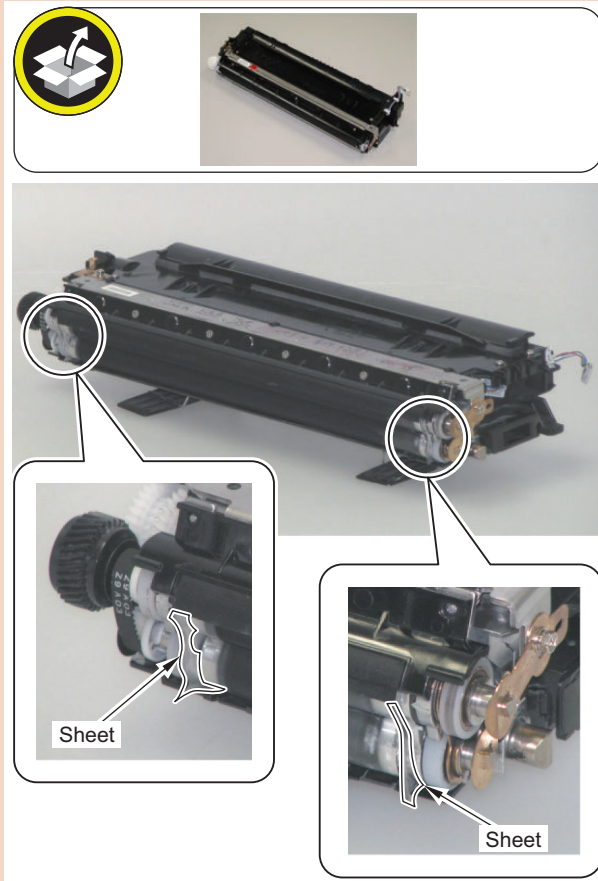




1. Unpack the Developing Assembly.

CAUTION:

Points to Caution when Installing the Developing Assembly
Be sure not to remove the Toner Blocking Sheet by mistake.



2. Remove the package materials.

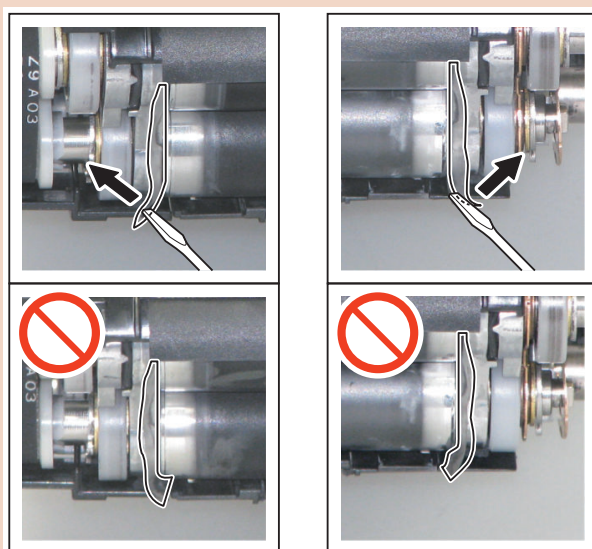


CAUTION:

Checking and Adjusting the Direction of the Toner Blocking Sheet

Be sure to check the direction of the Toner Blocking Sheet before installing the Developing Assembly to the host machine. If the Toner Blocking Sheet turns inward, image error due to toner scattering will occur, so adjust it to turn outward with a flat-blade screwdriver.

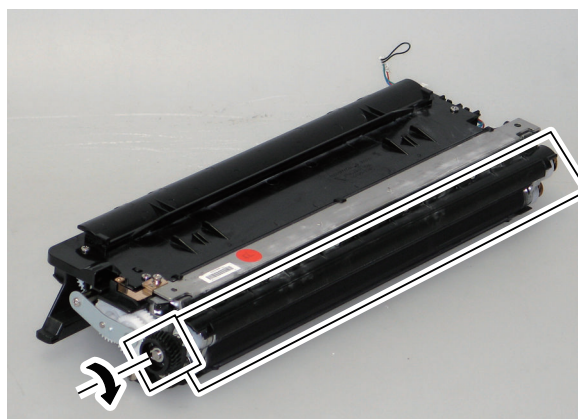
Be careful not to damage the Developing Assembly when adjusting the sheet.



3. Check if there are any scratches on the cylinder while rotating the gear manually in the direction of the arrow.

CAUTION:

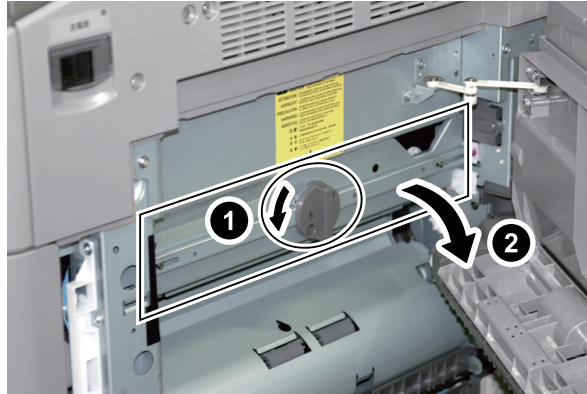
- Do not damage and touch the cylinder.
- Do not turn the gear inversely.



4. Open the Right Cover.

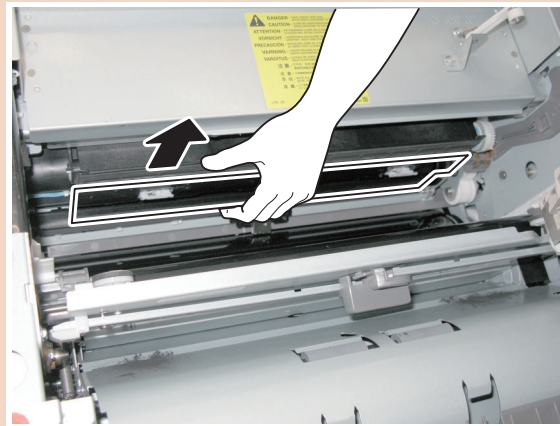


5. Turn the Lock Lever, and open the Developing Assembly Pressure Cover.

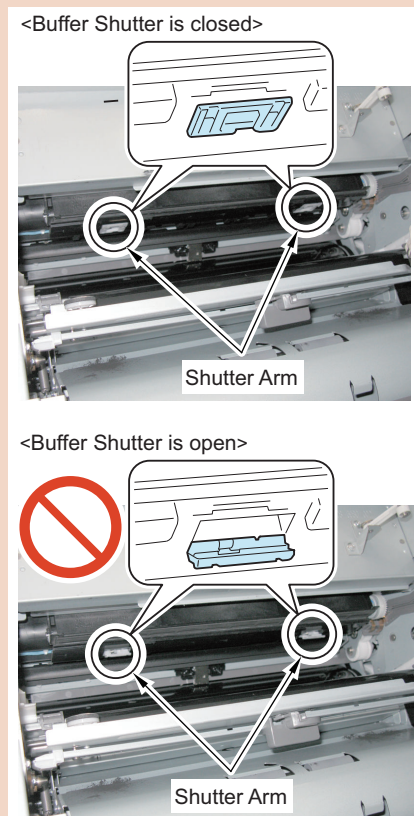


CAUTION:

- Before installing the Developing Assembly, be sure to check that the Buffer Shutter is not opened.
- If forcedly inserting the Developing Assembly while the Buffer Shutter is open, the Buffer Shutter may get damage. When the Buffer Shutter is open, be sure to close it by pulling it toward the front.



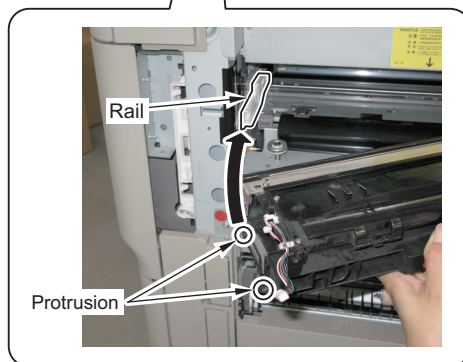
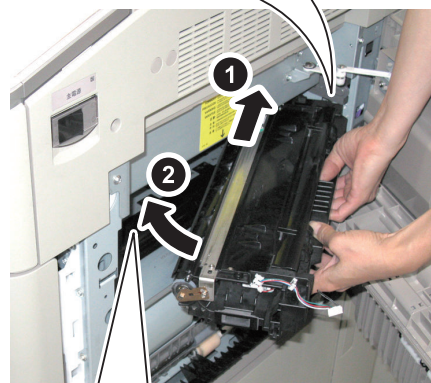
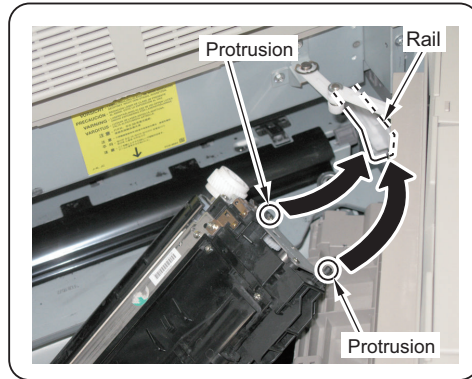
- Whether the Developing Assembly is installed properly can be checked with the Shutter Arm.





6. Hold the Developing Assembly as shown in the figure, and align the protrusions at both sides of the assembly with the rails on the host machine.

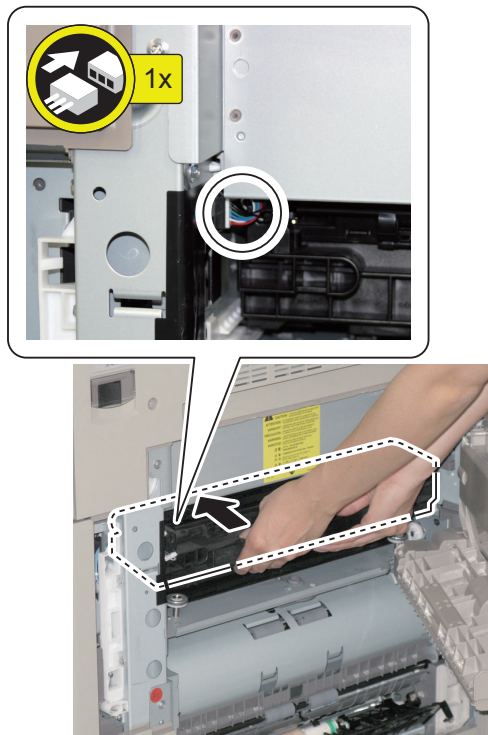
- 2 Protrusions each



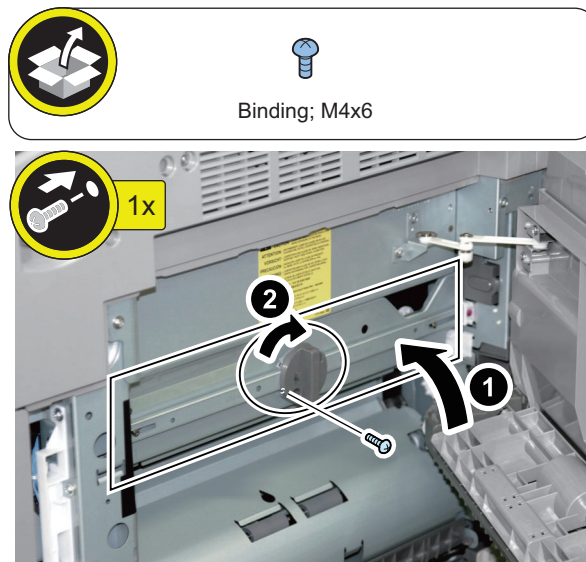


7. Along the rails, insert the Developing Assembly horizontally.

- 1 Connector



8. Close the Developing Assembly Pressure Cover and return the Lock Lever to the original position. Secure with the Screw (Binding; M4x6).



9. Close the Right Cover.

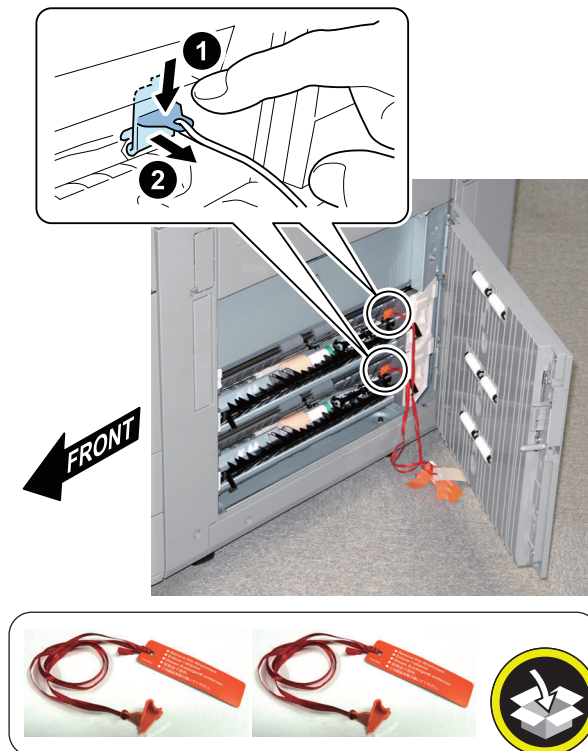
■ Installation of the Pickup Assembly



1. Remove tapes securing tags from the Vertical Path Cover.



2. Open the Vertical Path Cover and remove 2 Pressure Release Spacers at pickup slot for each cassette.



3. Close the Vertical Path Cover.



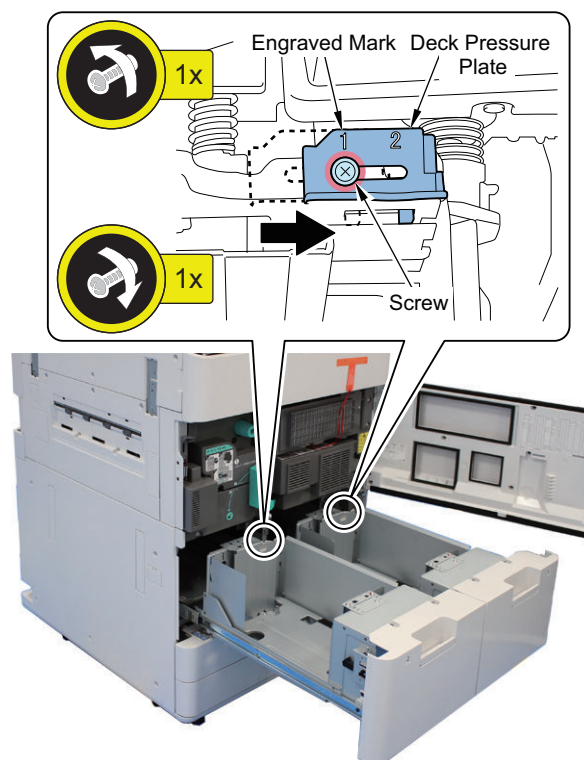
4. Open the Front Cover.



5. Open the Left and Right Decks, and remove the tape.



6. Loosen the screw and slide the Deck Pressure Plate in the direction of the arrow. Check that the screw position is at the engraved mark '1', and then tighten the screw.

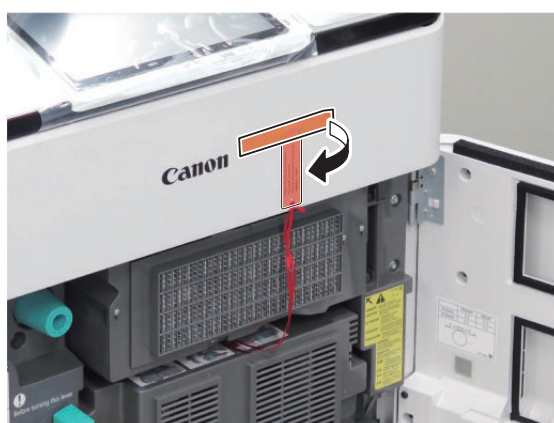


7. Close the Left and Right Decks.

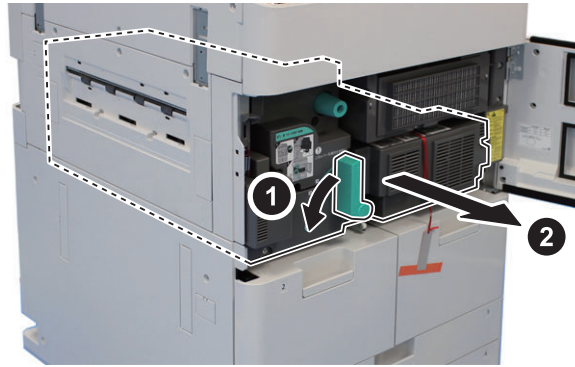
■ Installing the Fixing Assembly



1. Remove the tapes.

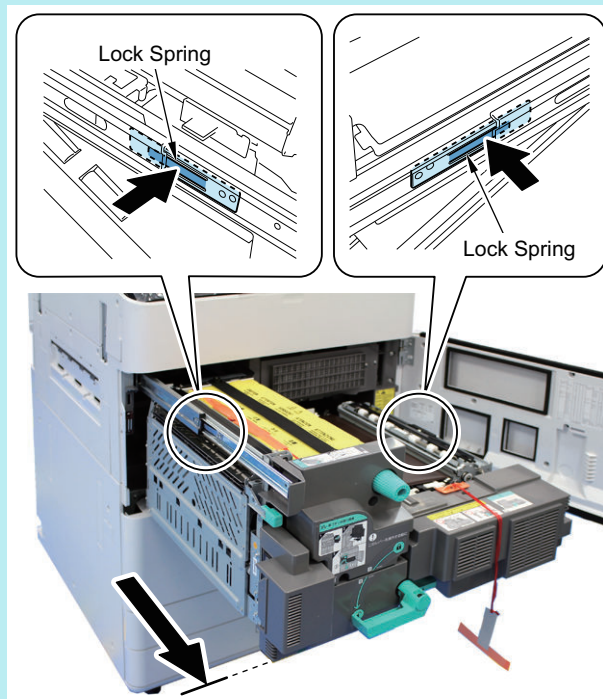


-
- 2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Release Lever in the direction of the arrow and pull the Fixing Feed Unit all the way out.

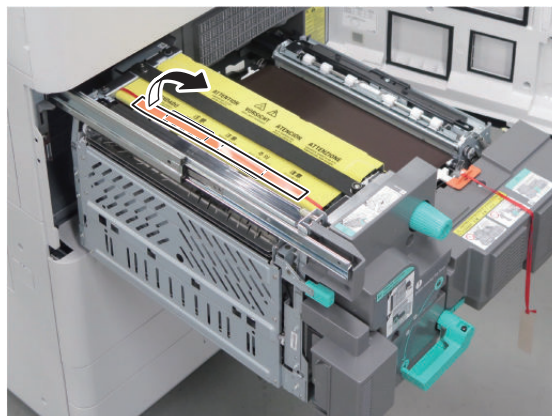


NOTE:

In the case that the Fixing Nip Pressure Release Screw is hard to be removed, release the lock by pressing the Lock Springs at both rails, and pull out the Fixing Feed Unit further until it stops.

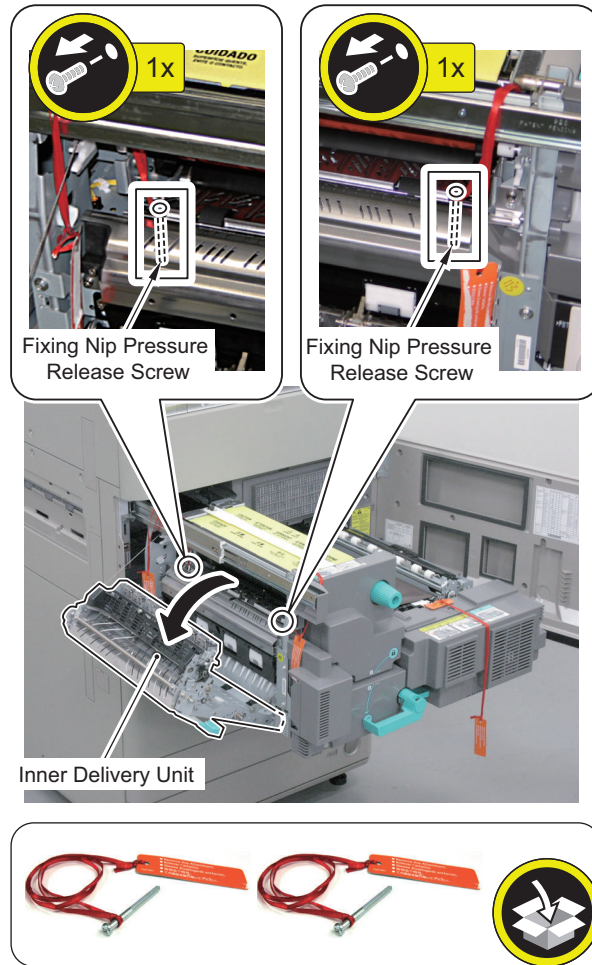


-
- 3. Remove the tape securing a tag on the Fixing Upper Cover.





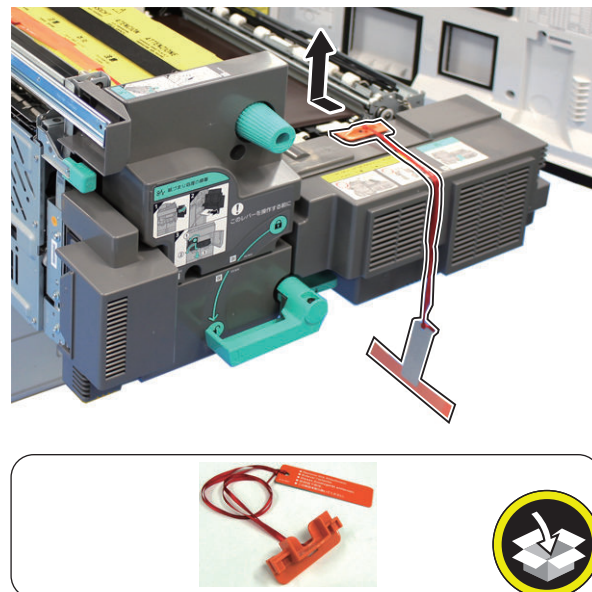
4. Open the Inner Delivery Unit, and remove the 2 Fixing Nip Pressure Release Screws.



5. Close the Inner Delivery Unit.



6. Remove the ETB Spacer.



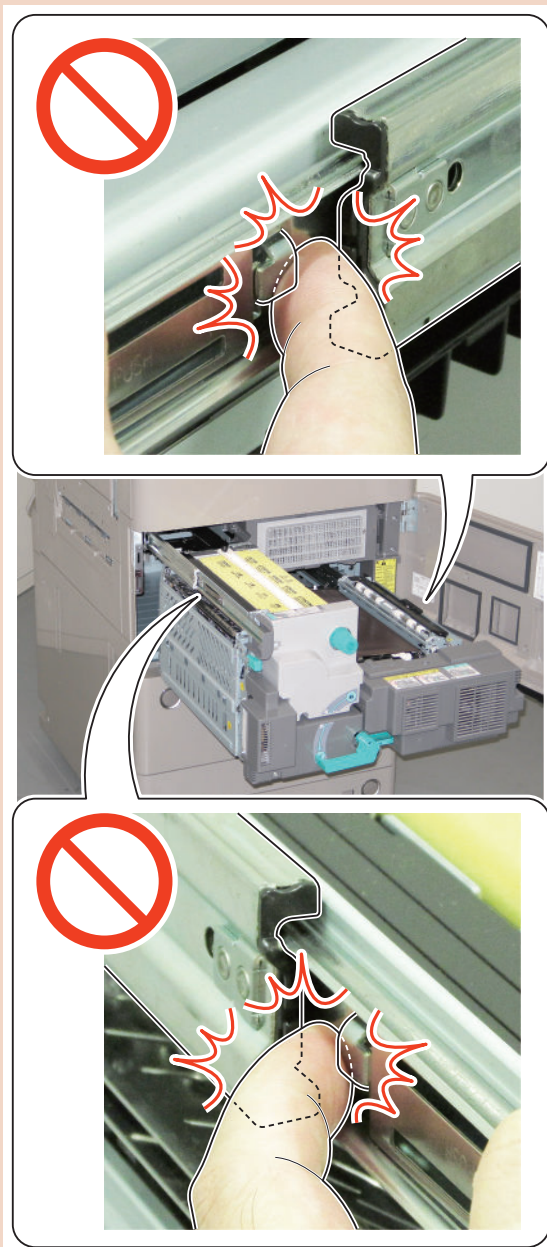
**7. Return the Fixing Feed Unit and lock the Fixing Feed Unit Release Lever.****NOTE:**

In the case of pulling out the Fixing Feed Unit further, be sure to return the Fixing Feed Unit while releasing the Lock Spring.

CAUTION:

Points to Note when Inserting the Fixing Feed Unit

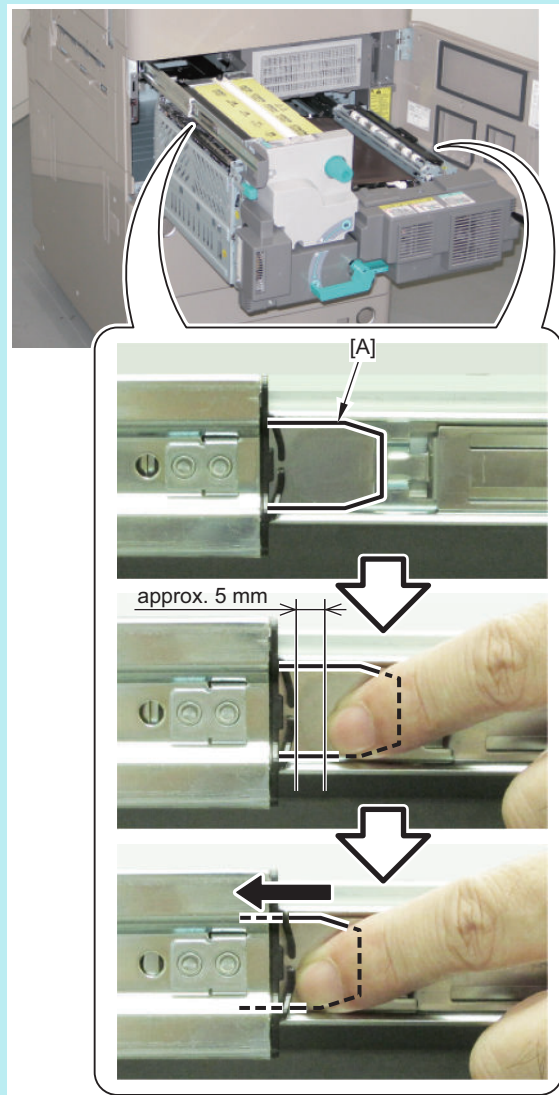
While pressing the Release Springs, slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in so that the fingers do not get caught.



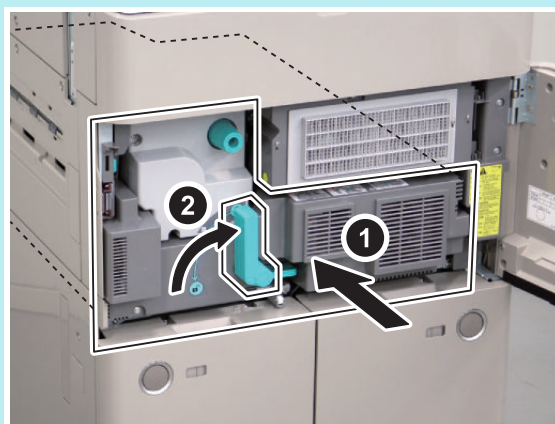
NOTE:

How to push the Fixing Feed Unit in

1. Release the Release Springs [A] on the side of either rail.
Slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in by approximately 5 mm while keeping it level.

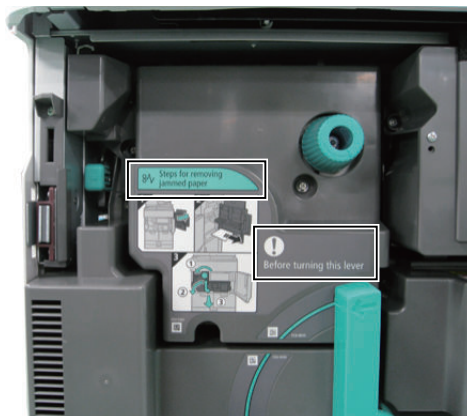


2. Take the fingers off the Release Springs and slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in to the end.





8. Affix the Jam Label of the appropriate language over the existing label on the Fixing Front Cover.



9. Close the Front Cover.

■ Installation of Toner Container

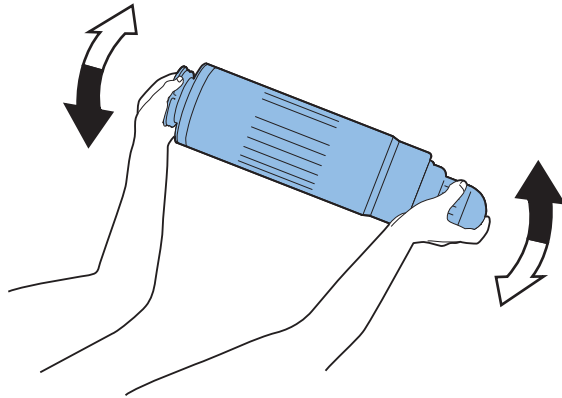


1. Open the Toner Replacement Cover, and turn the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow to release.





2. **Unpack the Toner Container and shake it approx. 10 times horizontally.**



3. **Remove the cap of the Toner Container.**



4. **Set the Toner Container to the host machine, and turn the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow to secure the Toner Container in place.**



5. **Close the Toner Replacement Cover.**

■ Installing the Exhaust Filter

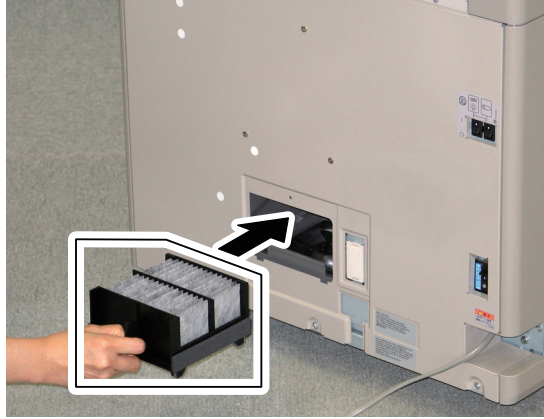


1. **Remove the tape, and remove the Filter Cover.**



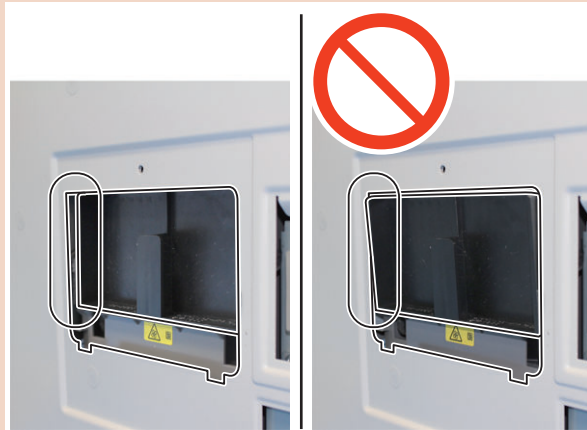


2. Hold the Exhaust Filter as shown in the figure, and install it to the Main Body.



CAUTION:

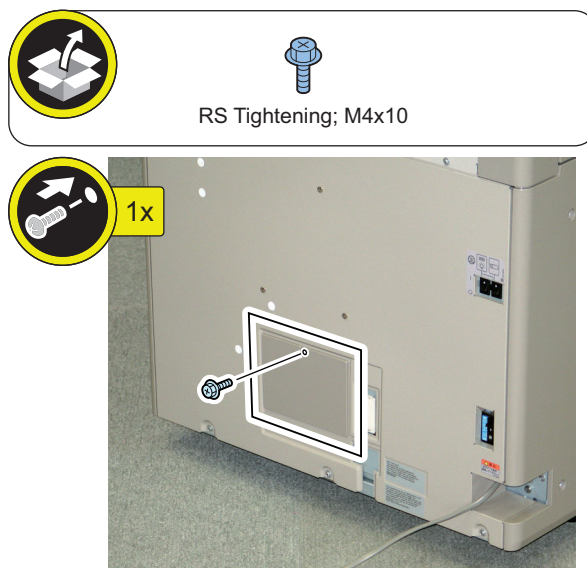
When installing the Exhaust Filter, be sure to install it straight. If it is installed askew, the Filter Cover does not fit properly.





3. Install the Filter Cover.

- Screw (RS Tightening; M4x10)



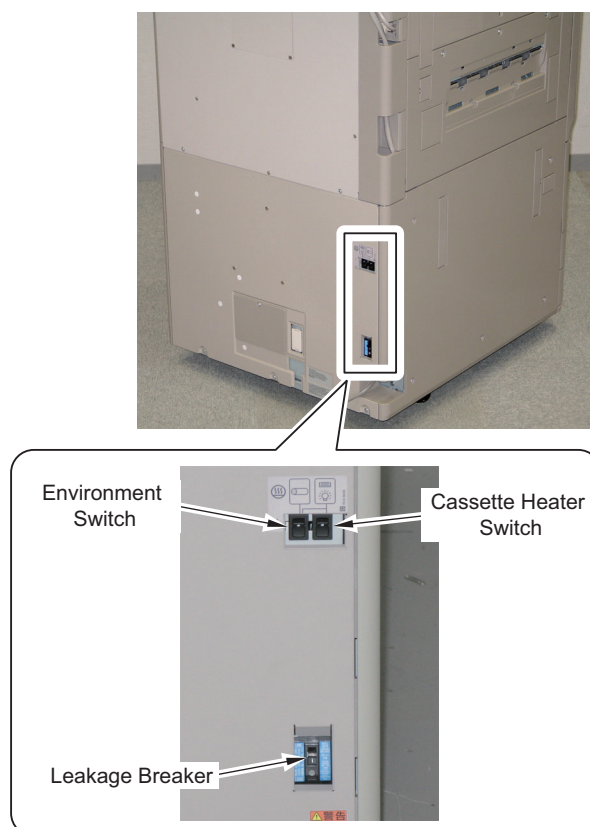
■ Setting the Environment Heater Switch



1. Check that the Leakage Breaker is ON.
2. Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch and the Cassette Heater Switch in accordance with the installation environment.

NOTE:

In the case of high humidity environment, turn ON the Environment Heater Switch.



■ Turning ON the Main Power <Registering the Speed License>

CAUTION:

- Before performing this procedure, it is necessary to obtain the license key of the speed license.
- With this product, license of engine speed needs to be entered depending on location or model.
- Since the automatic adjustment of the ADF reading position will be executed when the main power is turned ON for the first time, remove all objects on the copyboard glass and close the ADF.



1. Remove the protection sheet on the control panel.
2. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
3. Turn ON the main power switch.
4. An error message "E612-0007" is displayed.
5. Enter service mode.
6. Press [SPEED LICENSE].

CAUTION:

Check that the serial number of the machine at acquisition of the license and the serial number displayed on the license No. input screen are the same.

7. Enter the license number and press [Start]. Then, "OK" is displayed.
8. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.

NOTE:

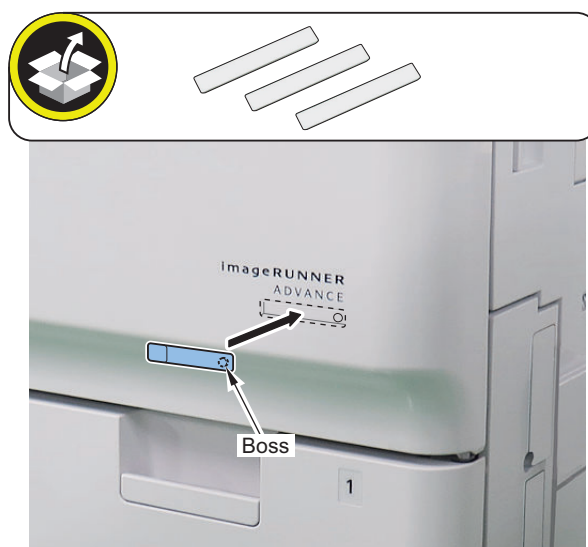
Turning OFF the Main Power

1. Open the Switch Cover and turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Check that the control panel display and the main power lamp are OFF, and then disconnect the power plug.

9. Install the Name Plate of the product according to the speed license.

CAUTION:

Be sure to bring back the unused Name Plates.



<In the Case of Printer Model>

10. A message is displayed prompting to check that the Reader Unit Cable is connected properly.
11. Select the following service mode and enter "0" to the setting value.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR
12. Exit the Service Mode.
13. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

■ Host Machine Settings (Start Setup Guide)

The Setup Guide screen appears when the main power is turned ON after registration of the speed license. Follow the instructions displayed on the Touch Panel Display to configure the settings of the host machine.

CAUTION:

- Some of the settings can be skipped without entering the command. To configure skipped settings, configure the settings one by one after exiting Setup Guide.
- Setup Guide can be started again from [Settings/ Registration]. ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide])
- If the host machine is turned OFF during the registration using the Setup Guide, the Setup Guide is automatically started by turning ON the host machine.
- Once registration using the Setup Guide is completed, the Setup Guide is not automatically started by turning ON the host machine.

CAUTION:

Register the information of paper loaded during installation of the host machine.

Be sure to register the correct paper type. Especially in the case of special paper types such as heavy paper, registering a wrong paper type may result in image failure, and when the Fixing Assembly becomes soiled or paper wraparound occurs, repair by a service technician becomes necessary.

NOTE:

Following works can be performed while toner mixing is executed.

- "Securing the Host Machine" on page 62
- "Other Installation Work" on page 63
- "Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)" on page 65
- "Setting the Deck" on page 66
- "Setting the Paper Cassette" on page 68

● Informing the System Administrator That Installation Is Complete

When the installation is completed, ask the system administrator to change the password.

Also ask the system administrator to keep the changed password in a safeplace to prevent leakage.

■ Registration of Installation Date Information

CAUTION:

Be sure that [Date/Time Settings] is completed. (There are items in Setup Guide.)

**1. Enter the following service mode, and execute "Batch Set Installation Date Info".**

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INSTDTST

NOTE:

- Year, month, day, hour, and minute can be edited individually in the following service modes.
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-Y
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-M
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-D
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-H
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-N
- The default value of each service mode is "0".
- When "0" is set for each service mode, "Device Installation Date" on the counter report will be blank.

2. Exit service mode.**3. Output the counter report, and check that the installation date information is registered.**

- [Counter/Device Information] key > [Print List] > [Yes]

```

2017 08/30 WED 09:40 0001
*****
*** Counter Report ***
*****
Device Installation Date 2017/08/09 07:56
Counter Check Date 2017/08/30 09:40
Model LR-ADV
Serial Number UXH00938

```

■ Securing the Host Machine**1. Confirm the position to install the Host Machine and turn the 2 adjusters with your hand until they closely contact the floor.****NOTE:**

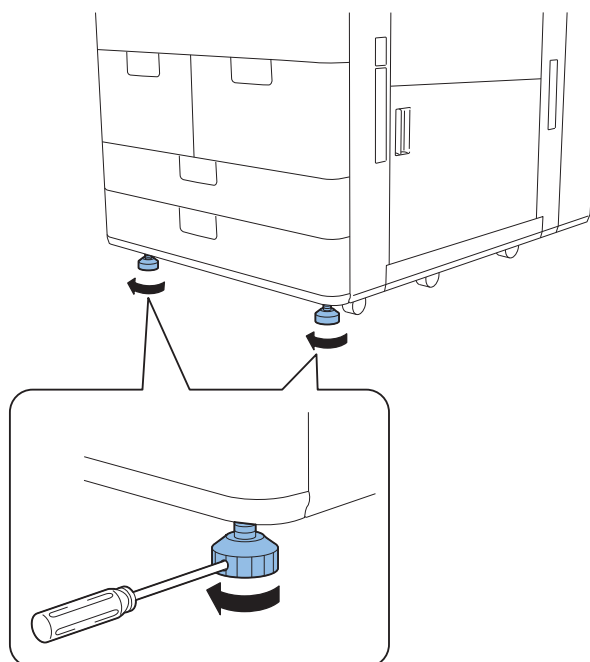
If you failed to turn the adjusters with your hand, use a screwdriver so that they can be turned by your hand.



2. Use a screwdriver to turn the adjusters in the direction of the arrow to make them secured.

NOTE:

Securing of the adjuster is not earthquake resistant.

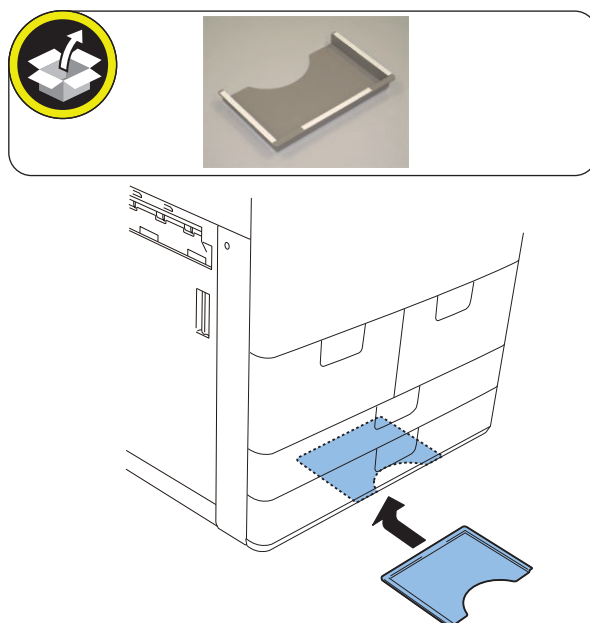


■ Other Installation Work

● Service Book Holder



1. Remove the double-sided tape on back side of the Service Book Holder, and affix the holder on the Base Plate of the host machine.

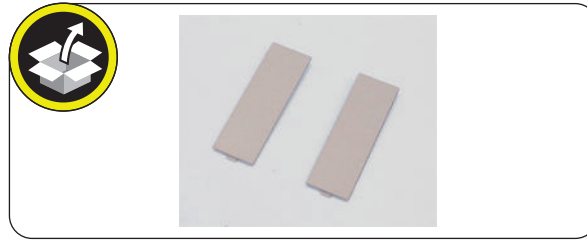


• **Finisher Connector Cover**



1. Install the 2 Finisher Connector Covers to the left side of the host machine.

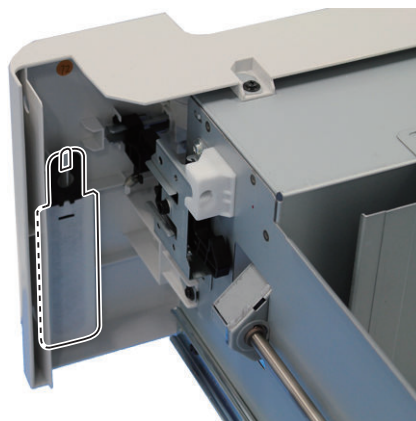
- 1 Protrusion each
- 1 Claw each



• **Cleaning Tool**



1. Store the cleaning tool on the inside of the Right Deck to use for maintenance. (Hook it on the back side of the Deck Cover.)

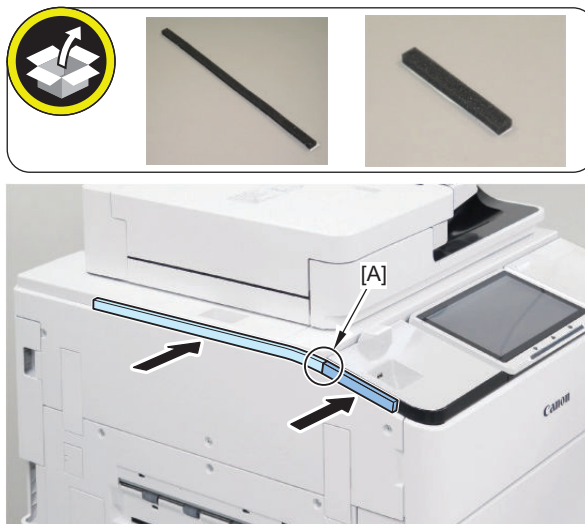


• Connection Seal

-
1. Affix the Connection Seal (Front) and the Connection Seal (Middle) to the position on the left side of the host machine as shown in the figure. (When connecting delivery options)

CAUTION:

Be sure that there is no gap between [A] the Connection Seal (Front) and the Connection Seal (Middle).



• Storing the Cleaning Cloth (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)

-
1. Place the Cleaning Cloth in the space shown in the figure.

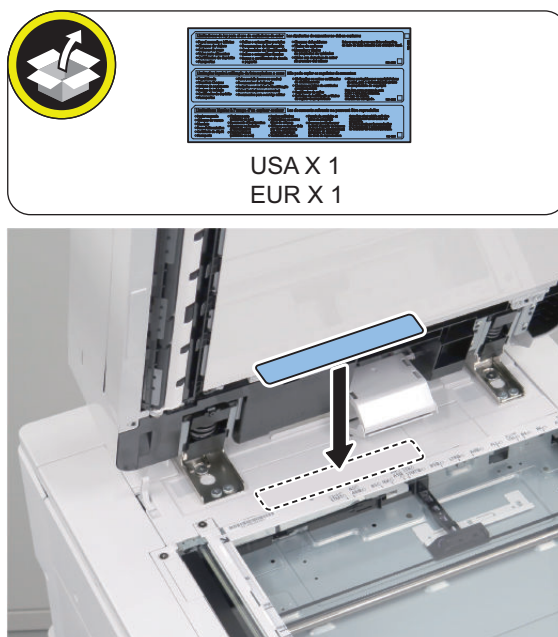


■ Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)

-
1. Open the DADF.



2. Affix the Copy Prohibition Label of the appropriate language at the places shown in the figure below.



3. Close the DADF.

■ Checking the K paper settings (Only for CHINA)



Check the following service mode, and change the setting value if different.

1. Enter service mode.
2. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODEL-SZ is "0".
3. Enter service mode (Lv.2).
4. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > SENS-CNF is "0".
5. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODELSZ2 is "0".
6. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > KSIZE-SW is "1".
7. When having changed the setting, turn OFF and then ON the main power to enable the setting value.

■ Setting the Deck



1. Pull out the Left and the Right Decks to the front.

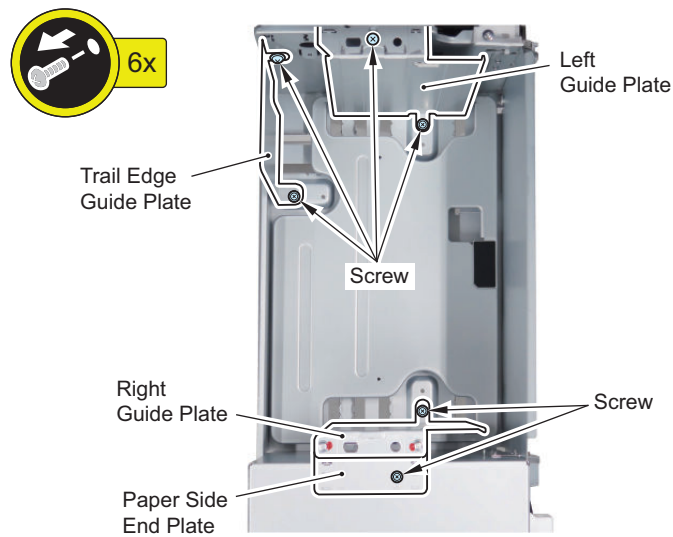
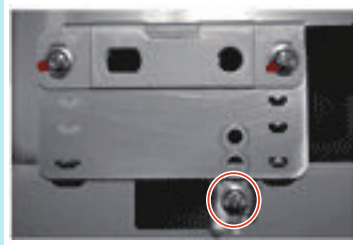


2. Remove the 4 screws fixing the Trailing Edge Guide Plate, Left Guide Plate, Right Guide Plate, and Paper Side End Plate in place, and fix each of the Guide Plates at user's desired size.

NOTE:

Setting the Paper Side End Plate

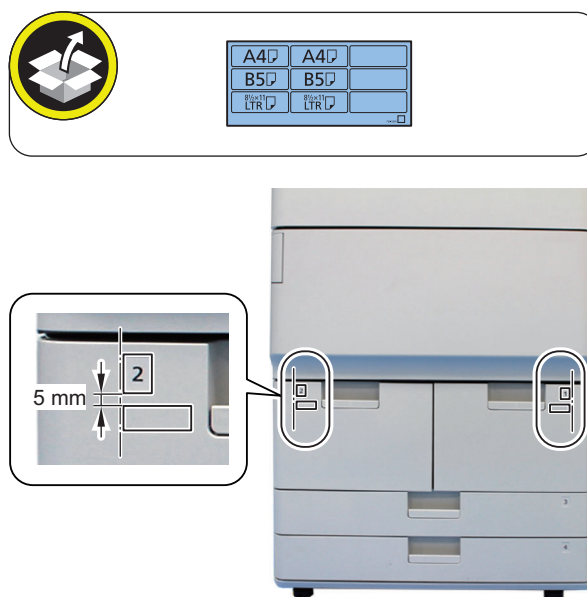
- Be sure to align the Paper Side End Plate with the position according to the size requested by the user, and secure the screw.
- When B5 size is set, the Paper Size End Plate cannot be fixed to the deck with the screw. In order to prevent the screw from being lost, be sure to secure the screw to the deck as shown below.



3. Put the specified size of papers in the Left/Right Deck, and push the Left/Right Deck in.



4. Affix Paper Size Labels (for Deck) according to the paper size, with the edge of each label aligned with the edge of the cassette number label. Approx. 5 mm away from the number label.

**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

5. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select the [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the paper source where paper is loaded, and press [Set].
3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

NOTE:

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the detailed settings screen.

If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

NOTE:

If Setup Guide is running, perform the following works after Setup Guide ends.



6. When the size has been changed, register the paper size for the Left and Right Deck in the service mode.

Right Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C1

Left Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C2



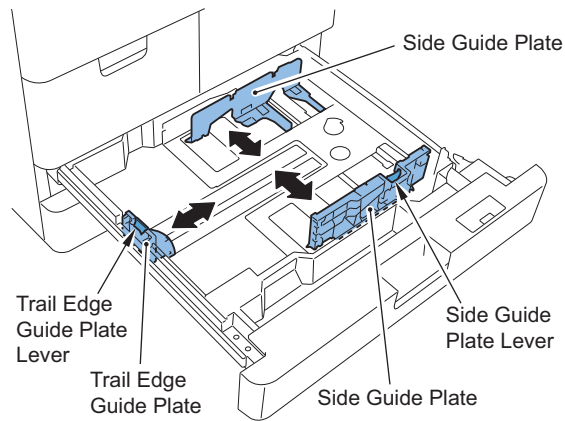
7. Exit from the service mode.

■ Setting the Paper Cassette



1. Pull out the Cassette to the front.

-
2. Hold the lever of the Side Guide Plate, and adjust the plate to the specified size. Adjust the Trailing Edge Guide Plate in the same way.



-
3. Set paper, and push the Cassette.

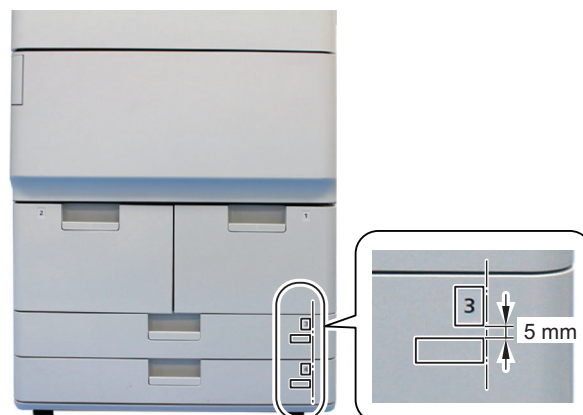
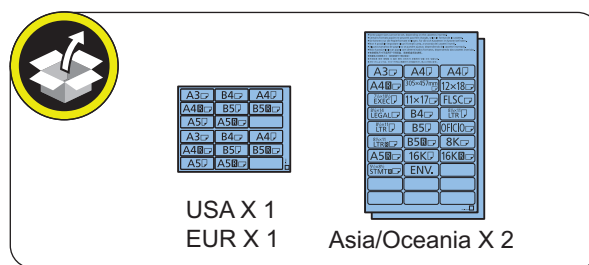
-
4. Set another cassette as well.

NOTE:
Paper size is set to be automatically recognized.

-
5. Affix Paper Size Labels (for Cassette) according to the paper size, with the right edge aligned with the right edge of the number label, approx. 5 mm away from the number label.

NOTE:

- Be sure to check with the user whether or not to affix the Paper Size Label, and then affix it at the recommended position.
- Keep the Paper Size Labels as they will be used when changing the paper size.



**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

6. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select the [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the paper source where paper is loaded, and press [Set].
3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

NOTE:

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the detailed settings screen.

If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

■ Image Position Adjustment

● Left Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)



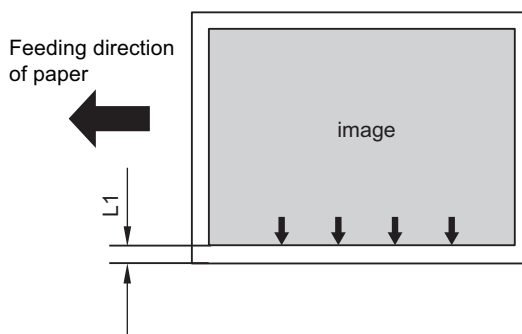
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from each cassette and Deck.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 1/2/3/4



2. Check that the left edge margin of the image (L1) is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-20 to 20 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

Right Deck:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1

Left Deck:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2

Cassette3:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C3

Cassette4:

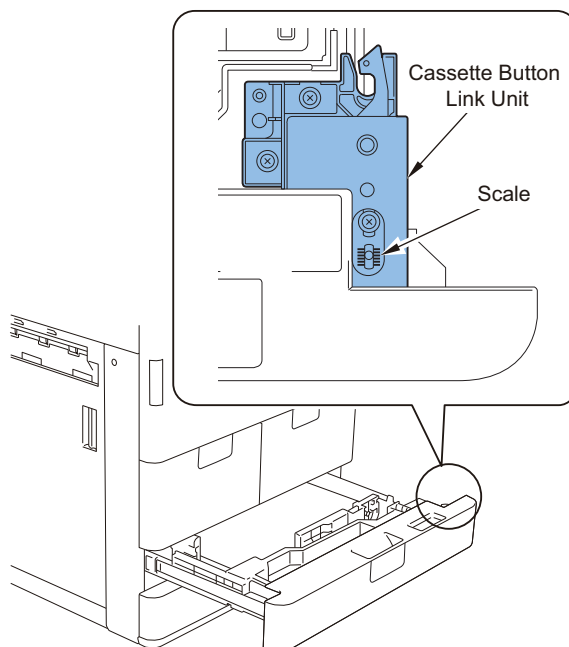
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C4

-
- 4. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.
-
- 5. Exit from the service mode.
-
- 6. Perform printing again from the cassette/deck, and check that the left edge margin (L1) of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.

NOTE:

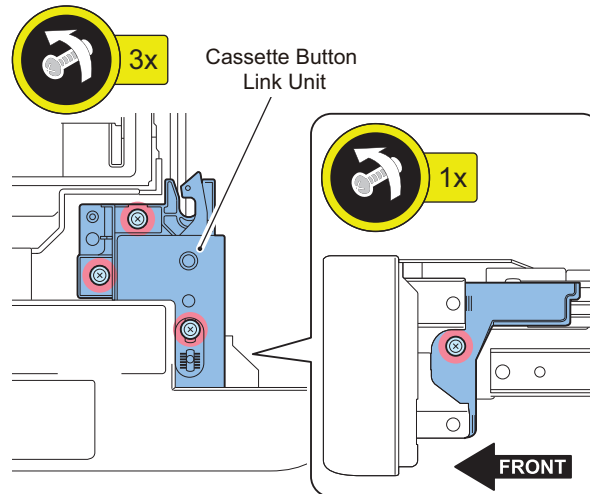
If the adjustment cannot be made with the setting value of -20 to 20 (adjustment amount: -2.0 to 2.0mm), execute step 7 and later steps.

-
- 7. Pull out the Cassette.
-
- 8. Check the Cassette position by the scale of the Cassette Button Link Unit.





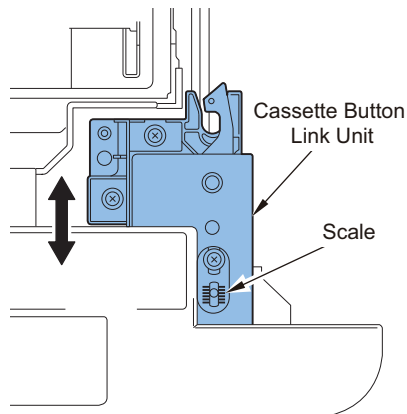
9. Loosen the 4 screws of the Cassette Button Link Unit.



10. According to the scale in which the position was checked in step 8, adjust the position of the Cassette Button Link Button.

NOTE:

- In the case of larger margin at the rear side, move the Cassette Button Link Unit to the rear side.
- In the case of larger margin at the front side, move the Cassette Button Link Unit to the front side.



11. Tighten the 4 screws (which have been loosened in step 9).

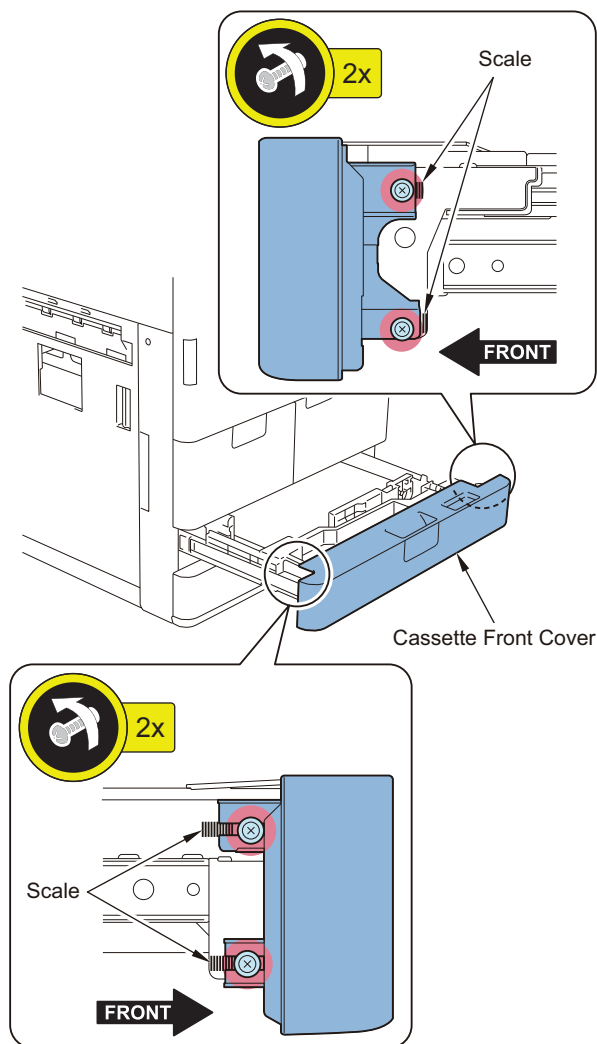
NOTE:

If you are concerned with alignment of the Cassette Front Cover, perform steps 12 to 14 to make an adjustment as necessary.



12. Loosen the 4 screws and adjust the position of the Cassette Front Cover by referring to the scale.

13. When moving the Cassette Button Link Unit, adjust the left side of the Cassette Front Cover by shifting it with the same shifting amount of the unit.



-
14. Once the position of the Cassette Front Cover is confirmed, tighten the 4 screws (which have been loosened in step 12).
-
15. Perform printing again from the cassette/deck, and check that the left edge margin (L1) of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.

NOTE:

When a mechanical adjustment was made, be sure to execute the service mode again.

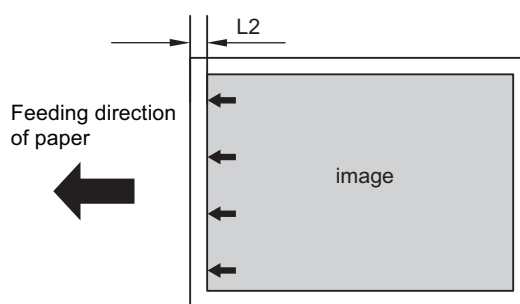
• Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)

NOTE:

By executing the margin adjustment for the Cassette 3, the adjustment is applied to all source of paper.

-
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Cassette 3.
 COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
 COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3

-
2. Check that the leading edge margin of the image (L2) is within 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.



-
3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST

-
4. Perform printing again from the cassette 3, and check that the leading edge margin (L2) of the image is within 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm.
-
5. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.
-
6. Exit from the service mode.

• Left Edge/Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side)

NOTE:

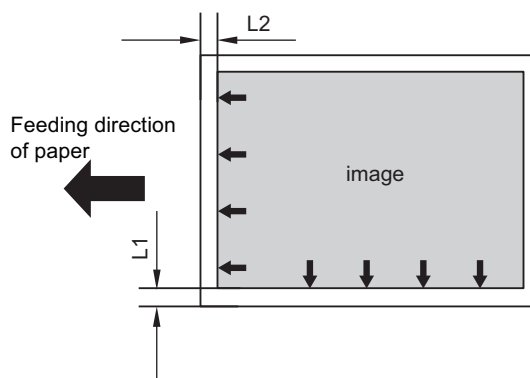
By executing the margin adjustment for the Cassette 3, the adjustment is applied to all source of paper.

-
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Cassette 3.
- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
 COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1
 COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3



2. Check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) are within the range indicated below. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2 : 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

<left edge margin>

NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-REFE

<left edge margin>

NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP1



4. Perform printing again from the cassette 3, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2 : 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



5. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.



6. Exit from the service mode.

• Left Edge/Leading Edge Margin Adjustment of Multi-purpose Pickup Tray

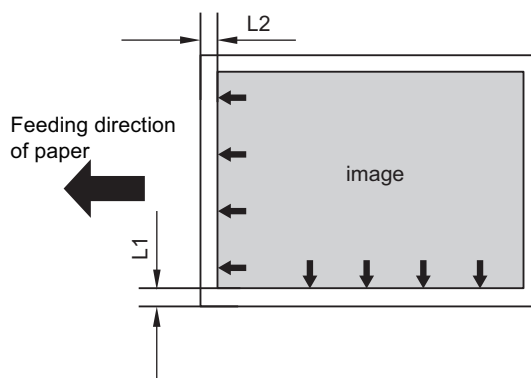


1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Multi-purpose Pickup Tray.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 5

-
2. Check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) are within the range indicated below. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.
- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
 - leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



-
3. Adjust the image position in service mode.
<left edge margin>

NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-20 to 20 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-MF

<leading edge margin>

NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > RG-MF

-
4. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.

-
5. Exit from the service mode.

-
6. Perform printing again from the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.
- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
 - leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm

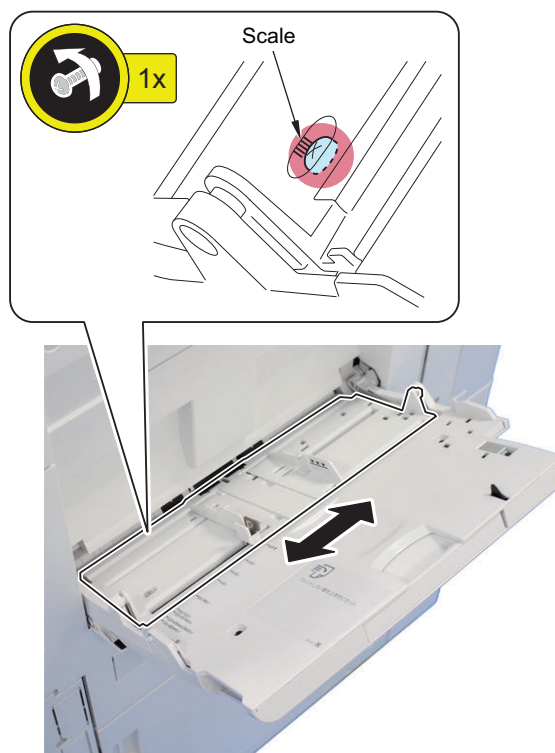
NOTE:

In the case of left edge margin: If the adjustment cannot be made with the setting value of -20 to 20 (adjustment amount: -2.0 to 2.0mm), execute step 7 and later steps.

-
7. Open the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray.

**8. Loosen the screw and adjust the position of the Slide Guide by referring to the scale.**

- In the case of larger margin at the rear side, move the Slide Guide to the front side.
- In the case of larger margin at the front side, move the Slide Guide to the rear side.

**9. Tighten the screw loosened in step 8.****10. Perform printing again from the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.**

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm

NOTE:

When a mechanical adjustment was made, be sure to execute the service mode again.

■ Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF)

● Checking the Skew

Check the image at ADF stream reading with using the "Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment". If any adjustments have been made, perform all of the following "Adjustment Procedure". If it is confirmed that there is no problem, proceed to "Network Connectivity Check".

1. Adjustment of the White Plate
2. Height Adjustment
3. Light intensity adjustment
4. Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)
5. White Level Adjustment
6. Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

NOTE:

Even if the above adjustment is performed, if a fixed skew or image shift occurs, the image is manually adjusted according to the state of the printed image

- Adjustment of leading edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.1mm
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2 (back side)
- Adjustment of the left edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.1mm
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L2 (back side)
- Angle correction of the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.01 degree
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT2 (back side)
- Parallelogram correction amount for corrected image Amount of Change per:0.01 degree
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR2 (back side)

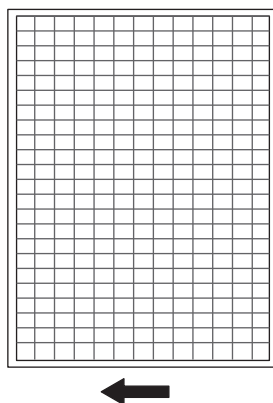
Refer to the following Service Manual

- Adjustment > Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF) > Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals)

Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment

CAUTION:

Create the test charts for image position adjustment after completing adjustments on the printer side.

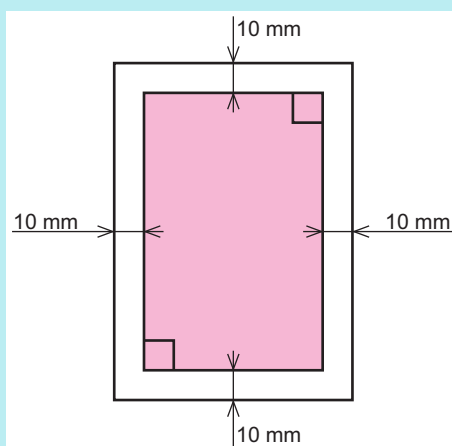


1. After setting the service modes as follows, press the Start key to output the test chart.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 6
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = To set the Pickup Cassette for test print output.

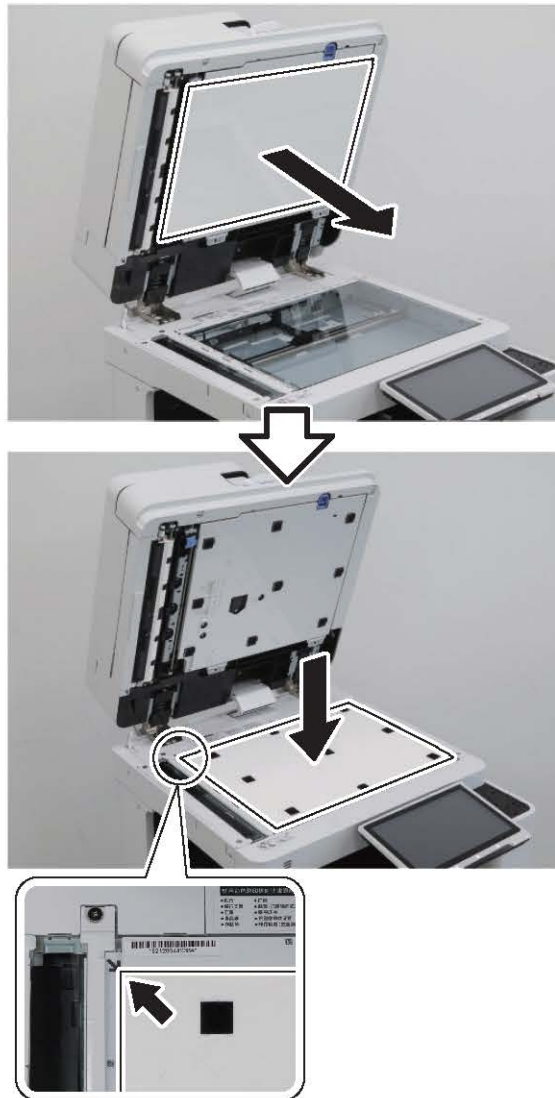
NOTE:

- If the specified test chart cannot be output, draw a test chart on A3 or LDR paper with a rectangle whose four corners are 10 mm smaller than the paper.
- To draw characters and marks so that you can see the direction of the copied image.

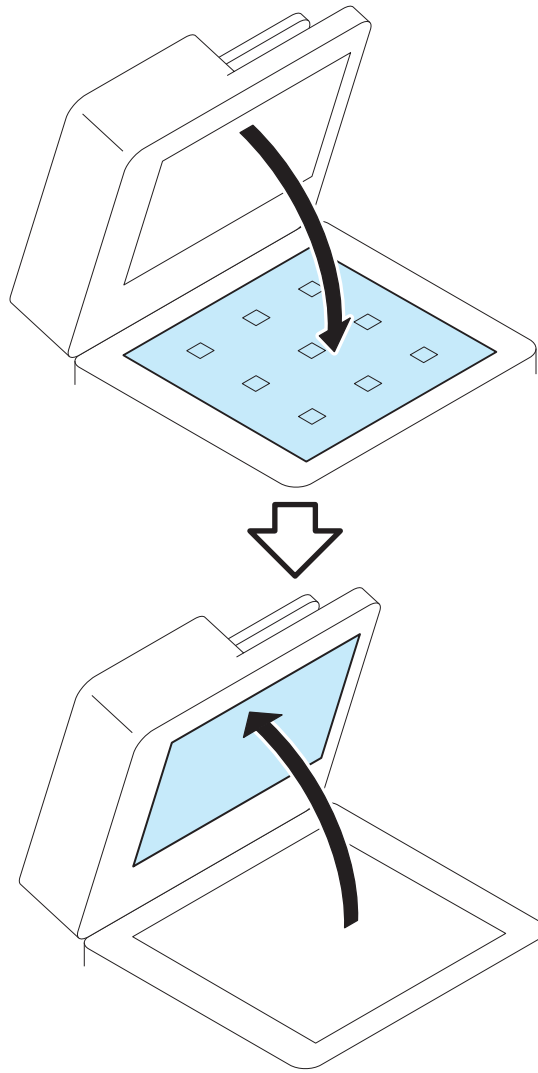


Adjustment of the White Plate

□
1.



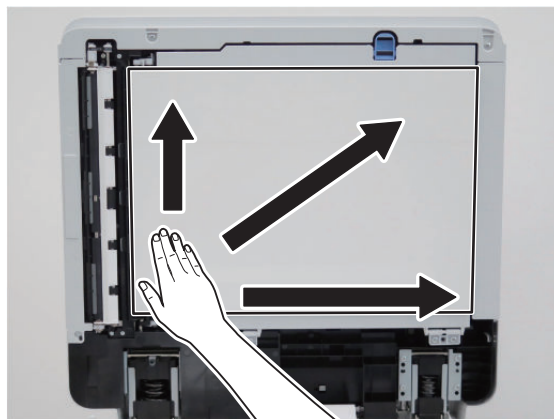
□
2.



□
3.

CAUTION:

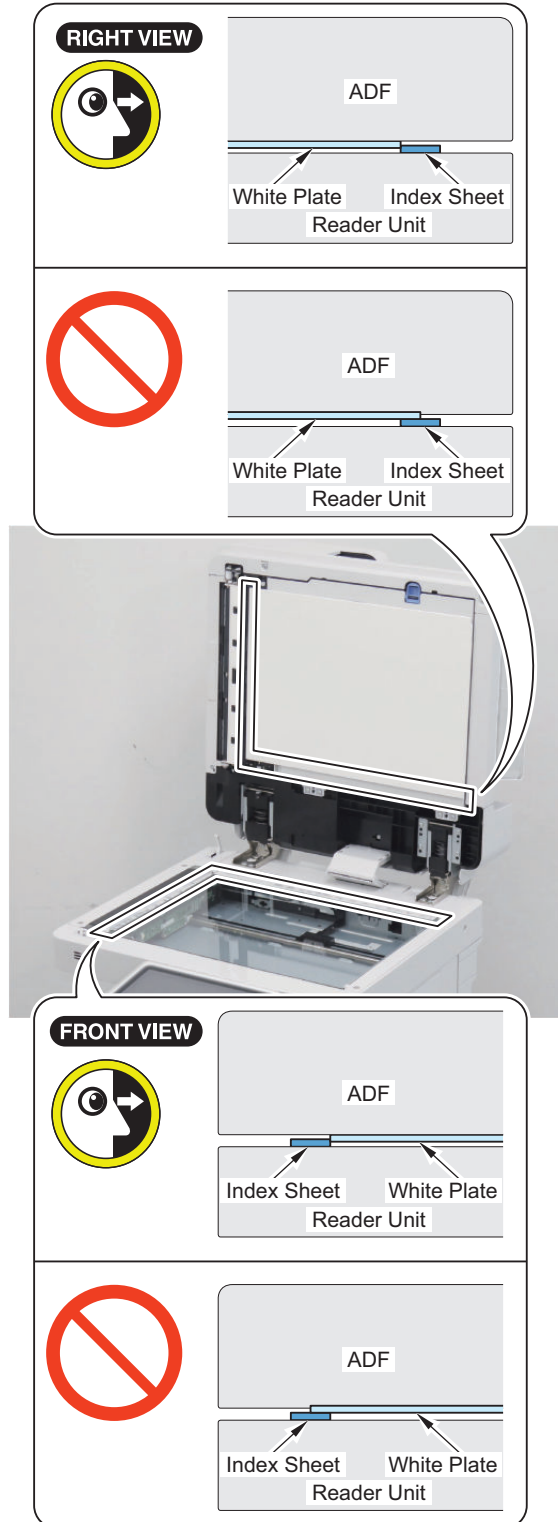
If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



□
4.

NOTE:


- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.



Checking the Height

Height Check Sheet Preparation or Creation

1. Prepare the check sheet used for height adjustment.

 Height check sheet

NOTE:

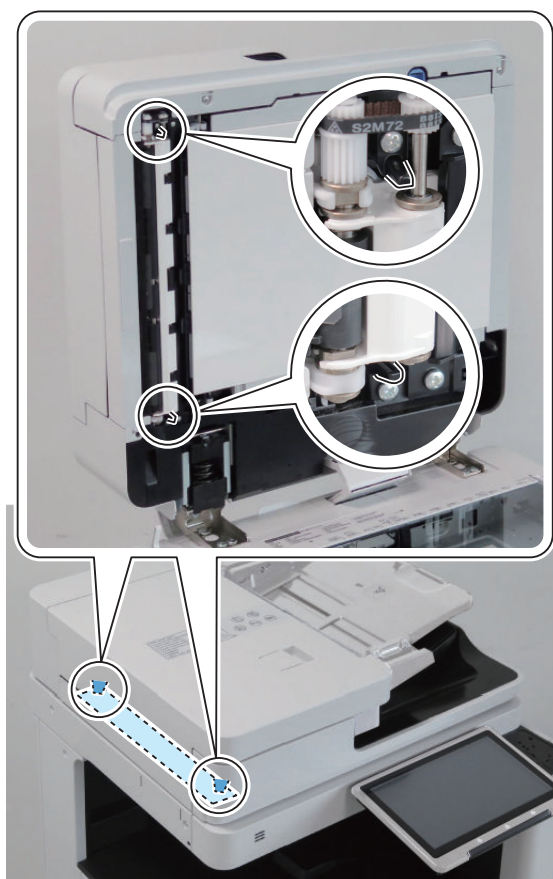
Points to Note when Creating the Check Sheet

- Output with A4 (paper size) or LTR (paper size).
- Use plain paper 1 to 3 (64 to 105 g/m²) (Paper Type).

Height Adjustment

Checking the Height

-
1. Check that the 2 Height Adjustment Bosses at the left front side and the left rear side are in contact with the Stream Reading Glass.



2. If they are not in contact, perform the height adjustment.
If it cannot be visually checked, perform "Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss".

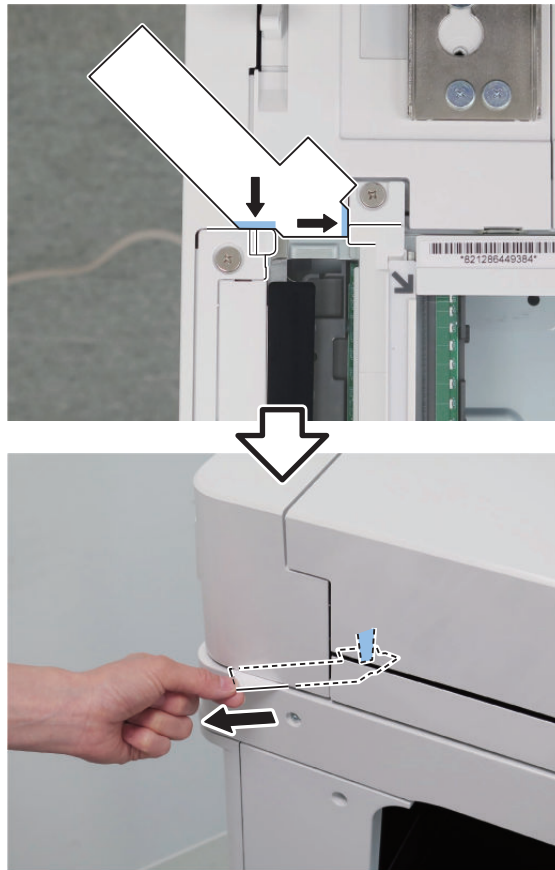
Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss

- 1. Put a sheet of paper on the place where the protrusions touch the Stream Reading Glass, and check whether there is any resistance of the paper when closing the ADF.

<The Left Front Side>



<The Left Rear Side>



2. If there is no resistance, perform the height adjustment.

Height Adjustment Procedure

-
- Adjust by turning the Fixation Screw on the upper side of Hinge.
 - If both front and rear side (or only front side) are not installed properly: Turn the Right Hinge Fixation Screw clockwise (black arrow) to correctly locate it at the front.



- If the rear side is not installed properly: Turn the Left Hinge Fixation Screw counterclockwise (white arrow).



- Open th ADF fully and close the ADF and then, Check the height again and see if it is at an appropriate height.

Light intensity adjustment

NOTE:

- This mode automatically performs adjustment.
- If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, check that PCB and each connector are properly connected.

□

- Execute the following service mode with the ADF closed.
COPIER >FUNCTION >CCD > LMPADJ

Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)

NOTE:

- If the DADF is opened during adjustment, restart the adjustment.
- Enter the value after adjustment on the Service Label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or Printer Front Cover). The adjustment result is reflected to COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS.



1. Execute the following service mode.

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

NOTE:

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

White Level Adjustment



1. Place a sheet of blank A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and close the ADF.

CAUTION:

When executing the white level adjustment using paper with smaller width, adjustment may not be executed properly.

2. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

3. Remove the blank paper from the Copyboard Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.

4. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

5. Place the blank paper on the Copyboard Glass again and close the ADF.

6. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3

7. Remove the blank paper from the Copy Board Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.

8. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4

Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

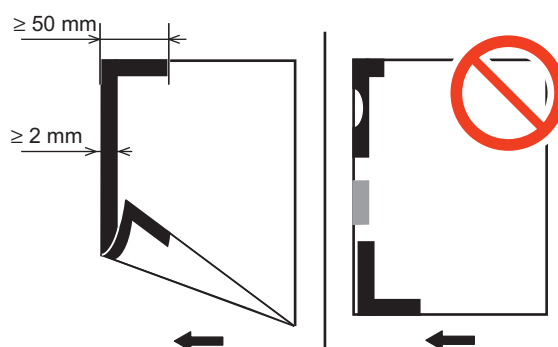
Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

NOTE:

If the chart in the following state is used, skew detection may not be possible and correction may not be possible.

- The painted part is not long enough.
- The painted part is chipped.
- The color is light.
- The edges are not painted.
- Broken/torn/chipped.
- Translucent, thin paper manuscript is used.
- The area painted black is not dry enough.

1. Use a chart of a service parts of a Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment, or using A4 or LTR paper, the leading edge and the side edge of the front/back side in the feeding direction are painted black with magic, and a chart for Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is prepared.



2. Set the value of the service mode to "0" below.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 = 0

NOTE:

- The ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 is an item for manually fine-adjusting the skew in the case that a deviation remains in the position of the back image to which the skew is automatically corrected after the Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment.
- "0" is the value at the time of shipment from the factory. By resetting to the initial state, there is no unintended deviation due to manual correction with respect to the back surface image in which skew correction is automatically performed, so that a constant accuracy is guaranteed.

3. Set the document tray so that the black-painted portion becomes the leading edge in the feeding direction.

4. Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is performed in the following service mode.

- FEEDER > FUNCTION > ADJ-SKW

NOTE:

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

5. Write the adjusted values below on the service label.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT

■ Checking the Network Connection

● Overview

If the user's network environment is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check that the network setting is properly performed.

● Checking the Network Connection

CAUTION:

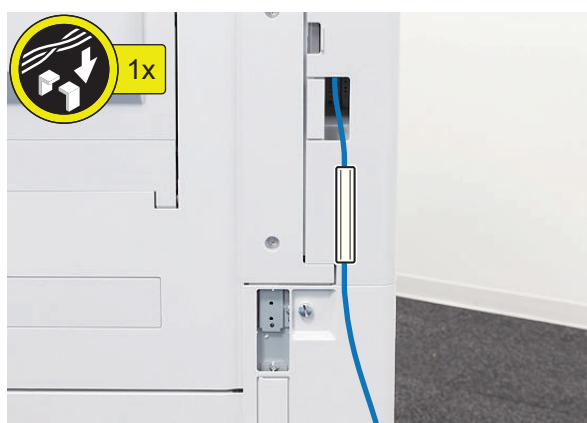
Be sure to use the network cable with Category 5e or higher. In addition, a sealed type (STP cable) is recommended. Using the non-shield type can affect the peripheral electrical equipment through the network cable.

1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Connect the network cable to the Host Machine and turn ON the main power switch.
3. Remove the cover of the Cord Guide.

4. Remove the release paper, and affix the Cord Guide to the area indicated in the figure.



5. Put the network cable through the Cord Guide, and install the cover of the Cord Guide.



6. Inform the system administrator at the installation site that installation of the Host Machine is complete, and then, ask for the network setting.

NOTE:

Network setting cannot be executed unless logging in as an administrator.
Factory default password is as follows.

- System administration division ID: Administrator
- System administration password: 7654321

CAUTION:

To perform the network setting, the following Additional Functions items must be set "ON".

- [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes]
- [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Use IPv4]

7. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

● **Operation Procedure Using Ping**

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [PING command]
2. Enter the IP address with the numeric keypad on the Control Panel and press "Execute" key. "Response from the host" is displayed if Ping command is succeeded while "no response from the host" is displayed if failed.

● Checking by the Remote Host Address

Using the remote host address to execute Ping can check whether connection to the network is enabled or not.

Remote host address: IP address of PC terminal connected/running on TCP/IP network environment that connects to this equipment.

1. Inform the system administrator about checking of the network connection using Ping.
2. Confirm the remote host address with the system administrator.
3. Enter the remote host address to Ping.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - The network is not properly connected if the message say "No response from the host", therefore, execute the following troubleshooting.

■ Network Troubleshooting

● Checking Connection of the Network Cable

To check whether the network cable is properly connected to the LAN Port.

● Operation Procedure Using Ping

1. Ask the network administrator at the user's site to write down the IP address of the PC that is connected to the network.
2. [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address of the PC with the numeric keypad and press Execute key.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

● Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine

Check if the IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct.

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [IP address setting]; and write down the address in the IP address field.
2. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address.
 - The IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If "No response from the host." is displayed, check if the IP address information set for the system administrator is correct.

NOTE:

When setting the address by manually input, set the Subnet Mask by following the instruction of the administrator.

● Checking Network Function on the Main Controller

Perform checking by the loopback address.

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address, "127.0.0.1" with the numeric keypad and enter Execute key.
 - The network function of the Main Controller is working properly if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", the network function of the Main Controller is faulty.
2. Replace with a Main Controller that works properly, and then check connection.

■ Installing the IC Card Reader

NOTE:

- When installing the IC Card Reader, the IC Card Reader (sales company's option) is required.
- Use the shorter cable of the IC Card Reader.
- When installing the IC Card Reader and Numeric Keypad at the same time, install the Numeric Keypad first.

□

1. If the main power switch of the host machine is ON, turn it OFF.

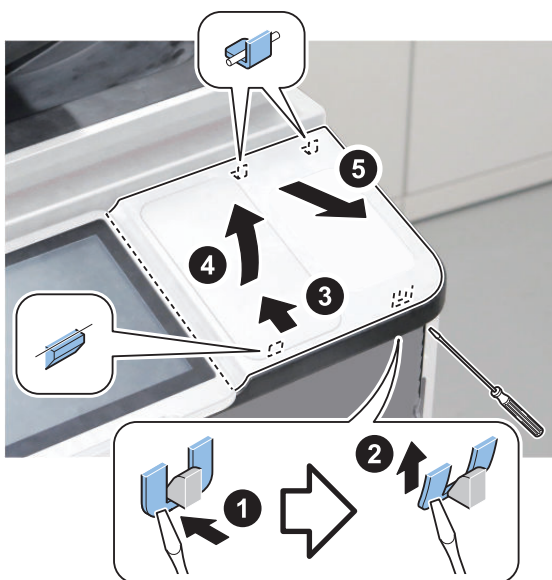
□

2.



□

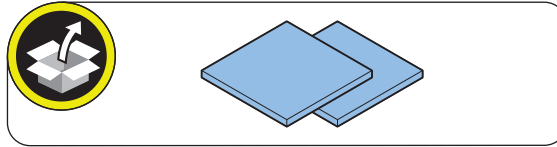
3.



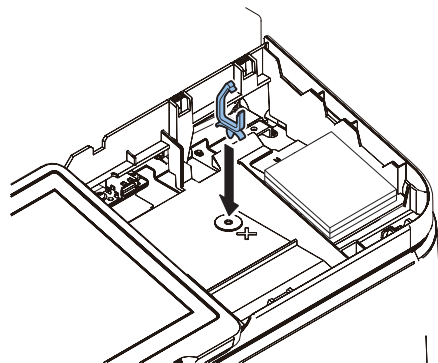
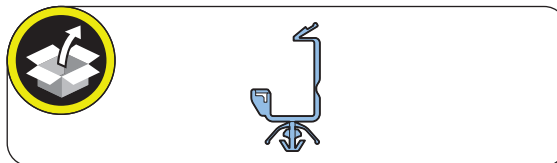
□
4.

NOTE:

Be sure to change the number of cushions according to the thickness of the Card Reader.
If it makes the Control Panel Upper Right Cover difficult to install, using one or no cushions is allowed.



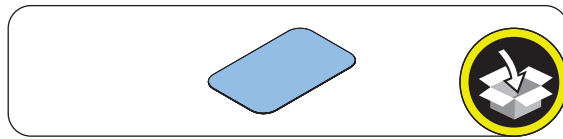
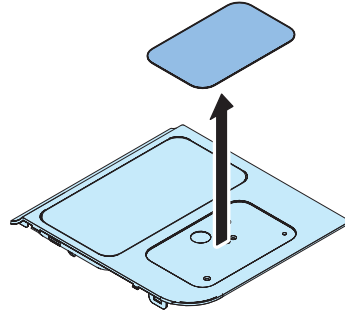
□
5.



□
6.

NOTE:

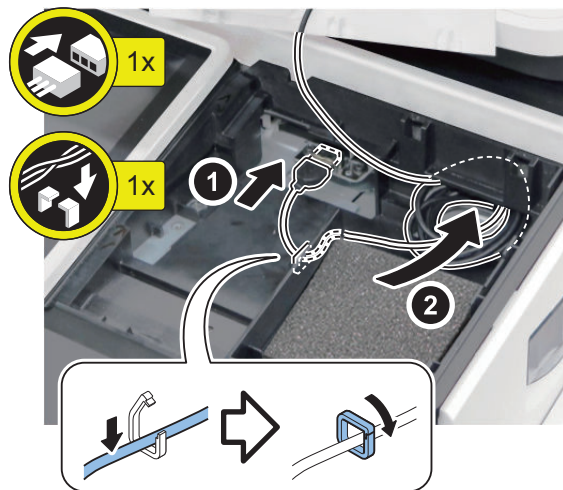
If any paste is remaining on the removed surface, clean with alcohol (to prevent the non-level surface from forming when affixing the Device Port Sheet).



□
7.

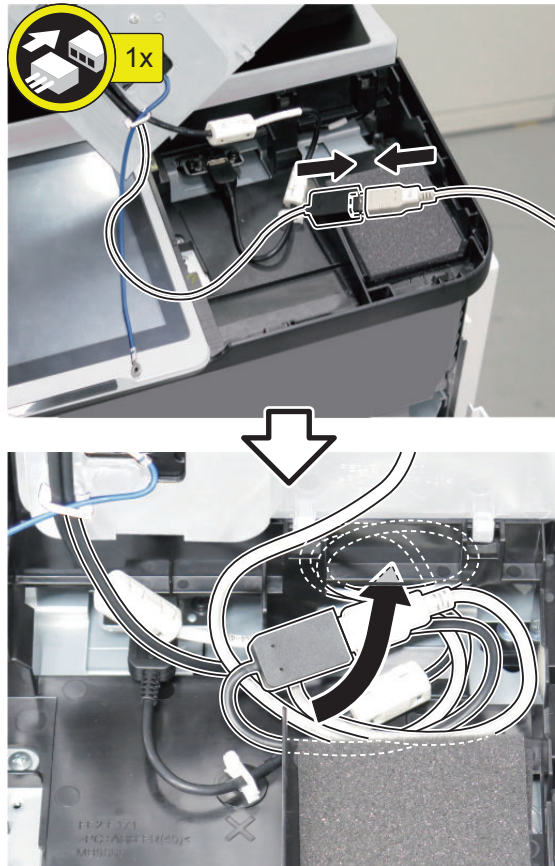
NOTE:

Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



< When installing with the Numeric Keypad at the same time >

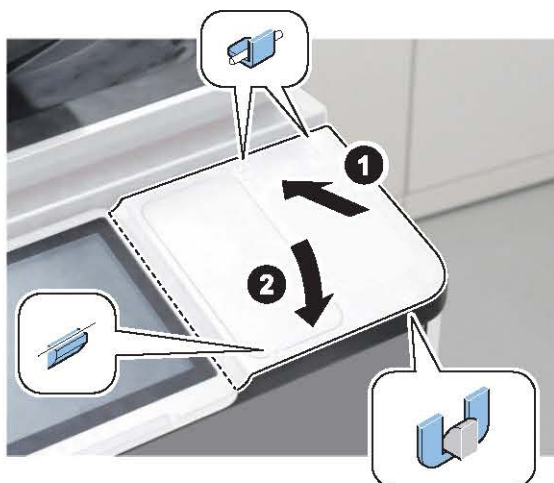
NOTE:
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



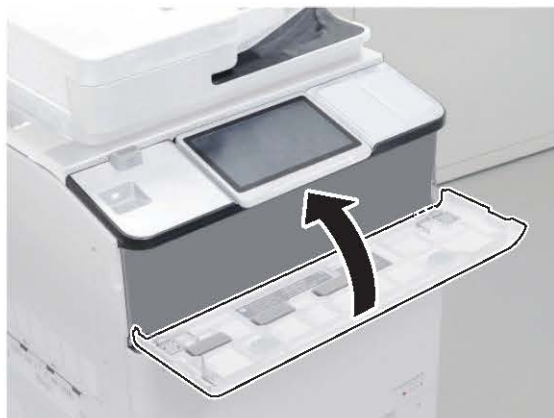
□
8.



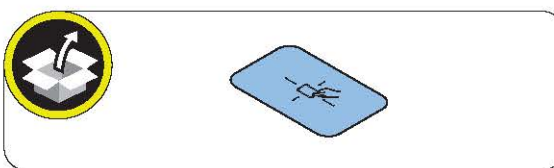
□
9.



□
10.



□
11.





12. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

13. Turn ON the main power switch.

■ Operation when using uniFLOW Online

When using uniFLOW Online*, follow the setup procedures on the uniFLOW* Online First Steps Guide (http://www.nt-ware.com/uFO_FS).

* China version of "uniFLOW" is called "mdsFLOW".



Image Reading System Options

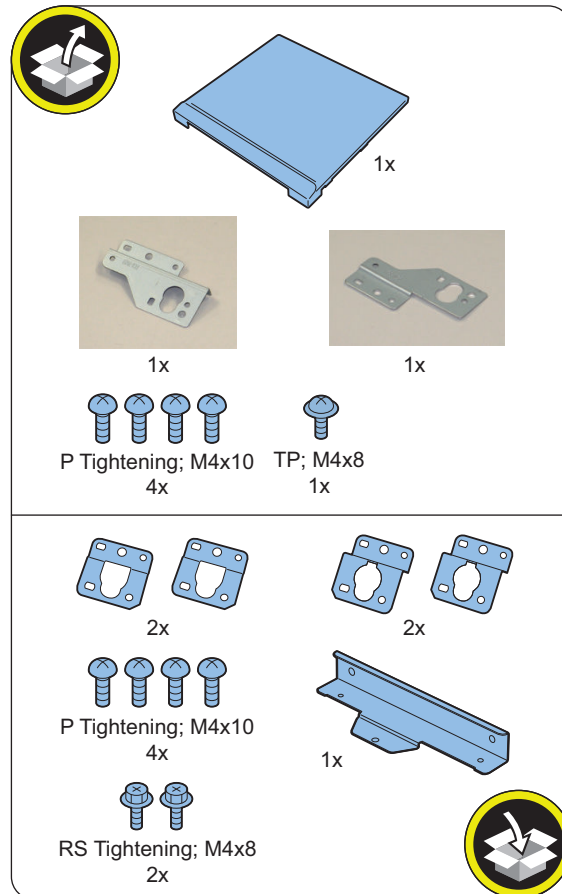
Printer Cover-H2.....	97
Reader Heater-P1.....	117

Printer Cover-H2

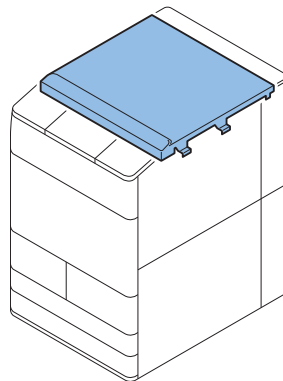
Points to Note before Installation

- After installation of the Printer Cover, be sure to change the setting of the following service mode to "0" before turning OFF the power of the host machine. Otherwise, an error may occur when turning ON the power.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing



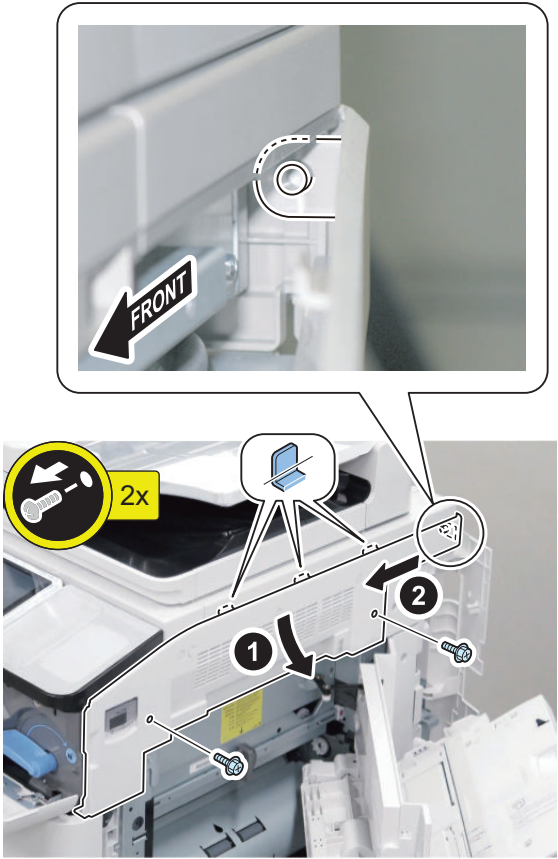
Installation Procedure

■ Removing the Covers

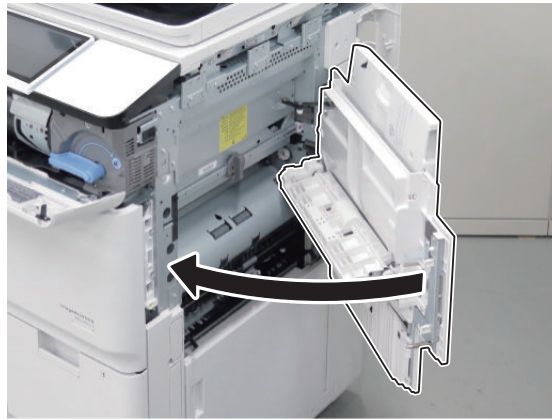
□
1.



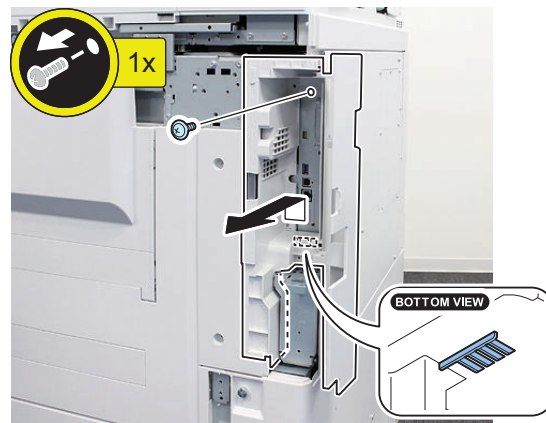
□
2.



□
3.

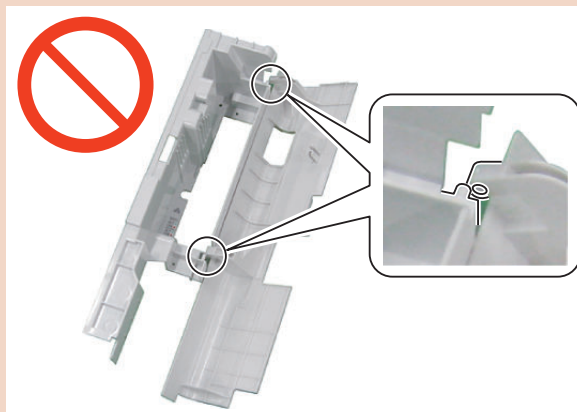


□
4.

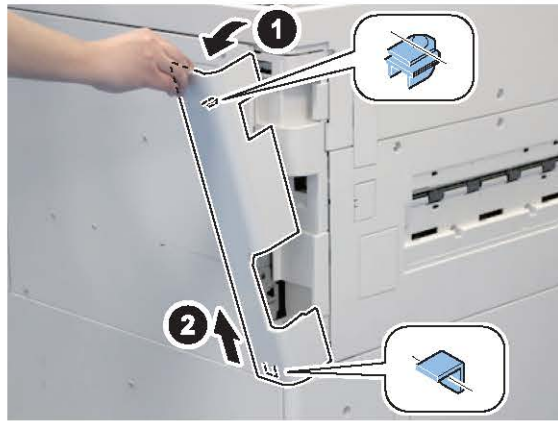


CAUTION:

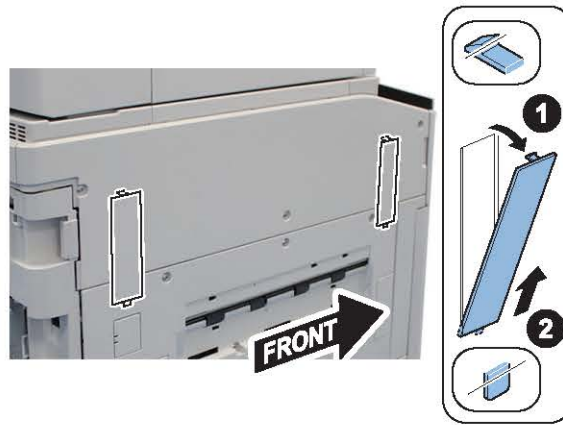
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



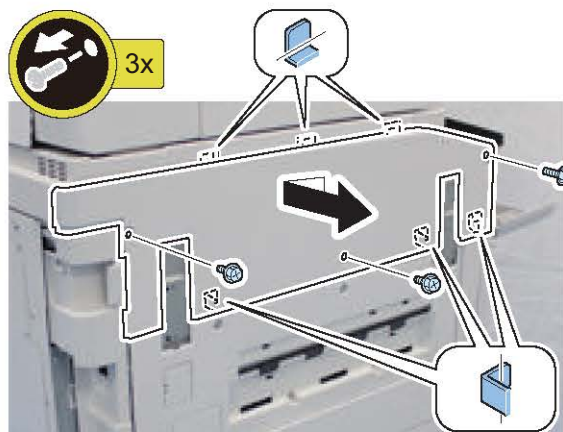
□
5.



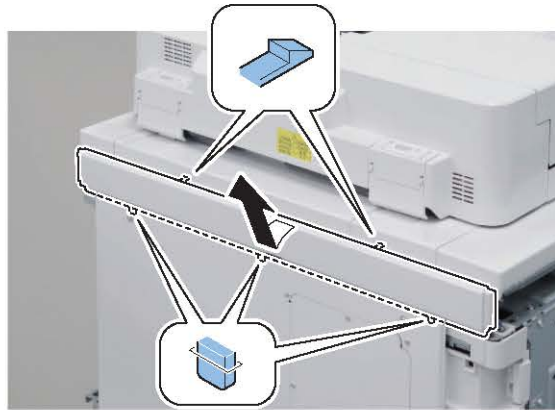
□
6.



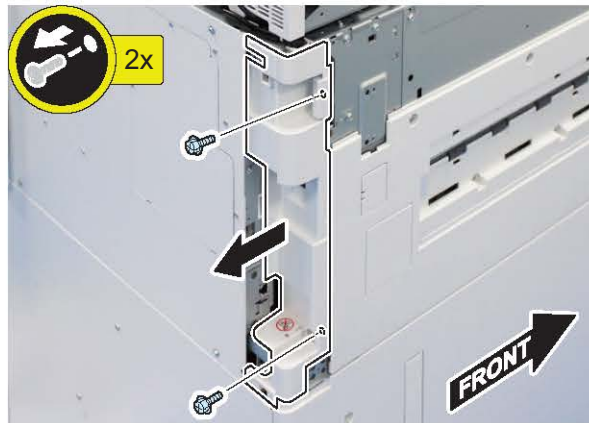
□
7.



□
8.



□
9.



■ Removing the ADF

□
1.

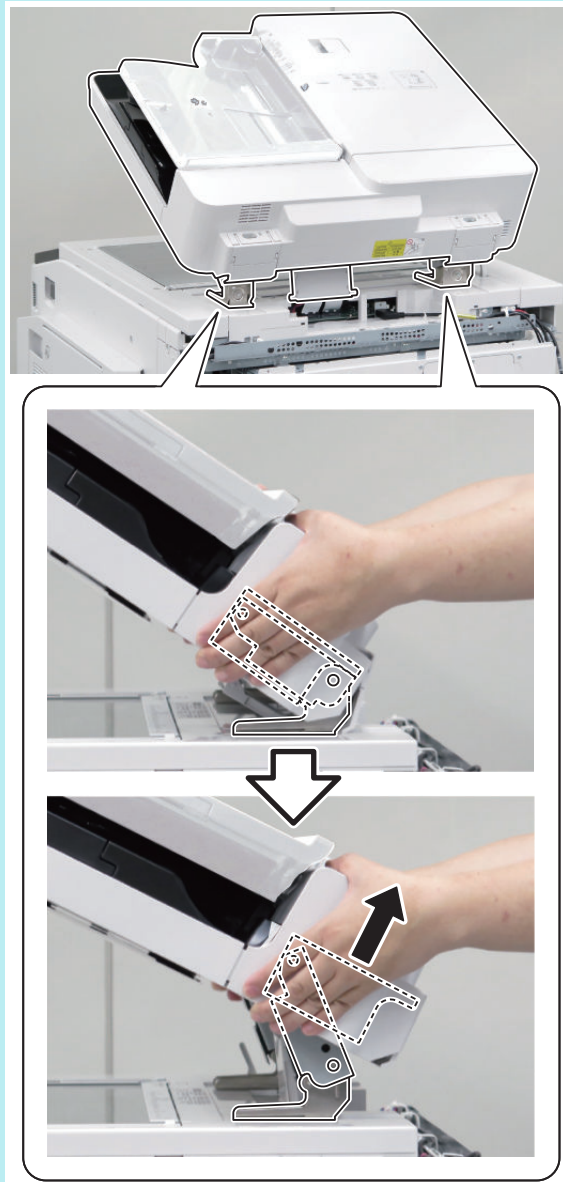


□
2.

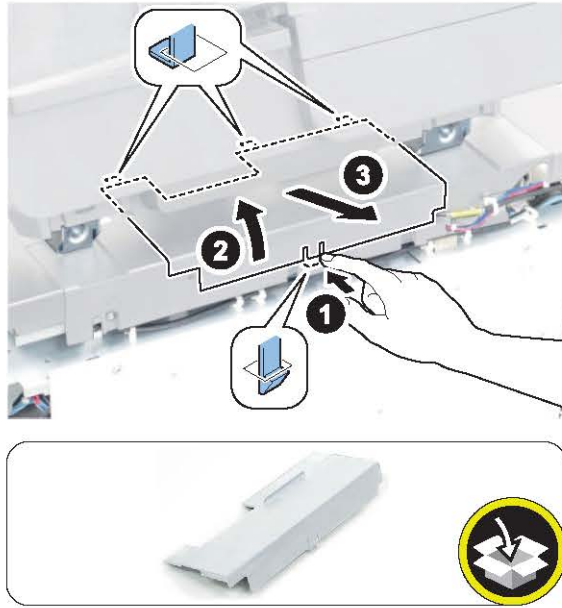


NOTE:

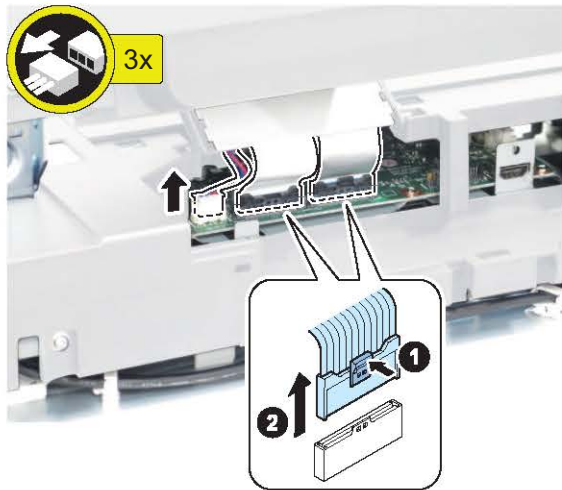
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy.
The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



□
3.



□
4.

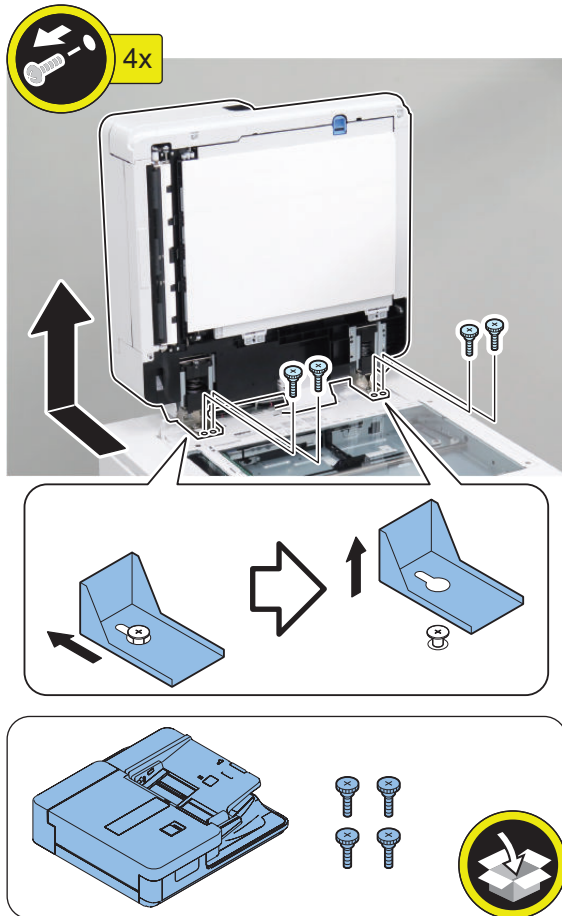


□
5.



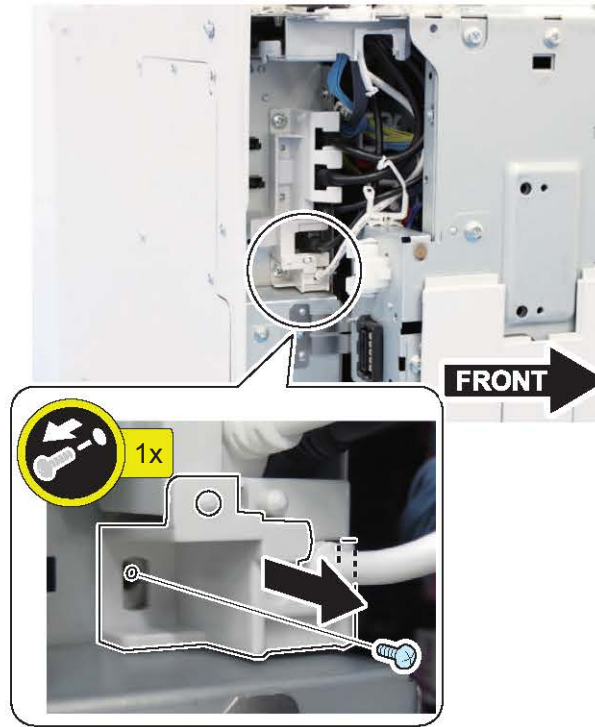
□
6.

⚠ CAUTION:
Be careful not to drop the ADF.

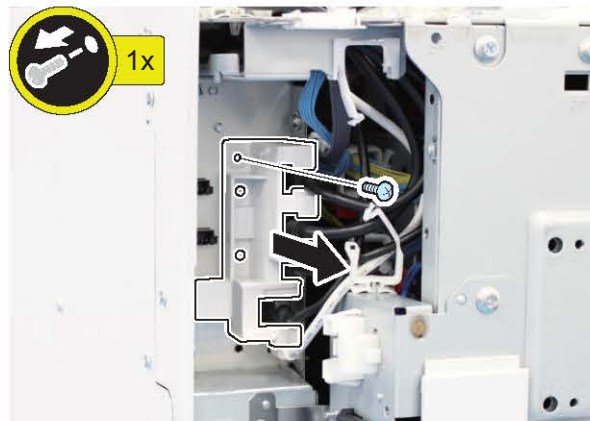


■ Removing the Reader Unit

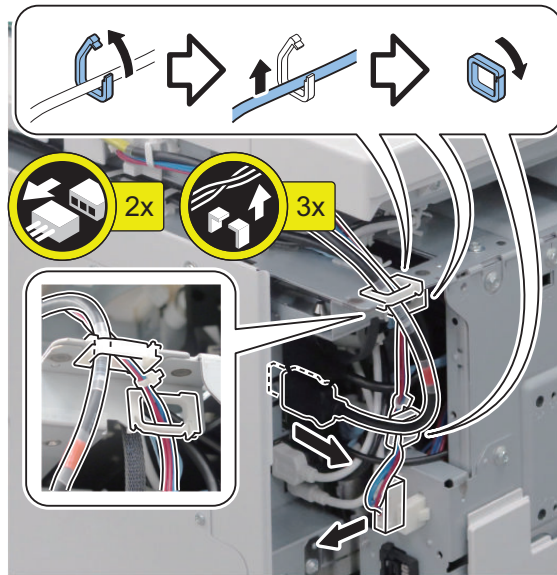
□
1.



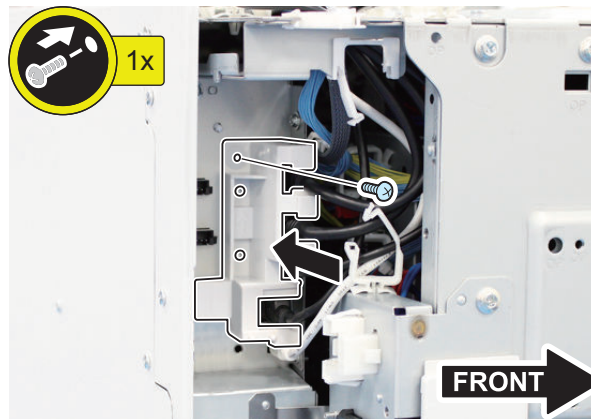
□
2.



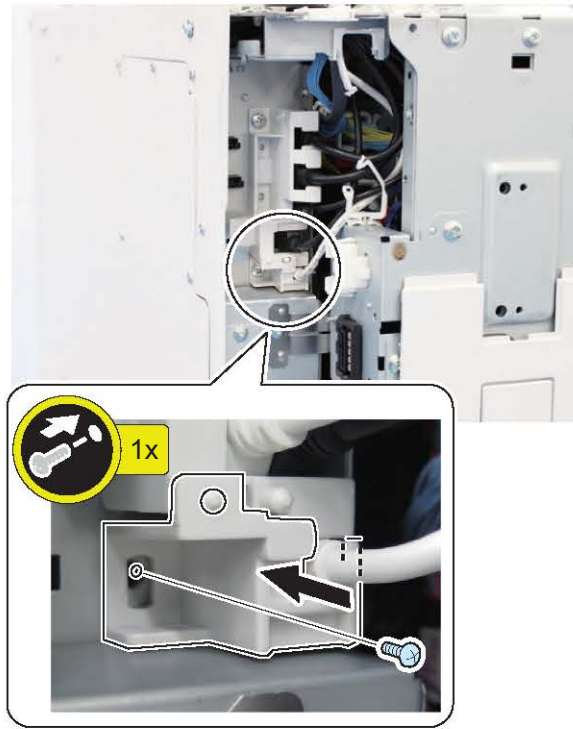
□
3.



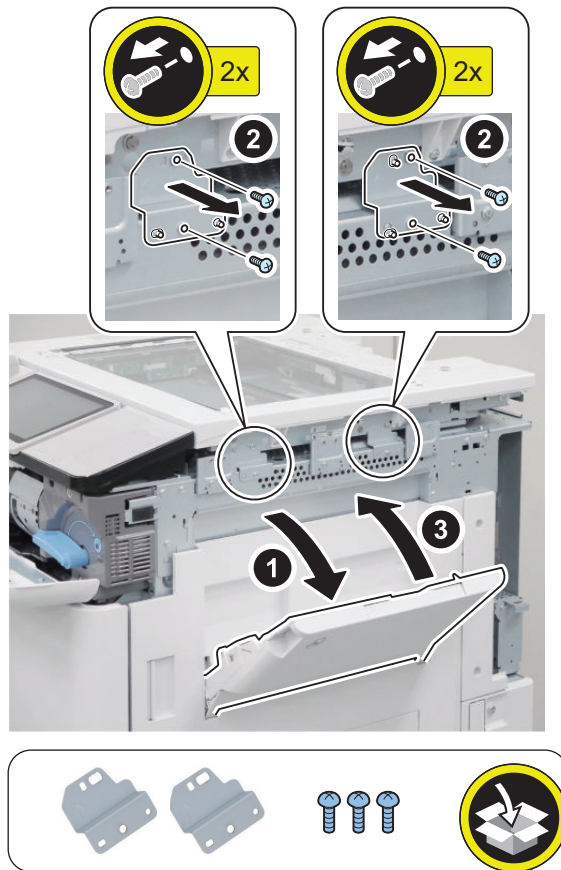
□
4.



□
5.

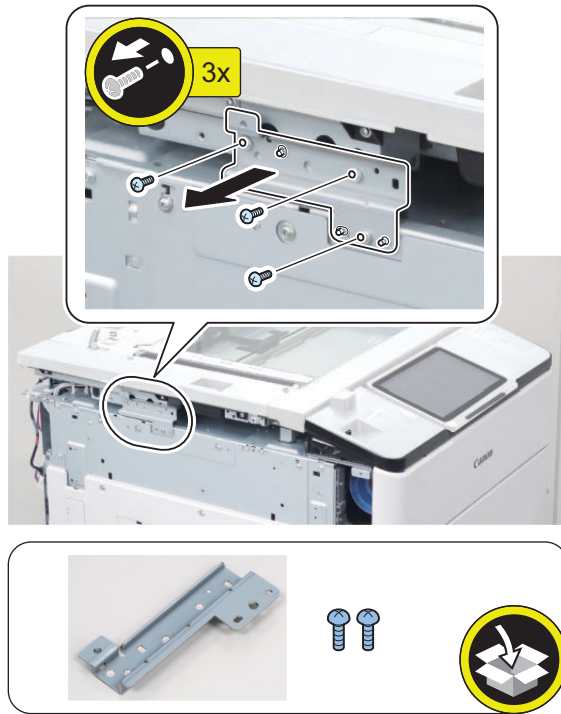


□
6.



NOTE:
Removed screw will be used in step 1 of "Installing the Printer Cover".

□
7.



NOTE:
Removed screw will be used in step 2 of "Installing the Printer Cover".

□
8.

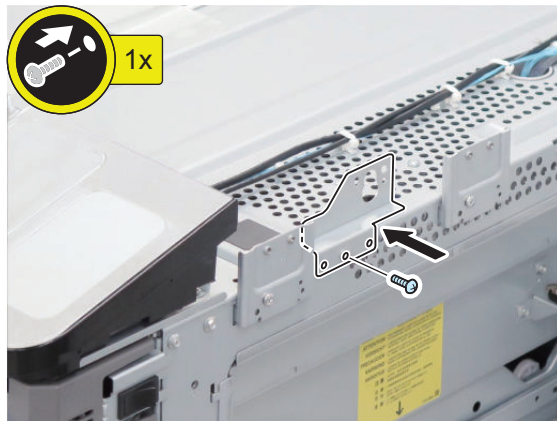


■ Installing the Printer Cover

□
1.

NOTE:

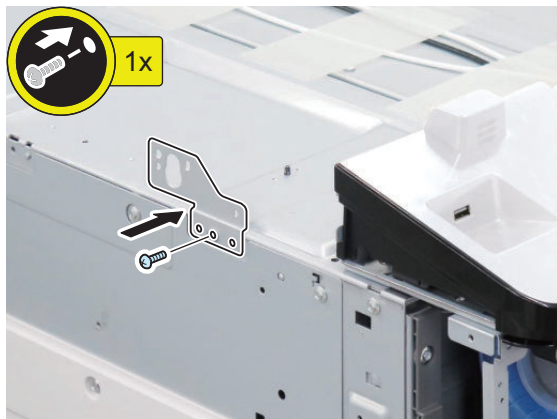
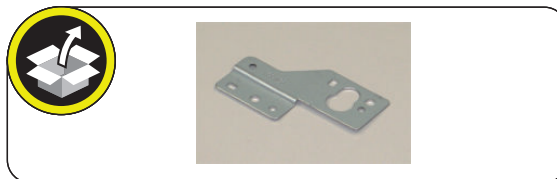
Use screw removed in step 6 of "Removing the Reader Unit".



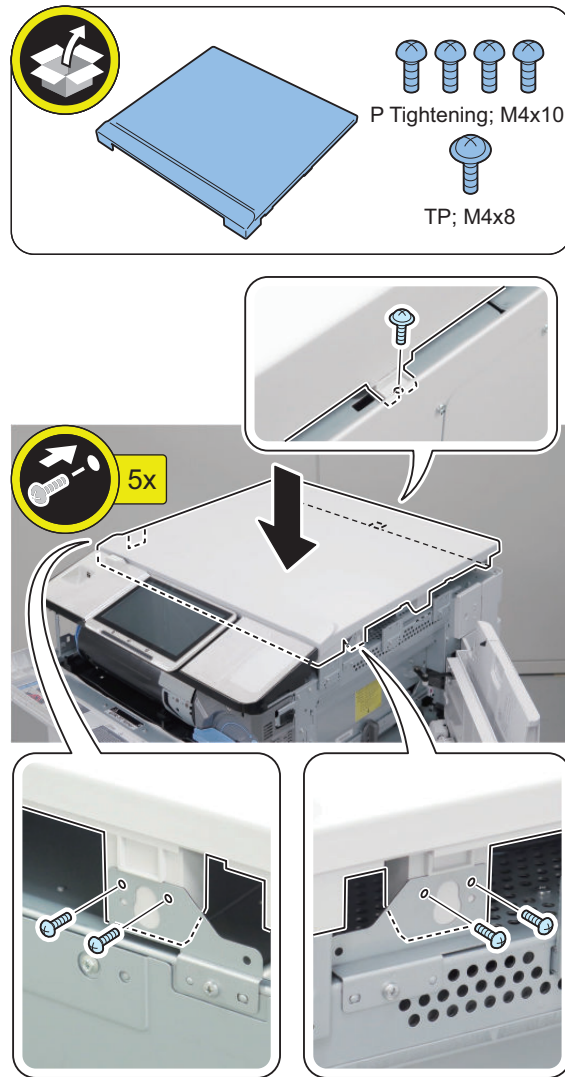
□
2.

NOTE:

Use screw removed in step 7 of "Removing the Reader Unit".

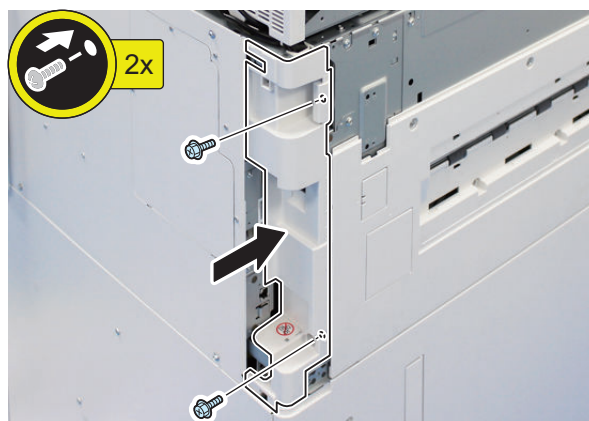


□
3.

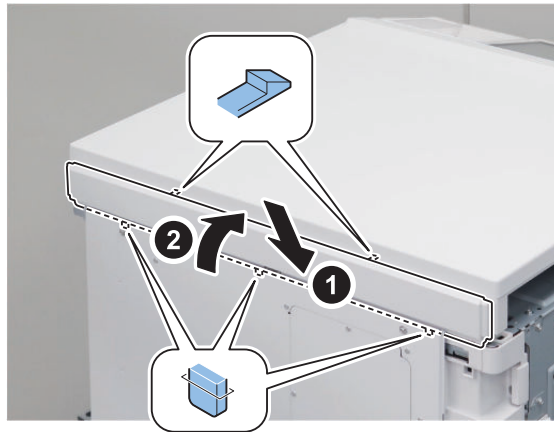


■ **Installing the Covers**

□
1.



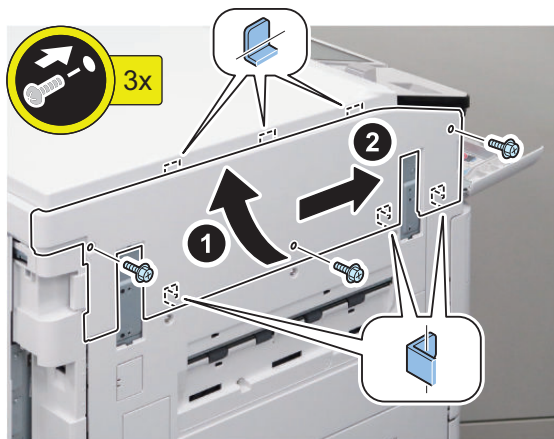
□
2.



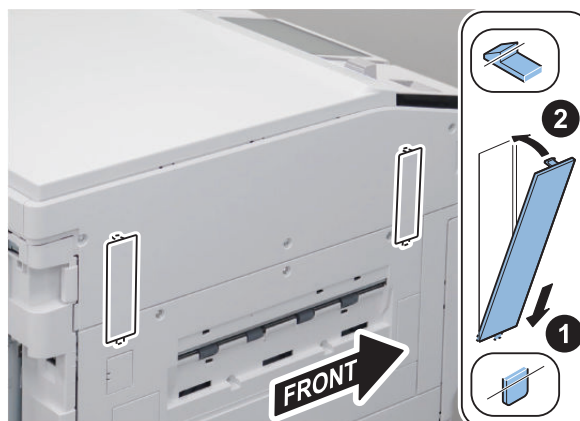
□
3.

CAUTION:

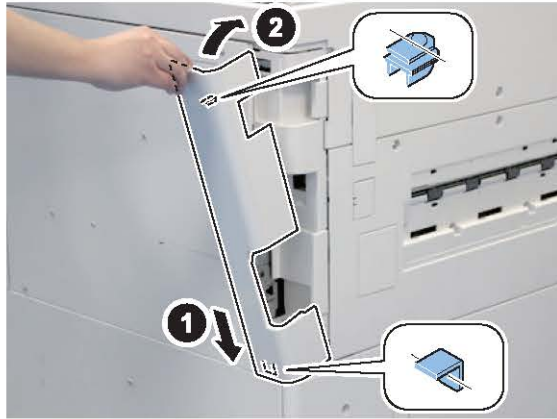
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.



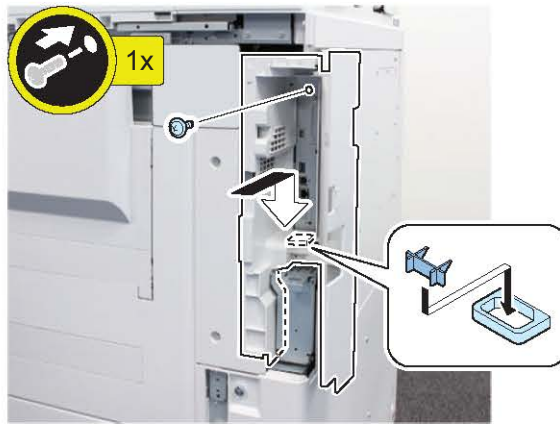
□
4.



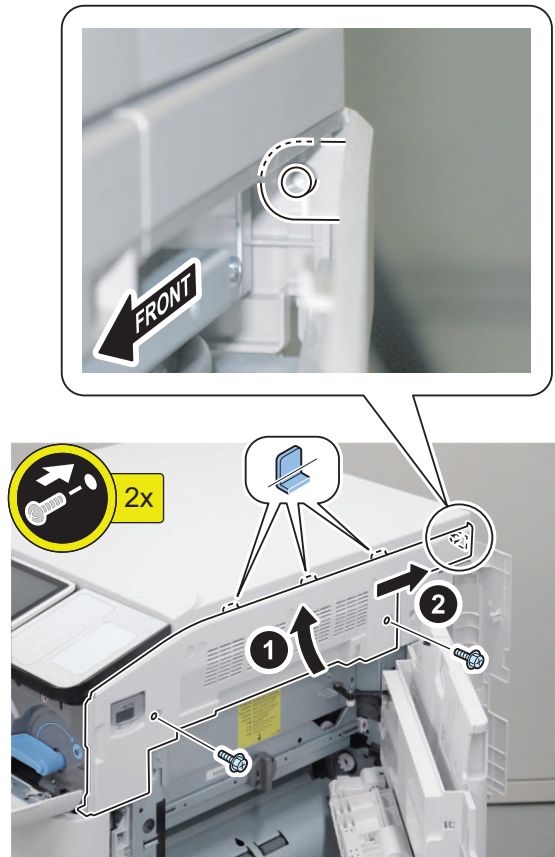
□
5.



□
6.



□
7.



□
8.



● Operation Check

-
1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.

2. Turn ON the main power switch.**CAUTION:**

If "E732-0023" is displayed after turning ON the main power switch, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch, and then perform the following steps.

3. A message is displayed prompting to check that the Reader Unit Cable is connected properly.**4. Select "0" for the following service mode.**

- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR

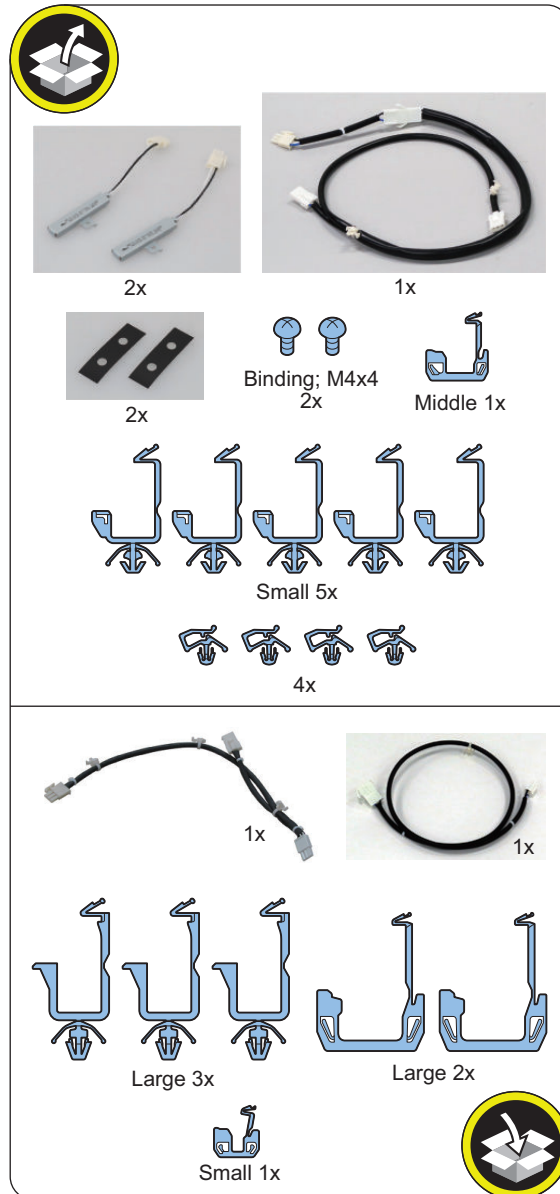
5. Get out from service mode.**6. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.** **Auto Adjust Gradation****1. Set A3, A4, 11x17, or LTR size papers in a cassette.****2. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Adjustment /Maintenance] > [Adjust Image Quality] > [Auto Adjust Gradation], and execute the item.**

Reader Heater-P1

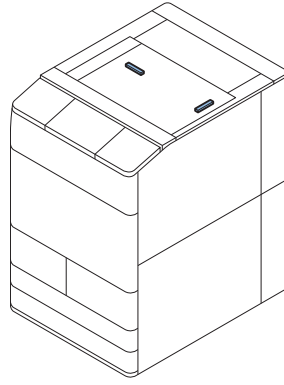
Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Checking the Contents



● Installation Outline Drawing

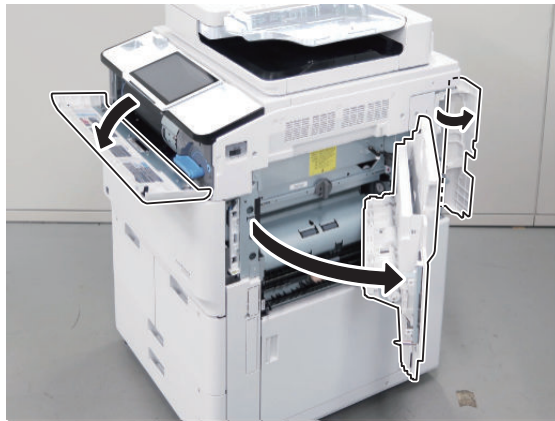


● Installation Procedure

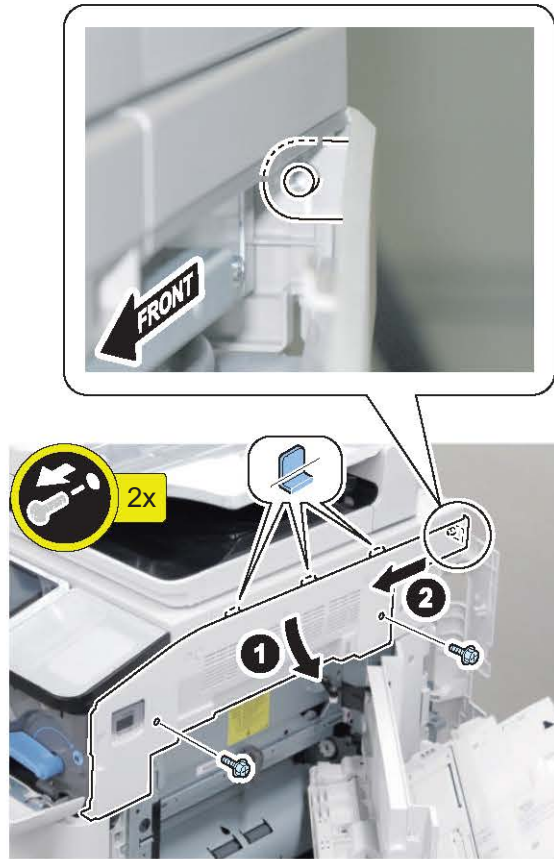
■ Installing the Covers



1.



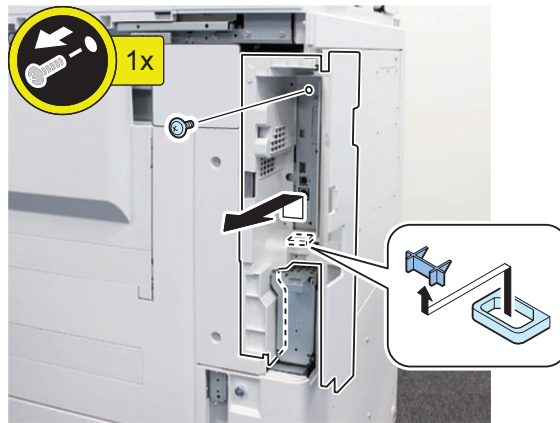
□
2.



□
3.

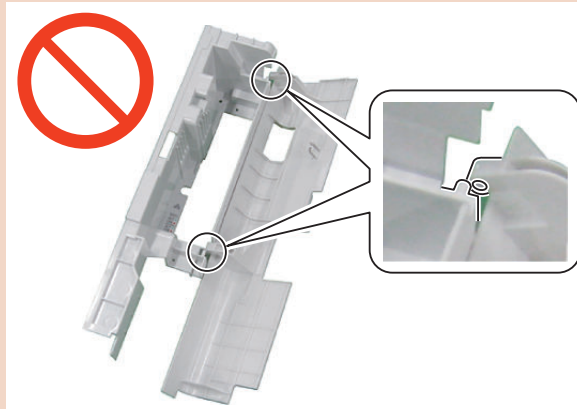


□
4.

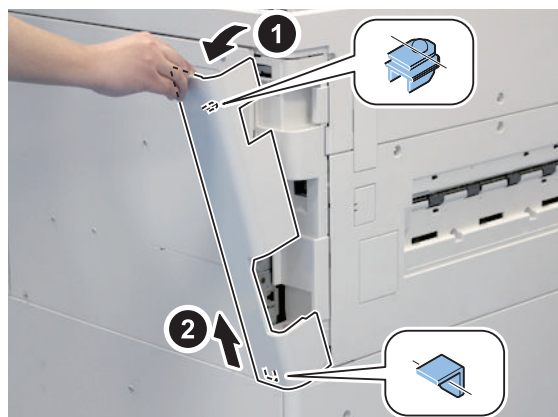


CAUTION:

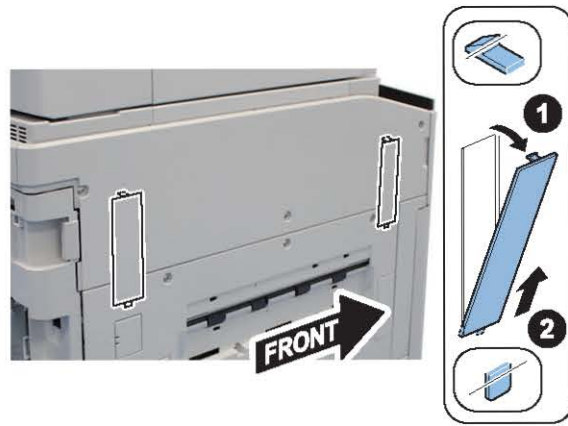
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.



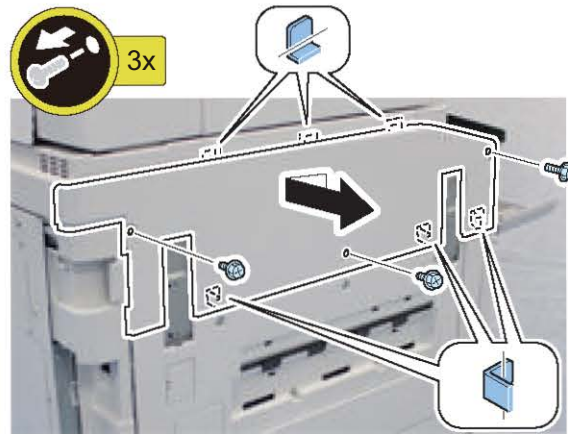
□
5.



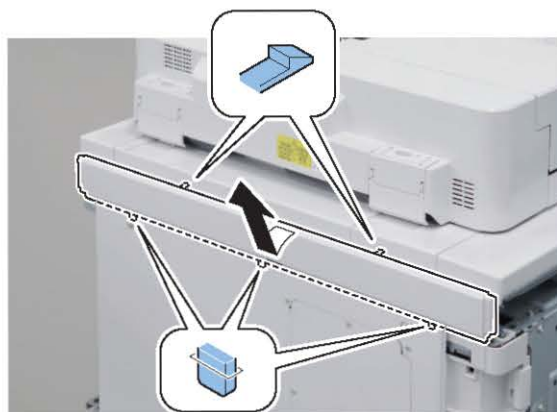
□
6.



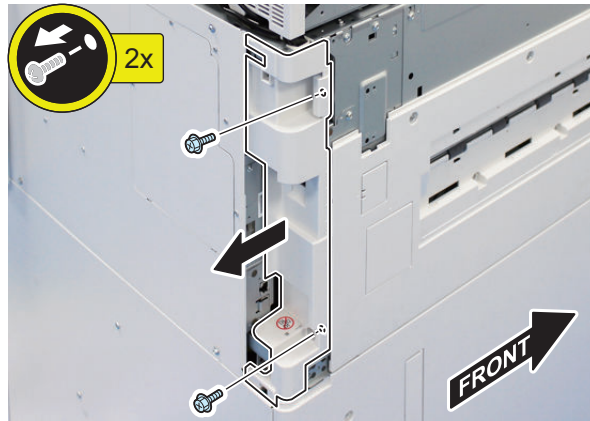
□
7.



□
8.

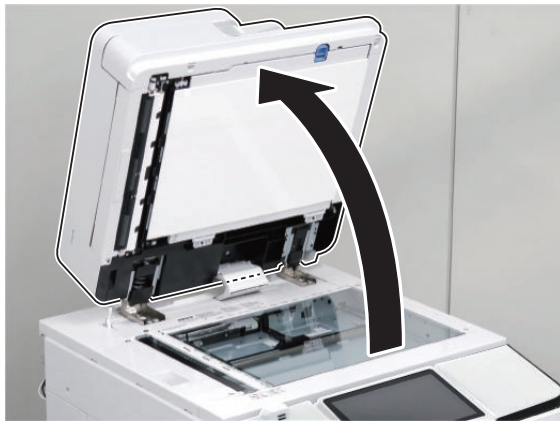


□
9.

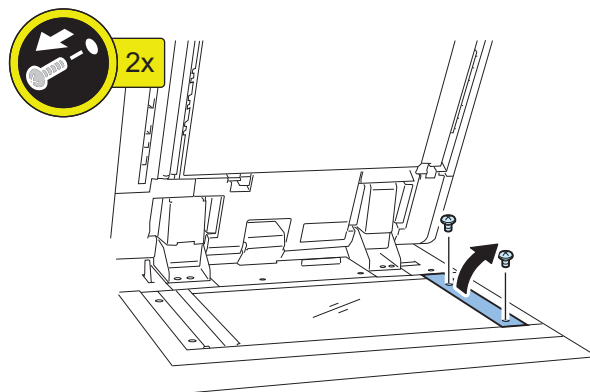


■ **Installing the Reader Heater**

□
1.

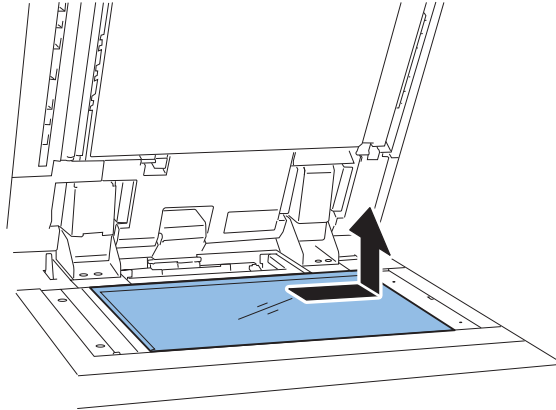
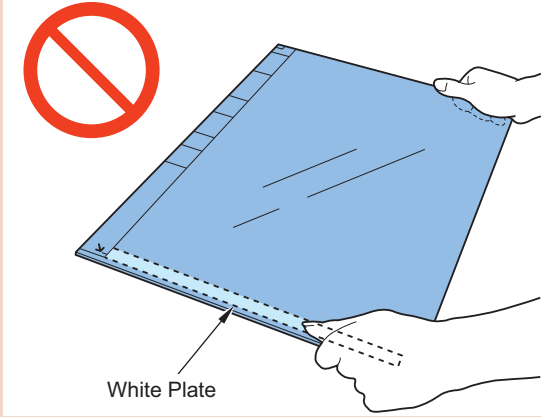


□
2.



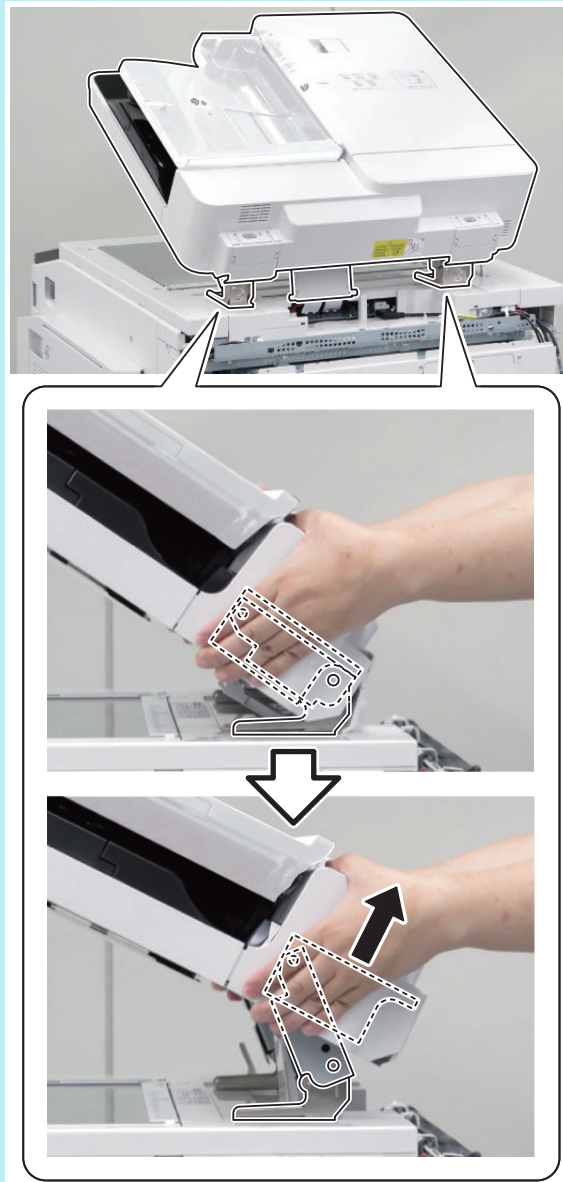
□
3.**CAUTION:**

- Soiling on the glass surface and the White Plate affects reading. When removing or installing the Copyboard Glass, be sure not to touch the glass surface and the White Plate.
- If soiling is attached, clean it with lint-free paper.

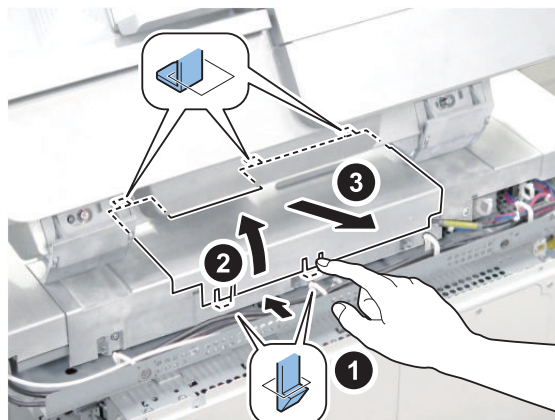


NOTE:

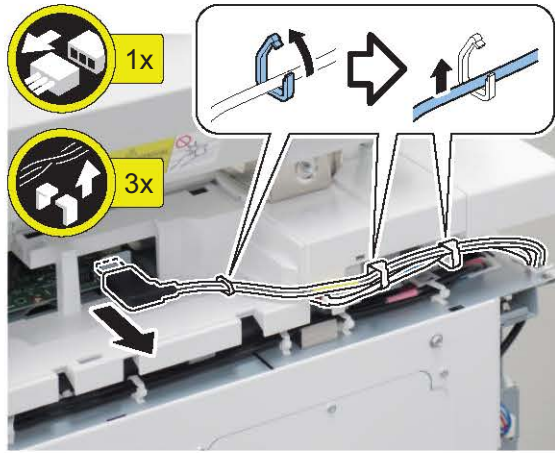
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy.
The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



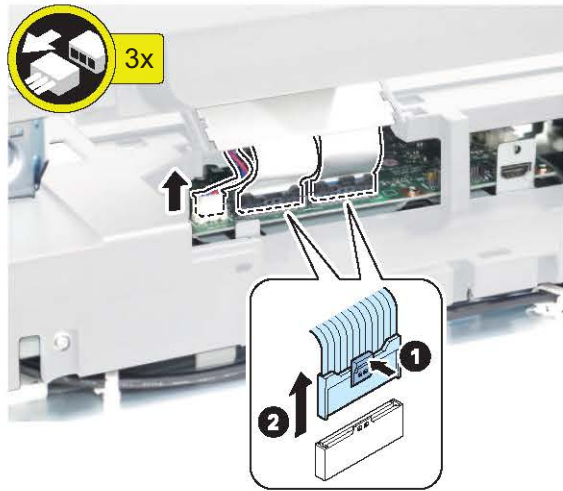
□
4.



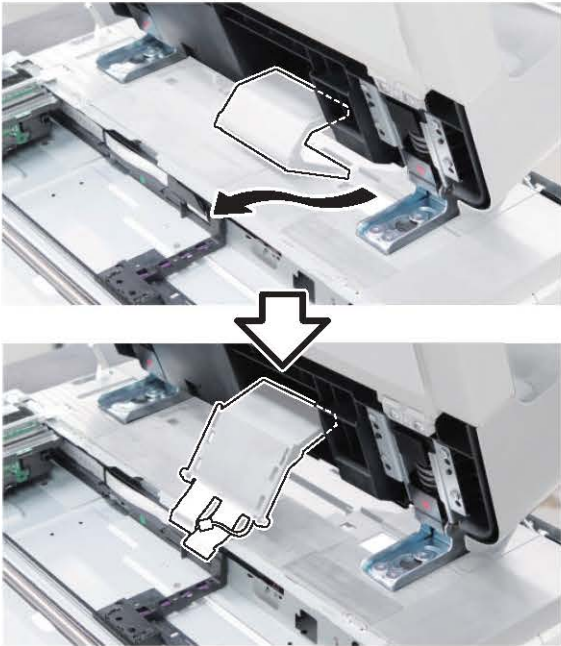
□
5.



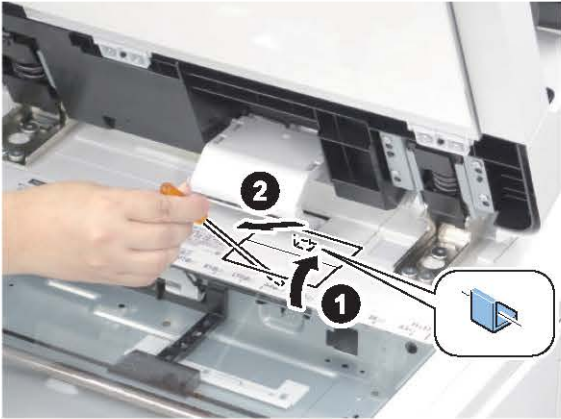
□
6.



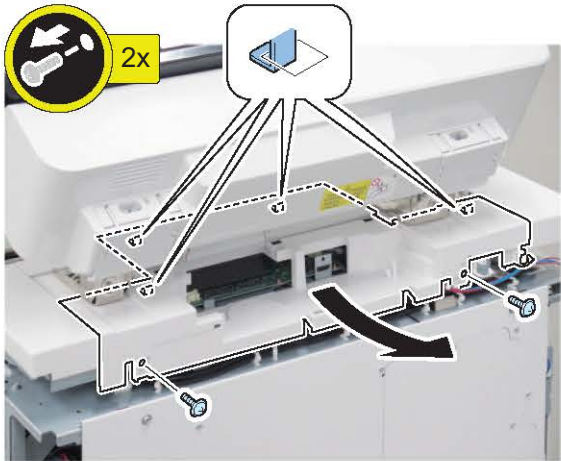
□
7.



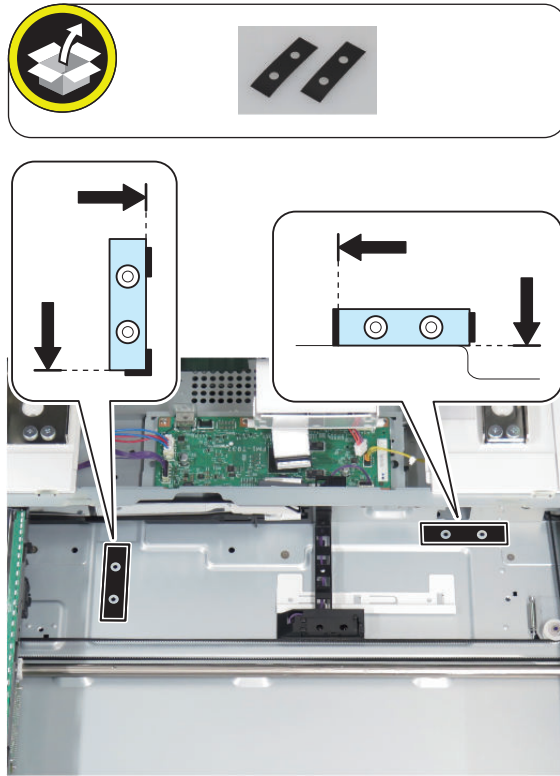
□
8.



□
9.



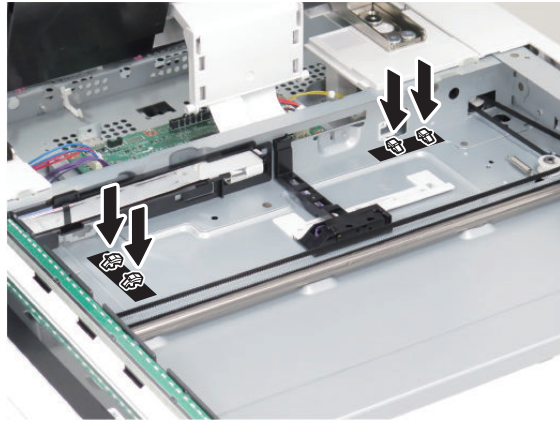
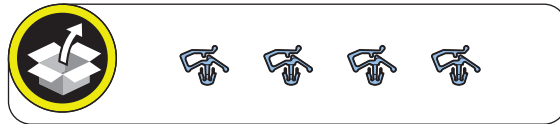
□
10.



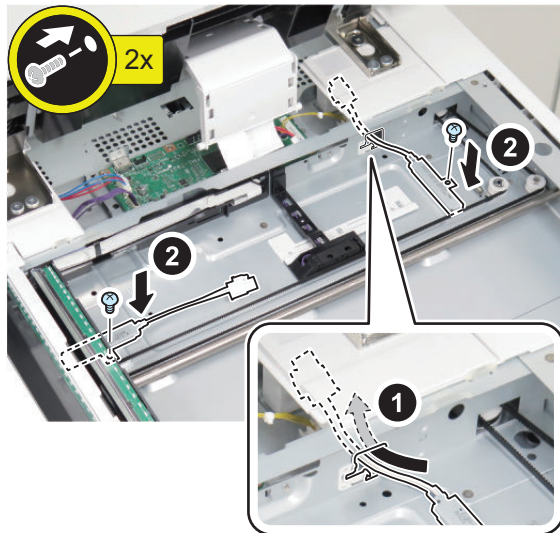
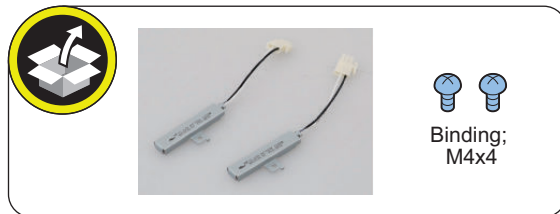
□
11.



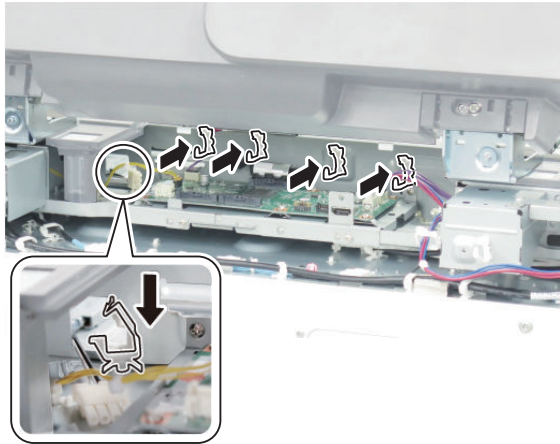
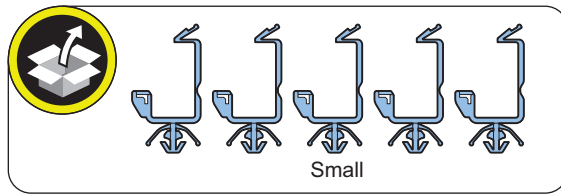
□
12.



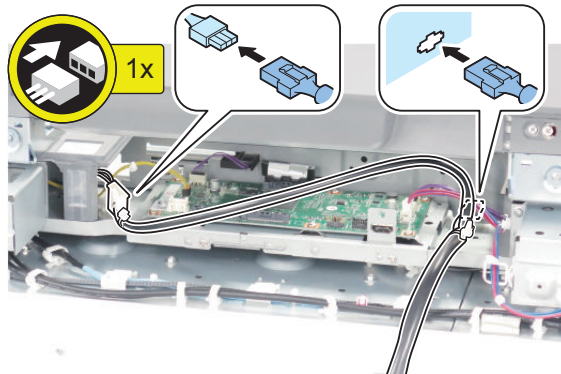
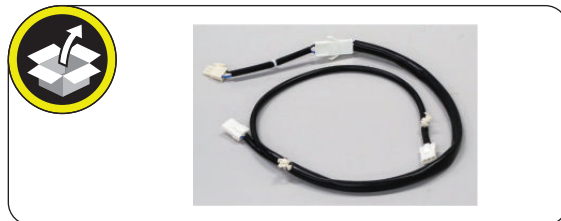
□
13.



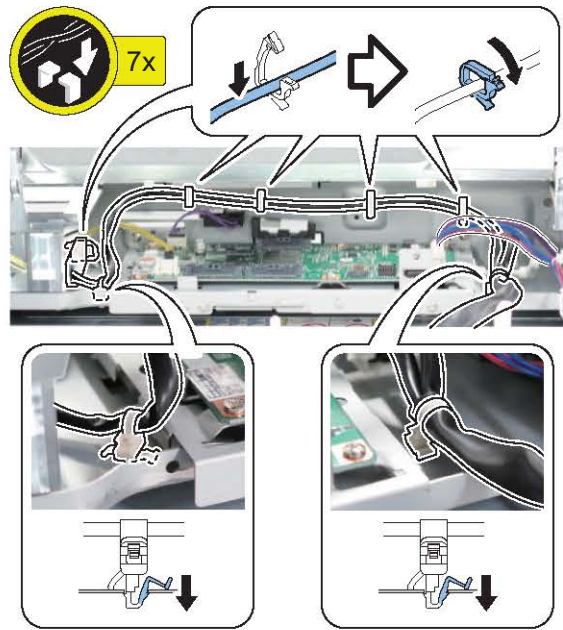
□
14.



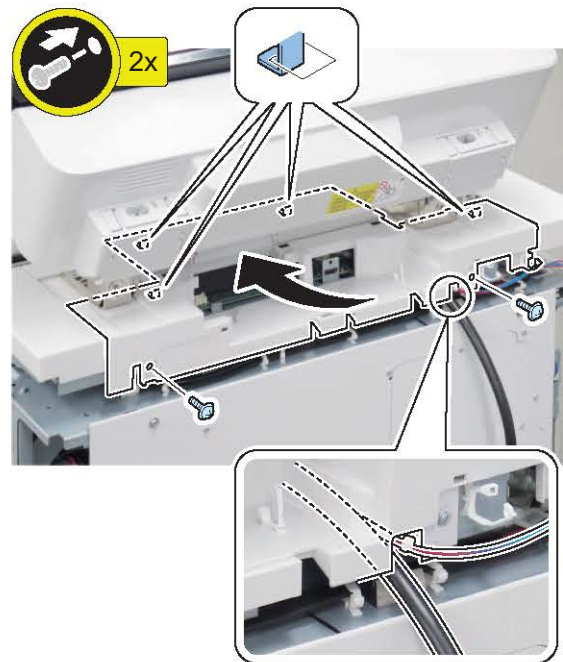
□
15.



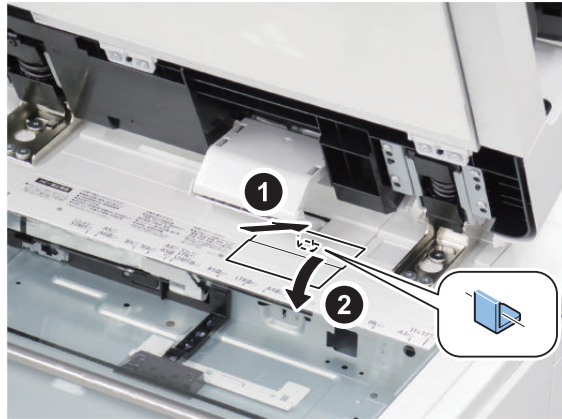
□
16.



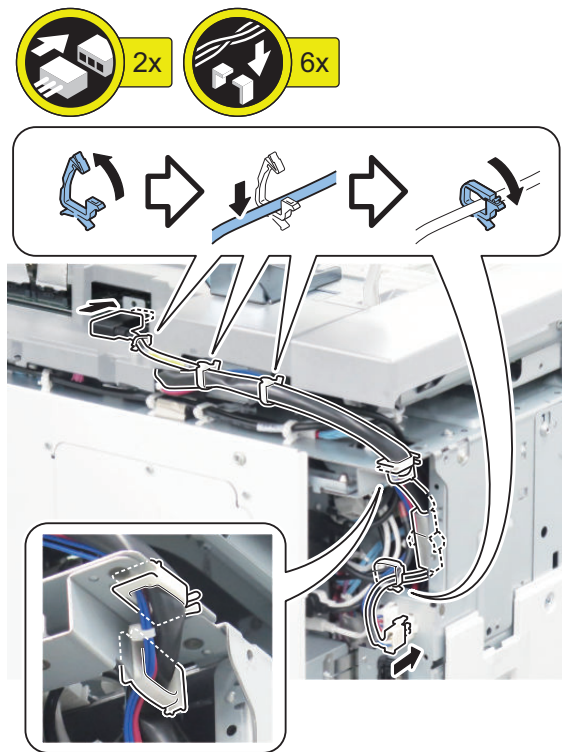
□
17.



□
18.

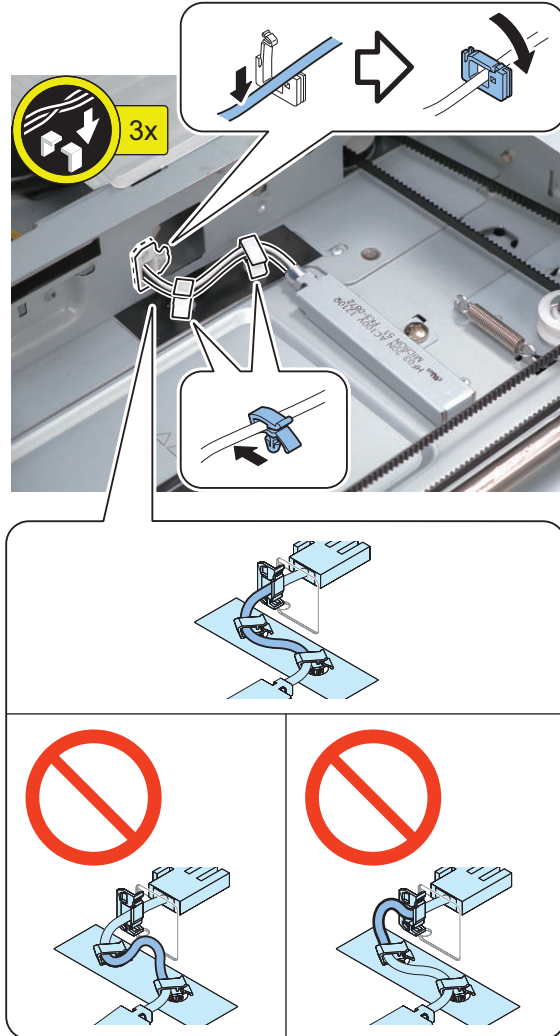


□
19.



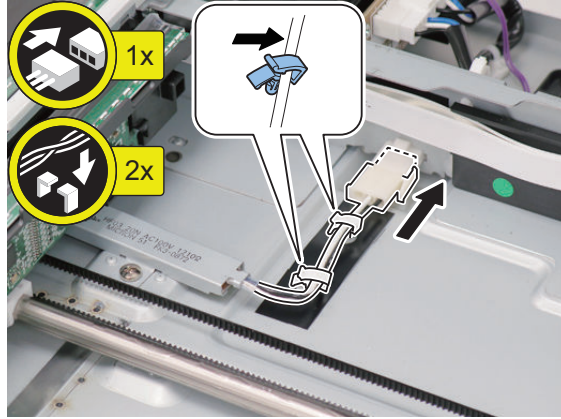
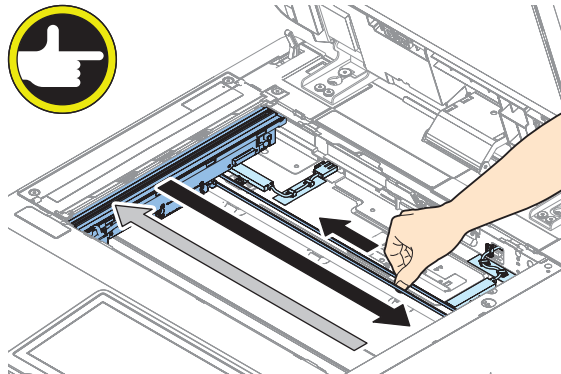
□
20.**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold down the Reader Heater Harness because it may interfere with moving of the Scanner Box if it is not connected properly.



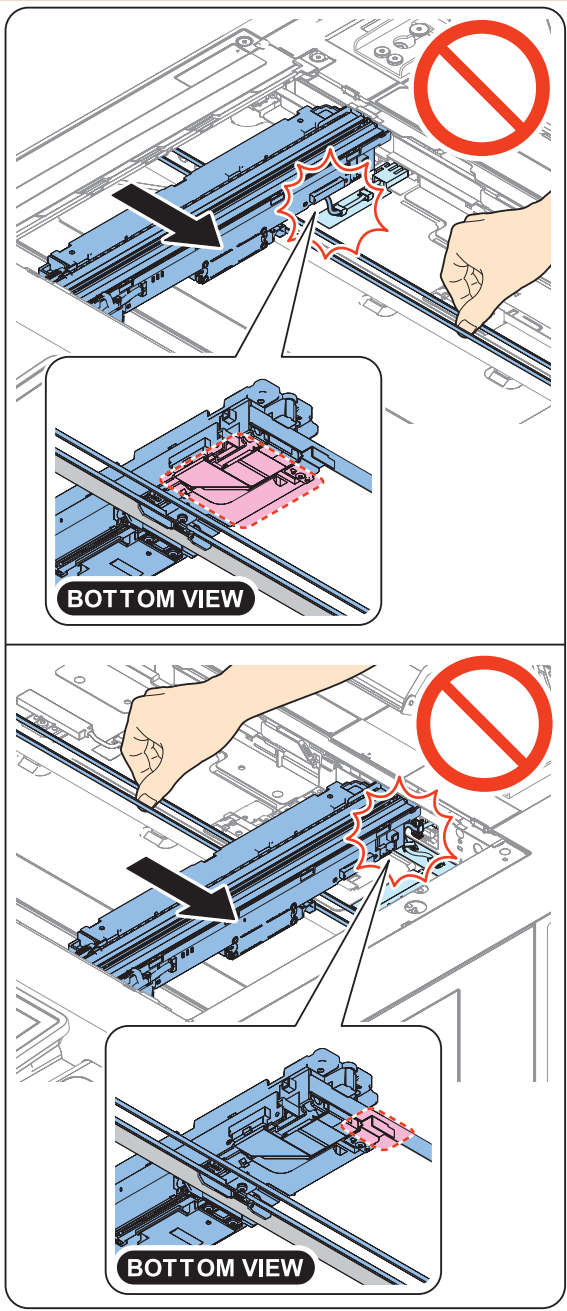
□
21.**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold down the Reader Heater Harness because it may interfere with moving of the Scanner Box if it is not connected properly.

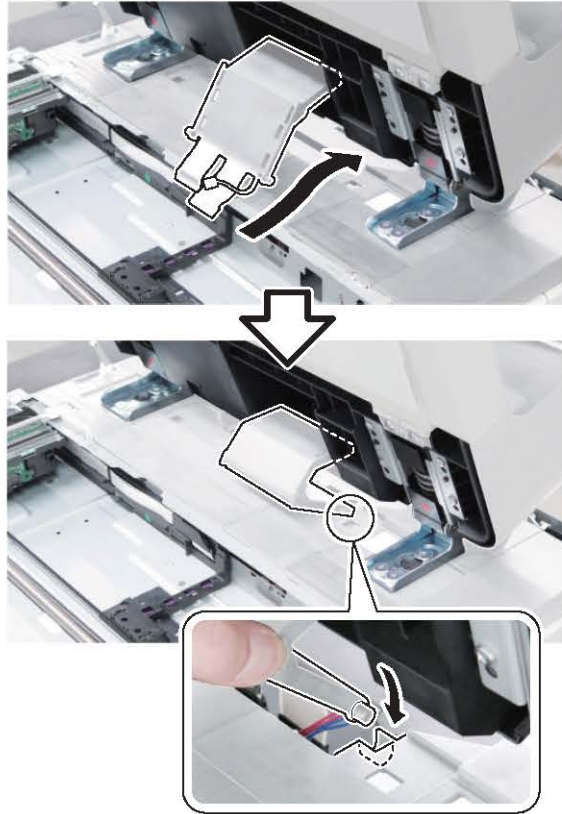
□
22.

CAUTION:

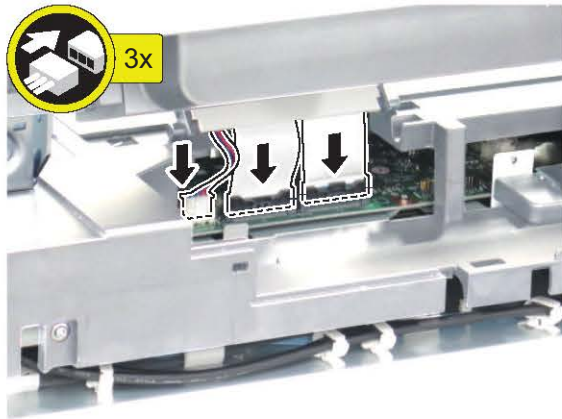
Move the Scanner Box to the right edge, and check if the underside of the Scanner Box and the HP Sensor Flag Plate do not interfere with the Reader Heater harness.



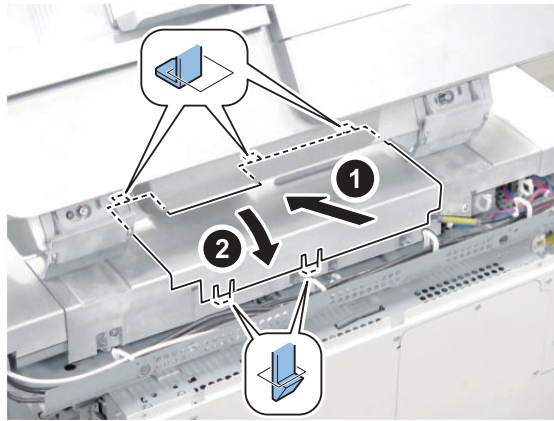
□
23.



□
24.



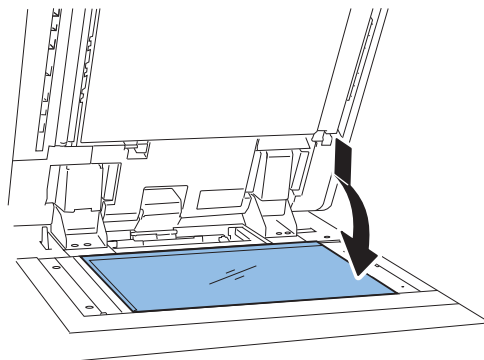
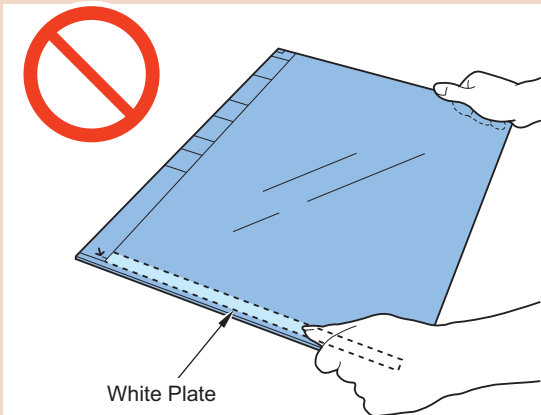
□
25.



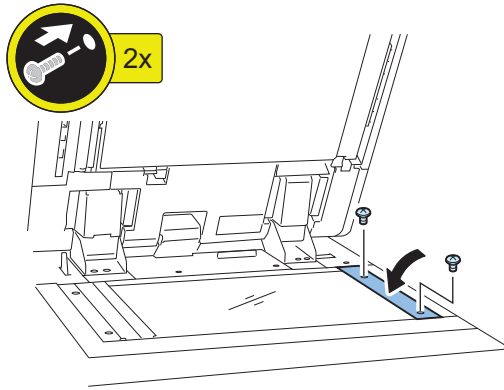
□
26.

CAUTION:

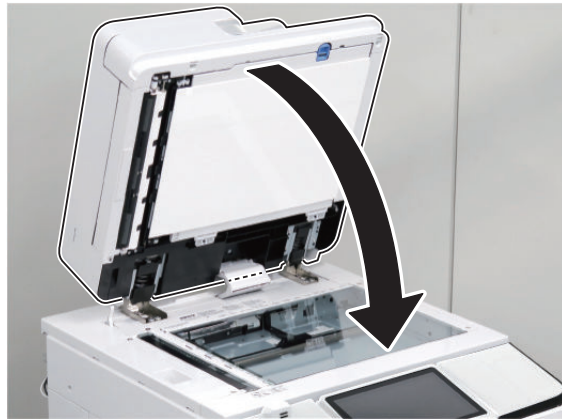
- Soiling on the glass surface and the White Plate affects reading. When removing or installing the Copyboard Glass, be sure not to touch the glass surface and the White Plate.
- If soiling is attached, clean it with lint-free paper.



□
27.

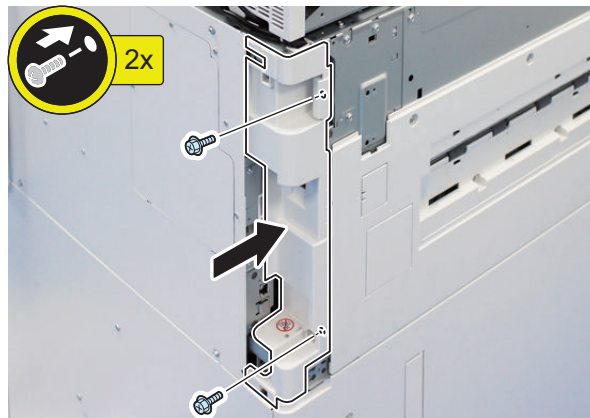


□
28.

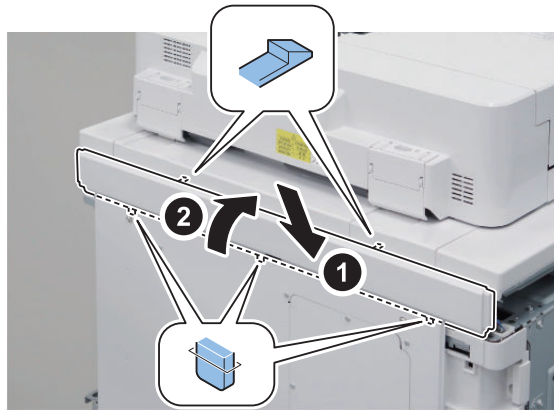


■ **Installing the Covers**

□
1.



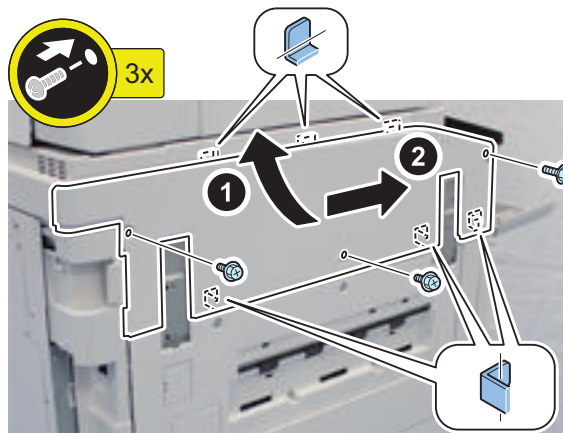
□
2.



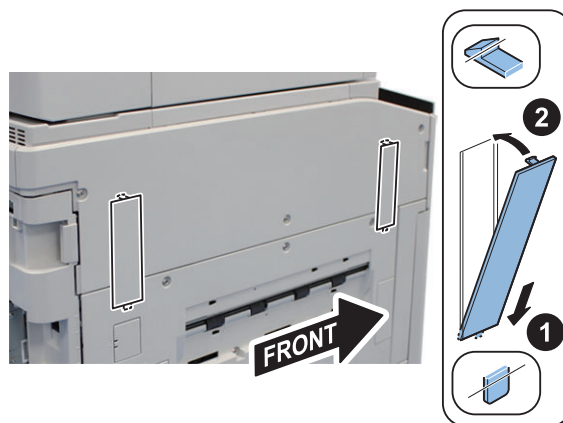
□
3.

CAUTION:

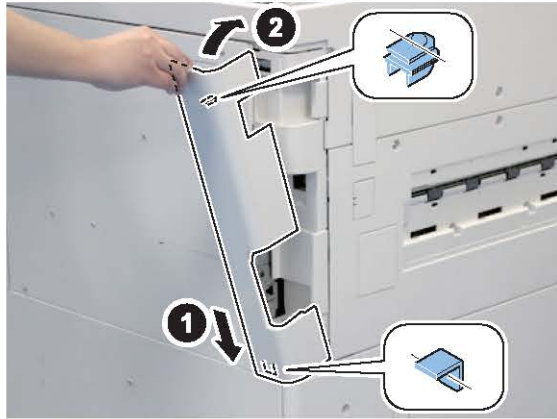
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.



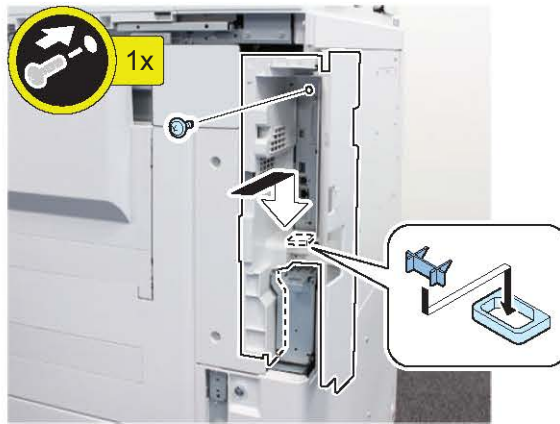
□
4.



□
5.



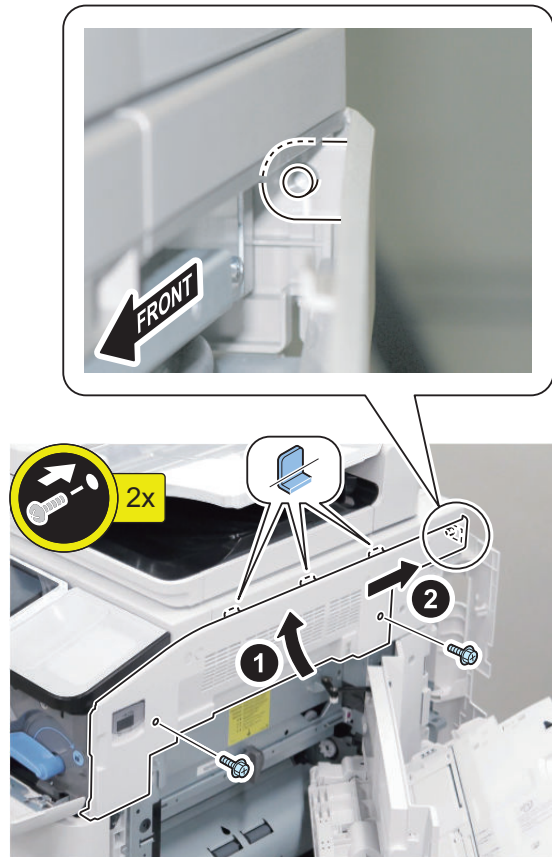
□
6.



□
7.



□
8.



□
9.



□
10. Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch.

11. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

12. Turn ON the main power switch.

4

Host Machine Options

Upright Control Panel-J1.....	142
NFC Kit-E1/E2.....	193
Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE.....	212
Numeric Keypad-A1/A2.....	222
Utility Tray-B1.....	233
Copy Card Reader-F1.....	240
Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1	257
Voice Operation Kit-D1.....	266
Voice Guidance Kit-G1.....	280
HDD-related Option.....	293
Super G3 FAX Board-AS1.....	328
Super G3 FAX Board-AS2.....	336
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1..	343
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2..	365
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1	384
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2	396
Double Feeding Detection Kit-B1.....	407

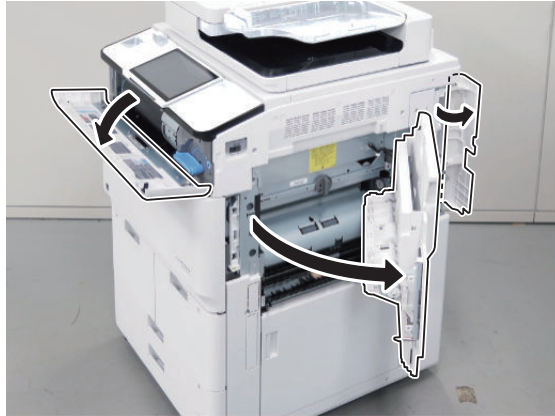
Upright Control Panel-J1

● Installation Procedure

■ Removing the Covers

□

1.

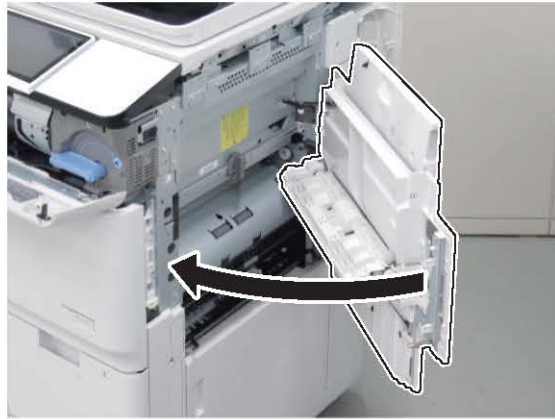


□

2.

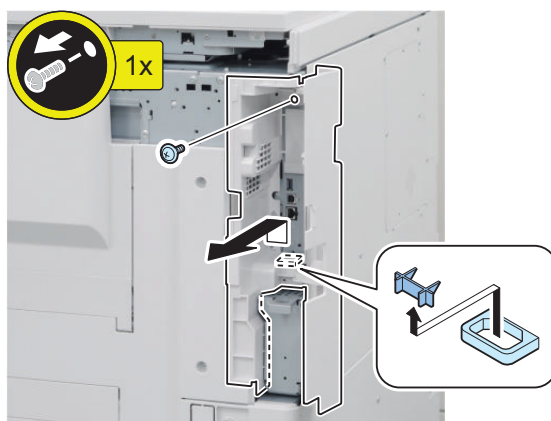


□
3.

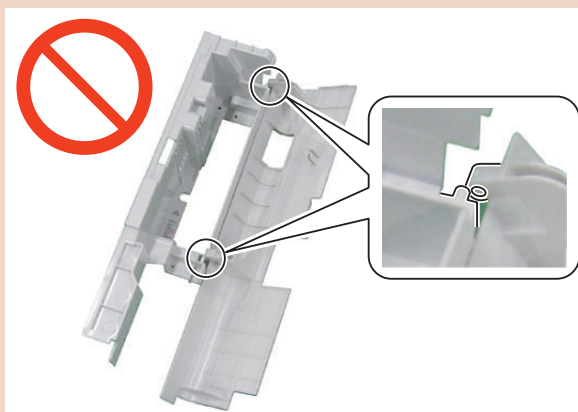
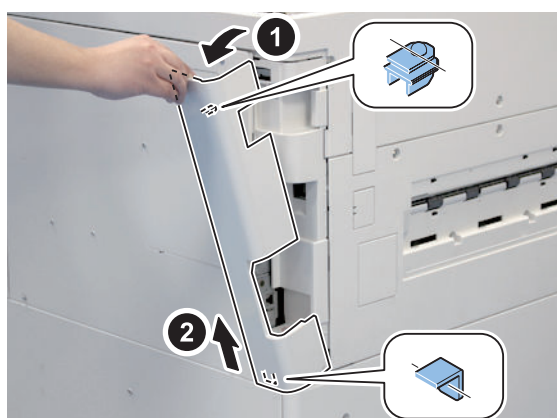


□
4.

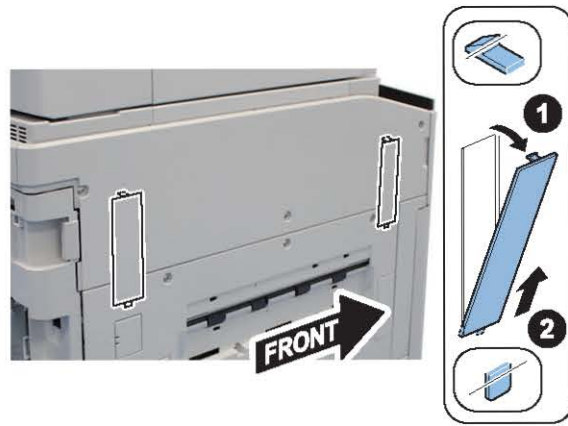


□
5.**CAUTION:**

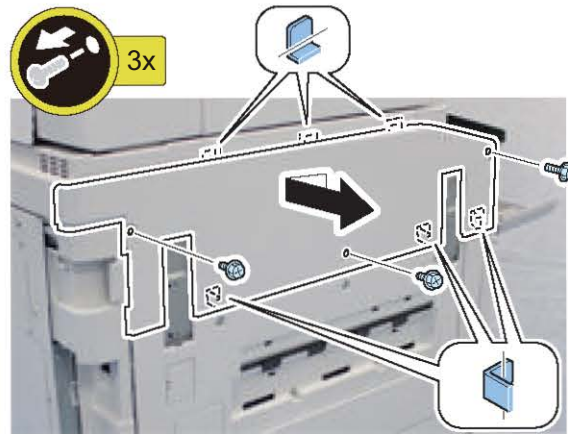
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.

□
6.

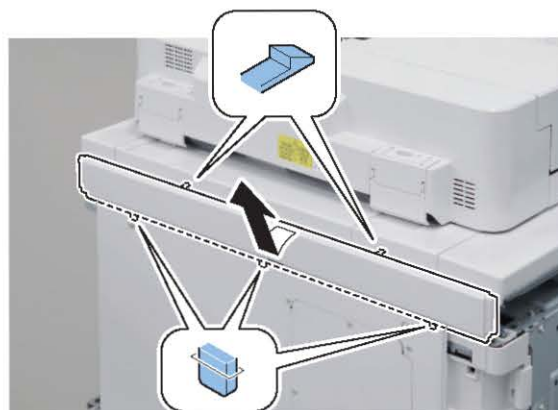
□
7.



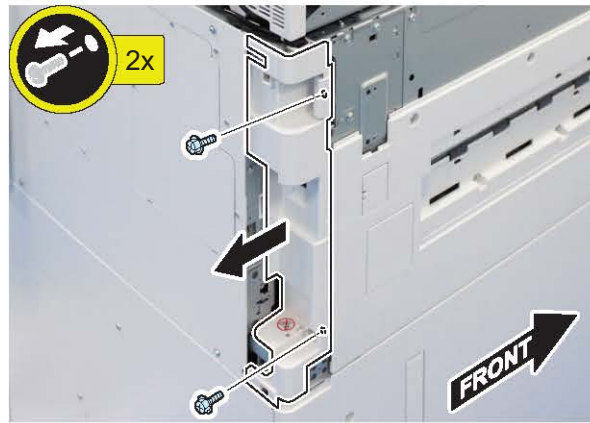
□
8.



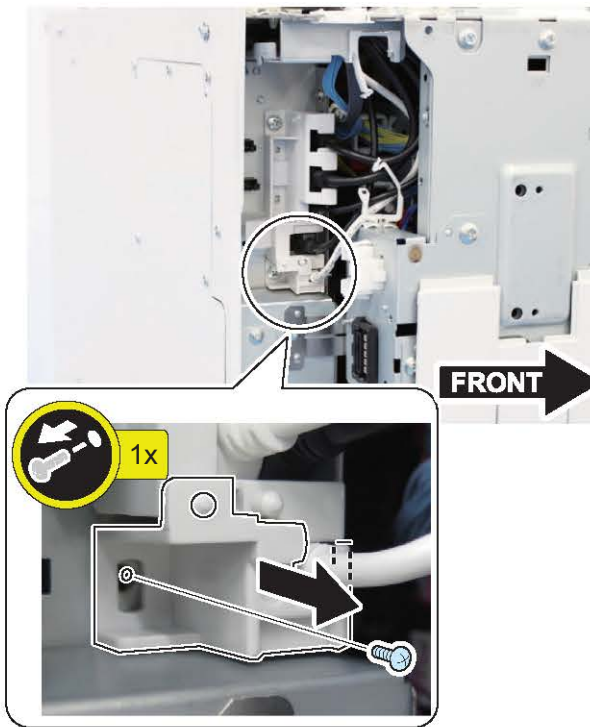
□
9.

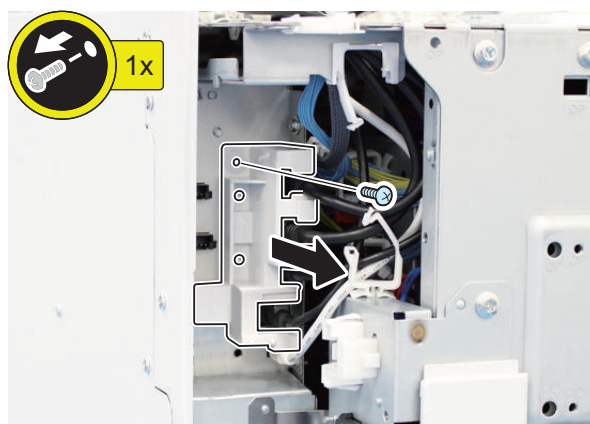


□
10.



□
11.



□
12.□
13. Remove the ADF and Reader Unit or the Printer Cover.

- When removing the ADF and Reader Unit: After performing the [“Removing the ADF”](#) on page 148, proceed to [“Removing the Reader Unit”](#) on page 151.
- When removing the Printer Cover: Perform to [“Removing the Printer Cover”](#) on page 153.

■ Removing the ADF

□
1.

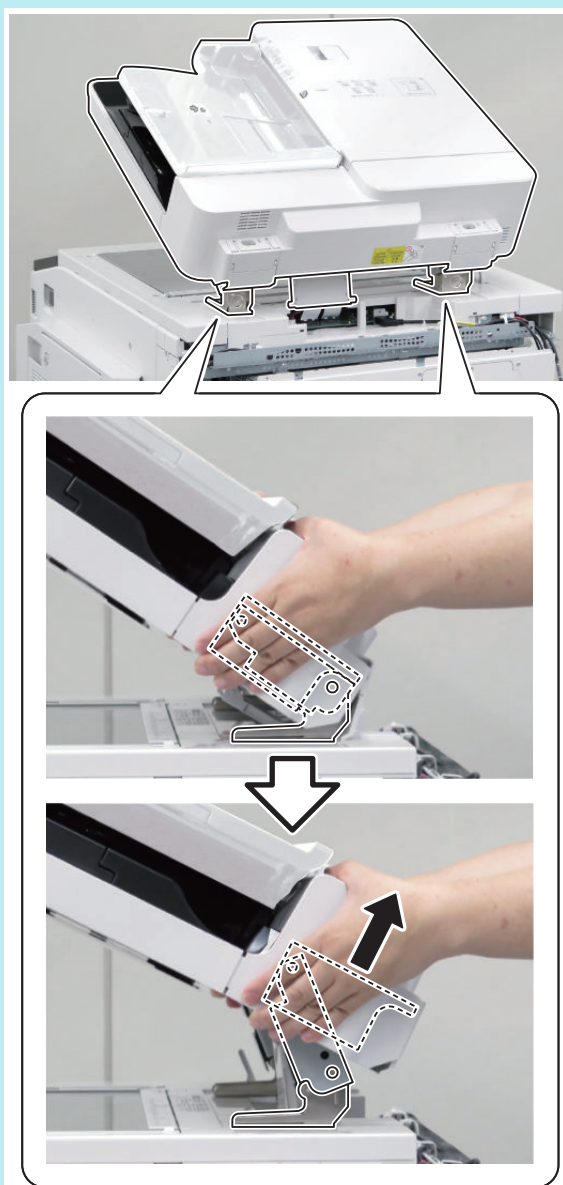


□
2.

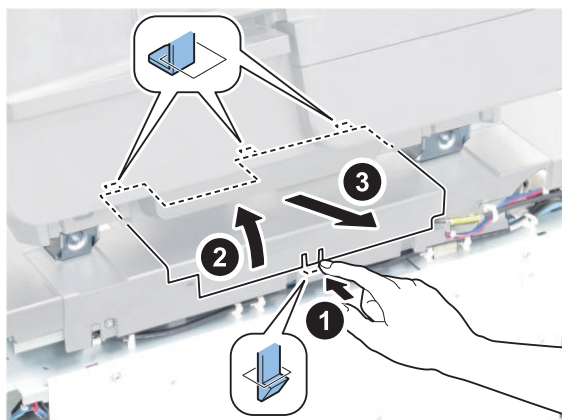


NOTE:

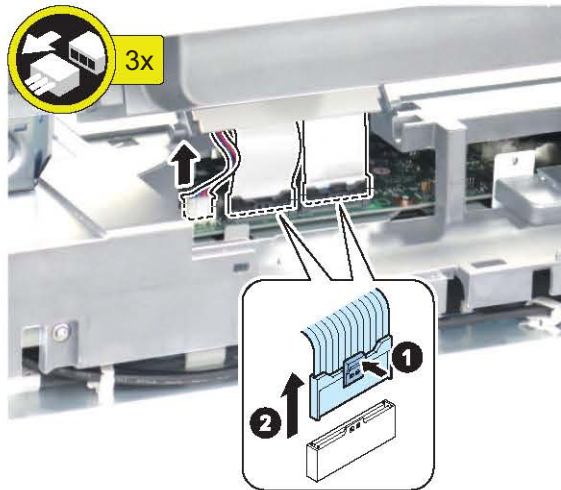
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy.
The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



□
3.



□
4.



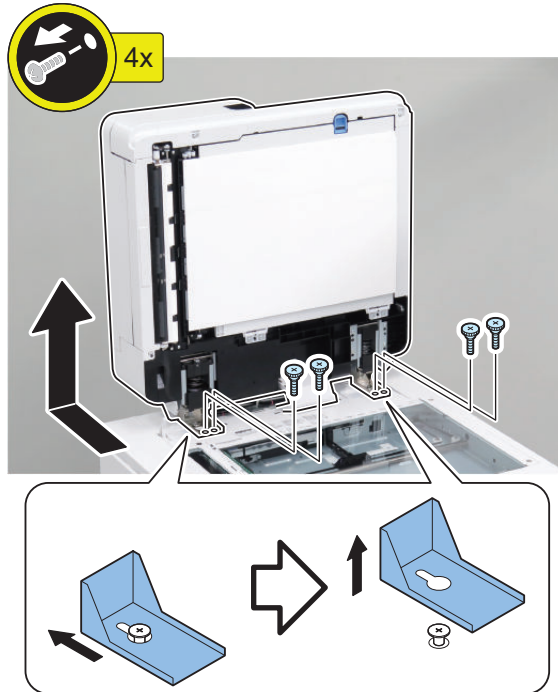
□
5.



□

6.

⚠ CAUTION:
Be careful not to drop the ADF.



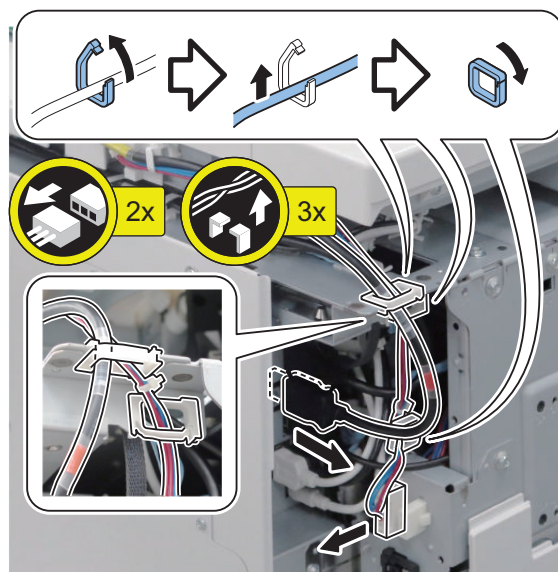
□

7. Next, perform [“Removing the Reader Unit”](#) on page 151.

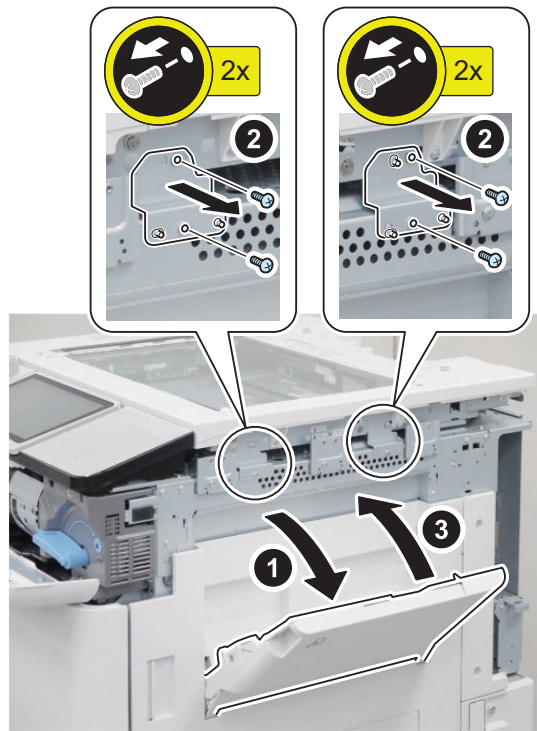
■ Removing the Reader Unit

□

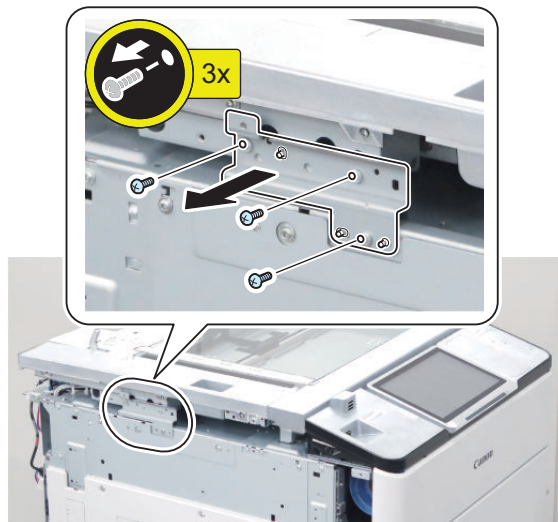
1.



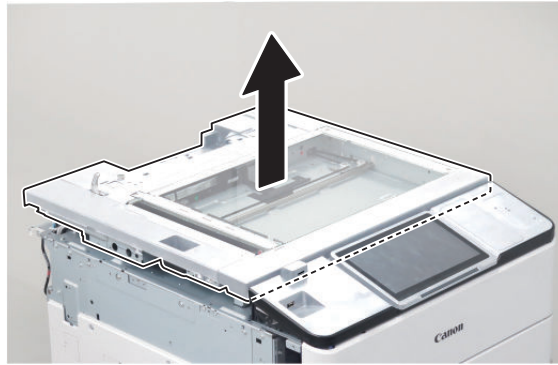
□
2.



□
3.

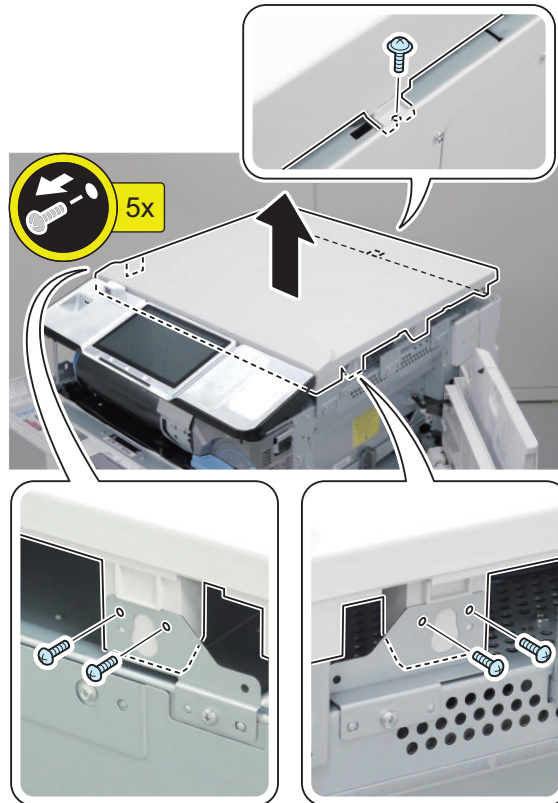


□
4.



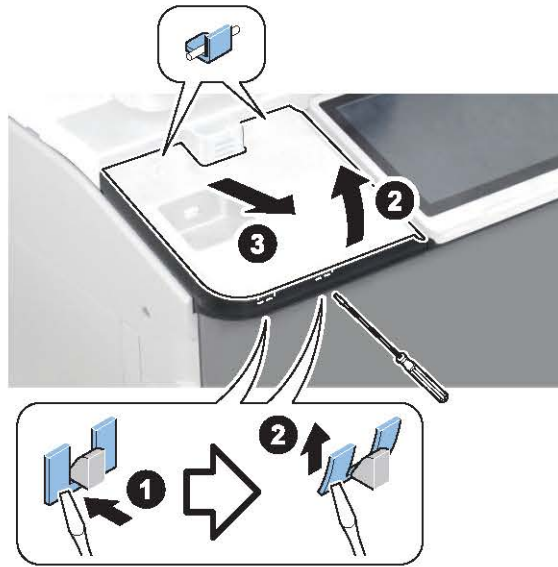
■ **Removing the Printer Cover**

□
1.

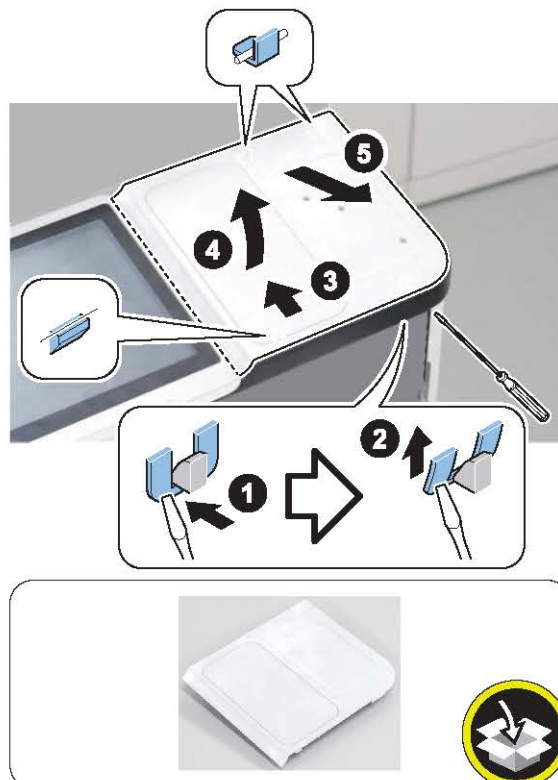


■ Removing the Flat Control Panel

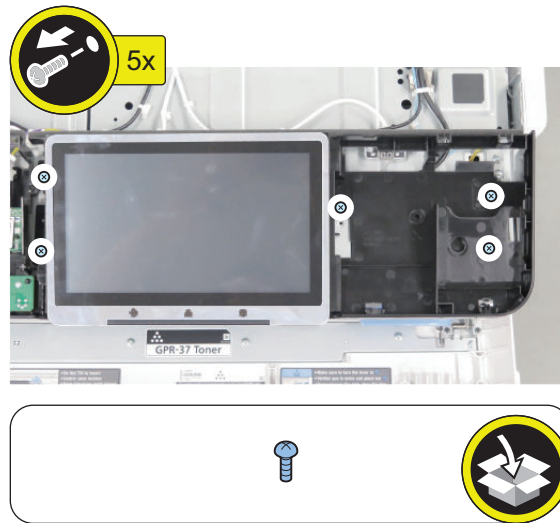
□
1.



□
2.



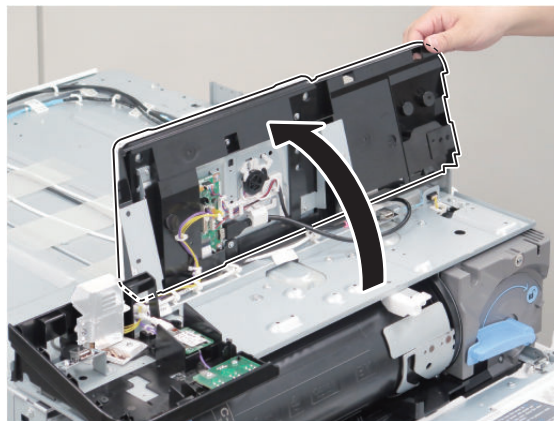
□
3.



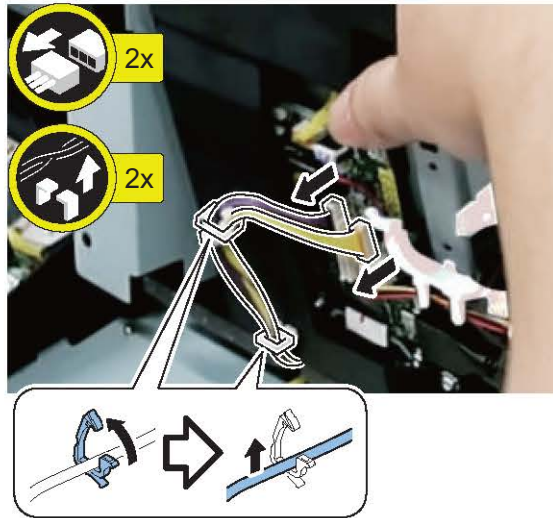
NOTE:

3 of removed screws will be used in step 8 and 1 will be used in step 13 of "Installing the Upright Arm".

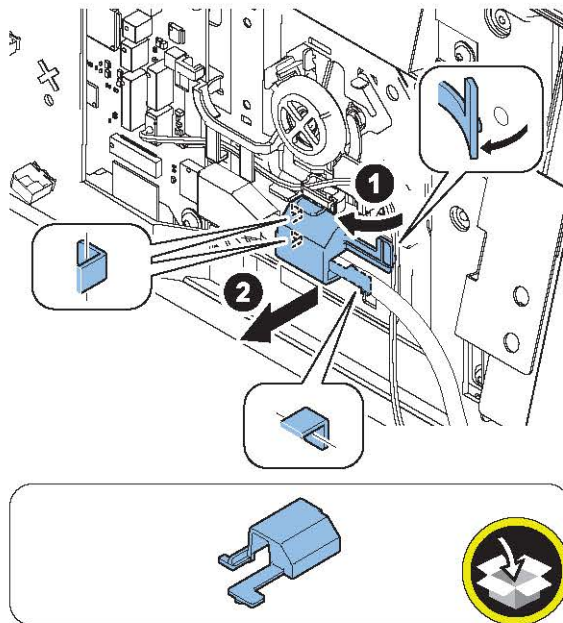
□
4.



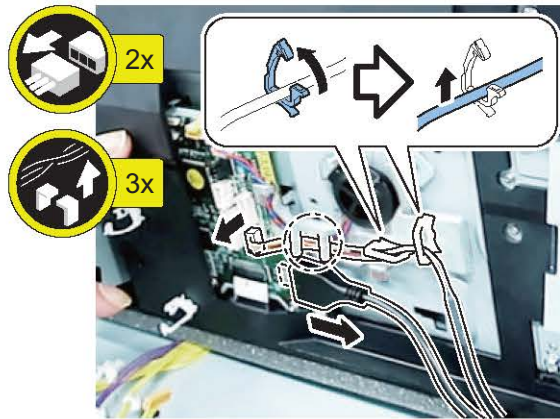
□
5.



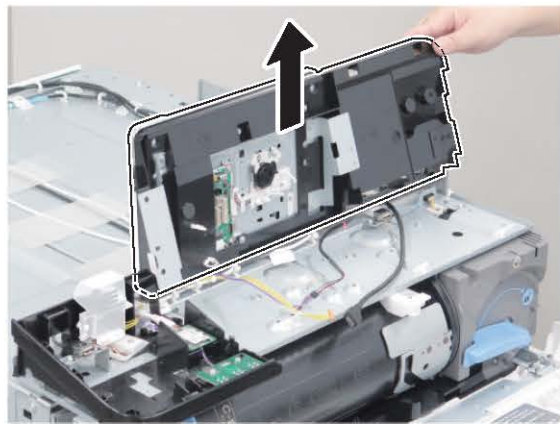
□
6.



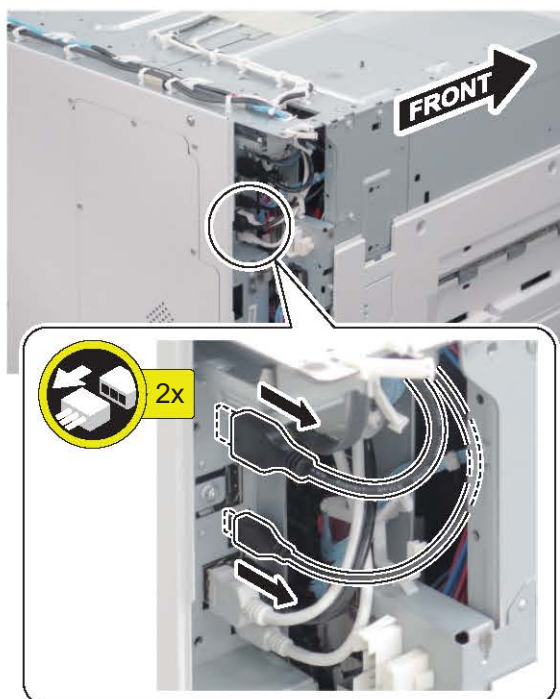
□
7.



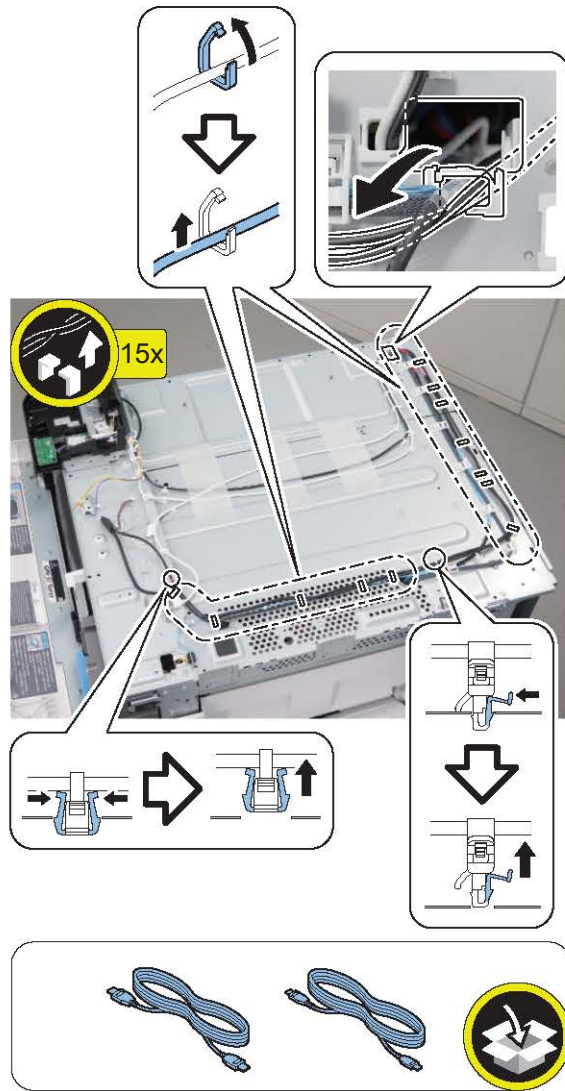
□
8.



□
9.

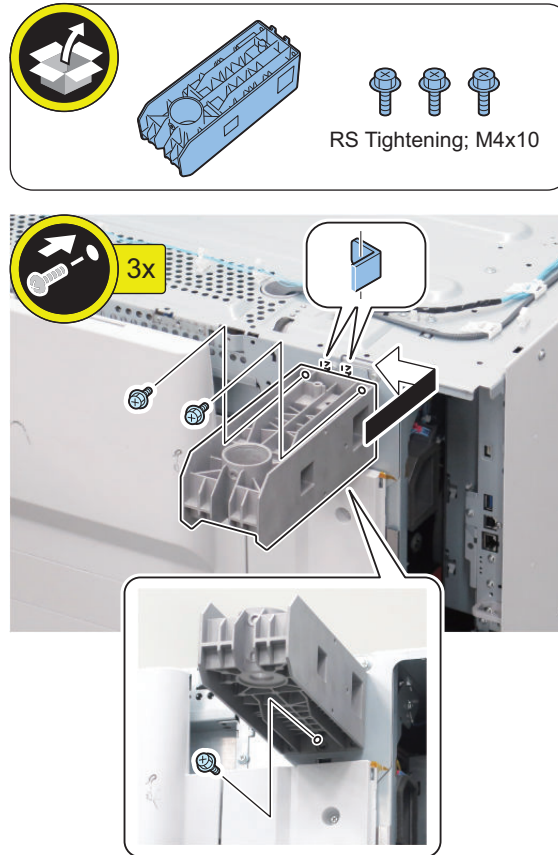


□
10.



■ Installing the Upright Arm

□
1.



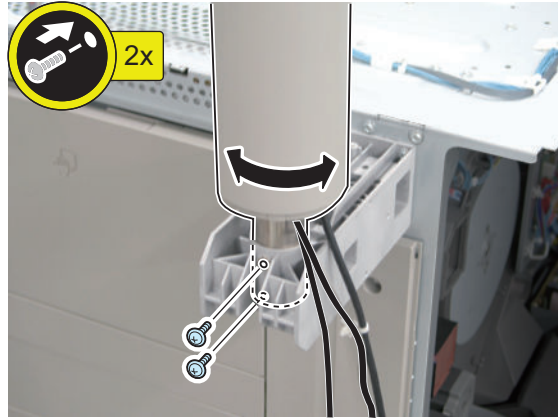
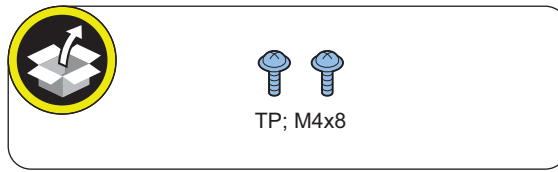
□
2.

NOTE:

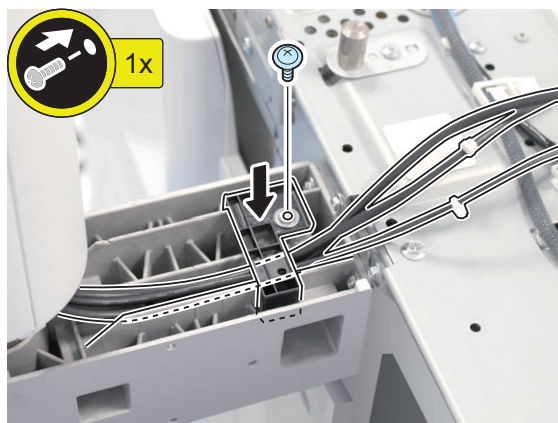
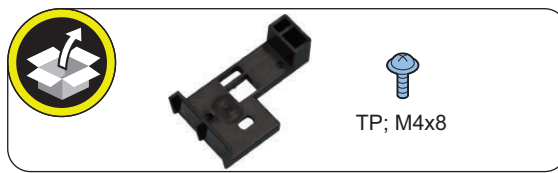
Remove tapes, and insert the Upright Arm vertically into the round hole of the Frame Base.



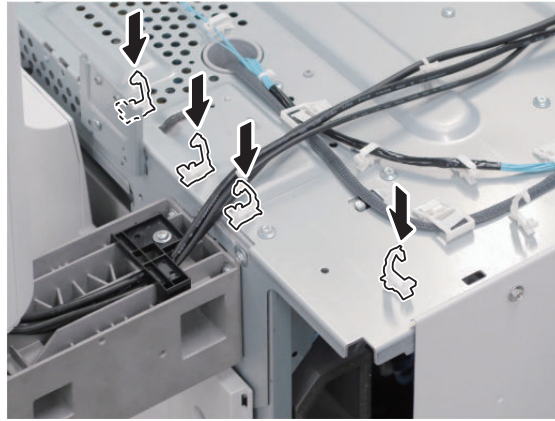
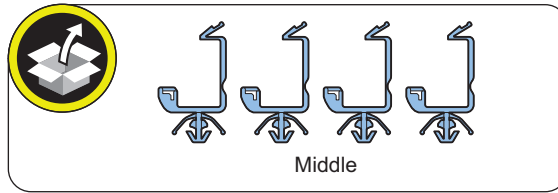
□
3.



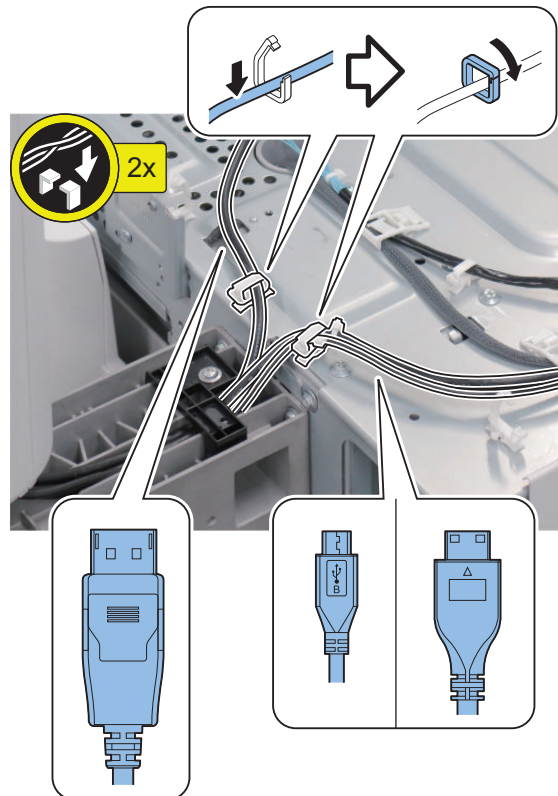
□
4.



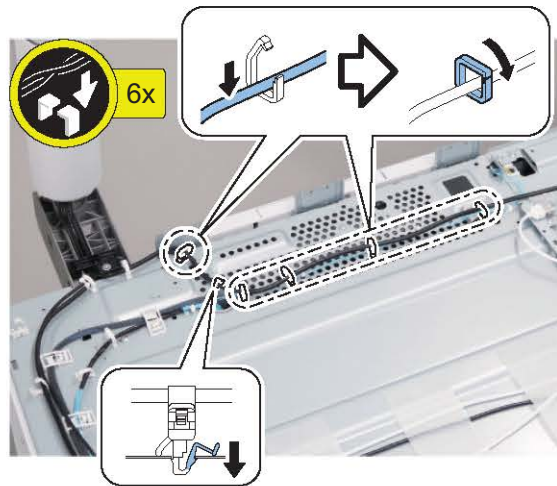
□
5.



□
6.

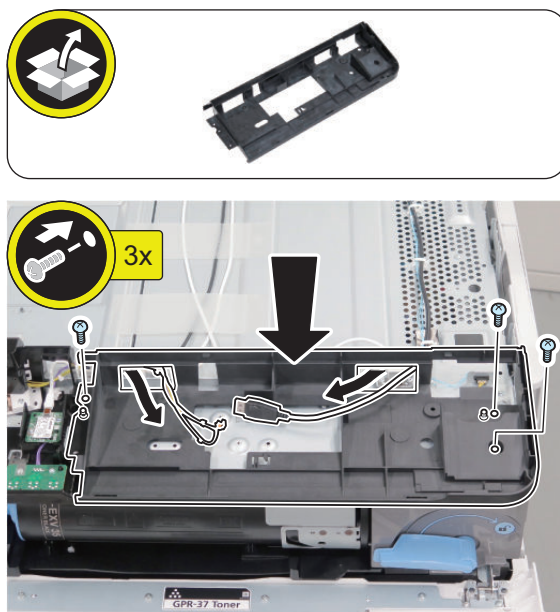


□
7.

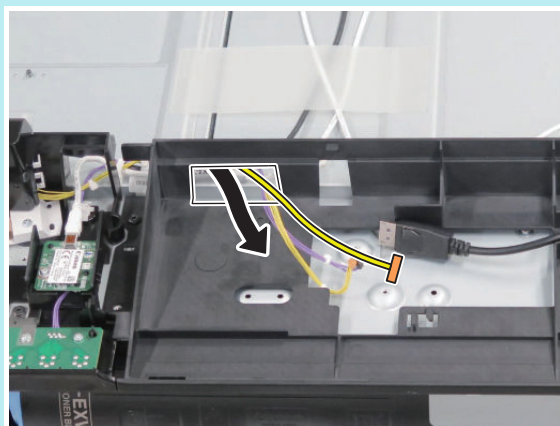


□
8.**NOTE:**

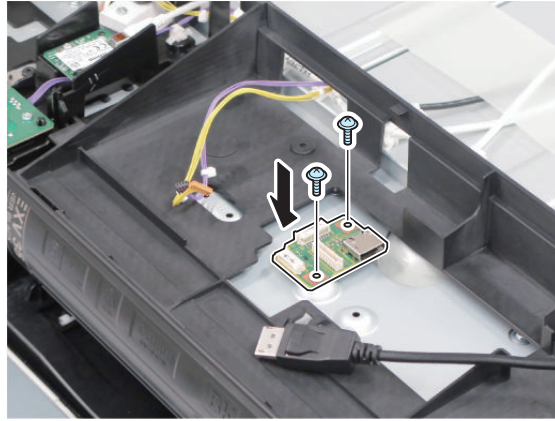
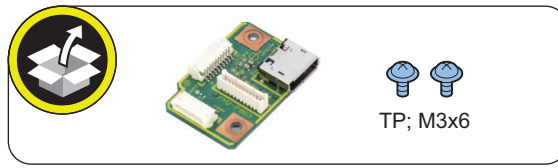
Use screws removed in step 3 of "Removing the Flat Control Panel".

**NOTE:**

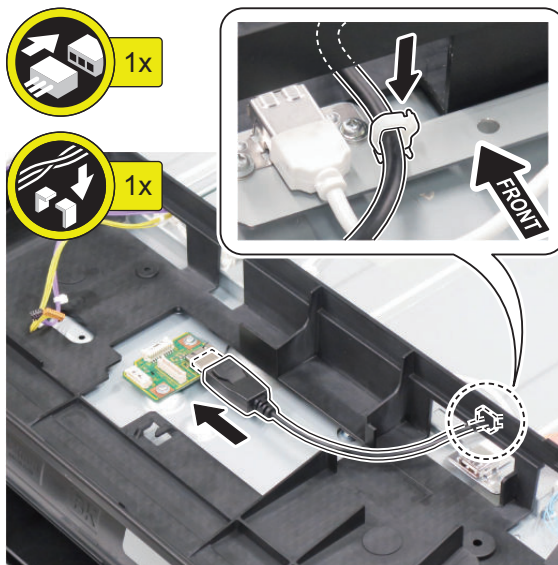
When the NFC Kit will be installed at the same time, make sure to pass the NFC Cable through together. (Refer to the Service Manual of host machine for the installation procedure.)



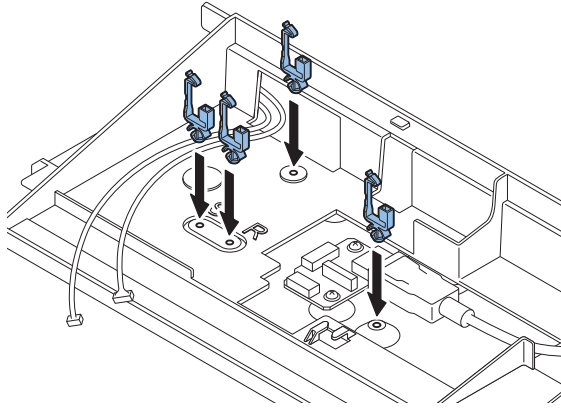
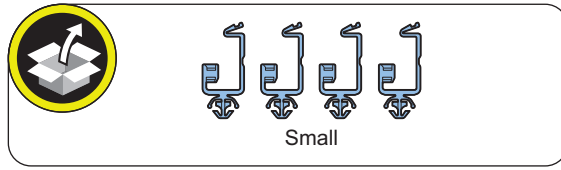
□
9.



□
10.



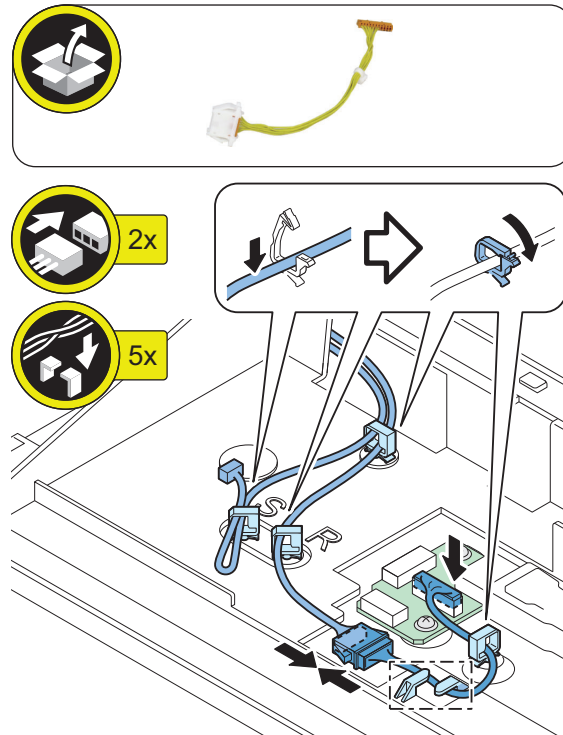
□
11.



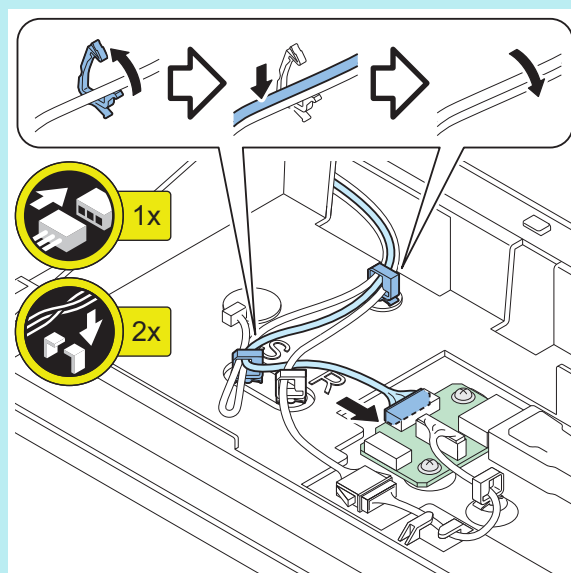
□
12.

NOTE:

Be careful to hold down the connector of Relay Cable so that it is securely fitted.

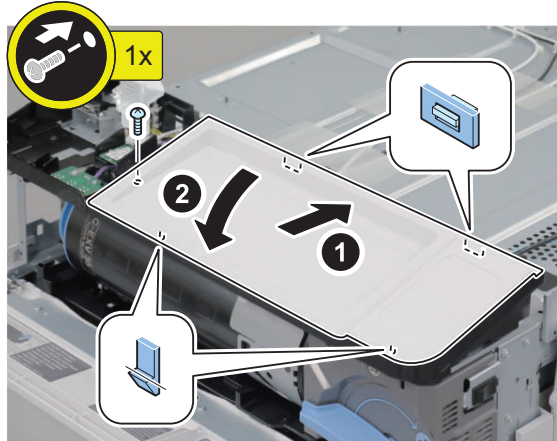
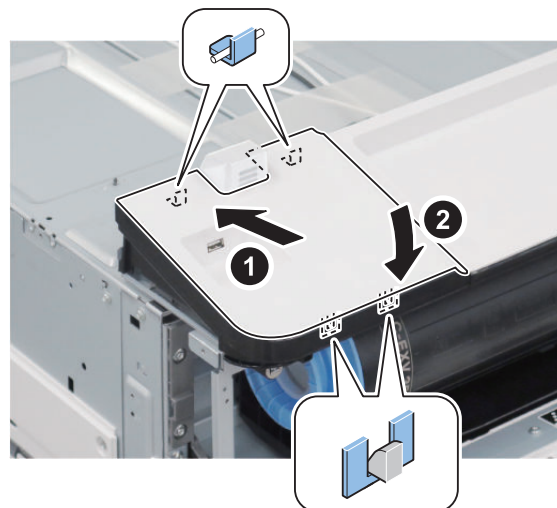
**NOTE:**

When the NFC Kit will be installed at the same time, make sure to connect the NFC Cable. (Refer to the Service Manual of host machine for the installation procedure.)

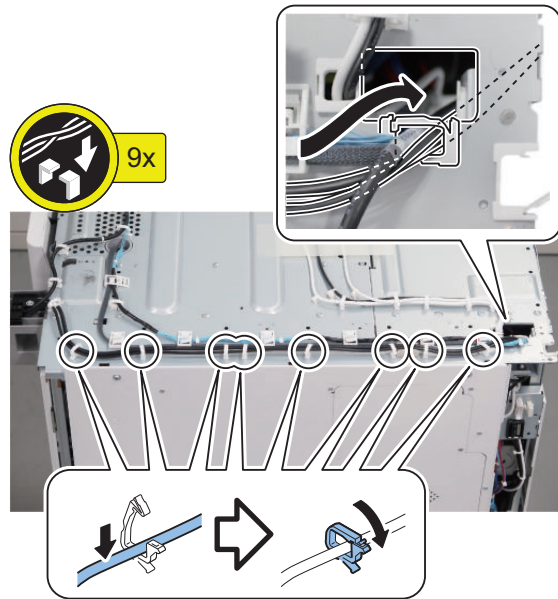


□
13.

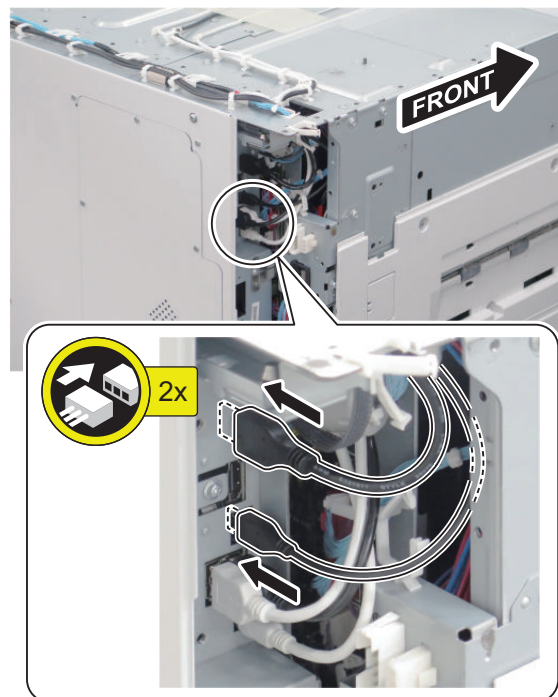
NOTE:
Use screws removed in step 3 of "Removing the Flat Control Panel".

□
14.

□
15.



□
16.

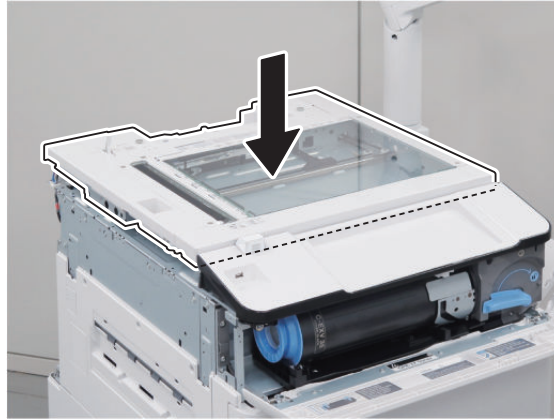


□
17. Install the removed Reader Unit and ADF or the Printer Cover.

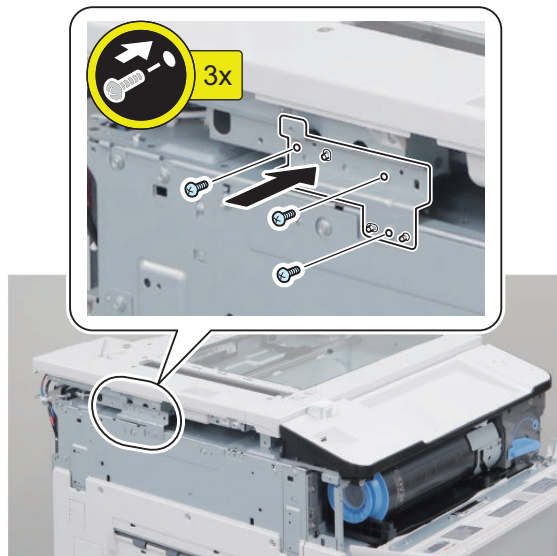
- When installing the Reader Unit and ADF: After performing the [“Installing the Reader Unit”](#) on page 169, proceed to [“Installing the ADF”](#) on page 171.
- When installing the Printer Cover: Perform to [“Installing the Printer Cover”](#) on page 173.

■ Installing the Reader Unit

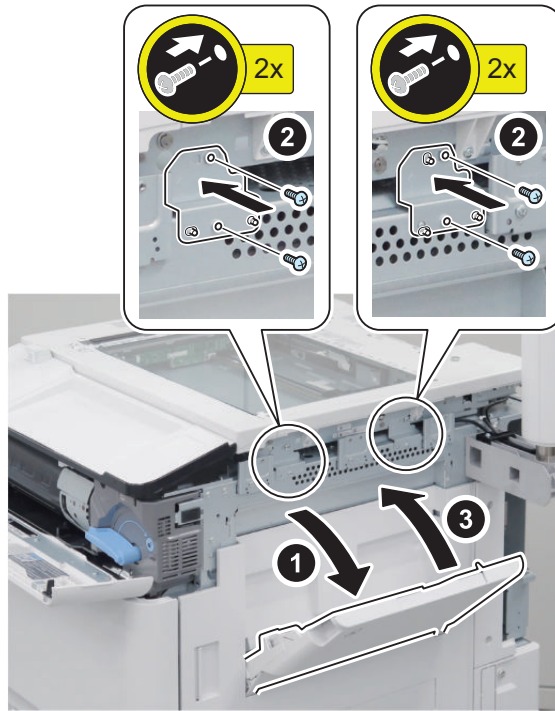
□
1.



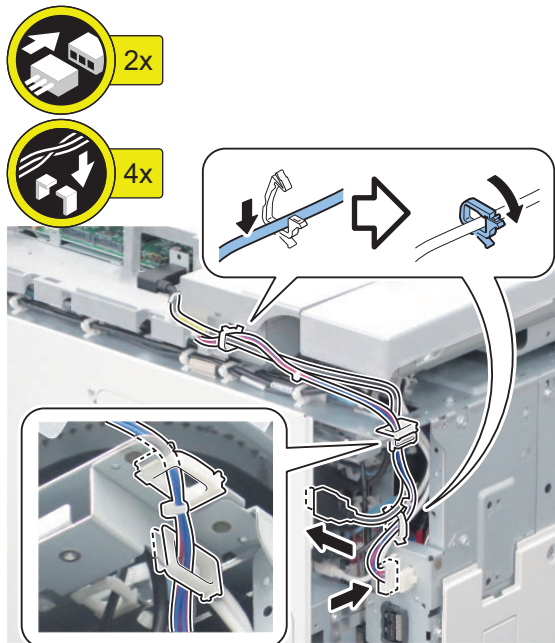
□
2.



□
3.



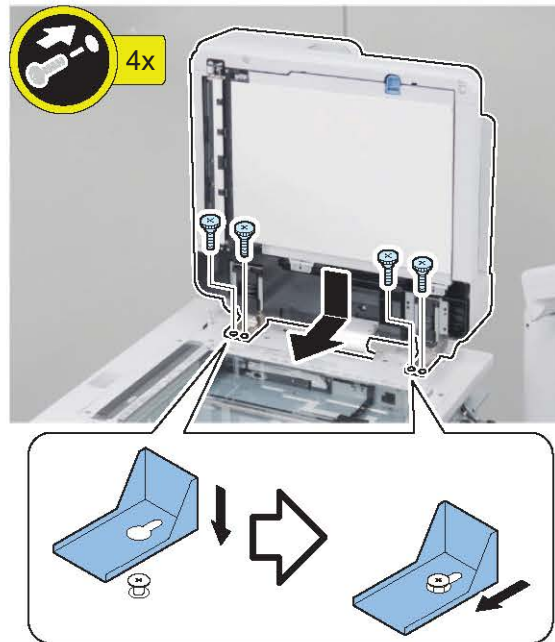
□
4.



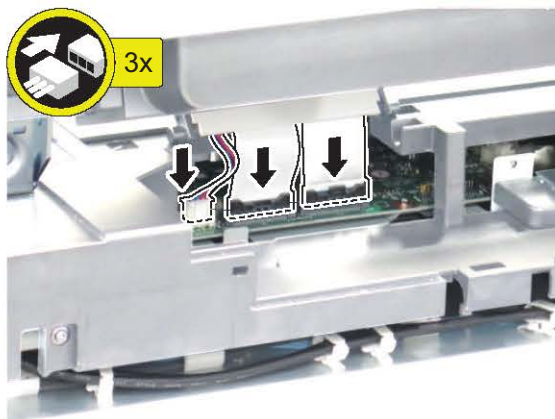
□
5. Next, perform **“Installing the ADF”** on page 171.

■ Installing the ADF

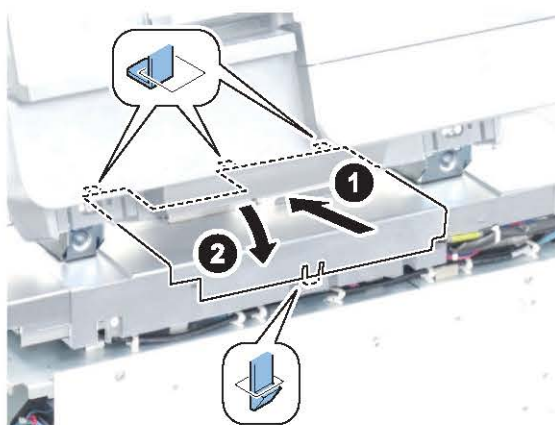
□
1.



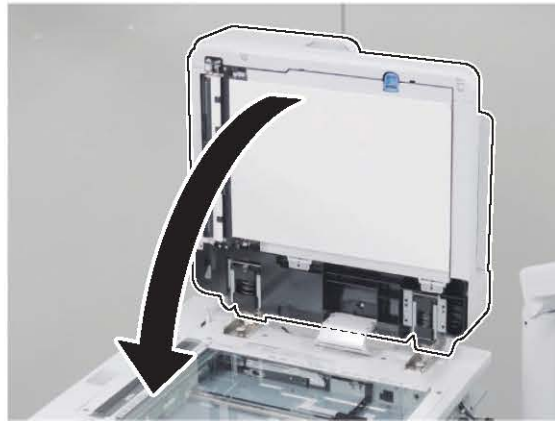
□
2.



□
3.



□
4.

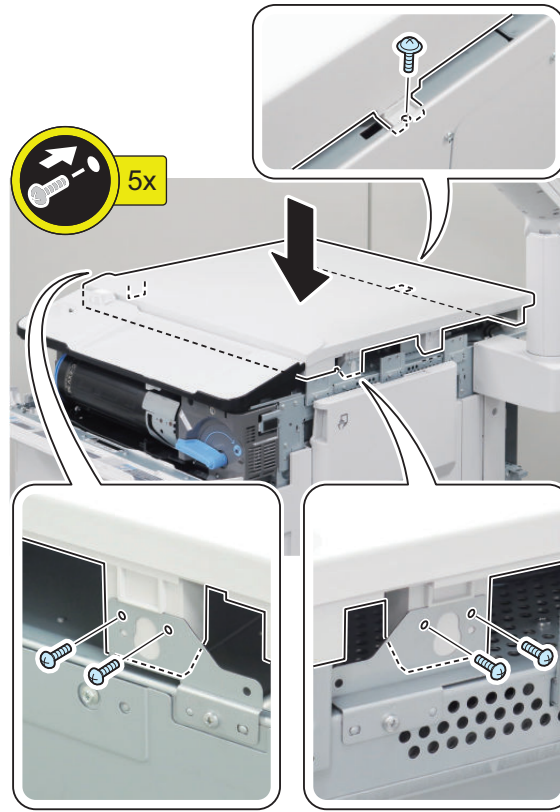


□
5.



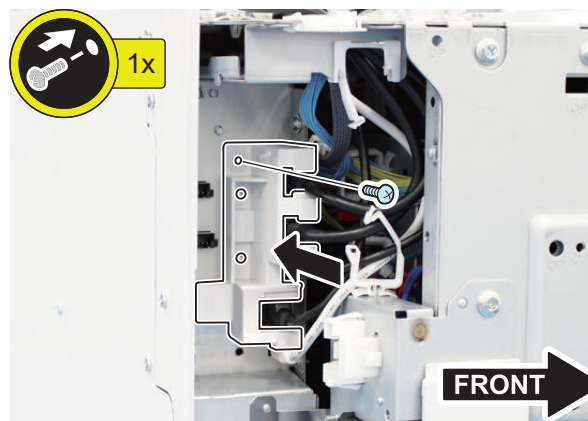
■ Installing the Printer Cover

□
1.

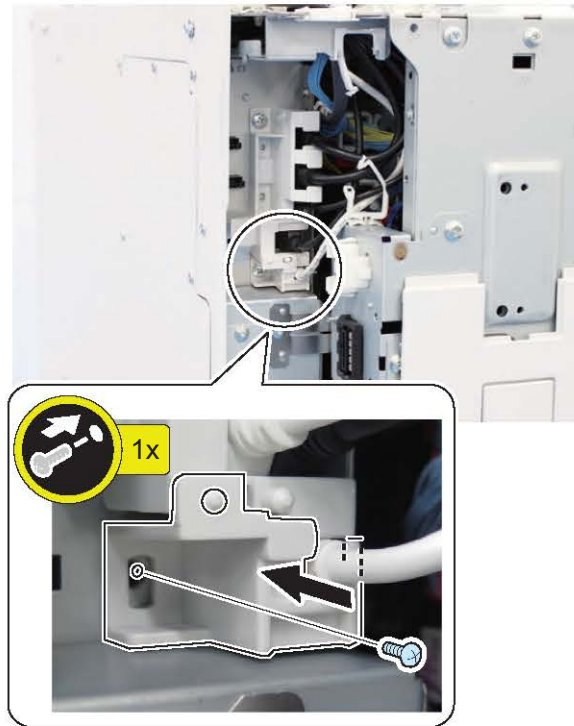


■ Installing the Covers

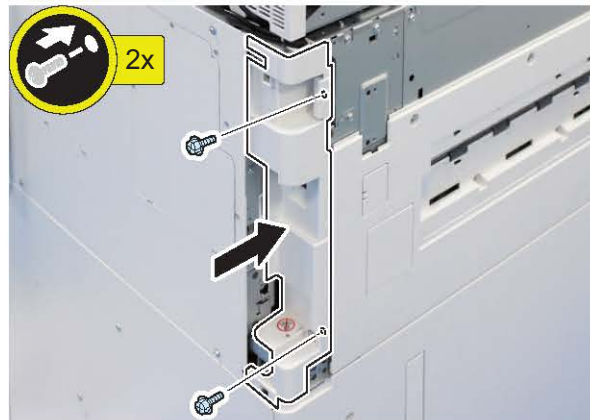
□
1.



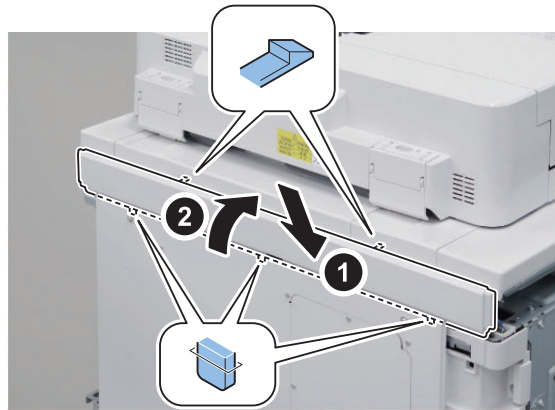
□
2.



□
3.



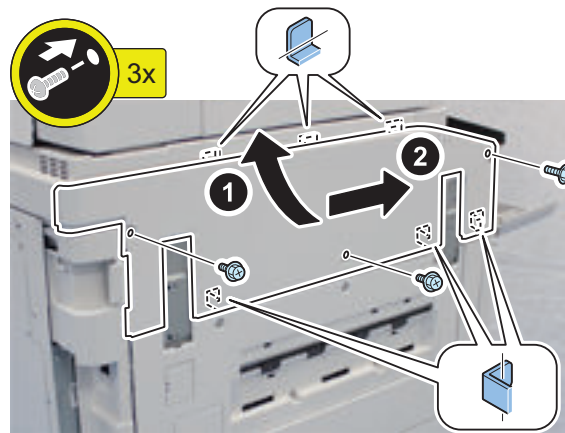
□
4.



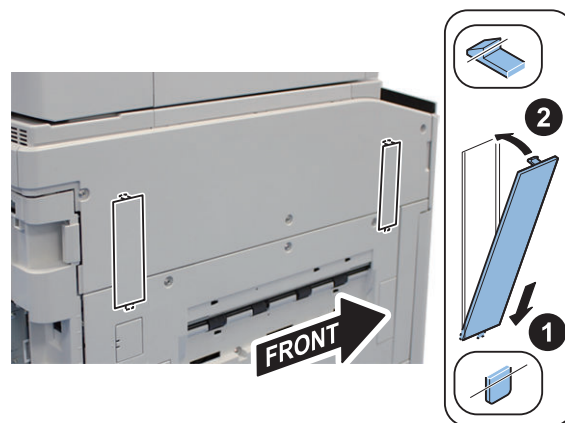
□
5.

CAUTION:

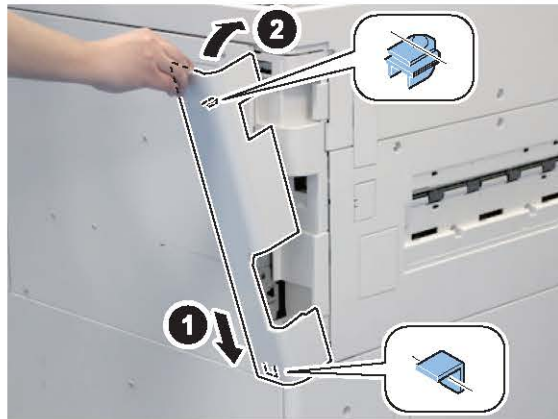
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.



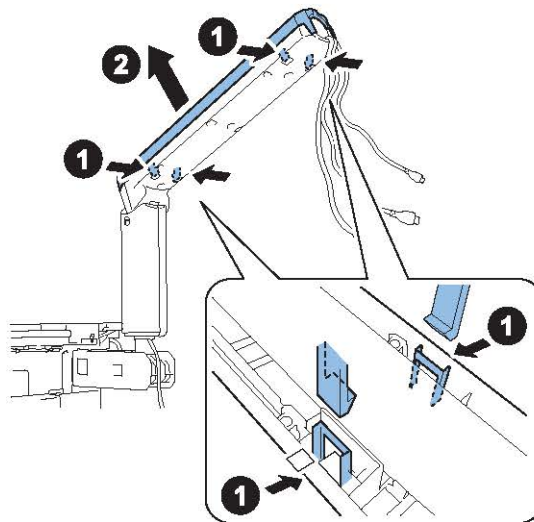
□
6.



□
7.



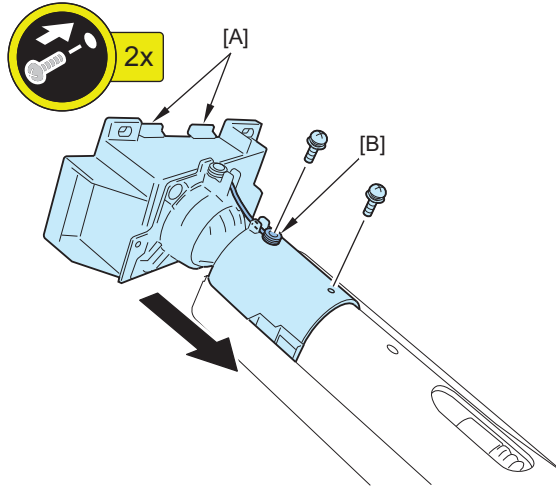
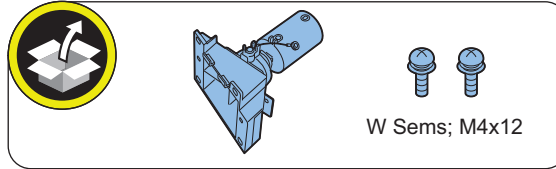
□
8.



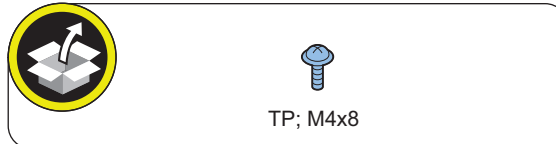
□
9.

CAUTION:

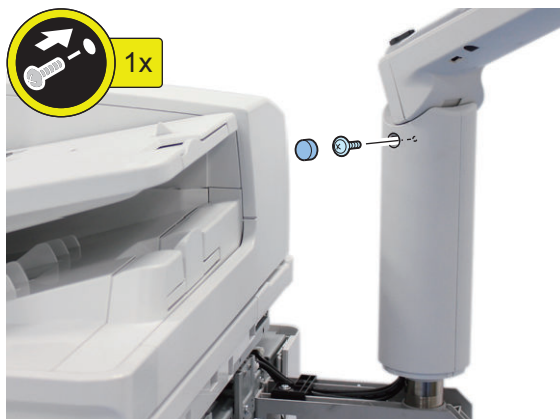
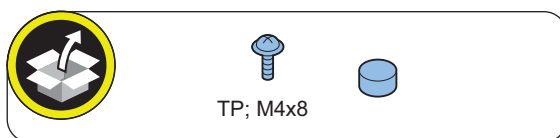
- Turn the Panel Base to make the protrusions [A] come to the upper side.
- Be sure to tighten the screws to secure the wire [B] simultaneously when installing the Panel Base.



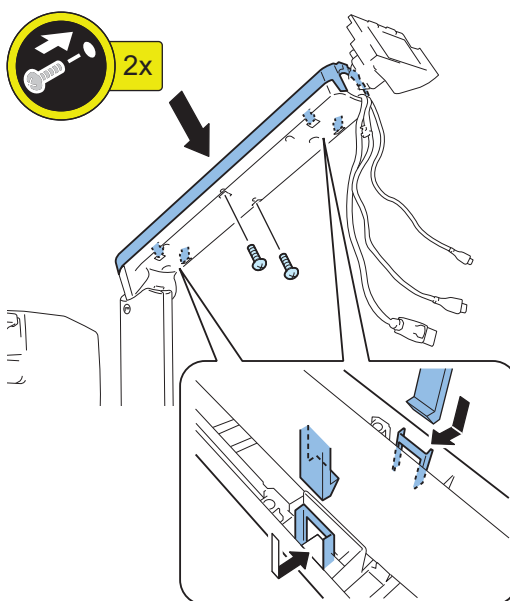
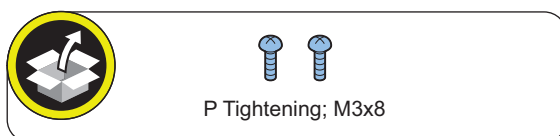
□
10.



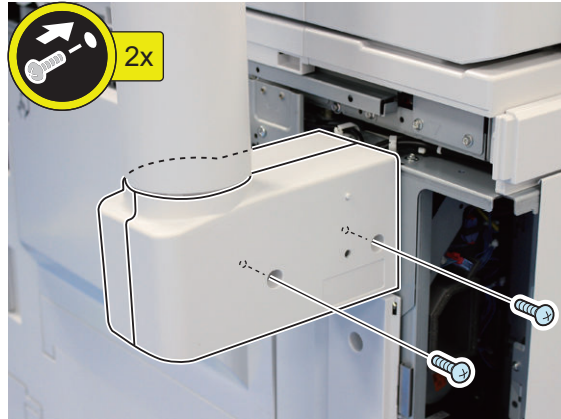
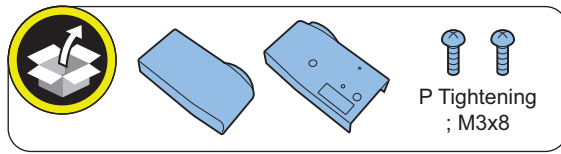
□
11.



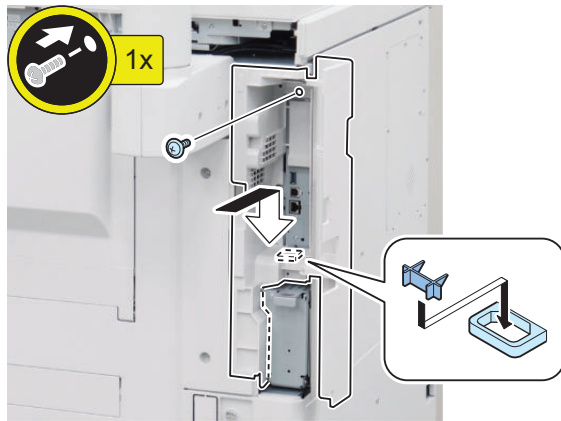
□
12.



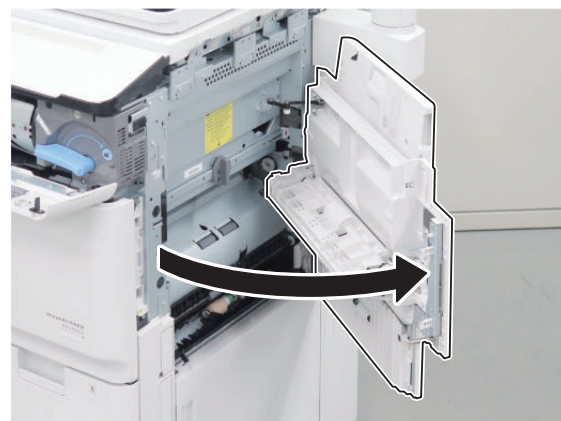
□
13.



□
14.



□
15.



□
16.



□
17.



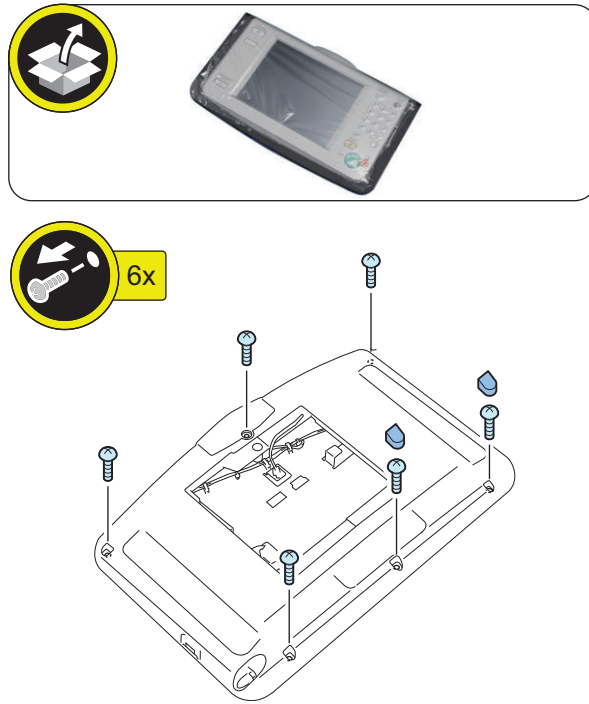
■ Installing the Upright Control Panel

- **1** ■ Remove the packing tape from the Upright Control Panel.

NOTE:

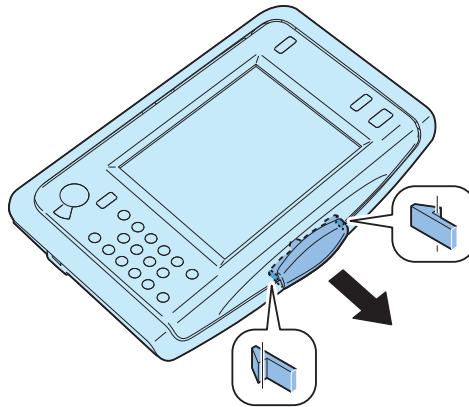
If the language of the Control Panel Sheet is not appropriate for the country, perform steps 2 to 11 and replace the Control Panel Sheet.
The sheet installed as standard is in English.

□
2.



□
3. Remove the Protection Sheet from the Upright Control Panel.

□
4.

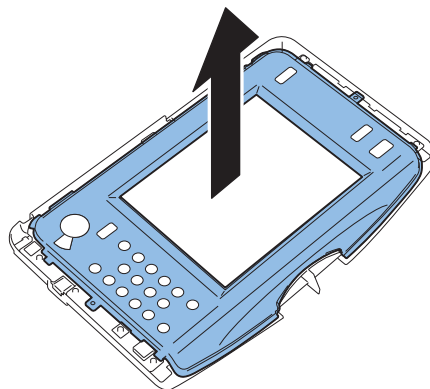


□
5.

CAUTION:
Disconnect the claws one by one in the direction of the arrow.



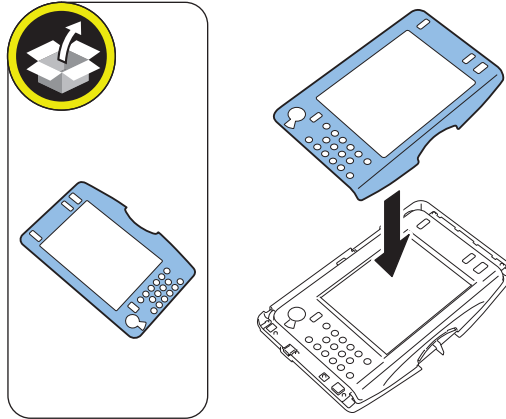
□
6.



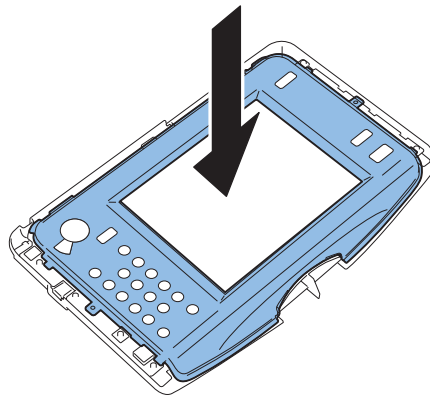
□
7.

NOTE:

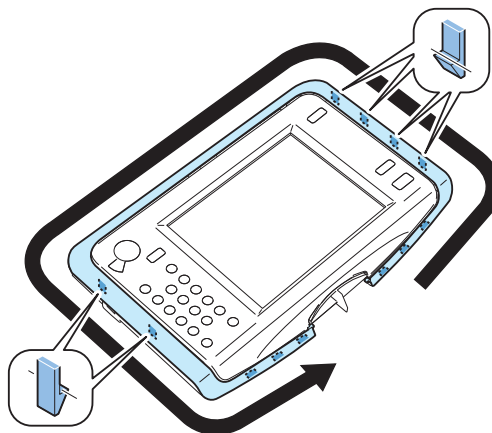
Place the appropriate Control Panel Sheet on the Upright Control Panel, and remove the Protection Sheet from the Control Panel Sheet.



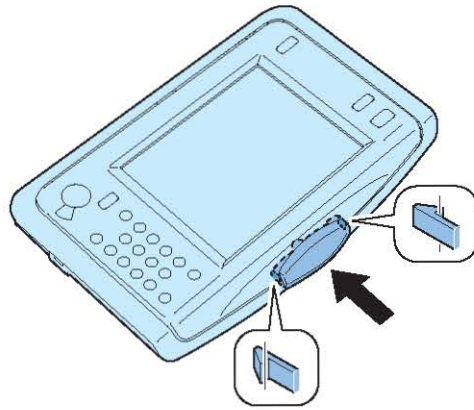
□
8.



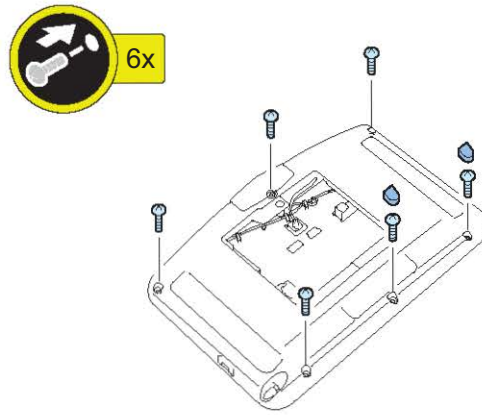
□
9.



□
10.

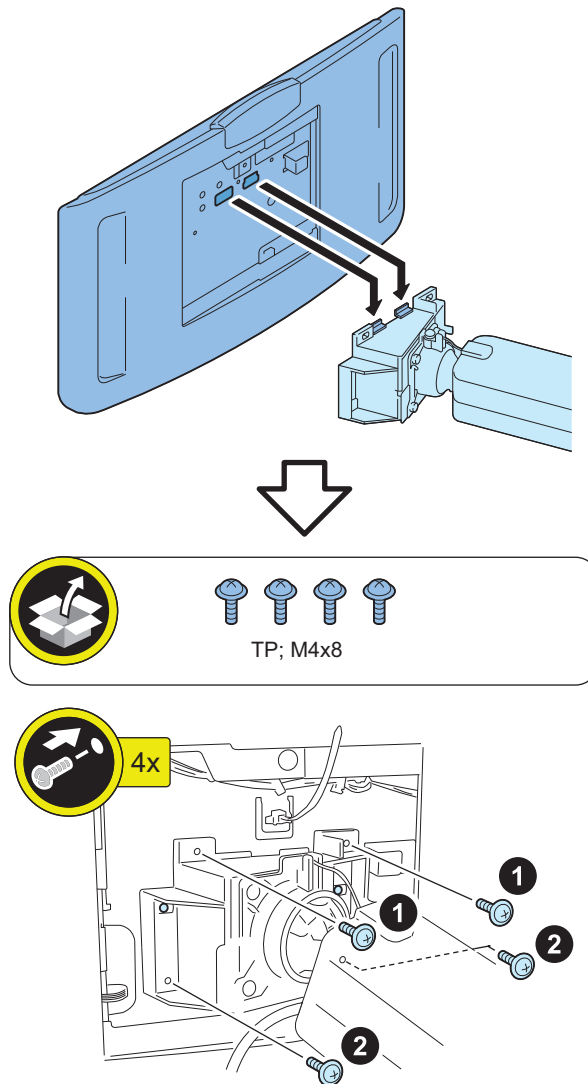


□
11.

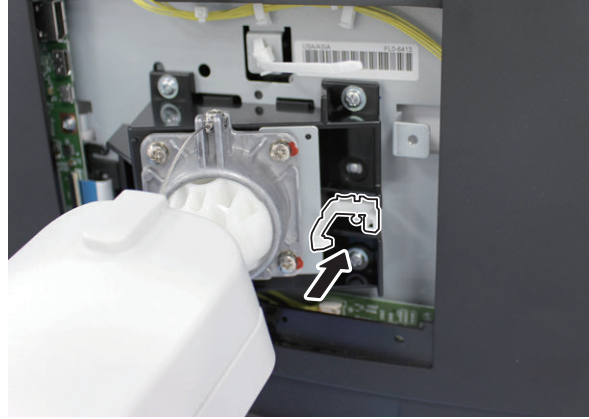
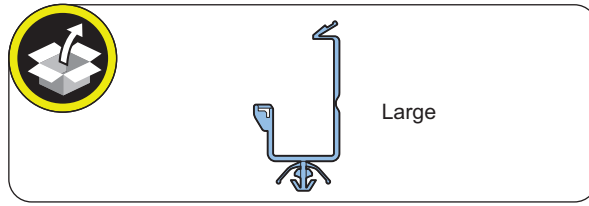


□
12.**NOTE:**

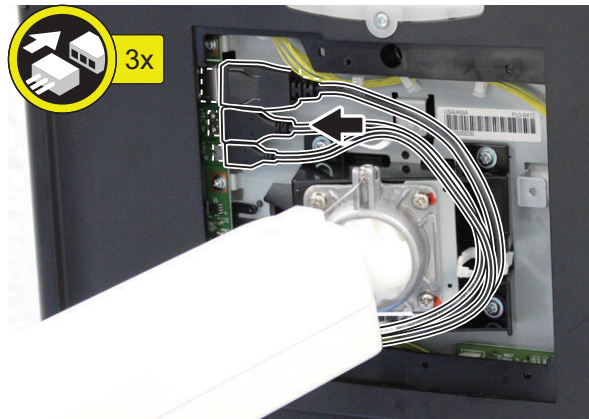
When installing the Upright Control Panel, be sure to tighten the screws from the upper part.

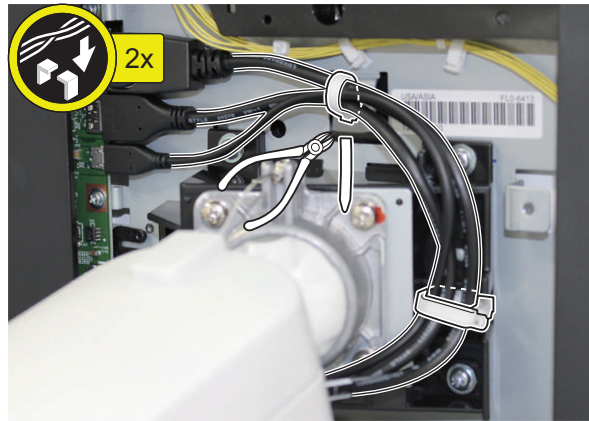


□
13.

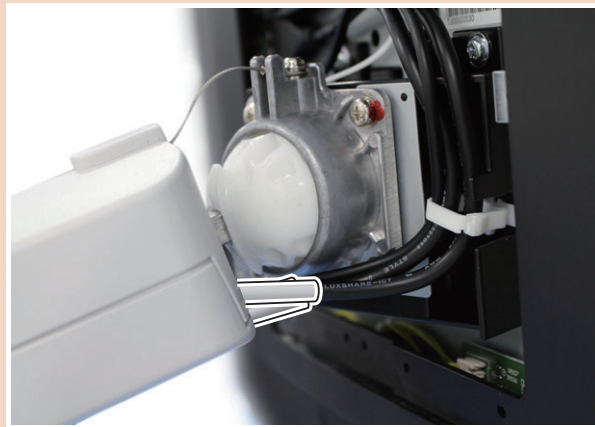


□
14.

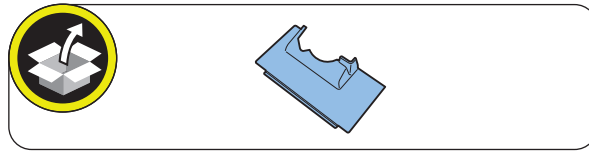


□
15.**CAUTION:**

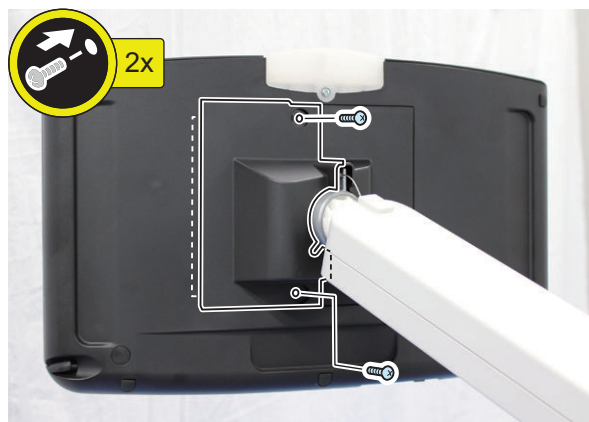
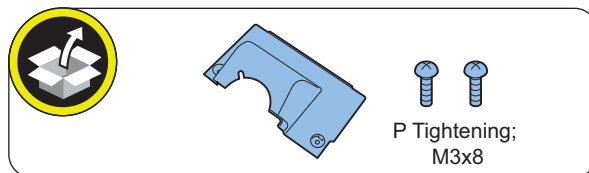
- Check that the white tape of the Control Panel Cables is completely outside the Pipe Cover.
- If not, adjust the cables to positions where the white tape is outside the cover.



□
16.



□
17.



□
18. Connect the power plug to the outlet.



19. If the Protection Sheet has not been removed from the Control Panel, remove it.



20. Turn ON the main power switch. Check that the Upright Control Panel is displayed.



21. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



22. Set the value of the following service mode (Lv.2) to "1".

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > STND-PNL

NOTE:

By executing the above service mode, the following function can be changed.

- The animation of the host machine on the Control Panel screen can be switched from the Flat Control Panel to the Upright Control Panel.
- The [Timeline] button will be displayed on the main menu.



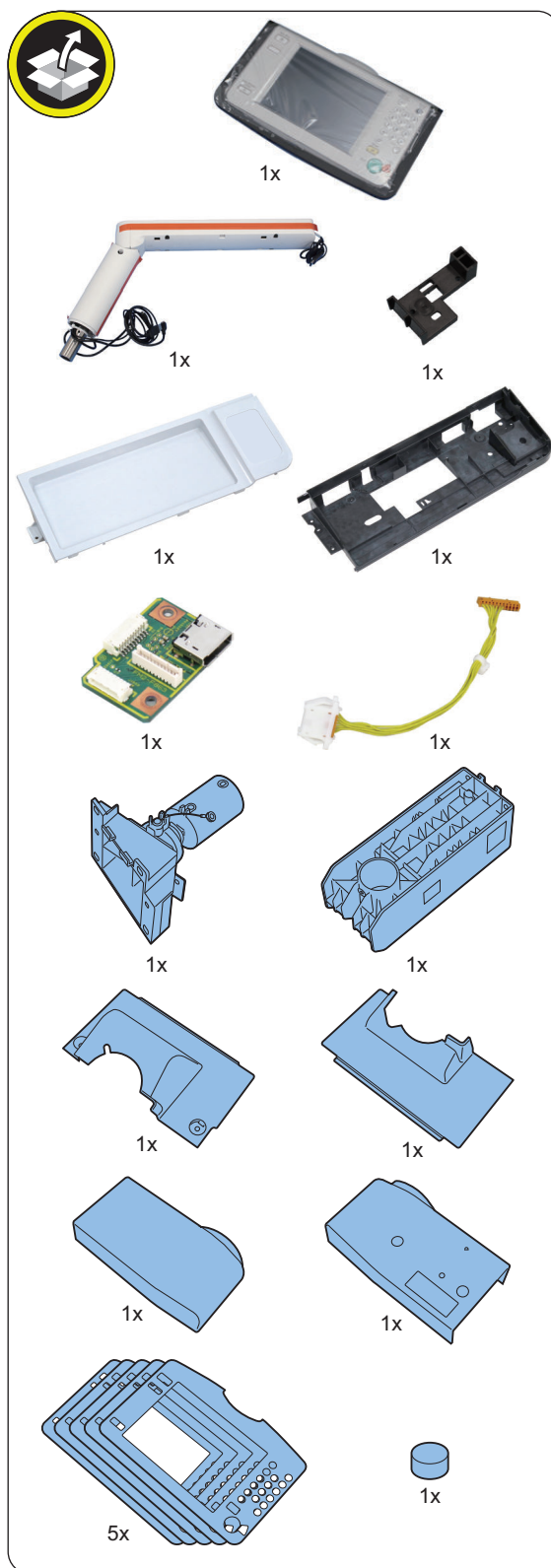
23. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.

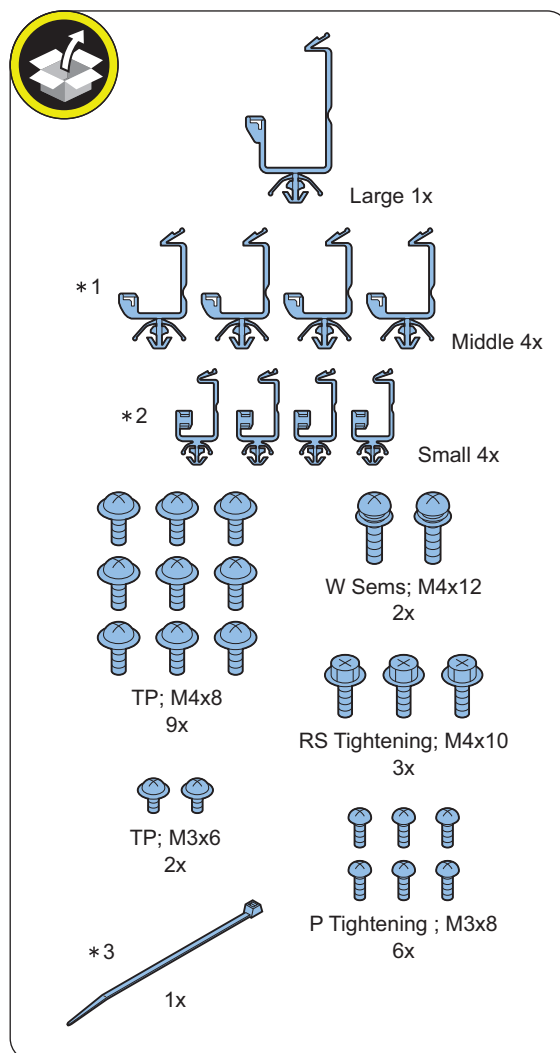
Pre-checks

■ Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

■ Checking the Contents





*1 : With the iR-ADV DX C7780/C7770/C7765 Series, 2 wire saddles (middle) are used.

*2 : With the iR-ADV DX C7780/C7770/C7765 Series, 3 wire saddles (middle) are used.

*3 : With the iR-ADV DX 8705/8795/8786 Series and the iR-ADV DX 6780/6765/6755 Series, the Harness Band is not used.

■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

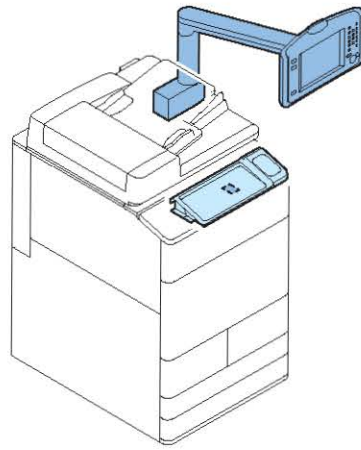
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

■ Installation Outline Drawing



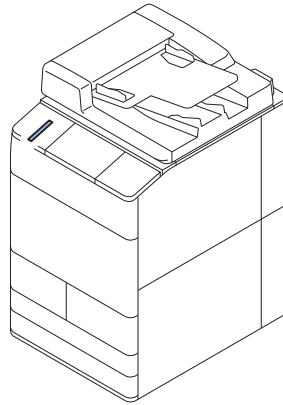
● Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

● Installation Outline Drawing



● Installation Procedure

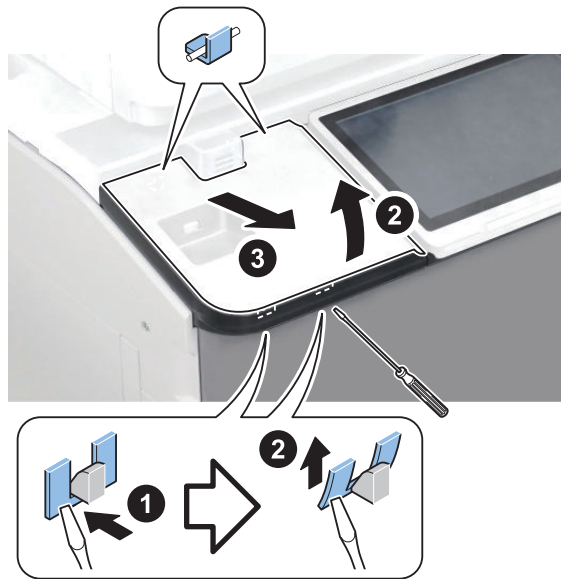
■ Installing the NFC PCB

□

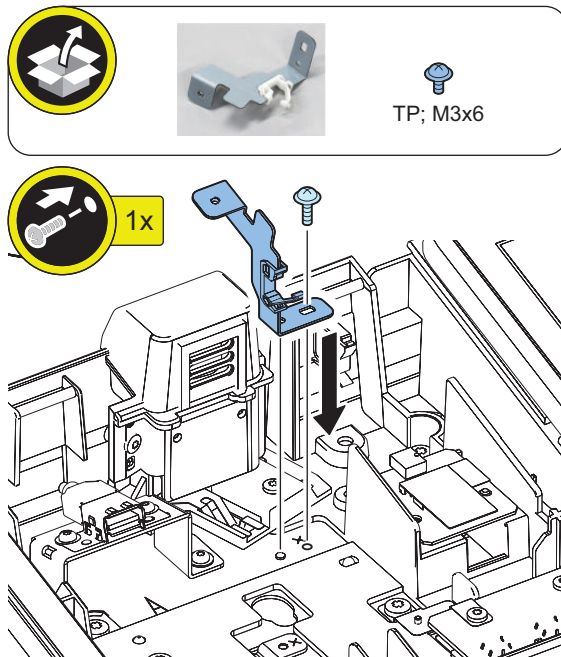
1.



□
2.

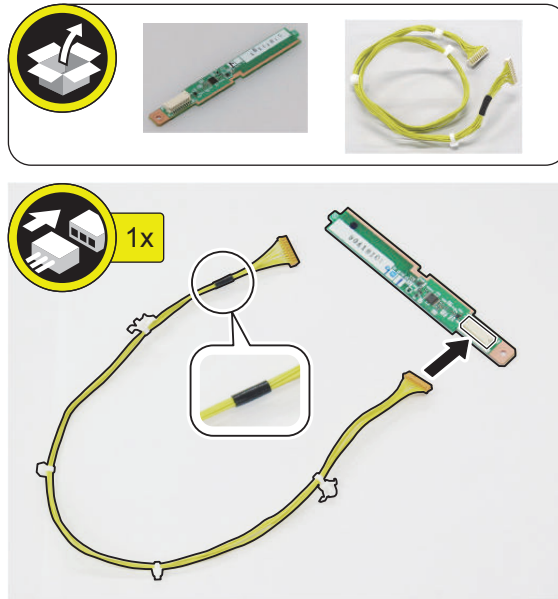


□
3.

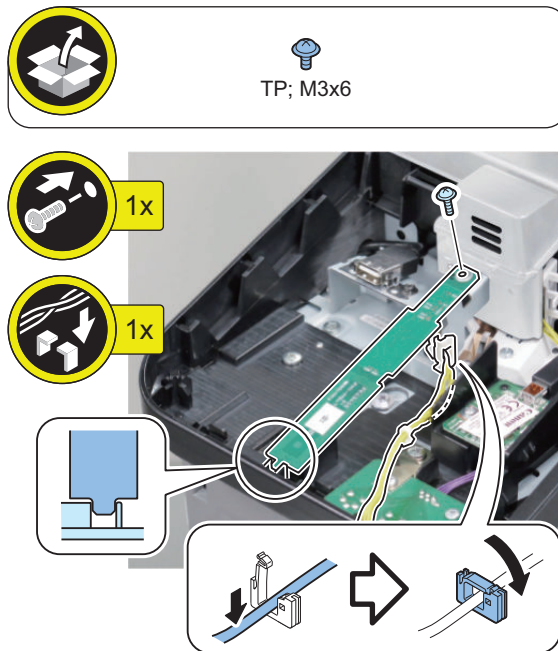


□
4.

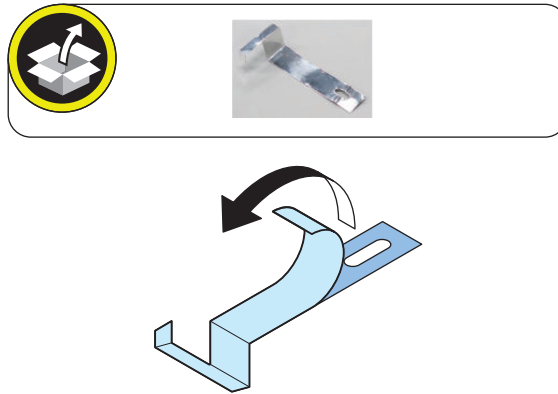
CAUTION:
Connect the cable end which is not wrapped with black tape.



□
5.



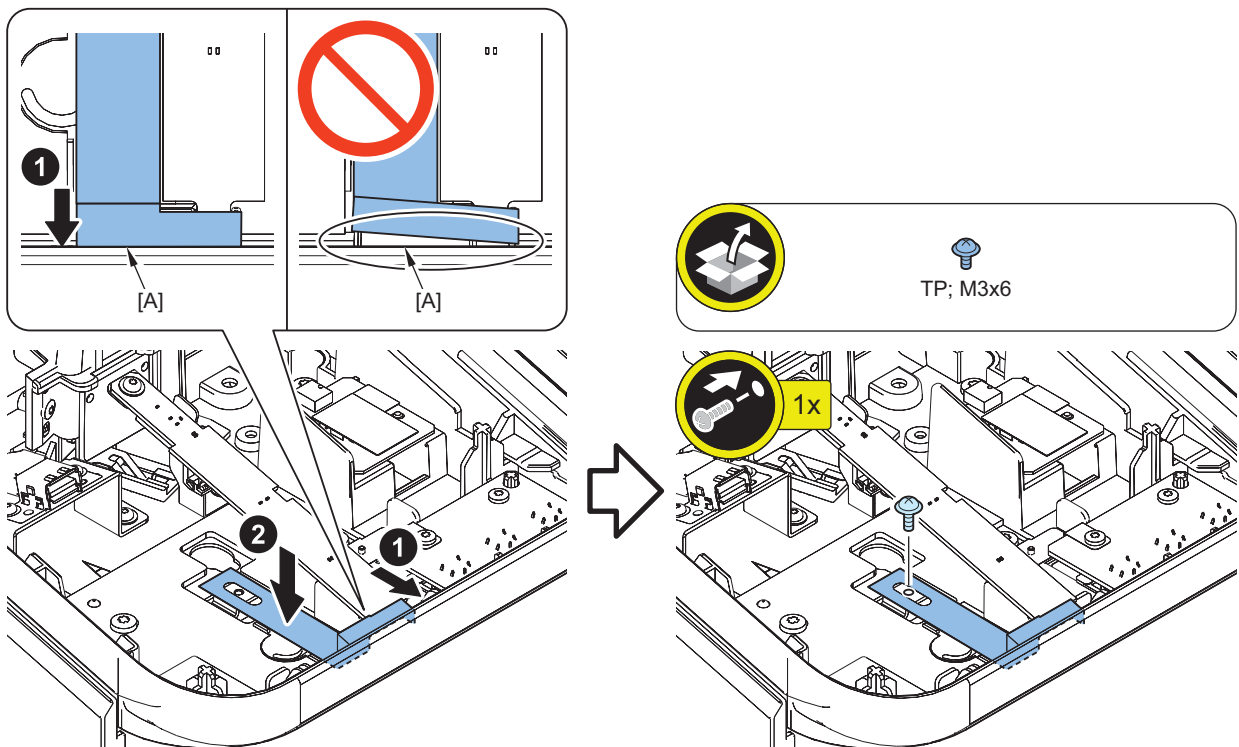
□
6.



□
7.

CAUTION:

Make sure to affix the shield sheet flat against the cover wall [A] without a gap between the shield sheet and the cover. Static electricity from the gap in the Control Panel Left Upper Cover may cause damage to the NFC PCB.

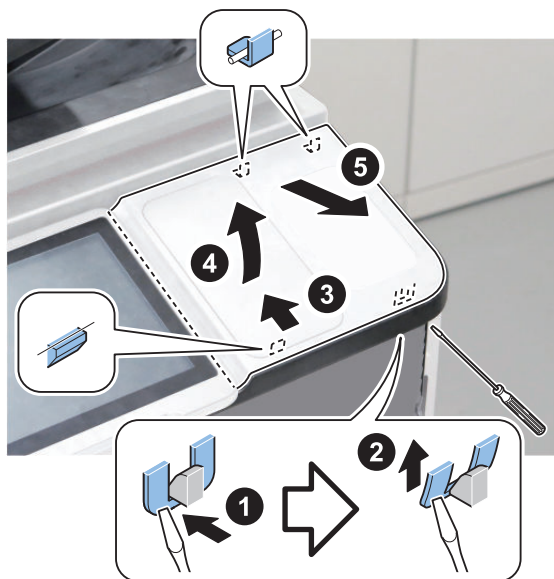


□
8. Next, proceed to the installation procedure for the target parts.

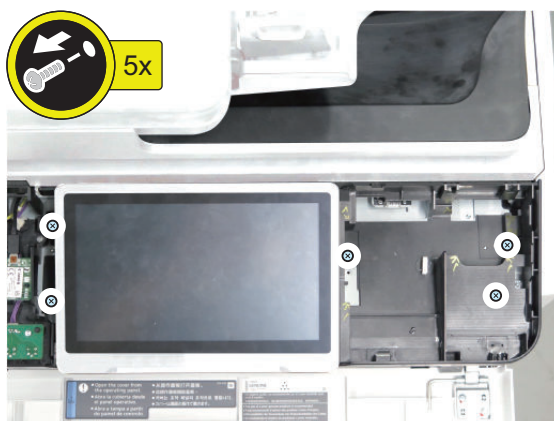
- “Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Flat Control Panel)” on page 198
- “Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Upright Control Panel)” on page 203

■ Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Flat Control Panel)

□
1.



□
2.



NOTE:

The removed screw will be used in step 10.

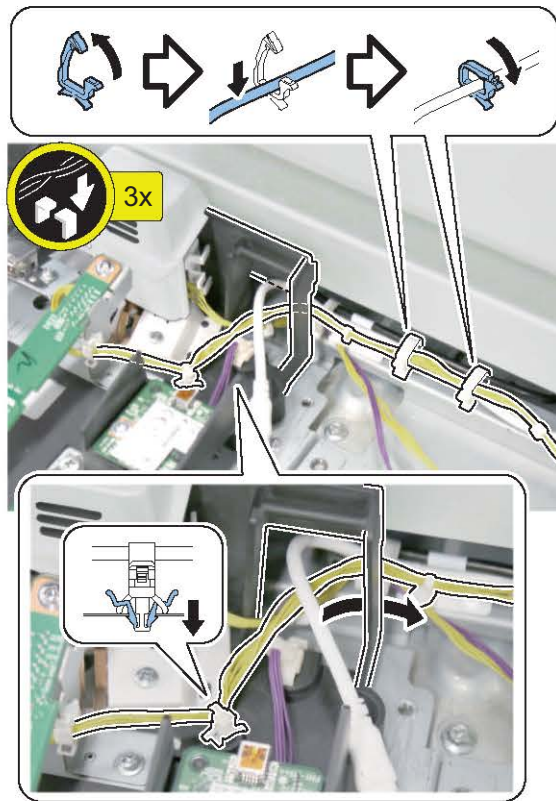
□
3.



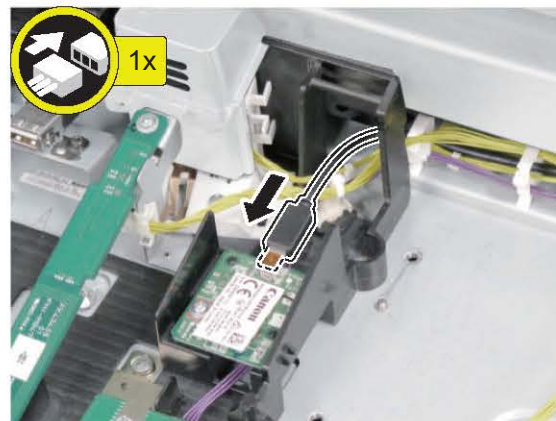
□
4.



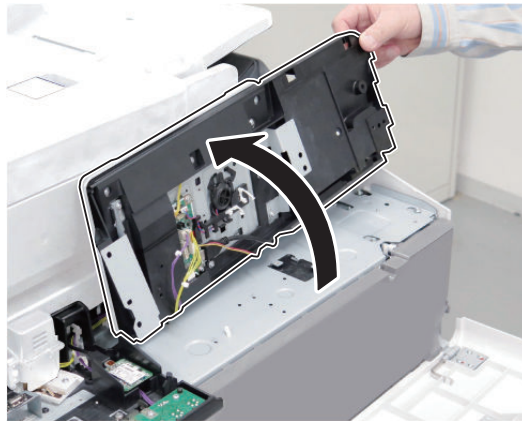
□
5.



□
6.



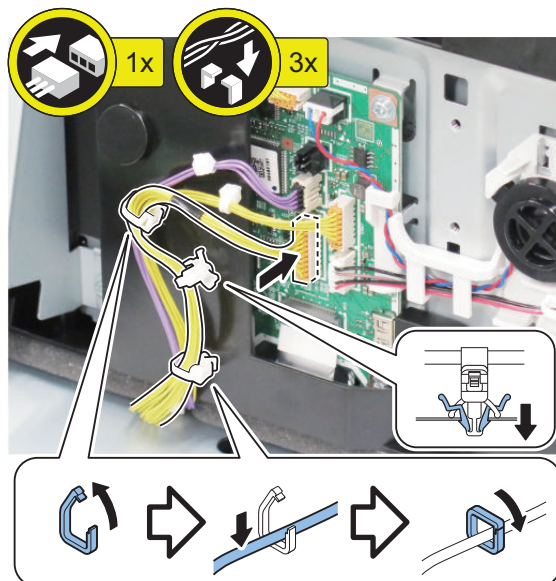
□
7.



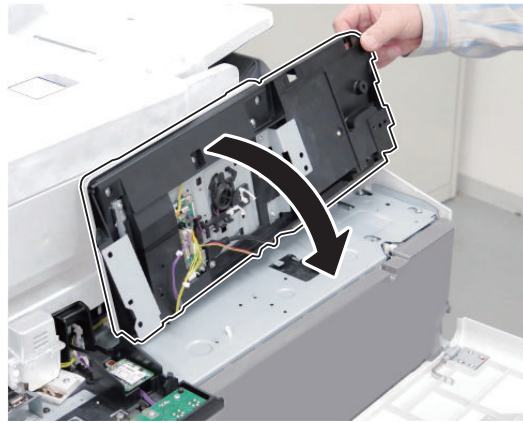
□
8.

CAUTION:

Make sure to check if any connectors are disconnected by pushing again all the connectors connected to the Flat Control Panel Unit.



□
9.

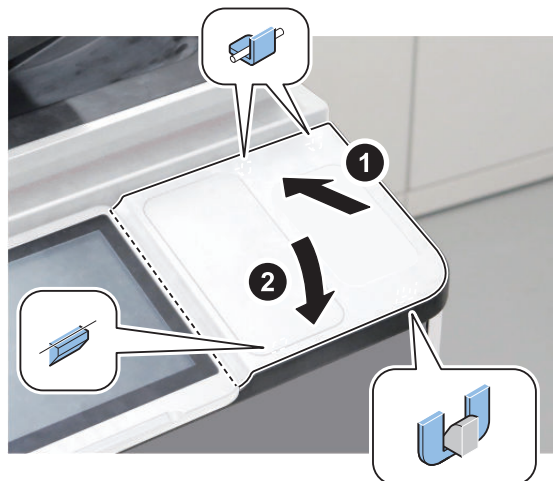


□
10.

NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 2.



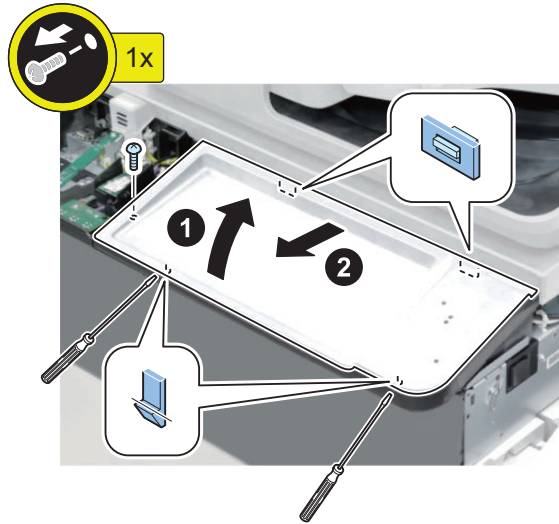
□
11.



□
12. Next, proceed to “Affixing the NFC Labels” on page 208.

■ **Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Upright Control Panel)**

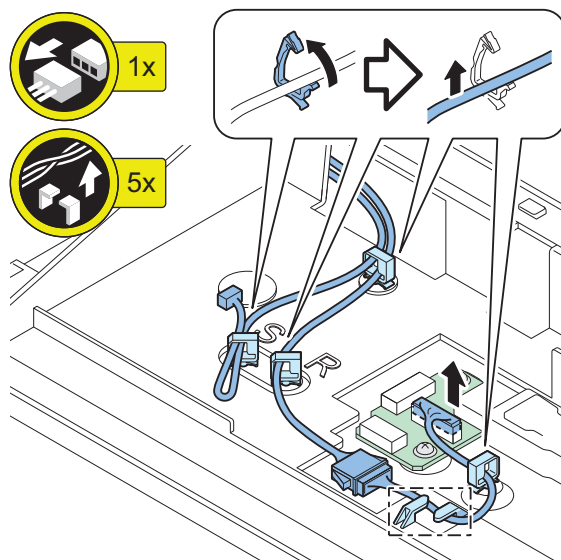
□
1.



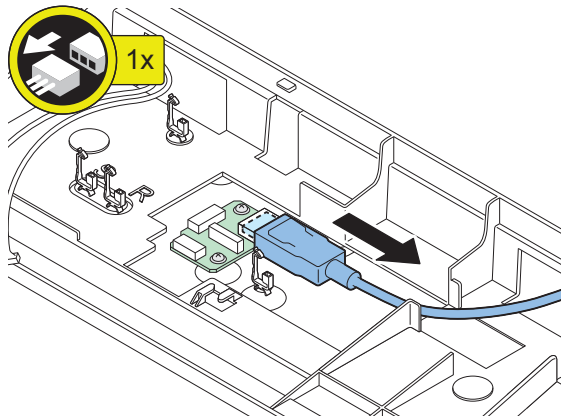
NOTE:

The removed screw will be used in step 11.

□
2.



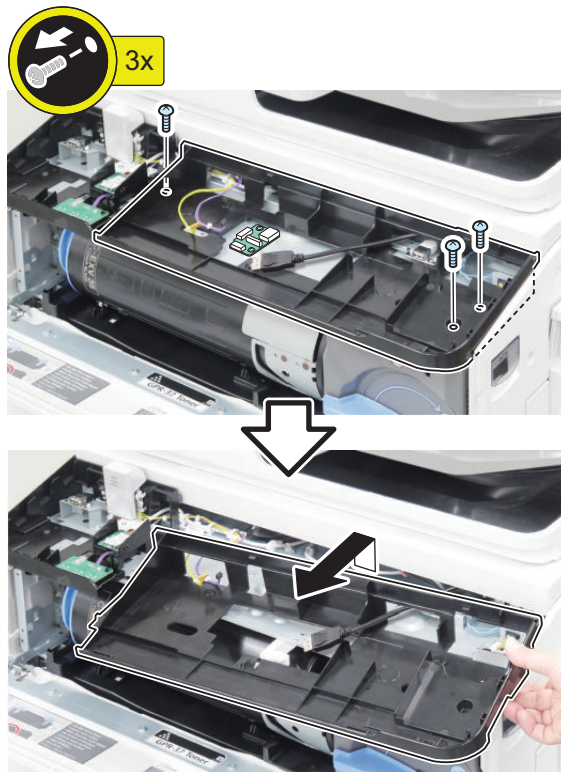
□
3.



□
4.

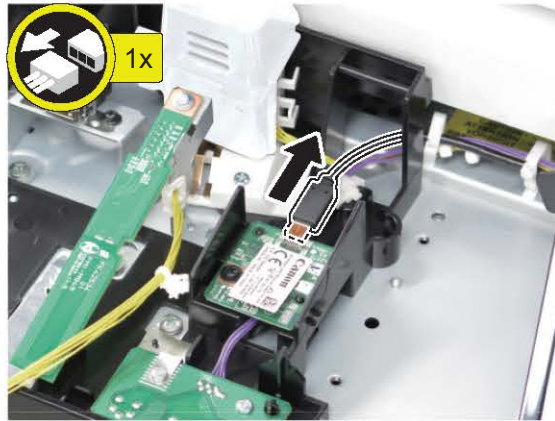
NOTE:

Slightly pull the Front Tray Lower Unit without pulling out the cables that pass through it.

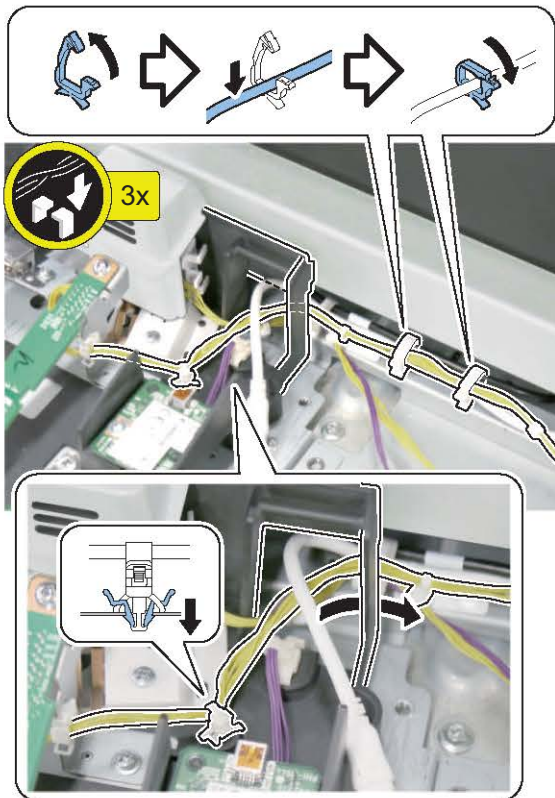
**NOTE:**

The removed screw will be used in step 8.

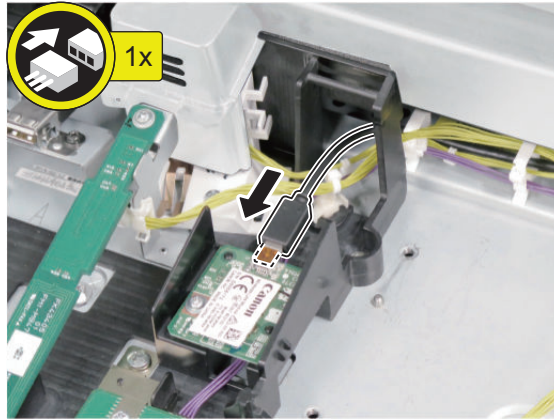
□
5.



□
6.

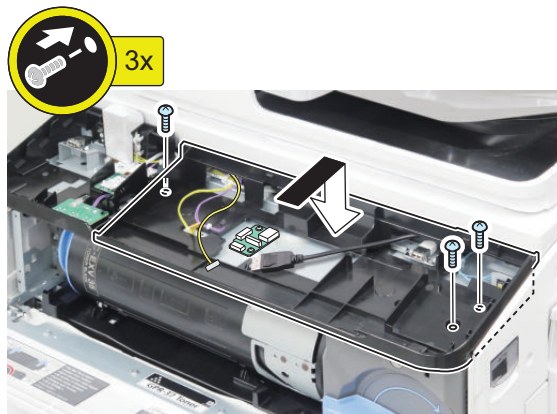


□
7.

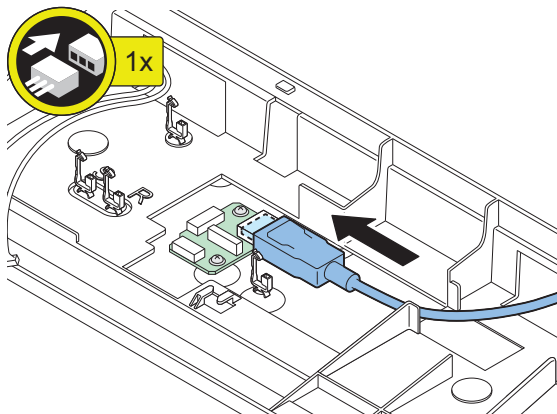


□
8.

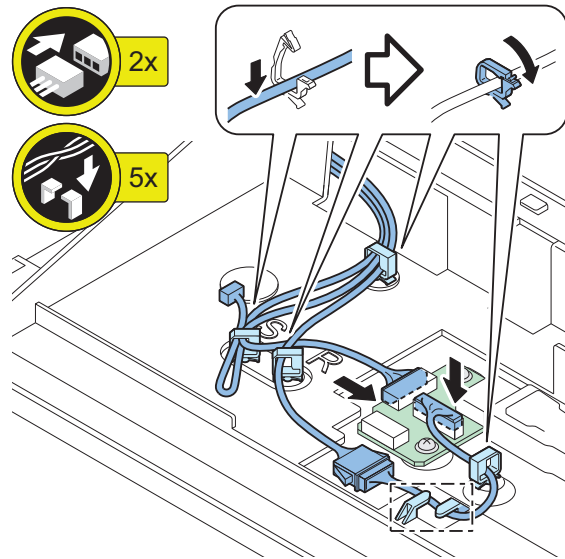
NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 4.



□
9.



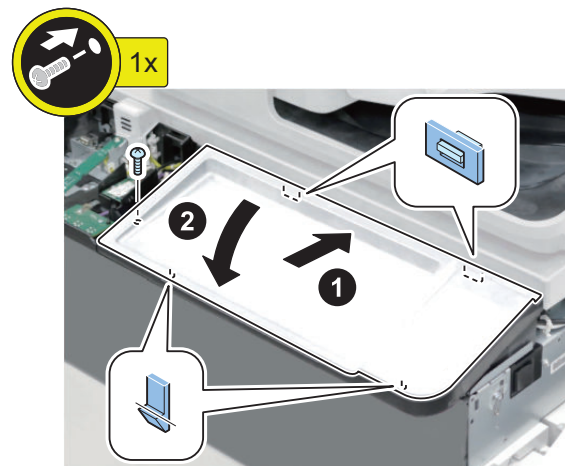
□
10.



□
11.

NOTE:

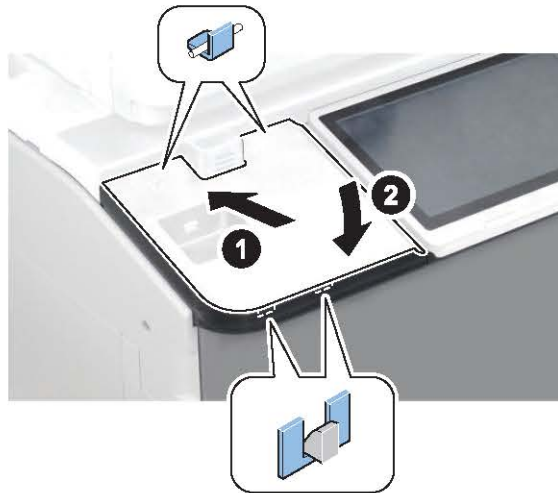
Use the screws removed in step 1.



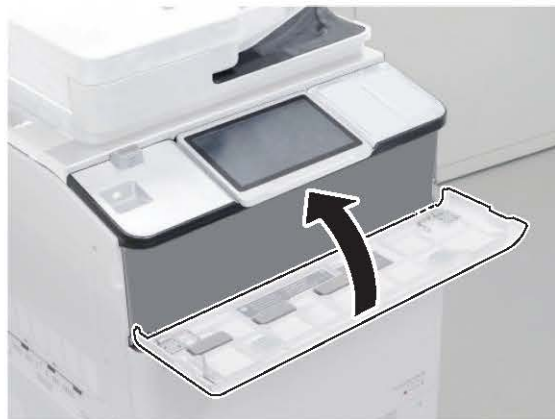
□
12. Next, proceed to [“Affixing the NFC Labels”](#) on page 208.

■ Affixing the NFC Labels

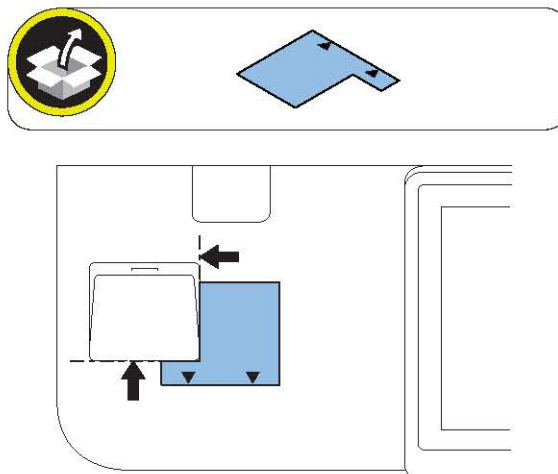
□
1.



□
2.

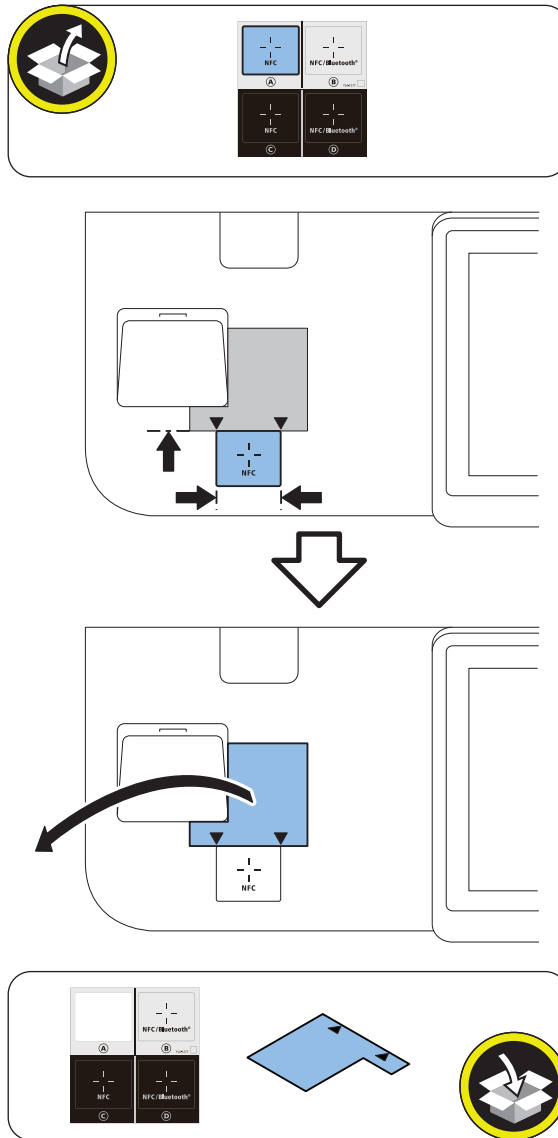


□
3.



□
4.

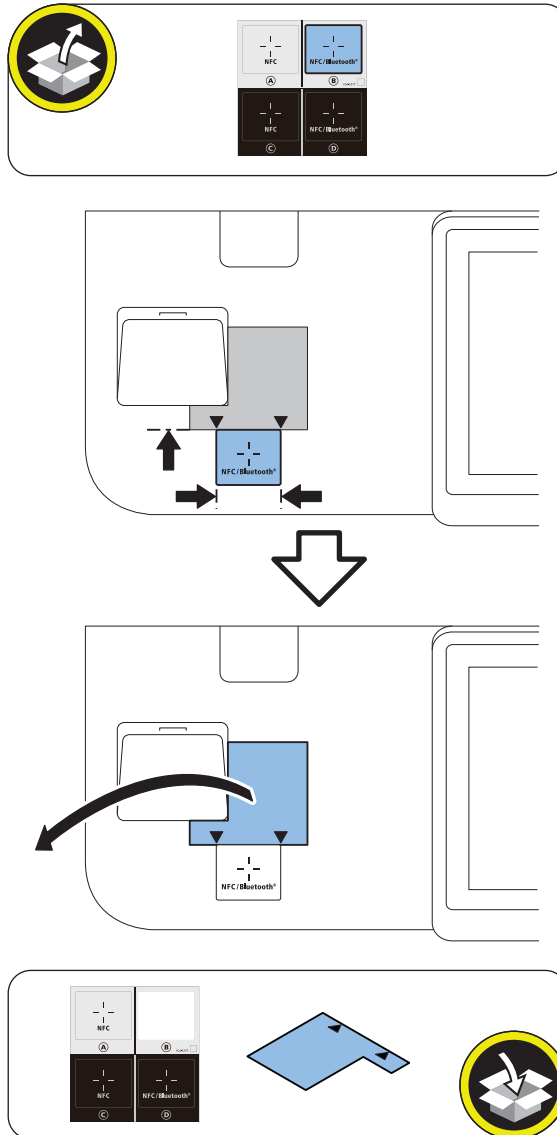
< When installing with the NFC Kit >



< When installing with the Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE at the same time >

NOTE:

If "Bluetooth" Label is already affixed there, remove the label and wipe off the glue with alcohol.



■ Setting after Installation



1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.
3. Enter service mode and set the value to "1".
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > NFC-USE

NOTE:

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions of the user administrator.

4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Device Management] > [Use NFC Card Emulation], and set the item to "ON".
5. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

6. When a message prompting the version update is displayed, press [Update] and automatically update the version of this equipment.

CAUTION:

It may take time to display the update screen. (Approx. 1 to 2 min.) During this time, do not operate the screen.

7. Check the end of the following service mode.

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION > PANEL

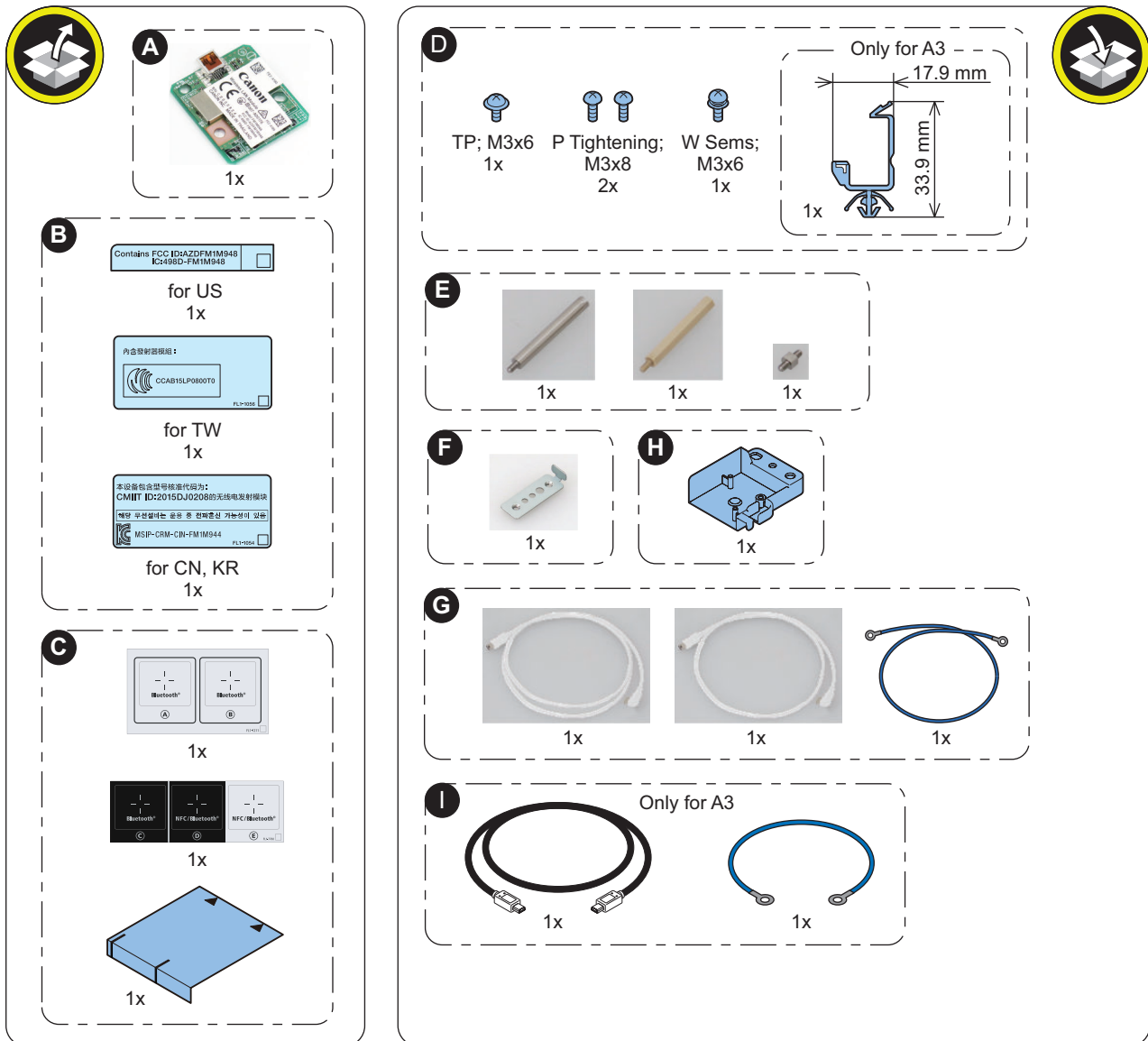
- If the end is an even number (e.g. 01.26): NFC is not installed.
- If the end is an odd number (e.g. 01.27): NFC is installed.

Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE

Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Checking the Contents



Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

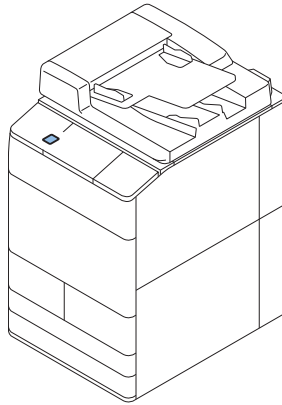
● Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

● Installation Outline Drawing

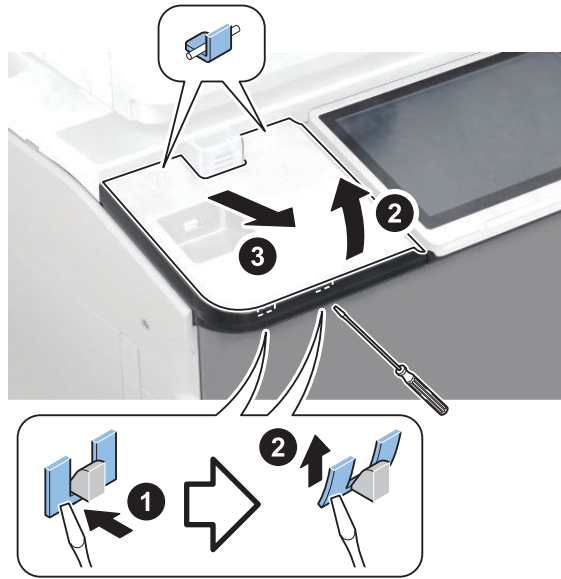


● Installation Procedure

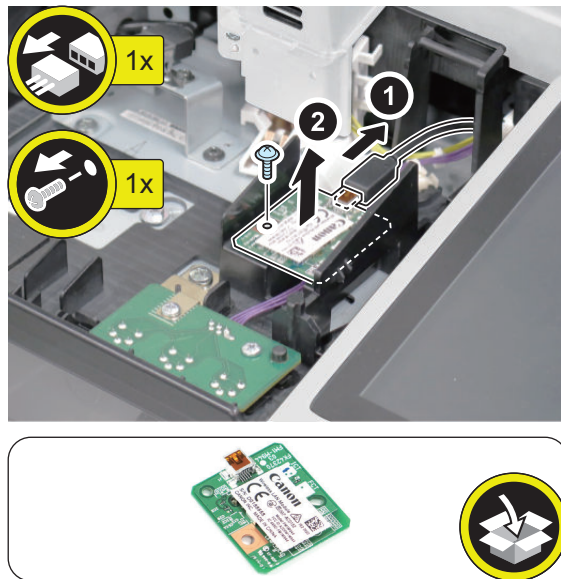
□
1.



□
2.



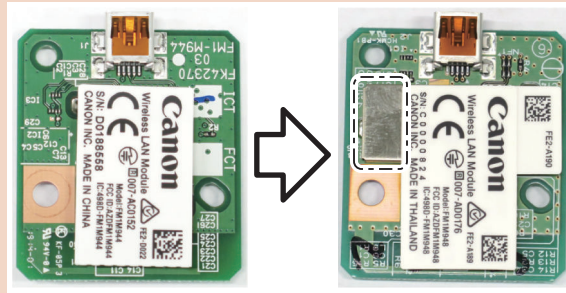
□
3.



NOTE:
The removed screw will be used in a next step.

CAUTION:

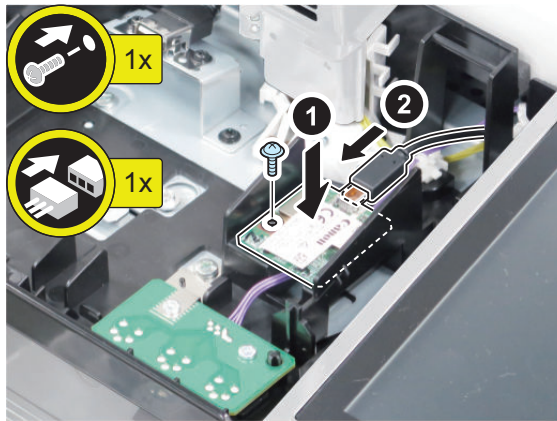
Replace the removed Wi-Fi PCB with the optional Bluetooth PCB. Be sure to mount the correct one.



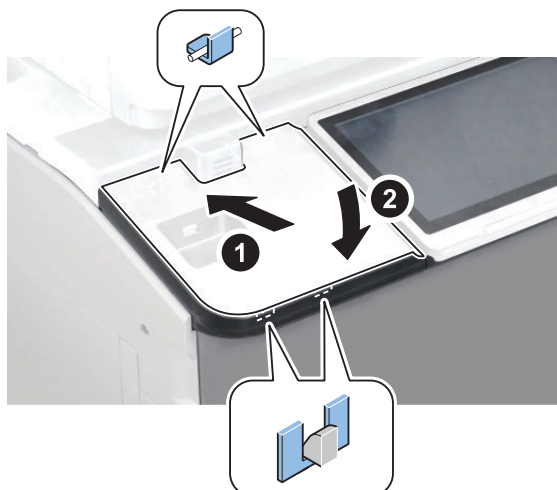
□
4.

NOTE:

Use the screw removed in the previous step.



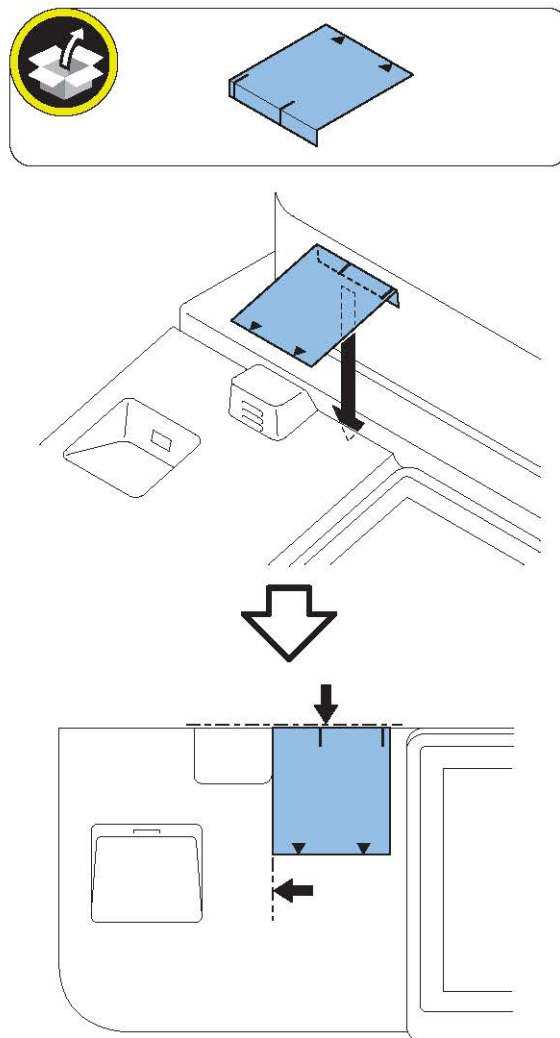
□
5.



□
6.

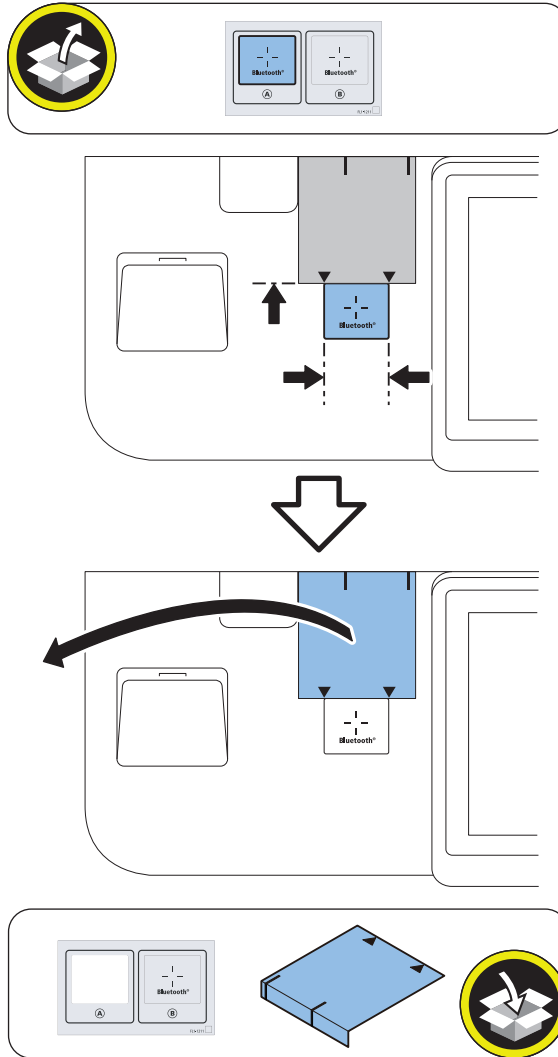


□
7.



□
8.

< When installing with the Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE >

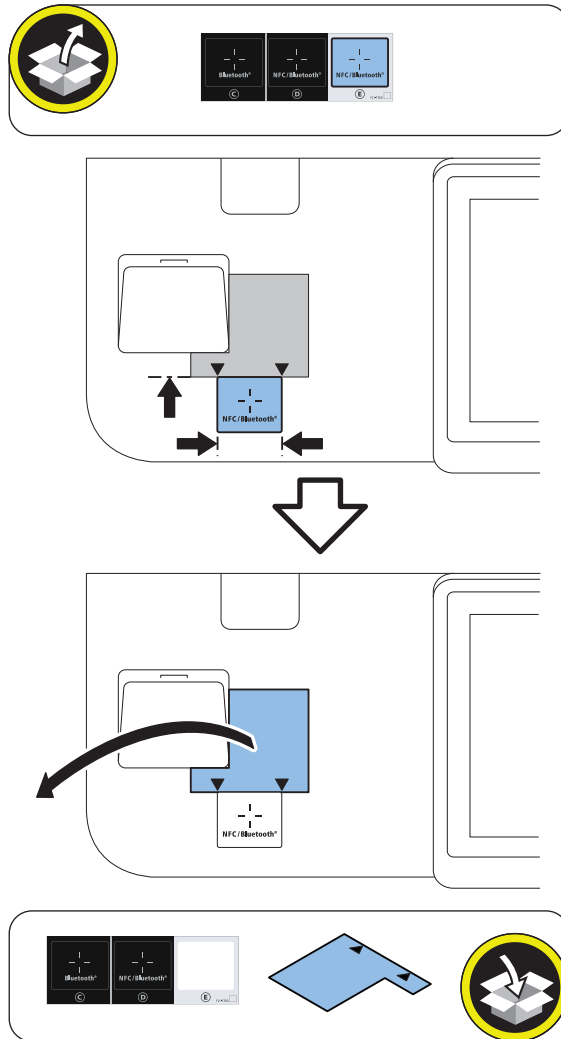


< When installing with the NFC Kit at the same time >

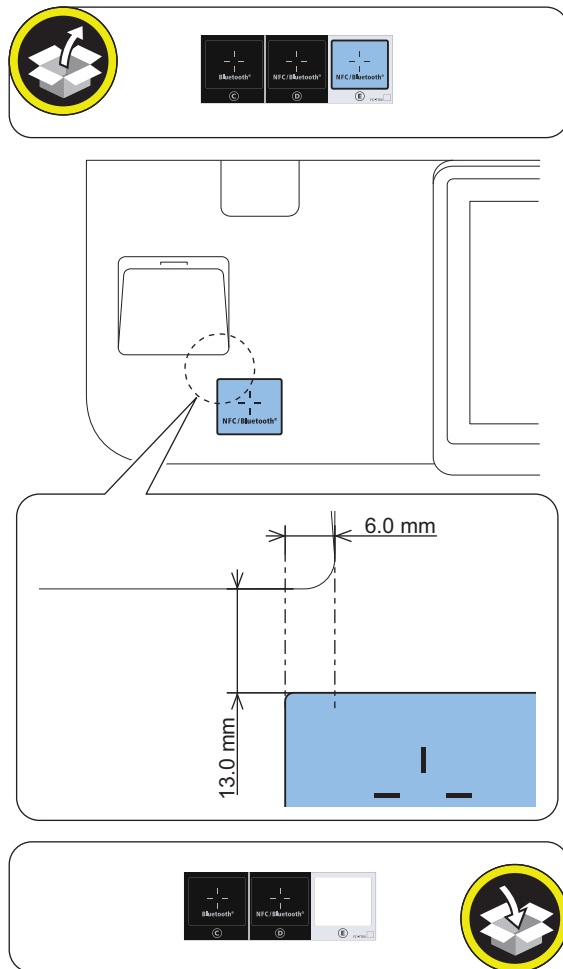
NOTE:

If "Bluetooth" Label is already affixed there, remove the label and wipe off the glue with alcohol before affixing the new label.

- When the Target Sheet for the NFC Kit is available



- When the Target Sheet for the NFC Kit is not available



■ Affixing the Wireless LAN Approval Label

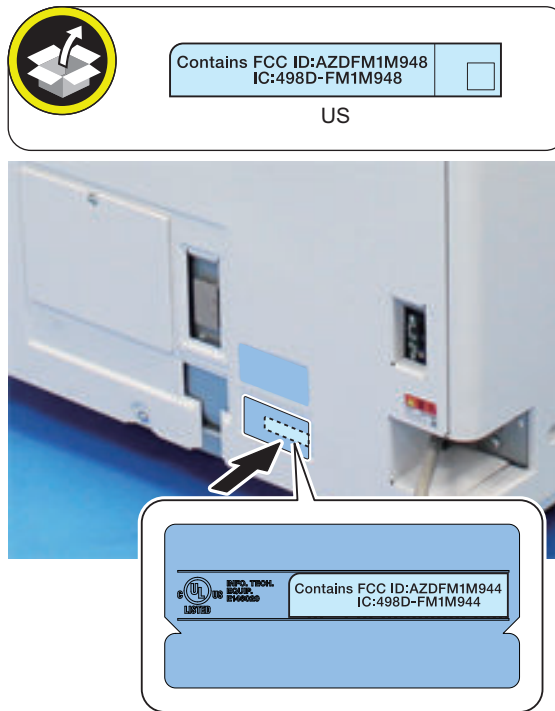
□
1.

NOTE:

In countries other than the following countries, it is not necessary to affix the Approval Label.

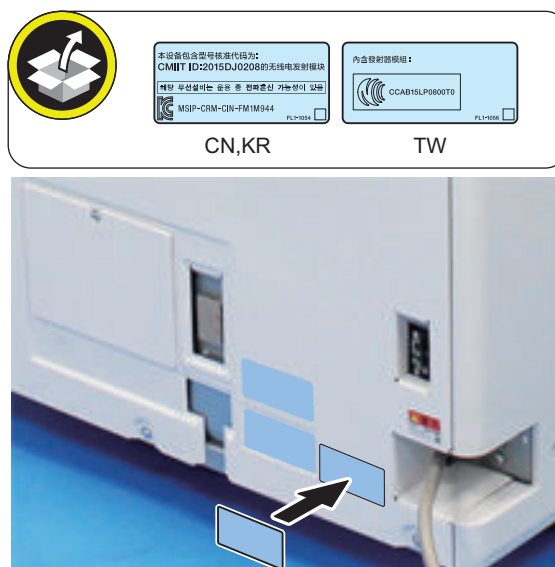
< For US >

Affix it over the number on the Wireless LAN Approval Label.



< For CN, KR, and TW >

Affix it over the Wireless LAN Approval Label.



Setting after Installation



1. **Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.**
2. **Turn ON the main power switch.**
3. **In the following Service Mode, set the value to "1."**
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > BLE-USE

NOTE:

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions of the user administrator.

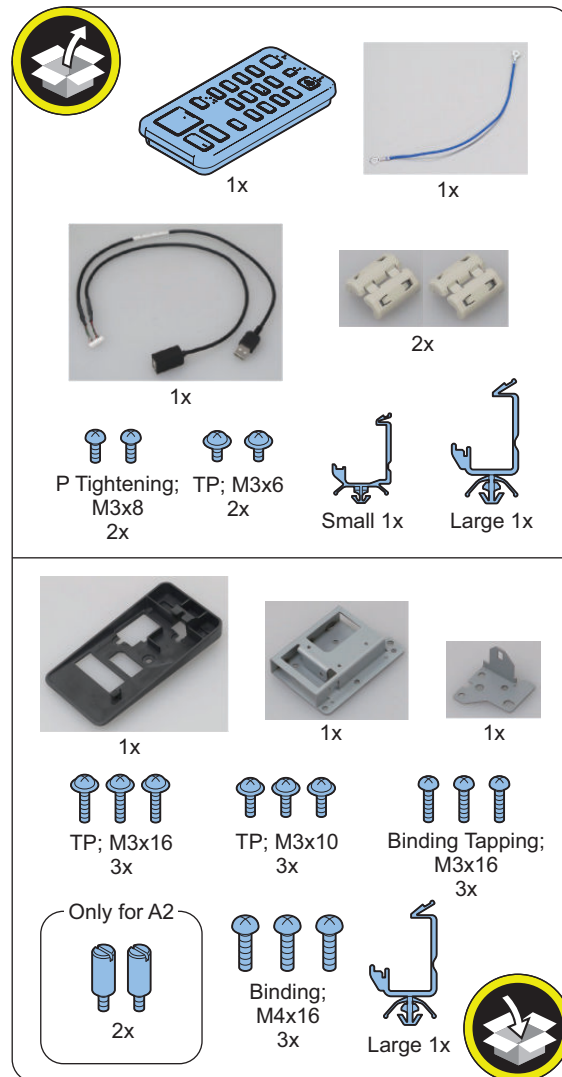
4. **Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes], and set the item [ON].**
5. **Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Bluetooth Settings] > [Use Bluetooth] > [ON].**
6. **The message "Perform Apply Setting Changes from Settings/Registration" appears in the Touch Panel Display.**
7. **Perform "Apply Setting Changes."**
Press [Settings/Registration] > [Yes].

Numeric Keypad-A1/A2

Points to Note before Installation

- When installing the Numeric Keypad and the IC Card Reader at the same time, be sure to install the Numeric Keypad first.
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Checking the Contents



Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

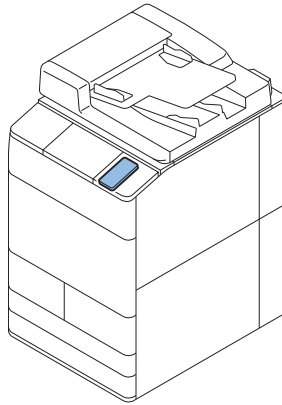
● Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

● Installation Outline Drawing

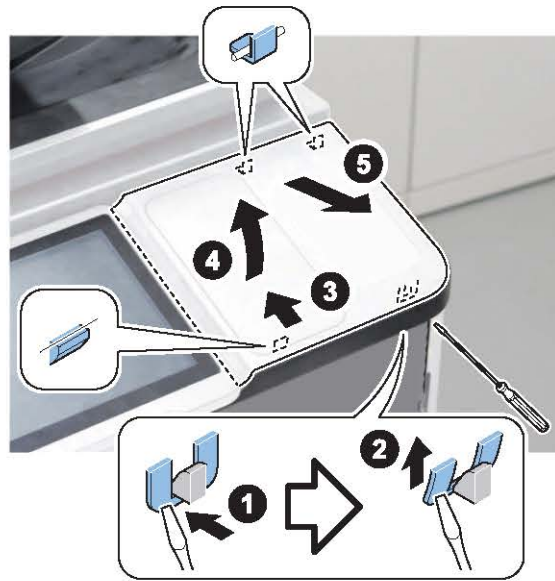


● Installation Procedure

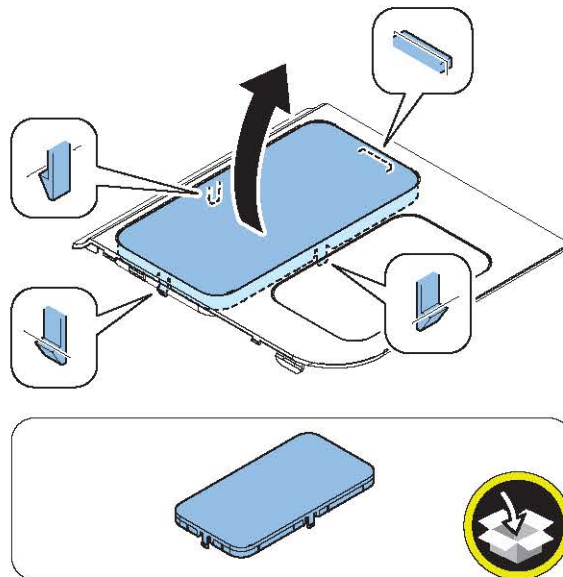
□
1.



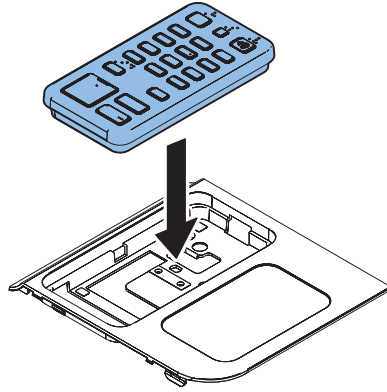
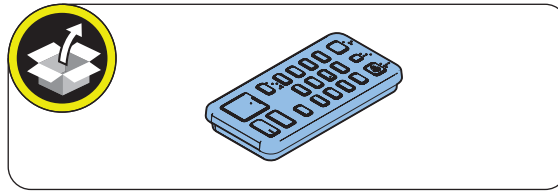
□
2.



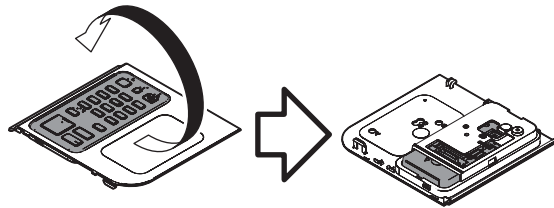
□
3.



□
4.



□
5.



□
6.

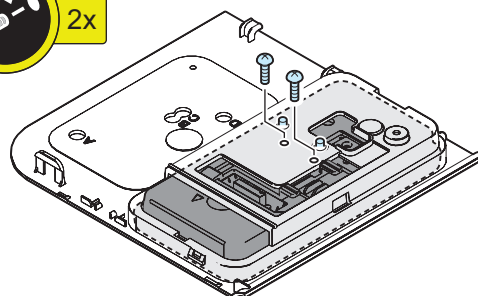
CAUTION:

Be sure to check that the 2 bosses are fitted securely.

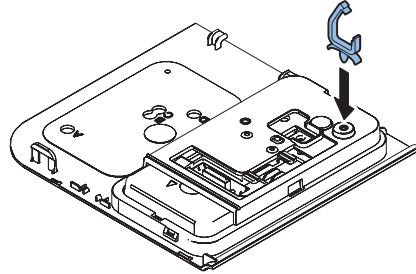
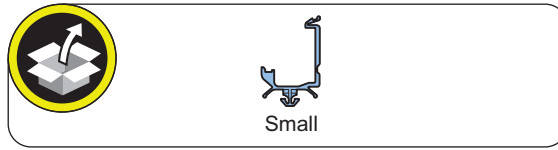
Installing the Control Panel Right Upper Cover while the bosses are not fitted securely will cause rattling.



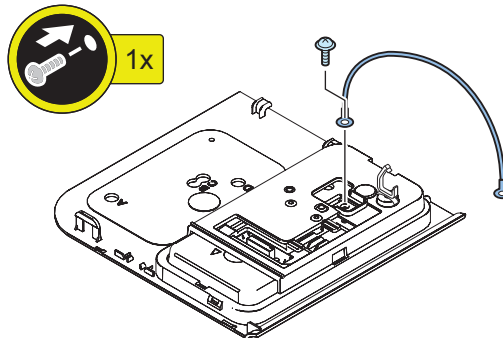
P Tightening; M3x8



□
7.

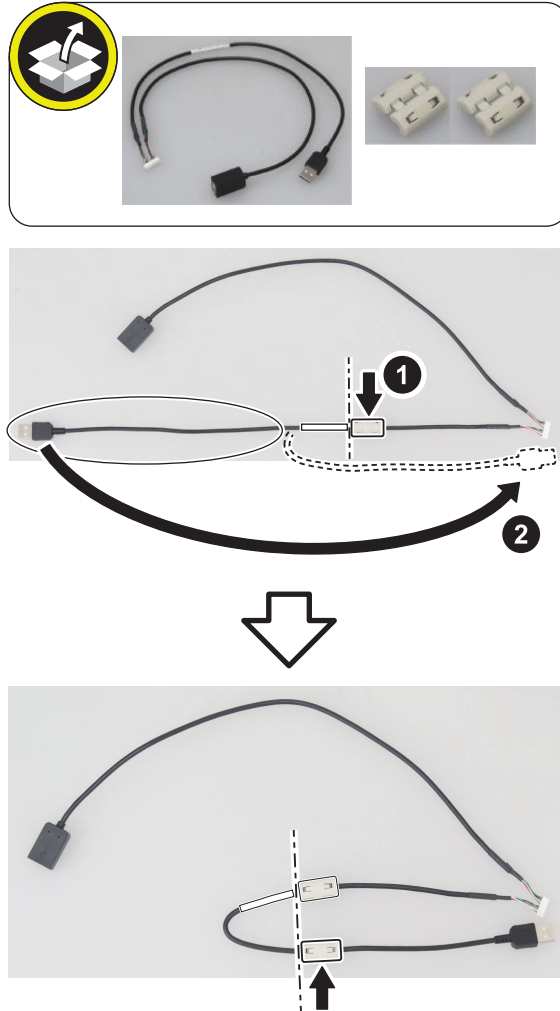


□
8.

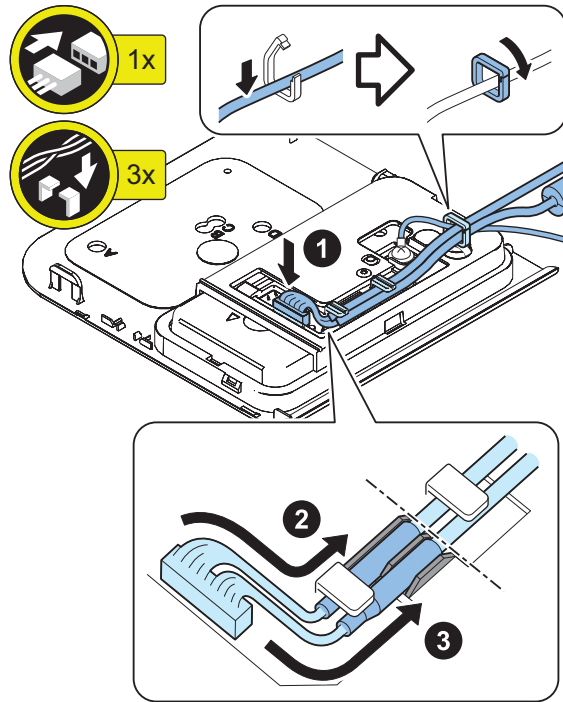


□
9.**NOTE:**

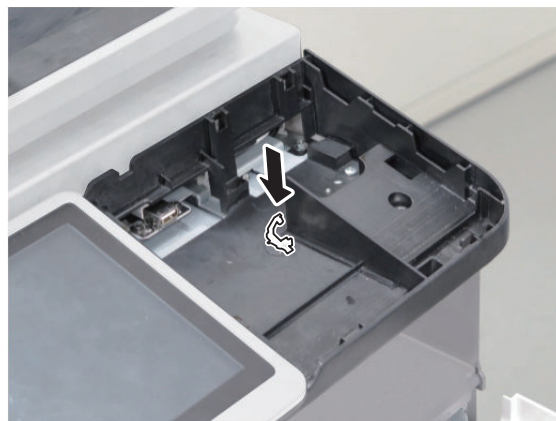
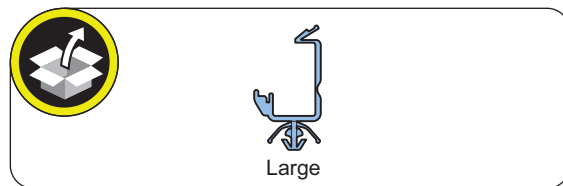
Attach the first core along with the white tape affixed to the Numeric Keypad cable. Fold the cable as shown in the figure, and attach the second core in a line-symmetric position with respect to the core attached first.



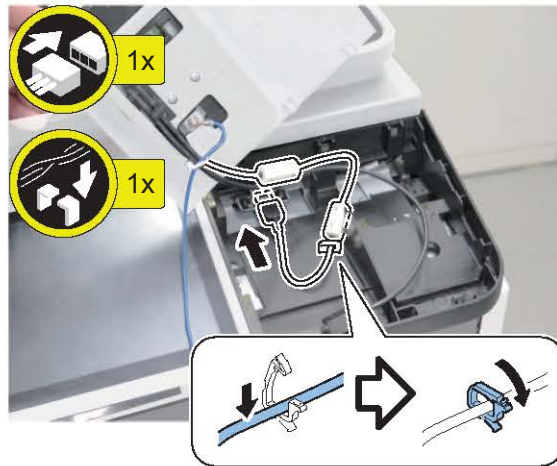
□
10.



□
11.



□
12.

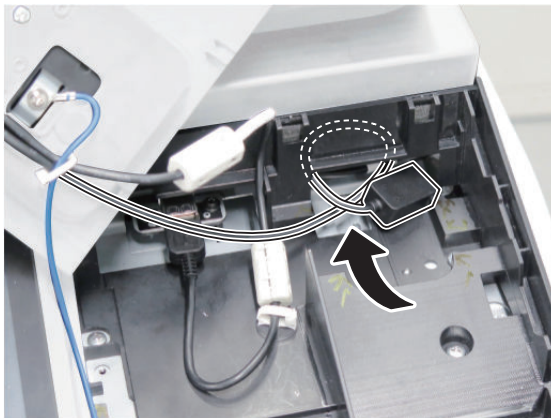


13.

< When installing the Numeric Keypad only >

NOTE:

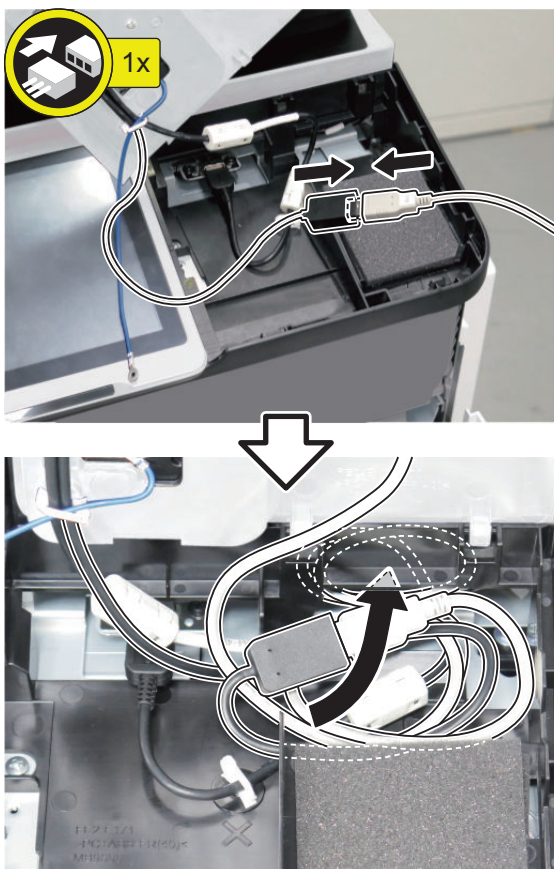
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



< When installing with the IC Card Reader at the same time >

NOTE:

Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.

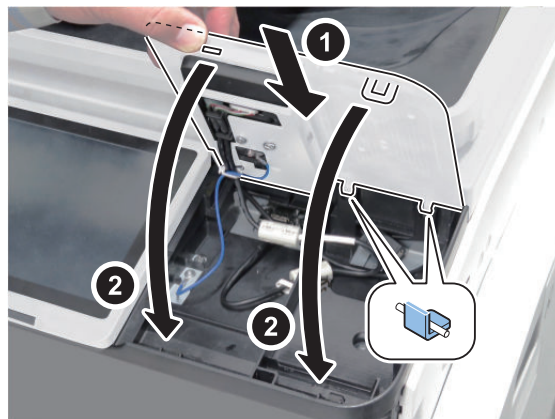


□
14.



□
15.

CAUTION:
Place the Core in the position as shown in the figure.



□
16.



□
17. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

18. Turn ON the main power switch.

Utility Tray-B1

Points to Note at Installation

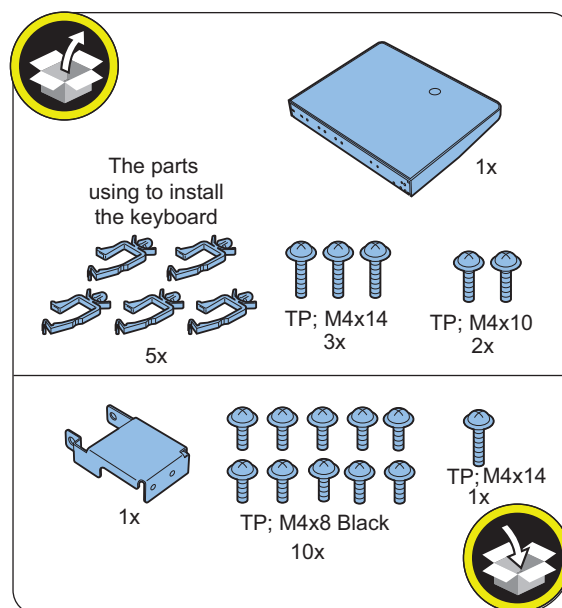
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- Refer to "Table of Options Combination" when installing this equipment before operation.

Table of Options Combination

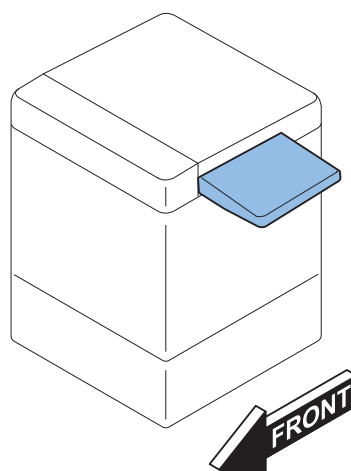
	Voice Operation	Voice Guidance Kit	Copy Card Reader
Utility Tray	No	No	Yes

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing



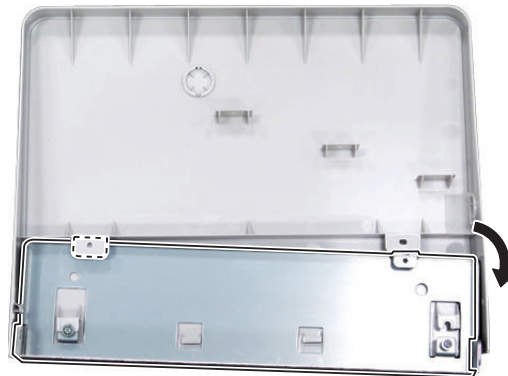
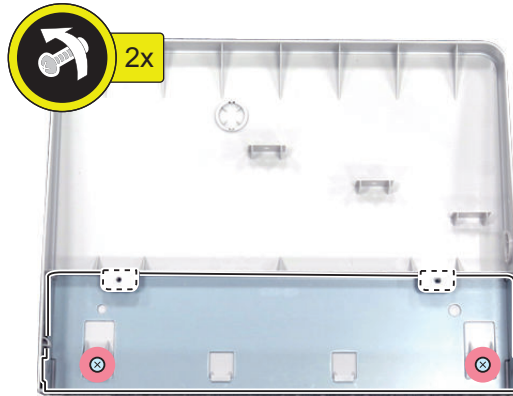
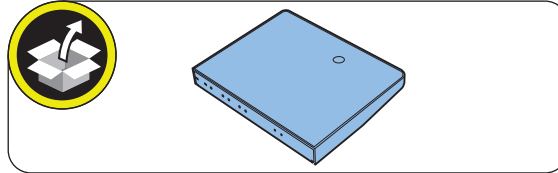
Installation Procedure



1. Remove packing tapes.

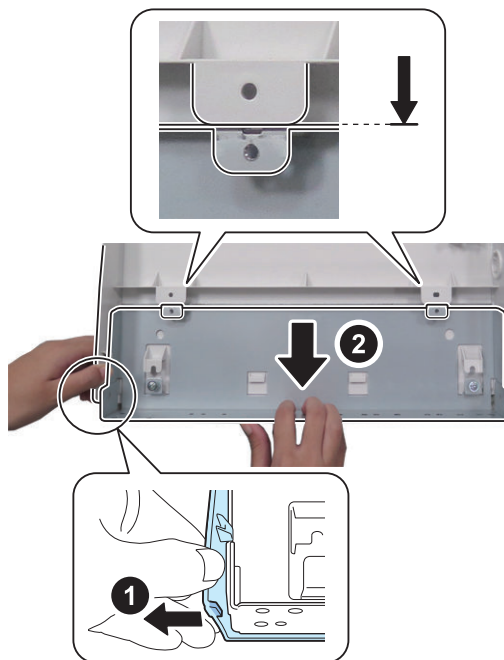
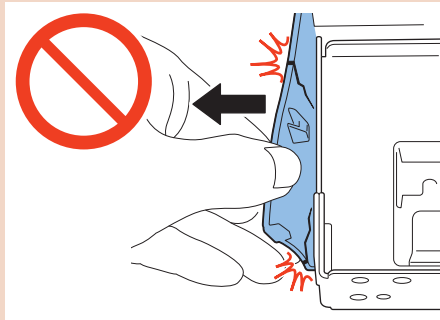


2.



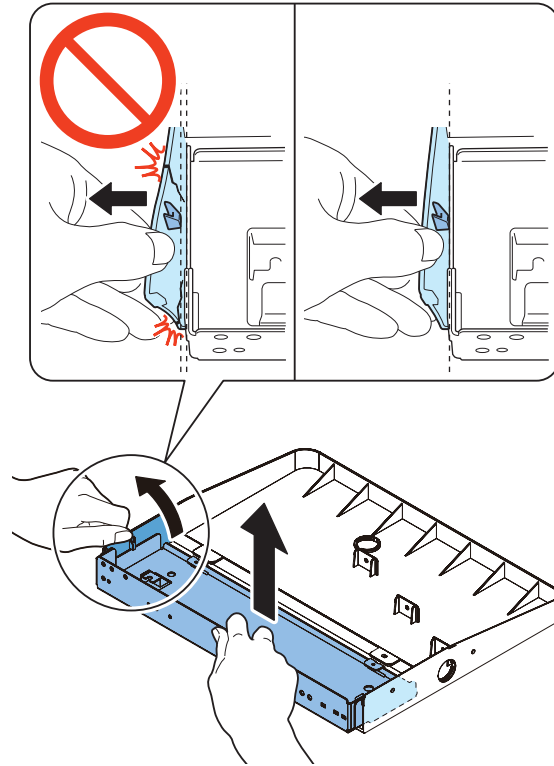
□
3.**CAUTION:**

To avoid damage, do not pull the Utility Tray too much.



□
4.**CAUTION:**

To avoid damage, do not pull the Utility Tray too much.

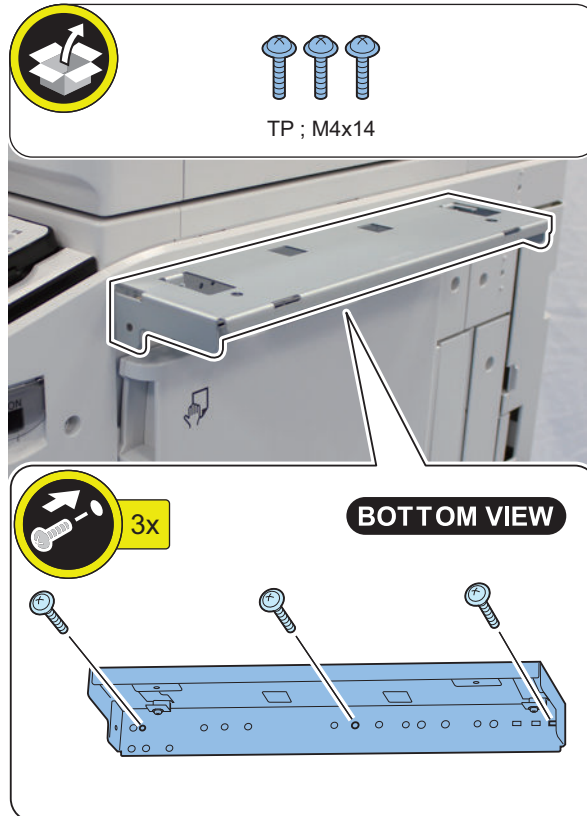
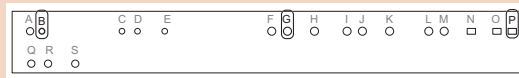
□
5.

□
6.

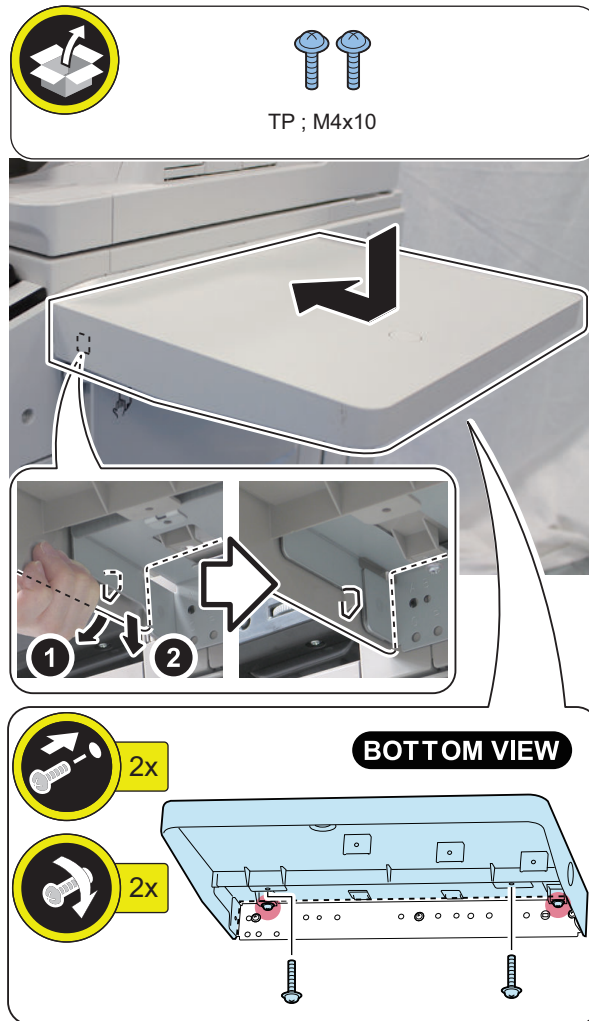
CAUTION:

Points to Note at Installation

If the holes are marked as shown below, align the holes marked with B, G and P with the holes in the host machine

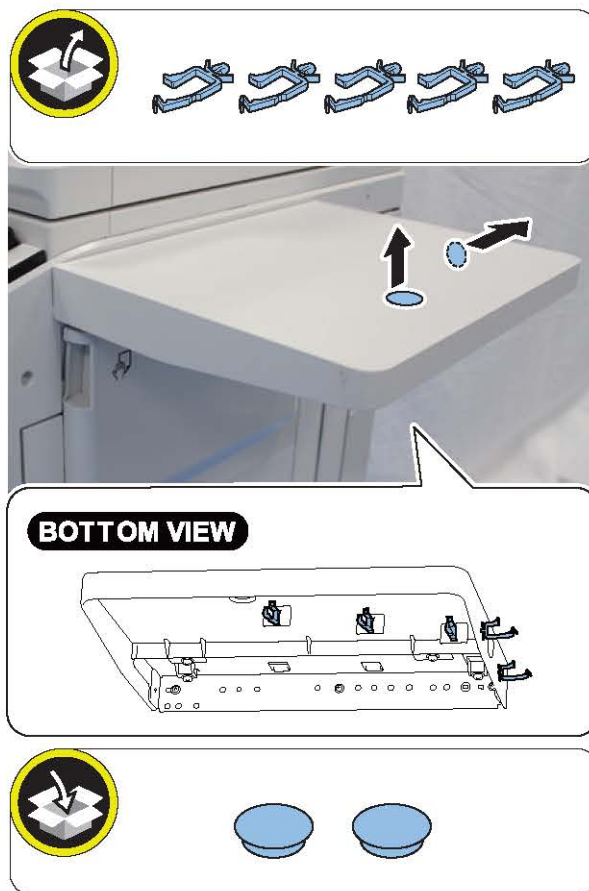


□
7.



■ When Installing the USB Keyboard

□
1.



Copy Card Reader-F1

Points to Note at Installation

- To install this equipment, the Copy Card Reader Attachment is required.
- After installing the Copy Card Reader, input the card number to be used in service mode. Otherwise the card cannot be recognized even though it is inserted.
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Table of Options Combination

	Utility Tray	Voice Operation	Voice Guidance Kit	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit
Copy Card Reader	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

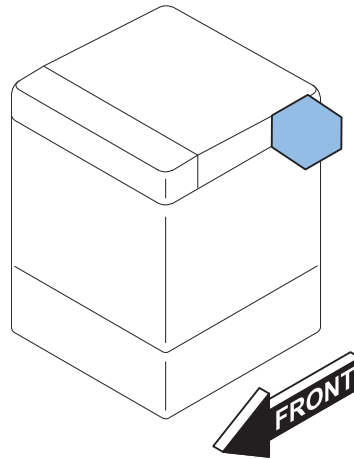
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.




COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing

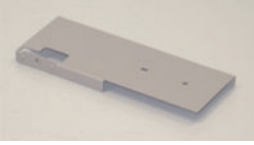

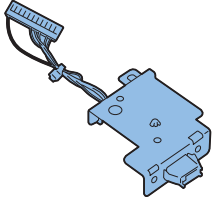
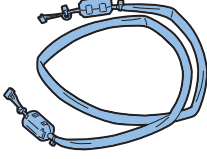


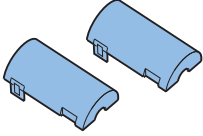
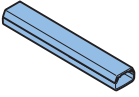
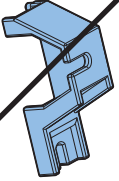










Checking the Contents

<Copy Card Reader-F1>

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Card Reader Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Toothed washer X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (RS tight; M4x10) X 1 	

<Copy Card Reader Attachment- A4>

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Card Reader Mounting Plate X 1 Used only for the Upright Control Panel 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Card Reader Mounting Plate X 1 Used only for the Flat Control Panel 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Card Reader Relay Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Card Reader External Relay Harness X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Connector Cover1 X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Connector Cover2 X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Connector Case X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Cord Guide X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Connector Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] PCB Spacer X 1 

<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (Binding; M3x6) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M4x12) X 1 Used only for the Upright Control Panel 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (RS tight; M4x8) X 1 Used only for the Upright Control Panel 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (Binding; M4x20) X 1 Used only for the Flat Control Panel 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 1 Used only for the Flat Control Panel 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Relay Harness X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Screw(TP; M3x6) X 1 	

● Installation Procedure

■ Installing the Card Reader Mounting Plate <in the case of the Flat Control Panel

>

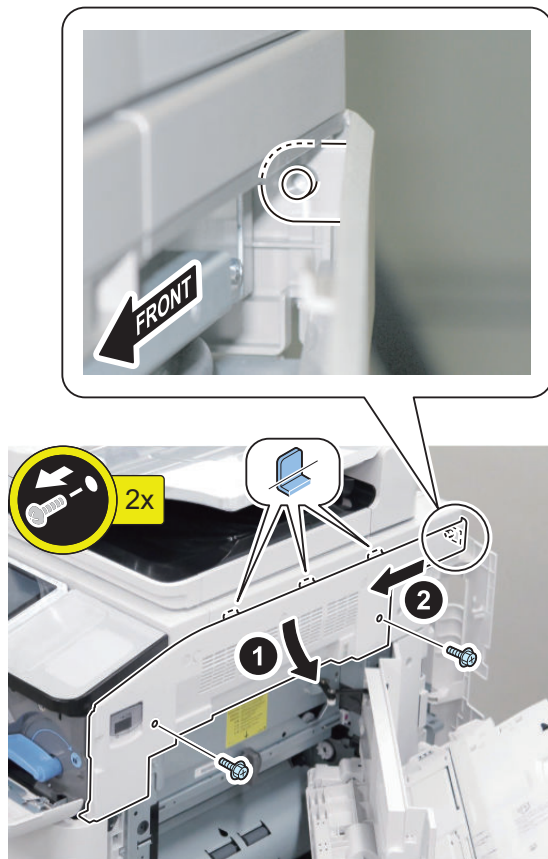
1. Open the Toner Replacement Cover, Right Cover, and Right Rear Cover 1.





2. Remove the Right Upper Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 3 Protrusions
- 1 Boss

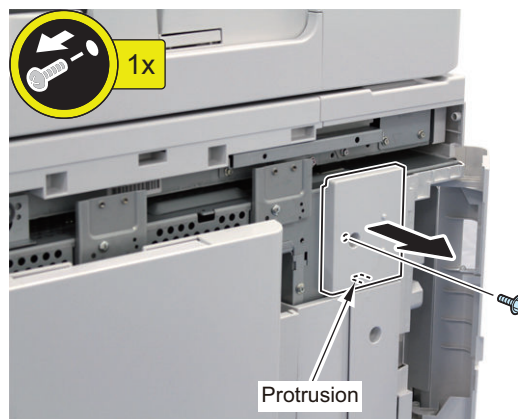


3. Close the Right Cover.



4. Remove the Right Rear Cover 2.

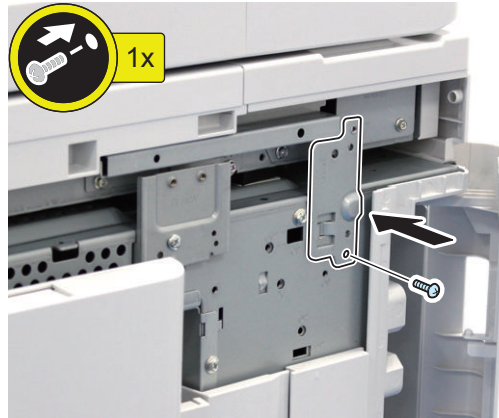
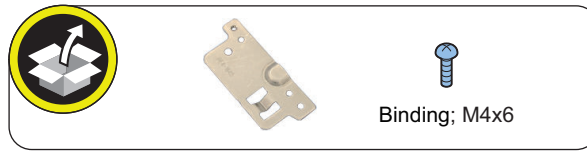
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion





5. Install the Card Reader Mounting Plate.

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6)



6. Install the Right Rear Cover 2 (1 Screw).

7. Open the Right Cover, and then install the Right Upper Cover (2 Screws).

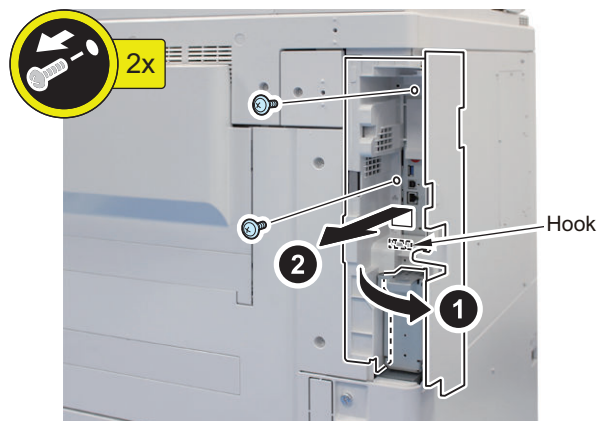
8. Close the Right Cover and Toner Replacement Cover.

■ Installing the Card Reader



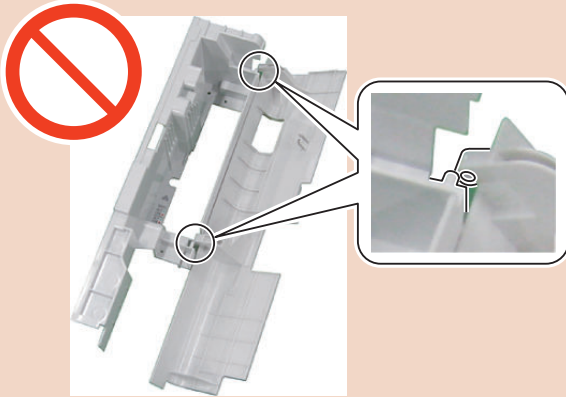
1. Remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



CAUTION:

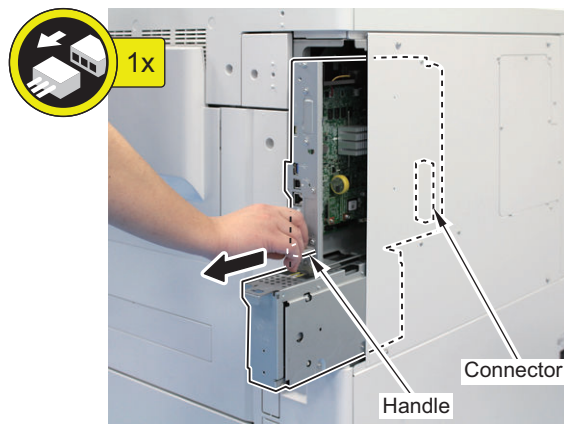
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



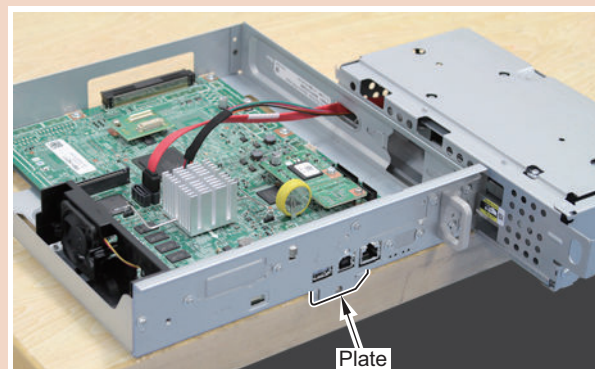
□

2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB 1.

- 1 Connector

**CAUTION:**

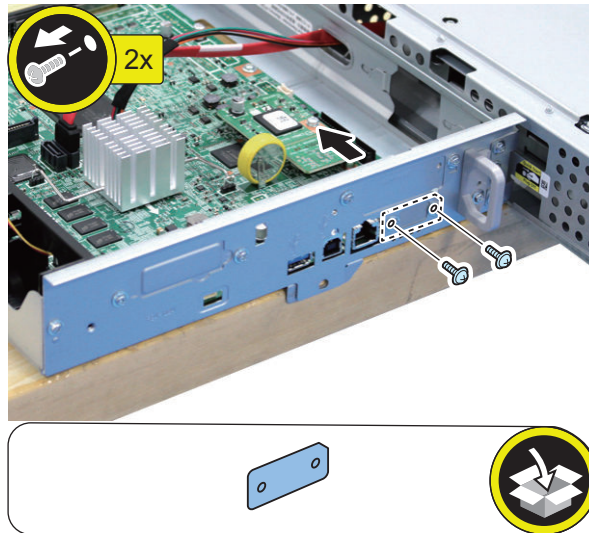
Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



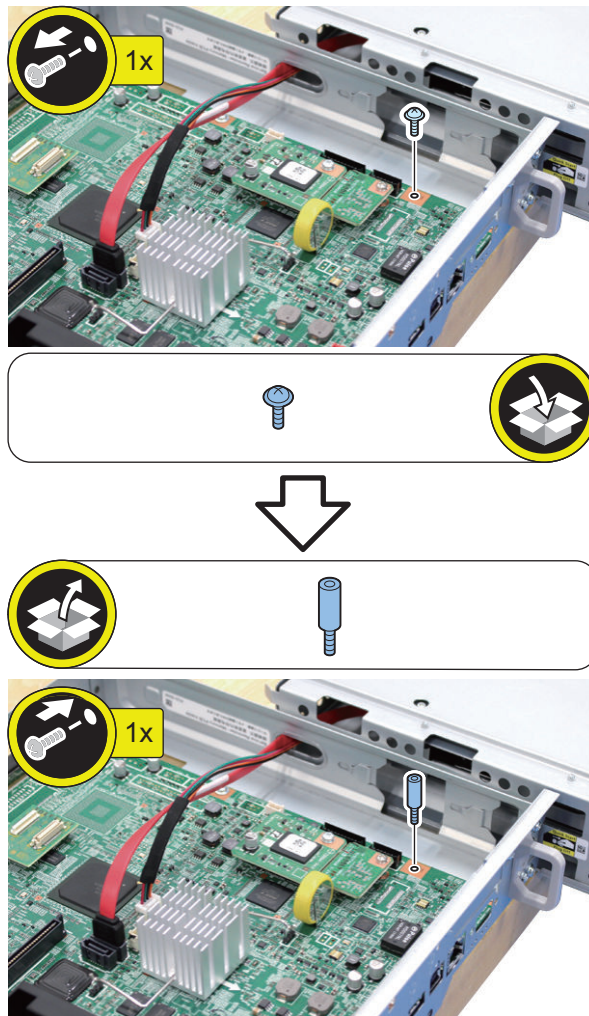


3. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed Face Cover will not be used.)

- 2 Screws(The removed screws will be used in step 5)



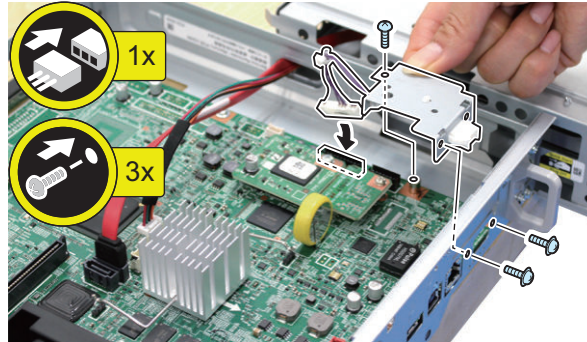
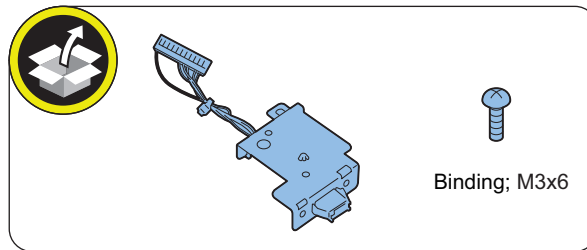
4. Remove the screw, and install the PCB Spacer. (The removed screws will not be used.)





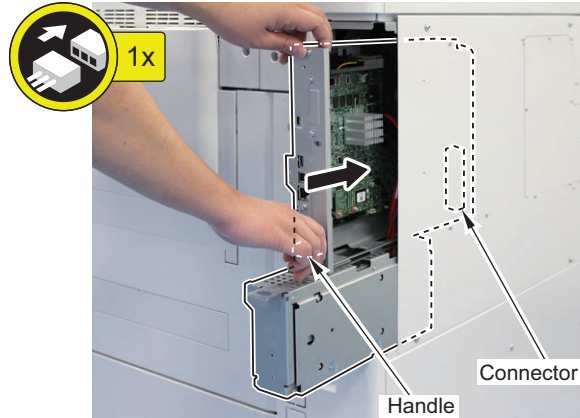
5. Install the Card Reader Reply Unit.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 3.)
- 1 Screw (Binding; M3x6)



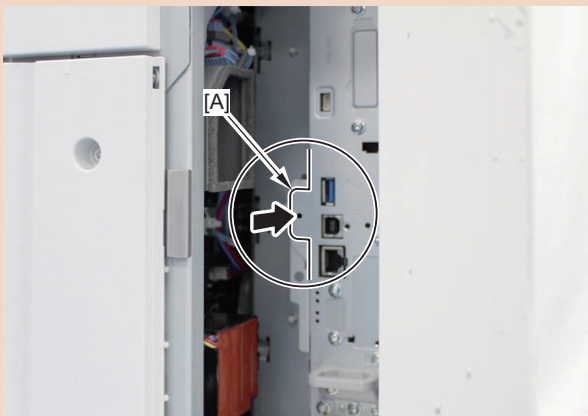
6. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.

- 1 Connector



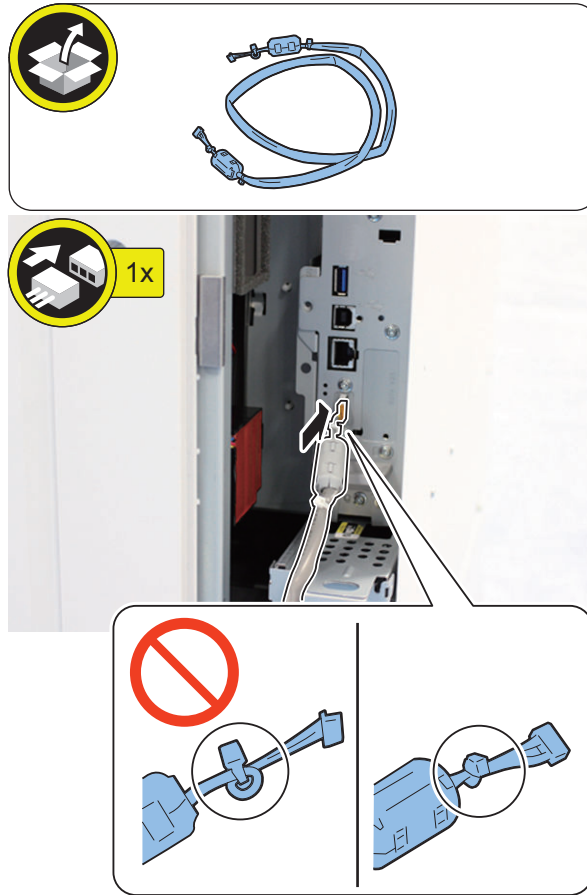
CAUTION:

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.





7. Connect the Card Reader External Relay Harness.



8. Remove the Screw (The removed screws will be used at next step.)



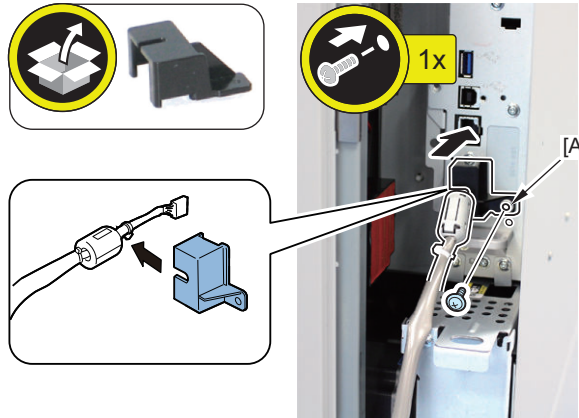


9. Install the Connector Cover to the Card Reader External Relay Harness.

- 1 Screw (Use the screw removed at previous step.)

CAUTION:

- Install the screw to the [A] part.
- When installing the Connector Cover, be sure to place the tie-wrap on the Card Reader External Relay Harness on the inside of the Connector Cover.

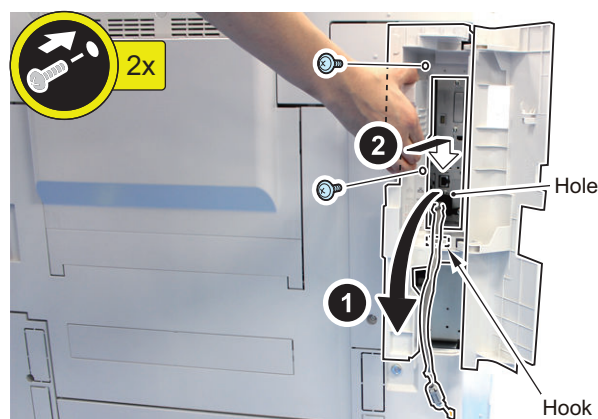
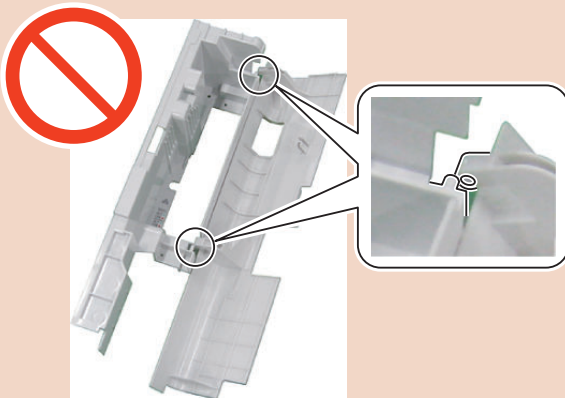


10. Install the Side Cover by putting the Card Reader External Relay Harness through a hole of the cover.

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

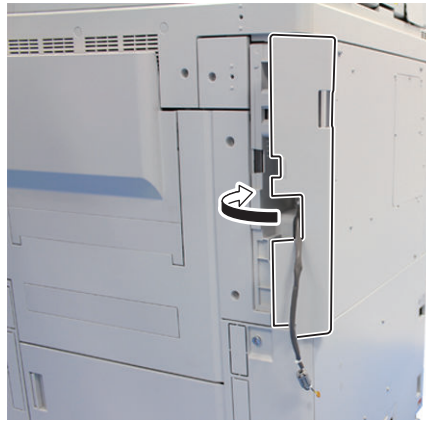
CAUTION:

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1



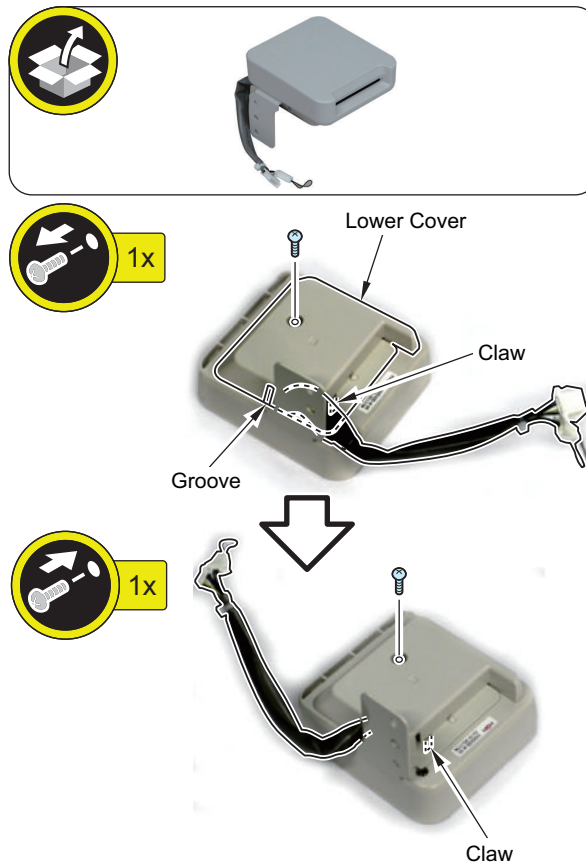


11. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.



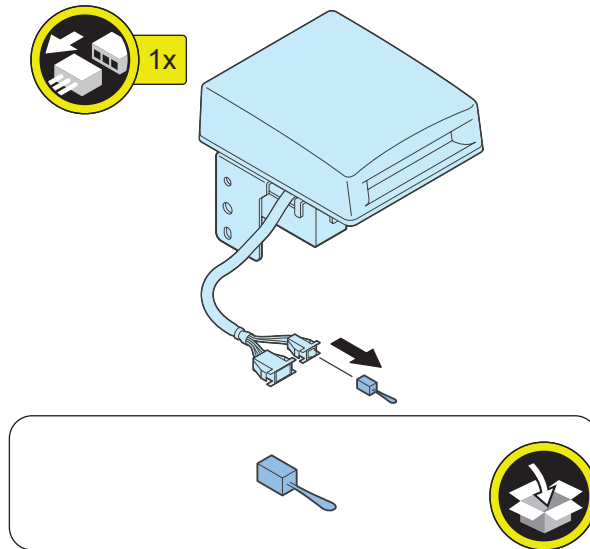
12. Remove the Lower Cover of the Card Reader Unit, and change the position of the cable.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Screw





13. Disconnect the Short Connector on the Card Reader. (The removed Short Connector will not be used.)





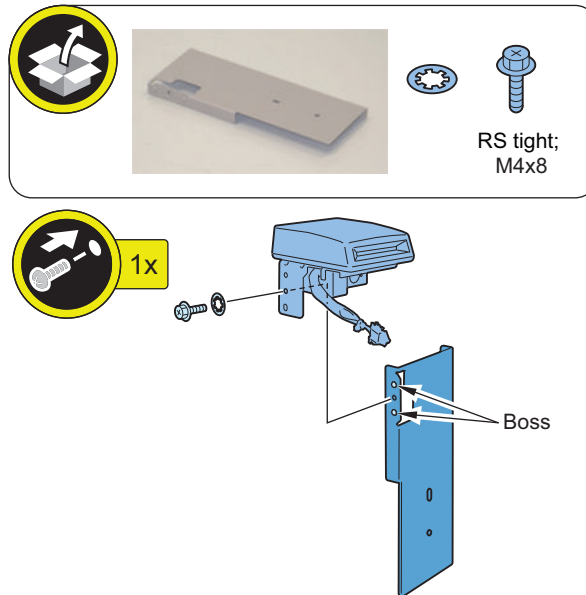
14. Install the Card Reader.

<In the Case of Upright Control Panel>



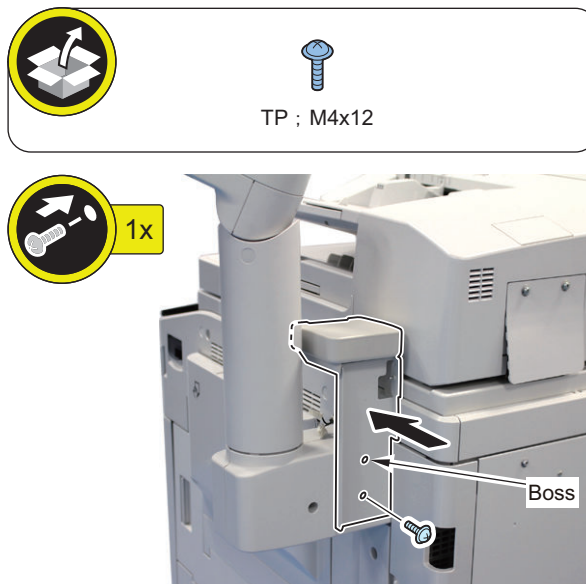
14-1. Install the Card Reader to the Card Reader Mounting Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Toothed Washer
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)



14-2. Install the Card Reader Unit assembled in step 14-1.

- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M4x12)

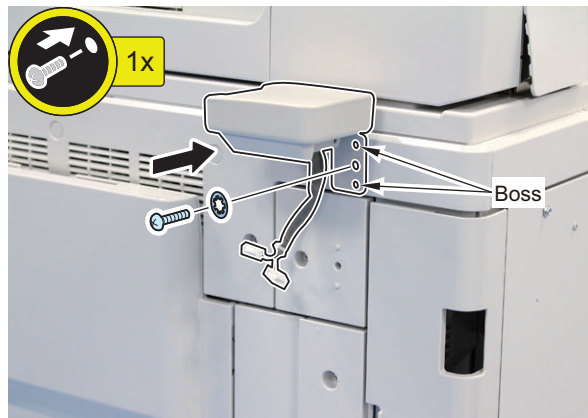
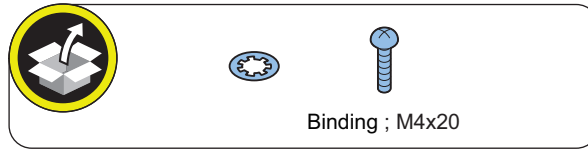


<In the Case of Flat Control Panel>



14-1. Install the Card Reader.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Toothed Washer
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x20)



15. If the Upright Control Panel is installed, put the connector of the Card Reader Unit through the hole on the Card Reader Mounting Plate.

NOTE:

While pictures of the Upright Control Panel model are used for explaining the steps 16 and 17, the procedure is the same for the Flat Control Panel model.

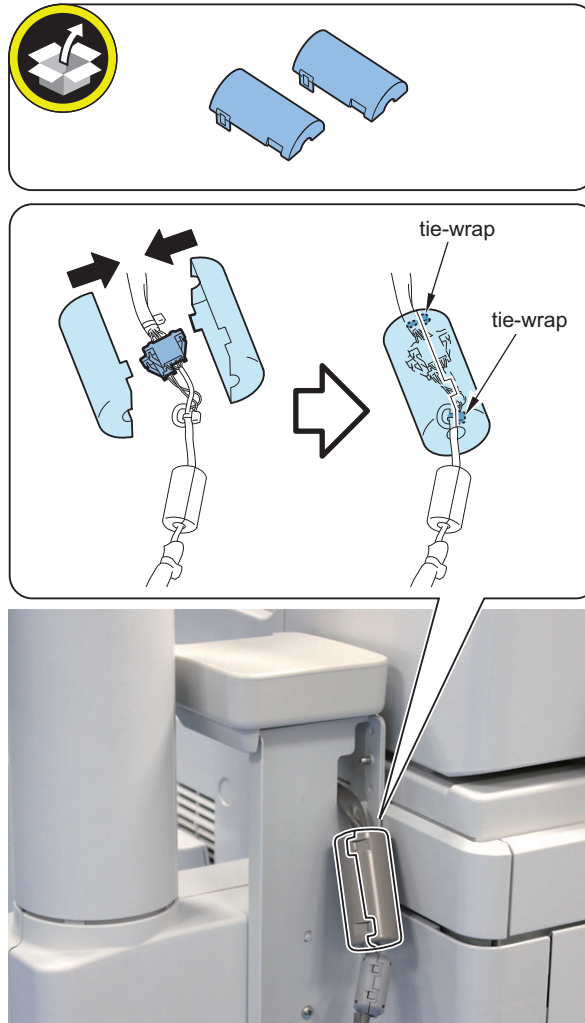
16. Connect the connectors of the Card Reader Unit and the Card Reader External Relay Harness.



17. Install the Connector Case.

CAUTION:

When installing the Connector Cases, be sure to place the tie-wrap on the Card Reader External Relay Harness on the inside of the Connector Cases.



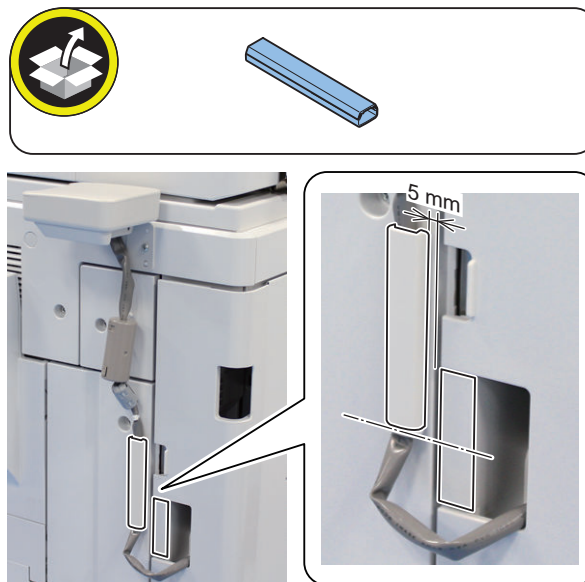
NOTE:

While pictures of the Flat Control Panel model are used for explaining the following steps, the procedure is the same for the Upright Control Panel model.

□

18. Remove the cover of Cord Guide, and affix it to the area indicated in the figure.

19. Put the Card Reader External Relay Harness through the Cord Guide, and install the cover of the Cord Guide.



**20. Push the Card Reader External Relay Harness in the Right Rear Cover 1.**

Checking after Installation



1. **Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.**
2. **Turn the main power switch ON.**
3. **Check the model of the Card Reader in service mode. (Default: 0 "Card Reader-F1")**
COPIER > OPTION > ACC > CR-TYPE



4. **Set the number of card (number of department ID) that can be used with the Card Reader in service mode.(Lv.2).**
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CARD-RNG



5. **Use Service Mode to enter the minimum card number to be used by a user (1 to 2001).**
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD
Starting from the entered card number, the number of cards set in step 4 can be used.



6. **Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting values.**
7. **Insert a card with a card number that has been registered, and check that the machine operates normally.**

NOTE:

Perform the following operations to change the number of cards (departments) after it has been set. In such a case, counter information for each department is reset.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CARD

- Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the settings.
- After that, perform from step 3.

Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1

Points to Note at Installation

When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".

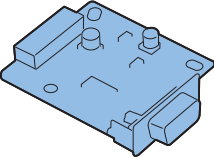
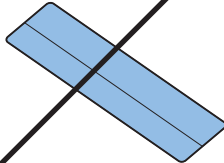
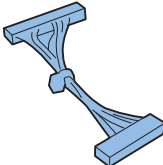
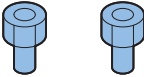



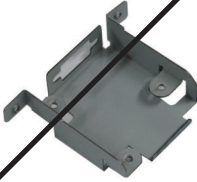
Table of Options Combination

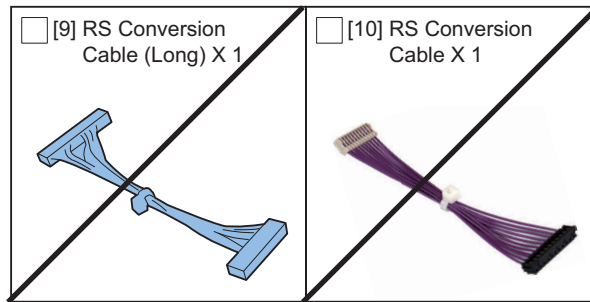
	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit	Voice Operation Kit	Voice Guidance Kit	Copy Card Reader
Serial Interface Kit	-	No	Yes	Yes	No
Copy Control Interface Kit	No	-	Yes	Yes	No

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

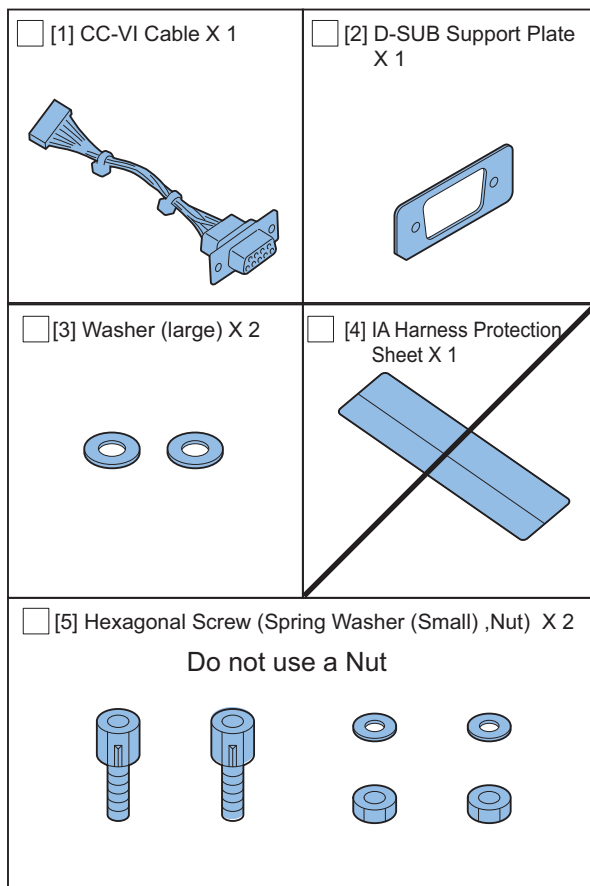
Checking the Contents

<Serial Interface Kit-K3>

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Serial RS Conversion Board X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] IA Harness Protection Sheet X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] RS Conversion Cable (Short) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Hexagonal Screw X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Washer X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] PCB Spacer X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Support Plate X 1 



<Copy Control Interface Kit-A1>



Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

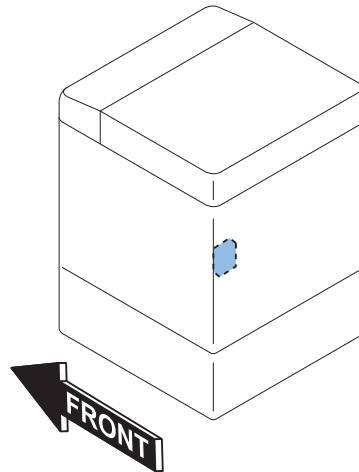
1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing



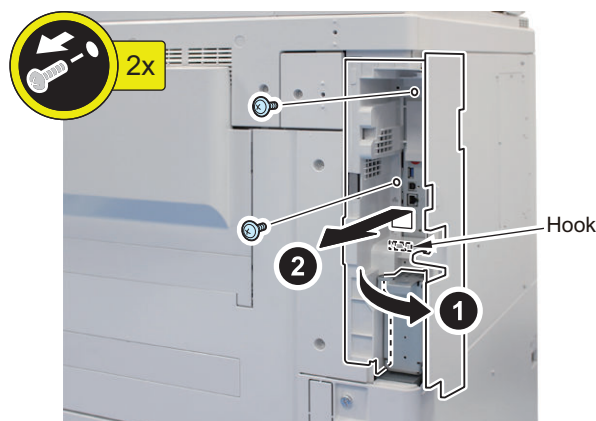
Installation Procedure

■ Removing the Main Controller PCB 1



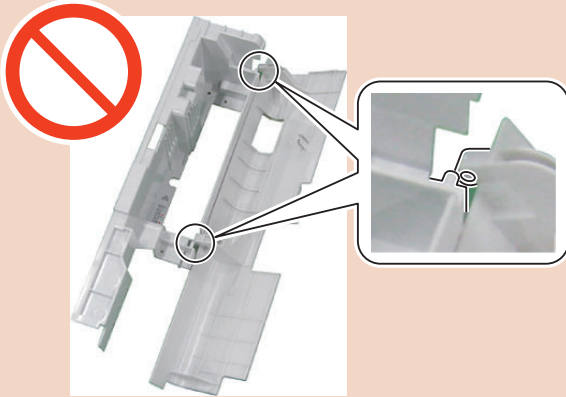
1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Scews
- 1 Hook



CAUTION:

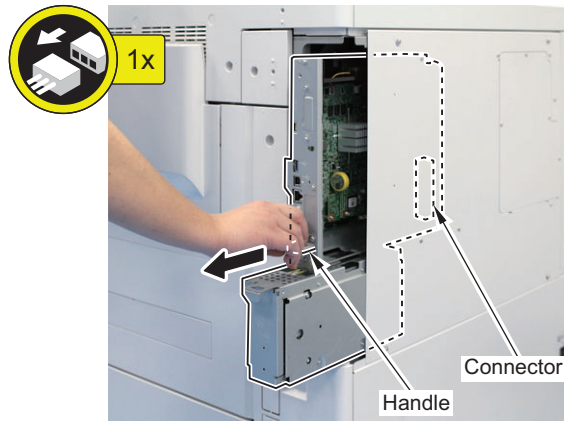
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



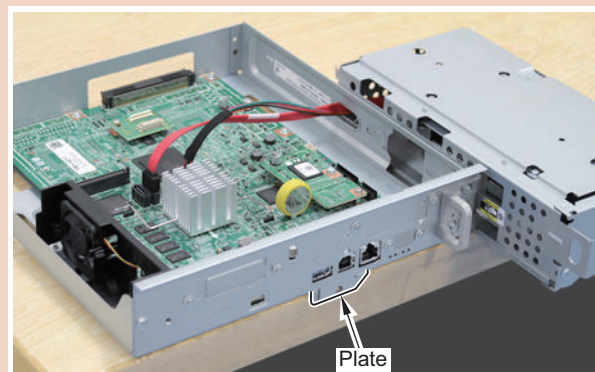
□

2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB 1.

- 1 Connector

**CAUTION:**

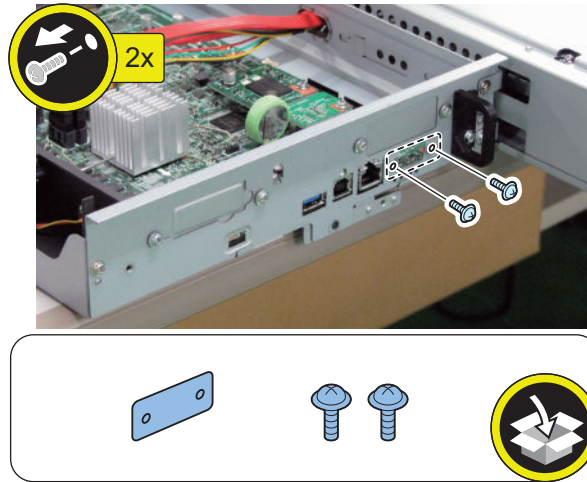
Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



□

3. Remove the face cover (The removed Face Cover will not be used).

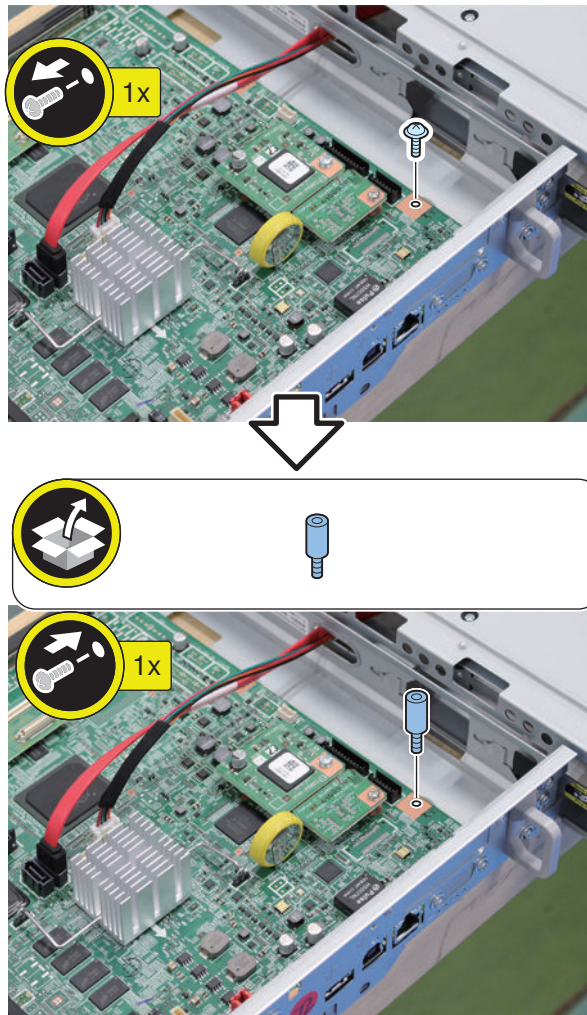
- 2 Screws



■ Installing the Serial Interface Kit

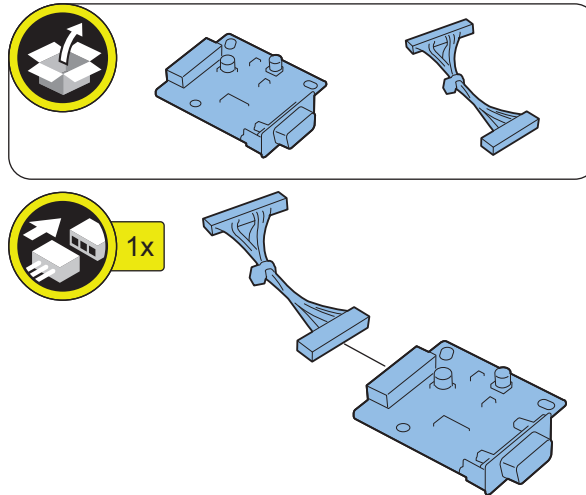
□

1. Remove the screw, and install the PCB Spacer (The removed screw will be used in step 3).



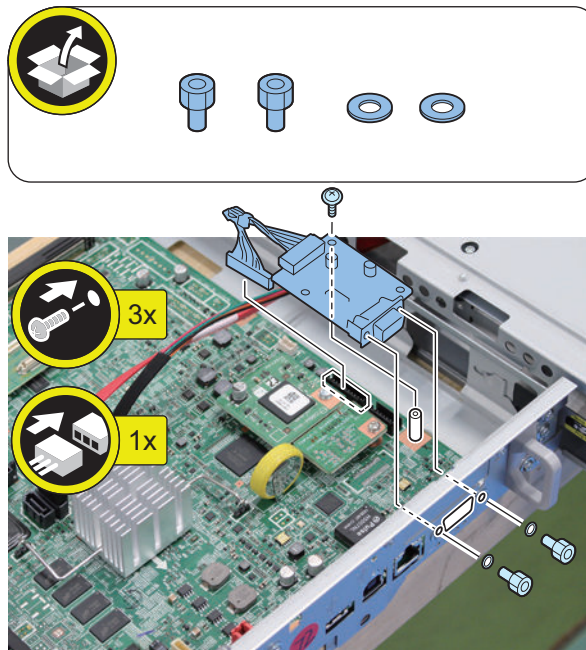


2. Connect the RS Conversion Cable (short) to the Serial RS Conversion Board.



3. Install the Serial RS Conversion Board.

- 1 Screw (Use the screw removed in step1)
- 2 Washers
- 2 Hexagon Screws
- 1 Connector



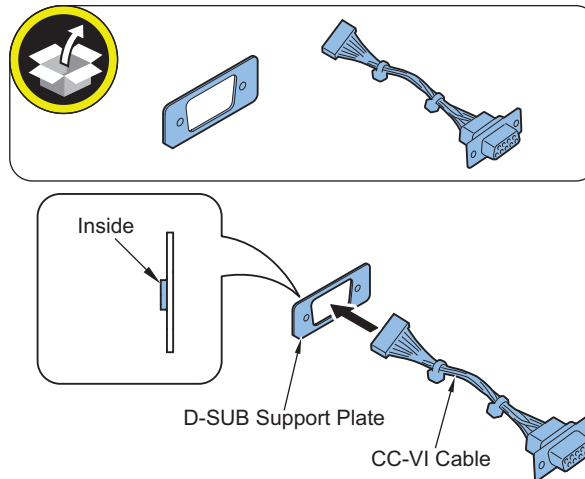
■ Installing the Copy Control interface Kit



1. Put the CC-VI Cable through the D-SUB Support Plate.

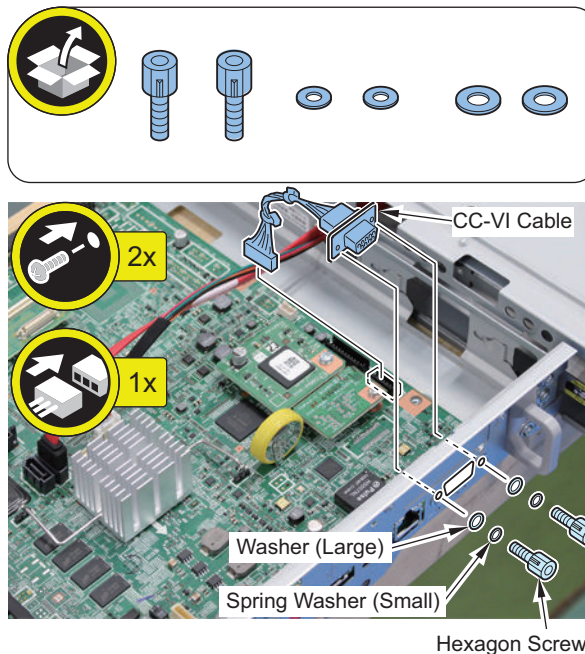
CAUTION:

Install the extruded side of the D-SUB Support Plate as shown in the figure.



2. Connect the CC-VI Cable to the Main Controller PCB 1.

- 2 Hexagon Screws
- 2 Spring Washers (small)
- 2 Washers (Large)
- 1 Connector

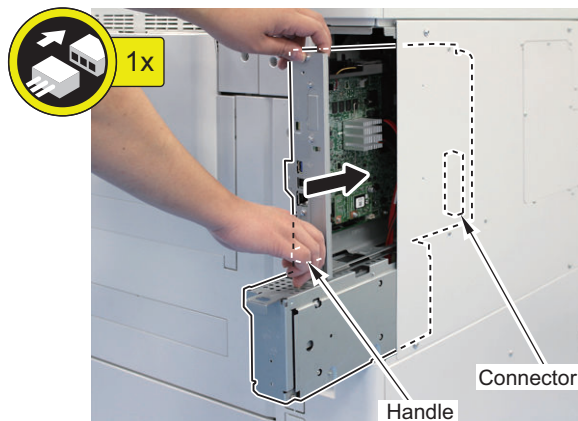


■ Installing the Main Controller PCB 1



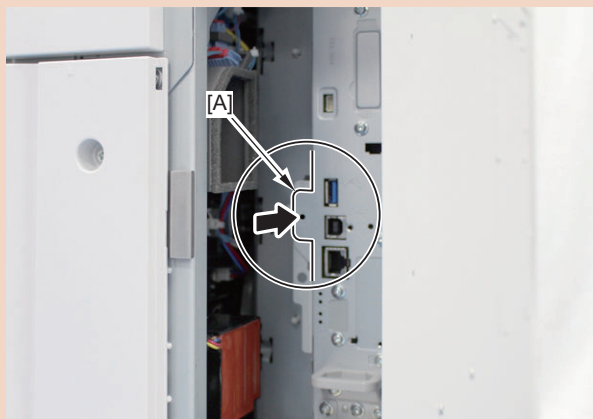
1. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.

- 1 Connector



CAUTION:

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.

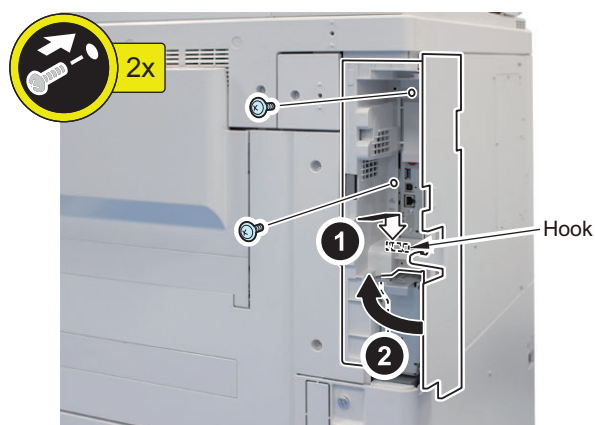
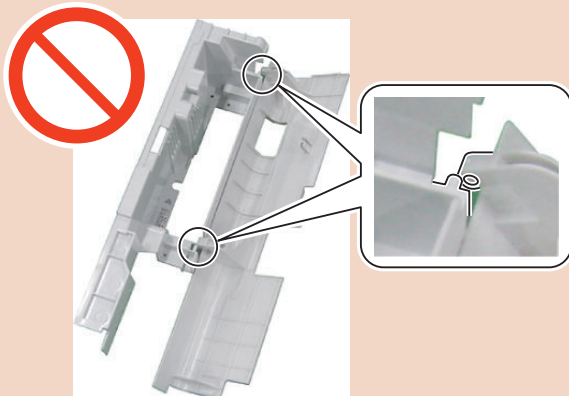


**2. Install the Side Cover, and then Close the Right Rear Cover 1.**

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

CAUTION:

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.

**3. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.****4. Turn the main power switch ON.**

Voice Operation Kit-D1

Points to Note Before Installation


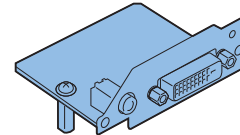
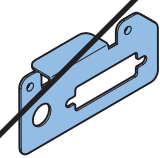
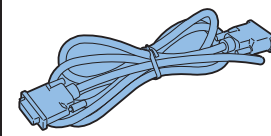
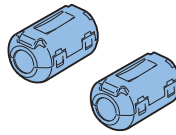
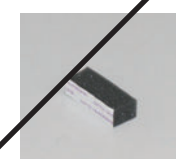
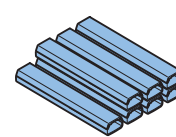

- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- When installing this equipment, the option Numeric Keypad is required. Refer to the Installation Procedure for the Numeric Keypad when installing the Numeric Keypad.
- Refer to "Combination of options" when installing this equipment before operation.

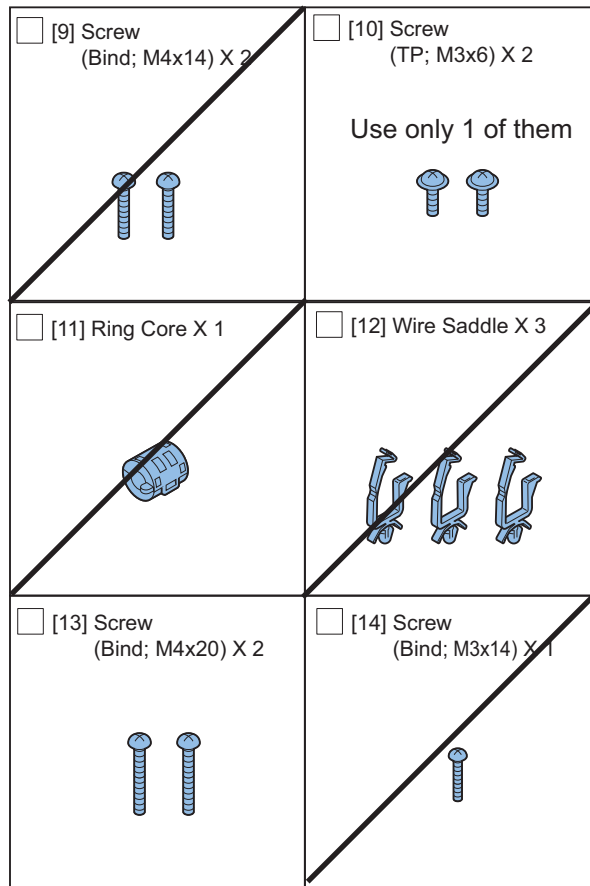
Table of Options Combination

	Copy Card Reader	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit	Voice Guidance Kit	Utility Tray
Voice Operation Kit	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Speaker Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Voice Operation Board Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Support Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] DVI Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Ring Core X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cable Face Seal X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Cord Guide X 7 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Card Spacer X 1 



[7]: Use 6 of them for the Flat Control Panel model.

[11]: This is used for the user installed option and should be handed over to the user.

<Others>

Including guides

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

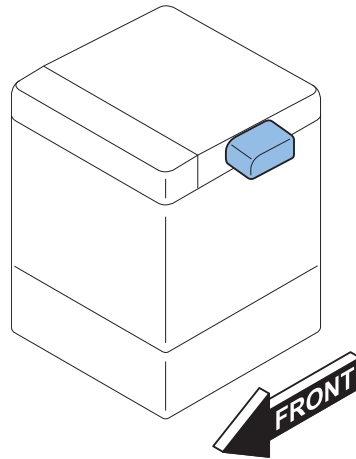
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing

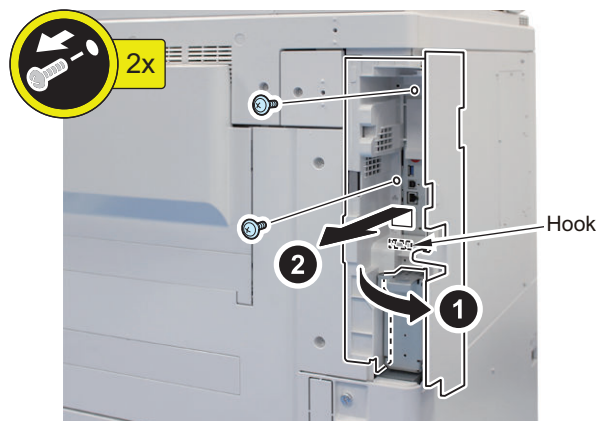


Installation Procedure



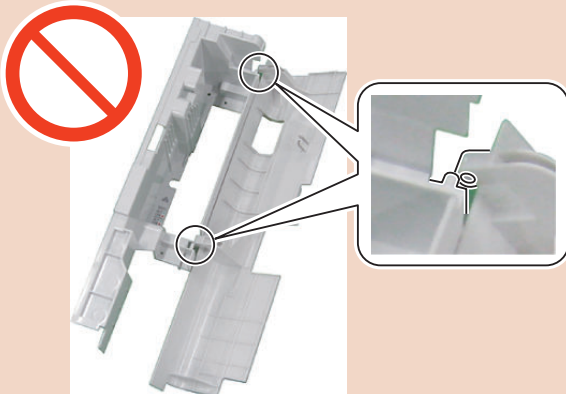
1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and then remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



CAUTION:

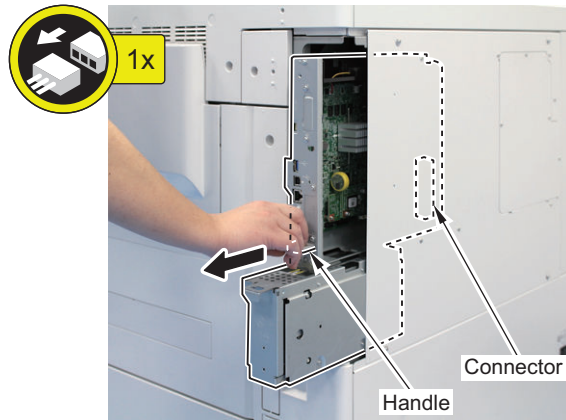
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.





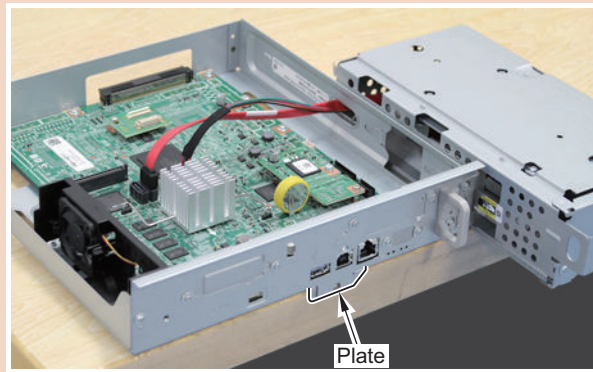
2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB 1.

- 1 Connector



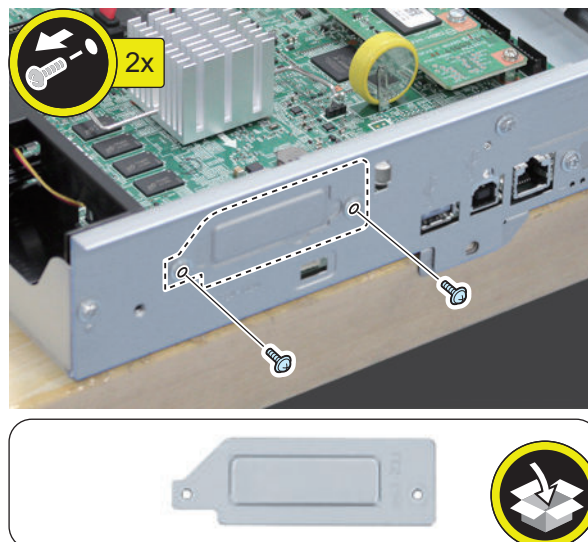
CAUTION:

Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



3. Remove the Face Plate. (The removed Face Plate will not be used.)

- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used at next step .)



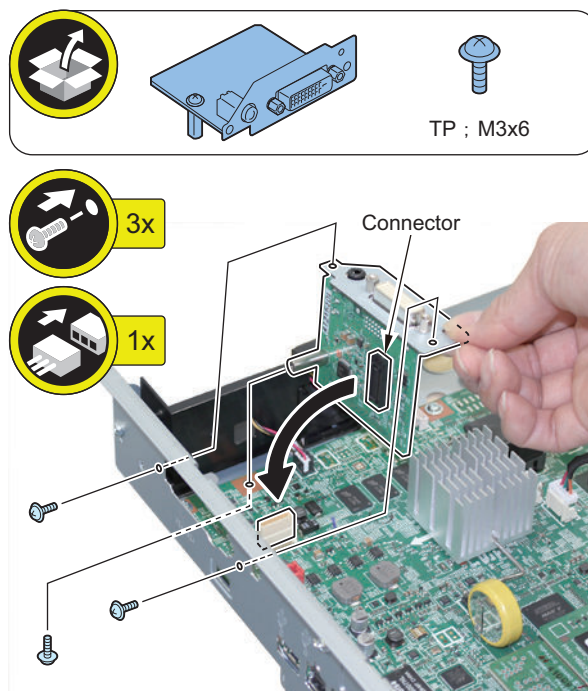


4. Install the Voice Operation Board Unit to the Main Controller PCB 1.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (Use the screw removed at previous step)
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)

NOTE:

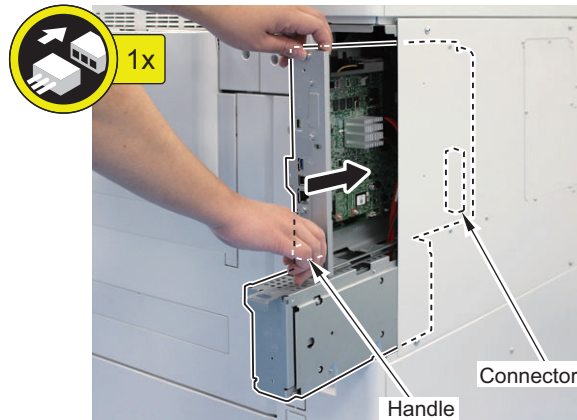
Check that the connector is connected properly.





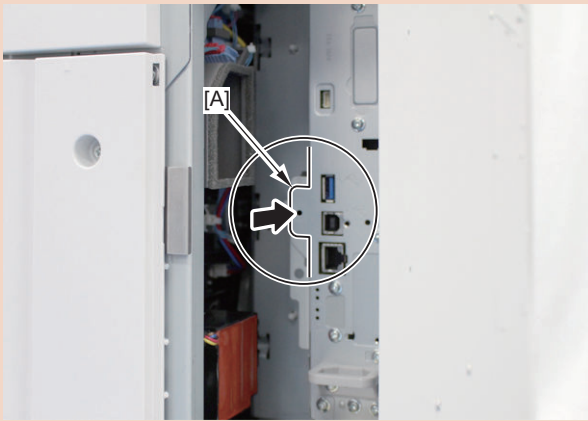
5. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.

- 1 Connector



CAUTION:

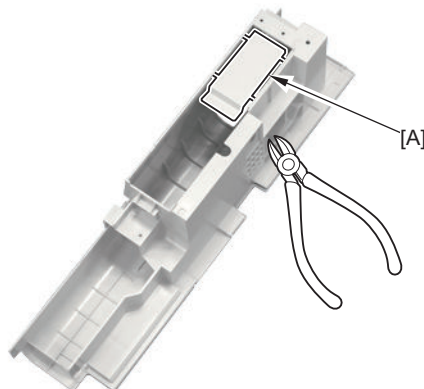
Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



6. Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.

NOTE:

When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs .



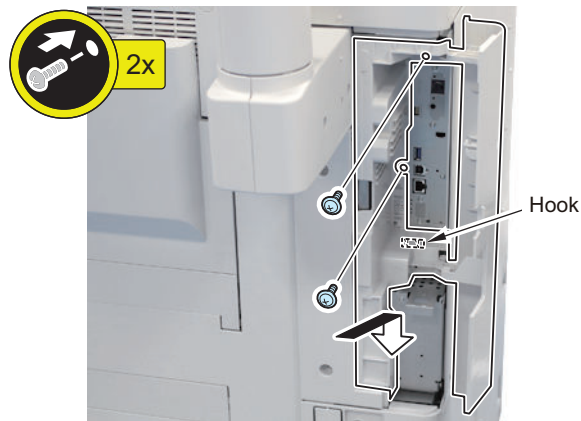
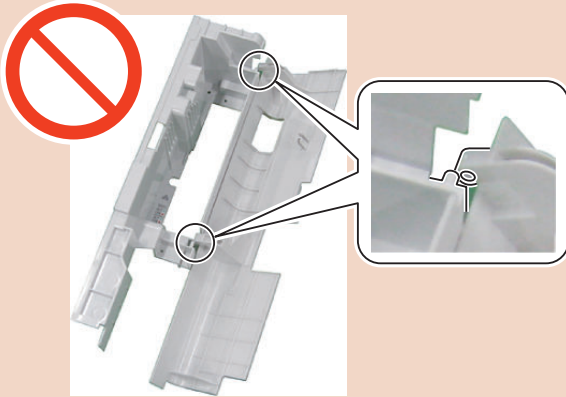


7. Install the Side Cover.

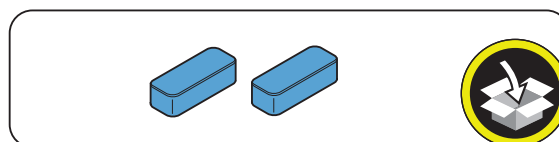
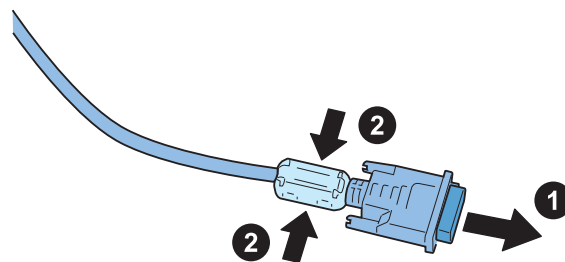
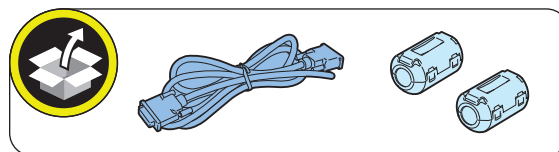
- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

CAUTION:

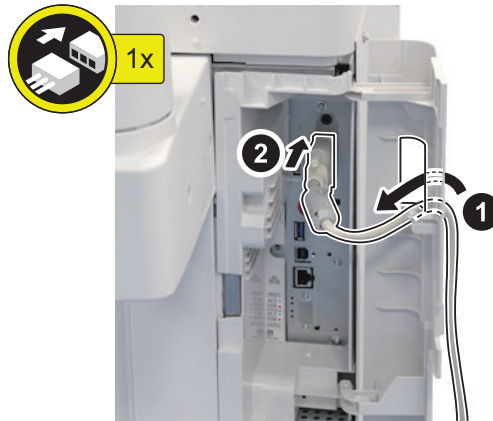
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



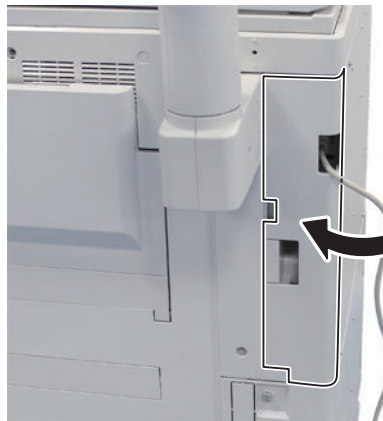
8. Attach the 2 Ring Cores to both ends of the DVI Cable and then remove caps from both ends.



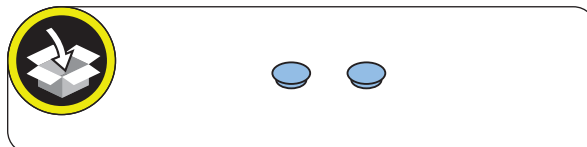
- 9. Pass the DVI Cable through the hole of the Side Cover, and connect the DVI Cable to the Voice Operation Board Unit.



- 10. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.

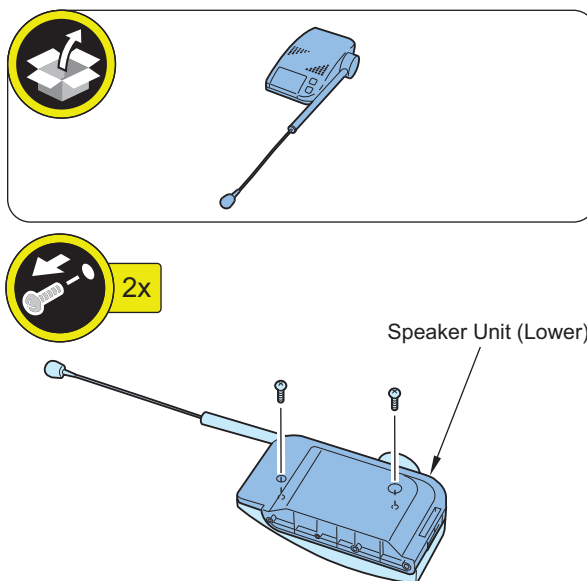


- 11. Remove the 2 Rubber Caps from the Right Upper Cover. (The removed Rubber Caps will not be used.)

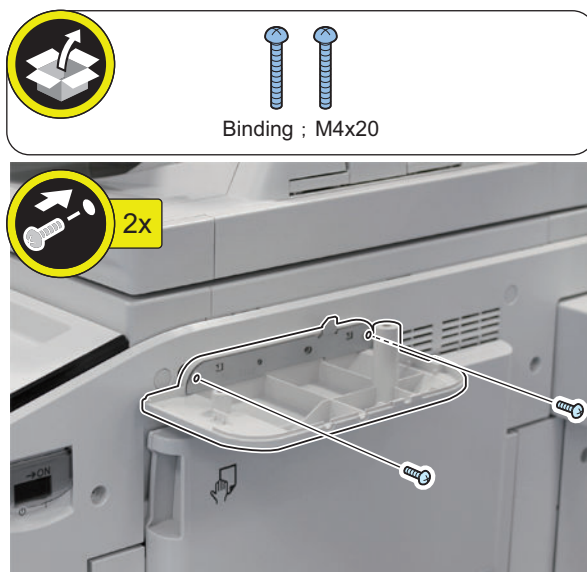


**12. Remove the Speaker Unit (Lower) from the Speaker Unit.**

- 2 Screws (The removed screw will be used in step 14)

**13. Install the Speaker Unit (Lower).**

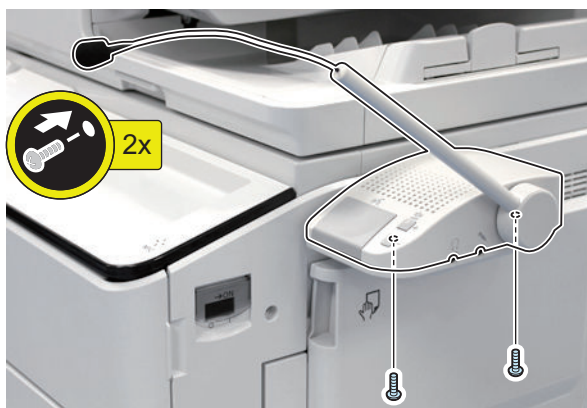
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x20)





14. Install the Speaker Unit (Upper).

- 2 Screws (Use the screw removed in step 12.)



15. Remove the cover of Cord Guide, and affix it to the area indicated in the figure.

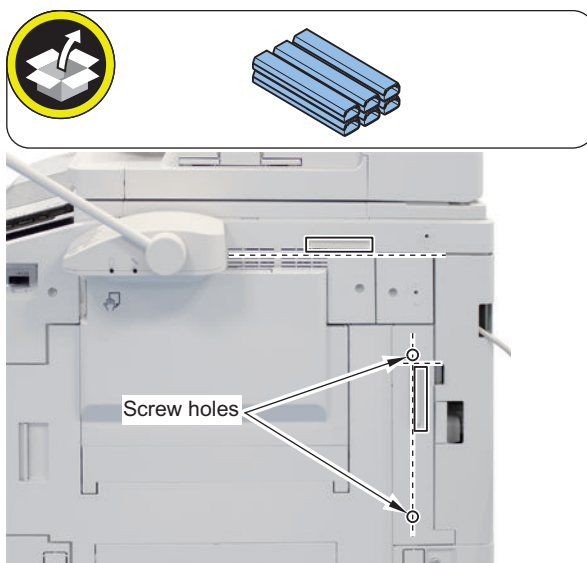
< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

NOTE:

Even when this kit is used in combination with a Copy Card Reader, the positions to install the Cord Guides are the same.

- Use 6 Cord Guides

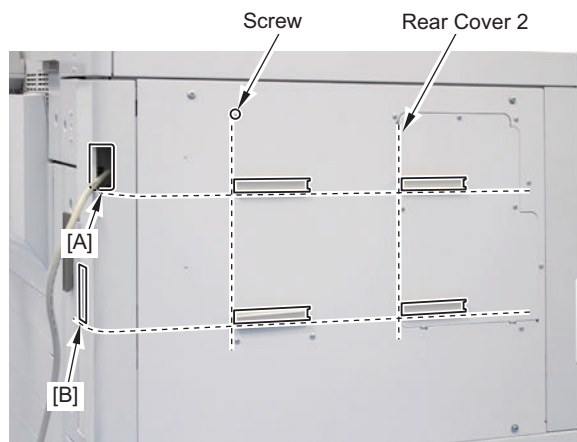
< Right side >



<Rear side>

NOTE:

Be sure to affix them on the extension lines of [A] and [B].



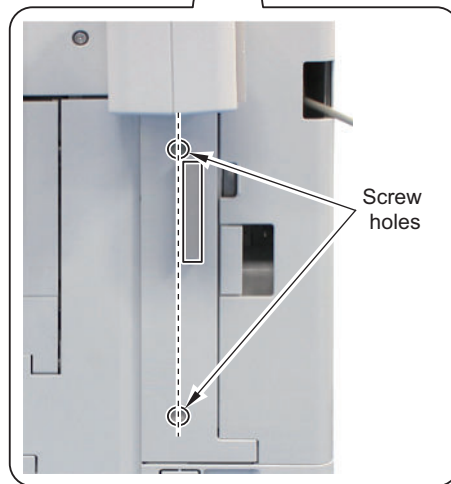
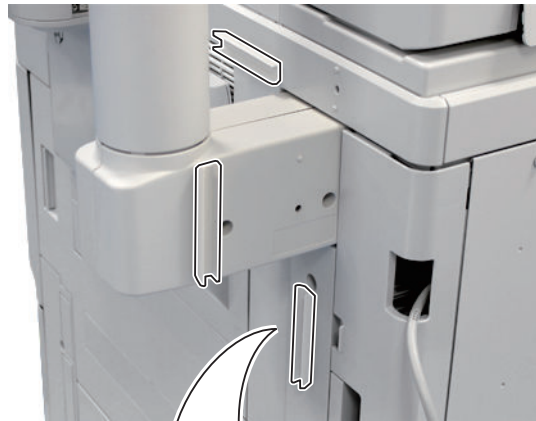
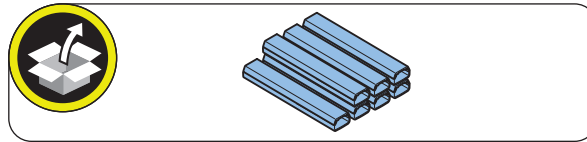
< In the Case of Upright Control Panel>

NOTE:

Even when this kit is used in combination with a Copy Card Reader, the positions to install the Cord Guides are the same.

- Use 7 Cord Guides.

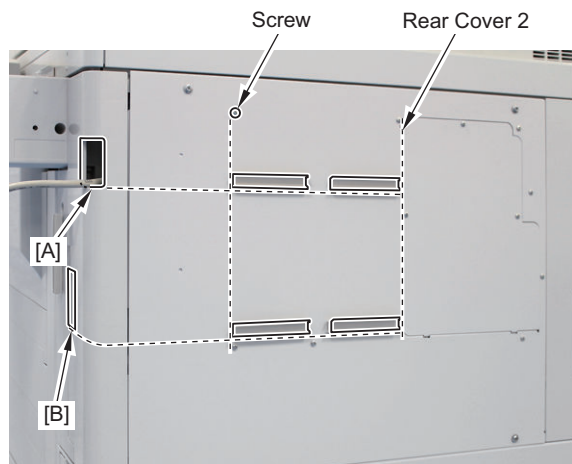
<Right side >



<Rear side >

NOTE:

[Be sure to affix them on the extension lines of [A] and [B].



16. Connect the DVI Cable to the Speaker Unit.

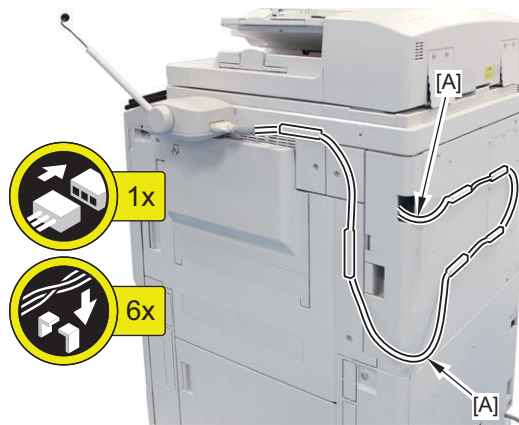
17. Put the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guide, and install the cover of the cord guide.

CAUTION:

Be sure to slack off [A] par for not interfering to open/close the Right Rear Cover1.

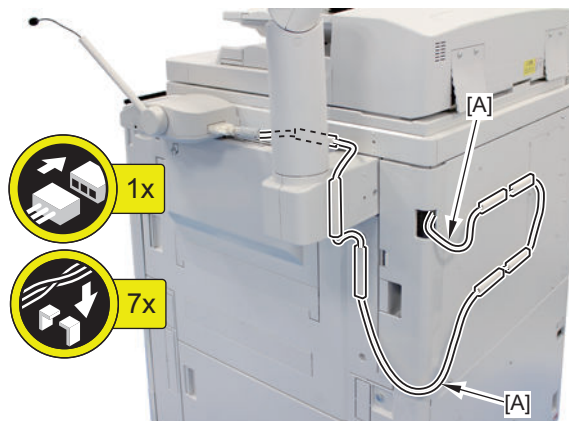
< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

- Use 6 Cord Guides



< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

- Use 7 Cord Guides

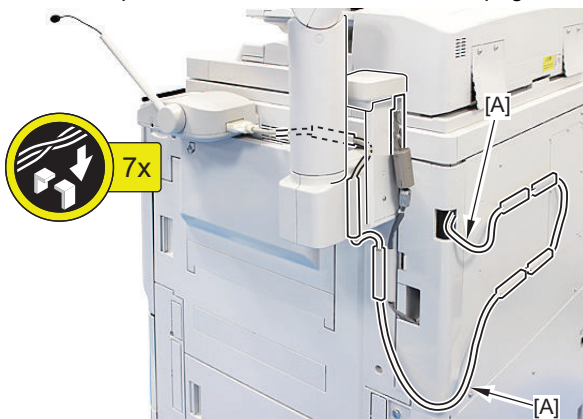


CAUTION:

When using together with the Copy Card Reader

< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

Be sure to pass the DVI cable between the Upright Arm and Card Reader Mounting Plate.



Checking after Installation

NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

-
1. **Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.**
 2. **Turn ON the main power switch.**
 3. **Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Use Voice Navigation, and check that the setting is ON.**
 4. **Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Voice Navigation at Startup, and check that "Select Mode at Startup" is set.**
 5. **Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings, and check that "Tune Microphone" is displayed.**

Operation Check

■ When Starting to Use

-
1. **Press the Guidance Start button or Voice Recognition button for 3 seconds or longer.**
 2. **In "Select the Voice Navigation type." on the Control Panel screen, select "Manual + Vocal Mode", "Vocal Mode" or "Manual Mode", and press OK.**
 3. **Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Operation Kit" becomes enabled.**

NOTE:

When "Manual Mode" is selected in "Select the Voice Navigation type.", nothing happens by pressing the Voice Recognition button.

■ When Stopping to Use

-
1. **Press the Guidance Start button or Voice Recognition button for 3 seconds or longer.**

Voice Guidance Kit-G1

Points to Note at Installation

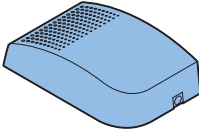
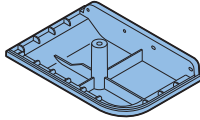
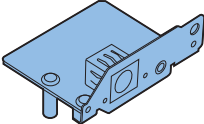
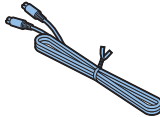
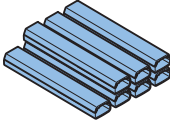
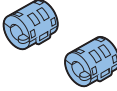

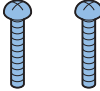
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- When installing this equipment, the option Numeric Keypad is required. Refer to the Installation Procedure for the Numeric Keypad when installing the Numeric Keypad.
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination"

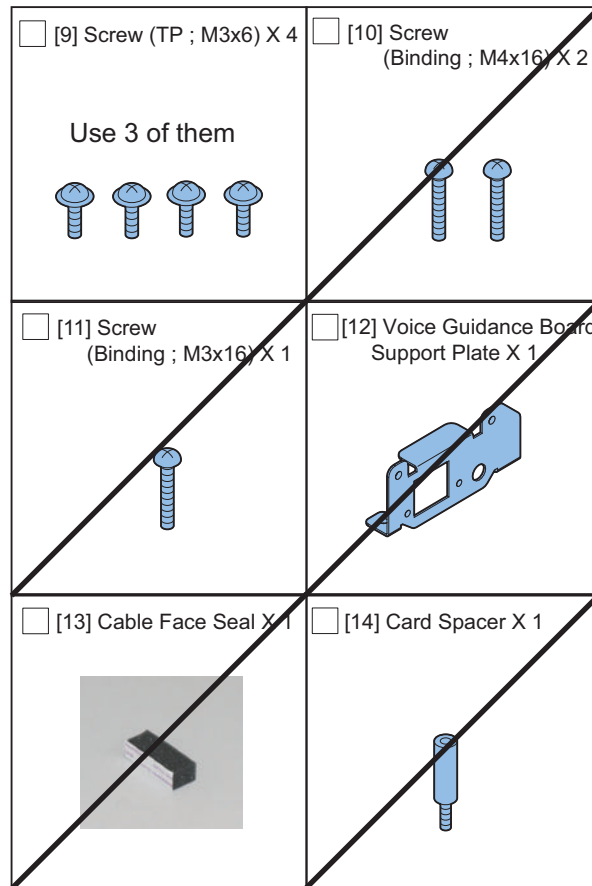
Table of Options Combination

	Copy Card Reader	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit	Voice Operation Kit	Utility Tray
Voice Guidance Kit	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Speaker Unit (Upper) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Speaker Unit (Lower) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Voice Guidance Board Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Speaker Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Cord Guide X 7 Use 4 of them 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ring Core X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (Binding ; M4x6) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Screw (Binding ; M4x20) X 2 



<Others>
Including guides

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

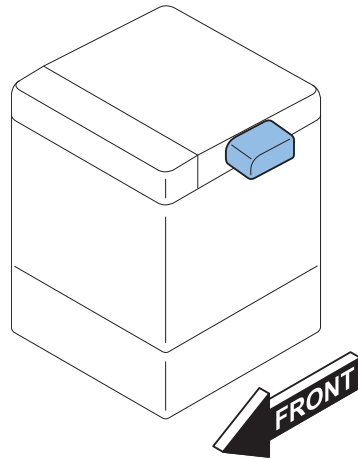
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing

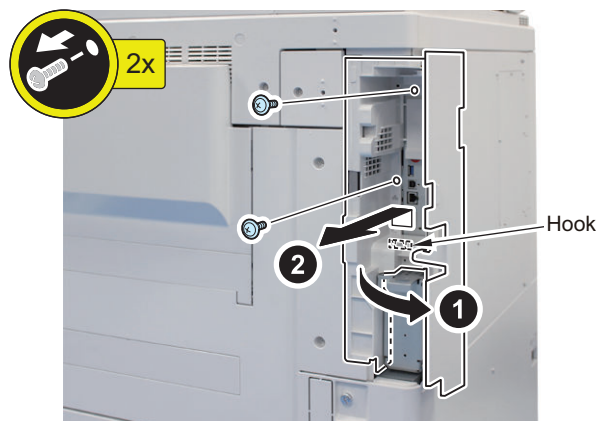


Installation Procedure



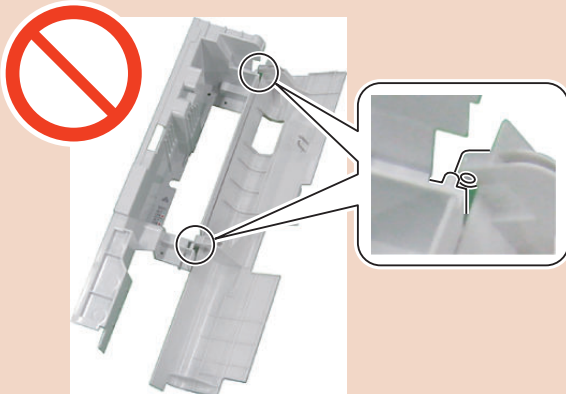
1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



CAUTION:

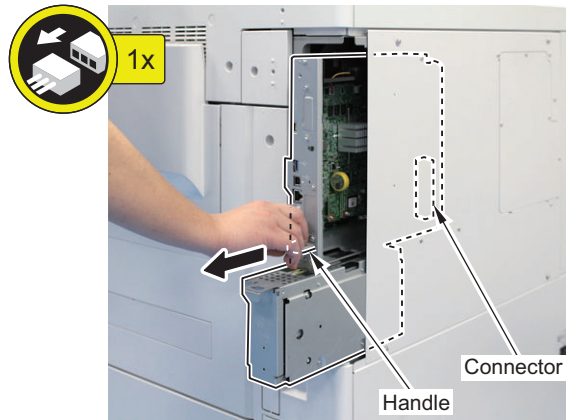
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.





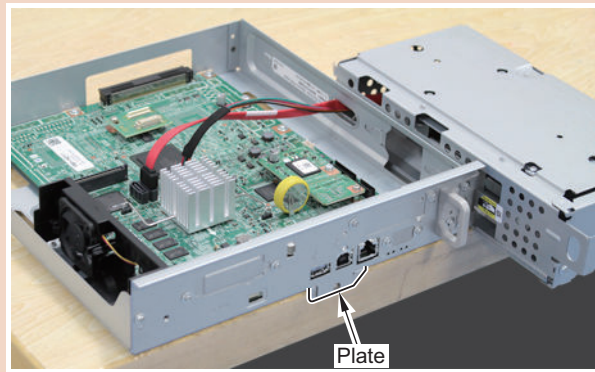
2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller.

- 1 Connector



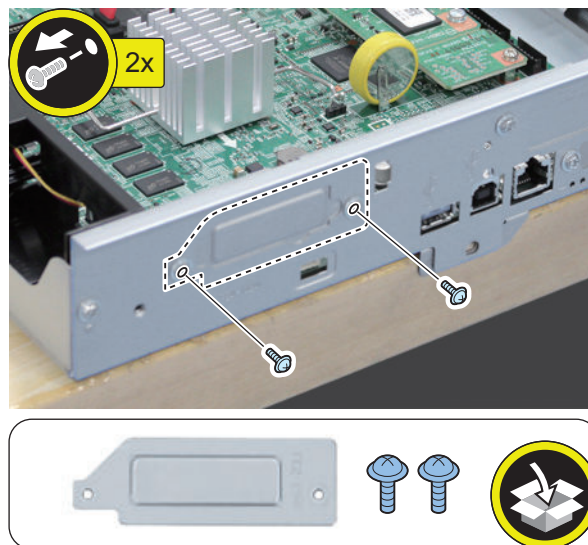
CAUTION:

Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



3. Remove the Face Plate (The removed Face Plate and screws will not be used.)

- 2 screws

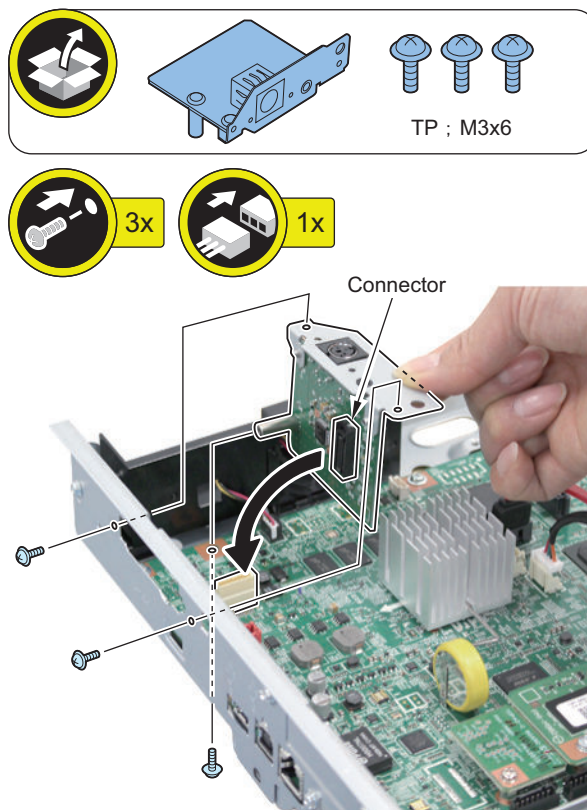


**4. Install the Voice Guidance Board Unit to the Main Controller PCB 1.**

- 1 Connector
- 3 Screws (TP; M3x6)

NOTE:

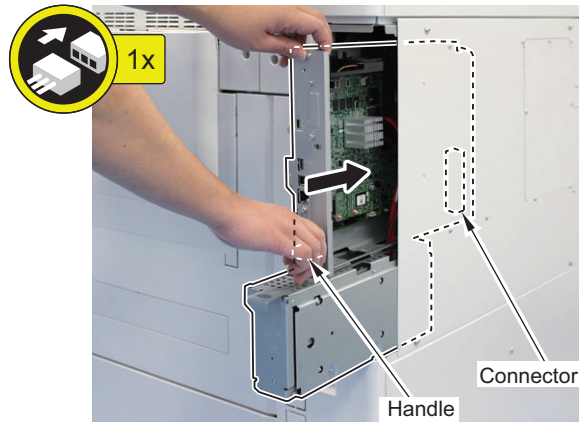
Check that the connector is connected properly.





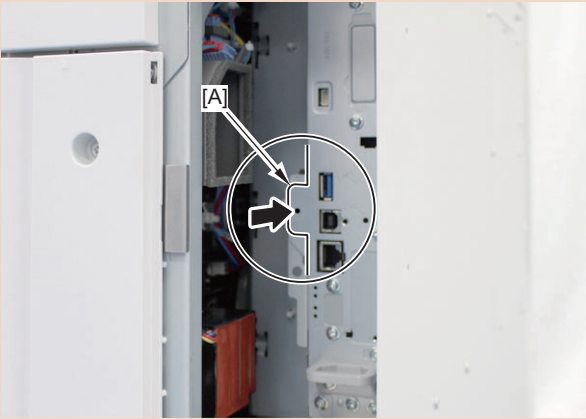
5. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.

- 1 Connector



CAUTION:

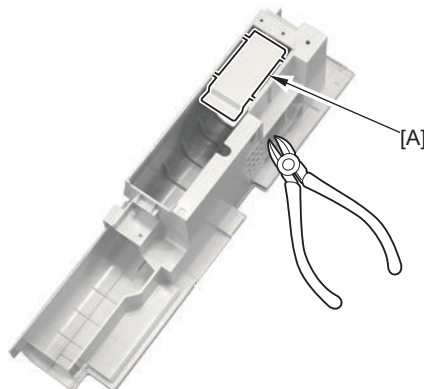
Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected.



6. Cut off [A] part of the Side Cover with nippers.

NOTE:

When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.

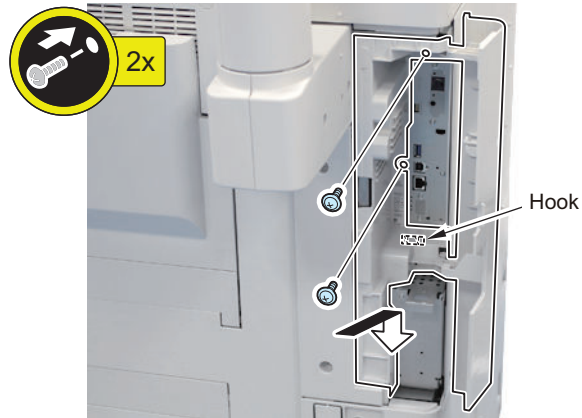
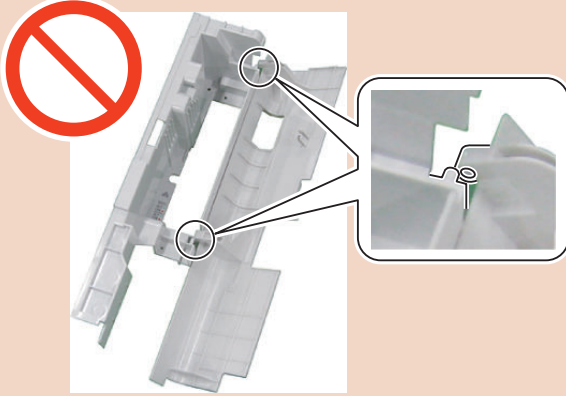


**7. Install the Side Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

CAUTION:

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



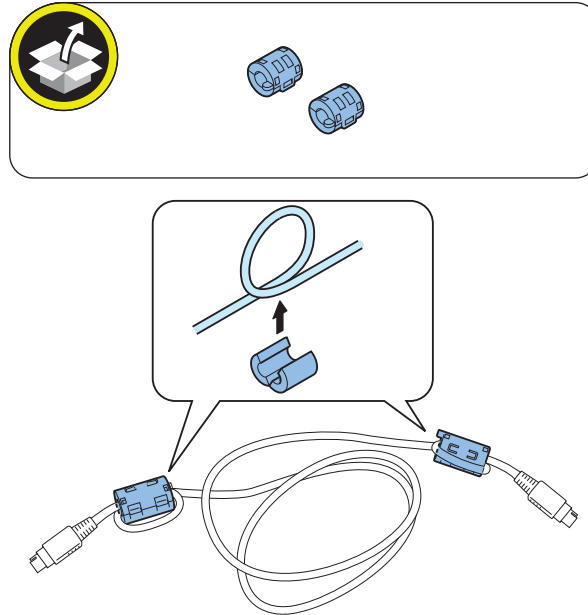


8. Attach the 2 Ring Cores to both ends of the Speaker Cable.

NOTE:

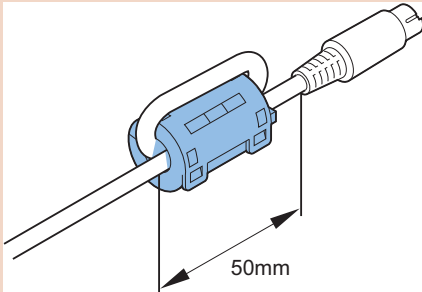
< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

< In the Case of Upright Control Panel > When installing the Card Reader at the same time, be sure to install a Ring Core only to one end of the Speaker Cable.

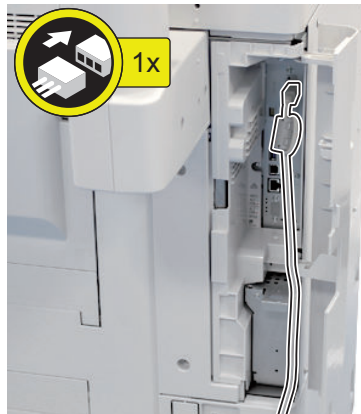


CAUTION:

Be sure to attach the Ring Cores within 50mm from the end of the Speaker Cable.

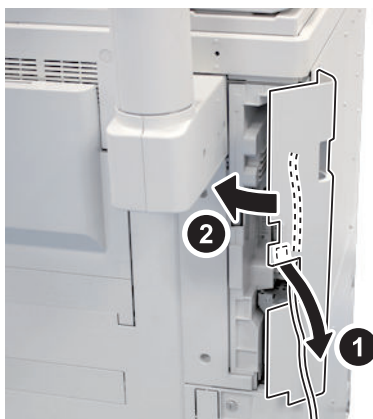


9. Connect the Speaker Cable to the Voice Guidance Board Unit.

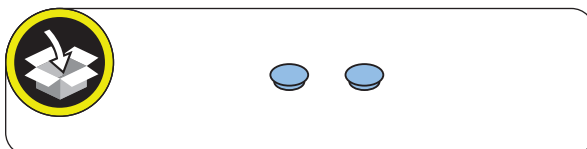




10. Retrieve the Speaker Cable from the position shown in the figure, and close the Right Rear Cover 1.



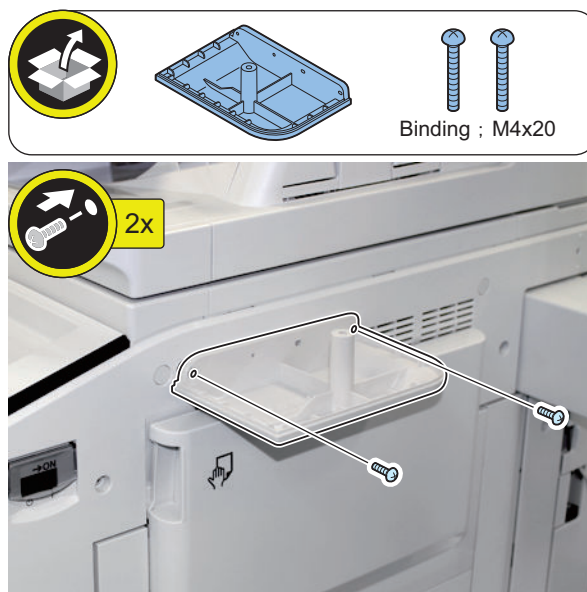
11. Remove the 2 Rubber Caps from the Right Upper Cover. (The removed Rubber Caps will not be used.)





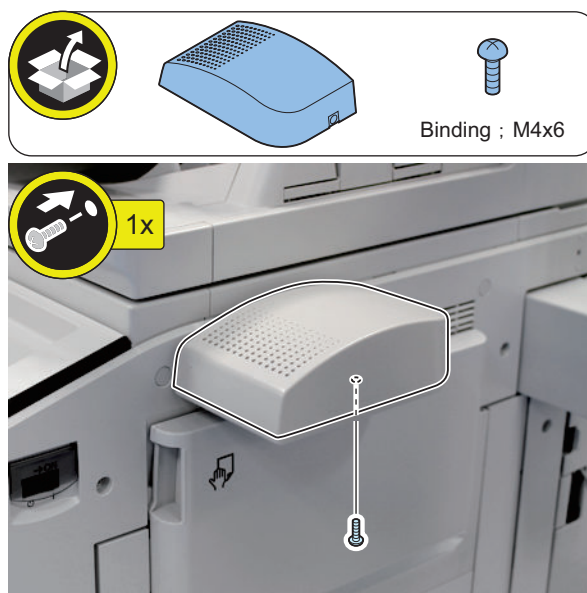
12. Install the Speaker Unit (Lower).

- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x20)



13. Install the Speaker Unit (Upper).

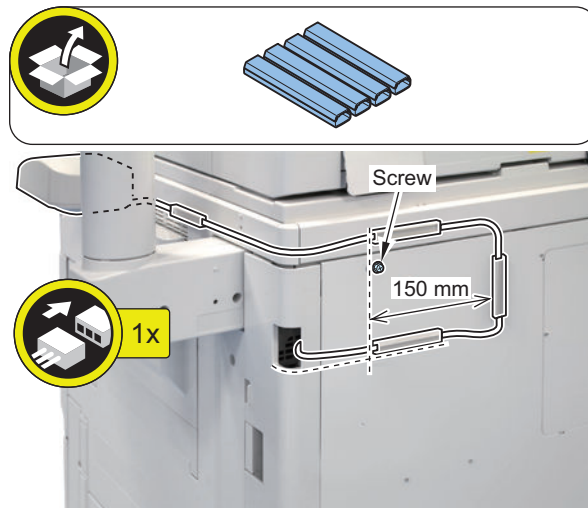
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6)



14. Connect the Speaker Cable to the Speaker Unit.

15. Remove the 4 covers from the Cord Guides, and affix them as shown in the figure.

16. Pass the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides, and fit the 4 covers on the Cord Guides.



NOTE:

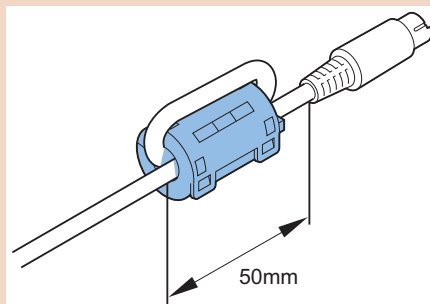
When using together with the Copy Card Reader

< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

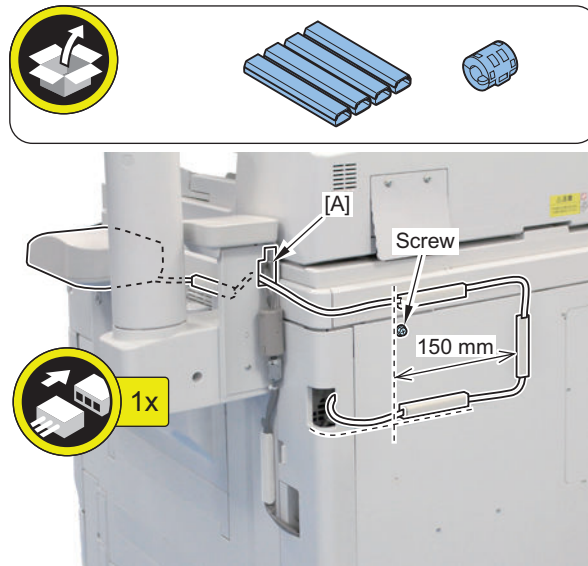
1. Pass the Speaker Cable through the [A] part, install the Ring Core to the cable, and then connect the cable to the Speaker Unit.

CAUTION:

Be sure to attach the Ring Cores within 50mm from the end of the Speaker Cable.

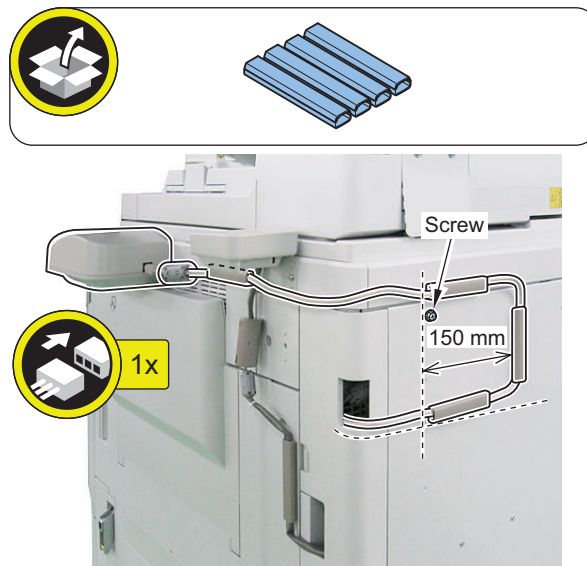


2. Remove the 4 covers from the Cord Guides, and affix them as shown in the figure.
3. Pass the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides, and fit the 4 covers on the Cord Guides.



< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

1. Connect the Speaker Cable to the Speaker Unit.
2. Remove the 4 covers from the Cord Guides, and affix them as shown in the figure.
3. Pass the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides, and fit the 4 covers on the Cord Guides.



Checking after Installation

NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

-
1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
 2. Turn the main power switch ON.
 3. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Accessibility] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Use Voice Navigation], and check that the setting is [ON].
 4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Accessibility] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Voice Guide from Speakers], and check that the setting is ON.

Operation Check

NOTE:

Perform the following check from the Voice Recognition button on the numeric keypad.

■ When Using



1. Press the Voice Guidance Start button.
2. Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Guidance Kit" becomes enabled.

■ When Stopping to Use



1. Press the Voice Guidance Start button.

HDD-related Option

Pre-checks

Points to Note at Installation

CAUTION:

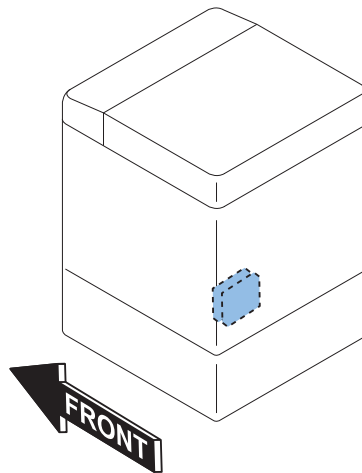
- For TYPE2 to TYPE3, be sure to perform the procedure of each TYPE after performing [“Removing the HDD Box Unit” on page 294](#).
- When using the mirroring function, be sure to install 2 HDDs of the same capacity.
- The HDD needs to be initialized after replacing the large capacity HDD.
- When replacing a HDD that contains user information with a high-capacity HDD (which is not an initial installation), backup and export of HDD data are necessary. For details, refer to "Backup Data" in the Service Manual.

When installing the HDD-related options (the following 3 products), refer to pages described below.

- 2.5inch/250GB HDD-N1
- 2.5inch/1TB HDD-P1
- HDD Mirroring Kit-J1

Title	Combination of Product
TYPE-1	“[TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB)” on page 298
TYPE-2	“Removing the HDD Box Unit” on page 294 + “[TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit” on page 304
TYPE-3	“Removing the HDD Box Unit” on page 294 + “[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit” on page 315

Installation Outline Drawing



Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

● Removing the HDD Box Unit

CAUTION:

- For [TYPE-1 Option HDD (1TB)], this procedure is not necessary. For other TYPES, be sure to proceed to each installation procedure after performing this procedure.
- The removed screws will be used again in the installation procedure of each TYPE.

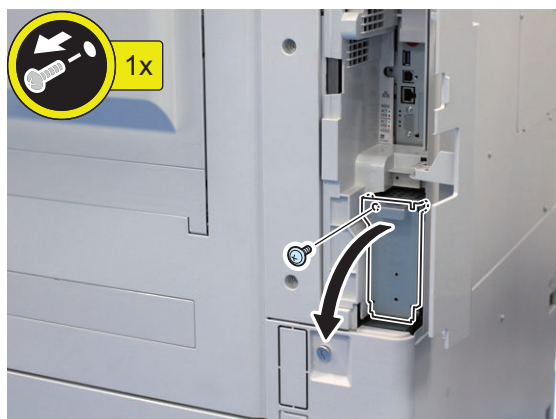


1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.



2. Open the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw

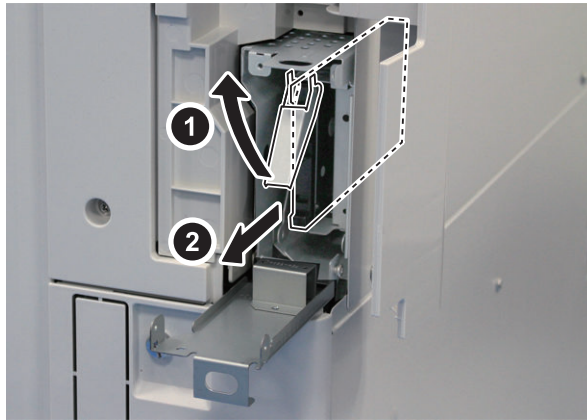




3. Remove the HDD.

NOTE:

When replacing with the Option HDD (1TB), the removed HDD will not be used.



4. Close the HDD Lid.

NOTE:

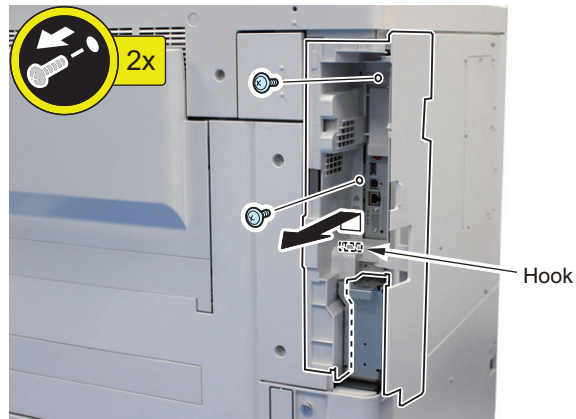
Do not tighten the screw here.





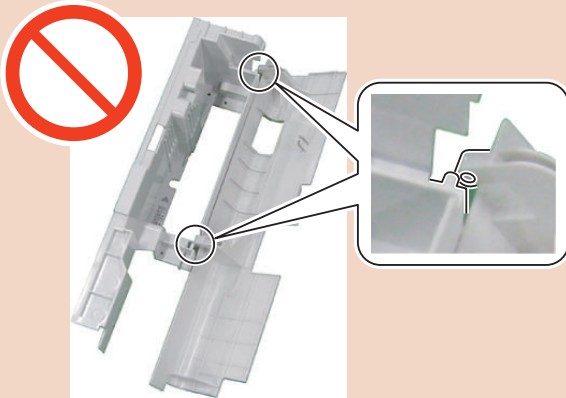
5. Remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



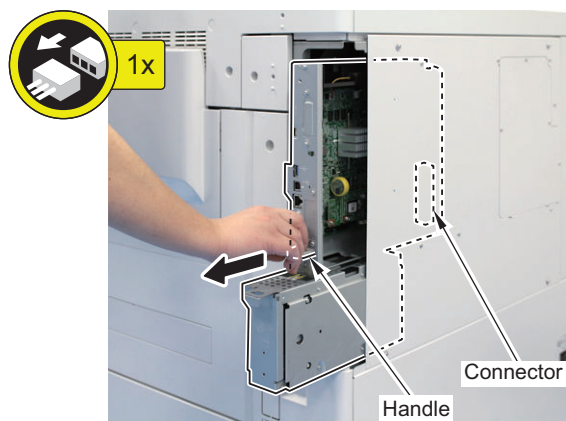
CAUTION:

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



6. Hold the handle, and remove the Main Controller 1.

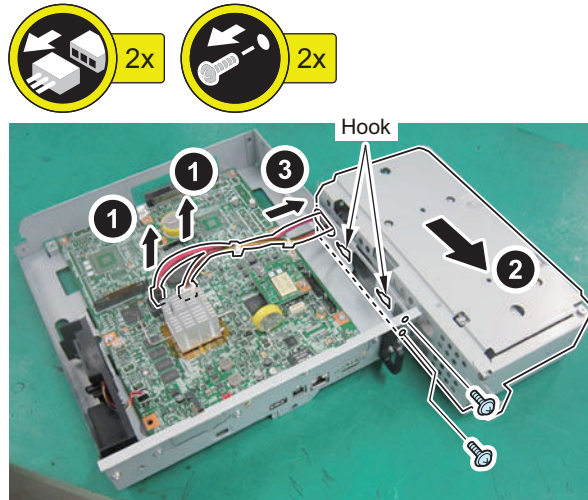
- 1 Connector





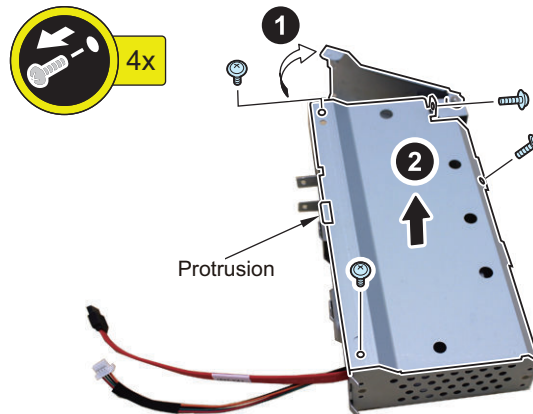
7. Remove the HDD Box Unit.

- 2 Connectors
- 2 Screws
- 2 Hooks



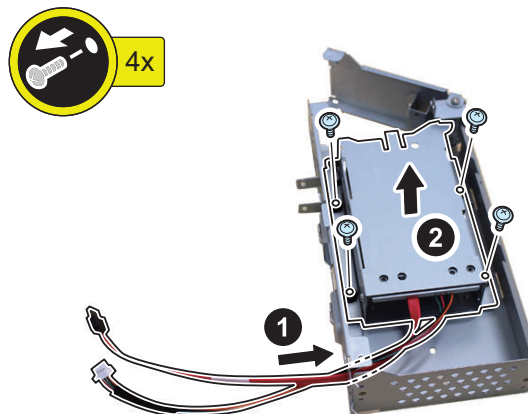
8. Open the HDD Lid, and remove the HDD Outside Cover.

- 4 Screws
- 1 Protrusion



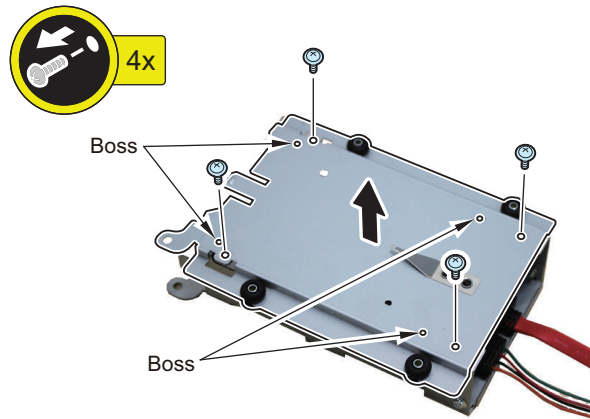
9. Remove the HDD Unit.

- 4 Screws



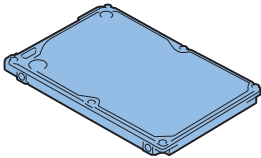
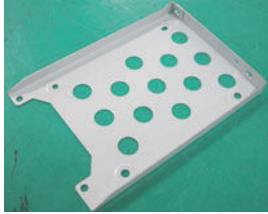


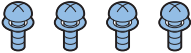

10. Remove the HDD Side Cover.

- 4 Screws
- 4 Bosses



[TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB)

■ Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Case X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] HDD Holder Hinge X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case Hinge Base X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Sems ; M3x4) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x8) X 2 

■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

■ Installation Procedure



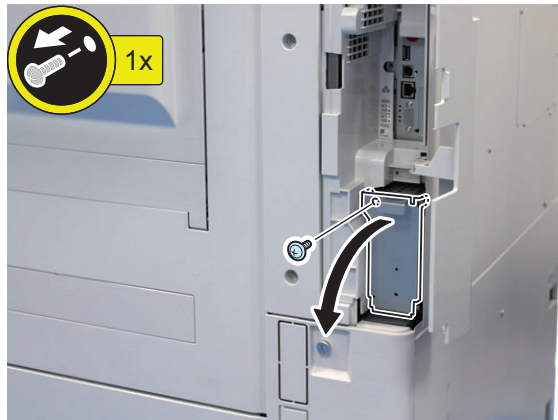
1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.



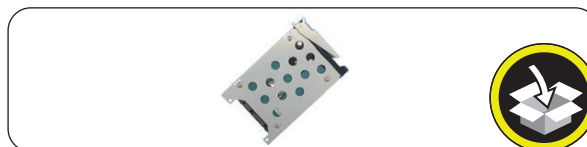
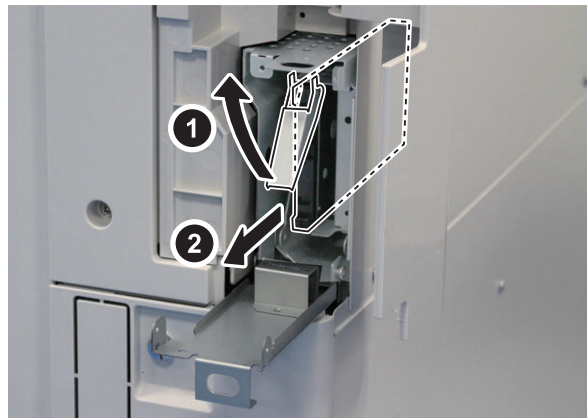


2. Open the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw (will be used in step 7)



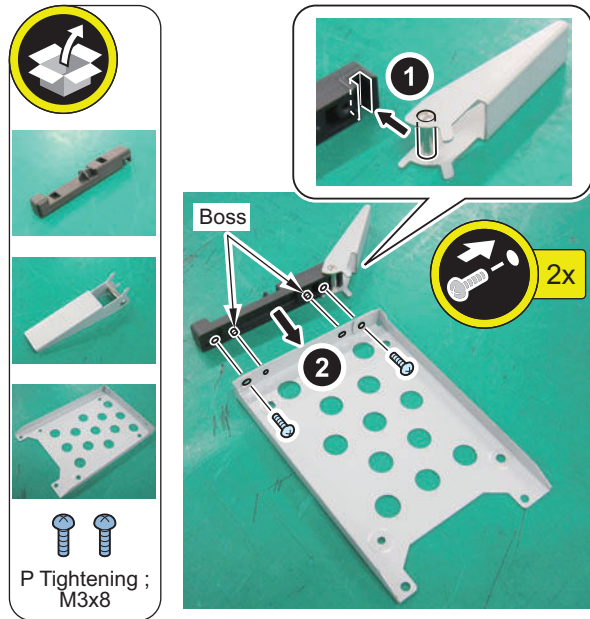
3. Remove the HDD. (The removed HDD will not be used.)





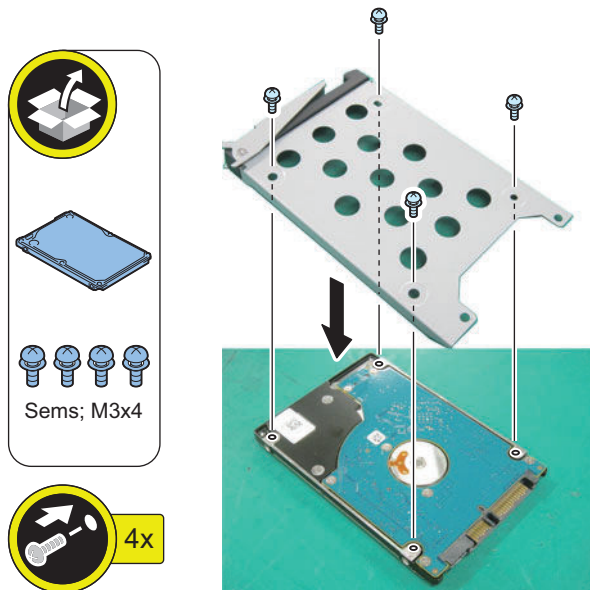
4. Fit the Hinge Pin of the HDD Holder Hinge with the groove of the HDD Case Hinge Base to install it to the HDD Case.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8)



5. Install the assembled HDD Case to the HDD.

- 4 Screws (Sems; M3x4)



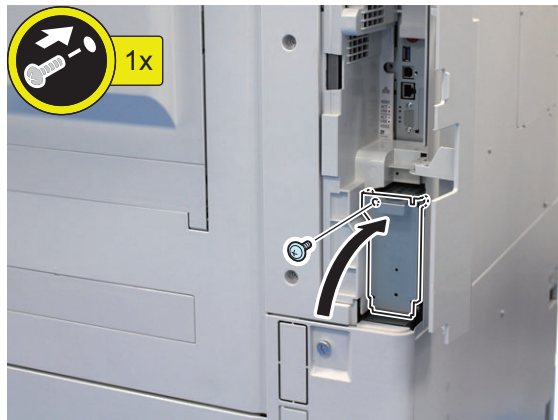


6. Install the Option HDD to the host machine.



7. Close the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw (screws removed in step 2)



8. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.



■ HDD Initialization Procedure

1. Requirements

1. PC
Service Support Tool in the version that supports this host machine must be installed.
2. Cross Ethernet Cable (when SST is used)

2. Preparing for the Installation of the System Software of Host machine

1. If both PC and the machine are on, turn them off.
2. Connect the PC and the host machine using an Cross Ethernet cable. (when SST is used)
3. Turn on the PC.

3. Registering the system software

1. Insert the latest System Software into the PC using the SST.
2. Start the SST.
3. Click 'Register Firmware'.
4. Select the drive where the system software has been inserted, and click the [SEARCH] button.
5. Click the [REGISTER] button.
6. Click [OK].

4. Initializing HDD

<In case of SST>

1. Start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
2. Start the SST.
3. Select the model. Then, select [Single] and click [Start].
4. Click [Format HDD].
5. Select [All], and click [Start].
6. Click [Execute Format].
7. The Format is executed.
8. Select [Shutdown/Restart], and click [Shutdown].
9. Click [OK]
10. The power of the host machine is turned OFF.
11. Terminate the SST.
12. Disconnect the Cross Ethernet Cable from the machine, and connect the user's network cable to the machine.

<In case of USB flash drive>

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
2. Start up SST, and click the USB icon displayed in the target selection screen.
3. Select the drive, the model series, and the version to be written to the USB flash drive, and click [Confirm].
4. Click [Start], and after the version has been written to the USB flash drive, click [OK] and then remove the USB flash drive.
5. Terminate the SST.
6. Connect the USB flash drive to the host machine, and start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
7. When the USB menu is displayed, press keys on the Control Panel in the order shown below.
 - [4]: Clear/Format
 - [1]: Disk Format
 - [0]: OK
 - Press any keys.
 - [C]: Return to menu
 - [Reset] : Start shutdown sequence
 - [0]: OK (The power of the host machine is turned OFF automatically.)
8. Remove the USB flash drive.
9. Turn ON the main power switch.

■ Executing Auto Gradation Adjustment

When the high-capacity HDD is installed, the machine initializes its HDD, resetting the data used for auto gradation correction. Therefore, execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment after installing the high-capacity HDD to enable proper images to be output.

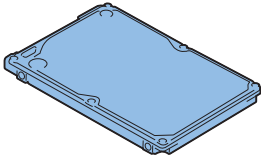



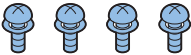

■ Execution of the Minimum Installation Work

Be sure to execute the minimum installation work in accordance with the Setup Guide because HDD is initialized when the high-capacity HDD is installed.

[TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit

■ Checking the Contents

<Option HDD (250 GB)>

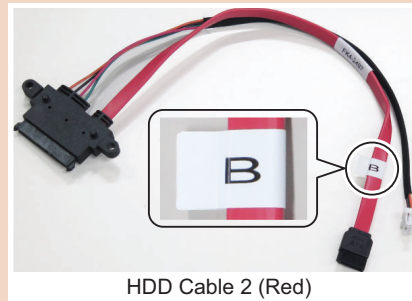
<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Case X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] HDD Holder Hinge X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case Hinge Base X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Sems ; M3x4) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x8) X 2 





<HDD Mirroring Kit>

CAUTION:

Although the red cable shown below may sometimes be supplied in lieu of the HDD Cable 2 (Blue), the procedure for connecting the red cable is the same as that for the blue cable.

When connecting the cable to the Controller PCB, make sure to first confirm that the sticker [B] is attached to the cable and then connect the cable to the Controller PCB.



<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD Cable 2 (Blue) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Connector Support Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (TP; M3x8 Black) X 2 

<Others>

- Guides are included

■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

■ Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

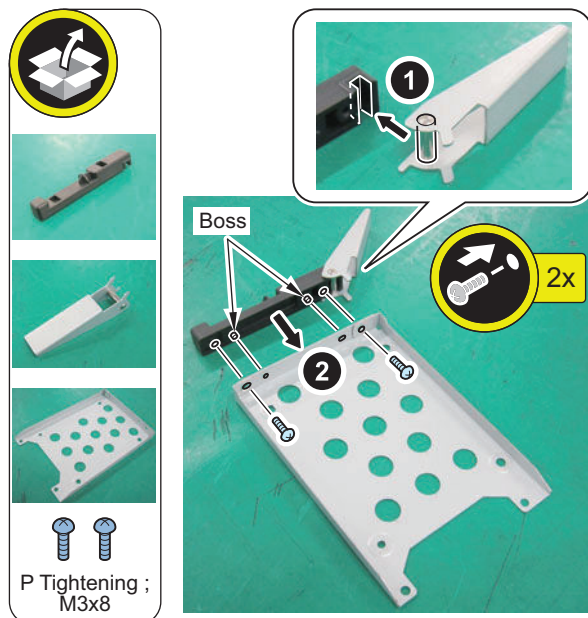
Be sure to perform "“Removing the HDD Box Unit” on page 294" before performing the following work.

● Assembling and Installing the Option



1. Fit the Hinge Pin of the HDD Holder Hinge with the groove of the HDD Case Hinge Base to install it to the HDD Case.

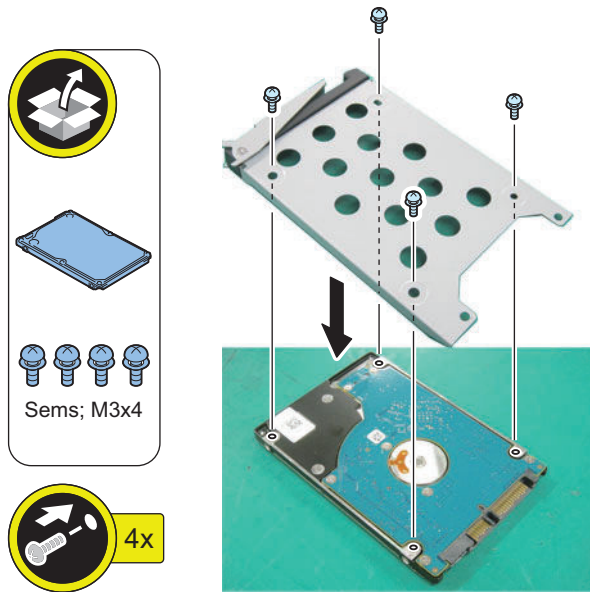
- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8)



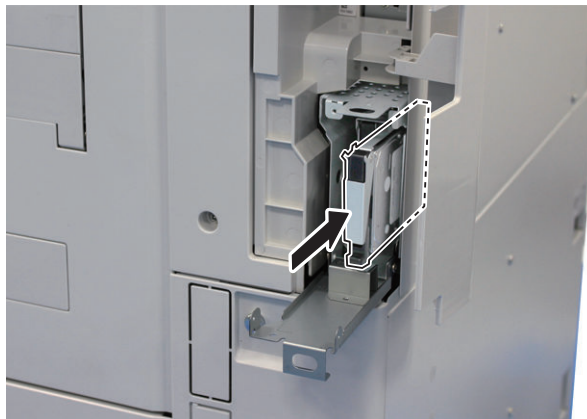


2. Install the assembled HDD Case to the HDD.

- 4 Screws (Sems; M3x4)

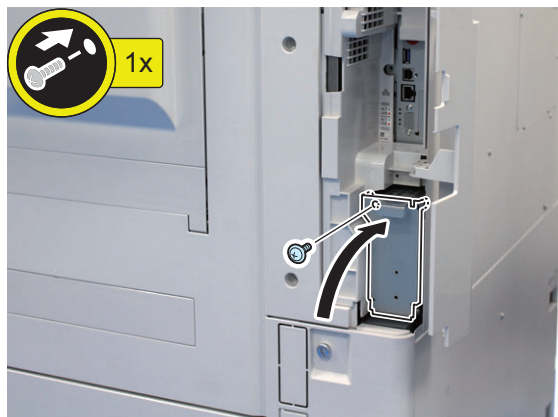


3. Install the Option HDD to the Slot 2 (Right).



4. Close the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw (Use the removed screws)





5. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.

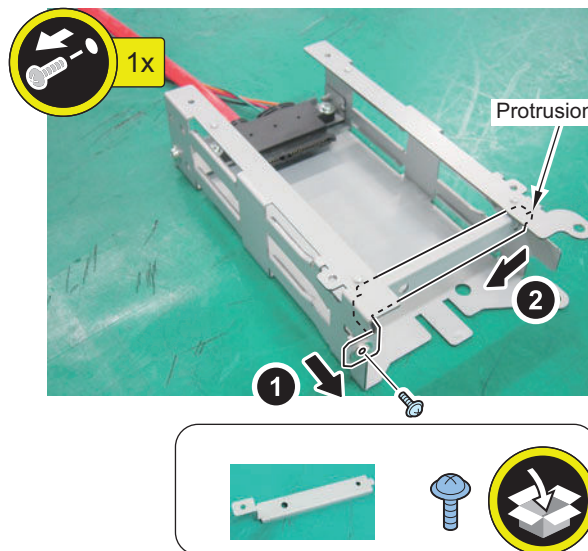


■ Installing the HDD Mirroring Kit



1. Remove the HDD Wrong Insertion Prevention Plate. (The removed parts will not be used.)

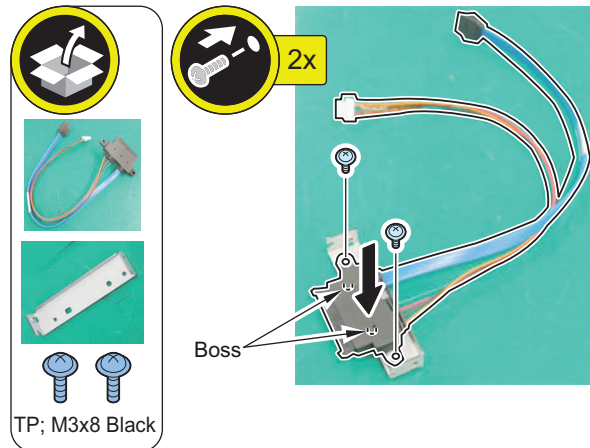
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion





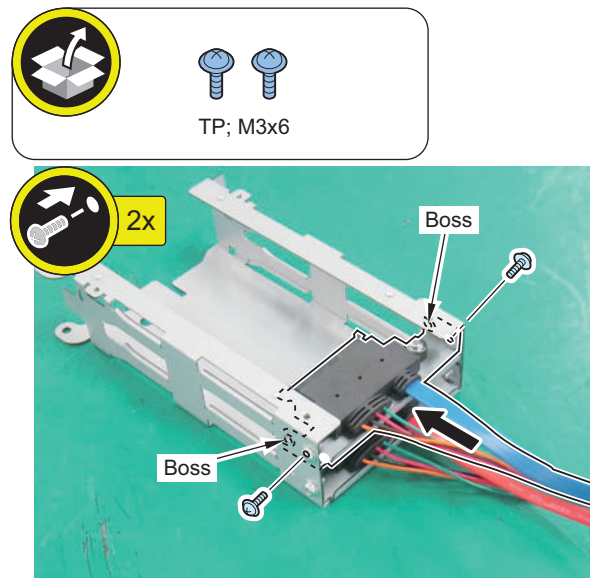
2. Assemble the HDD Cable 2 (Blue or Red) and the HDD Connector Support Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x8 Black)



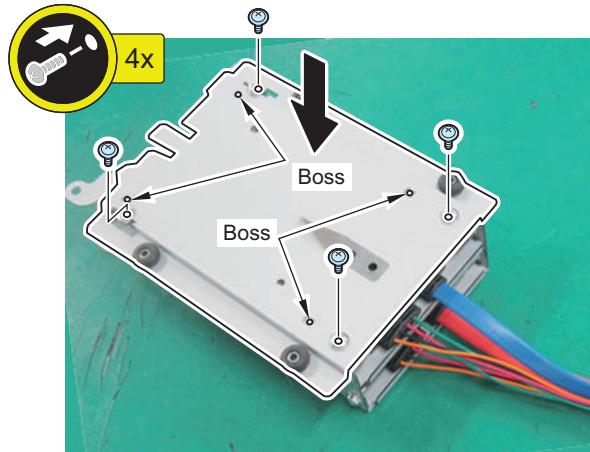
3. Install the assembled HDD Cable 2 Unit to the HDD Unit.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)

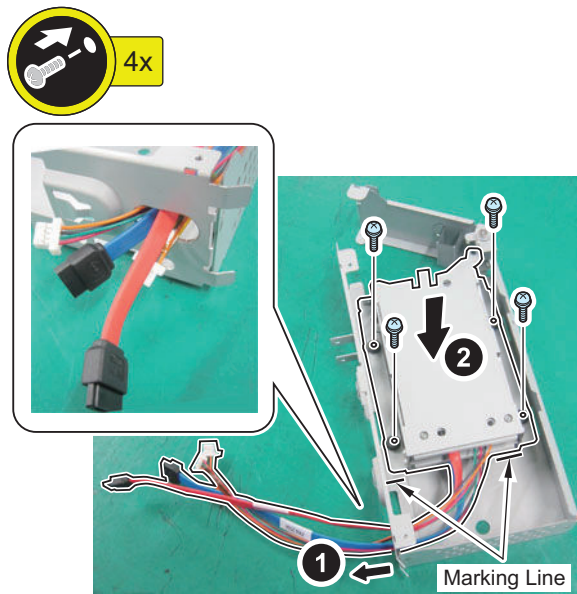


**4. Installing the HDD Side Cover.**

- 4 Bosses
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)

**5. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Unit according to the marking lines.**

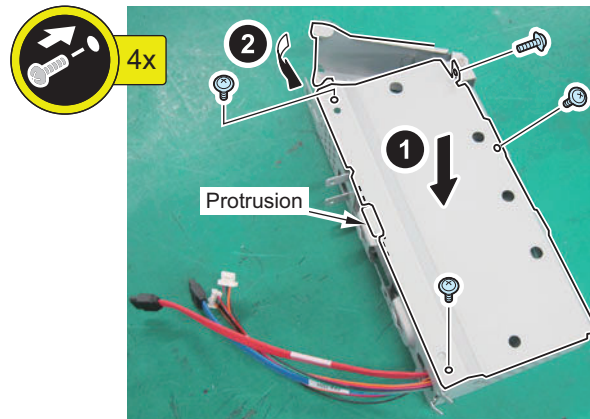
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)





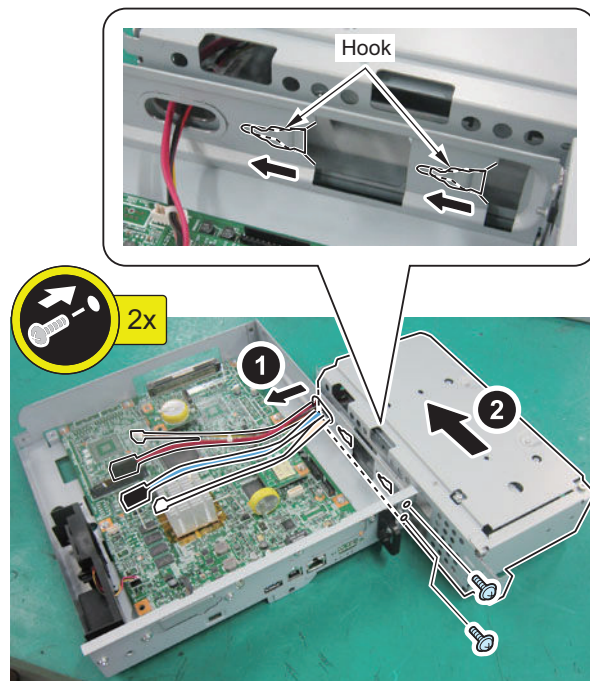
6. Install the HDD Outside Cover, and close the HDD Lid.

- 1 Protrusion
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



7. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Box Unit.

- 2 Hooks
- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws)



CAUTION:

Be sure to connect the communication cable to the correct port. The HDD error occurs.

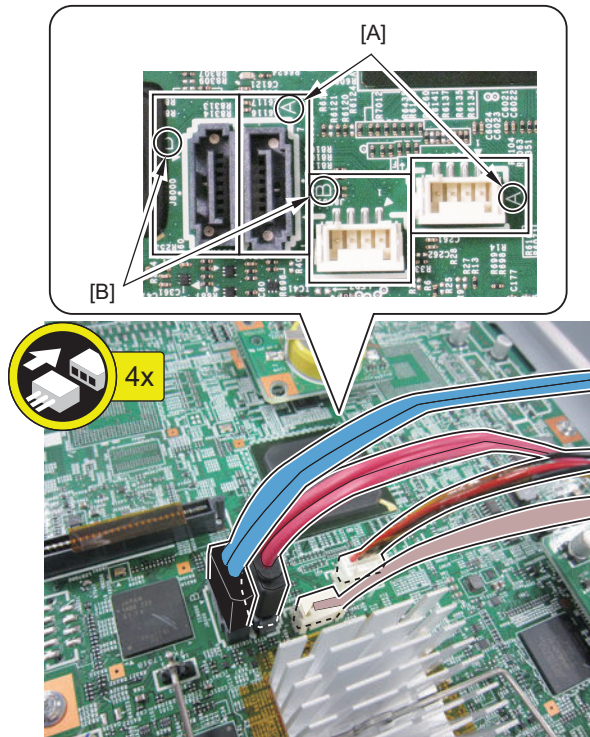
8. Connect the HDD Cable 1 (Red) to [A] on the Controller PCB.

- 2 Connectors

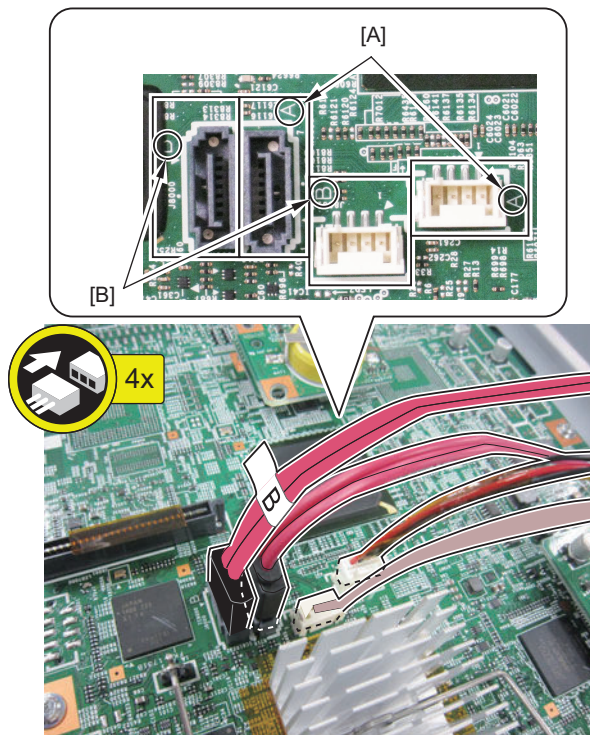
9. Connect the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) or the HDD Cable 2 (Red) with a sticker labeled [B] to [B] on the Controller PCB.

- 2 Connectors

< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) >



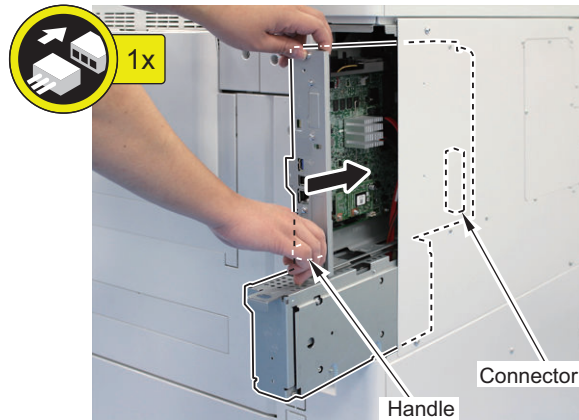
< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Red) >





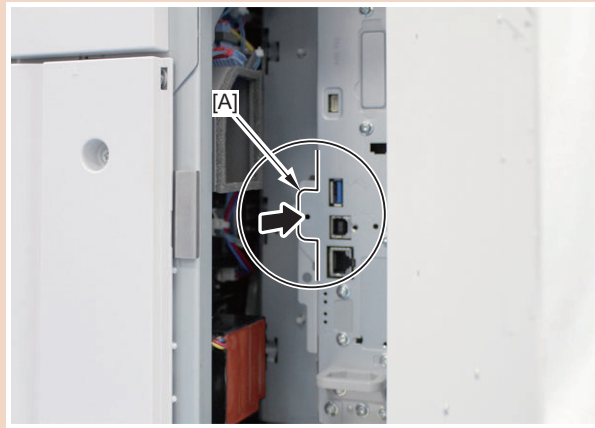
10. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.

- 1 Connector



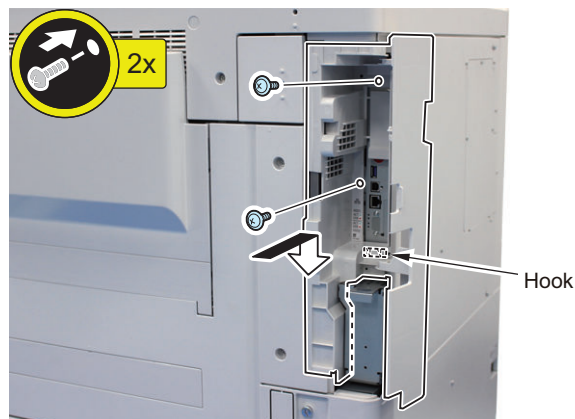
CAUTION:

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



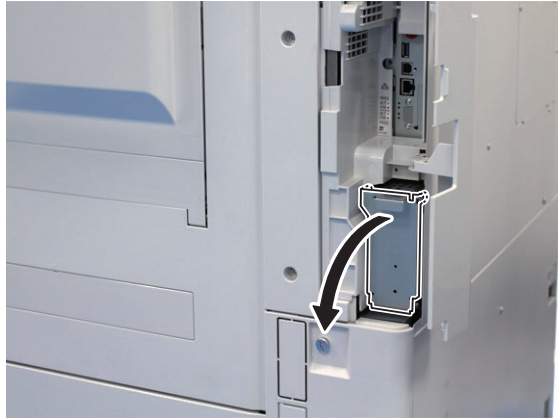
11. Install the Side Cover. Do not close the Right Rear Cover 1 yet here.

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

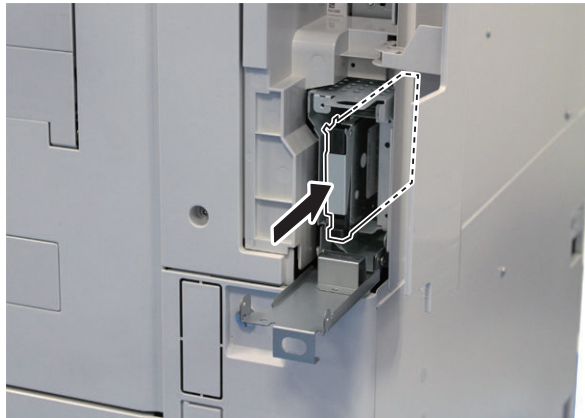




12. Open the HDD Lid.



13. Return the HDD removed from the host machine to the Slot 1 (Left).



■ Setting the Mirroring



1. Set the setting value for the mirroring to "1" in the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
2. Turn OFF/ON the main power of the host machine to enable the setting value.
3. Make sure that the UI screen is activated correctly.
4. Open the Cover, and make sure that the LED blinks.

NOTE:

Rebuilding starts approximately after 3 minutes after turning OFF and then ON the power.

- HDD 1 (Slot 1): The green LED blinks.
- HDD 2 (Slot 2): The green and red LEDs blink.

CAUTION:

Rebuild process starts after setting "1" for W/RAID.

If an error occurs during the rebuild process at the initial installation the hard disk needs to be replaced. (Call service rep.), reexecute the process with the following procedure.

1. Check that the lighting red LED is HDD2.
2. Select "0" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
3. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.
4. Select "1" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
5. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.

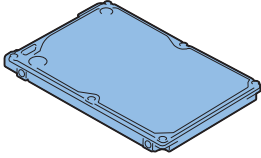





The foregoing procedure is limited to the rebuild process at the initial installation.

An error during the rebuild process that is executed during operation is not included in the consideration.

[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit

■ Checking the Contents

<Option HDD (1TB)>

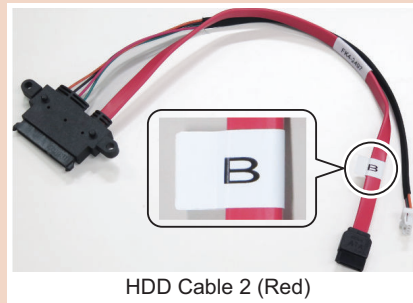
<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Case X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] HDD Holder Hinge X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case Hinge Base X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Sems ; M3x4) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x8) X 2 





<HDD Mirroring Kit>

CAUTION:

Although the red cable shown below may sometimes be supplied in lieu of the HDD Cable 2 (Blue), the procedure for connecting the red cable is the same as that for the blue cable.

When connecting the cable to the Controller PCB, make sure to first confirm that the sticker [B] is attached to the cable and then connect the cable to the Controller PCB.



<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD Cable 2 (Blue) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Connector Support Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (TP; M3x8 Black) X 2 

<Others>

- Guides are included

■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

■ Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

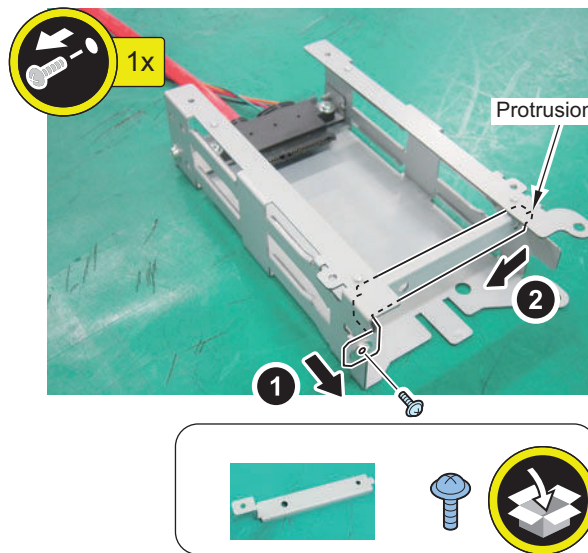
Be sure to perform "Removing the HDD Box Unit" on page 294" before performing the following work.

● Installing the HDD Mirroring Kit



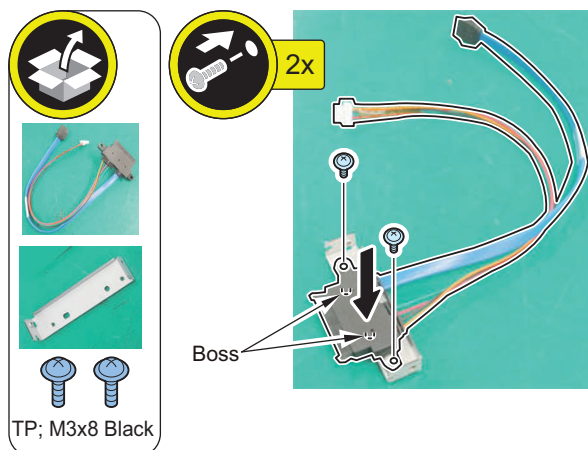
1. Remove the HDD Wrong Insertion Prevention Plate. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



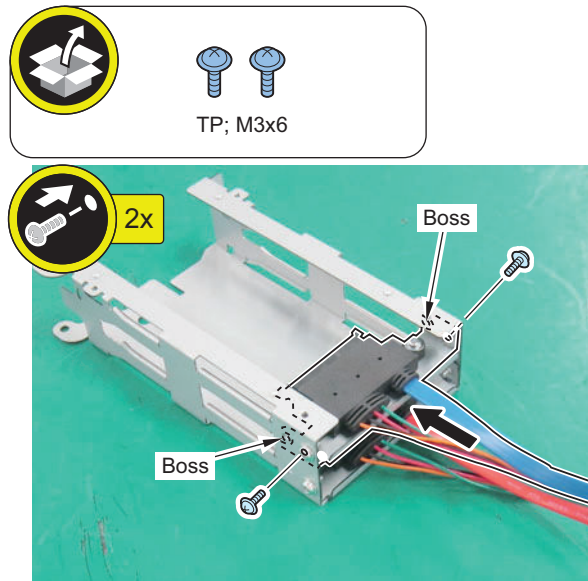
2. Assemble the HDD Cable 2 (Blue or Red) and the HDD Connector Support Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x8 Black)

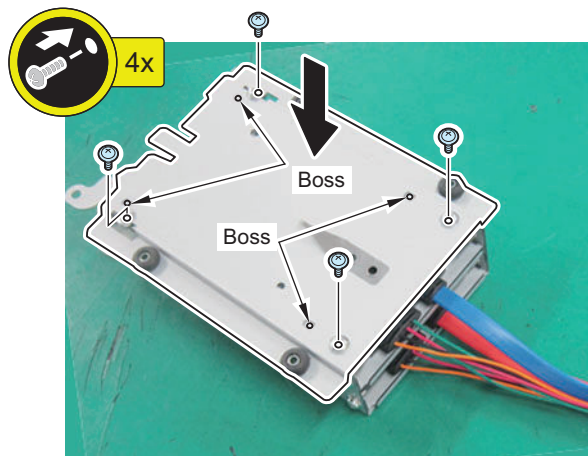


**3. Install the assembled HDD Cable 2 Unit to the HDD Unit.**

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)

**4. Install the HDD Side Cover.**

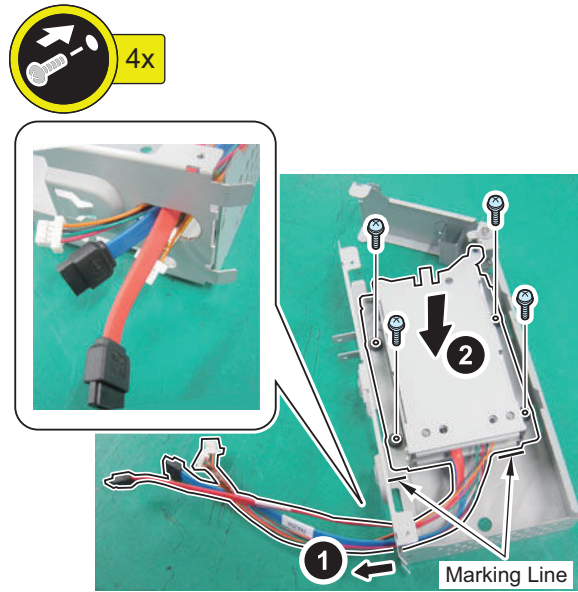
- 4 Bosses
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)





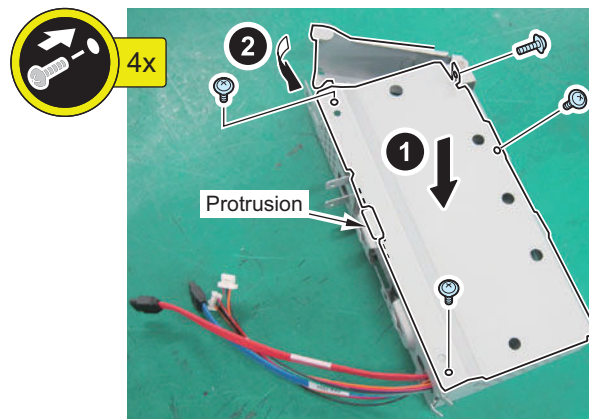
5. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Unit according to the marking lines.

- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



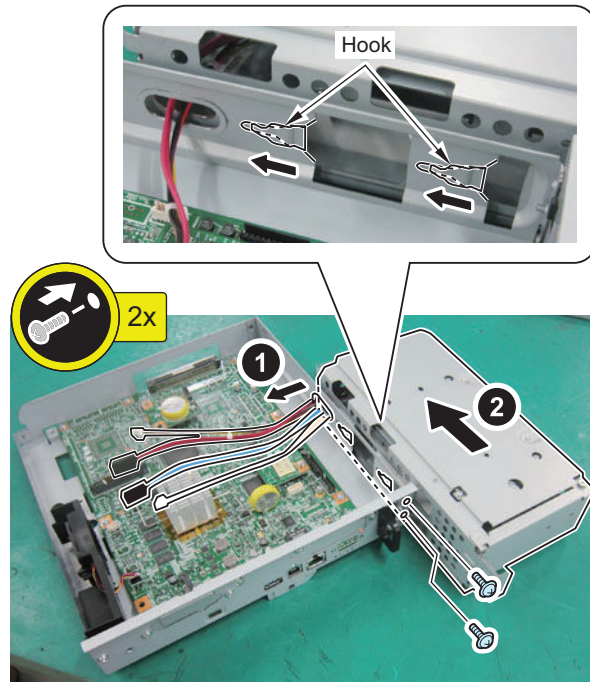
6. Install the HDD Outside Cover, and close the HDD Lid.

- 1 Protrusion
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



**7. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Box Unit.**

- 2 Hooks
- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws)

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to connect the communication cable to the correct port. The HDD error occurs.

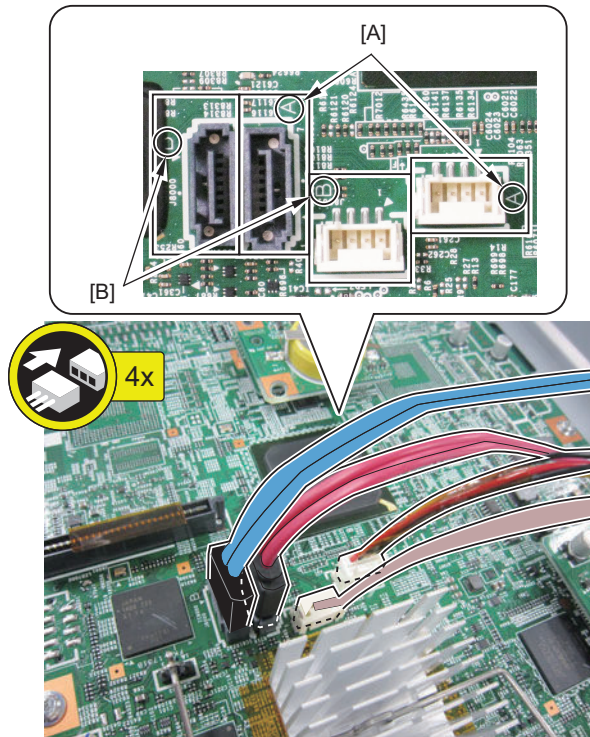
8. Connect the HDD Cable 1 (Red) to [A] on the Controller PCB.

- 2 Connectors

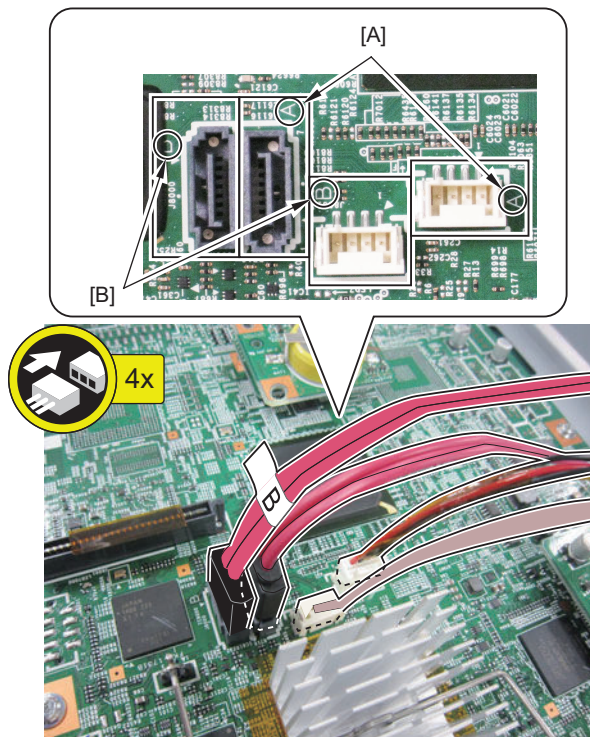
9. Connect the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) or the HDD Cable 2 (Red) with a sticker labeled [B] to [B] on the Controller PCB.

- 2 Connectors

< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) >



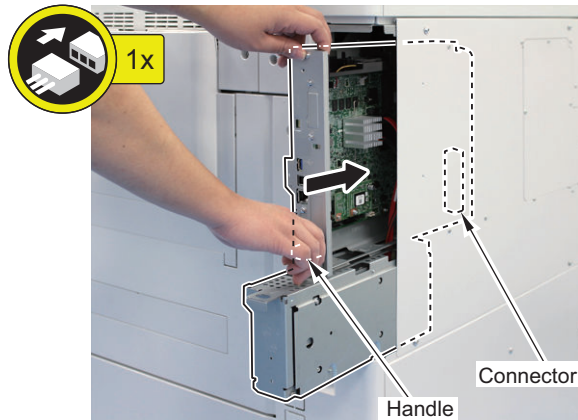
< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Red) >





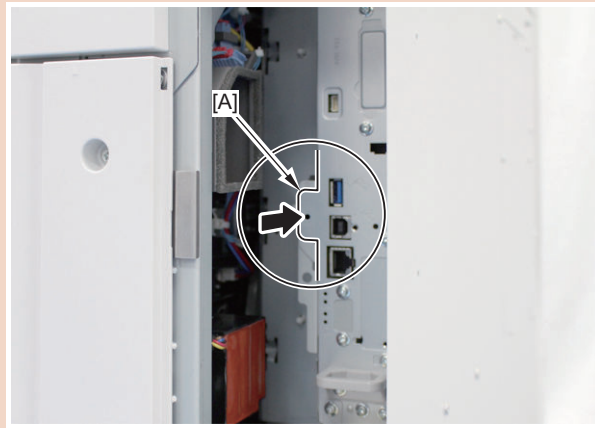
10. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.

- 1 Connector



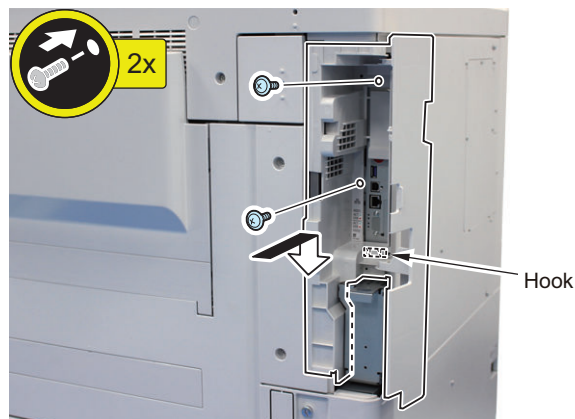
CAUTION:

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



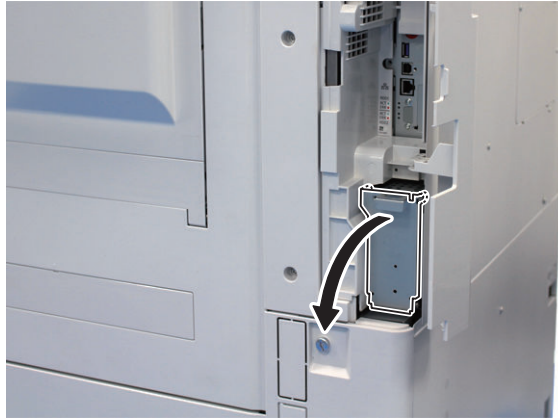
11. Install the Side Cover. Do not close the Right Rear Cover 1 yet here.

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws





12. Open the HDD Lid.

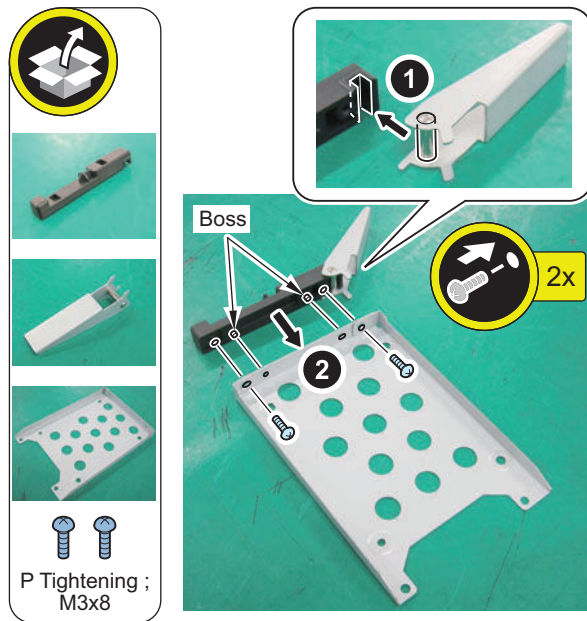


• Assembling and Installing the Option HDD



1. Fit the Hinge Pin of the HDD Holder Hinge with the groove of the HDD Case Hinge Base to install it to the HDD Case.

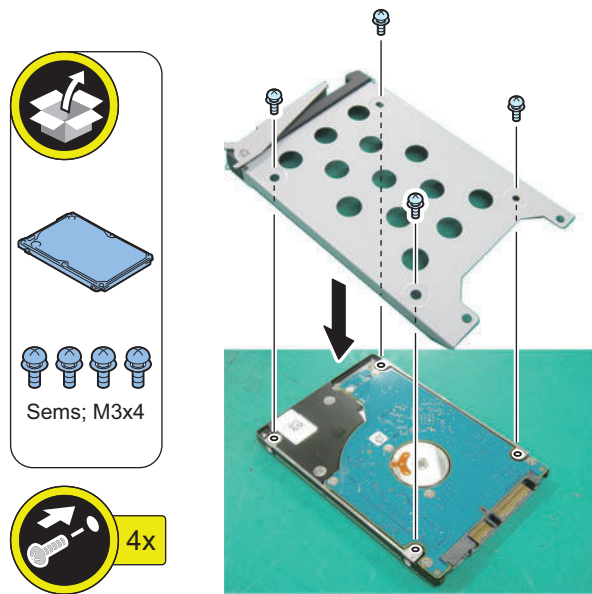
- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8)



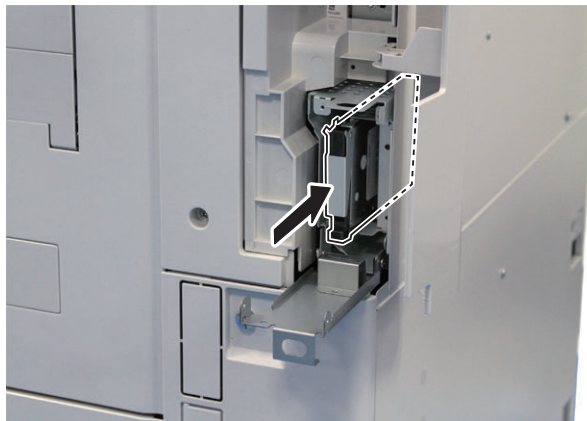


2. Install the assembled HDD Case to the HDD.

- 4 Screws (Sems; M3x4)



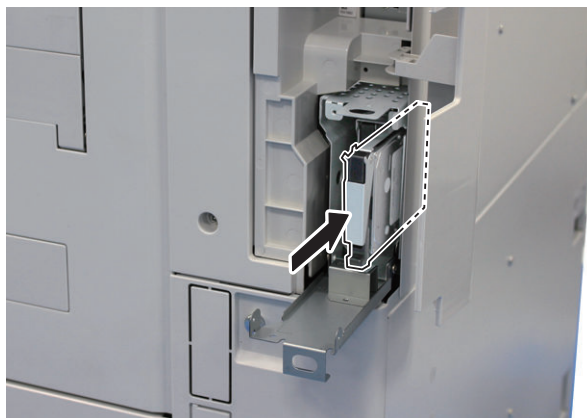
3. Install the First Option HDD to the Slot 1 (Left).



4. Assemble the Second Option HDD with same steps of Step 1 to Step 2.



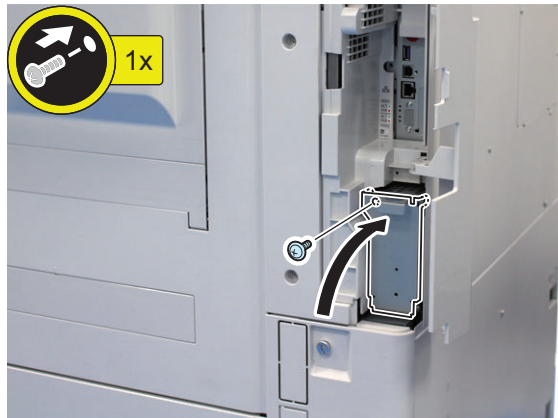
5. Install the Option HDD to the Slot 2 (Left).





6. Close the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw (Use the removed screws)



7. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.



■ HDD Initialization Procedure

1. Requirements

1. PC
Service Support Tool in the version that supports this host machine must be installed.
2. Cross Ethernet Cable (when SST is used)

2. Preparing for the Installation of the System Software of Host machine

1. If both PC and the machine are on, turn them off.
2. Connect the PC and the host machine using an Cross Ethernet cable. (when SST is used)
3. Turn on the PC.

3. Registering the system software

1. Insert the latest System Software into the PC using the SST.
2. Start the SST.
3. Click 'Register Firmware'.
4. Select the drive where the system software has been inserted, and click the [SEARCH] button.
5. Click the [REGISTER] button.
6. Click [OK].

4. Initializing HDD

<In case of SST>

1. Start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
2. Start the SST.
3. Select the model. Then, select [Single] and click [Start].
4. Click [Format HDD].
5. Select [All], and click [Start].
6. Click [Execute Format].
7. The Format is executed.
8. Select [Shutdown/Restart], and click [Shutdown].
9. Click [OK]
10. The power of the host machine is turned OFF.
11. Terminate the SST.
12. Disconnect the Cross Ethernet Cable from the machine, and connect the user's network cable to the machine.

<In case of USB flash drive>

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
2. Start up SST, and click the USB icon displayed in the target selection screen.
3. Select the drive, the model series, and the version to be written to the USB flash drive, and click [Confirm].
4. Click [Start], and after the version has been written to the USB flash drive, click [OK] and then remove the USB flash drive.
5. Terminate the SST.
6. Connect the USB flash drive to the host machine, and start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
7. When the USB menu is displayed, press keys on the Control Panel in the order shown below.
 - [4]: Clear/Format
 - [1]: Disk Format
 - [0]: OK
 - Press any keys.
 - [C]: Return to menu
 - [Reset] : Start shutdown sequence
 - [0]: OK (The power of the host machine is turned OFF automatically.)
8. Remove the USB flash drive.
9. Turn ON the main power switch.

■ Setting the Mirroring



1. **Set the setting value for the mirroring to "1" in the following service mode.**
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
2. **Turn OFF/ON the main power of the host machine to enable the setting value.**
3. **Make sure that the UI screen is activated correctly.**
4. **Open the Cover, and make sure that the LED blinks.**

NOTE:

Rebuilding starts approximately after 3 minutes after turning OFF and then ON the power.

- HDD 1 (Slot 1): The green LED blinks.
- HDD 2 (Slot 2): The green and red LEDs blink.

CAUTION:

Rebuild process starts after setting "1" for W/RAID.

If an error occurs during the rebuild process at the initial installation the hard disk needs to be replaced. (Call service rep.), reexecute the process with the following procedure.

1. Check that the lighting red LED is HDD2.
2. Select "0" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
3. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.
4. Select "1" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
5. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.

The foregoing procedure is limited to the rebuild process at the initial installation.

An error during the rebuild process that is executed during operation is not included in the consideration.

■ Executing Auto Gradation Adjustment

When the high-capacity HDD is installed, the machine initializes its HDD, resetting the data used for auto gradation correction. Therefore, execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment after installing the high-capacity HDD to enable proper images to be output.

■ Execution of the Minimum Installation Work

Be sure to execute the minimum installation work in accordance with the Setup Guide because HDD is initialized when the high-capacity HDD is installed.

Super G3 FAX Board-AS1

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632501

Points to Note at Installation

- When installing the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board and this equipment at the same time, after checking "Checking the Contents", and install them following the Installation Procedure for Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- For "Checking the Operation", refer to this document.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

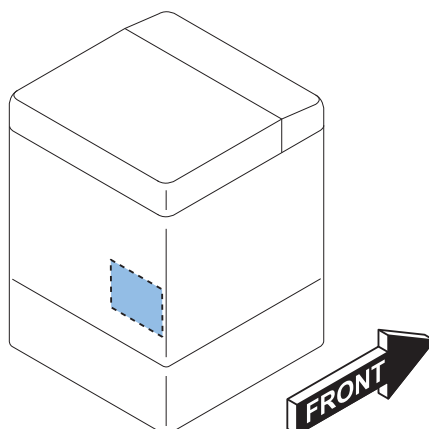
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.



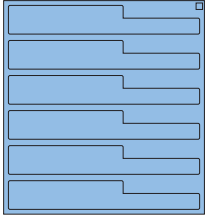

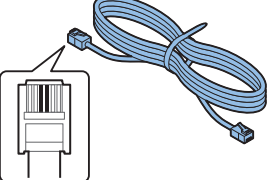
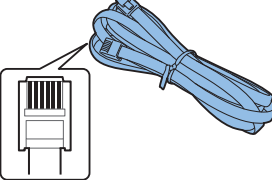
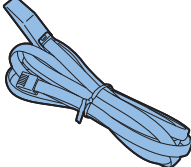
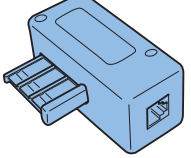
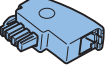
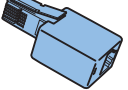

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] FAX Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Fax Approval Label X 1 Included for USA and Taiwan 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Telephone Cord (6 Contact type) (only for Europe) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] PTT Cable (only for Asia) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PTT Plug (Only for France) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Plug (Only for Germany) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] PTT Plug (Only for U.K.) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Modular Cover (only for Europe) X 1 	

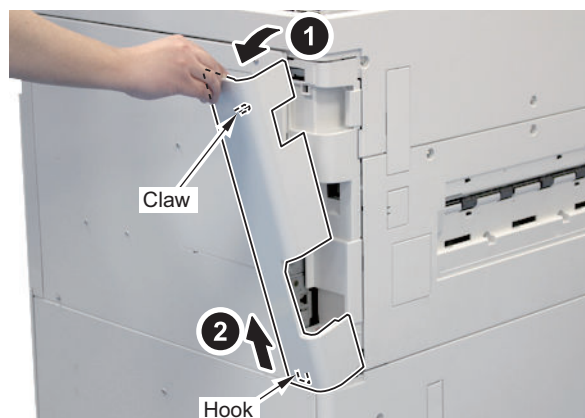
<Others>

- Including guides

Installation Procedure

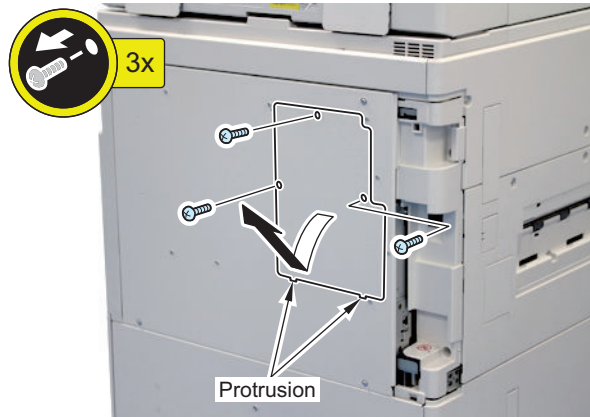
1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

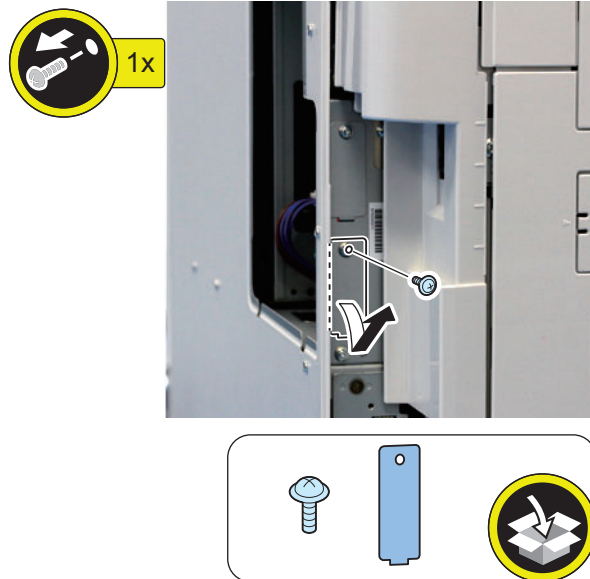


**2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.**

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

**3. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed parts will not be used.)**

- 1 Screw (used in the next step only in EUR)
- 1 Protrusion

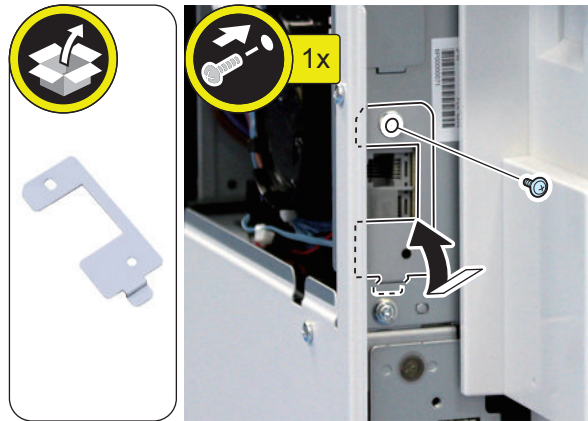


**NOTE:**

This step is only for Europe.

4. Install the Modular Cover.

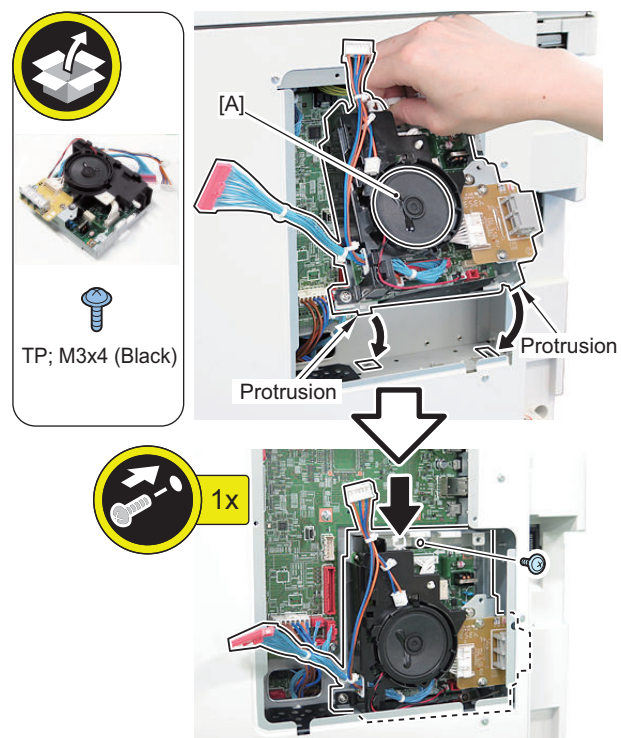
- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in the previous step)

**5. Remove the tape and, install the Fax Unit.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4: Black)

CAUTION:

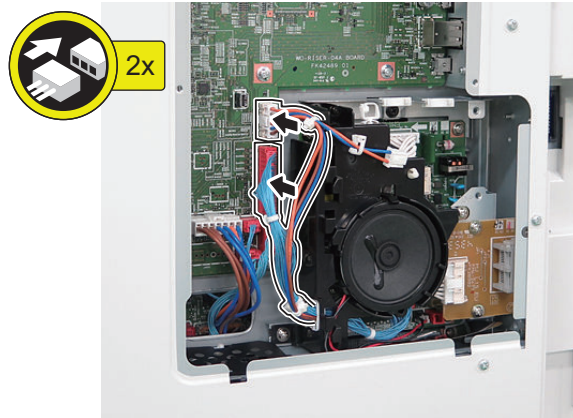
- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



□

6. Connect the 2 cables of the FAX Unit.

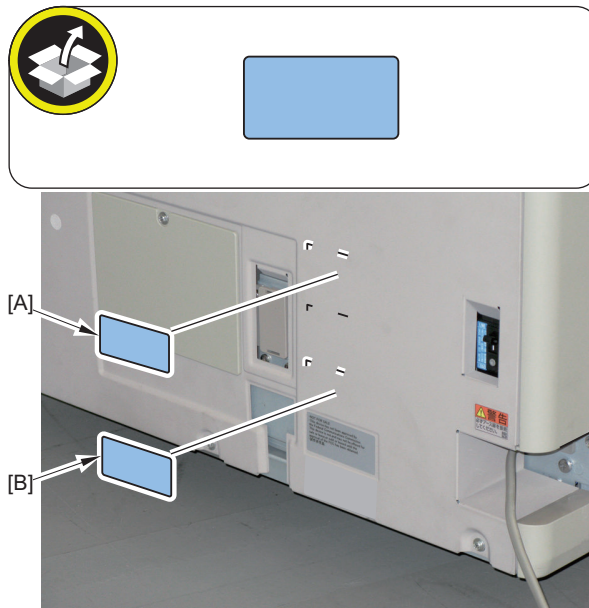
- 2 Connectors



□

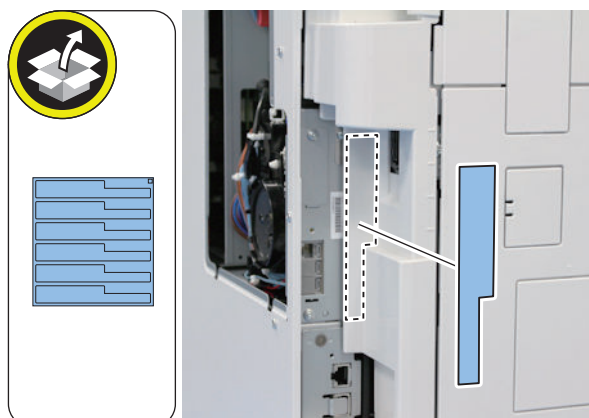
7. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

- [A] For USA
- [B] For Taiwan



□

8. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.

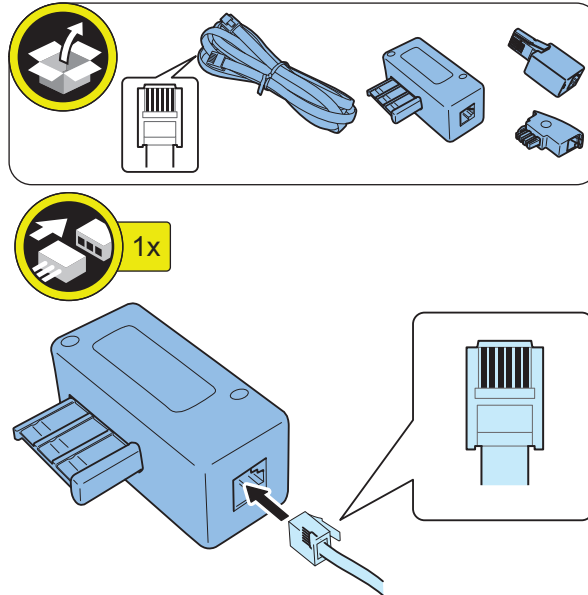


**NOTE:**

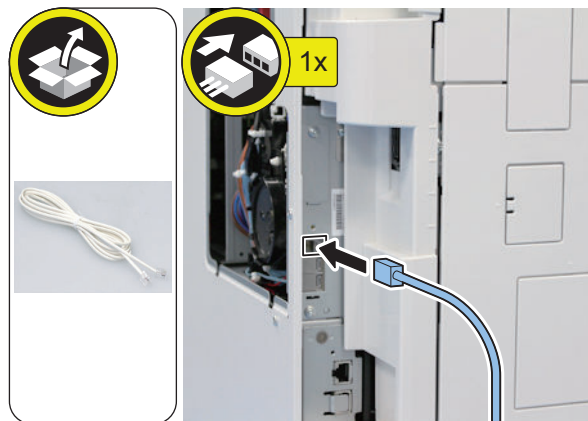
This step is only for Europe.

Do not connect the Telephone Cord (2 contact type) with the PTT Plug.

9. Connect the PTT Plug matched the field or area to the PTT Cable (6 contact type).



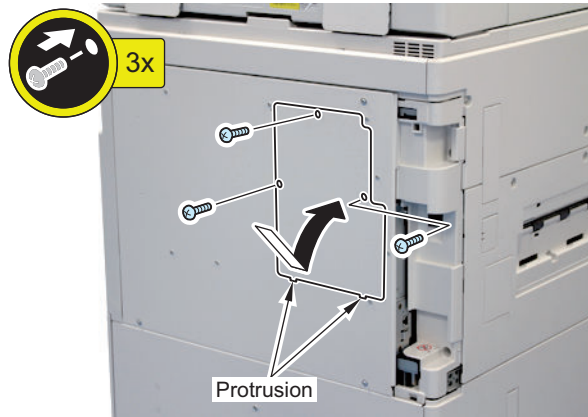
10. Connect the end of the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.





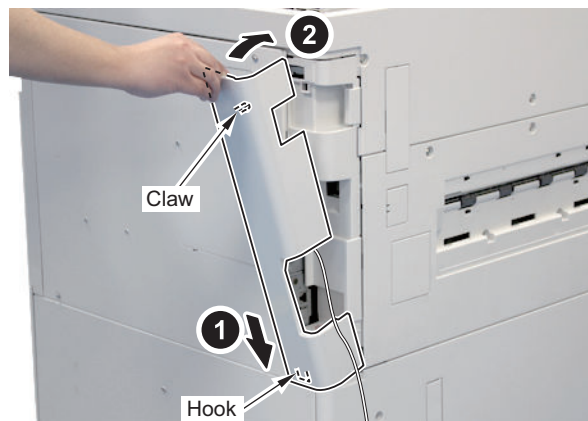
11. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



12. Install the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



13. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.

14. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

● Checking the Operation

■ Type Setting

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. **Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

■ Basic Setting

NOTE:

- When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.
- This setting can also be set from the Setup Guide ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide]).

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. **Set the user telephone number.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter the fax number > [OK]

2. **Set Type of telephone line.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. **Switch the control panel display to Send/Fax display.**
2. **Send the test document from this machine to another machine that can handle the communication test to check that this machine can send the data correctly.**
3. **Send the test document from the target to this machine to check if the machine can receive the document properly.**

Super G3 FAX Board-AS2

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632501

Points to Note at Installation

- When installing the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board and this equipment at the same time, after checking "Checking the Contents", and install them following the Installation Procedure for Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- For "Checking the Operation", refer to this document.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

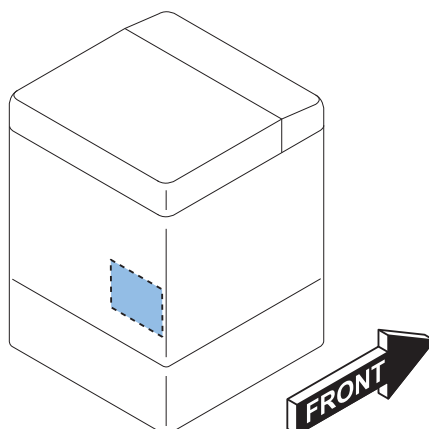
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.



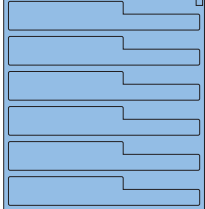

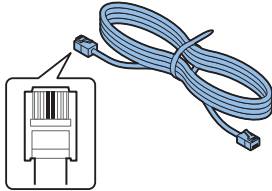
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing



● Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] FAX Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Fax Approval Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 	

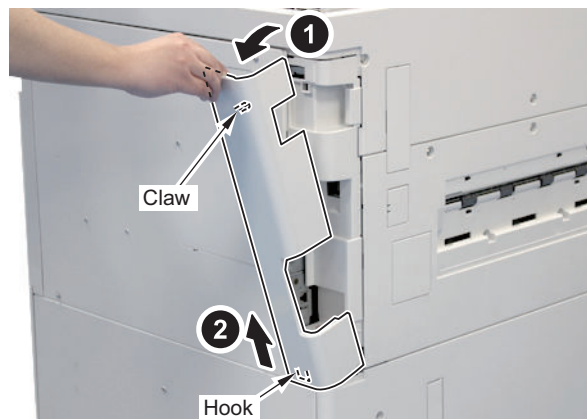
< Others >

- Including guides

● Installation Procedure

1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

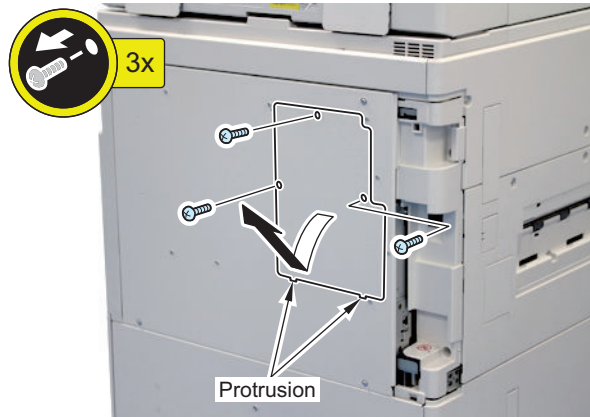
- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook





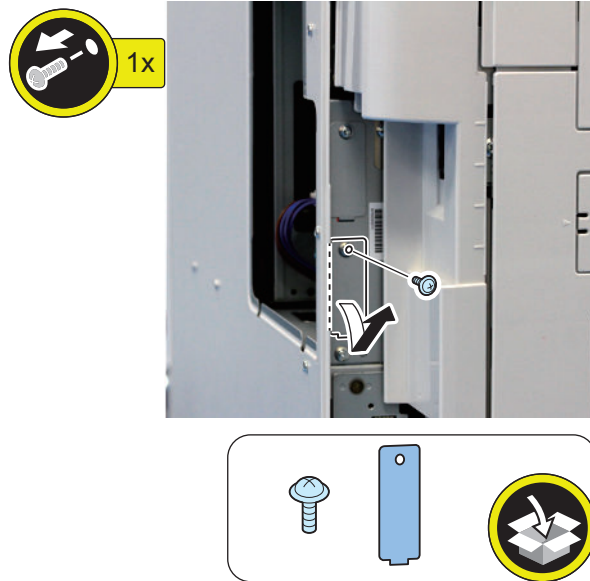
2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



3. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



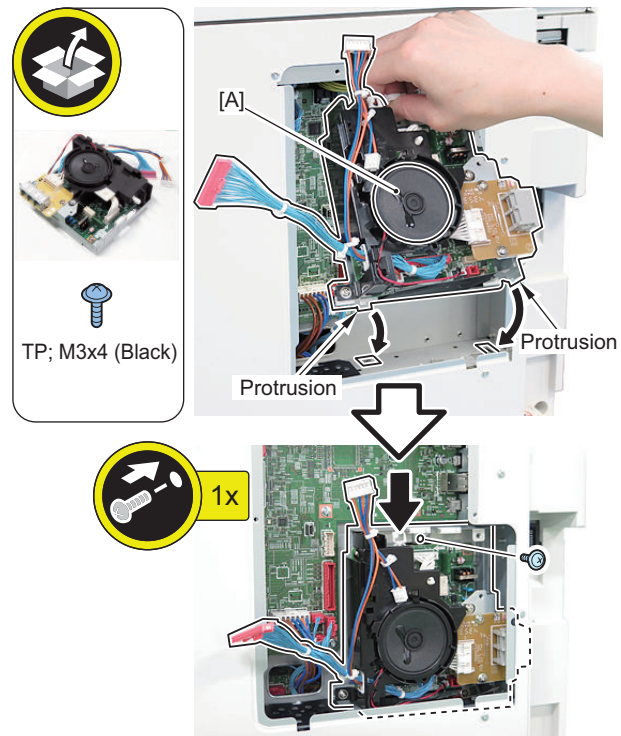


4. Remove the tape and, install the Fax Unit.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4: Black)

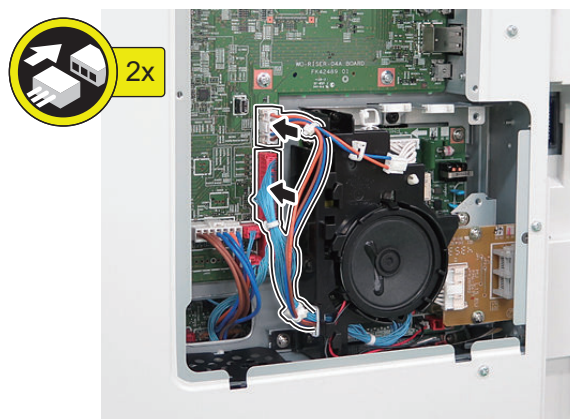
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



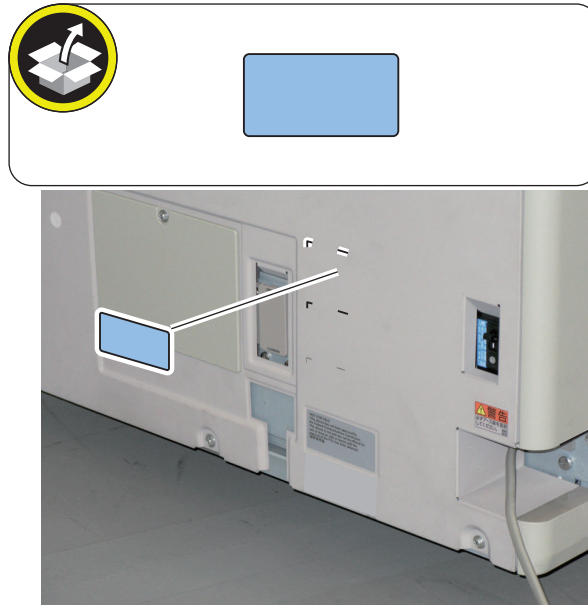
5. Connect the 2 cables of the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors



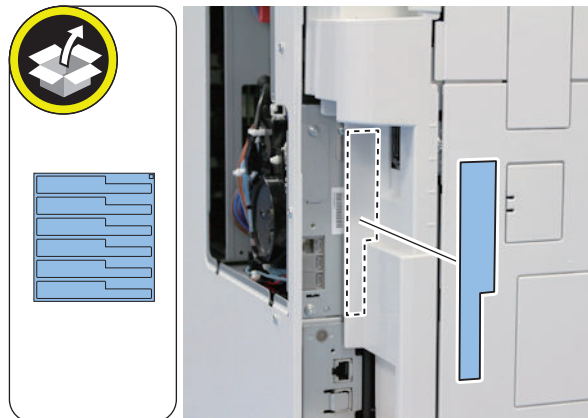
□

6. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.



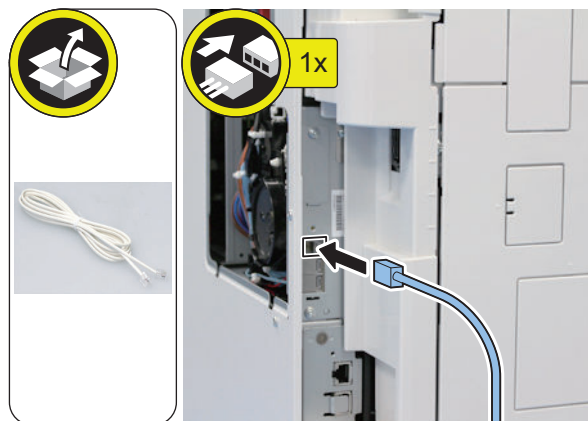
□

7. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.



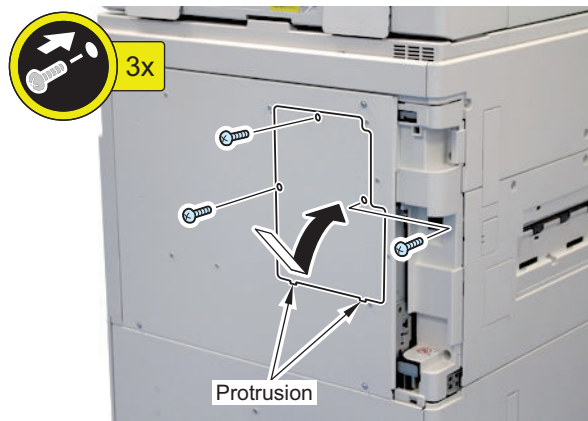
□

8. Connect the end of the Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.

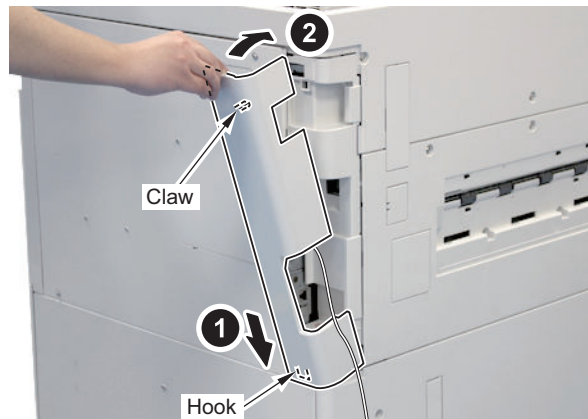


9. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws

**10. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw

**11. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.****12. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

Checking the Operation

■ Type Setting

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.
FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. **Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

■ Basic Setting

NOTE:

- When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.
- This setting can also be set from the Setup Guide ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide]).

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. **Set the user telephone number.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter the fax number > [OK]

2. **Set Type of telephone line.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. **Switch the control panel display to Send/Fax display.**
2. **Send the test document from this machine to another machine that can handle the communication test to check that this machine can send the data correctly.**
3. **Send the test document from the target to this machine to check if the machine can receive the document properly.**

Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632502

Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Super G3 FAX Board and this equipment at the same time, be sure to install them by referring to this document after checking "Checking the Contents" of Super G3 FAX Board.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

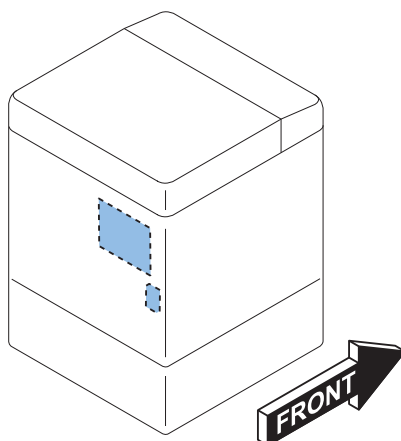
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.


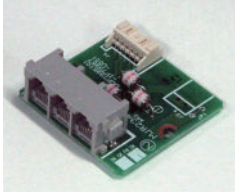



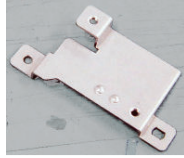



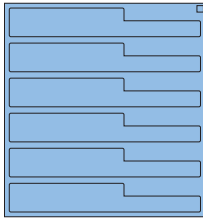
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

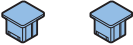
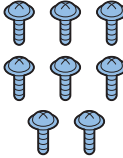

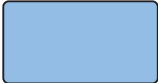
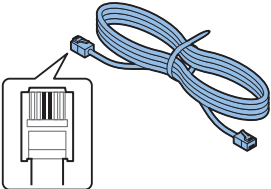
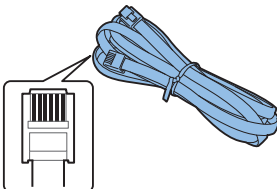
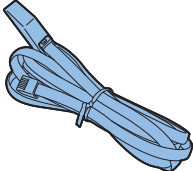
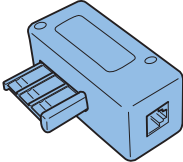
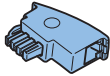
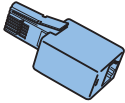
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Modular PCB X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] USB Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Modular Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Signal Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer (Long) X 3 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PCB Spacer (Short) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Modular Label X 1 

<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Dust Cover X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 8 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x4) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Fax Approval Label (only for Taiwan) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Telephone Cord (6 Contact type) (only for Europe) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [17] PTT Cable (only for Asia) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] PTT Plug (Only for France) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [19] PTT Plug (Only for Germany) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [20] PTT Plug (Only for U.K.) X 1 

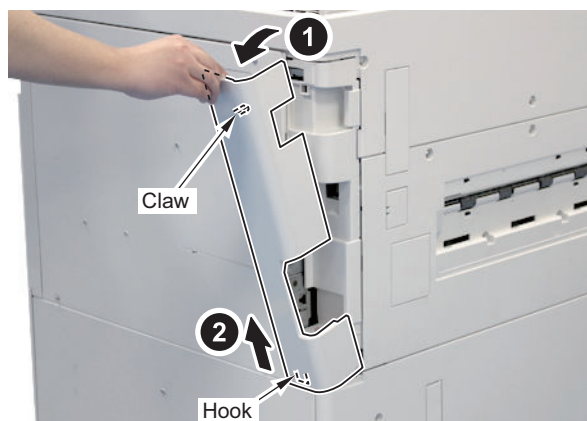
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation



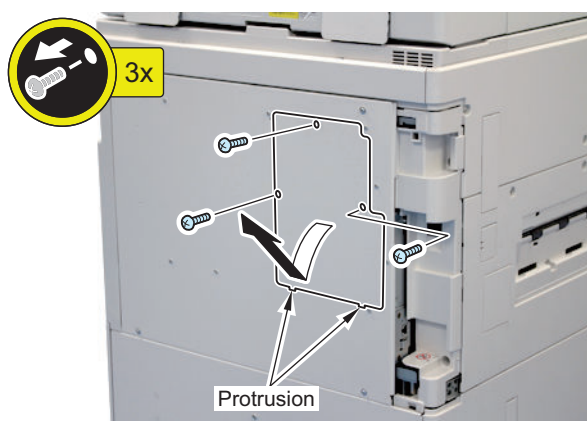
1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

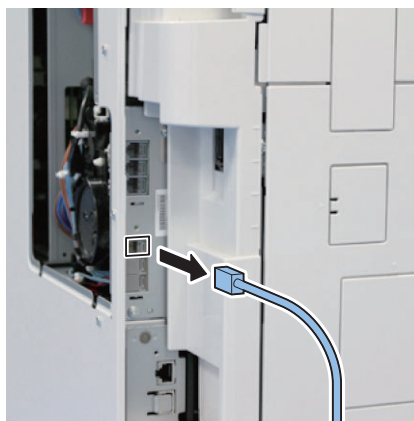


NOTE:

- When the Super G3 FAX Board is installed: Perform steps 3 and 4, and proceed to step 7.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time: Proceed to step 5.



3. Disconnect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line).

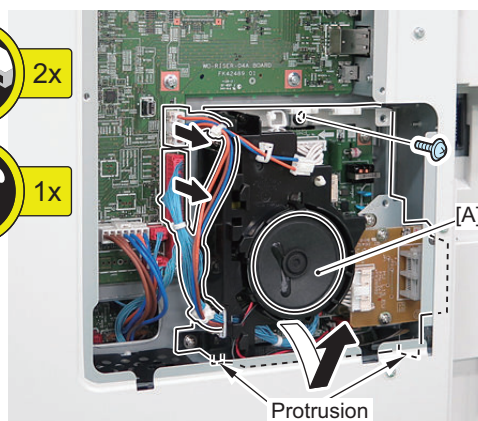
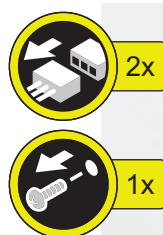


4. Remove the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions

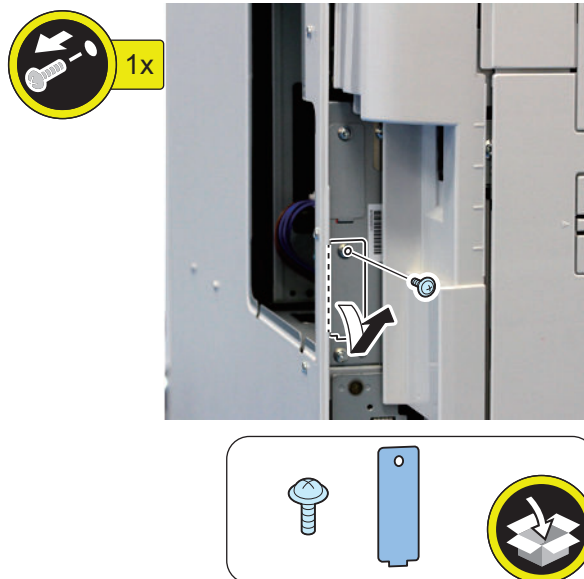
CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be open circuit.



**5. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (1-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

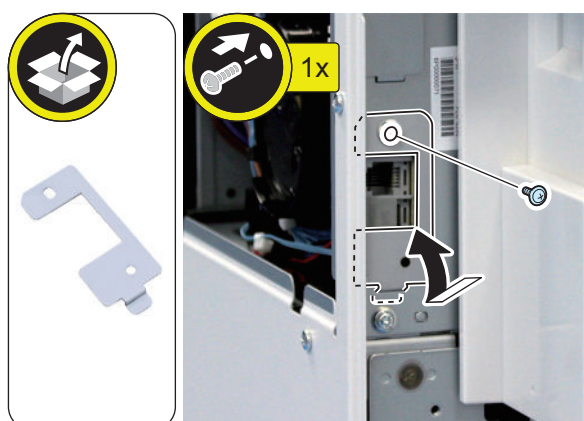
- 1 Screw (used in the next step only in EUR)
- 1 Protrusion

**NOTE:**

This step is only for Europe.

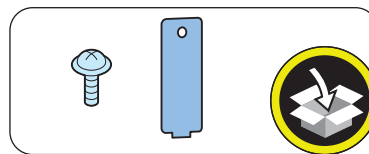
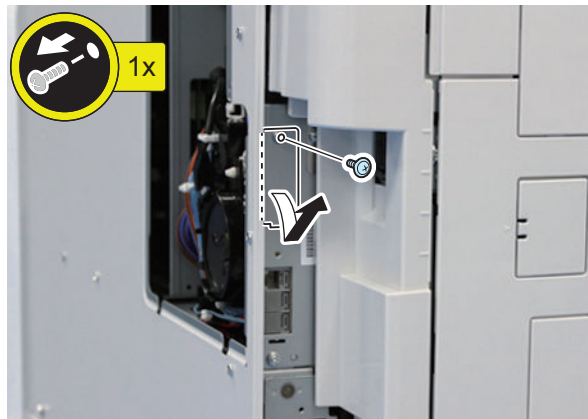
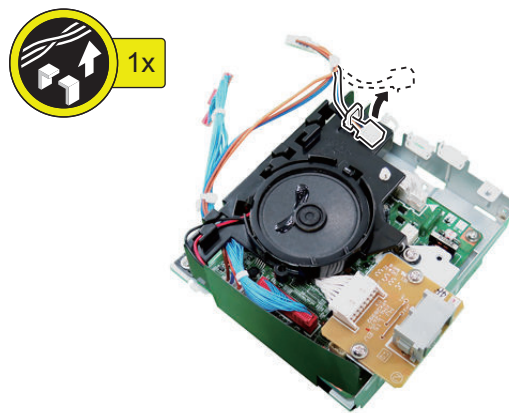
6. Install the Modular Cover.

- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in the previous step)



**7. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (2-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

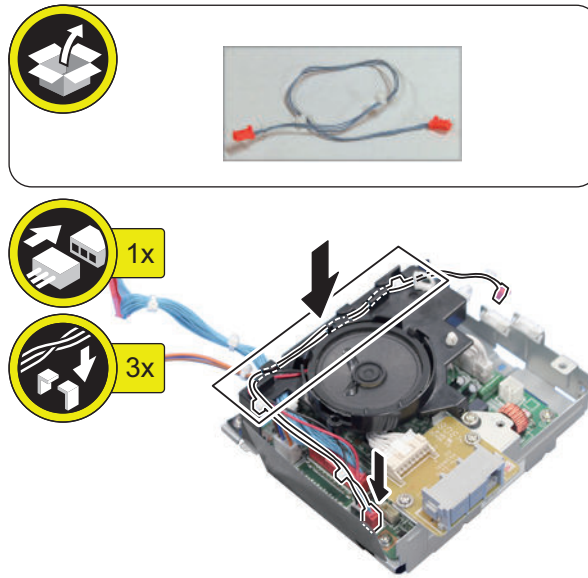
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**■ Installing the Equipment****1. Free the Cable from the Wire Saddle.**

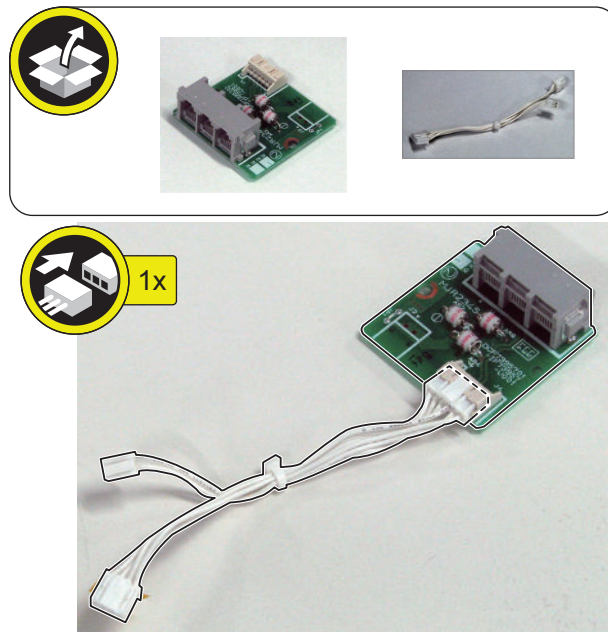


2. Install the Signal Cable to the FAX Unit.

- 3 Cable Guides



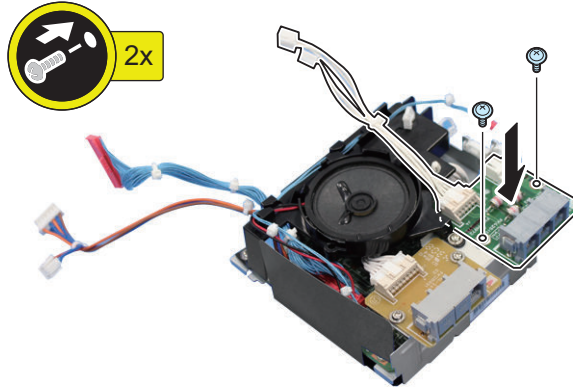
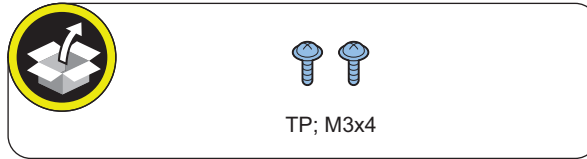
3. Install the Modular Cable to the Modular PCB.





4. Install the Modular PCB to the FAX Unit.

- 2 Screws (TP; M3x4)



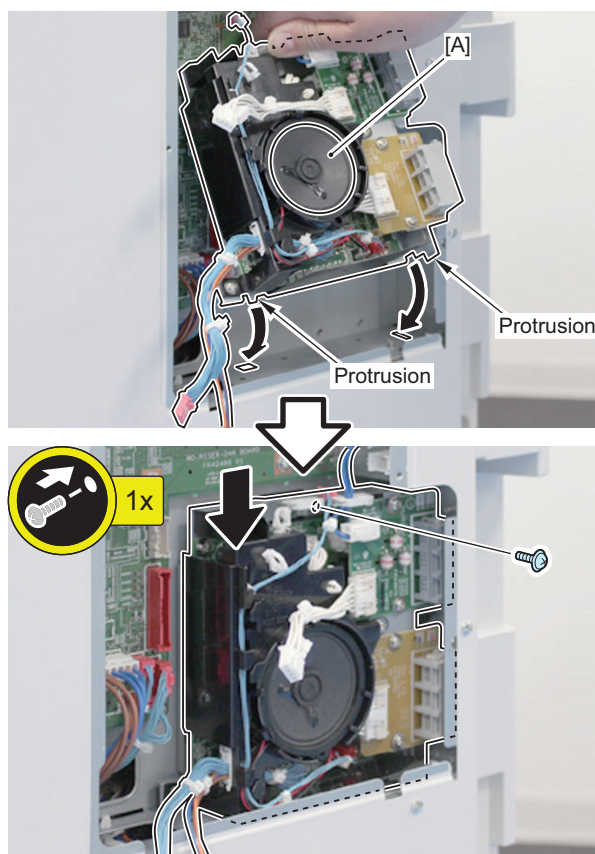


5. Install the FAX Unit to the Host Machine.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) (Use the removed screw or those included with the Super G3 FAX Board)

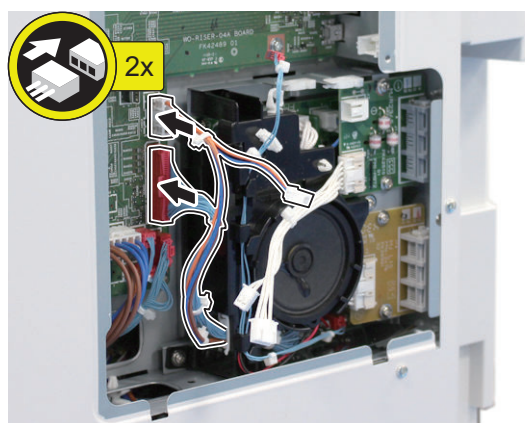
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



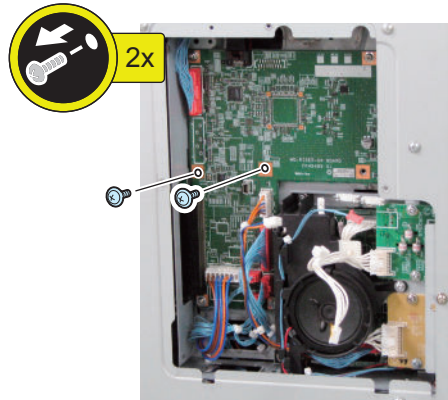
6. Install the 2 Cable of the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors



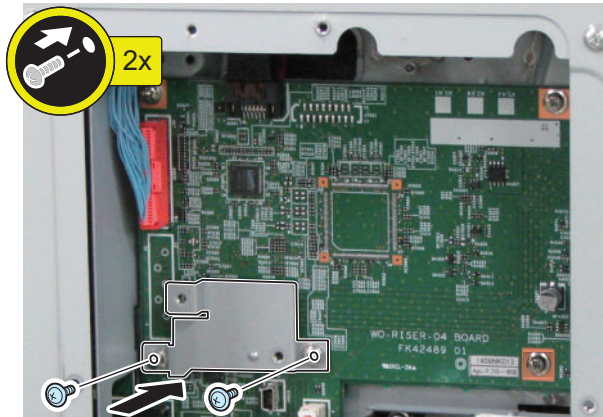
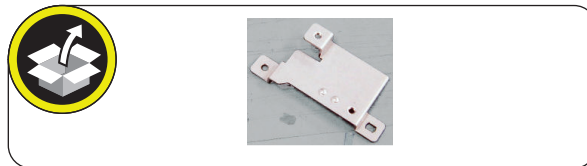


7. Remove the 2 Screws. (will be used in next step)



8. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

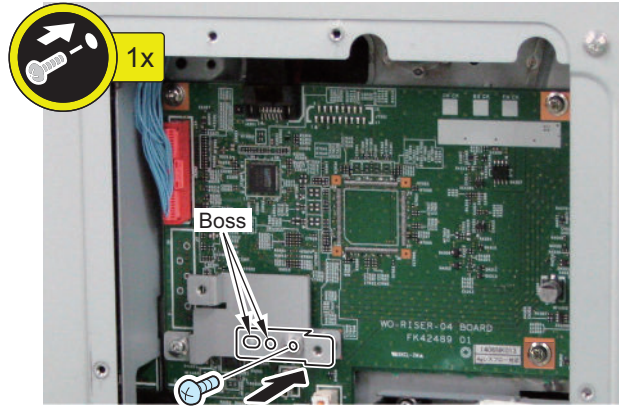
- 2 Screws (screws removed in the previous step)





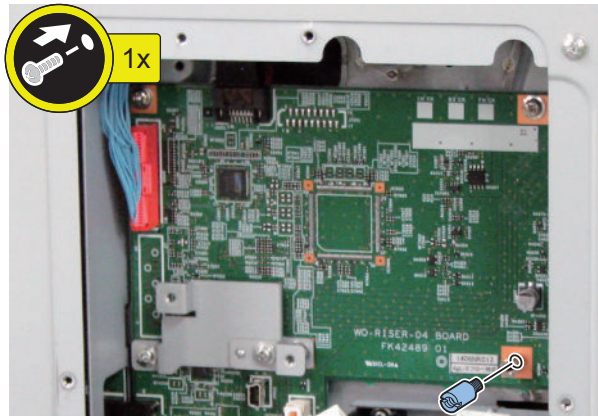
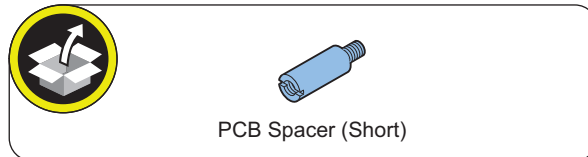
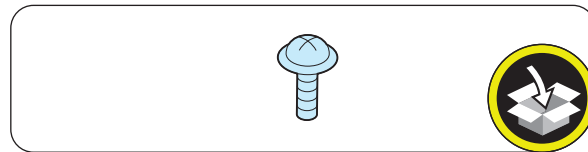
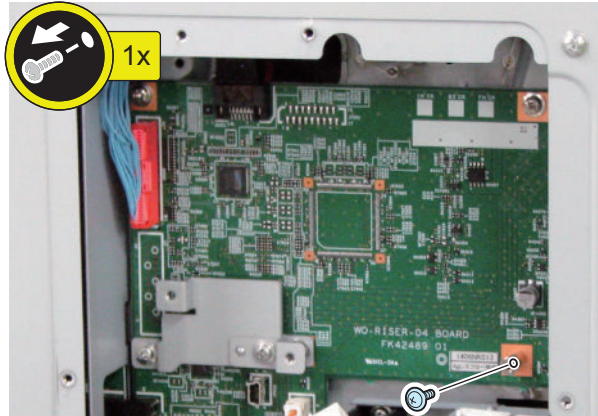
9. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x4)



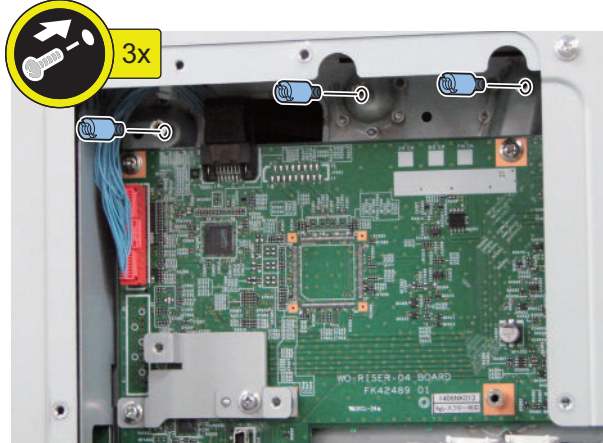
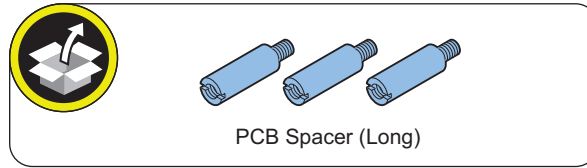


10. Remove the Screw and install the PCB Spacer (Short). (The removed screw will not be used.)





11. Install the 3 PCB Spacers (Long).

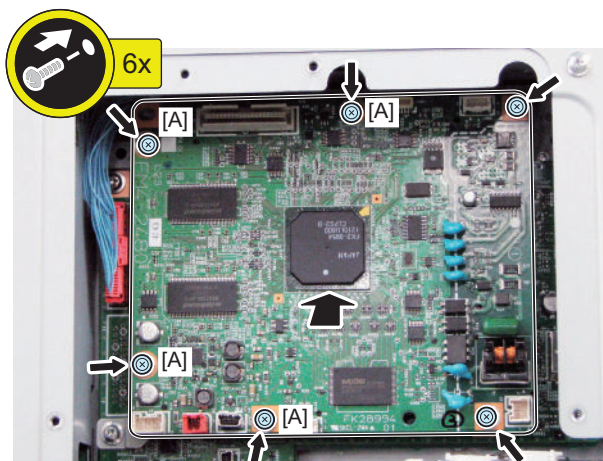
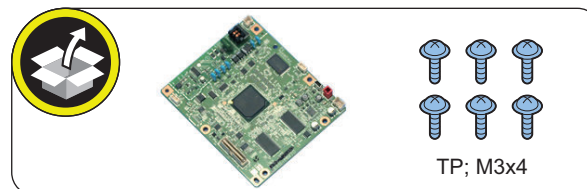


12. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 6 Screws (TP; M3x4)

NOTE:

Because the 4 screws [A] need to be removed when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to tighten them here.



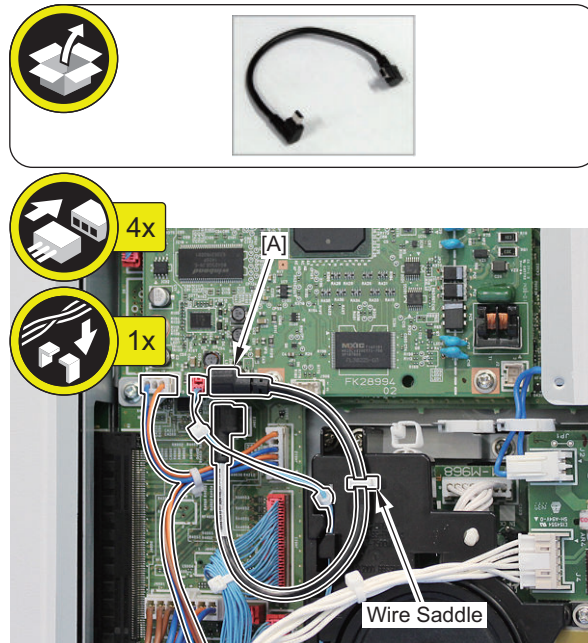


13. Install the Signal Cable, Power Supply Cable and USB Cable to the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 1 Wire Saddle

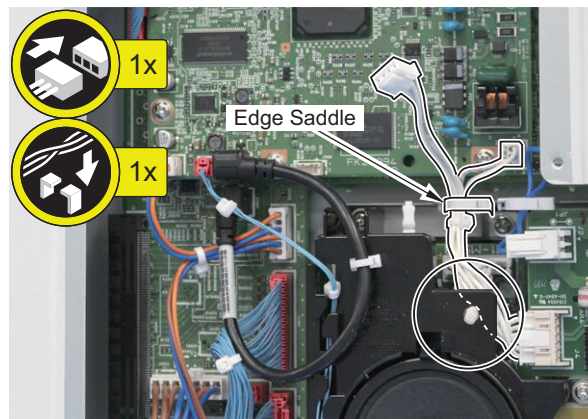
NOTE:

Because [A] of the USB Cable needs to be disconnected when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to connect it here.



14. Pass the Modular Cable inside the Speaker Holder, and install the G3 FAX Control PCB.

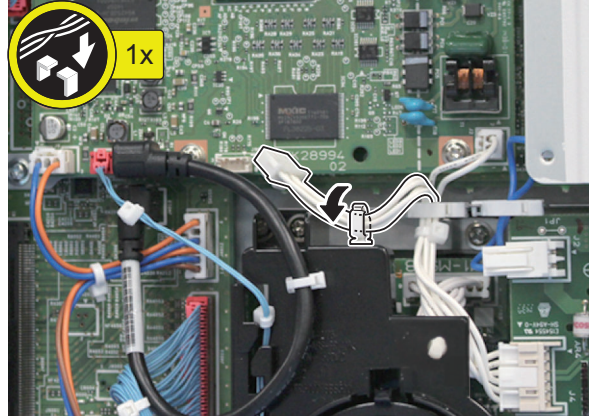
- 1 Edge Saddle



**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

15. Secure the cable with the Wire Saddle.



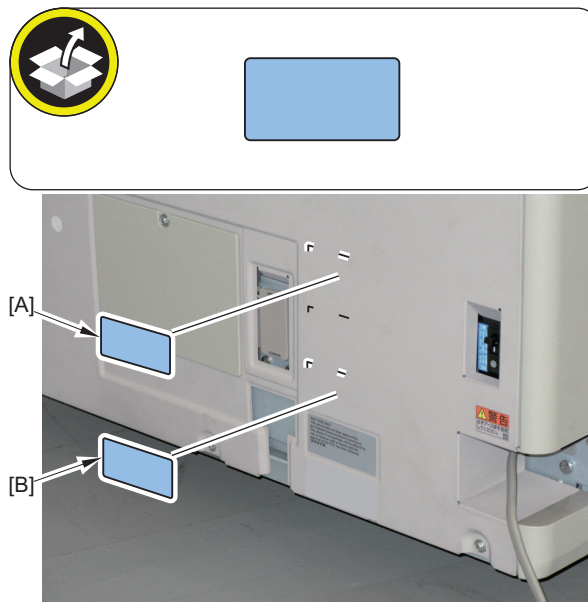
■ Subsequent Work

**NOTE:**

The following work is required only when installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time.

1. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

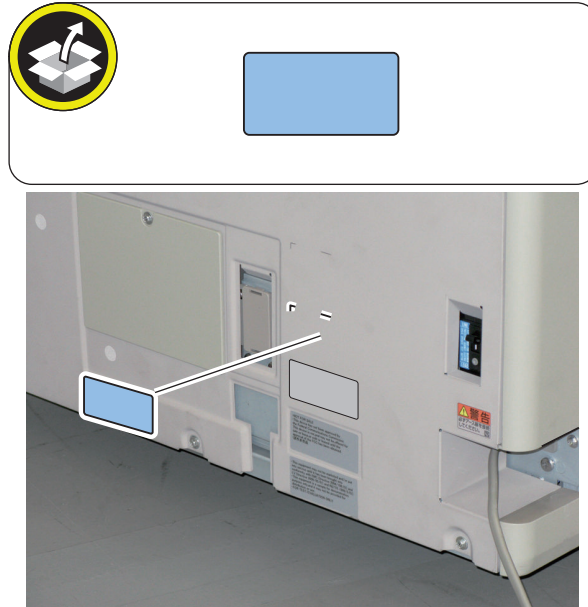
- [A] For USA
- [B] For Taiwan





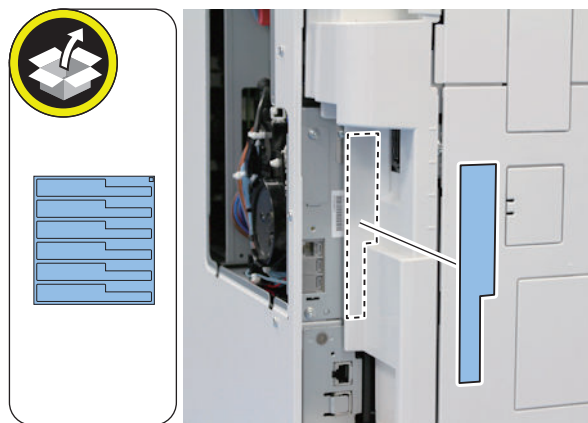
NOTE:
This step is only for Taiwan.

2. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.



NOTE:
When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

3. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.



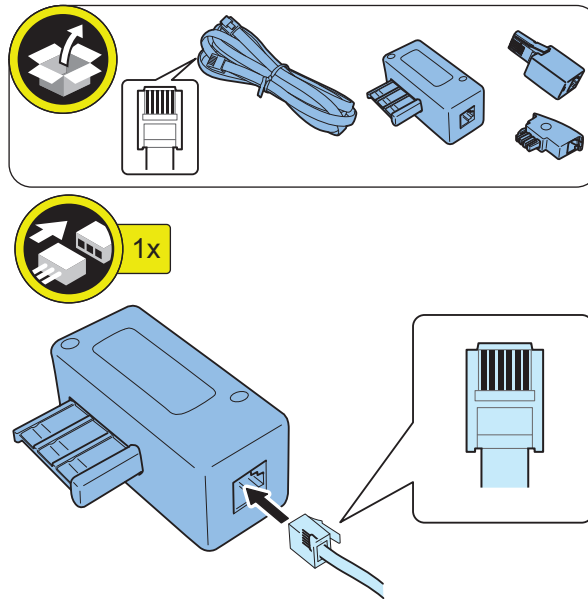
**NOTE:**

- This step is only for Europe.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time, assemble it by following the same procedure.

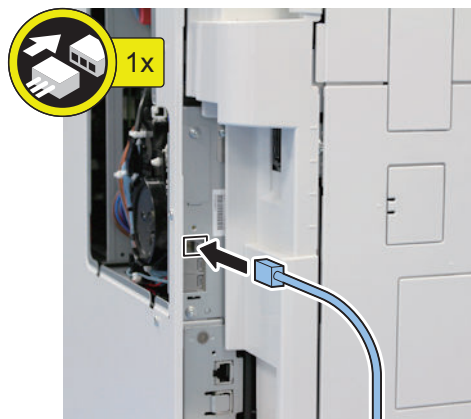
4. Connect the PTT Plug matched the field or area to the PTT Cable (6 contact type).

CAUTION:

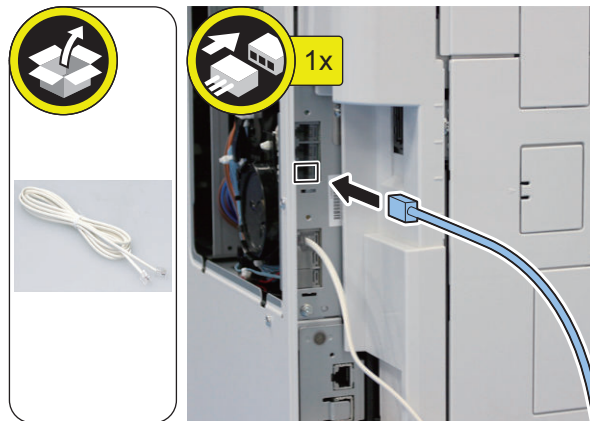
Do not connect the Telephone Cord (2 contact type) with the PTT Plug.



5. Connect the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line). When installing this equipment at the same time, connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.

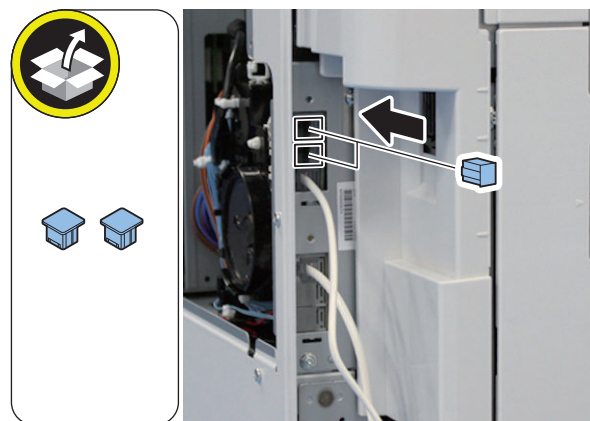


-
6. Connect the end of the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



-
- NOTE:**
When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

7. Install the Dust Cover.

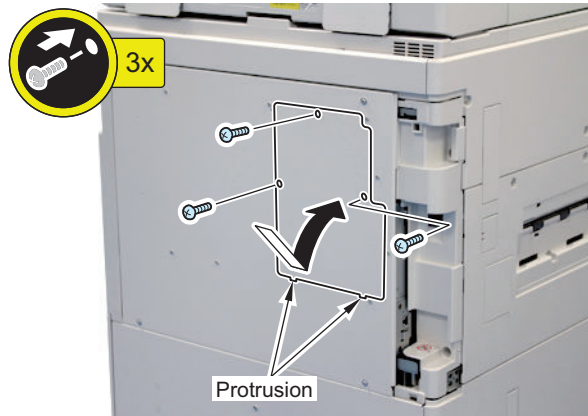


- NOTE:**
When performing the following steps, it is efficient to install the cover after installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board in case of installing the fax board at the same time.



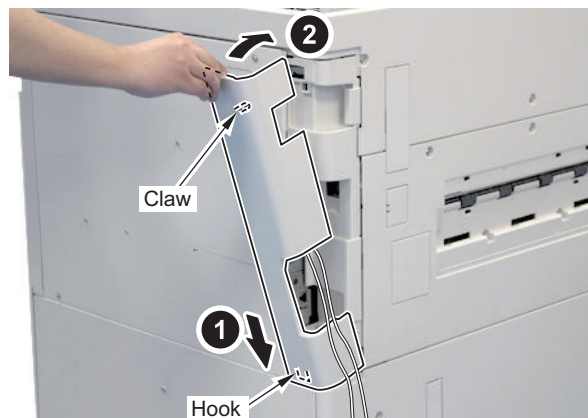
8. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



9. Install the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



10. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

11. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

12. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lev. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. **From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**
FAX > TYPE > TYPE
2. **Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. **Set the user telephone number.**
[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]
2. **Set the type of telephone line.**
[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]
3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. **Switch the control panel display to Fax display.**
2. **Select the sending line.**
Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.
3. **Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.**
 1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.
 2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].
 3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.
E.g. "ECM:2" => Line 2

NOTE:

If E744-5000 error code (Fax software version mismatch error) occurred while sending or receiving fax, upgrade the firmware of 2-line Fax to the latest version.

Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632502

Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Super G3 FAX Board and this equipment at the same time, be sure to install them by referring to this document after checking "Checking the Contents" of Super G3 FAX Board.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

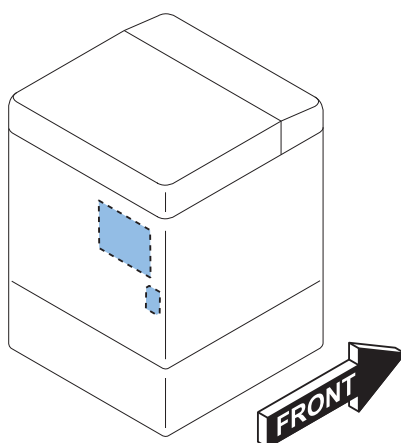
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.






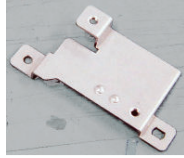



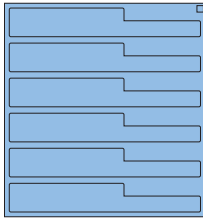
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

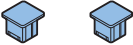
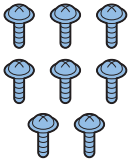

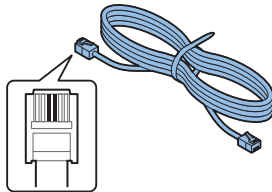
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installation Outline Drawing



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Modular PCB X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] USB Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Modular Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Signal Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer (Long) X 3 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PCB Spacer (Short) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Modular Label X 1 

<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Dust Cover X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 8 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x4) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 

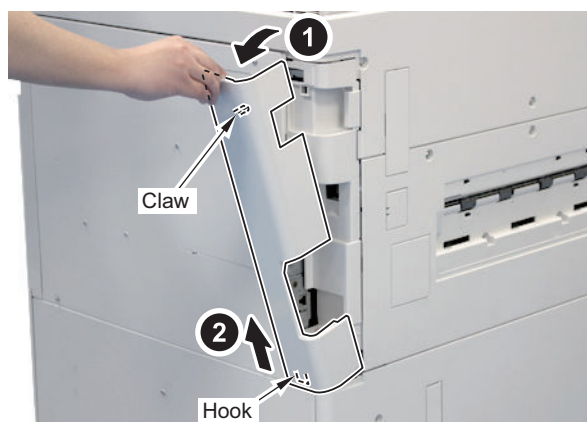
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation



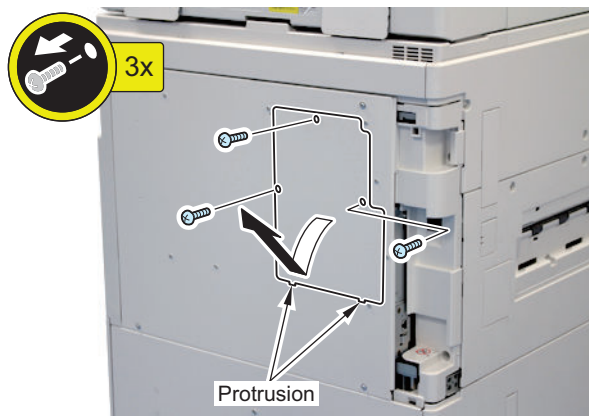
1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

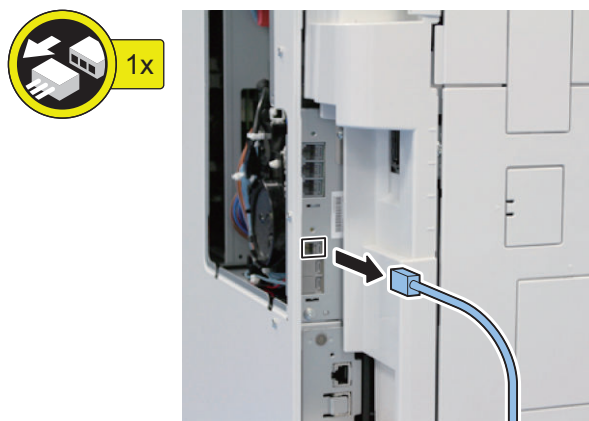


**2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.**

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

**NOTE:**

- When the Super G3 FAX Board is installed: Perform steps 3 and 4, and proceed to step 6.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time: Proceed to step 5.

**3. Disconnect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line).**

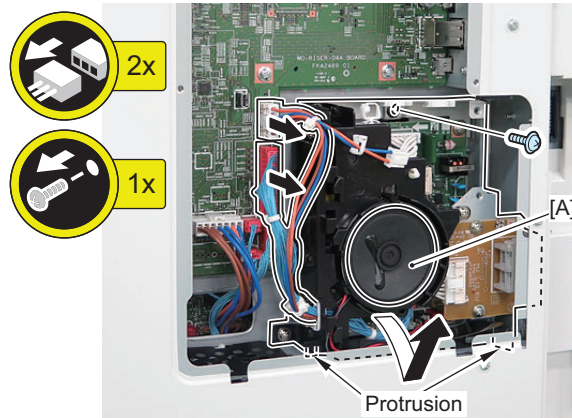


4. Remove the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions

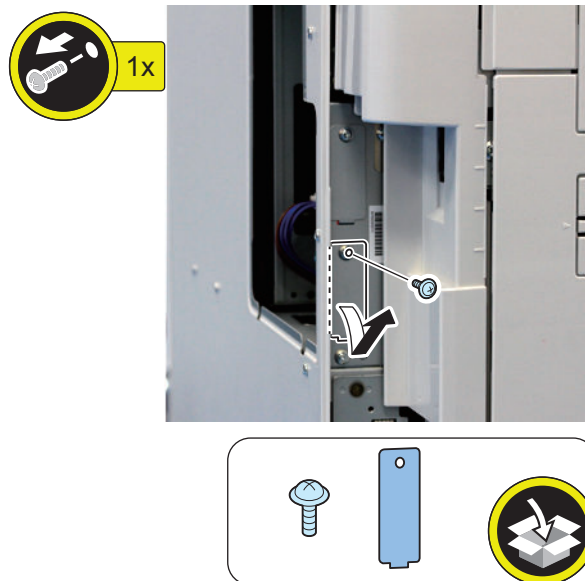
CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be open circuit.



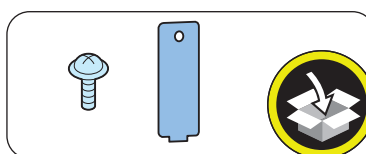
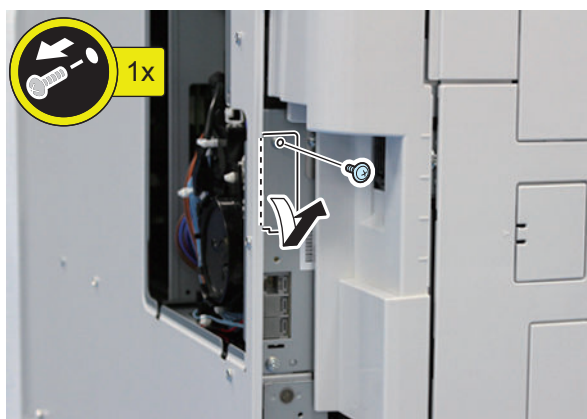
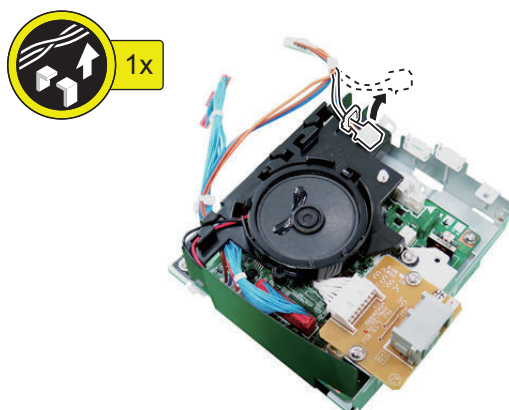
5. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (1-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



**6. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (2-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

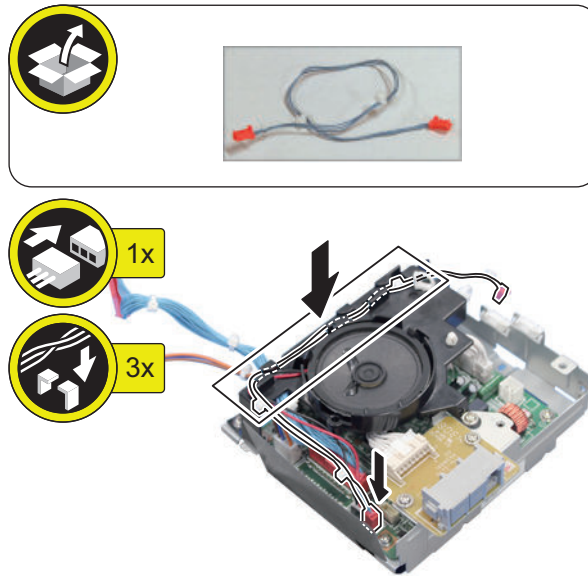
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**■ Installing the Equipment****1. Free the Cable from the Wire Saddle.**

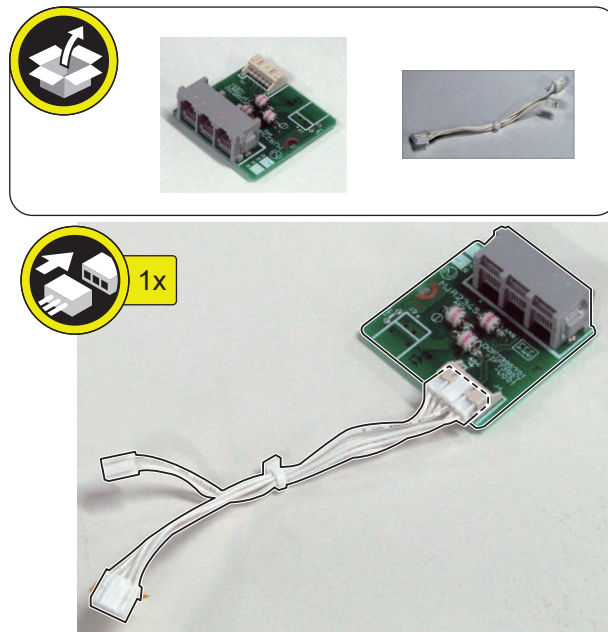


2. Install the Signal Cable to the FAX Unit.

- 3 Cable Guides



3. Install the Modular Cable to the Modular PCB.



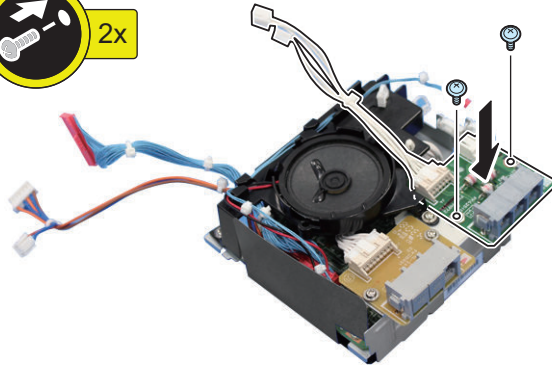


4. Install the Modular PCB to the FAX Unit.

- 2 Screws (TP; M3x4)



TP; M3x4



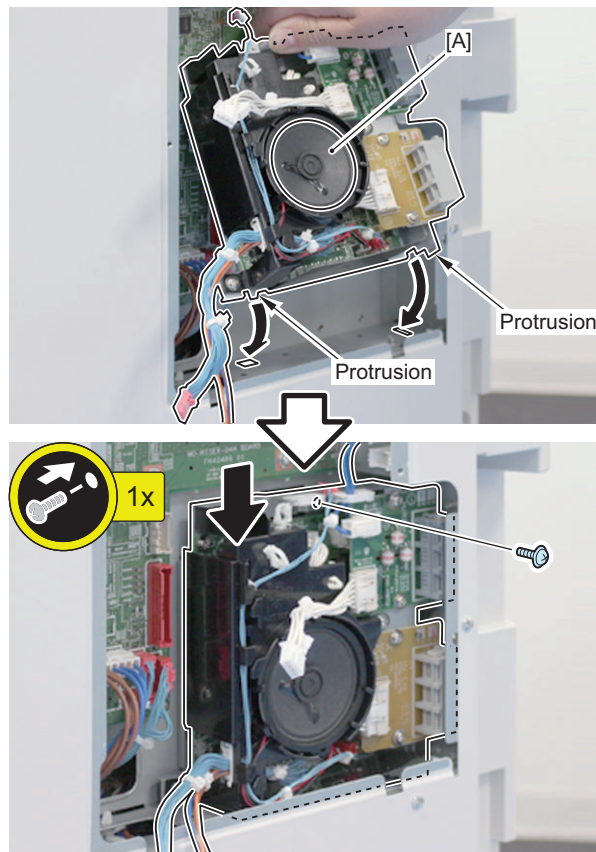


5. Install the FAX Unit to the Host Machine.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) (Use the removed screw or those included with the Super G3 FAX Board)

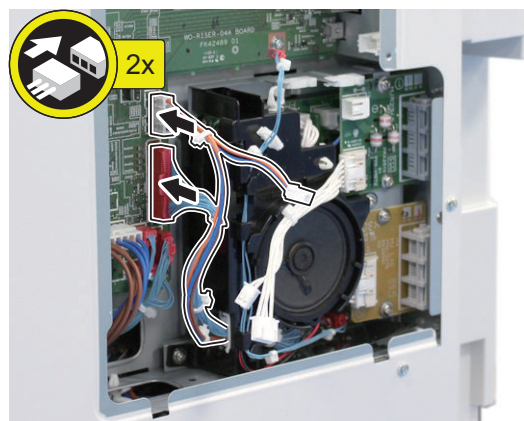
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



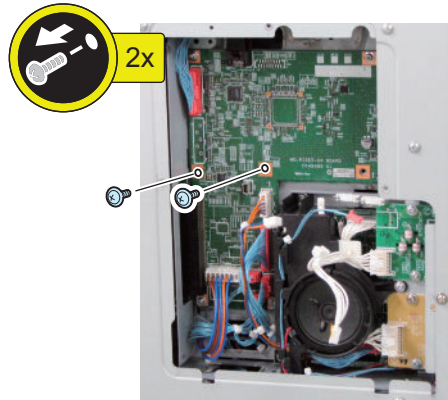
6. Install the 2 Cable of the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors



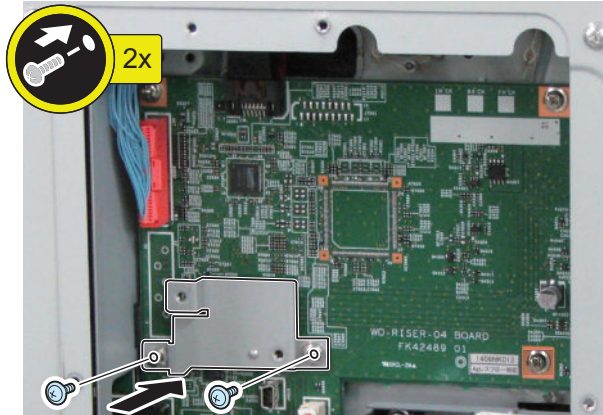
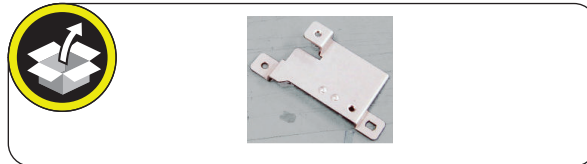


7. Remove the 2 Screws. (will be used in next step)



8. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

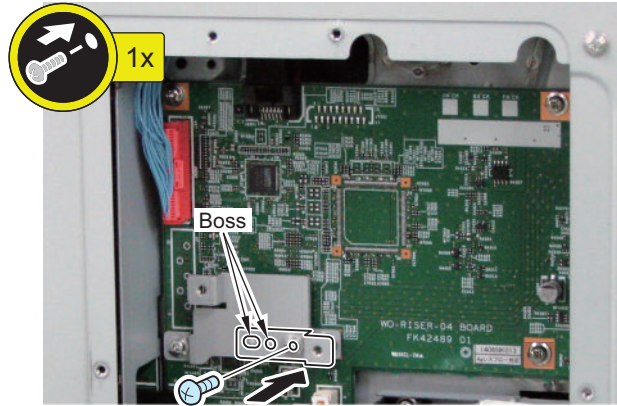
- 2 Screws (screws removed in the previous step)





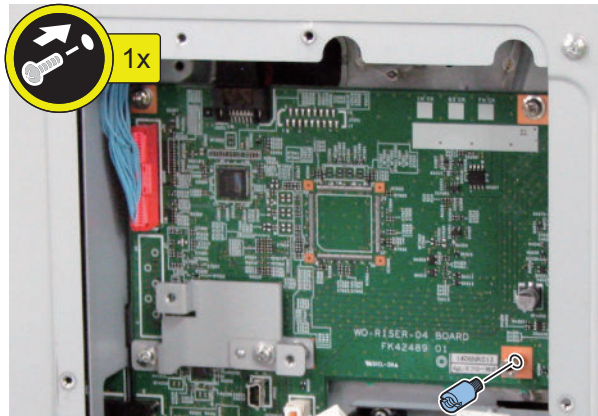
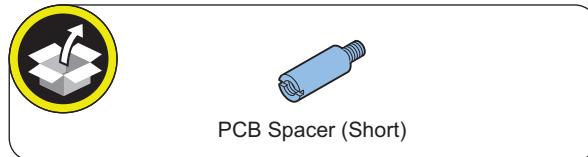
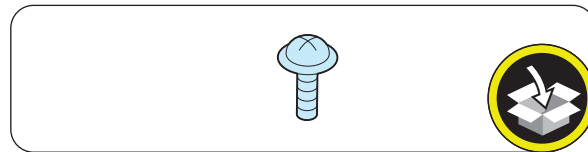
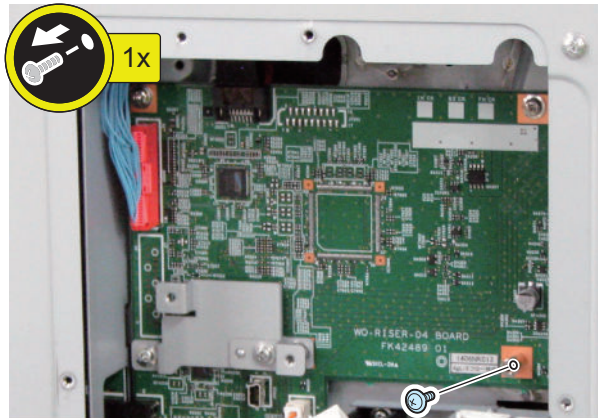
9. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x4)



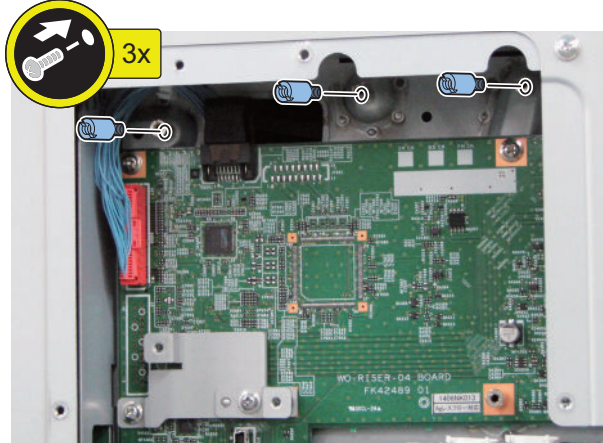
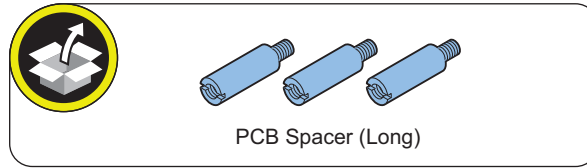


10. Remove the Screw and install the PCB Spacer (Short). (The removed screw will not be used.)





11. Install the 3 PCB Spacers (Long).

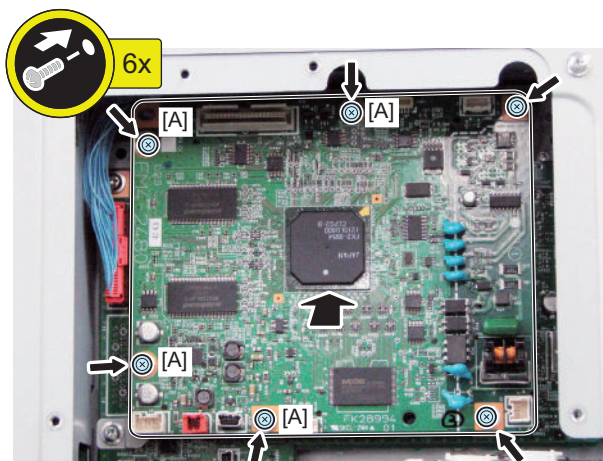
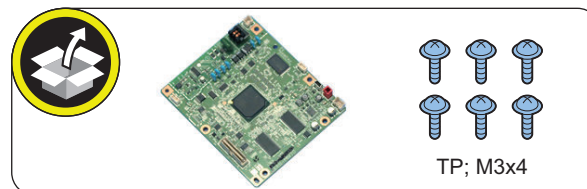


12. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 6 Screws (TP; M3x4)

NOTE:

Because the 4 screws [A] need to be removed when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to tighten them here.



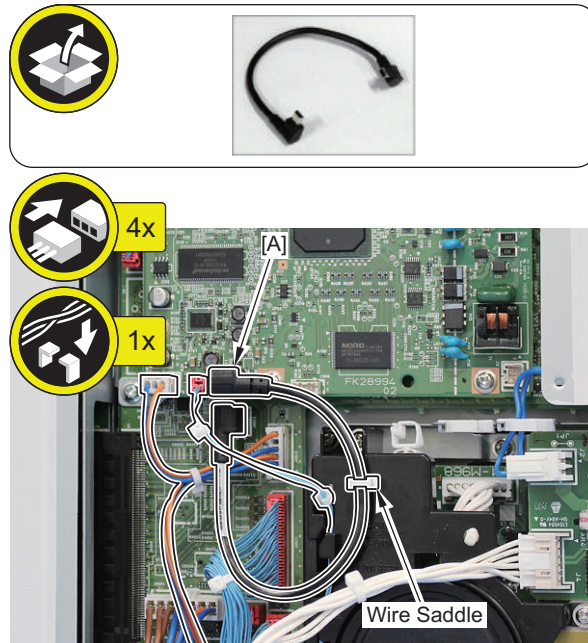


13. Install the Signal Cable, Power Supply Cable and USB Cable to the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 1 Wire Saddle

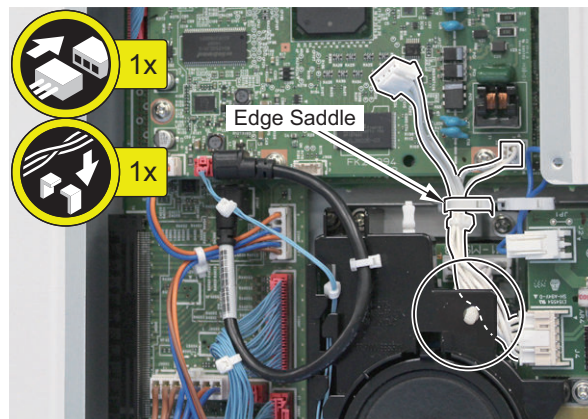
NOTE:

Because [A] of the USB Cable needs to be disconnected when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to connect it here.



14. Pass the Modular Cable inside the Speaker Holder, and install the G3 FAX Control PCB.

- 1 Edge Saddle

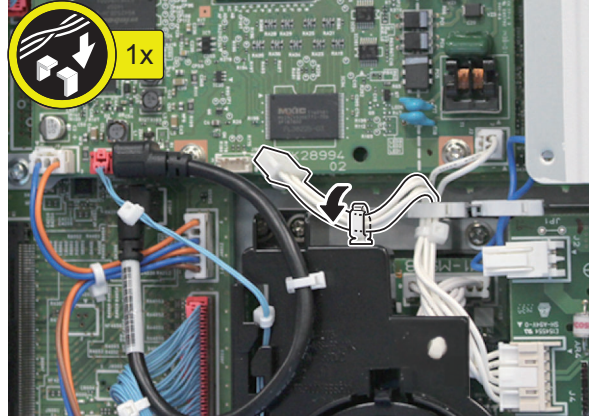




NOTE:

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

15. Secure the cable with the Wire Saddle.



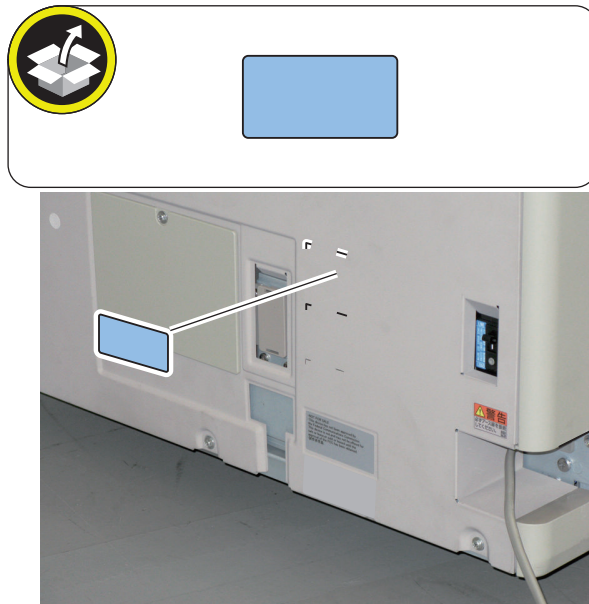
■ Subsequent Work



NOTE:

The following work is required only when installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time.

1. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

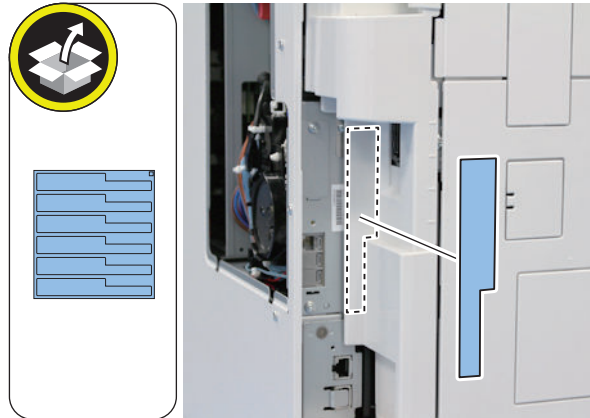


□

NOTE:

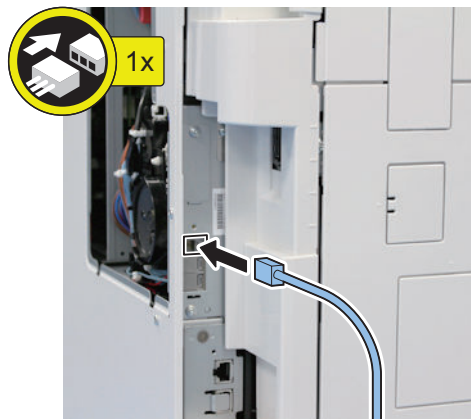
When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

2. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.



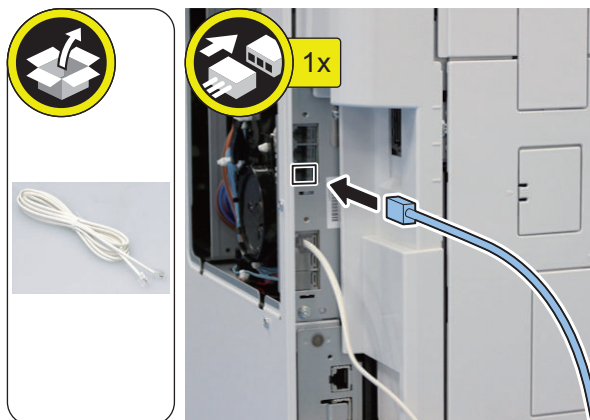
□

3. Connect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line). When installing this equipment at the same time, connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



□

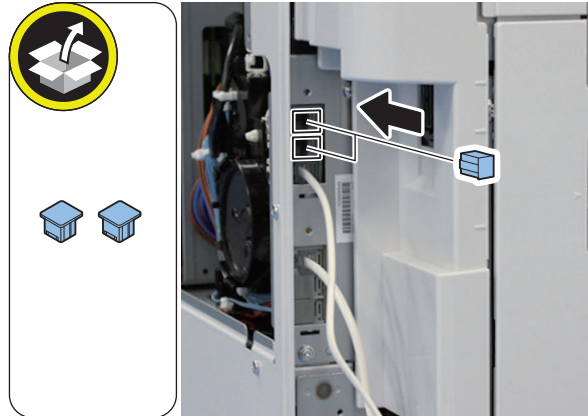
4. Connect the end of the Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

5. Install the Dust Cover.

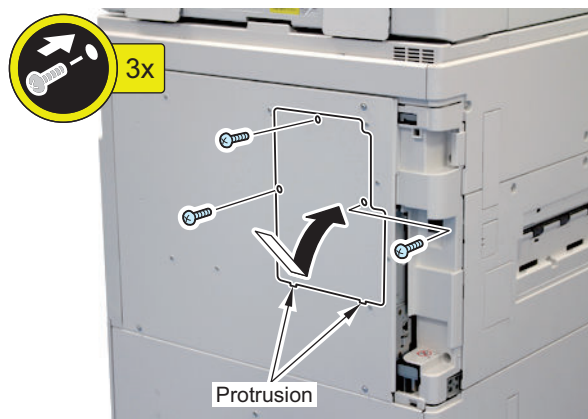
**NOTE:**

When performing the following steps, it is efficient to install the cover after installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board in case of installing the fax board at the same time.



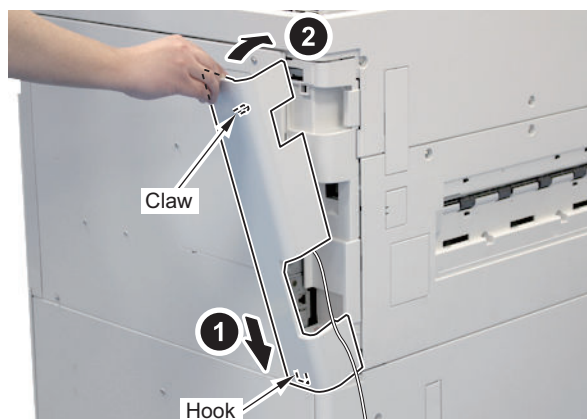
6. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



**7. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw

**8. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.****9. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.
To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

10. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**NOTE:**

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started.
In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.

**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.
2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].
3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.
E.g. "ECM:2" => Line 2

NOTE:

If E744-5000 error code (Fax software version mismatch error) occurred while sending or receiving fax, upgrade the firmware of 2-line Fax to the latest version.

Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632503

Points to Note at Installation

- Install this equipment after installing the Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- When installing Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, start from "Installing the Equipment".
- When installing this equipment later, start from "Preparation".

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

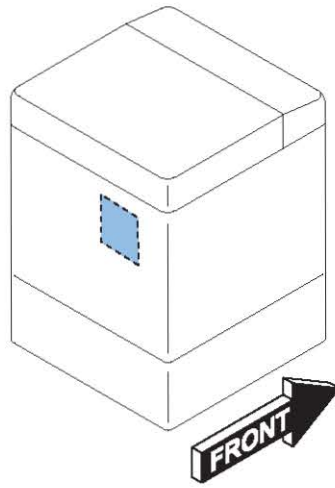
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.




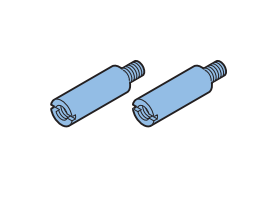
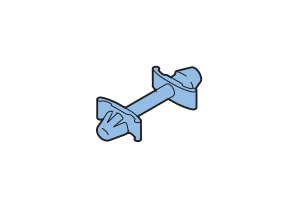
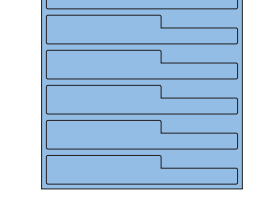
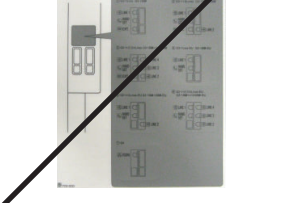
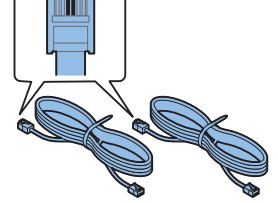
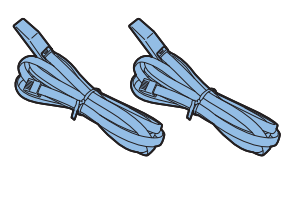
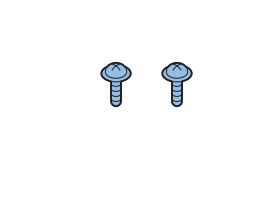
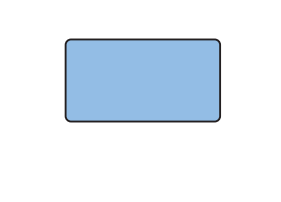
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

● Installation Outline Drawing



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] PCB Spacer X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Resin Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Modular Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Telephone Cord X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Cable X 2 (only for Asia) 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [11] FAX Approval Label (only for Taiwan) X 1 	

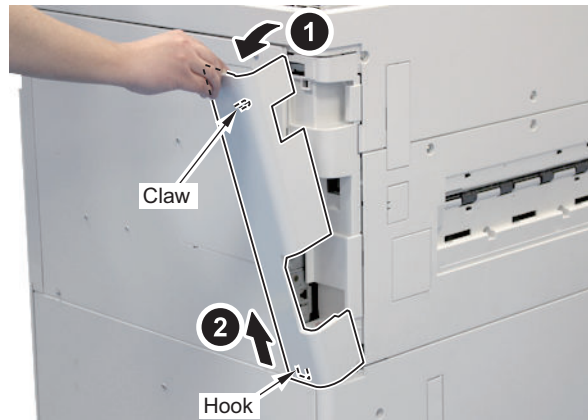
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation



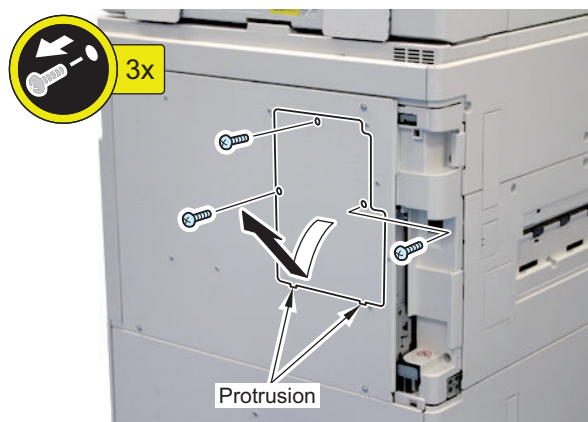
1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

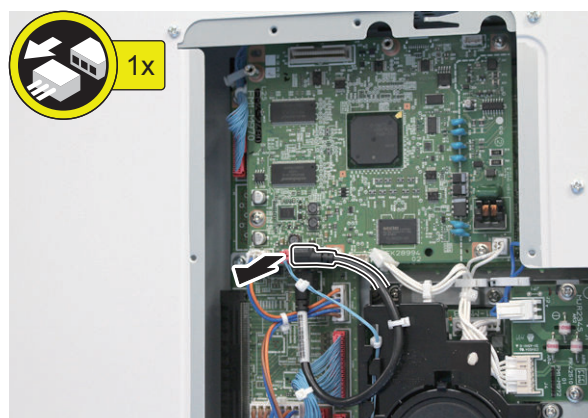


2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

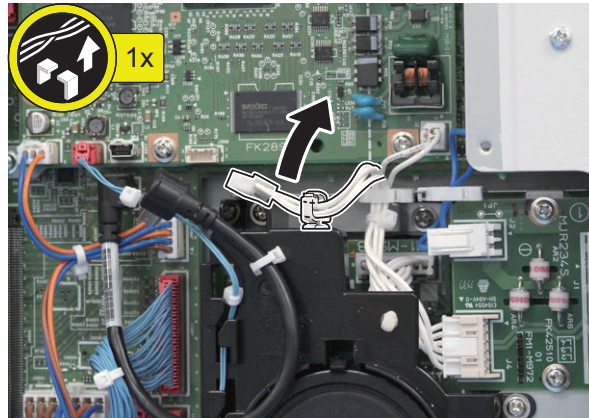


3. Disconnect the USB Cable of the G3FAX Expansion PCB side.



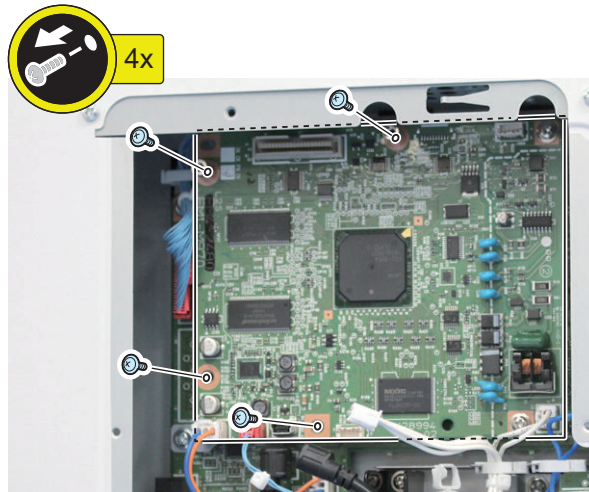
□

4. Free the Modular Cable from the Wire Saddle. (Close the Wire Saddle.)



□

5. Remove the 4 Screws. (will be used in Installing the Equipment)

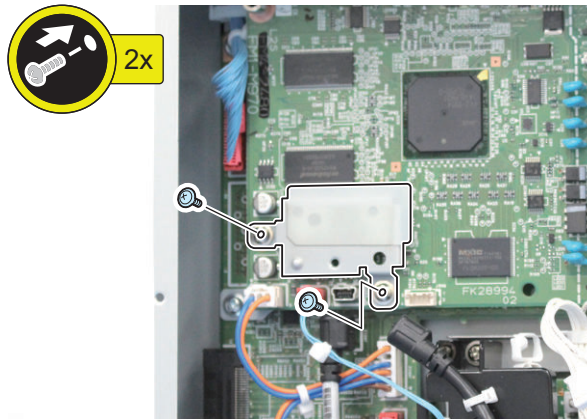
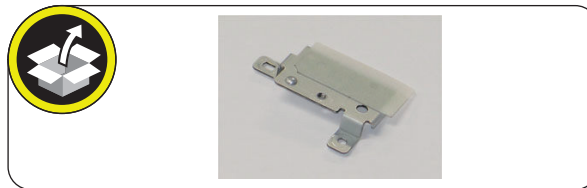


■ Installing the Equipment



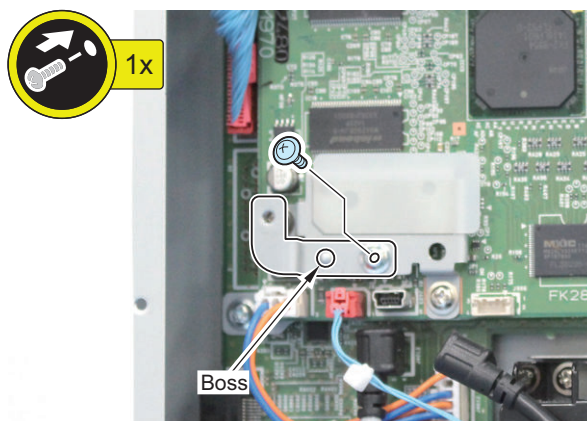
1. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))



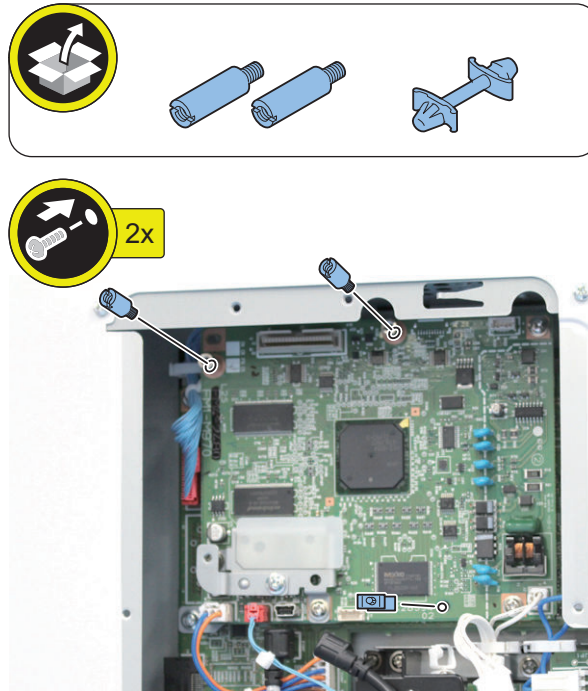
2. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)



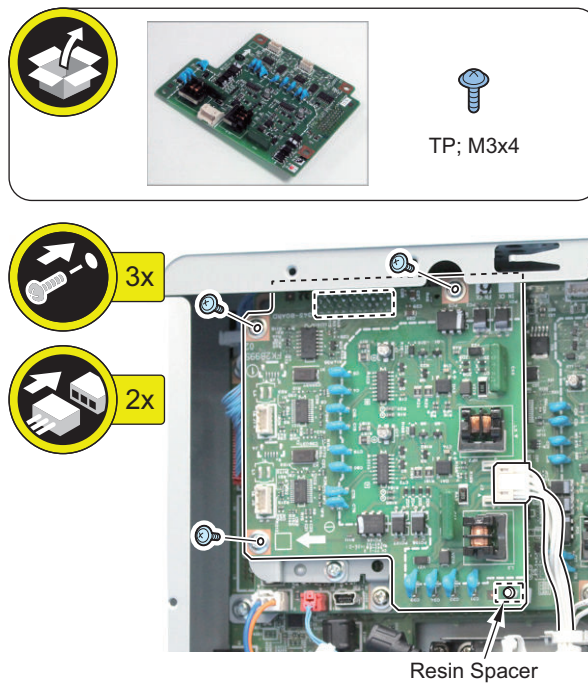


3. Install the 2 PCB Spacers and Resin Spacer.



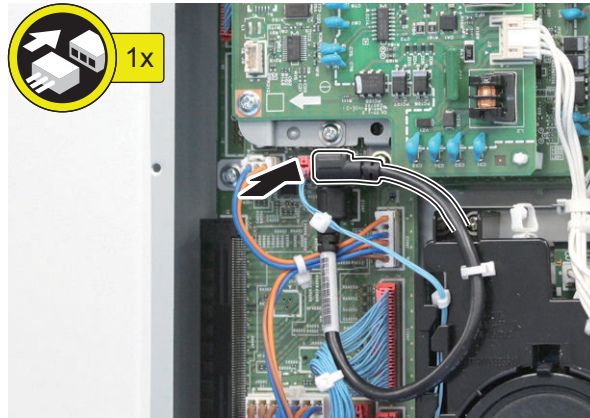
4. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- Upper Side: 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))
- Lower Side: 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)
- 1 Resin Spacer
- 2 Connectors





5. Connect the USB Cable.

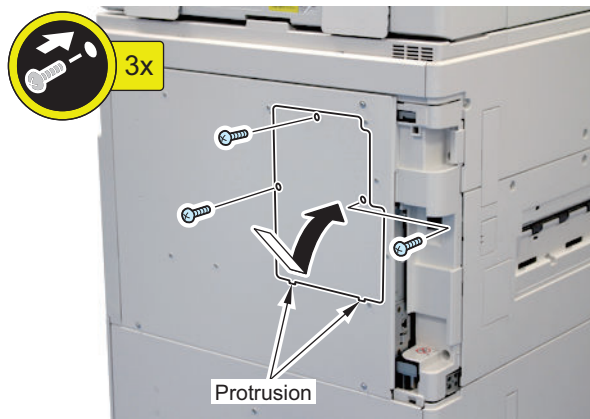


■ Subsequent Work



1. Install the Rear Cover 2.

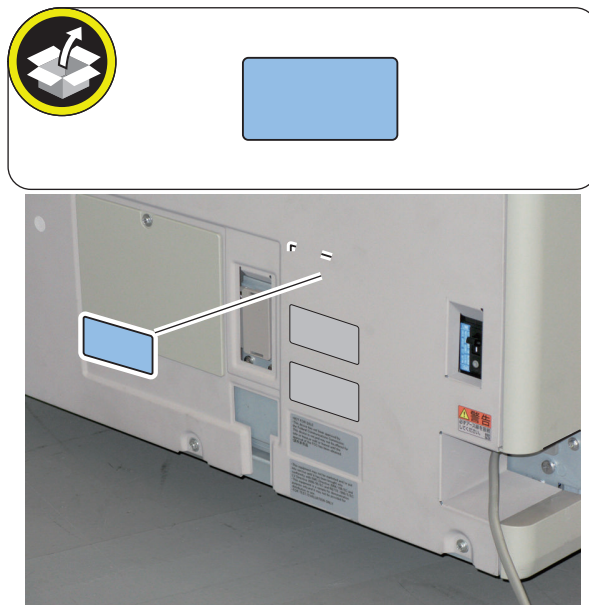
- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



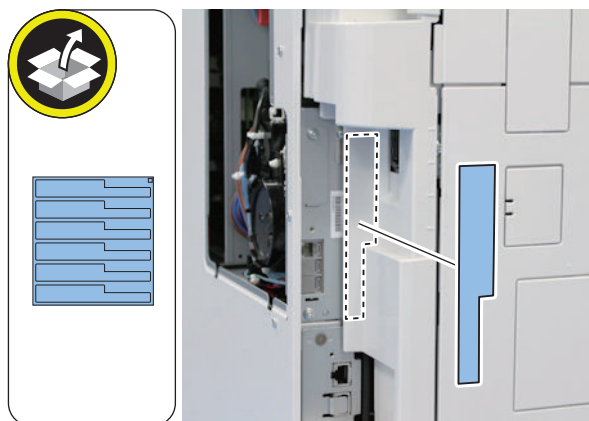


NOTE:
This step is only for Taiwan.

2. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.



3. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.

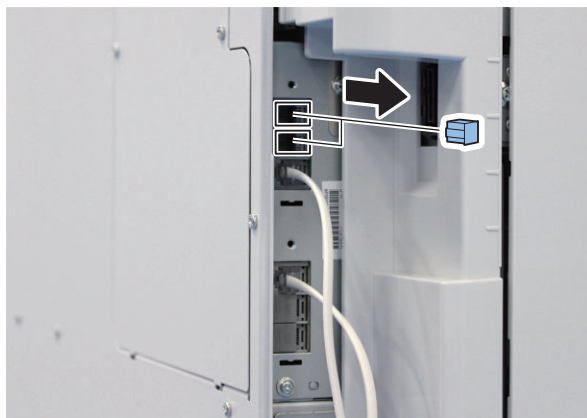
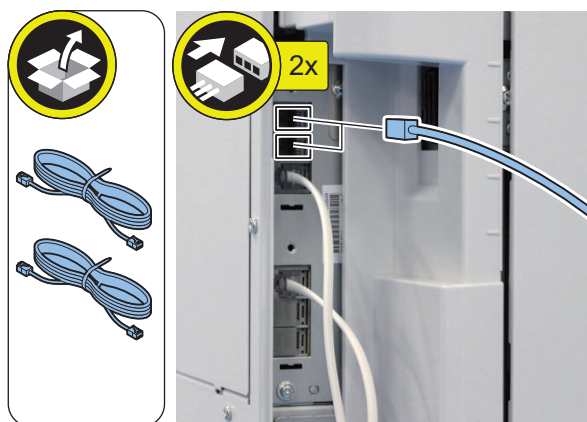


**4. Remove the 2 Dust Covers if installed.****CAUTION:**

Do not insert a screwdriver, etc. into the modular terminal.

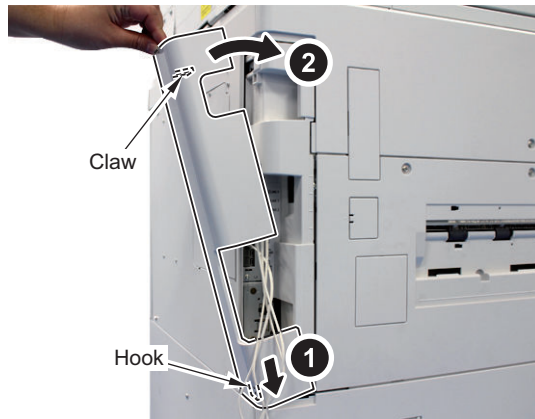
NOTE:

Keep the removed Dust Cover.

**5. Connect one of the 2 Telephone Cords or the 2 PTT Cables to the modular jack on the host machine and the other cord to the modular jack on the wall.**

**6. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw

**7. Connect the power plug to the outlet.****8. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

If the host machine still does not recognize this equipment after performing the foregoing remedy: In the case of installing the Super G3 Fax Board (1-Line) and the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, it is necessary to turn OFF and then ON the power three times in some cases (no message is displayed on the Control Panel).

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.

**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

- Service Mode > FAX > Type > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

- COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.

2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.

E.g. "ECM:3" => Line 3

Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632503

Points to Note at Installation

- Install this equipment after installing the Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- When installing Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, start from "Installing the Equipment".
- When installing this equipment later, start from "Preparation".

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

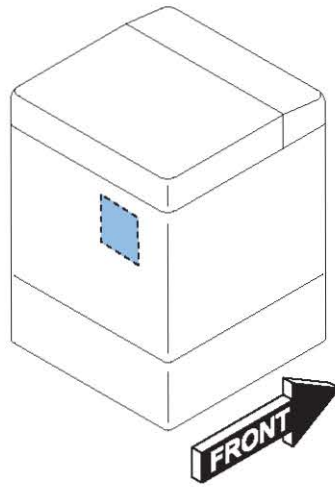
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.


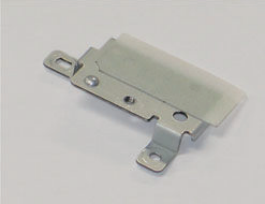

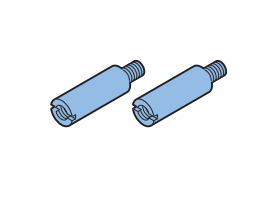
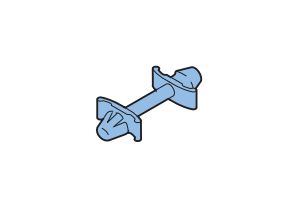
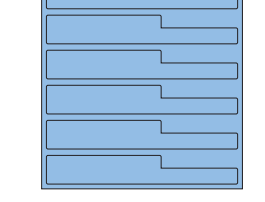
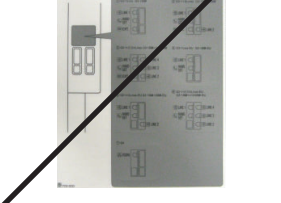
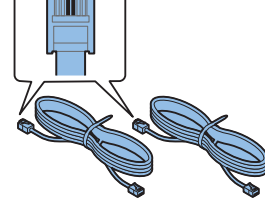
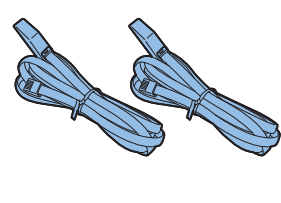
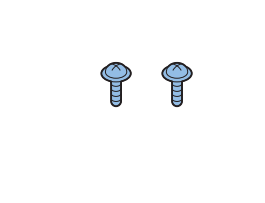
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

● Installation Outline Drawing



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] PCB Spacer X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Resin Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Modular Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Telephone Cord X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Cable X 2 (only for Asia) 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 2 

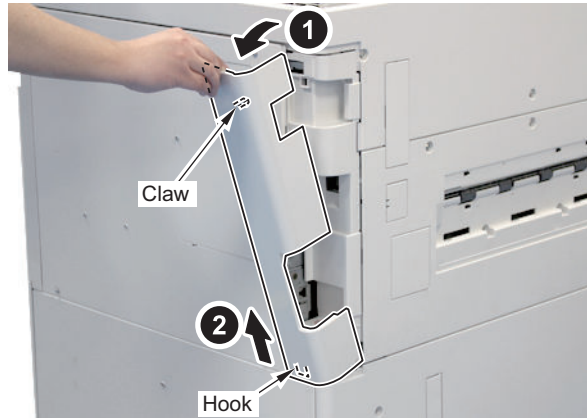
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation



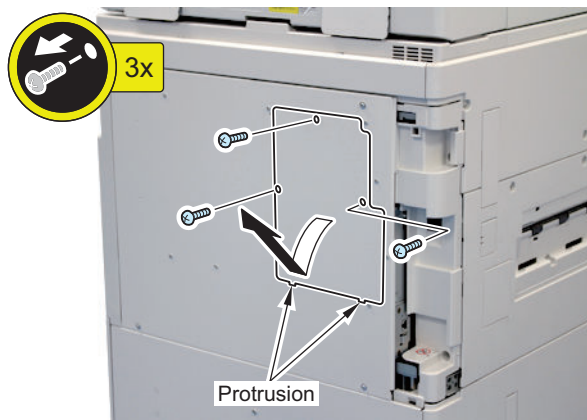
1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

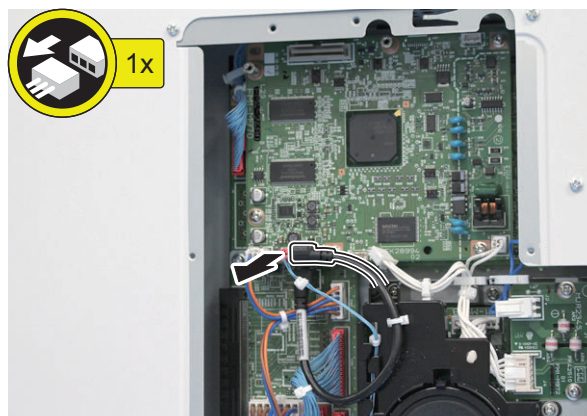


2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

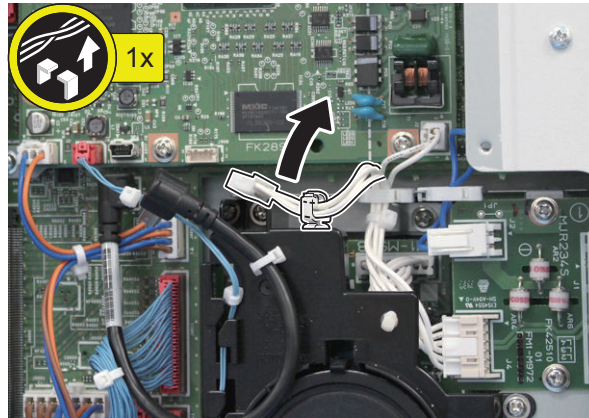


3. Disconnect the USB Cable of the G3FAX Expansion PCB side.



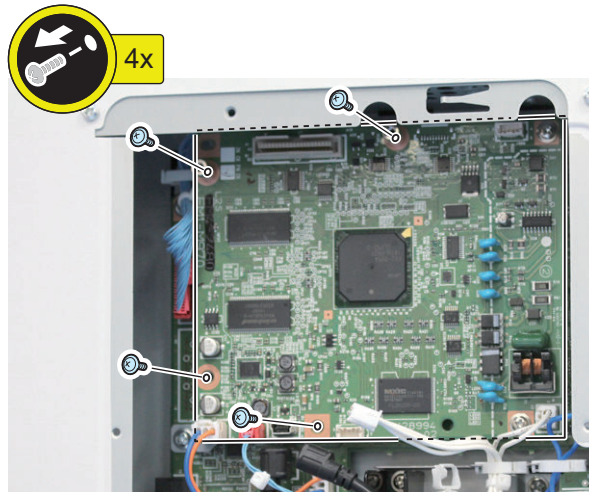
□

4. Free the Modular Cable from the Wire Saddle. (Close the Wire Saddle.)



□

5. Remove the 4 Screws. (will be used in Installing the Equipment)

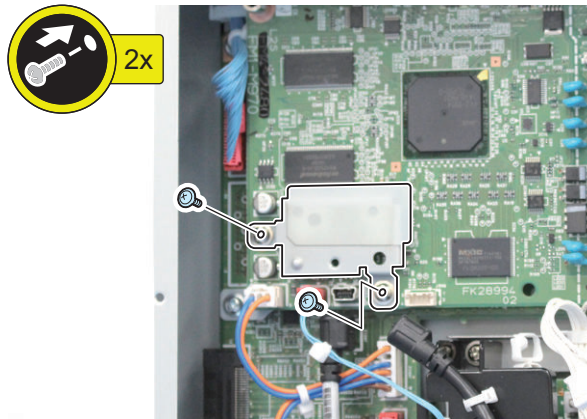
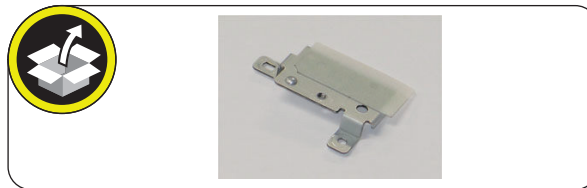


■ Installing the Equipment



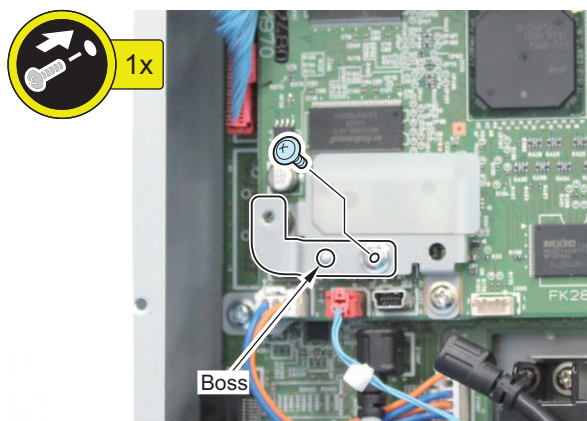
1. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))



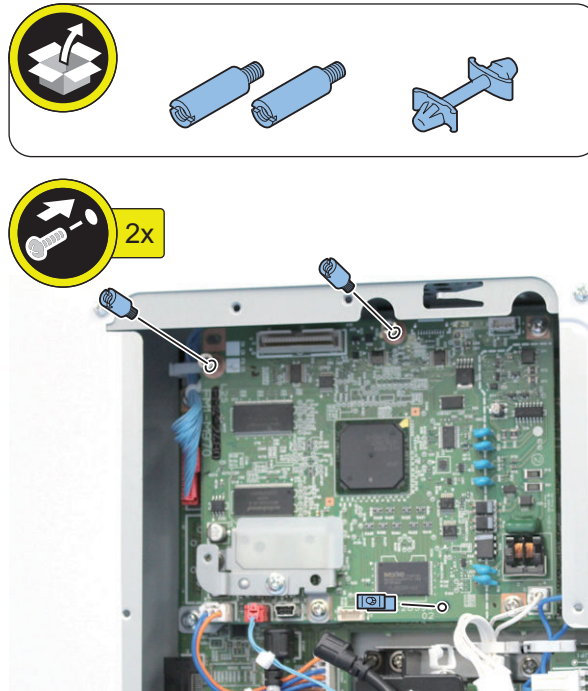
2. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)



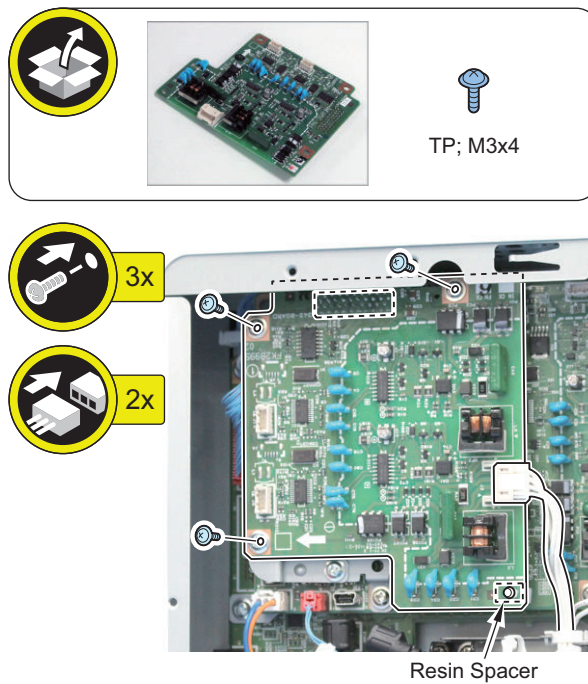


3. Install the 2 PCB Spacers and Resin Spacer.



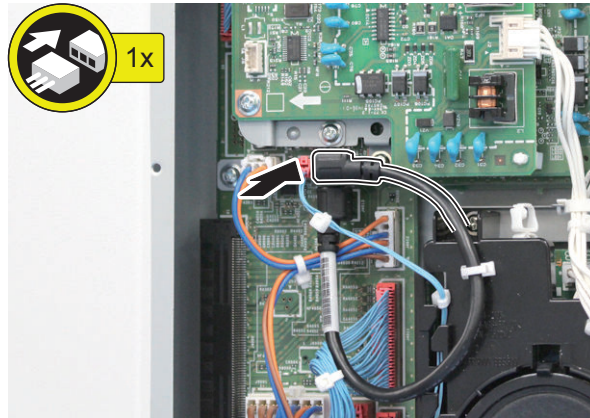
4. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- Upper Side: 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))
- Lower Side: 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)
- 1 Resin Spacer
- 2 Connectors





5. Connect the USB Cable.

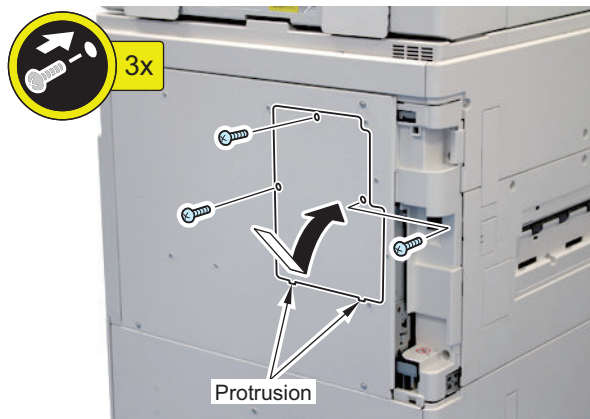


■ Subsequent Work

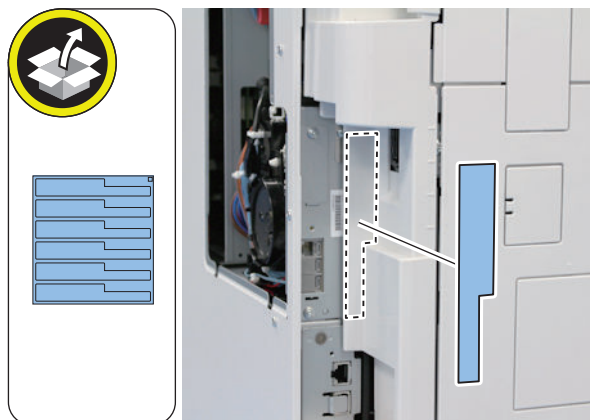


1. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



2. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.





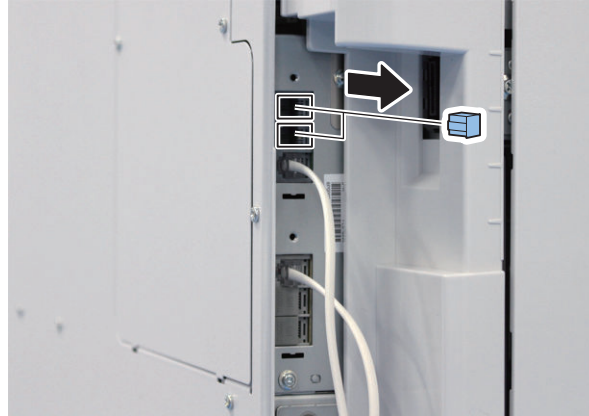
3. Remove the 2 Dust Covers if installed.

CAUTION:

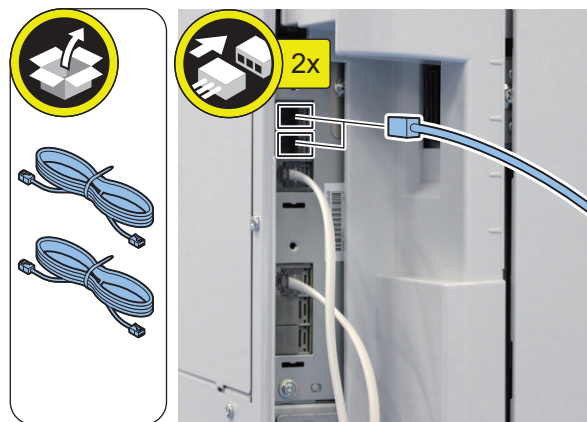
Do not insert a screwdriver, etc. into the modular terminal.

NOTE:

Keep the removed Dust Cover.

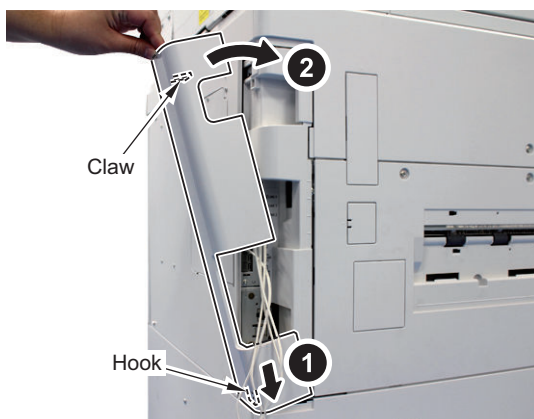


4. Connect one of the 2 Telephone Cords or the 2 PTT Cables to the modular jack on the host machine and the other cord to the modular jack on the wall.



**5. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw

**6. Connect the power plug to the outlet.****7. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

If the host machine still does not recognize this equipment after performing the foregoing remedy: In the case of installing the Super G3 Fax Board (1-Line) and the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, it is necessary to turn OFF and then ON the power three times in some cases (no message is displayed on the Control Panel).

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.

**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

- Service Mode > FAX > Type > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

- COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.

2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.

E.g. "ECM:3" => Line 3






Double Feeding Detection Kit-B1

Pre-checks

Points to Note at Installation

Do not touch the sensor and PCB components of the Double Feed Detection Sensor.

Checking the Contents

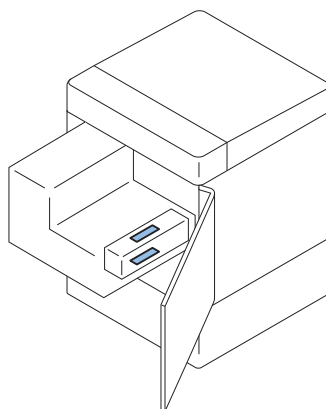
<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Double Feed Detection Sensor (Upper) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Double Feed Detection Sensor (Lower) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Sensor Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Grounding Wire X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (P Tightening; M3x8) X 2 			

Check Items When Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF.

1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
2. Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

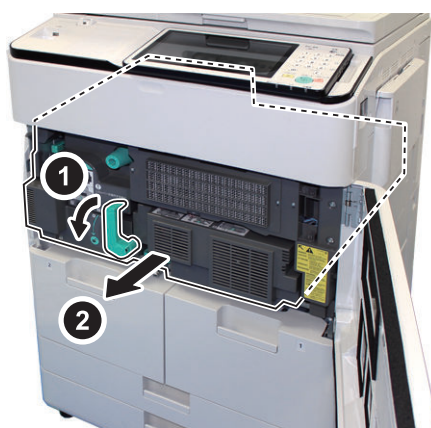
Installation Outline Drawing



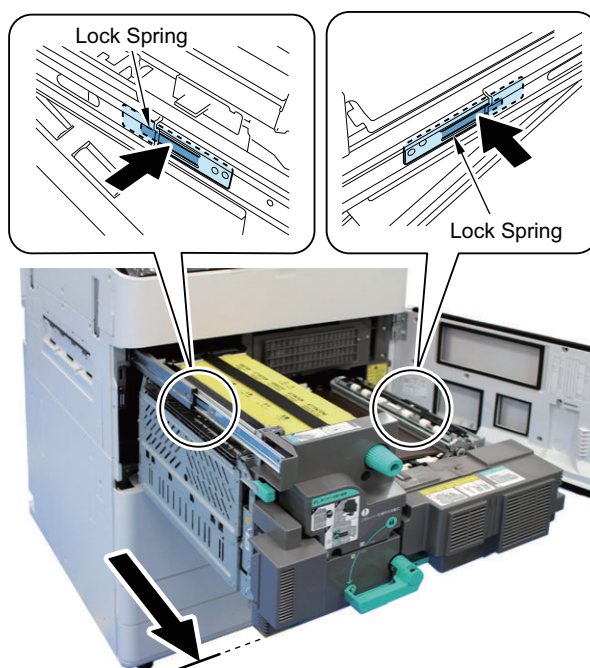
Installation Procedure

1. Open the Front Cover.

2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Release Lever in the direction of the arrow and pull the Fixing Feed Unit all the way out.

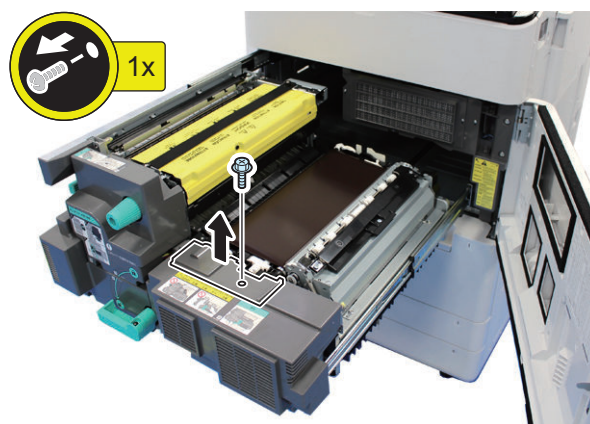


3. Release the lock by pressing the Lock Springs at both rails, and pull out the Fixing Feed Unit further until it stops.



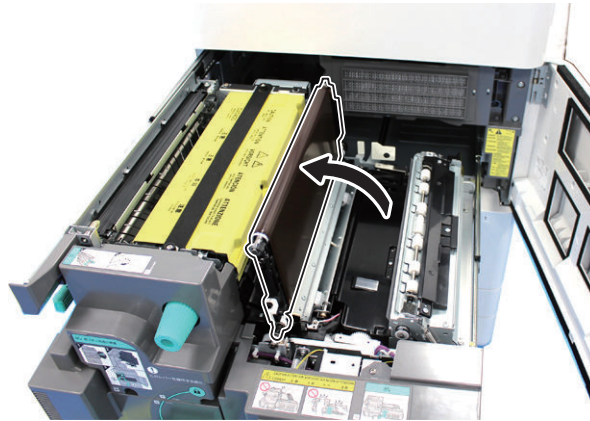
4. Remove the Fixing Feed Cover (Upper).

- 1 Screw



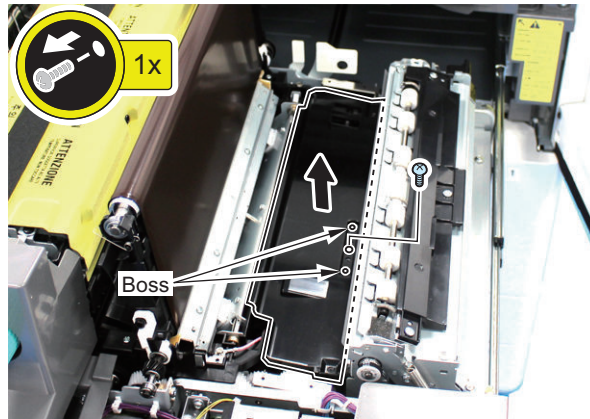


5. Lift the ETB Unit in the direction of the arrow.



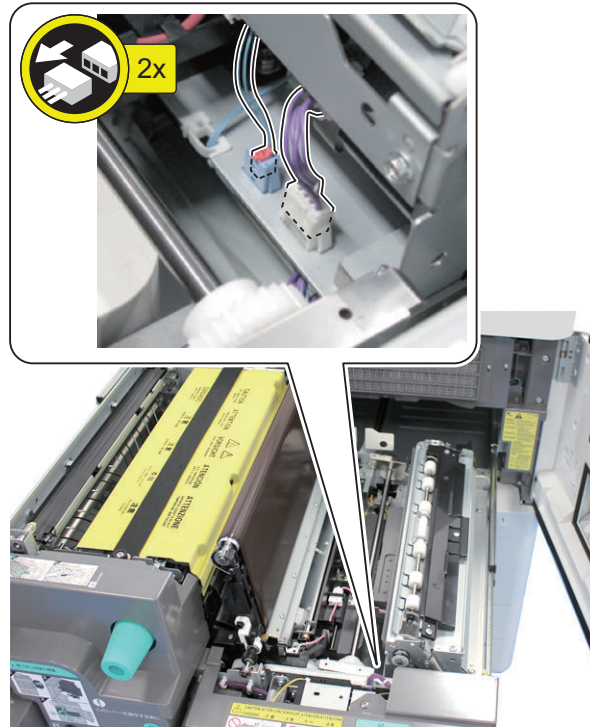
6. Remove the ETB Unit Lower Cover.

- 1 Screw
- 2 Bosses

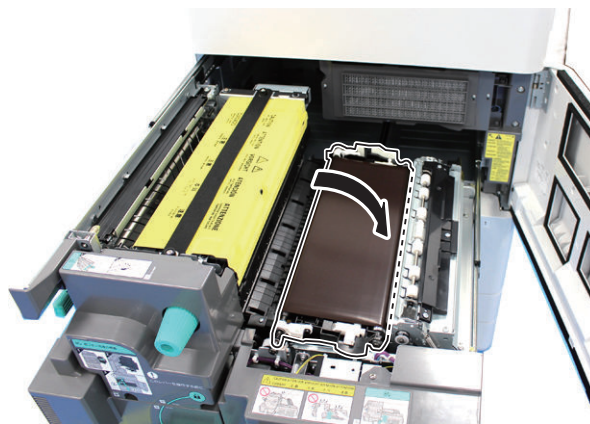




7. Disconnect the 2 connectors.



8. Return the ETB Unit to its original position.

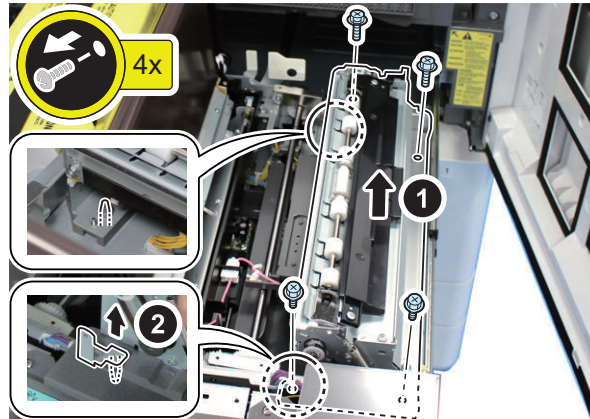


**9. Remove the Registration Unit.**

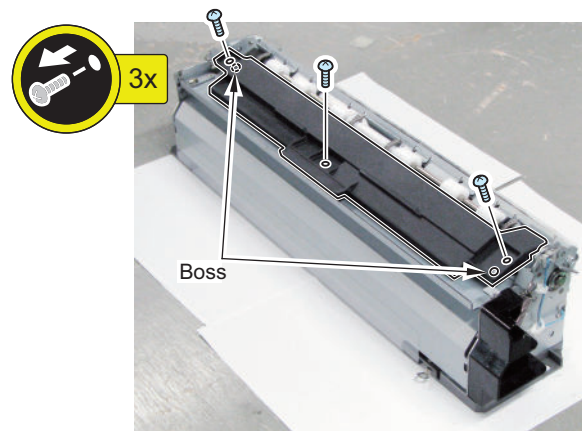
- 4 Screws
- 2 Positioning Pins

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the pins on the front side because they are not secured.

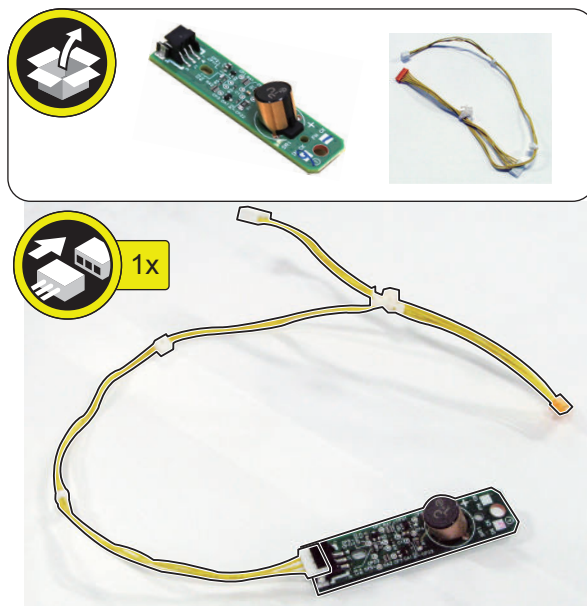
**10. Remove the Registration Upper Guide.**

- 3 Screws
- 2 Bosses



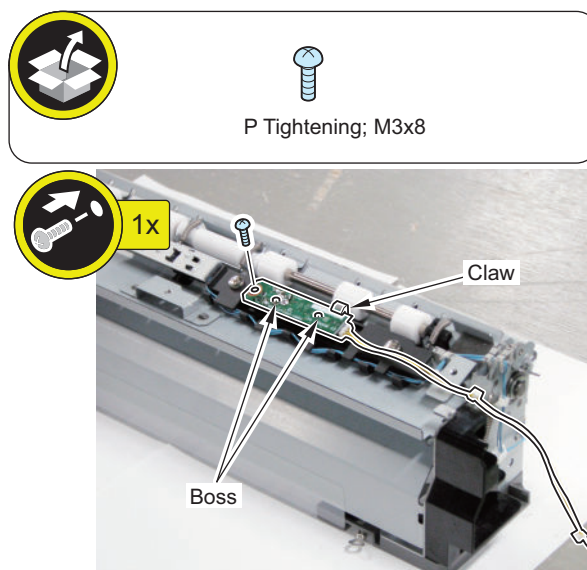


11. Connect the Sensor Cable (the longer one) to the Double Feed Detection Sensor (Upper).



12. Install the Double Feed Detection Sensor (Upper) with the sensor part facing down.

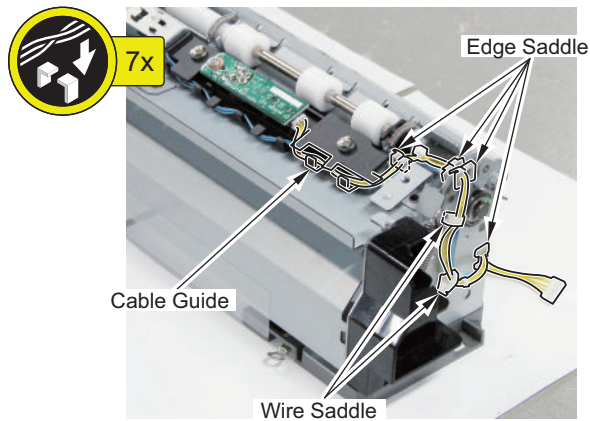
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Claw
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M3x8)





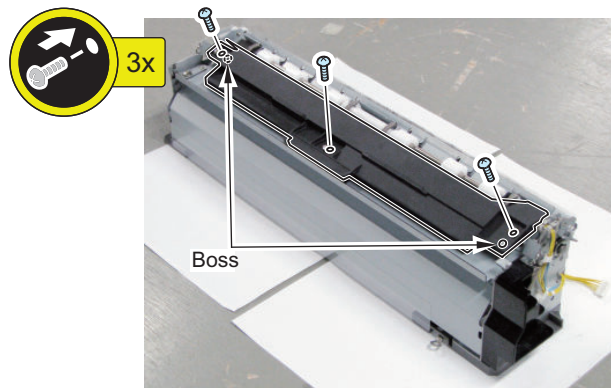
13. Route the Sensor Cable.

- 1 Cable Guide
- 4 Edge Saddles
- 2 Wire Saddles



14. Install the Registration Upper Guide.

- 2 Bosses
- 3 Screws



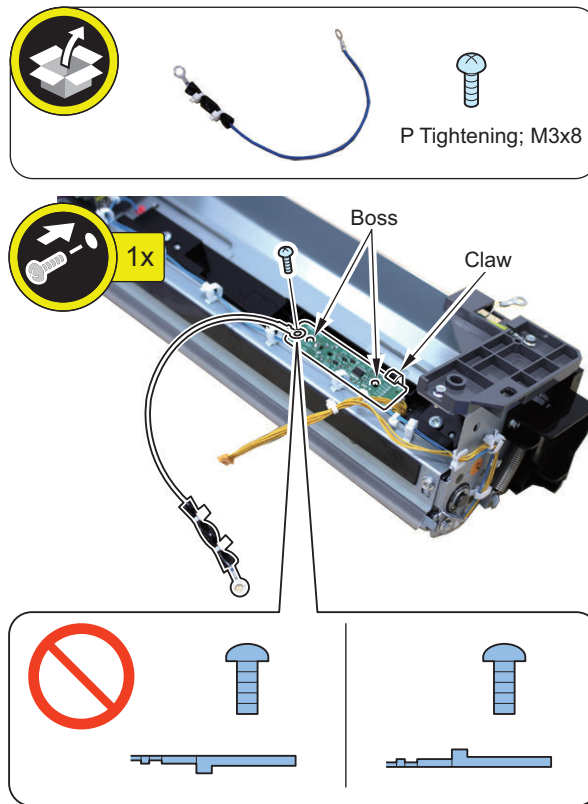
15. Turn over the Registration Unit, and connect the Sensor Cable (the shorter one) to the Double Feed Detection Sensor (Lower).



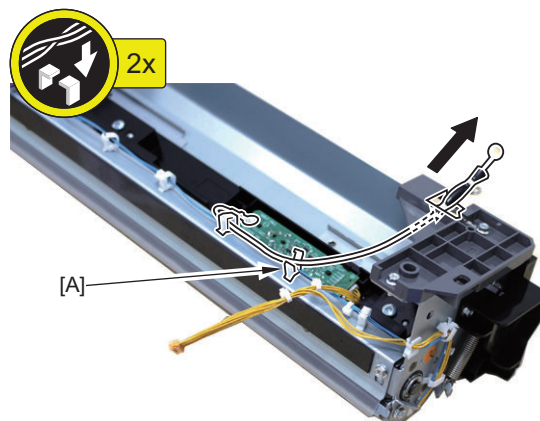


16. Install the Double Feed Detection Sensor (Lower) and the Grounding Wire with the sensor section facing down.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Claw
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M3x8)

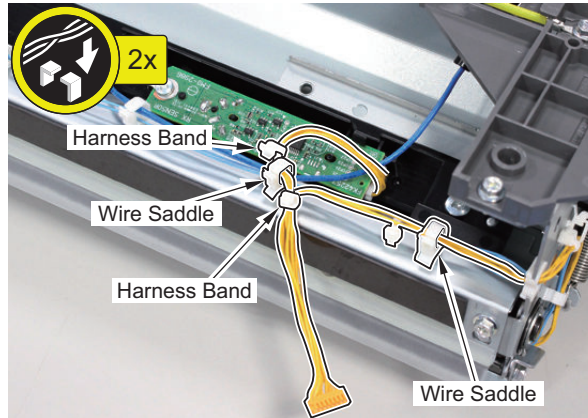


17. Secure the Grounding Wire in place using the 2 Wire Saddles, and pass it through the hole on the guide. (Do not close [A] in this step.)

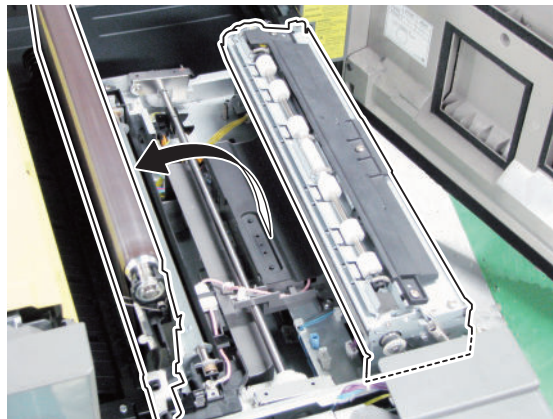




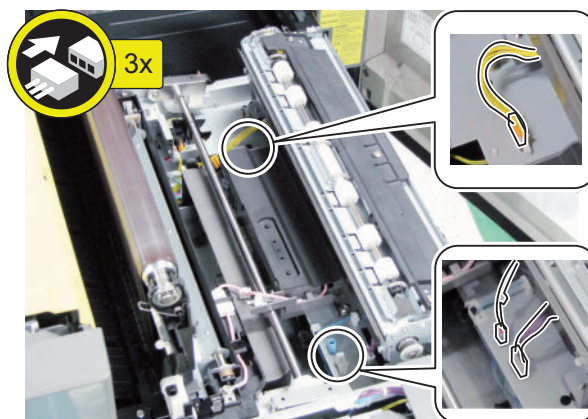
18. Secure the Sensor Cable in place using the 2 Wire Saddles.



19. Lift the ETB Unit in the direction of the arrow, and temporarily place the Registration Unit on the Fixing Feed Unit.



20. Connect the 3 Connectors.



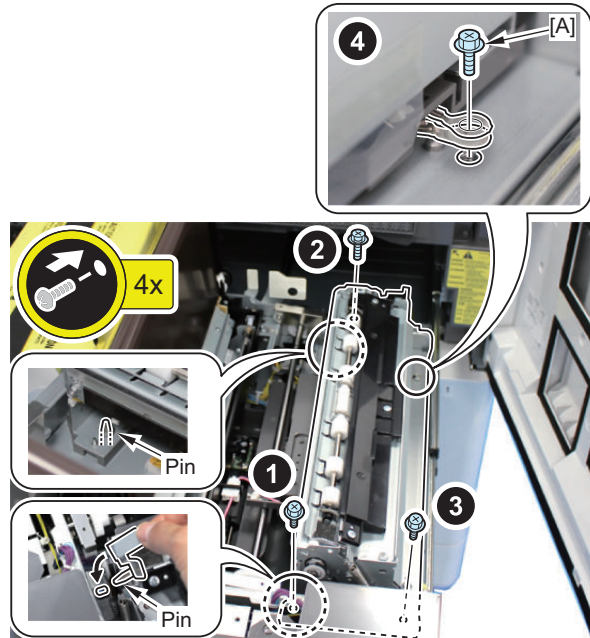


21. Install the Registration Unit by aligning the position.

- 2 Positioning Pins
- 4 Screws (Secure the 2 Grounding Wires together with the screw [A].)

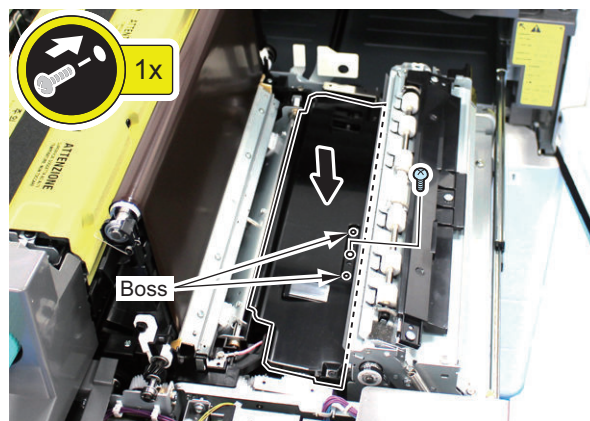
CAUTION:

When installing the Registration Unit, be sure to tighten the screws in the order shown in the figure.



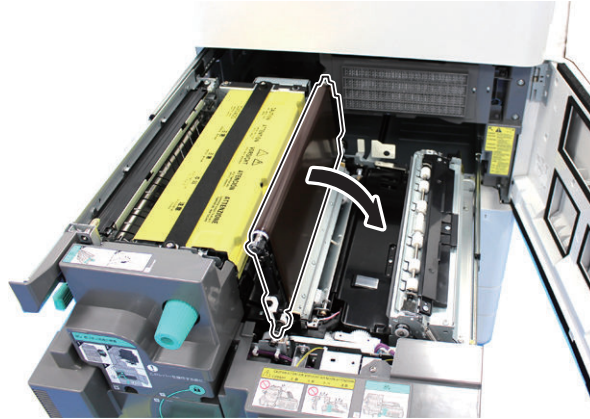
22. Install the ETB Unit Lower Cover.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw



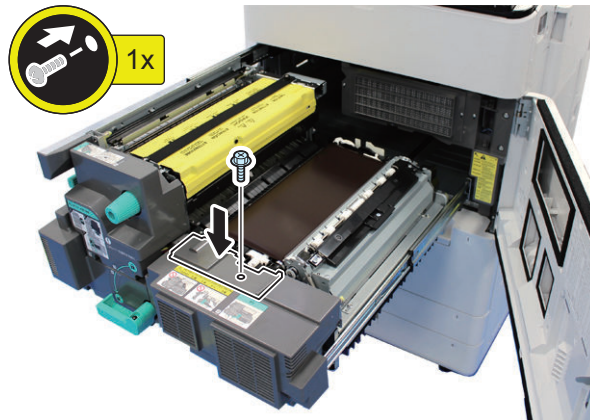


23. Return the ETB Unit to its original position.



24. Install the Fixing Feed Cover (Upper).

- 1 Screw



25. Return the Fixing Feed Unit and lock the Fixing Feed Unit Release Lever.

26. Close the Front Cover.

■ Setting after Installation



1. Set "1" for the setting of ON/OFF of the Double Feed Detection Sensor.
Service Mode (Level 2) > COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > D-FDS-SW
2. Check the operation of the Double Feed Detection Sensor.
Service Mode (Level 1) > COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > D-FDS



Paper Feed Options

Paper Deck Unit-E1.....	419
Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1.....	447
POD Deck Lite-C1.....	463
Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1.....	491
Cassette Heater Unit-38.....	500

Paper Deck Unit-E1

Checking before Installation

Requirements for the installation place are given below. It is recommended to look over the place to be used for installation before delivering the equipment to the user.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install the Paper Deck.
- Do not carry the Paper Deck with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

■ Points to Note on Installation

Exercise following caution for installation.

1. This equipment maximum 33 kg. When holding this equipment at the installation, be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country. In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.
2. When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281210

Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

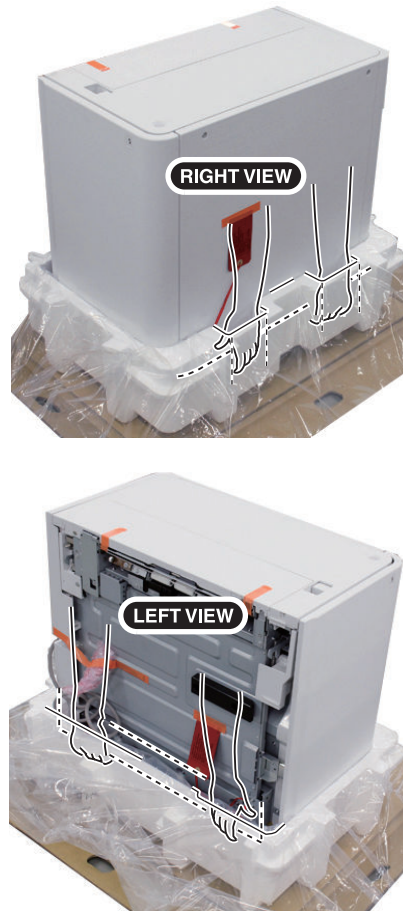
Paper Deck is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transport. Keep the removed all packaging tapes and cushioning materials for relocation.



1. Remove the cushioning materials.




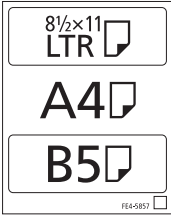
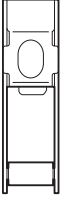


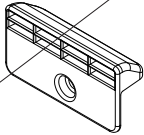
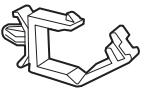
2. Open the plastic packing bag. Remove the Paper Deck from the pallet holding the parts as shown in the figure.



3. Remove the packaging tapes and the cushioning materials.

Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.

<p>□ [1] Paper Deck x1</p> 	<p>□ [2] Paper Size Label x1</p> 
<p>□ [3] Latch Plate x2</p> 	<p>□ [4] Screw (Binding;M4x5) x3</p> 
<p>□ [5] Screw (P Tightening;M3x8) x1</p> 	<p>□ [6] Door Stopper x1</p> 
<p>□ [7] Wire Saddle x1</p> 	

The parts [5], [6] are not used.

<Others>

- Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

Check that the main power switch is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

NOTE:

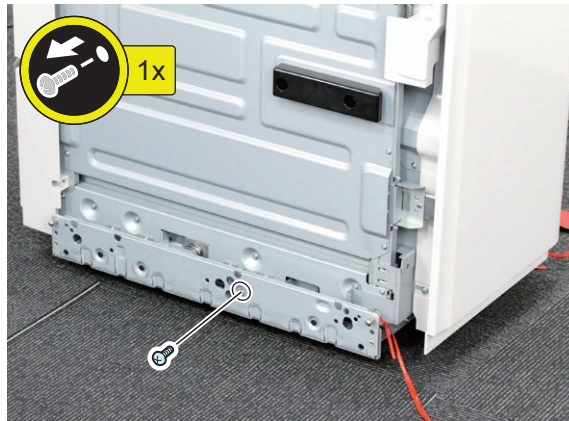
Keep the removed fixing materials as they are used to transport for relocation.

■ Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit



1. Remove the screw from the base stay unit.

- 1 Screw

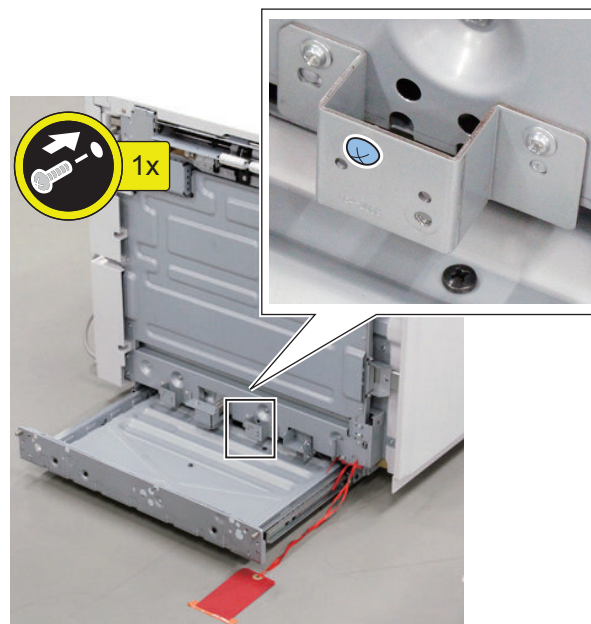
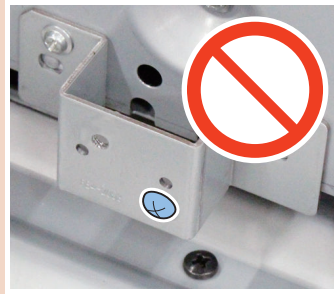




2. Push the Paper Deck Unit until it stops while holding the base stay unit and then attach the screw removed at procedure 2 as shown in the figure.

CAUTION:

Do not attach the screw removed at procedure 1 to the original position.

**NOTE:**

The screw is used to fix the base stay unit when the Paper Deck Unit is transported for relocation.

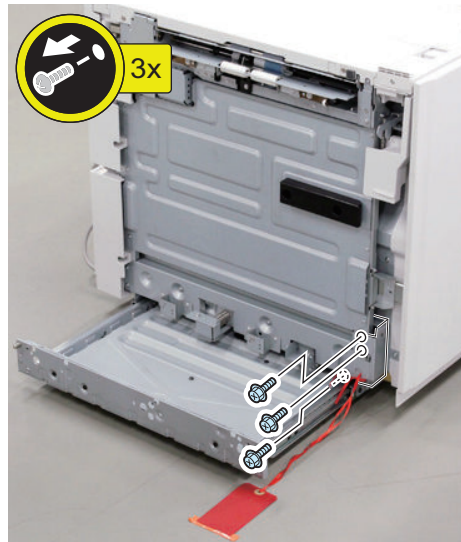


3. Remove the screws from bottom left side of the Paper Deck Unit (the removed screws are used at procedure 4, "Preparation of the Host Machine").

- 3 Screws

NOTE:

The fixing plate is removed at procedure 6, "Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit".



4. Remove the fixing plate from bottom right side of the compartment (the removed screw is used at procedure 4, "Preparation of the Host Machine").

- 1 Screw

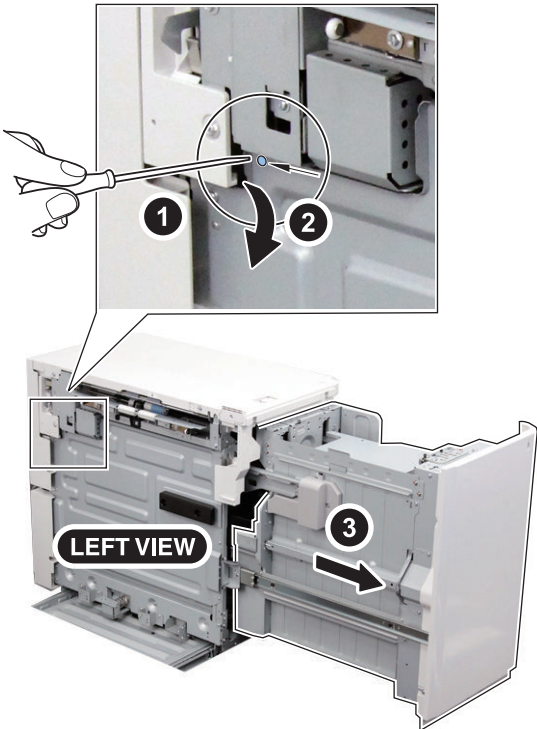
NOTE:

The fixing plate is removed at procedure 7, "Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit".





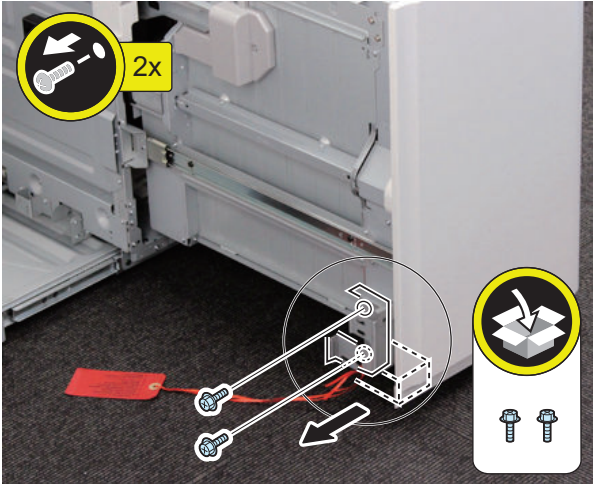
5. Insert screwdrivers into the hole at rear left side of the compartment and then release the lever to open it.



6. Remove the fixing plate and the cushioning material from bottom left side of the compartment (the removed screws are not used).

- 2 Screws

NOTE:
Do not forget to remove the cushioning material.



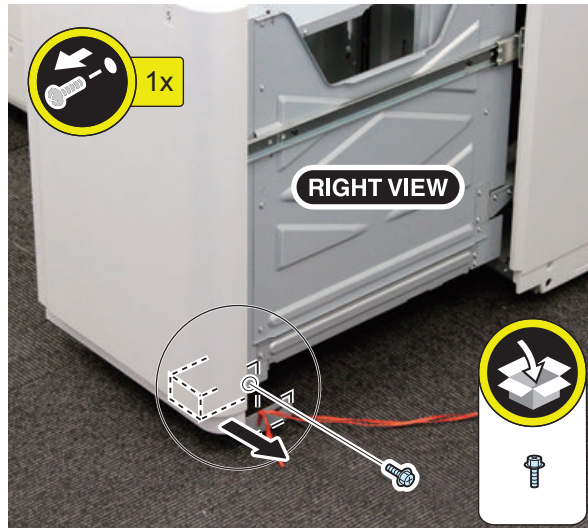


7. Remove the fixing plate and cushioning material from bottom right side of the compartment (the removed screw is not used).

- 1 Screw

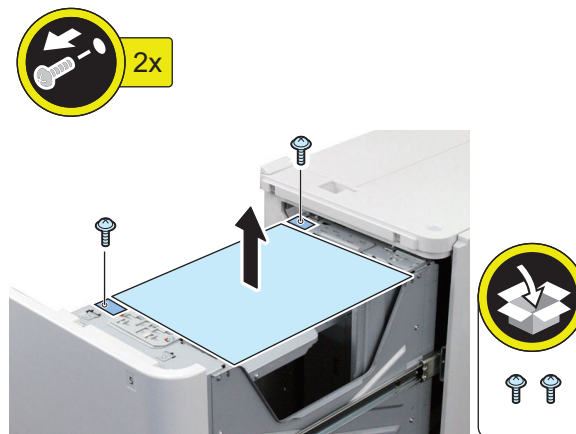
NOTE:

Do not forget to remove the cushioning material.



8. Remove the fixing sheet fixing the lifter plate (the removed screws are not used).

- 2 Screws



CAUTION:

Do not forget to remove the fixing sheet. The lifter wire may be broken without removing the above when the main power is turned ON.



9. Close the compartment.

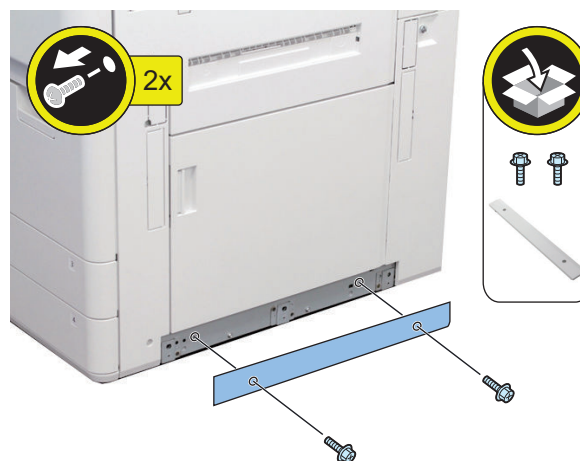
■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the feed cover (the removed cover is not used).

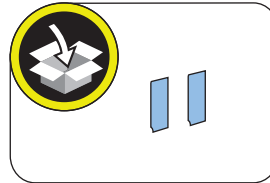


2. Remove the lower right cover (the removed cover and the screws are not used).
 - 2 Screws





3. Cut the front and rear blinded covers with a side cutter.

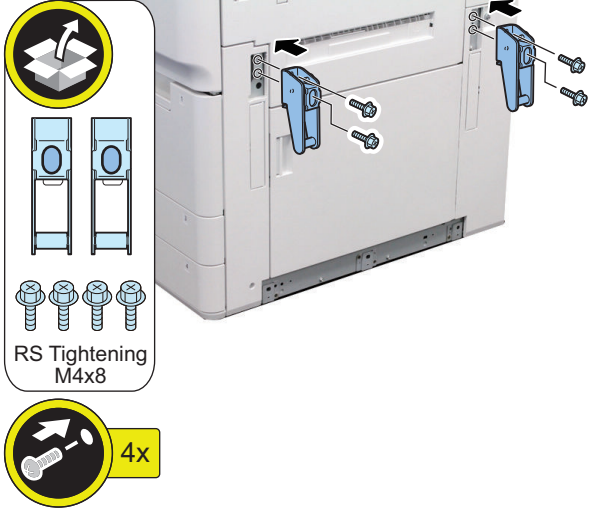
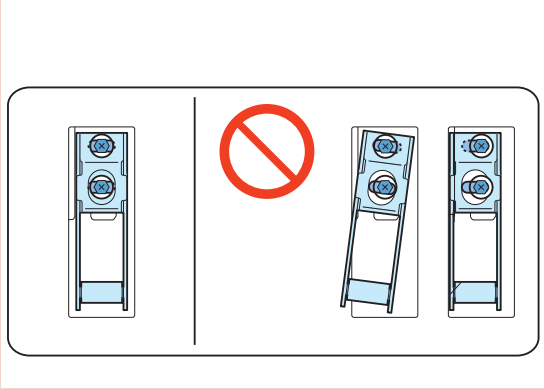


CAUTION:

Be sure to cut the cover properly so that no burr is formed.

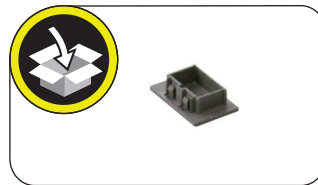
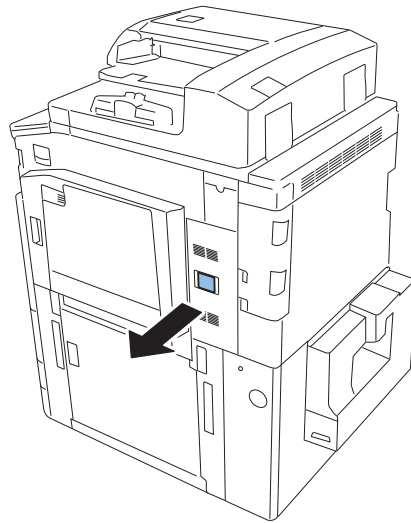
- 4. Attach the latch plates (front and rear) to the host machine with screws removed at procedure 3, 4, "Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit".

CAUTION:
Attach the 2 latch plates in the center of the hole.

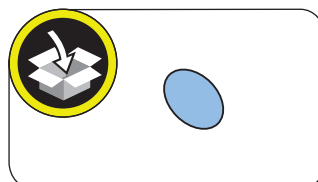
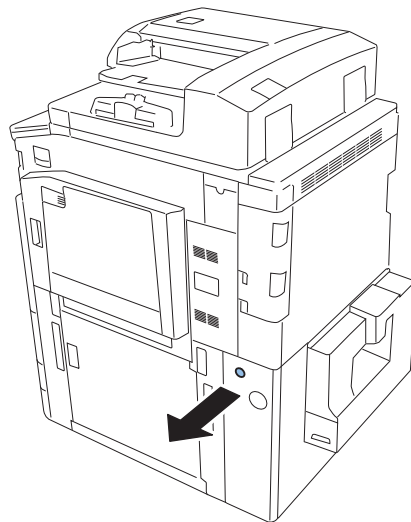




5. Remove the connector cover (the removed connector cover is not used).



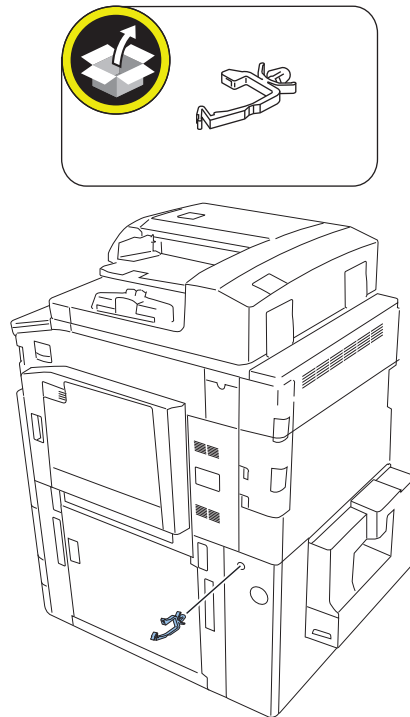
6. Remove the lower blindfold seal (the removed lower blindfold seal is not used).





7. Attach the wire saddle to the host machine.

- 1 Wire saddle

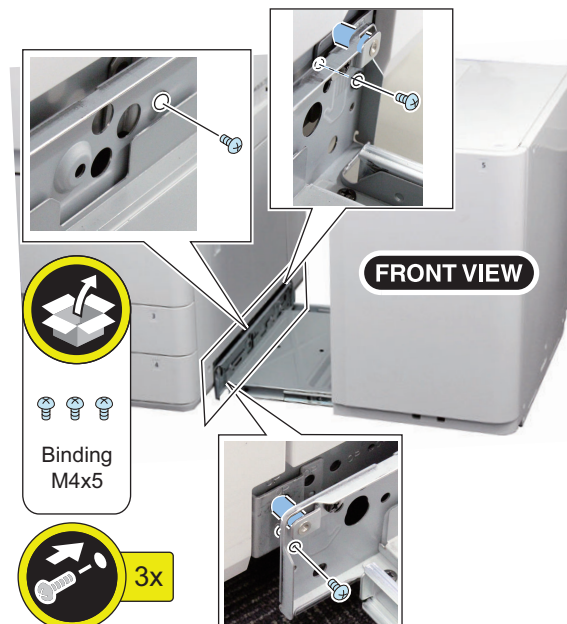


■ Connection with the Host Machine



1. Insert the positioning pins to the holes on the host machine and then fix the base stay unit.

- 3 Screws (Binding; M4x5)

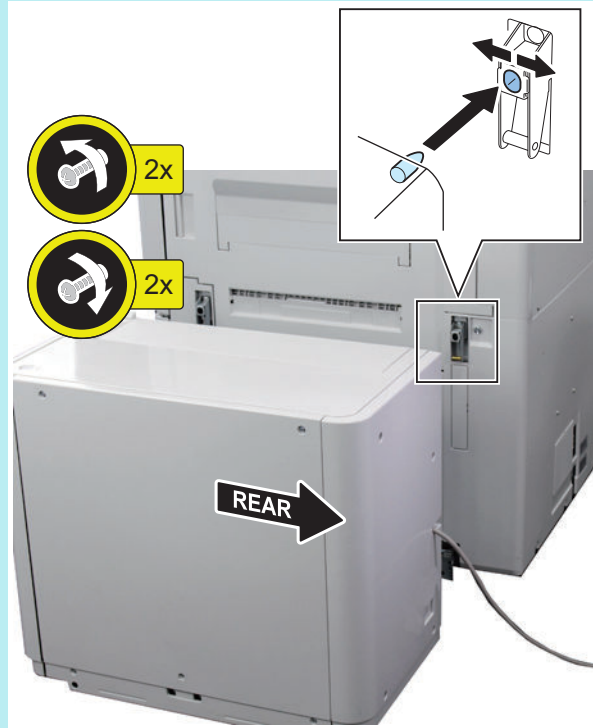


**2. Connect the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine.****NOTE:**

Do not nip the cable between the Paper Deck Unit and the host machine when connecting.

NOTE:

When it is difficult to insert the rear connection pin into the rear latch hole, loosen the 2 screws fixing the latch plate and then adjust the position of the latch plate to fit it. Check that the latch plate is not positioned at an angle when installing.





3. Loosen the 2 screws fixing the front bottom wheel to touch it to the floor.

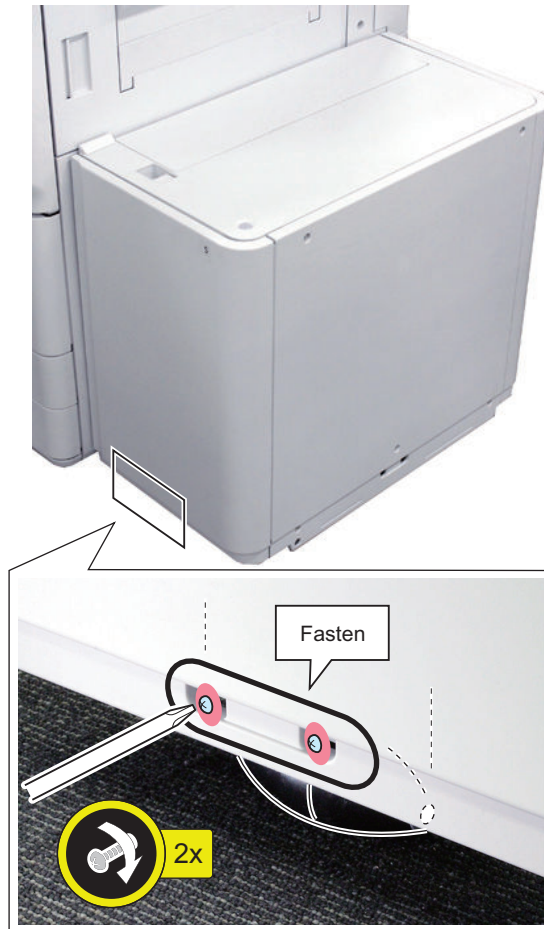
- 2 Screws





4. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 3.

- 2 Screws





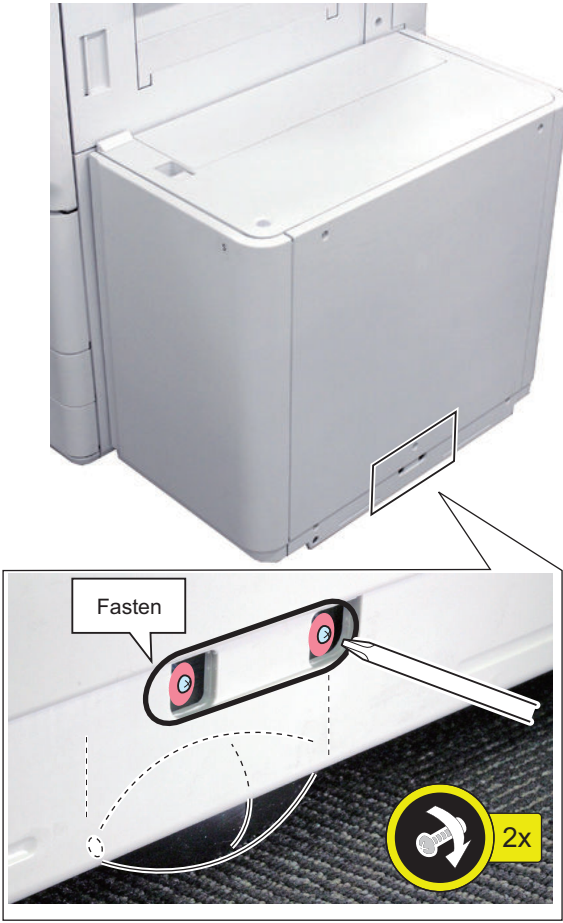
5. Loosen the 2 screws fixing the bottom right wheel to touch it to the floor.

- 2 Screws



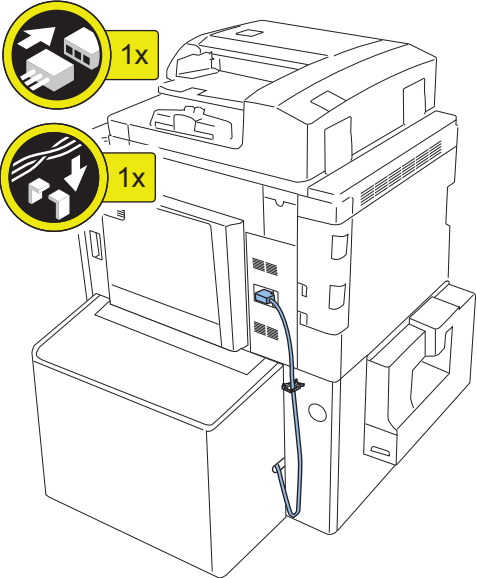
□

- 6. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 5.
 - 2 Screws



□

- 7. Connect the lattice connector of the Paper Deck Unit to the host machine and then fix it with the wire saddle.

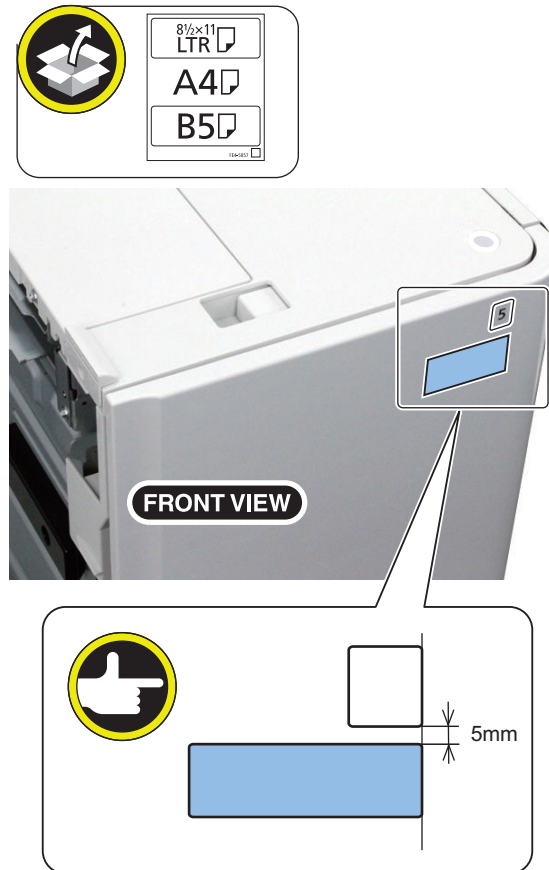




8. Paste the paper size label with a gap in 5mm from the cassette no. label while aligning right edge of the labels (the remaining labels are not used).

NOTE:

Keep the paper size label for use when paper size is changed.



9. Turn ON the host machine.

■ Switching of the Paper Size



1. Press the open button to open the compartment.

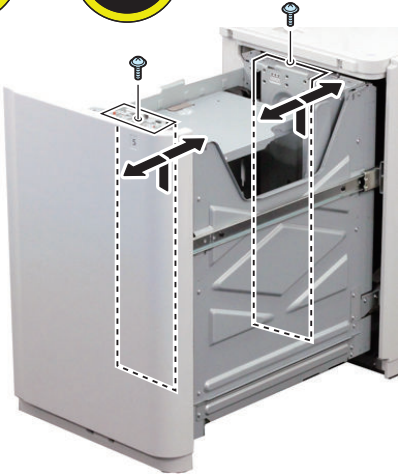
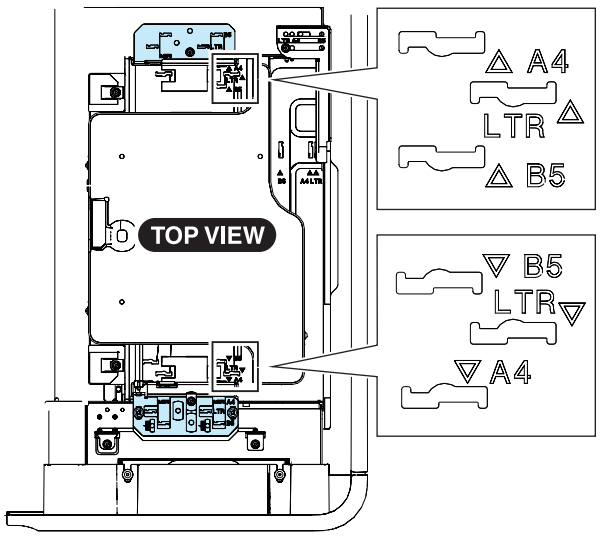




2. Relocate the left/right edge guide plates at the specified paper size.

CAUTION:

Paper size is marked on both top and bottom of the compartment. Check that the marked paper size is the specified paper size when relocating the the left/right edge guide plates.

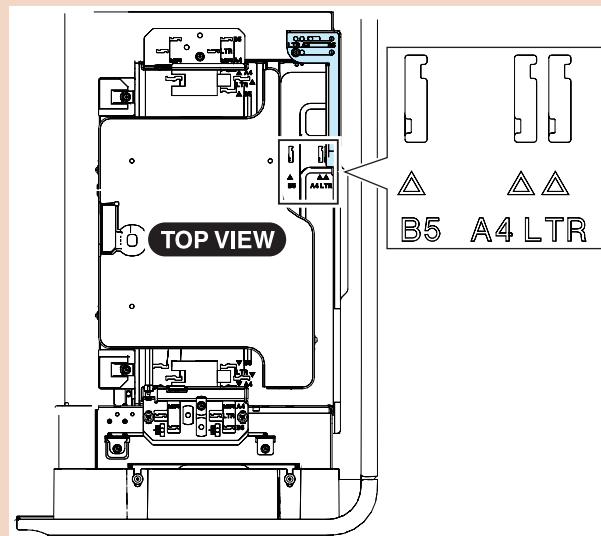




3. Relocate the rear edge guide plate at the specified paper size.

CAUTION:

Paper size is marked on both top and bottom of the compartment. Check that the marked paper size is the specified paper size when relocating the rear edge guide plate.



4. Set sheets of paper in the compartment and close it.



5. Set the paper size on the service mode.

(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > ACC > DK-P

- 0: A4
- 1: B5
- 2: LTR

Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Screw (RS tightening; M4x8)	3pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (RS tightening; M4x10)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Screw (TP; M3x6)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Screw (P tightening; M3x8)	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Paper Size Label (remaining label)	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Blindfold Seal	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[7]	Door Stopprt	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[8]	Connector Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[9]	Feed Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[10]	Lower Right Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[11]	Removed Face Cover	2pcs.

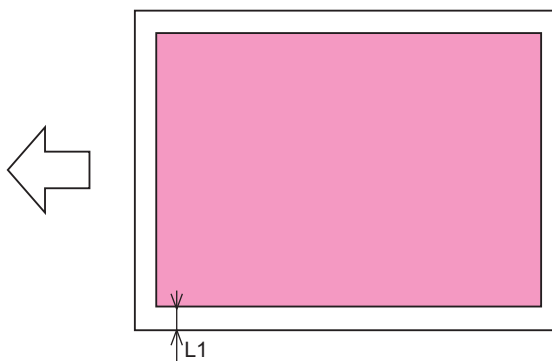
■ Paper Positioning Check /Adjustment Procedure

● Adjusting the Left Edge Margin(L1) of the Image

1. After setting the service modes (level 1) as follows, press the Start key and output a test print.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y/C/K = 0

2. Print sheets of paper from POD Deck Lite and then check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm.



3. Execute manua adjustment as follows when it is out of standard.

• Adjustment Procedure (Manual)



1. Release the Paper Deck from the host machine and press the open button of the Paper Deck to open the compartment.



2. Loosen the 2 screws at the latch plate on left side of the compartment.
 - 2 Screws

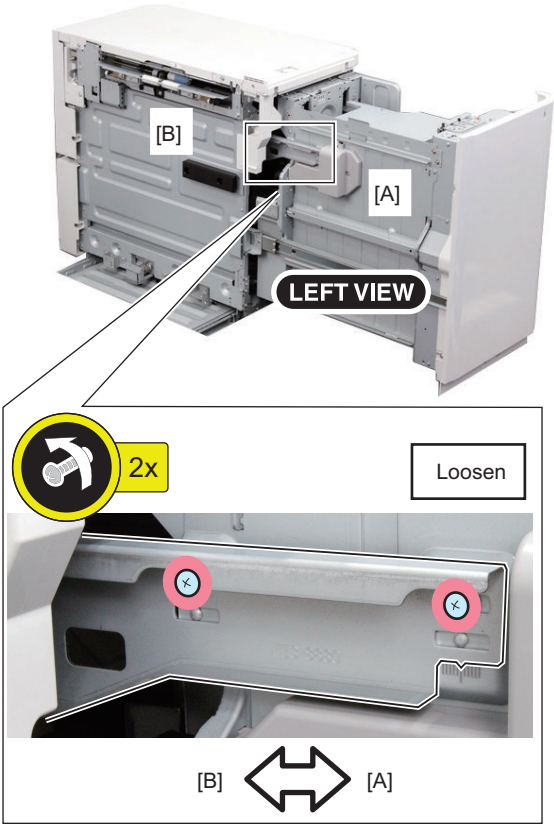
NOTE:

The screws retaining the latch plate are locked with the paint to avoid loosening in transit. For the adjustment, loosen the paint-locked screws and change the latch plate position.



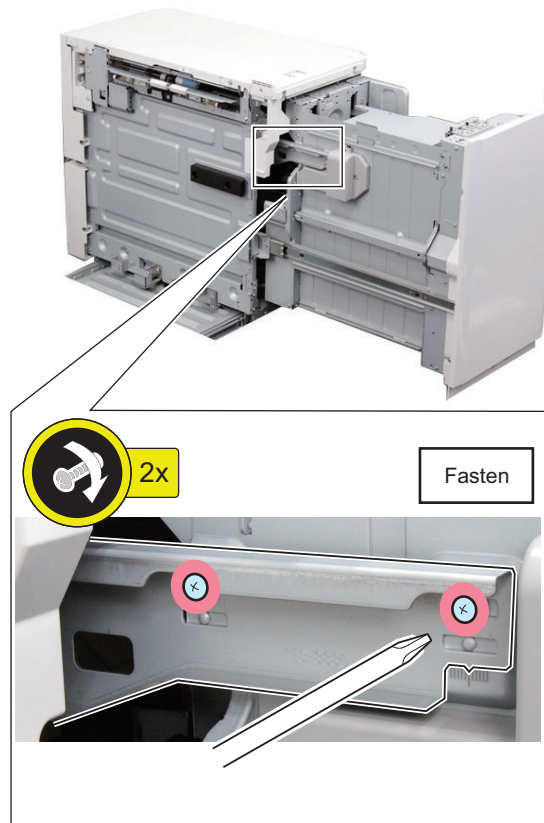
3. Move the latch plate toward front [A] or rear [B] (1 scale = 1mm)

- Move the latch plate to front [A] when L1 is large.
- Move the latch plate to rear [B] when L1 is small.



**4. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 2.**

- 2 Screws

**5. Move the front cover fitting to the amount of the latch plate adjustment. Refer to the next item "Front Cover Positioning Adjustment" for detail.****6. Close the compartment and connect with the host machine.****7. Print sheet of paper from the Paper Deck. Check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm. Re-adjust L1 in case that it is out of standard.**

• Front Cover Positioning Adjustment



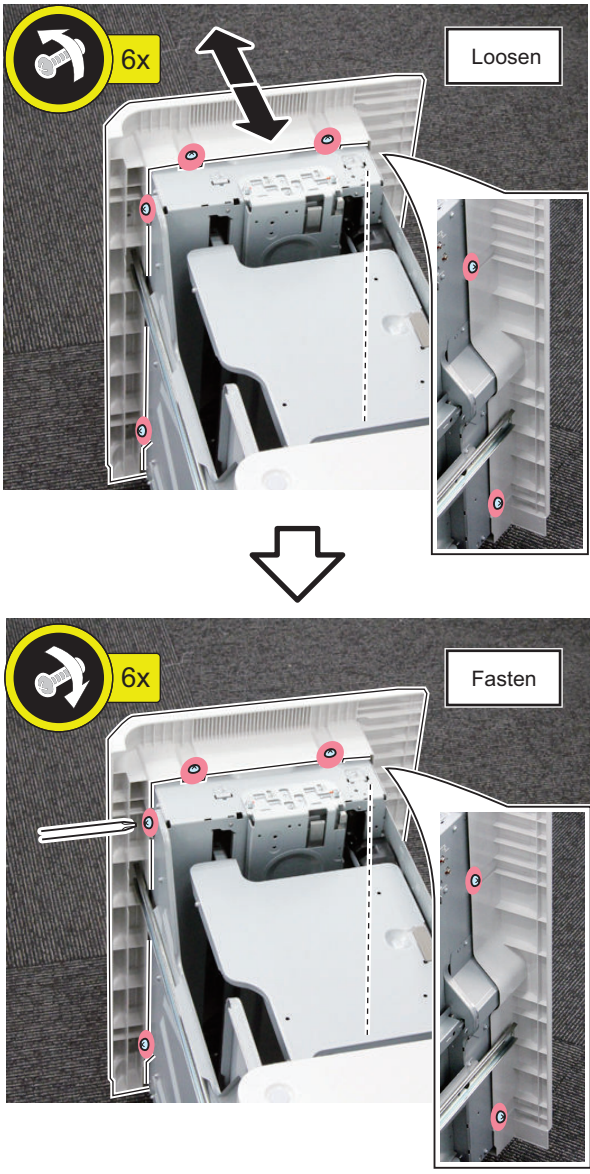
1. Check that the gap between the front cover and the Paper Deck is as follows.

- Gap between the front cover and the right cover: $3\pm 1\text{mm}$
- Gap between the front cover and the upper cover: $4\pm 1\text{mm}$



NOTE:

Loosen the 6 screws on the front cover and then move it to adjust the gap within the standard.



Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1

Checking before Installation

Requirements for the installation place are given below. It is recommended to look over the place to be used for installation before delivering the equipment to the user.

CAUTION:

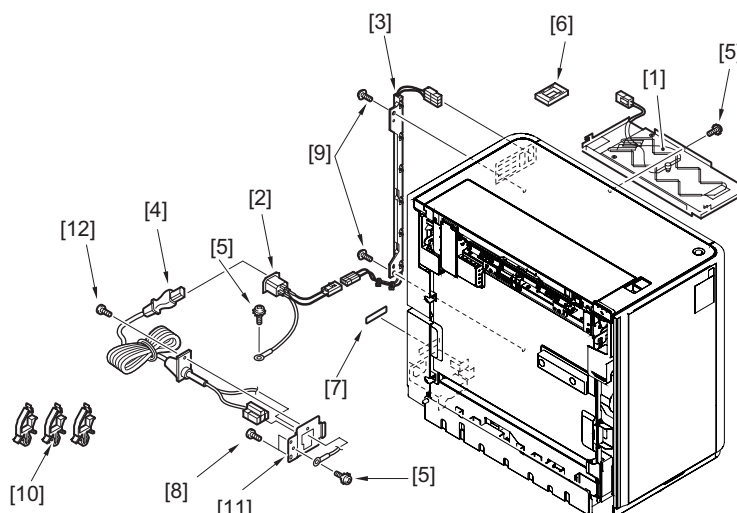
- Install the host machine first and then install the Paper Deck Unit.
- Do not carry the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

Checking the Supplied Parts

NOTE:

Each part of the Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1 for the Paper Deck is supplied as a service part according to the location, so prepare the following parts.

Also, use the appropriate Paper Deck Heater Unit for each country.



Item	Parts Name	Parts Number	Q'ty
[1]	Heater unit	FG6-9650 (100V) FG6-9651 (230V)	1pc.
[2]	AC input connector	FG6-1117	1pc.
[3]	Relay harness unit	FG6-2957	1pc.
[4]	AC cable	FK3-0630 (100V) FK3-0631 (230V)	1pc.
[5]	Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)	XB2-7400-607	3pcs.
*[6]	Cable protection bushing	WT2-5098	1pc.
[7]	Power supply label	FS6-8478 (100V) FS6-8725 (230V)	1pc.
[8]	Screw (Binding; M4x4)	XB1-2400-409	2pcs.
[9]	Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)	XA9-0732-010	2pcs.
[10]	Wire saddle	WT2-5730	3pcs.
[11]	Cord mount	FC7-5473	1pc.
[12]	Screw with flat spring (M4x10)	XB2-8401-007	1pc.

*As for the change of the part number, please refer to the latest parts catalog.

*[6] Cable protection bushing is not used for the installation.

<Others>

Including guides

Installation Procedure

■ Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit

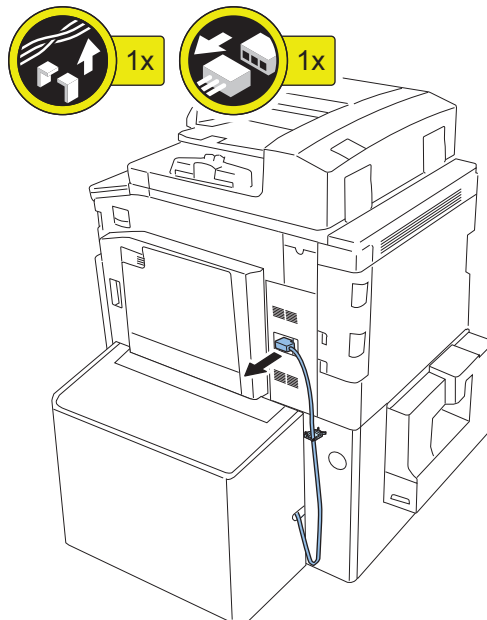


1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.



2. Disconnect the lattice connector from the host machine and then release the cable from the wire saddle.

- 1 Wire Saddle
- 1 Connector

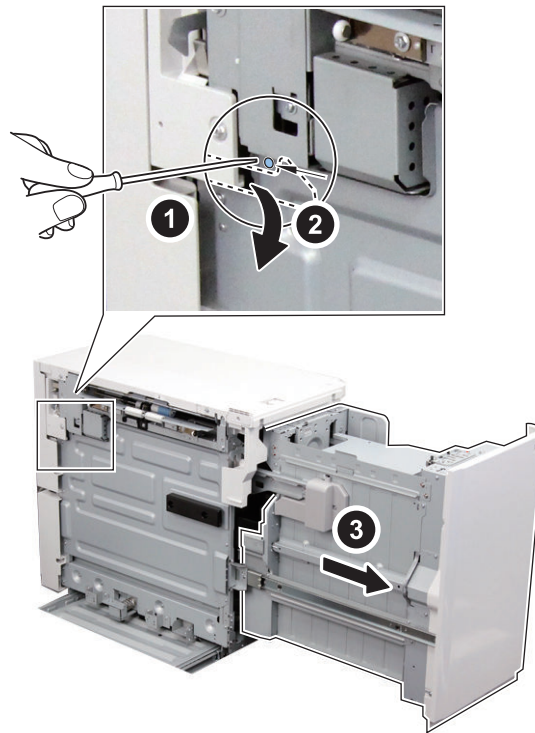


3. Pull the release lever and then withdraw the Paper Deck Unit until it stops.



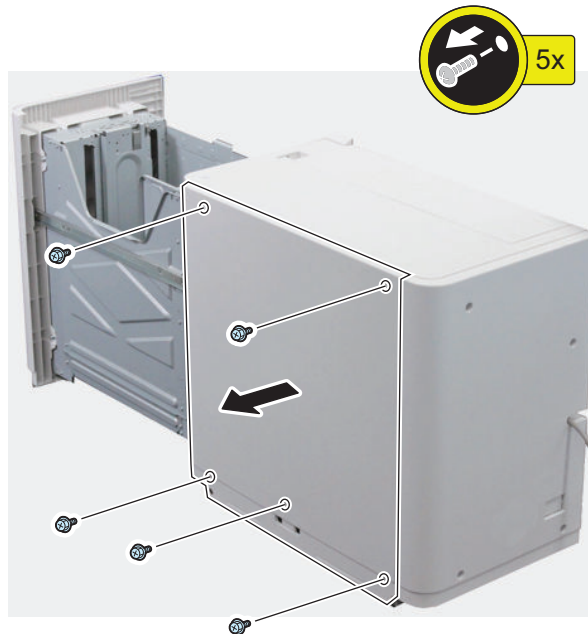


4. Insert screwdrivers into the hole at rear left side of the compartment and then release the lever to open it.



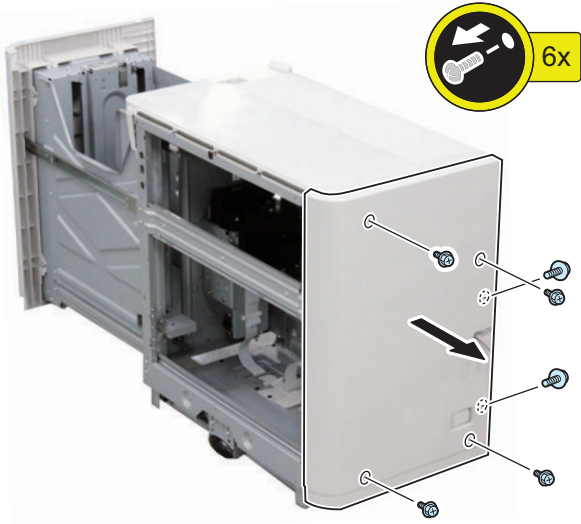
5. Remove the right cover.

- 5 Screws

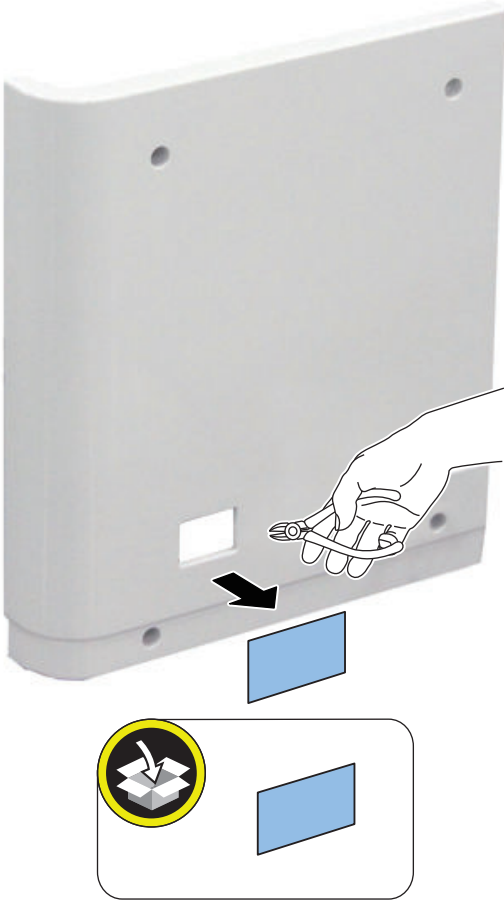




6. Remove the rear cover.
• 6 Screws

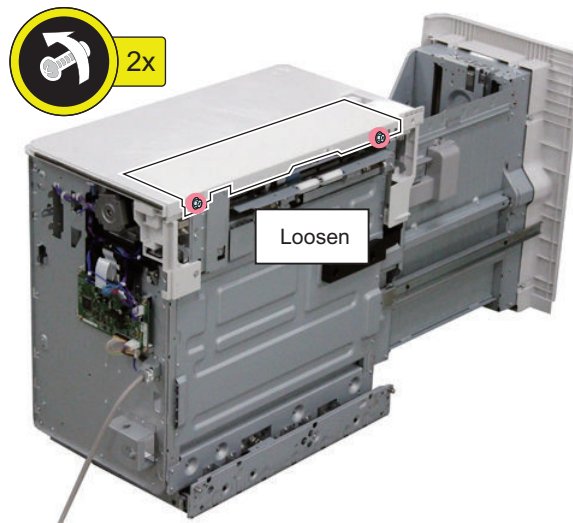


7. Cut the blindfold cover from the rear cover.





8. Loosen the 2 screws and then remove the upper left cover.



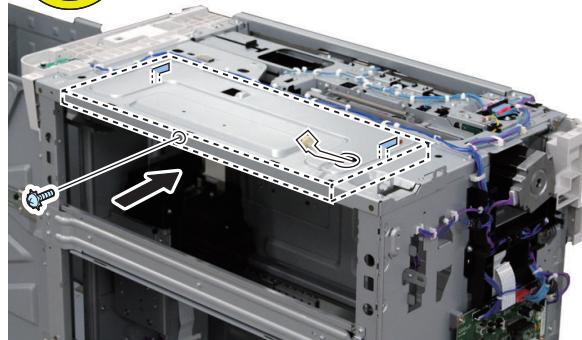
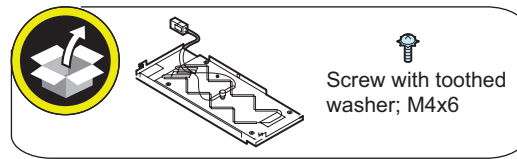
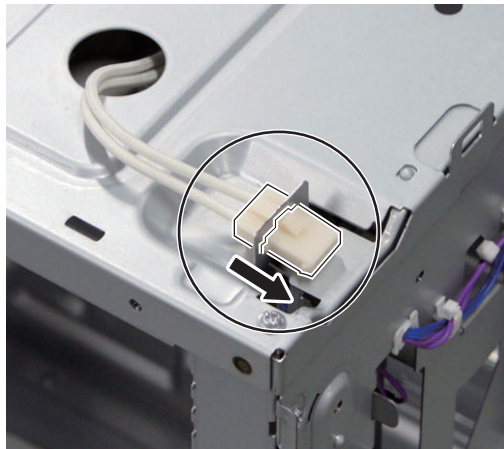
9. Remove the upper cover.

- 3 Screws



**10. Put the connector through the hole in the top plate and then fix the Heater Unit in the Paper Deck Unit.**

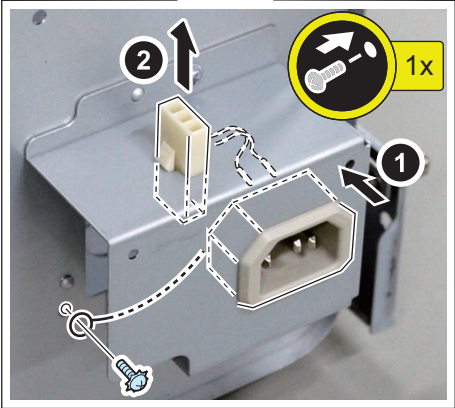
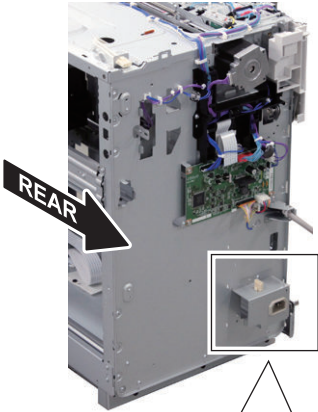
- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)

**11. Insert the connector of the Heater Unit to the panel mount part.**



12. Insert the AC input connector and then fix the ground cable.

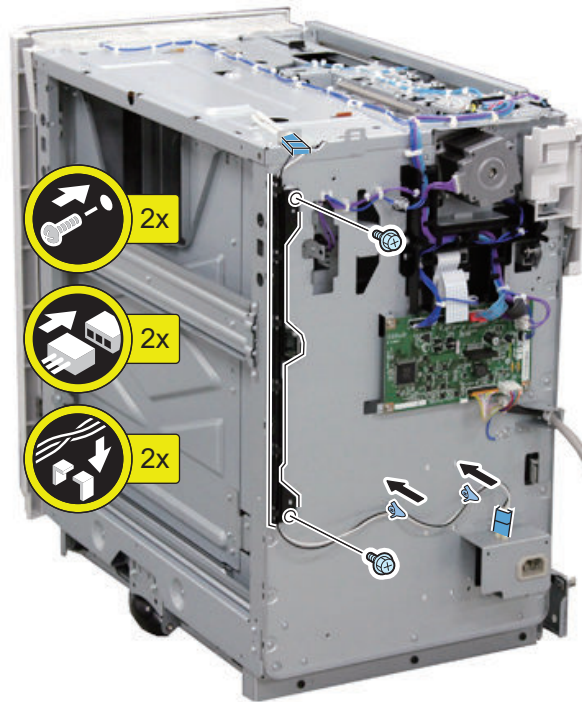
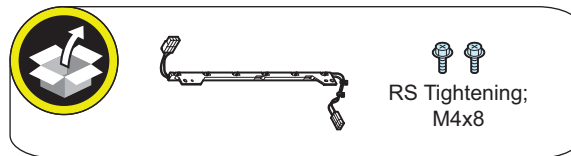
- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)





13. Install the relay harness unit on the rear side panel of the Paper Deck Unit.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)
- 2 Connectors
- 2 Snap Fit

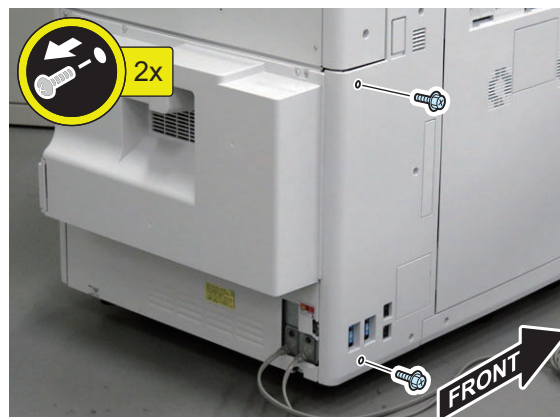


14. Re-attach the external covers.

■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the 2 screws of the left lower cover.

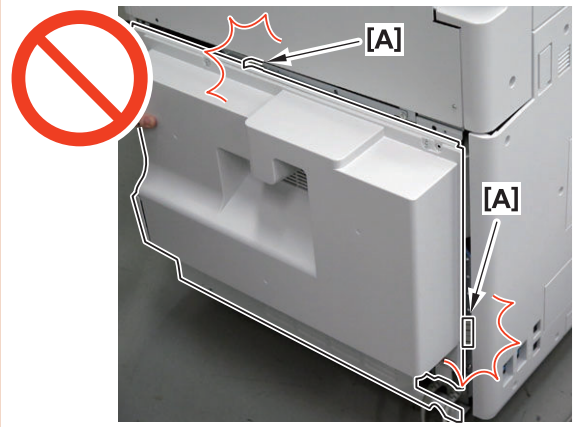


□

2. Hold and remove the rear lower cover unit.

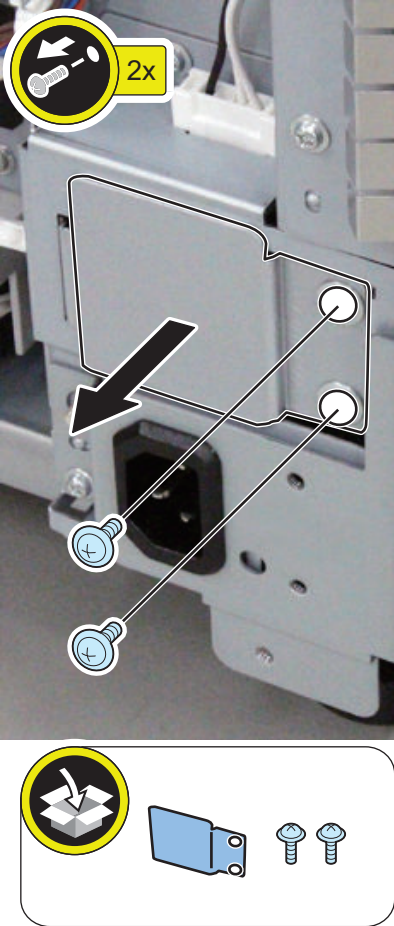
- 4 Screws

CAUTION:
When disassembling, do not deform the grounding plate.

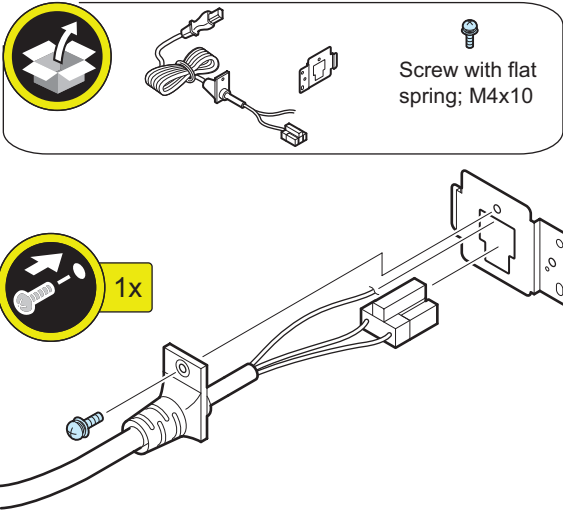




- 3. Remove the blindfold plate.
 - 2 Screws



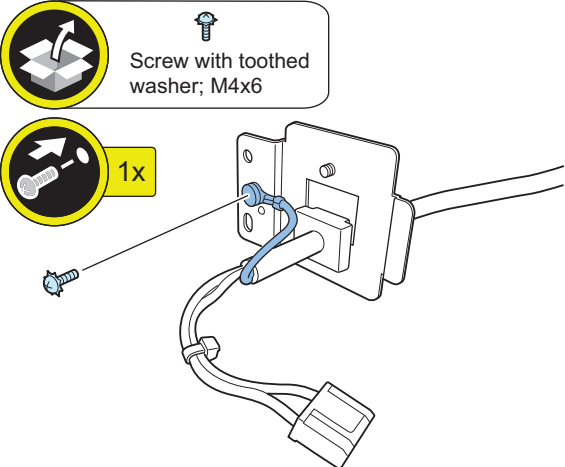
- 4. Insert the AC cord into the hole of the cord mount and fix it.
 - 1 Screw (Flat spring; M4x10)





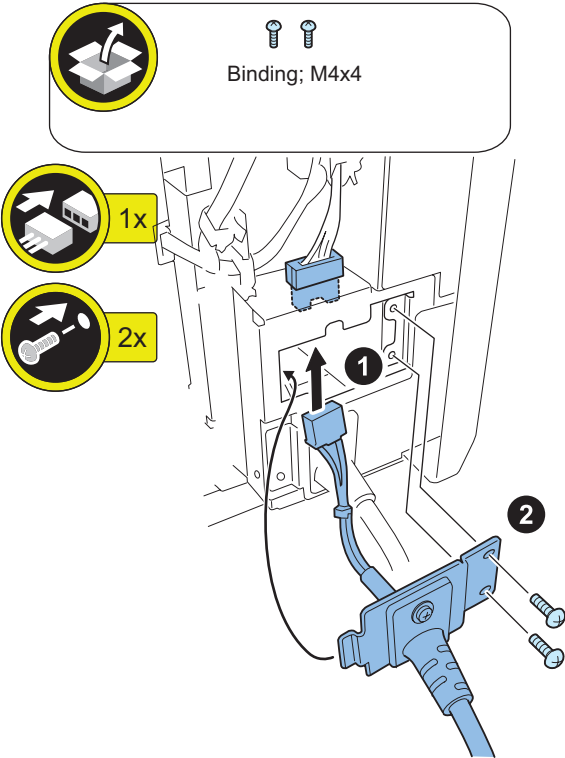
5. Fix the ground cable to the cord mount.

- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)



6. Connect the AC cable to the host machine and then fix it.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x4)



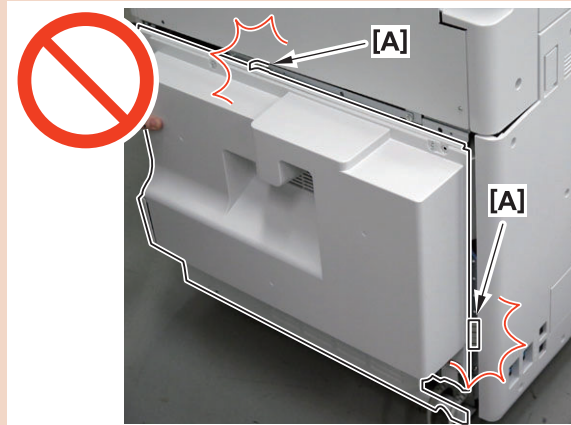


7. Attach the noise reduction cover and the lower rear cover.

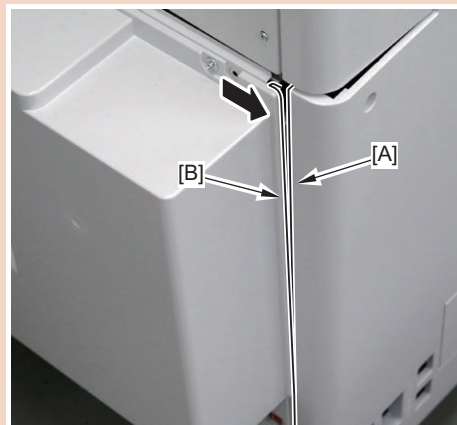
- 4 Screws

CAUTION:

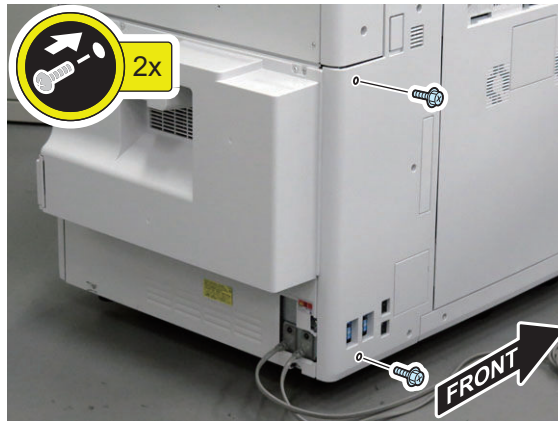
- When assembling, do not deform the grounding plate.



- When assembling, be sure to insert the edge [A] of the left lower cover in the groove [B] of the rear lower cover Unit.



8. Attach the 2 screws of the left lower cover.



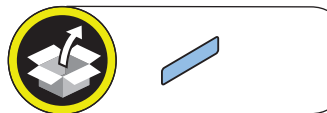
■ Connection with the Host Machine



1. Close the compartment and then connect the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine.



2. Paste the power supply label on the above the AC input connector.



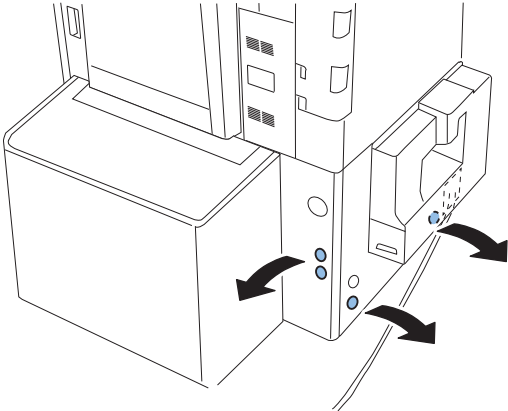
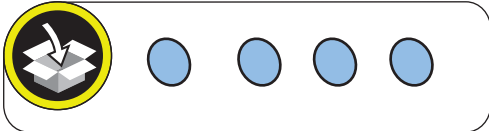
□

3. Connect the AC cable to the Paper Deck Unit.



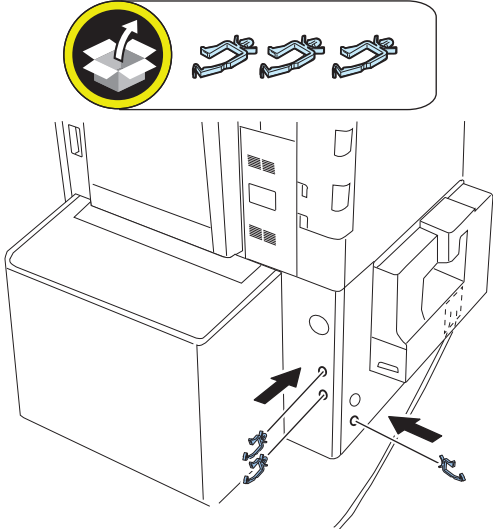
□

4. Remove the 4 blindfold seals.

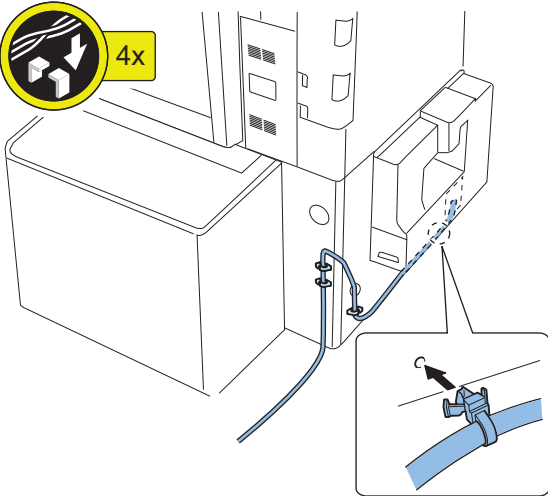




- 5. Attach the wire saddle.**
 - 3 Wire Saddles



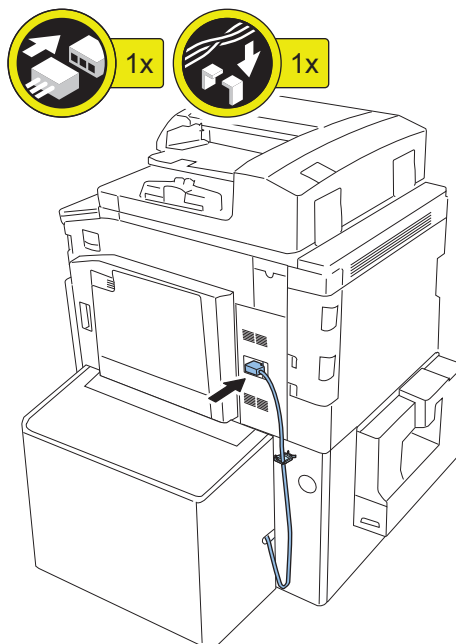
- 6. Fix the cable with the wire saddles and the snap fit.**
 - 3 Wire Saddles
 - 1 Snap Fit





7. Connect the lattice connector of the Paper Deck to the host machine and then fix the cable with the wire saddle.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Wire Saddle



8. Turn ON the host machine.

● Checking after Installation

■ Installation Procedure

1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Cable Protection Bushing	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (TP; M4x4)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Power Supply Label	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Blindfold Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Blindfold Seal	4pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Blindfold Plate	1pc.

POD Deck Lite-C1

Checking before Installation

Requirements for the installation place are shown below. It is recommended to look over the installation place before delivering the equipment to the user.

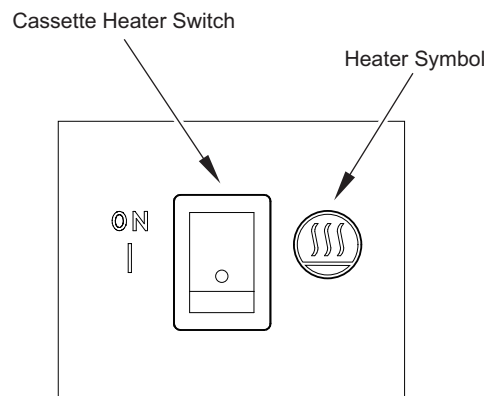
CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install the POD Deck Lite.
- Do not carry the POD Deck Lite with the host machine installed for breakage prevention.

Points to Note on Installation

Exercise following caution for installation.

1. POD Deck Lite weighs maximum 67 kg. When holding the POD Deck Lite at the installation, be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country. In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.
2. When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
3. The cassette heater switch is indicated by the heater symbol.



Checking the Power Supply

1. Check that this equipment is connectable to the outlet independently which supplies the rated voltage within +10/-15% at the specified ampere or higher.
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this equipment near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281020

Unpacking

Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

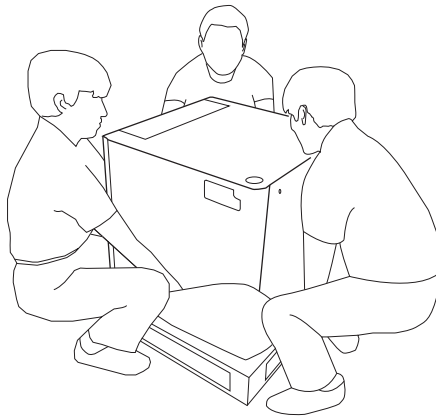
POD Deck Lite is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials following the unpacking procedure.



1. Open the box and remove the accessory box and cushioning materials.

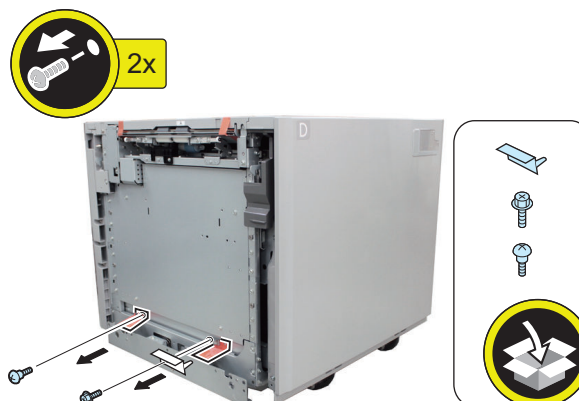


2. Open the plastic packing bag. Remove the POD Deck Lite from the pallet.



3. Remove the fixing plate and 2 tags (the removed tags, fixing plate and screws are not used).

- 2 Screws


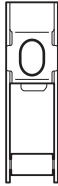

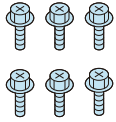
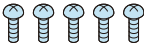
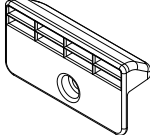

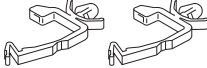


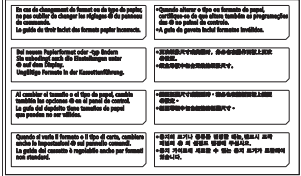
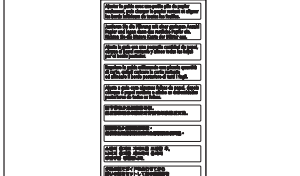
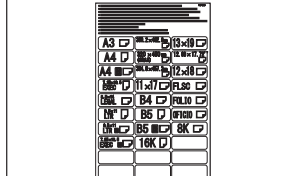
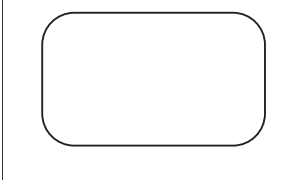
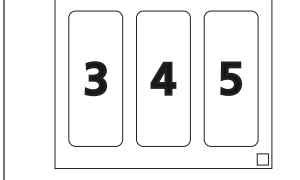
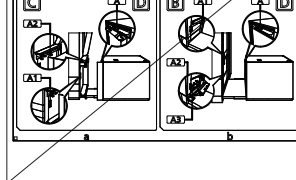
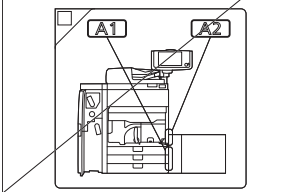

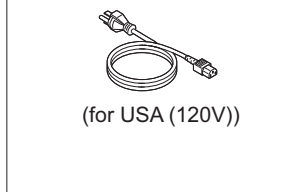
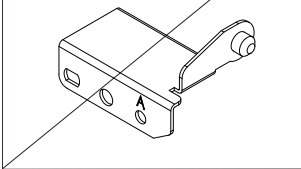
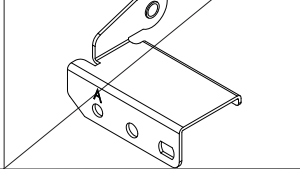
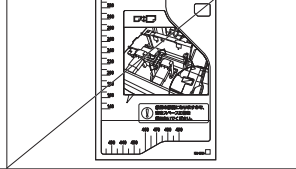
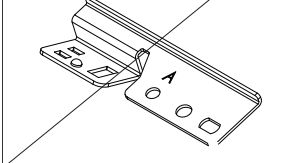
4. Remove all packaging tapes.

Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.

■ Contents

<p>□ [1] POD Deck Lite x1</p> 	<p>□ [2] Latch Plate x2</p>  <p>□ [4] Screw (P Tightening;M3x8) x1</p> 	
<p>□ [5] Screw (RS Tightening;M4x8) x6</p> 	<p>□ [6] Screw (Binding;M4x5) x5</p> <p>Use 3 of them</p> 	<p>□ [7] Door Stopper x1</p> 
<p>□ [8] Slope Guide x1</p> 	<p>□ [9] Wire Saddle x2</p> <p>Use 1 of them</p> 	

<p>□ [9] Foreign Language Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [10] Paper Size Overlay Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [11] Paper Size Label x1</p> 
<p>□ [12] Paper Size Plate x1</p> 	<p>□ [13] Cassette No. Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [14] Total Map Label x1</p> 
<p>□ [15] JAM Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [16] *1 Power Cord x3</p>  <p>(for Europe/Asia/Australia/Latin America (230V))</p>	<p>□ [17] *1 Power Cord x1</p>  <p>(for USA (120V))</p>
<p>□ [18] Feed Lower Guide Front Fixing Plate x1</p> 	<p>□ [19] Feed Lower Guide Rear Fixing Plate x1</p> 	<p>□ [20] Paper Size Sub label x1</p> 
<p>□ [21] Extraction Sensor Plate x1</p> 		

*1 : Use the appropriate power cord by location. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

NOTE:

Keep the removed fixing materials as they are used to transport for relocation.

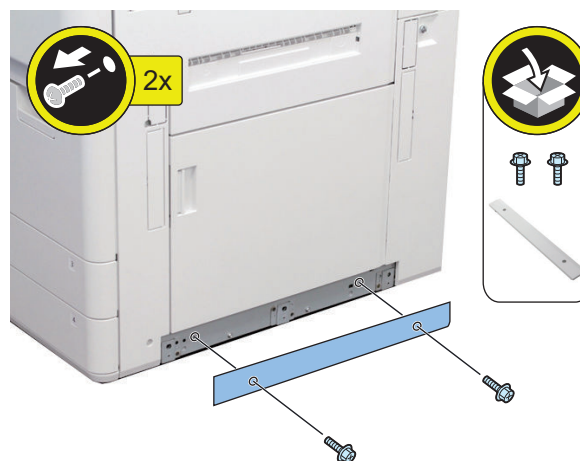
■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the feed cover.

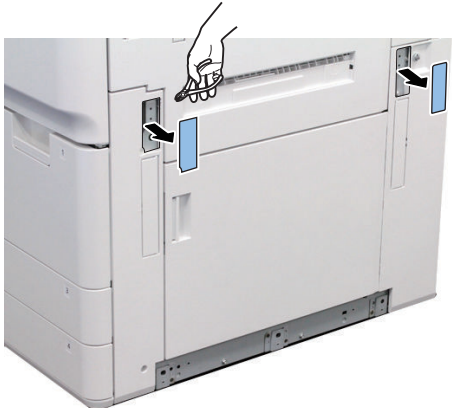


2. Remove the lower right cover.
 - 2 Screws





3. Cut the blindfold covers (front /rear) with a side cutter.

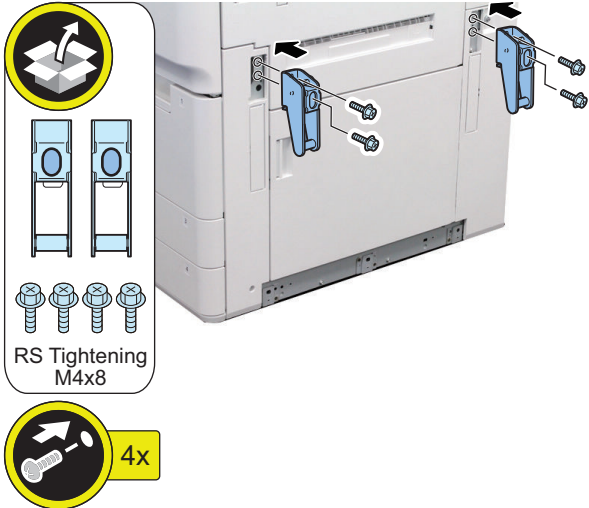
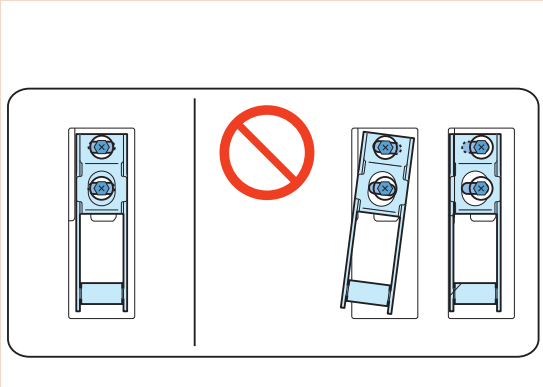


CAUTION:
Be sure to remove the face cover properly so that no burr is formed.



4. Attach the 2 latch plates to the host machine.
• 4 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)

CAUTION:
Attach the 2 latch plates in the center of the hole.





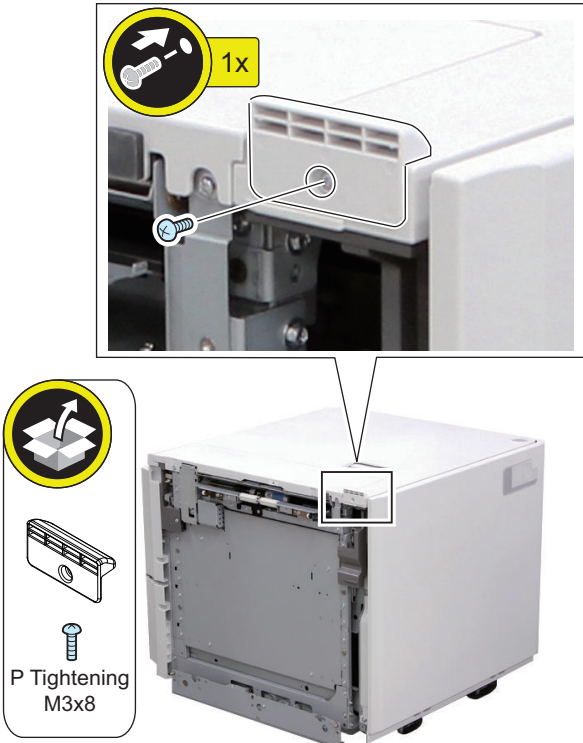
5. Remove the connector cover from rear of the host machine.



■ Preparation of the POD Deck Lite



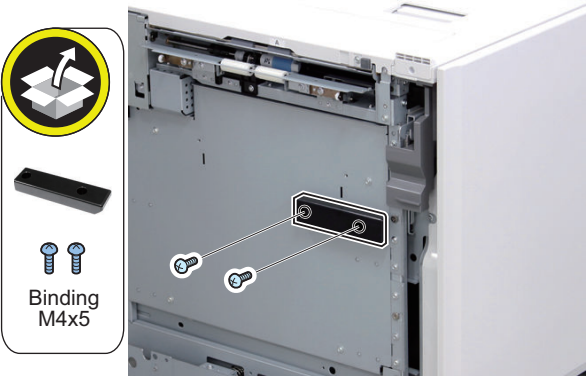
- 1. Attach the door stopper.
 - 1 Screw (P tightening screw; M3x8)



□

2. Attach the slope guide.

- 2 Screws (Binding screws; M4x5)



□

3. Remove the screw and spacer from the base stay unit. Push the POD Deck Lite until it stops while holding the base stay unit .

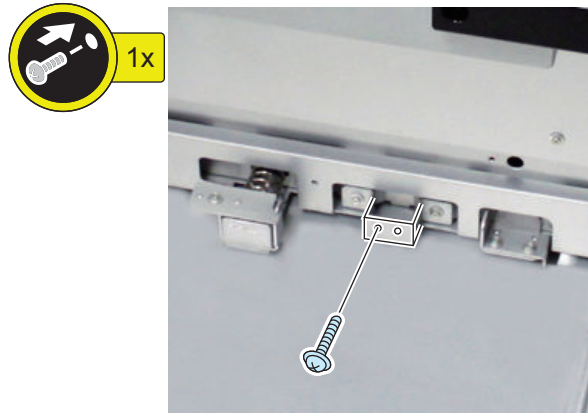




4. Fix the removed screw at procedure 3 to the original position.

NOTE:

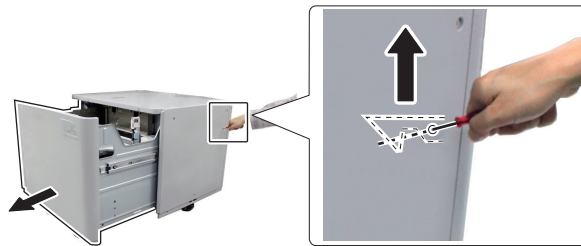
The screw is used to fix the base stay unit when the POD Deck Lite is transported.



■ Connection with the Host Machine



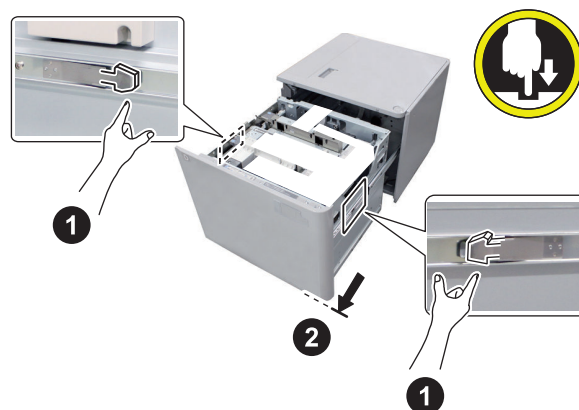
1. Insert screwdrivers into the hole of the rear right side and then release the lever to open the compartment.



2. Open the compartment until it stops while releasing stoppers with pressing left and right latches.

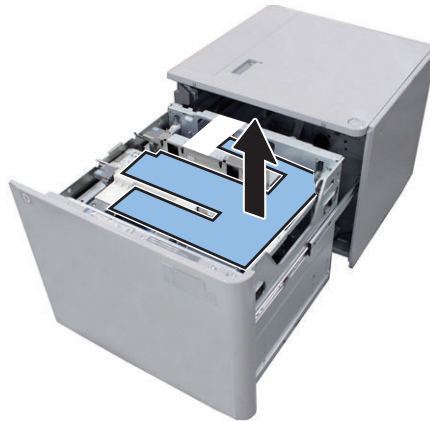
⚠ CAUTION:

Be careful not to get your fingers caught.



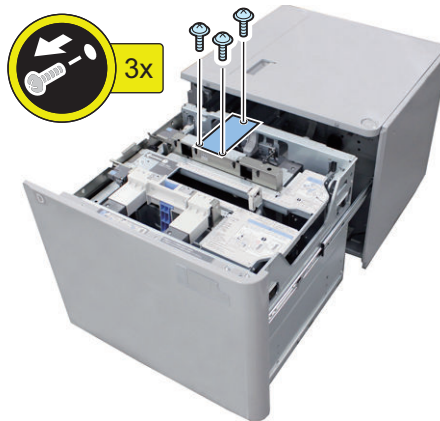


3. Remove the sheet and tapes from the compartment.



4. Remove the stay guide. Removed 1 screw and the stay guide are used at procedure 25.

- 3 Screws



NOTE:

The removed screw is used to fix the stay guide plate when the POD Deck Lite is transported.



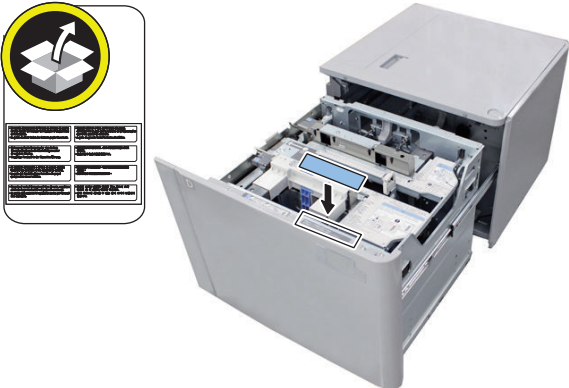
5. Fix the 2 screws removed at procedure 4 to the original position.

- 2 Screws (TP screws; M3x6)

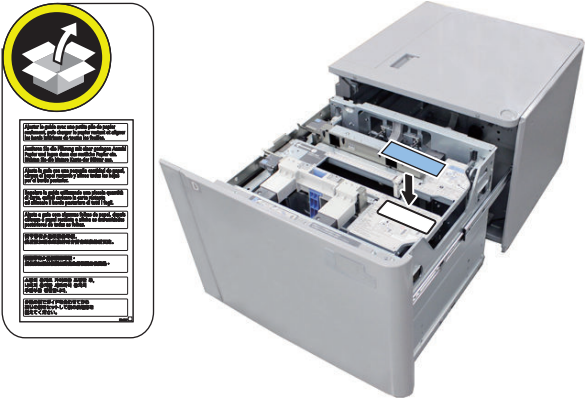




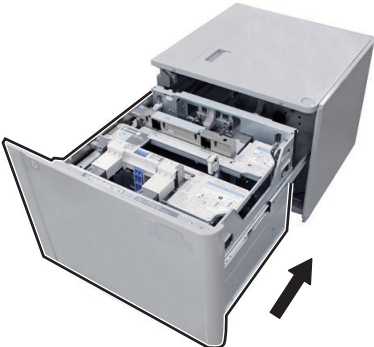
6. Affix the foreign language label by language over the original label as shown in the figure.



7. Affix the paper size overlay label over the original label by language as shown in the figure.



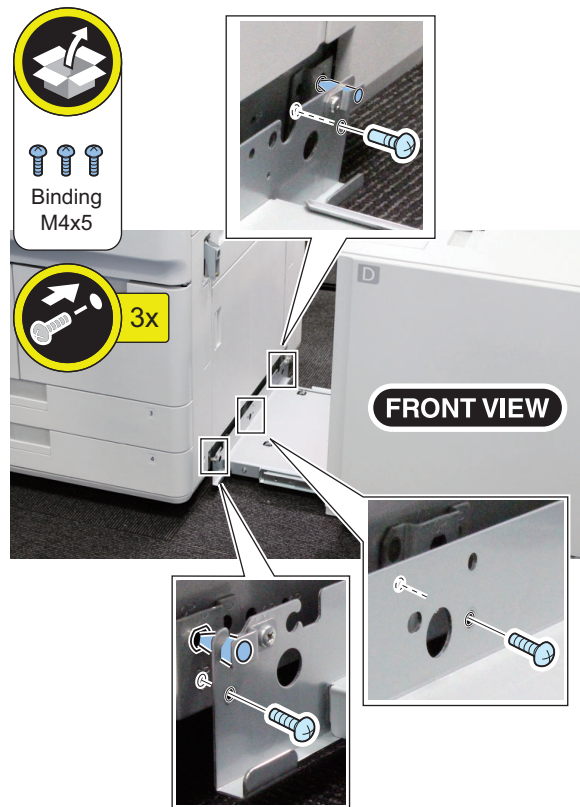
8. Close the compartment.





9. Insert the 2 positioning pins to the holes of the host machine and then fix the base stay.

- 3 Screws (Binding screws; M4x5)

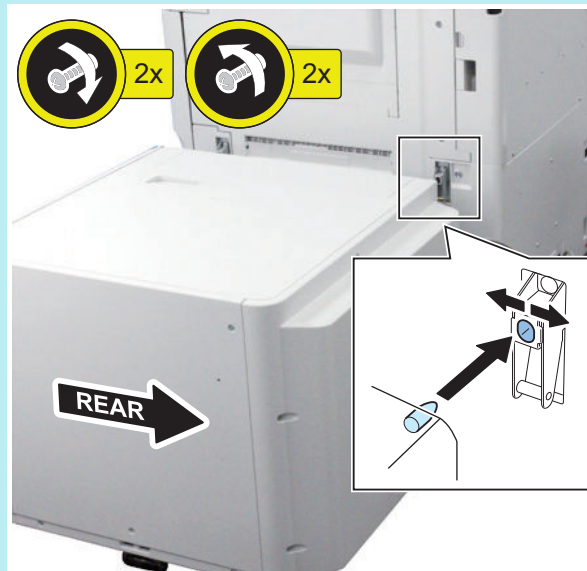


**10. Connect the POD Deck Lite with the host machine.****NOTE:**

- Do not nip the cable between the POD Deck Lite and the host machine when connecting.

NOTE:

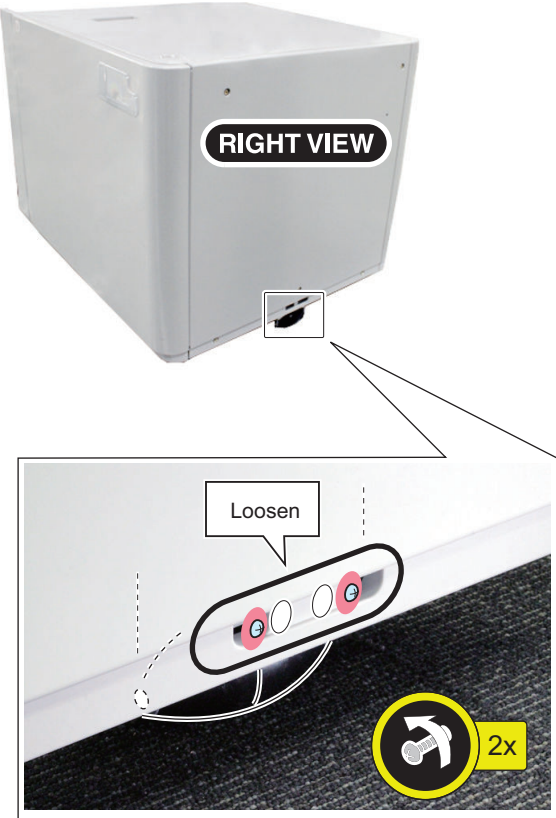
- When inserting the rear connection pin into the rear latch hole is difficult, loosen the 2 screws fixing the latch plate and then adjust the position of the latch plate to fit it in. Check that the latch plate is not positioned at an angle when installing.





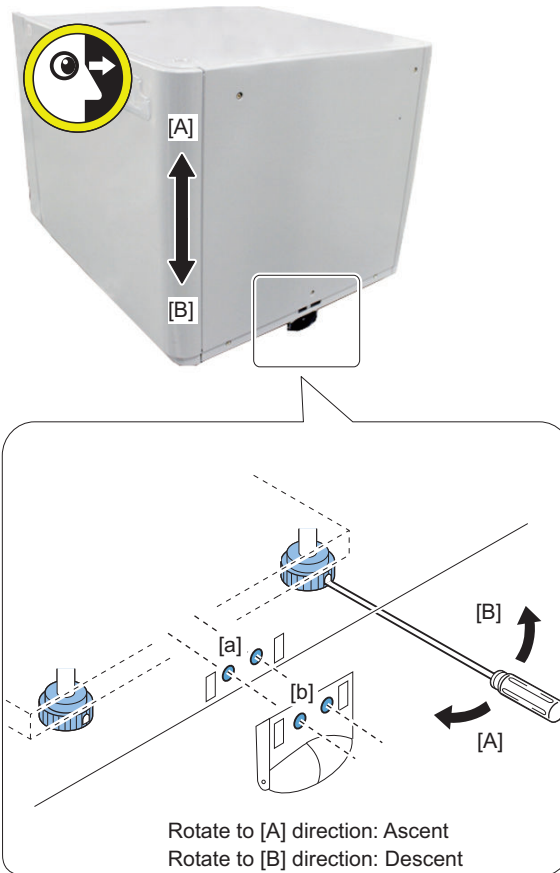
11. Loosen the 2 screws on the bottom right side wheel.

- 2 Screws



**12. Match position(a) with position(b) by adjusting the height of the POD Deck Lite with the 2 adjusters.**

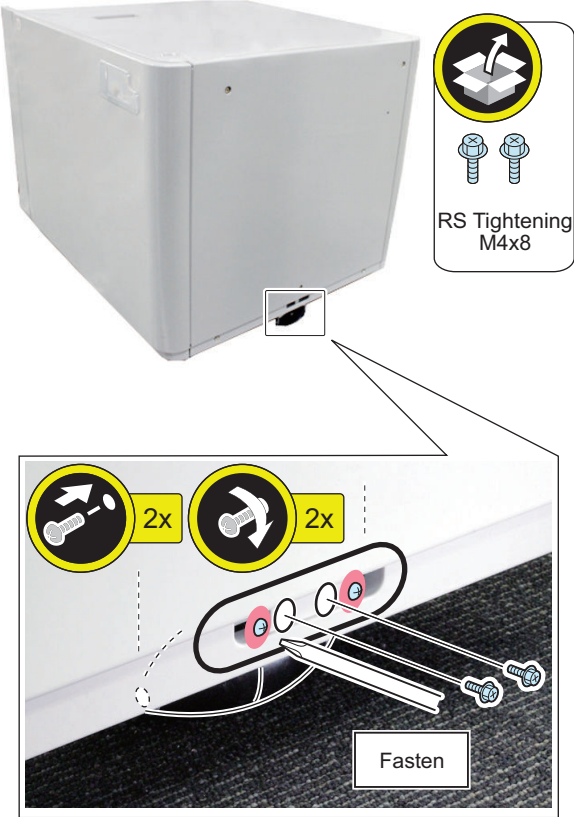
- Position (a) : 2 fixing screw tapped holes (middle) of the POD Deck Lite.
- Position (b) : 2 fixing screw tapped holes (middle) of the bottom right side wheel.





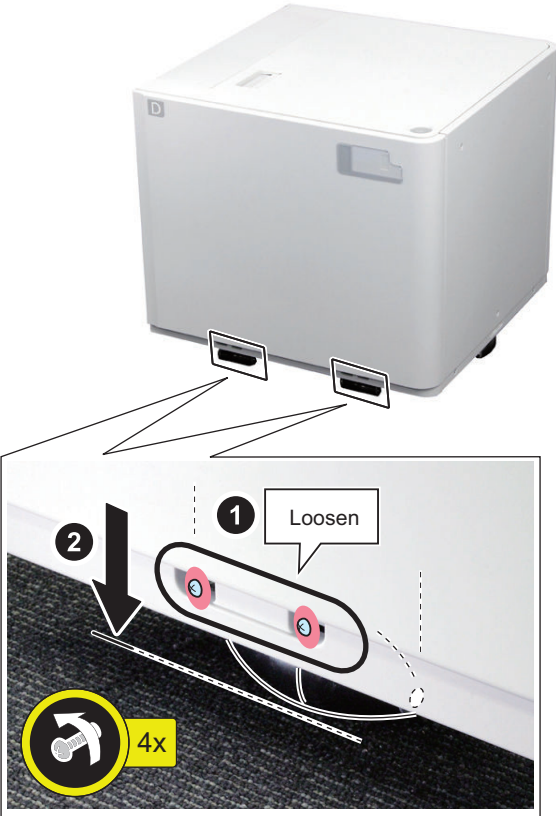
13. Fix the bottom right side wheel with Screw A and Screw B.

- Screw A: Supplied 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)
- Screw B: 2 screws loosened at procedure 12



14. Loosen the 2 screws on the 2 front bottom wheels for each and touch them to the floor.

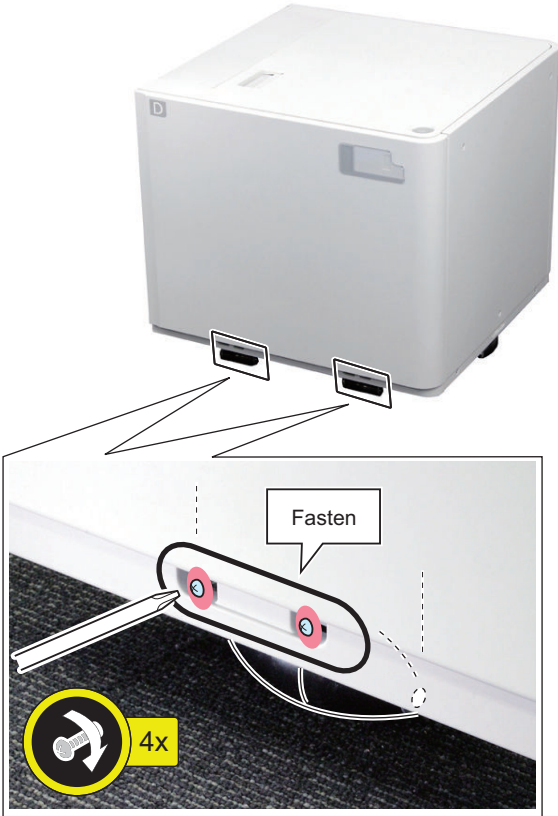
- 4 Screws





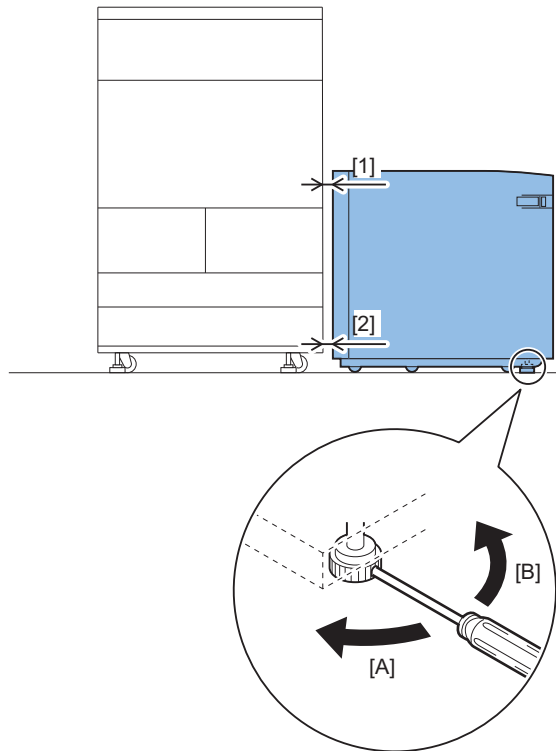
15. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 15.

- 4 Screws



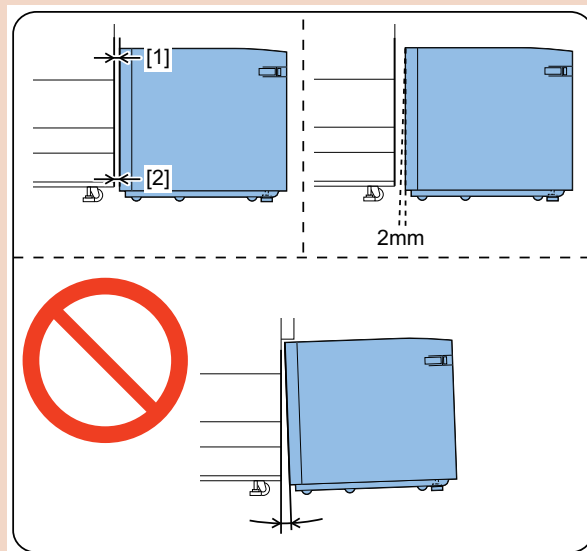
16. Adjust tilt with the 2 adjusters until a top gap [1] and a bottom gap [2] between the POD Deck Lite and the host machine are same width.

- Rotate to [A] direction: Ascent
- Rotate to [B] direction: Descent



CAUTION:

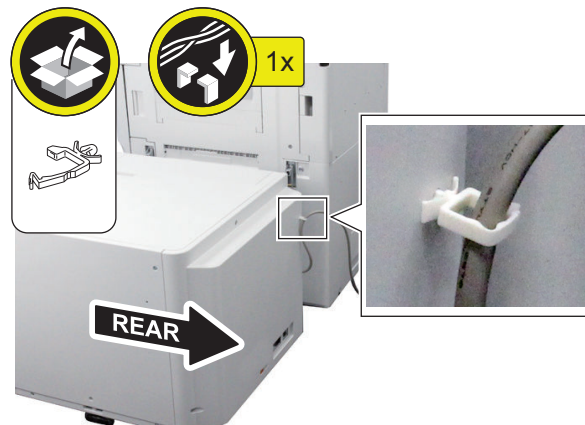
- In case that the gap between the top [1] and the bottom [2] is not in parallel, connection may not be detected.
- Allowance gap range is that the bottom [2] is 2mm shorter than the top [1].
- When relocating the POD Deck Lite, re-adjust the gap in parallel.





17. Attach the wire saddle to the hole on rear side of the POD Deck Lite and then clamp the cable with it.

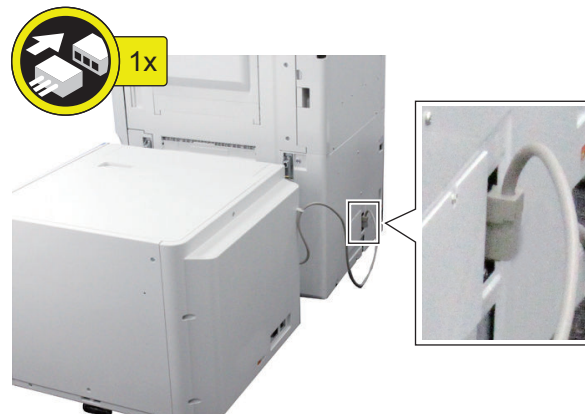
- 1 Wire saddle



18. Connect the Interface Cable with the host machine.

⚠ CAUTION:

When connecting the Interface Cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet. If you do not do so, electric shock can result.



□

19. Connect the power cord to the inlet of the POD Deck Lite and then plug it to the external source.

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the power cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is incomplete, smoke or fire may occur.



□

20. Check that the circuit breaker is ON.



21. If the cassette heater is installed, turn ON the cassette heater in high humidity or low temperature environment.



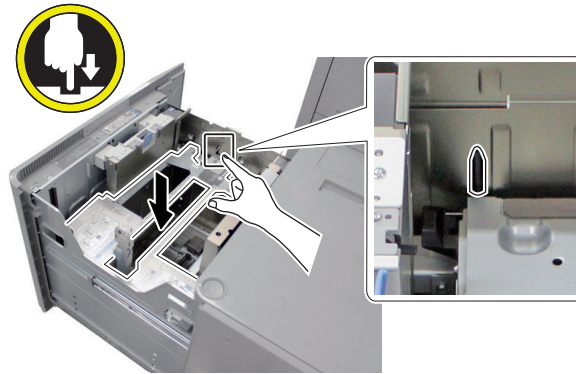
22. Turn ON the main power on the host machine.

23. Press the open button of the POD Deck Lite to open the compartment.



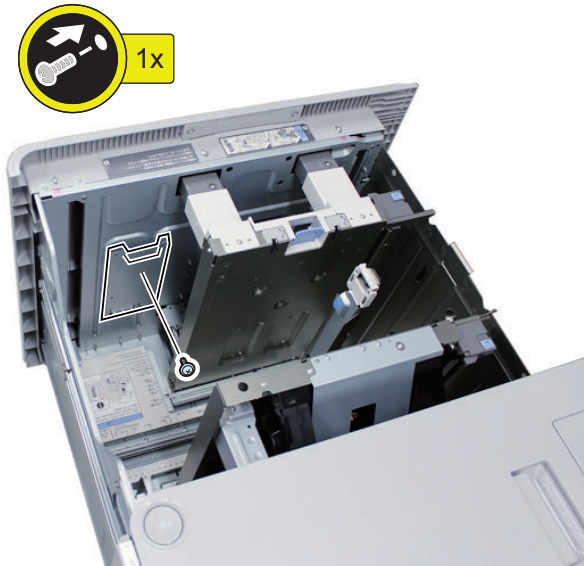


24. Press the relay paper sensor until the lifter reaches to the bottom position.



25. Fix the stay guide inside of the front frame with the screw removed at procedure 4.

- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)



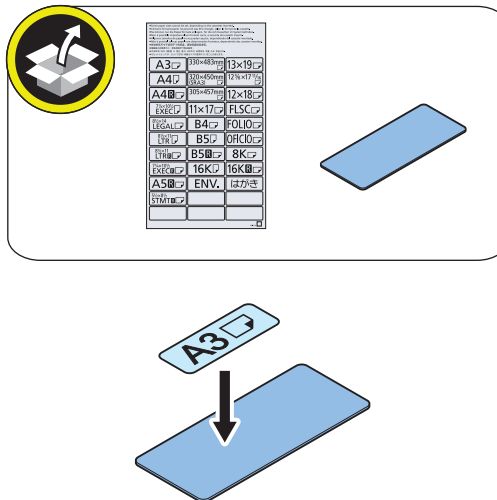
26. Set sheets of paper in the compartment and close it.



27. Affix the cassette No. label "5" .



28. Affix the paper size label on the size plate.



NOTE:

- Be sure to check with the user whether or not to affix the Paper Size Label, and then affix it.
- Keep the Paper Size Labels as they will be used when changing the paper size.



29. Insert the size plate prepared at procedure 29 to the media plate holder.



Disposal Parts

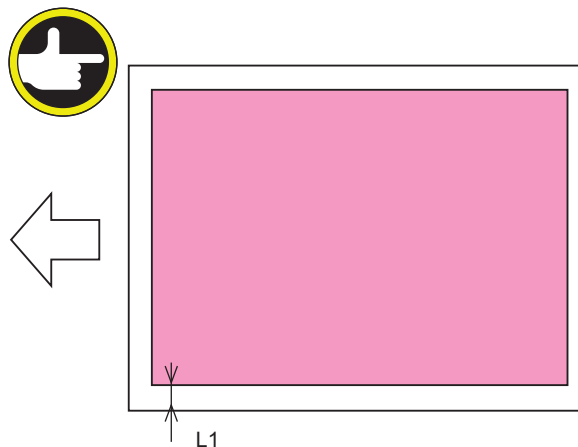
1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Screw (RS Tightening;M4x8) 3pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x8) 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Feed Cover 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Lower Right Cover 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Connector Cover 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Blindfold Cover 2pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[7]	Total Map Label 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[8]	Foreign Language Label 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[9]	Cassette No. Label 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[10]	Papaer Size Sub Label 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[11]	JAM Label 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[12]	Spacer 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[13]	Extraction Sensor Plate 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[14]	Feed Lower Guide Front Fixing Plate 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[15]	Feed Lower Guide Rear Fixing Plate 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[16]	Wire Saddle 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[17]	Fixing Plate 1pc

Paper Positioning Check/Adjustment Procedure

■ Adjusting the Left Edge Margin(L1) of the Image

1. Print sheets of paper from the POD Deck Lite. Check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm. Execute adjustment as follows when it is out of standard.



■ Adjustment Procedure(service mode)

1. Adjust the setting value on the following service mode.
(LV1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-DK

NOTE:

Setting range: -20 to 20 (0.1mm by 1 setting value)

L1 is increased 0.1mm by setting value 1.

+: L1 is increased (Image moves to the right).

-: L1 is decreased (Image moves to the left).

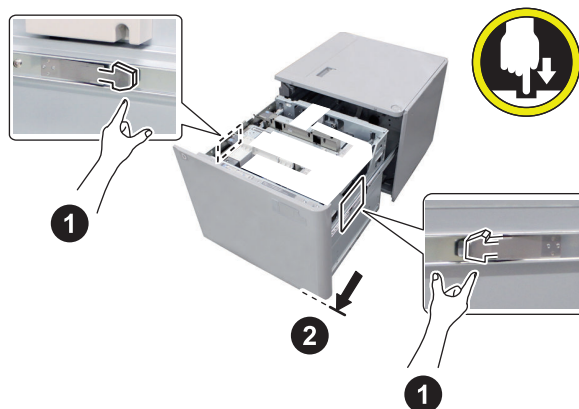
-
- 2. Exit service mode.
-
- 3. Print sheets of paper from POD Deck Lite and then check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm. Execute manual adjustment as follows when it is out of standard.

■ Adjustment Procedure (manual)

-
- 1. Press the open button of the POD Deck Lite to open the compartment.



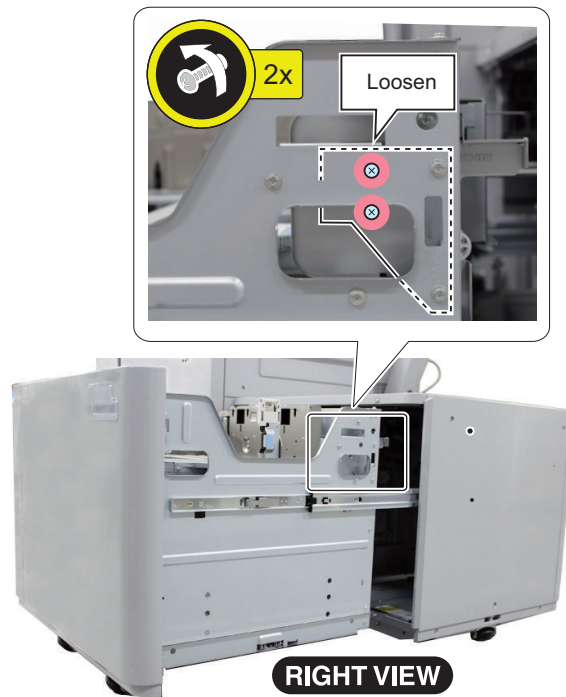
-
- 2. Open the compartment until it stops while releasing stoppers with pressing left and right latches.





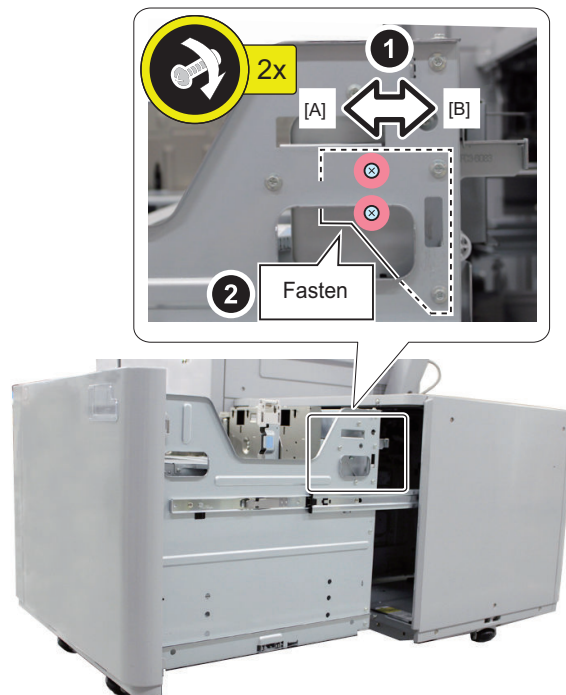
3. Loosen the 2 screws at the latch plate on the right side of the compartment.

- 2 Screws



4. Move the latch plate toward front [A] or rear [B] (1 scale = 1mm) and then fasten the 2 screws. The adjusted value is used at procedure 6.

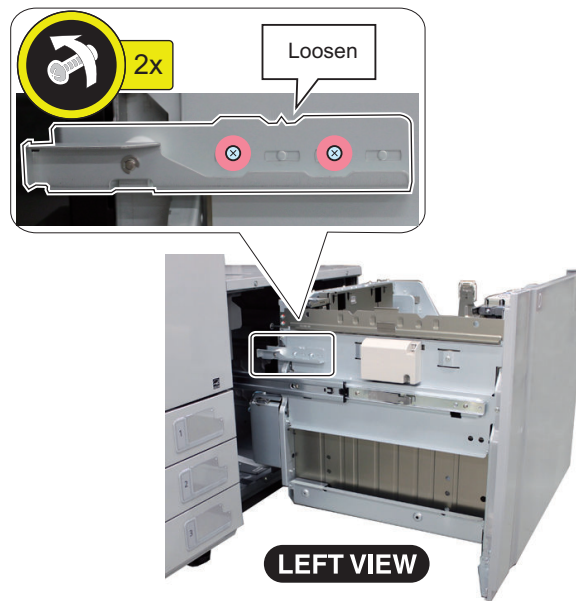
- When L1 is large, move the latch plate to front [A].
- When L1 is small, move the latch plate to rear [B].



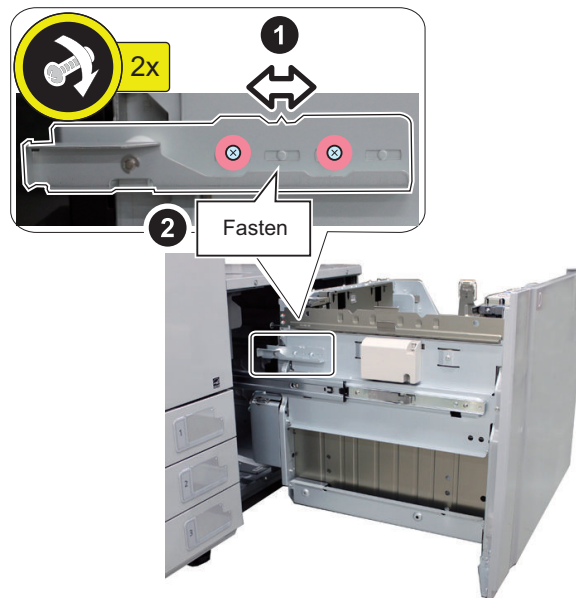


5. Loosen the 2 screws at the latch plate on the left side of the compartment.

- 2 Screws



6. Move the latch plate in the same scale position as procedure 4 and then fasten the 2 screws (1 scale = 1mm).



7. Move the front cover fitting to the amount of the latch plate adjustment. Refer to the next item "Front Cover Positioning Adjustment" for detail.



8. Close the compartment.



9. Print sheets of paper from the POD Deck Lite. Check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm. Re-adjust L1 in case that it is out of standard.

■ Front Cover Positioning Adjustment

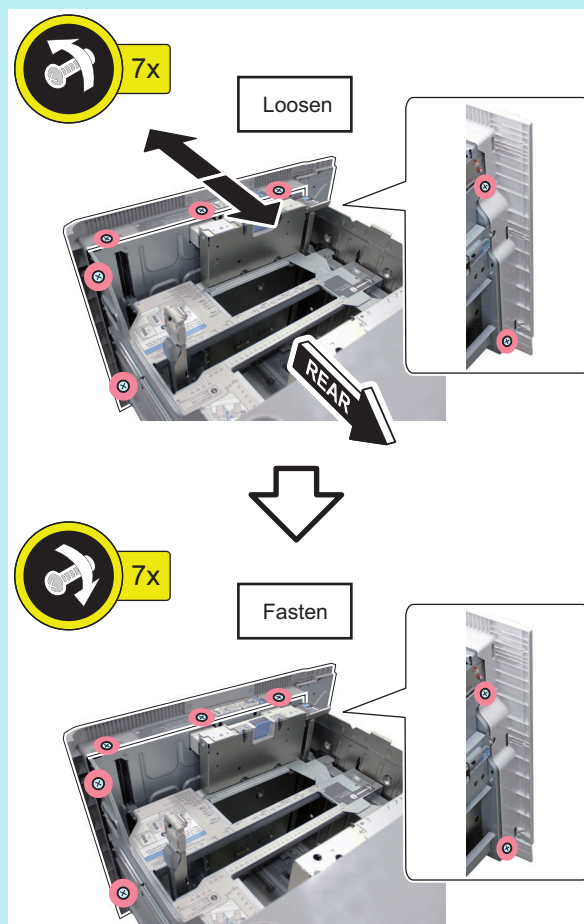


1. Check that the gap is 4 ± 1 mm between the front cover and upper cover, the front cover and right cover.



NOTE:

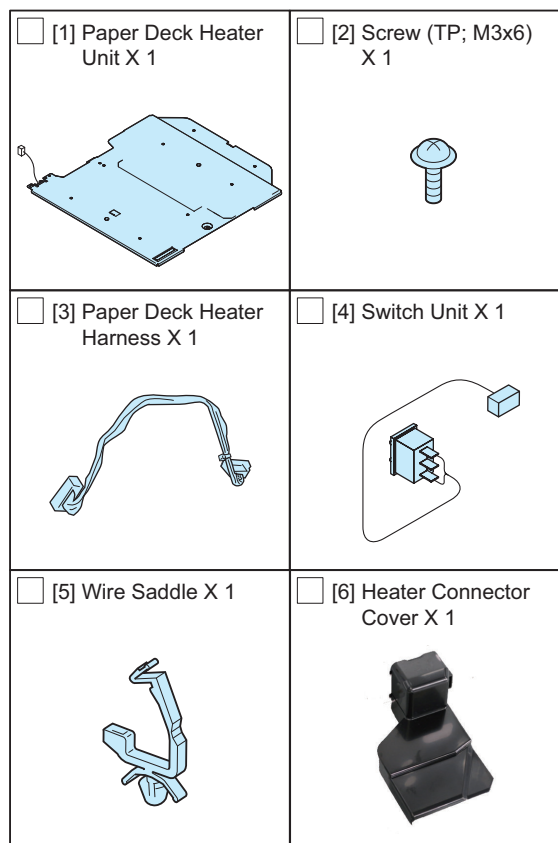
Loosen the 7 screws on the front cover to adjust the gap in 4 ± 1 mm.



Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1

Checking the Parts to be Installed

Each part of the Paper Deck Heater Unit for the Paper Deck is supplied as a service part, so prepare the following parts. Also, use the appropriate Paper Deck Heater Unit for each country.



No	Parts name	Parts Number	Q'ty
[1]	Paper Deck Heater Unit	FM1-D634	1pc
[2]	Screw (TP ; M3x6)	XB6-7300-605	1pc
[3]	Paper Deck Heater Harness (120V)	FM1-E857	1pc
	Paper Deck Heater Harness (230V)	FM1-E858	1pc
[4]	Switch Unit	FM1-E859	1pc
[5]	Wire Saddle	WT2-6108	1pc
[6]	Heater Connector Cover	FE3-5299	1pc

*Check the parts numbers on the current parts catalogue as the above parts numbers may be changed.

Removing from the Host Machine

■ Removing from the Host Machine



1. Turn OFF the main power of the host machine.



2. Remove the power cord.

□

3. Remove the cable.

- 1 Wire saddle
- 1 Connector



□

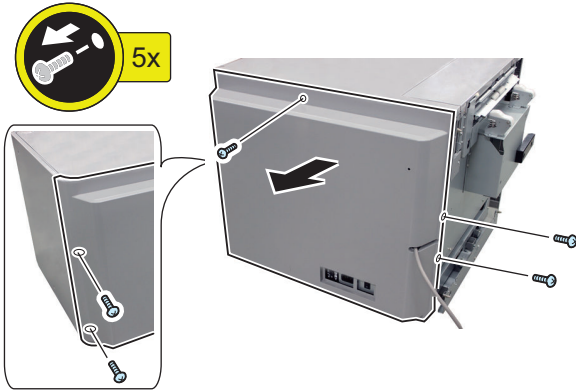
4. Slide the POD Deck Lite until it stops with holding the release lever.



Installation Procedure

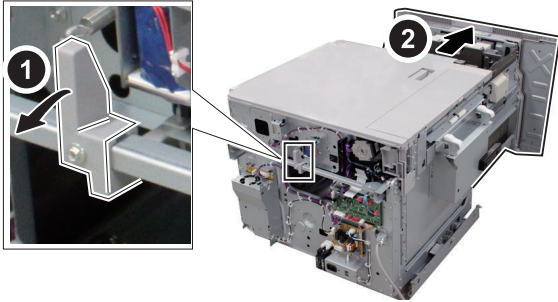
□

- 1. Remove the Rear Cover.
 - 5 Screws



□

- 2. Open the Compartment while unlocking the release lever.



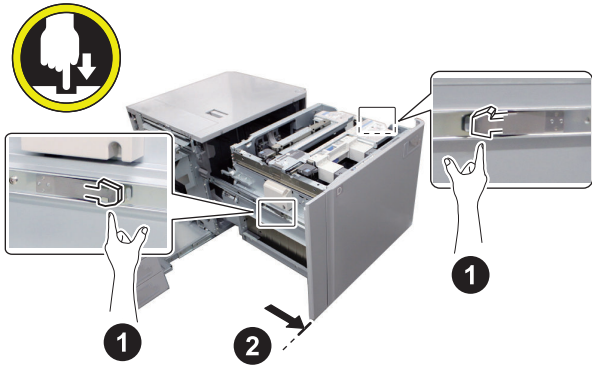
□

- 3. Remove the Right Cover.
 - 5 Screws



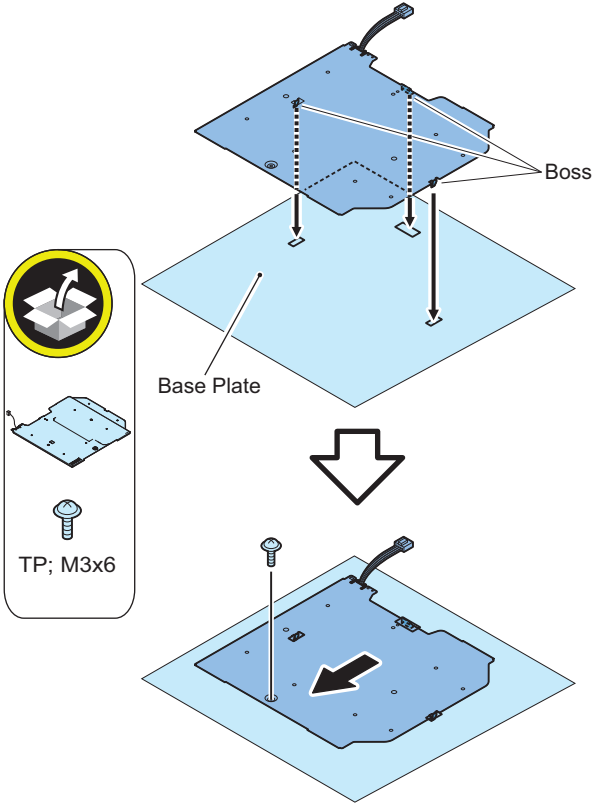


4. Open the Compartment until it stops while releasing stoppers with pressing the left and right Latches.



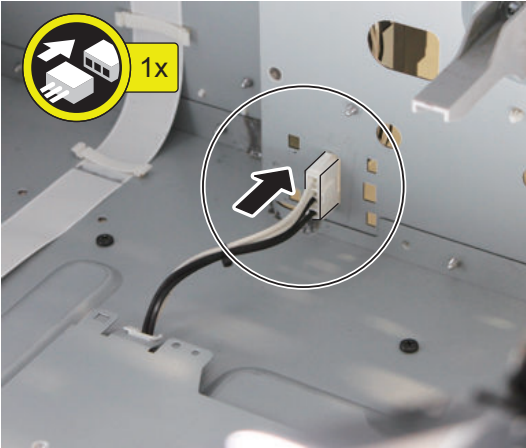
5. Install the Paper Deck Heater Unit.

- 3 Claws
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)



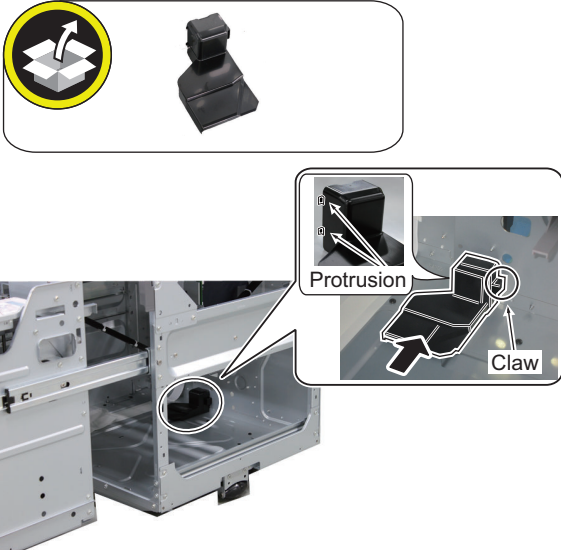


6. Connect the connector to the POD Deck Lite.



7. Install the Heater Connector Cover.

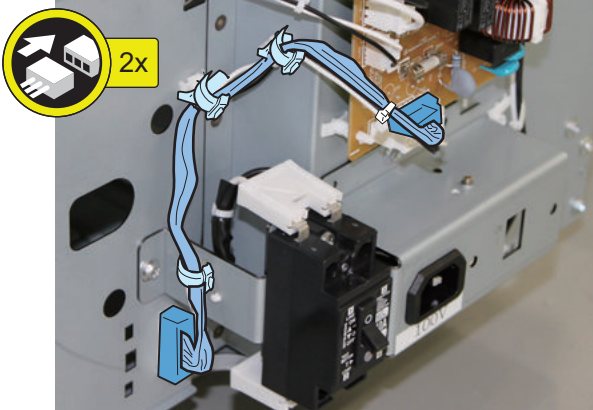
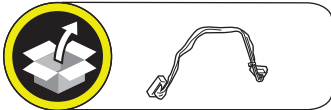
- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Claw





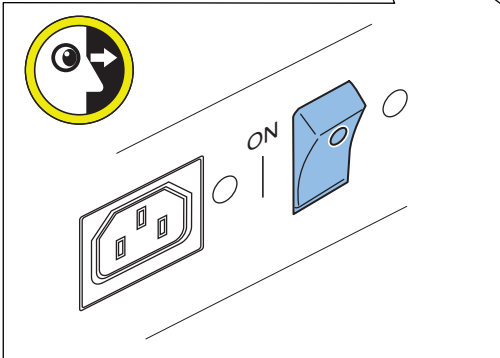
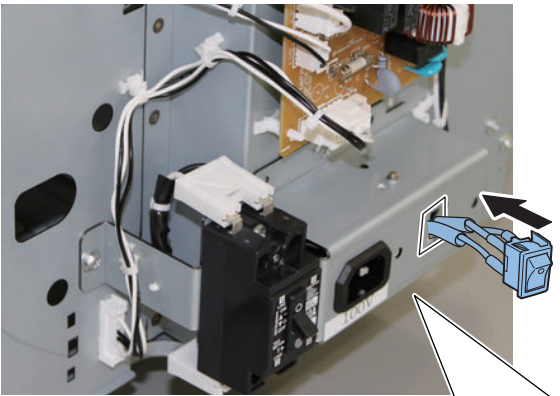
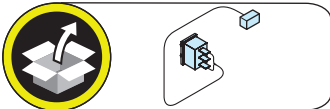
8. Install the Paper Deck Heater Harness.

- 3 Reuse bands
- 2 Connectors



9. Install the Switch Unit.

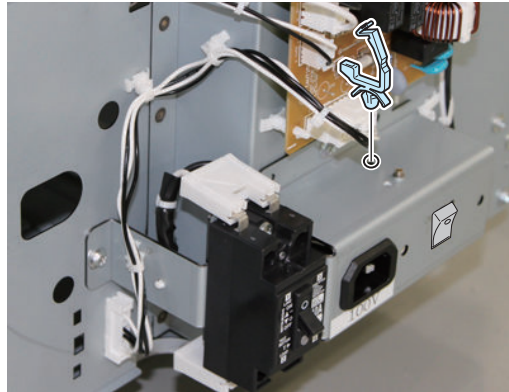
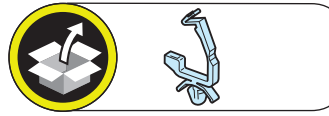
NOTE:
When installing the Switch Unit, check that the Cassette Heater Switch is OFF.





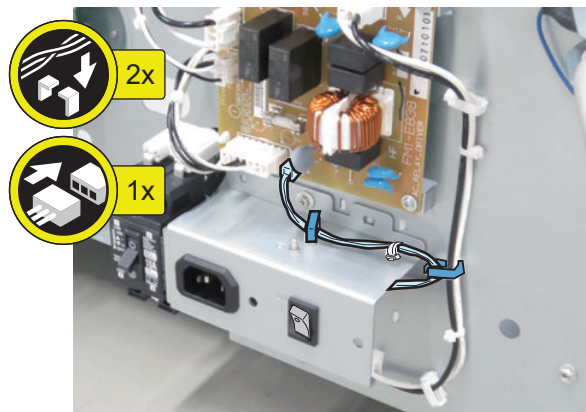
10. Attach the wire saddle.

- 1 Wire saddle



11. Fix the Switch Unit Harness as follows.

- 2 Wire saddles
- 1 Connector



12. Attach the external covers.

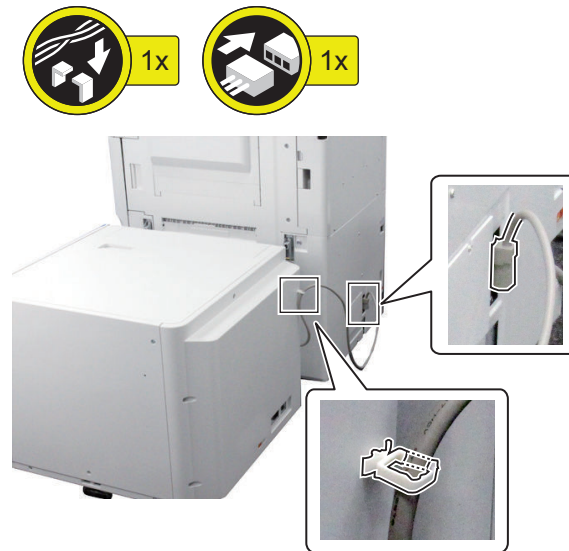


13. Connect the POD Deck Lite with the host machine.



**14. Connect the cable.**

- 1 Wire saddle
- 1 Connector

**15. Connect the power cord to the inlet of the POD Deck Lite and then plug it to the external source.****CAUTION:**

Make sure that the power cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is incomplete, smoke or fire may occur.



16. Check that the circuit breaker is ON.



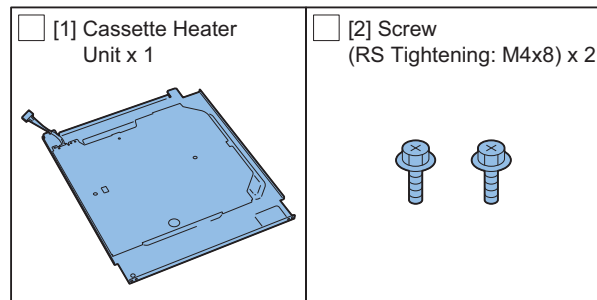
17. Turn ON the Cassette Heater Switch.



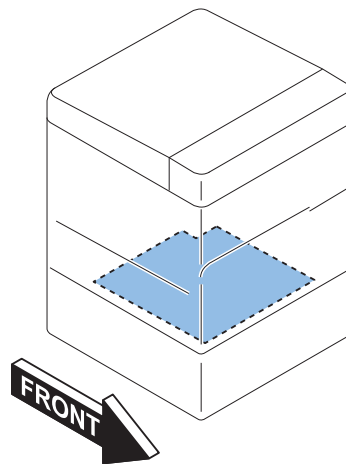
18. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.

Cassette Heater Unit-38

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing



Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

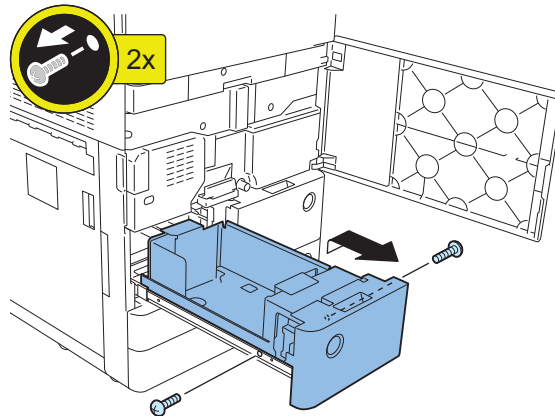
Installation Procedure

1. Open the Front Cover.

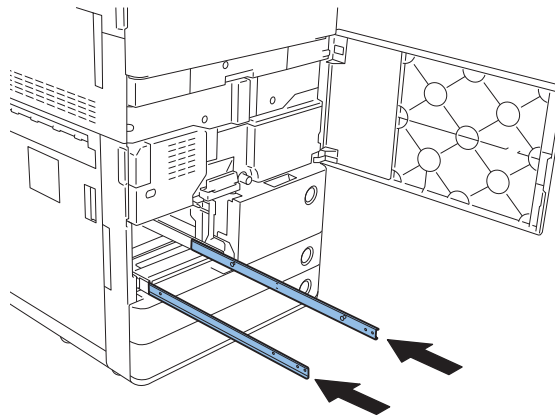


2. Pull out the Left Deck to remove.

- 2 Screws



3. Put the 2 Rails in.



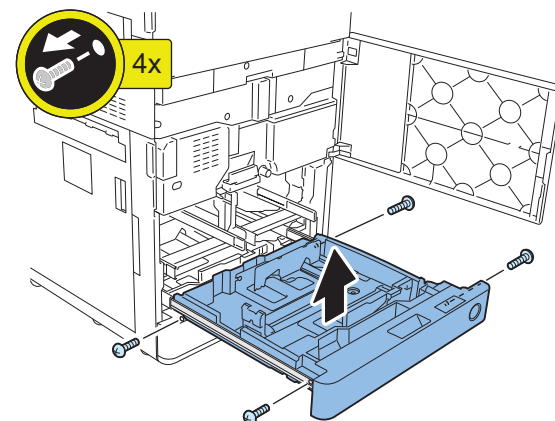
4. Pull out the Right Deck to remove the Left Deck in the same way.

5. Put the 2 Rails in.



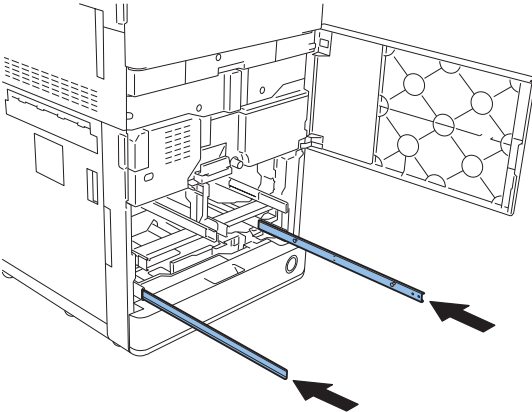
6. Pull out Cassette 3 to remove.

- 4 Screws



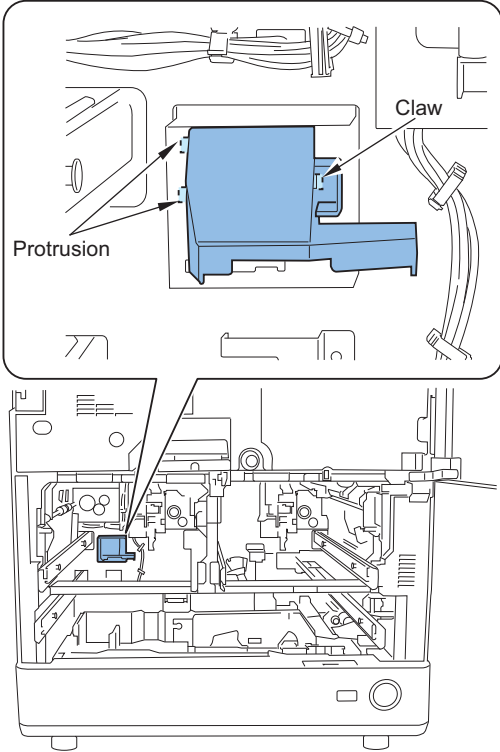


7. Put the 2 Rails in.



8. Remove the Connector Cover.

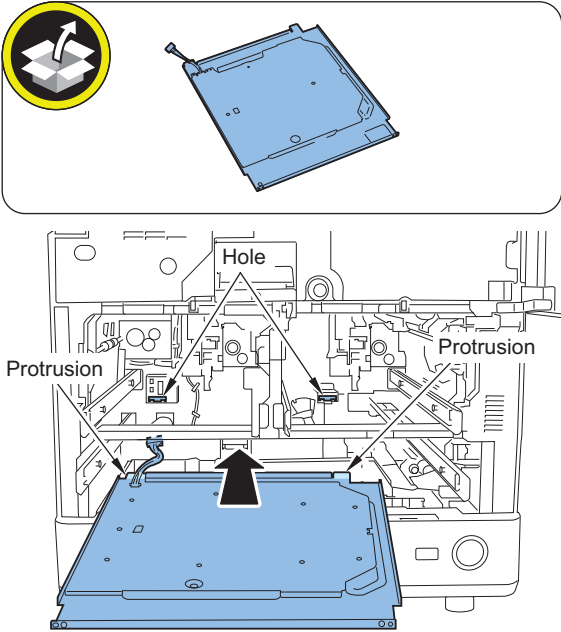
- 1 Claw
- 2 Protrusions



9. Remove tapes on the Cassette Heater Unit.

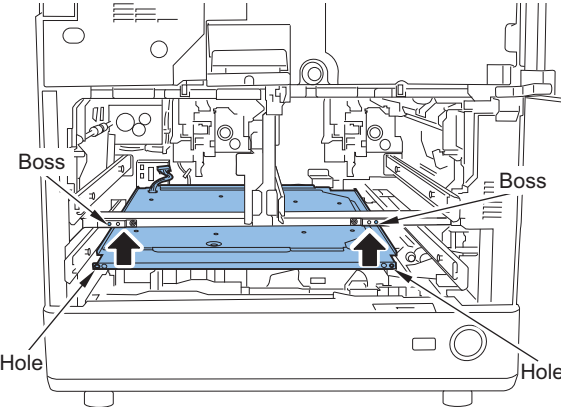


10. Fit the protrusions of the Cassette Heater Unit into the holes of the Host Machine.



11. Fit the holes of the Cassette Heater Unit with the bosses of the Host Machine.

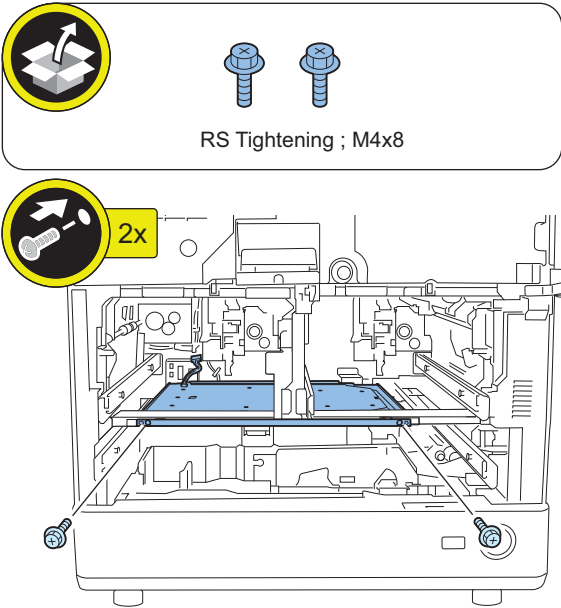
CAUTION:
When fitting the Cassette Heater Unit with the bosses, be sure to support the bottom side with your hand; otherwise, the Unit could fall if protrusions come out of the holes.



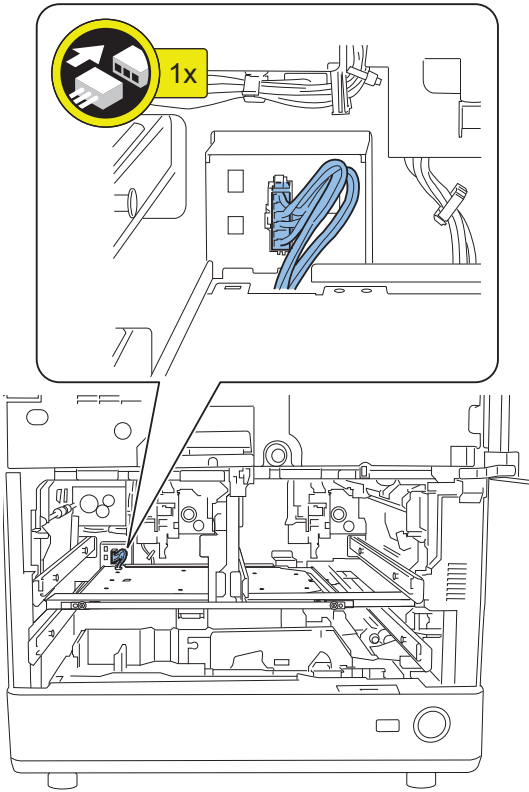


12. Install the Cassette Heater Unit.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)



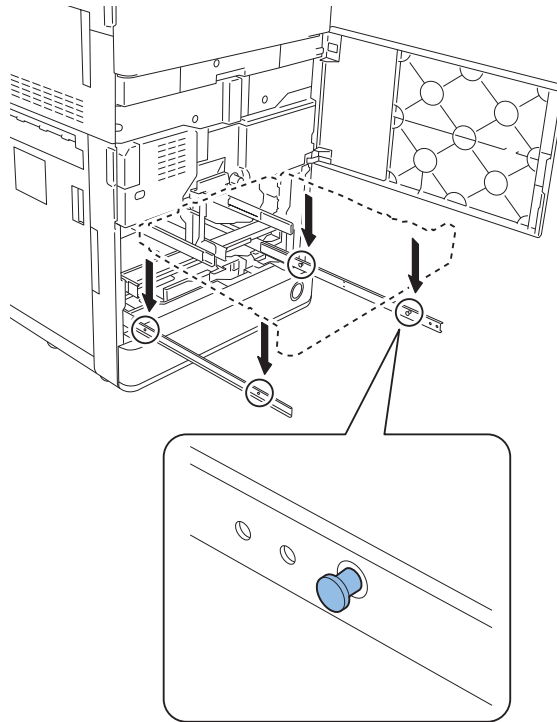
13. Install the Connector.



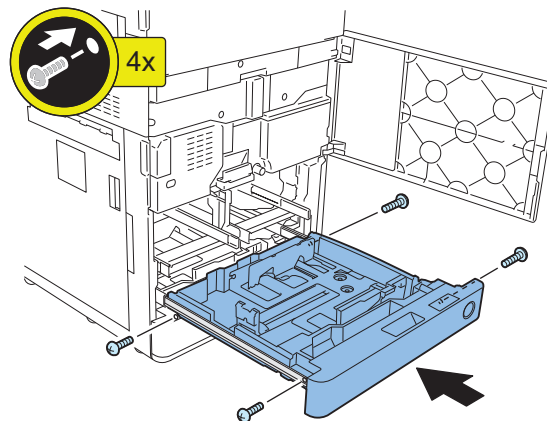
14. Install the Connector Cover.



15. Pull out the Rails at the installation area of Cassette 3. Fit the 4 pins on the Rails with the grooves of Cassette 3 to place Cassette 3 over the Rails.

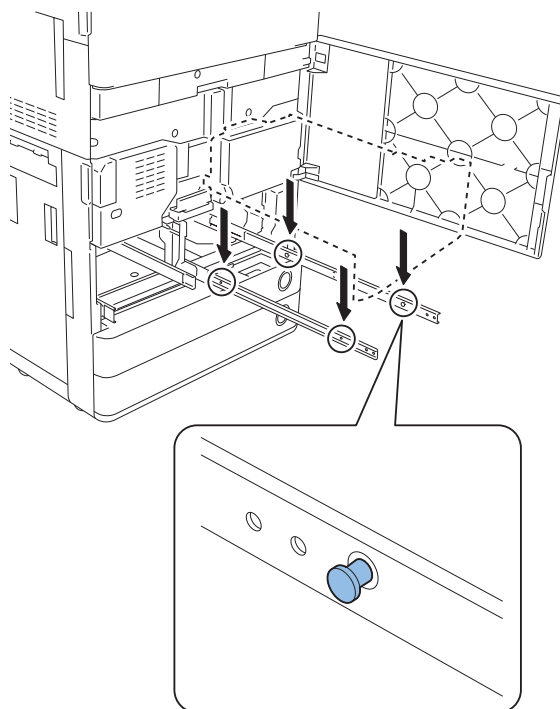


16. After having installed Cassette 3 with 4 screws, close Cassette 3.





17. Pull out the Rails at the installation area of the Right Deck. Fit the 4 pins on the Rails with the grooves of the Right Deck to place the Right Deck over the Rails.



18. After having installed Right Deck with 2 screws, close the Right Deck.
19. Install the Left Deck in the same way as the Right Deck.
20. Close the Front Cover.
21. Turn on the Environment Heater Switch.
22. Connect the power plug to the outlet.
23. Turn ON the main power switch.

6

Paper Output Options

Document Insertion Unit-N1.....	508
Paper Folding Unit-J1.....	552
Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO.....	601
Puncher Unit-BT1/BS1/BU1	654
Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher- X1.....	677
Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1.....	715
Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1.....	736
Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher- AC1.....	760
2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1.....	799
Booklet Trimmer-F1.....	822
Multi Function Professional Puncher- B1.....	859
Finisher Jogger Kit-A1.....	883

Document Insertion Unit-N1

Checking before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install this equipment.
- Do not carry this equipment with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

Checking the power supply

1. The equipment must be connectable to the outlet that can supply the rated voltage $\pm 10\%$ - 15% at the specified ampere or higher.
120V - 230V 1A
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this machine near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

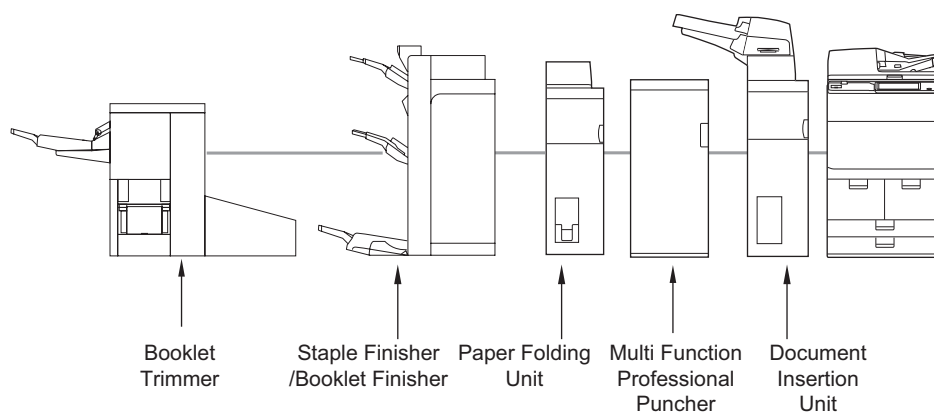
Points to Note before Installation

When installing the machine, be sure to note the following points.

- Refer to "Order of Installation of options" when installing this Equipment.
- The weight of this equipment is approx. 61.0 kg. Be sure to work in a group of 2 persons or more.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
- When this equipment is moved, ensure that the overturning prevention stay is drawn out before moving it.
- To connect the Document Insertion Unit and Finisher-AN1/Saddle Finisher-AN2, Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/ Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO, this Option Controller Kit is necessary.
- Be sure to install the Option Controller Kit to the Document Insertion before connecting the Document Insertion Unit to the upstream equipment.

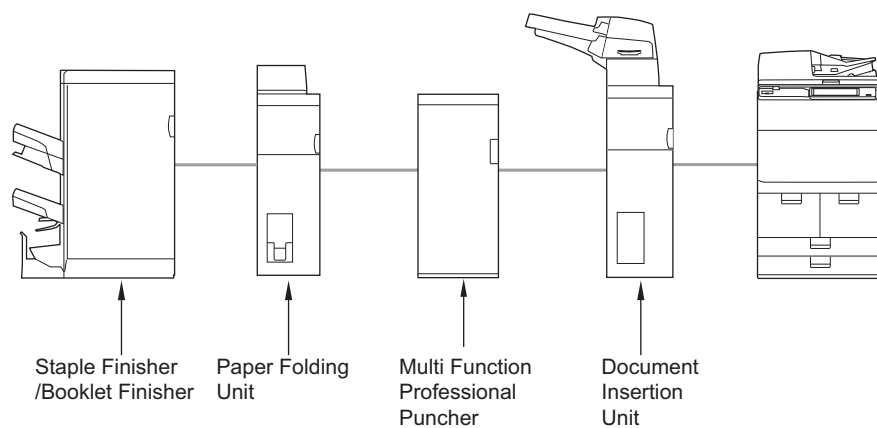
Installation Order of Options

- CAN Communication Option



1. Document Insertion Unit
2. Multi Function Professional Puncher
3. Paper Folding Unit
4. Staple Finisher / Booklet Finisher
5. Booklet Trimmer

- IPC Communication Option



1. Document Insertion Unit
2. Multi Function Professional Puncher
3. Paper Folding Unit
4. Staple Finisher / Booklet Finisher

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

F281260

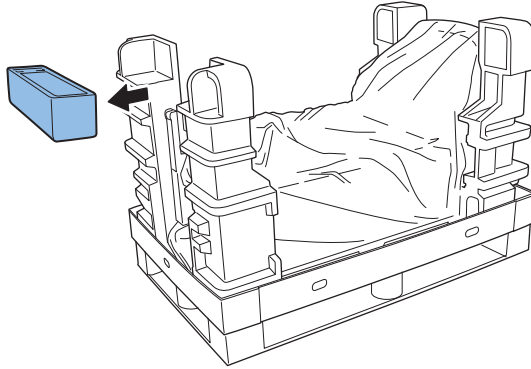
Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

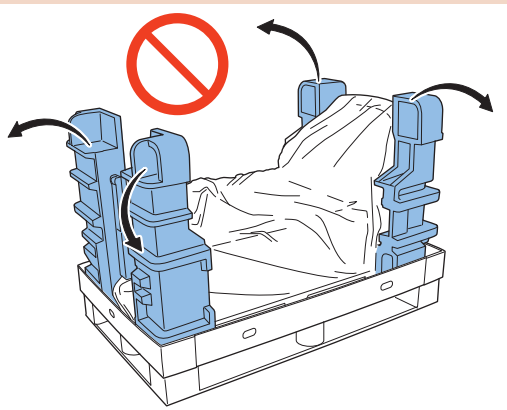
The equipment is secured by tapes, cushioning and other materials to protect it from vibration and impact during transit. Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials as instructed below before installing the equipment. Keep all fixings in a safe place for later reuse in reshipping the equipment, as for relocation and repairs.



1. Take out the accessory box from the cushioning materials and the labels.

**CAUTION:**

Don't remove 4 cushioning materials because it may cause to deform the equipment.

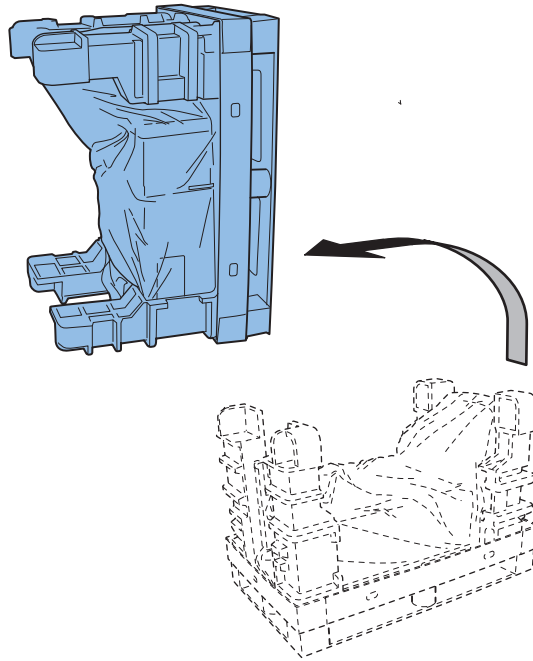




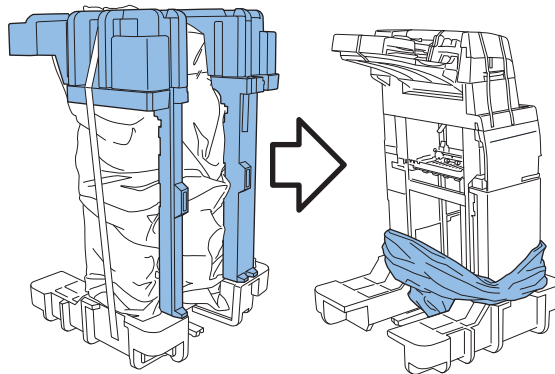
2. Left the equipment together with the pallet by working in a group of 3 persons or more.

CAUTION:

- Be sure not to have the equipment itself because it may cause to deform or damage the equipment.
- This equipment is so heavy (weighing: approx. 61.0 kg). Be sure to work in a group of 3 persons or more.

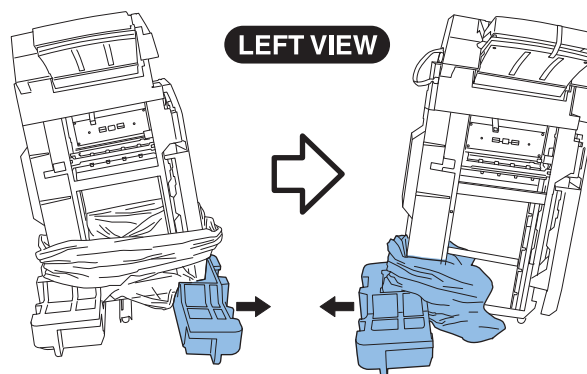


3. Remove the pallet and cushioning materials shown in the figure. Then, put the plastic cover down.





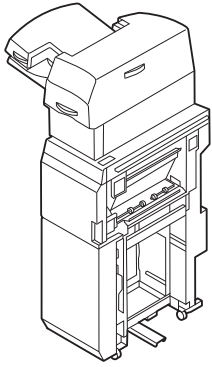
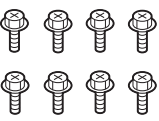


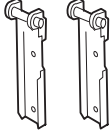


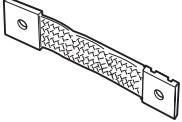

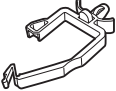
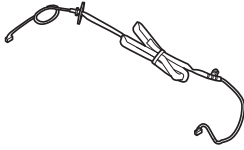





4. Lift the front and rear side lightly to remove the cushioning materials and plastic cover. Then, remove all packing tapes.






● Checking the Contents

Make sure that none of the following parts are missing.

• Parts of Document Insertion

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Document Insertion x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) x8 *1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Power Cord x1 (for 120V model) x3 (for 230V model) *6 
	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (Flat Head Screw ; M3x5) x2 *4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Clamp Platex2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ground Plate x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Positioning Pin x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Shunt Cable x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (Binding; M4x10) x2 *5 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Wire Saddle x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Interface Cable x1 *2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Stopper (rear) x1 *4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Stopper (front) x1 *4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (W-Sems ; M4x12) x1 *2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Paper Size Label x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Prohibition Paper Label (230V model only) x1 	

• • Parts of Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1 *3

<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Delivery Guide (upper) x1 *3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] Delivery Guide (lower) x1 *3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [19] Screw (P Tightening ; M4x12) x2 *3 
--	--	---

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

*1: The 6 screws are used for Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1.

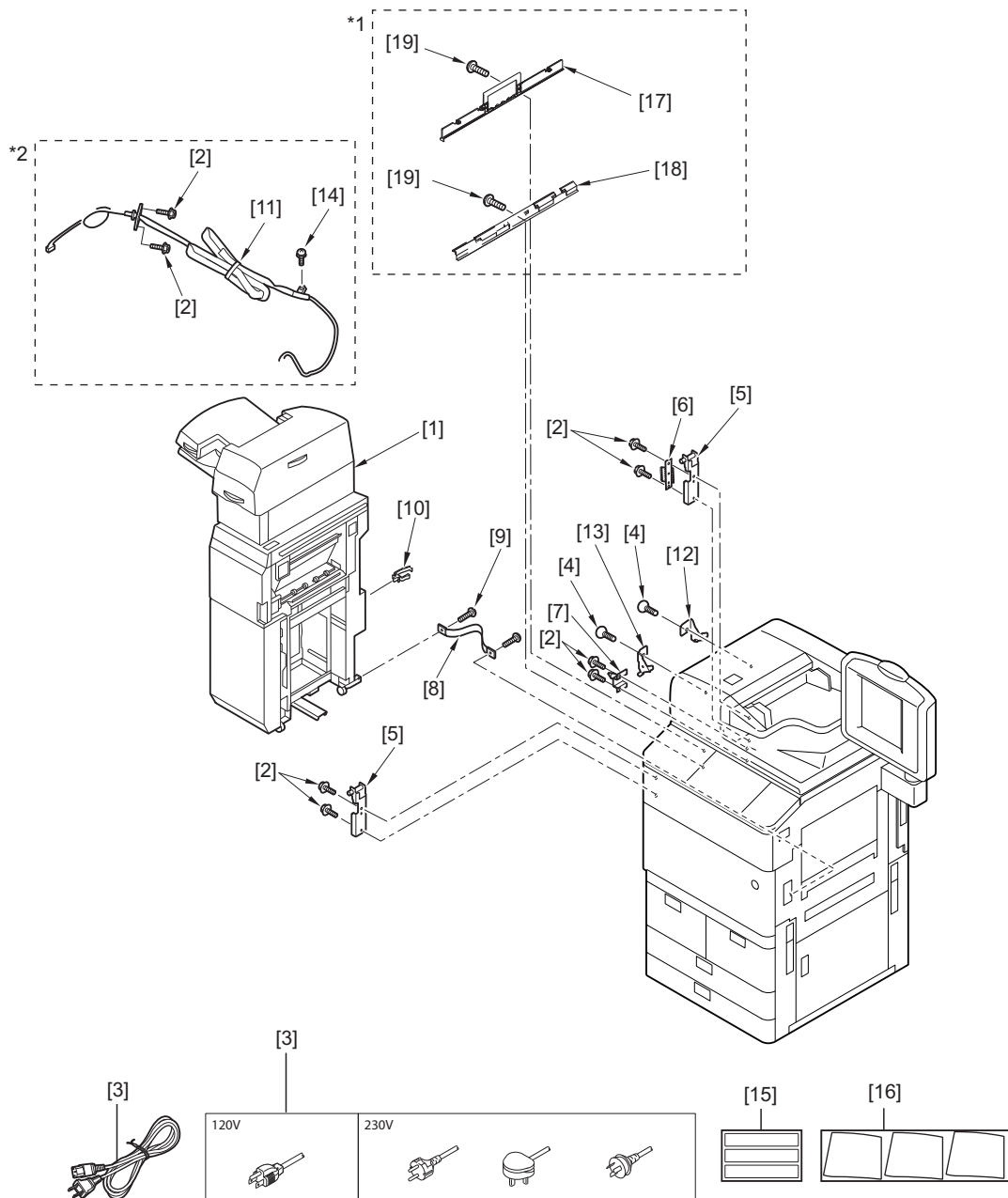
*1: The 8 screws are used for Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher- X1.

*2: These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher- X1.

*3, *4, *5: Not used.

*6: Use the correct power cord to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

Installation Outline Drawing



*1 These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1.

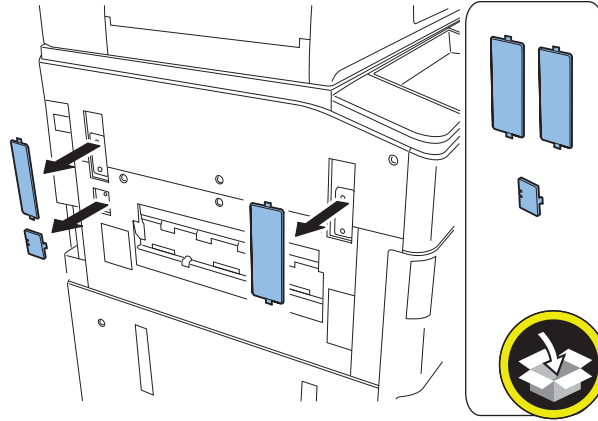
*2 These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher-X1.

Installation Procedure

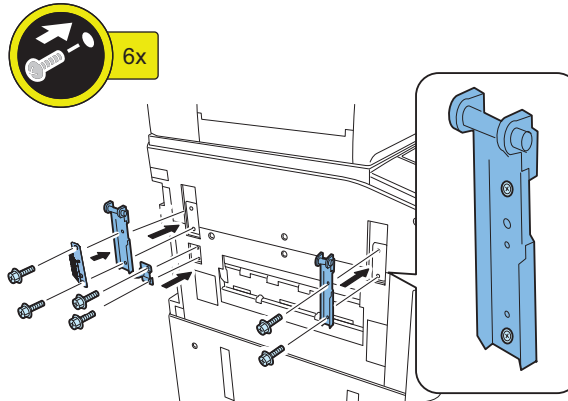
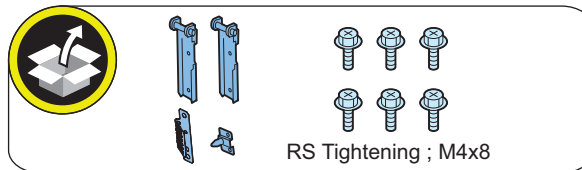
■ Preparation for Host Machine



1. Remove the 3 face covers.
 - 3 Claws



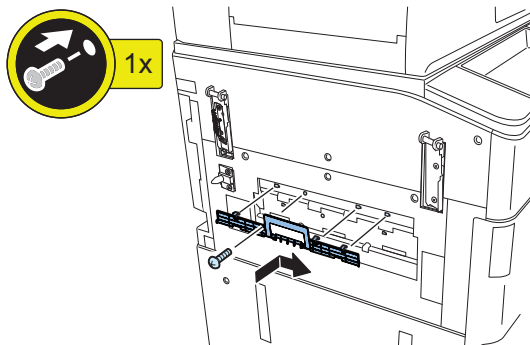
2. Fix the 2 Clamp Plates and the Positioning Pin to the host machine. At this time, fix the supplied Ground Plate along with the rear Clamp Plate in the rear side.
 - 6 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)





3. When the Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1 is installed to the downstream side, fix the Delivery Guide (upper) which is supplied with the Finisher.

- 3 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M4x12) (supplied with the Finisher)



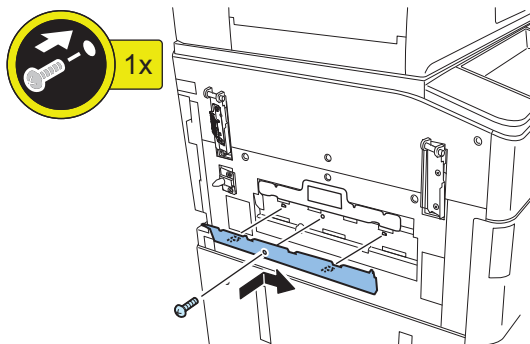
NOTE:

When the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 is installed to the downstream side, this Step is unnecessary.



4. When the Staple Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1 is installed to the downstream side, fix the Delivery Guide (lower) which is supplied with the Finisher.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M4x12) (supplied with the Finisher)



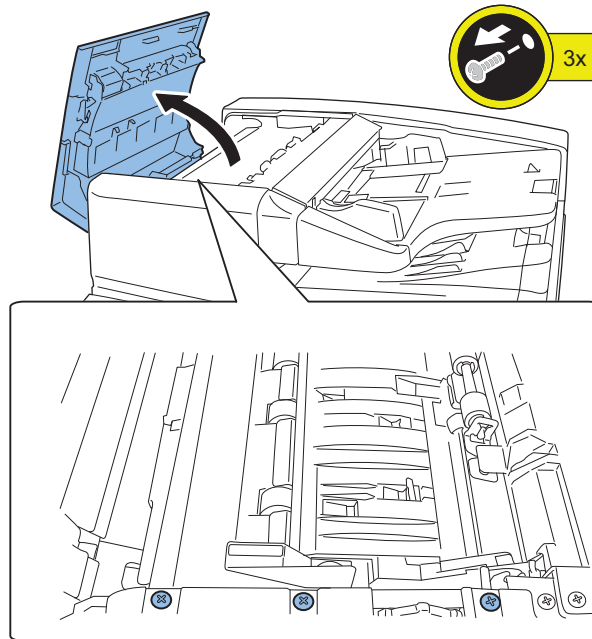
NOTE:

When the Staple Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1 is installed to the downstream side, fix the Delivery Guide (lower) which is supplied with the Finisher.

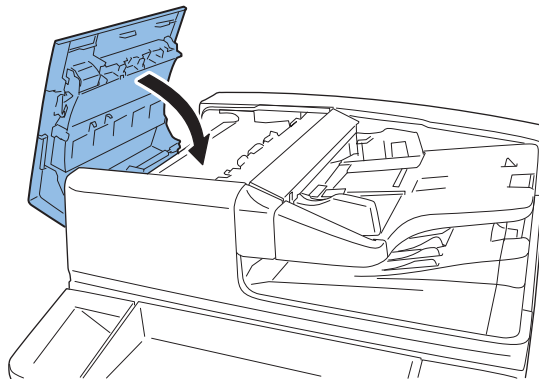


5. Open the Feeder Cover, and then remove screws.

- 3 Screws

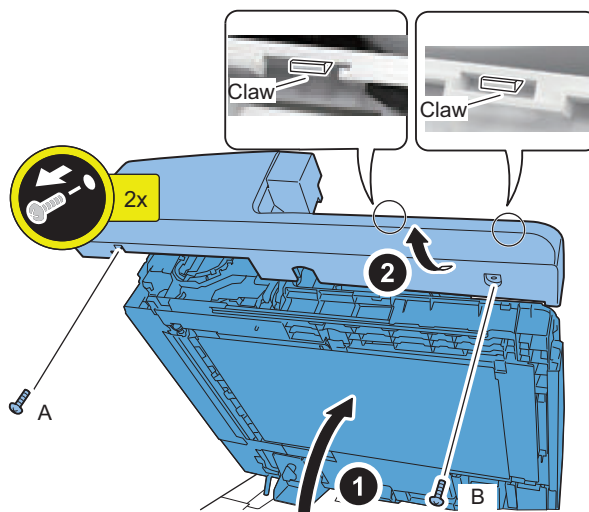


6. Close the Feeder Cover.

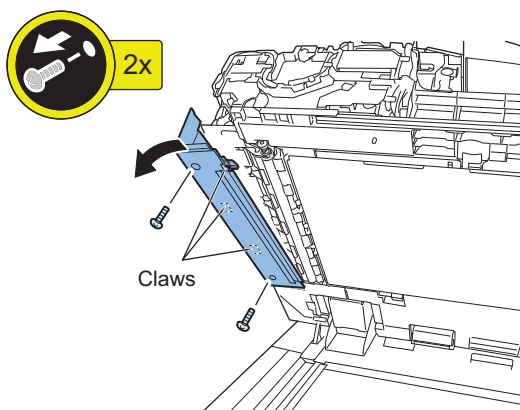


**7. Open the ADF. Remove the ADF Front Cover.**

- 2 Screws ([A] Binding [B] P Tightening)
- 2 Claws

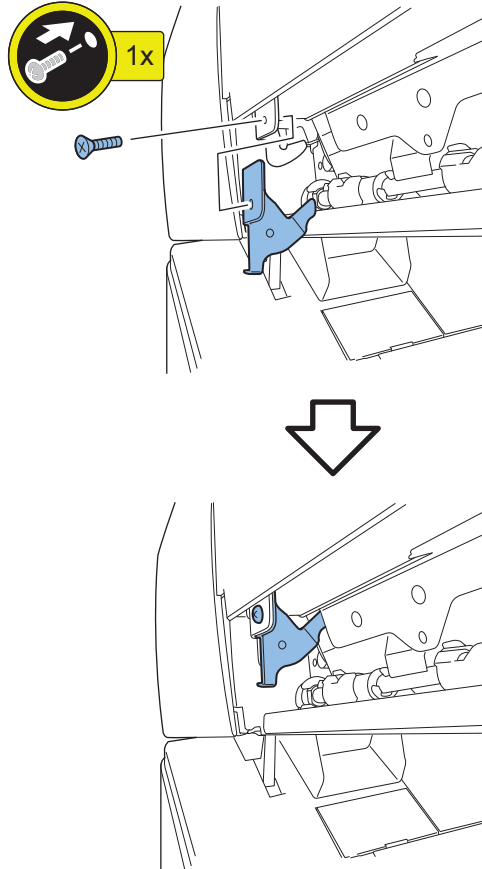
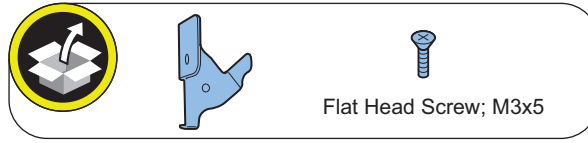
**8. Remove the ADF left Lower Cover.**

- 2 Screws
- 3 Claws



**9. At the rear of the ADF, fix the Stopper (rear).**

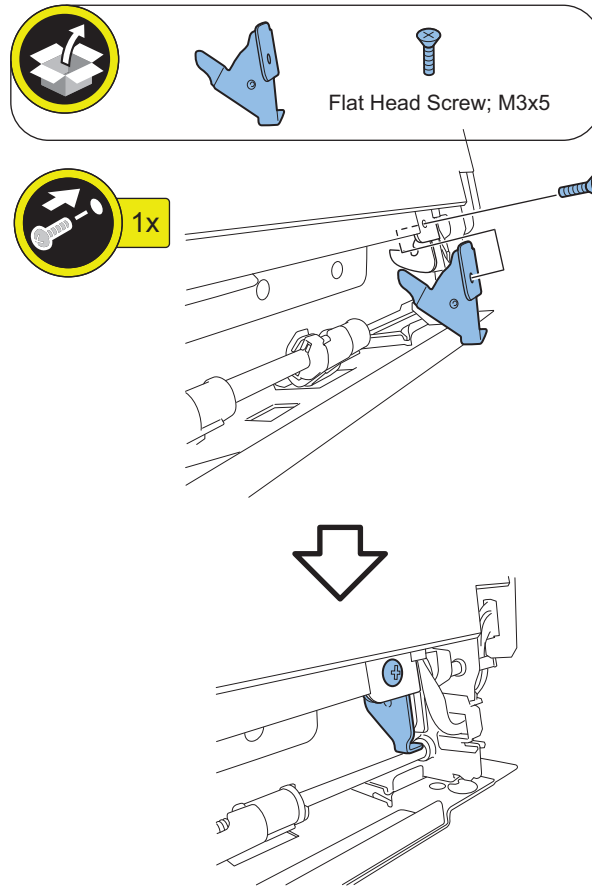
- 1 Screw (Flat Head screw; M3x5)





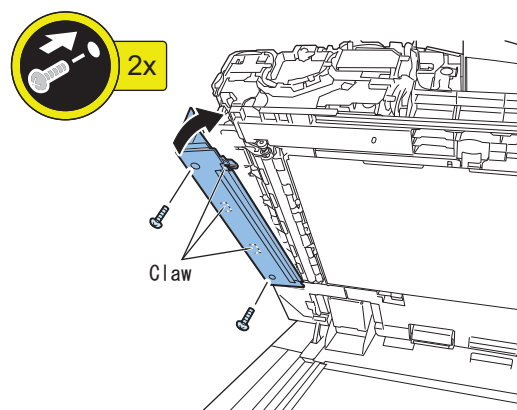
10. At the front of the ADF, fix the Stopper (front).

- 1 Screw (Flat Head screw; M3x5)



11. Fix the ADF Left Lower Cover.

- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x8)
- 3 Claws



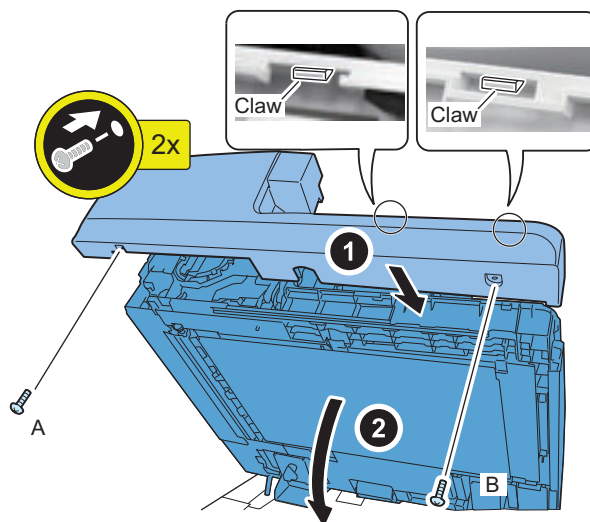


12. Fix the ADF Front Cover and then close the ADF.

- 2 Screws ([A] Binding; M4x8, [B] P Tightening; M4x10)
- 2 Claws

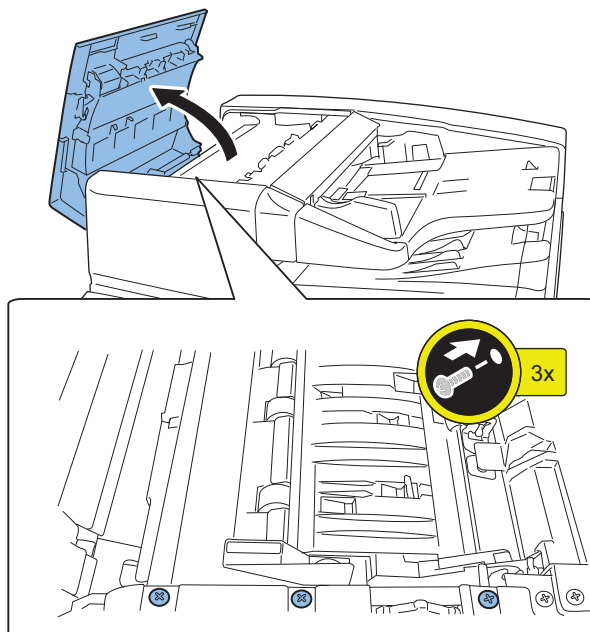
NOTE:

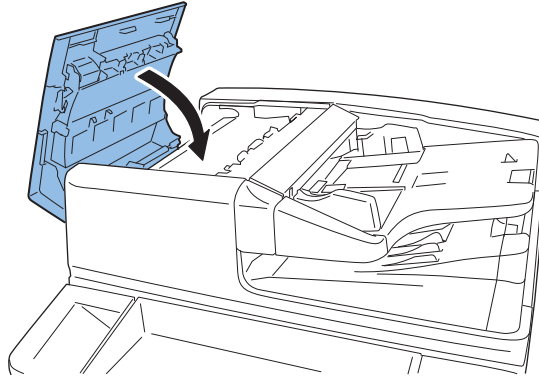
When the ADF Front Cover is fixed, be careful not to make a mistake in the screw to use.



13. Open the Feeder Cover and install the screws.

- 3 Screws (Binding; M4x8)





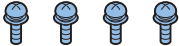
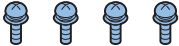
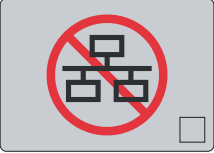


**14. Close the Feeder Cover.****■ Preparation of this Equipment****● Installing the Inserter Option controller Kit-A1****Point to Note About Installation**

- To connect the Document Insertion Unit and Finisher-AN1/Saddle Finisher-AN2, Booklet Finisher-W1/Staple Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1, this Option Controller Kit is necessary.
- Be sure to install the Option Controller Kit to the Document Insertion before connecting the Document Insertion Unit to the upstream equipment.

Checking the Contents

[2], [3]: The LAN Connection PCB Unit and the LAN Connection PCB Cover are taped together. Remove the tape.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Option Controller PCB Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] LAN Connection PCB Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] LAN Connection PCB Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] LAN Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (W Sems; M3x6) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (W Sems; M4x8) X 4 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] LAN Wrong Connection Prevention Label X 1 	

<Others>

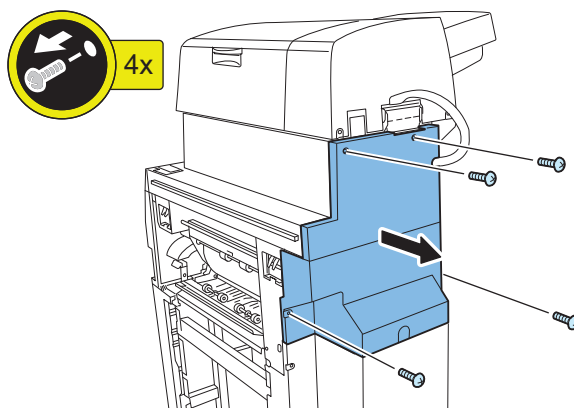
- Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure



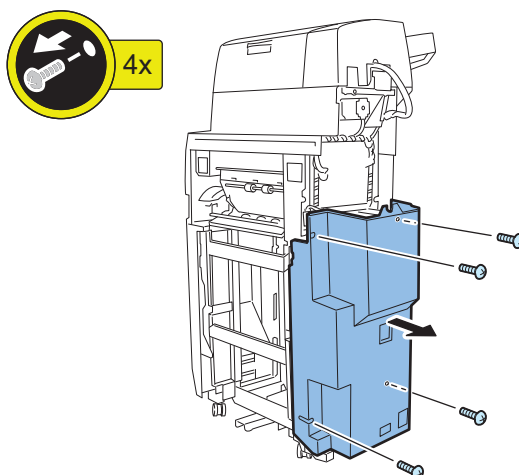
1. Remove the Rear Upper Cover.

- 4 Screws



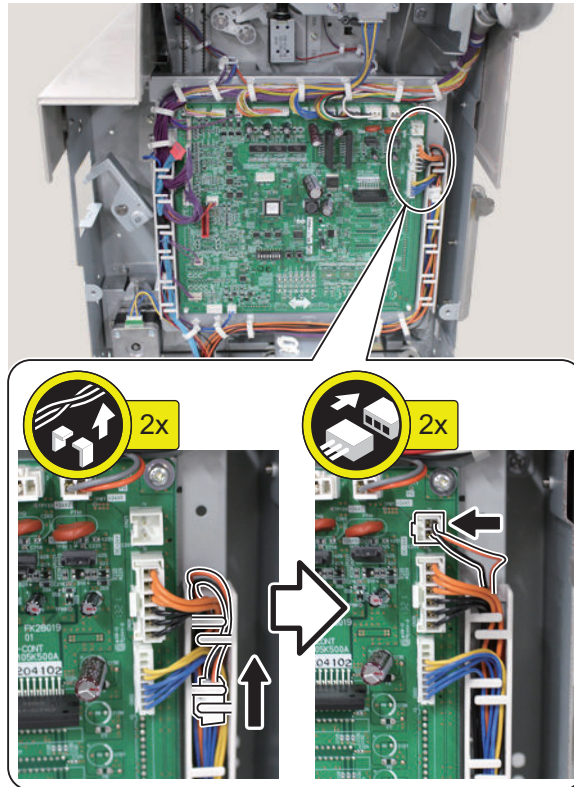
2. Remove the Rear Lower Cover.

- 4 Screws



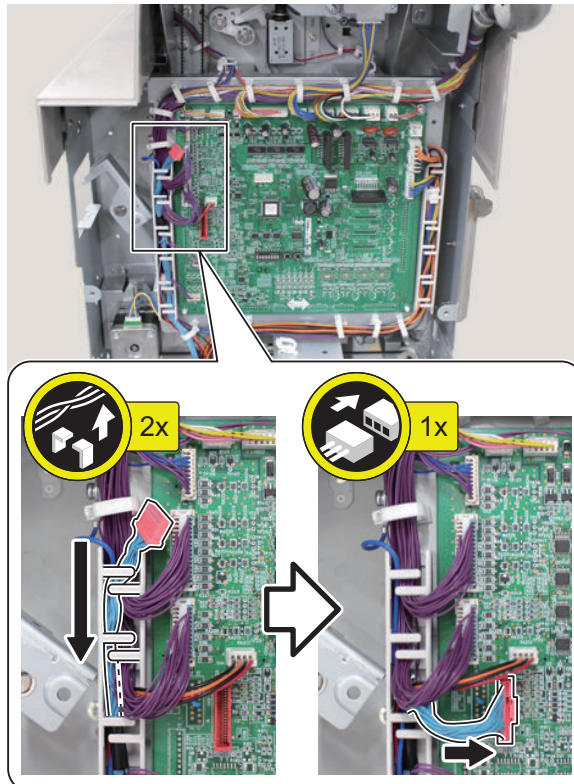
□

3. Free the connector from the Cable Guide and connect it to the Inserter Controller PCB.



□

4. Free the connector from the Cable Guide and connect it to the Inserter Controller PCB.

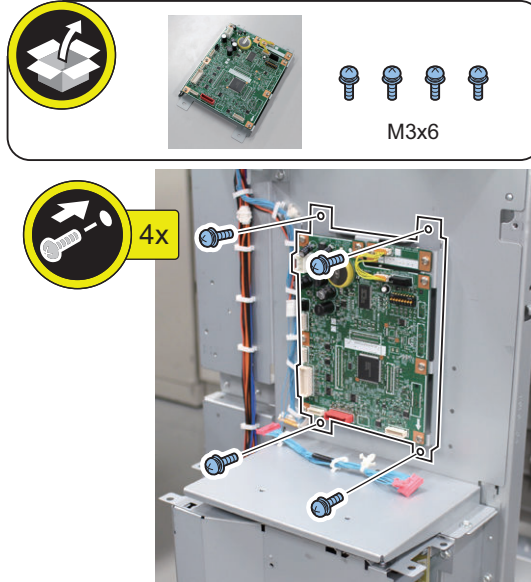


**5. Install the Option Controller PCB Unit.**

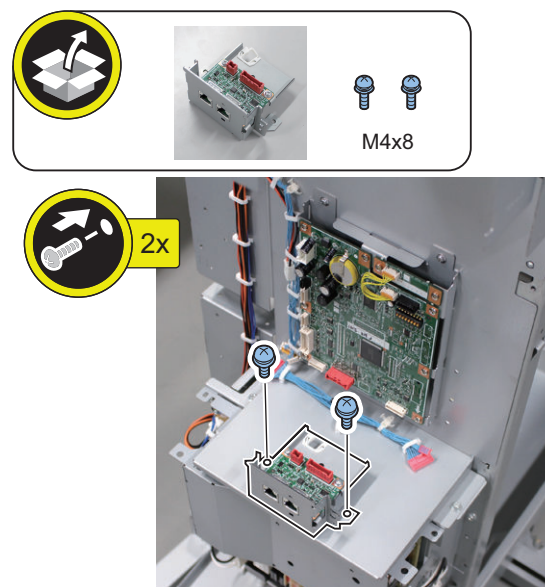
- 4 Screws (W Sems; M3x6)

CAUTION:

Be sure to pay attention to the installation direction.

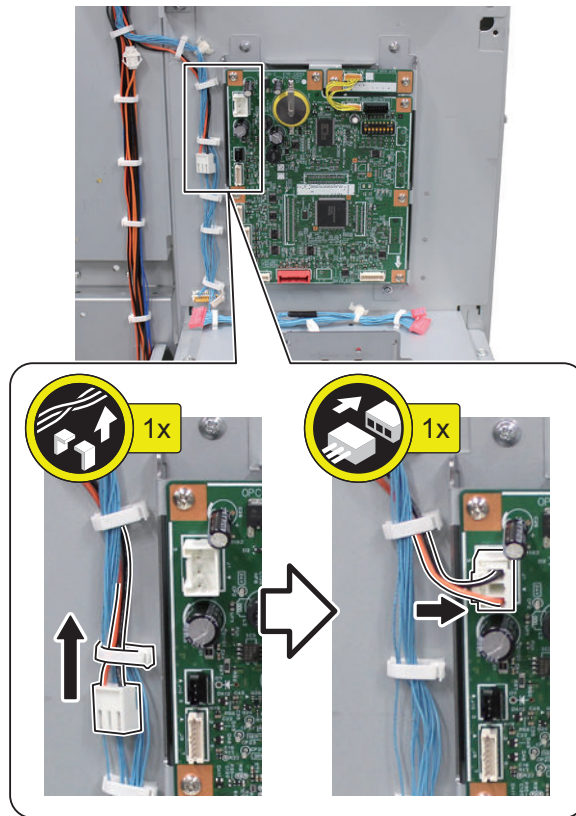
**6. Install the LAN Connection PCB Unit.**

- 2 Screws (W Sems; M4x8)



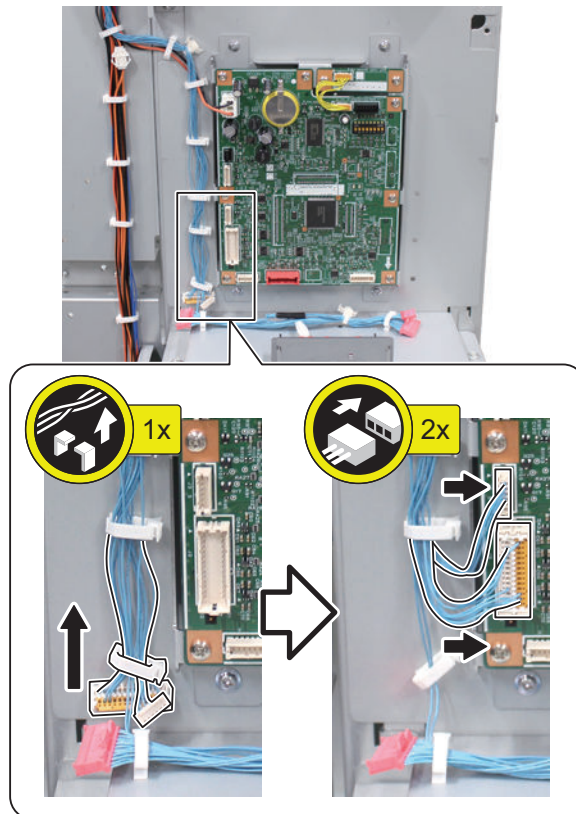
□

7. Free the connector from the Wire Saddle and connect it to the Option Controller PCB Unit (and close the Wire Saddle).



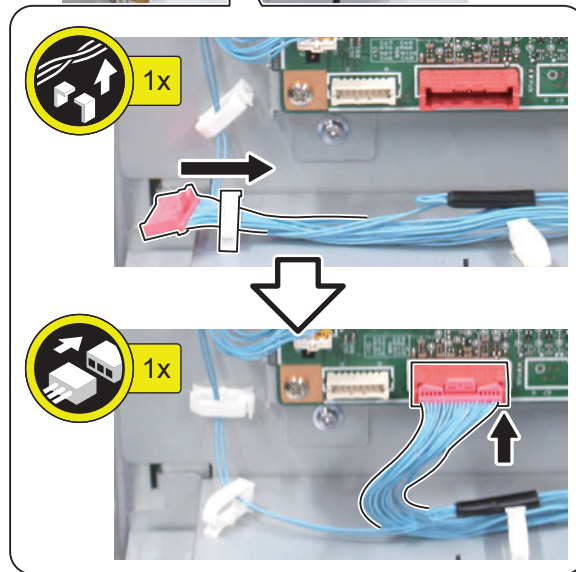
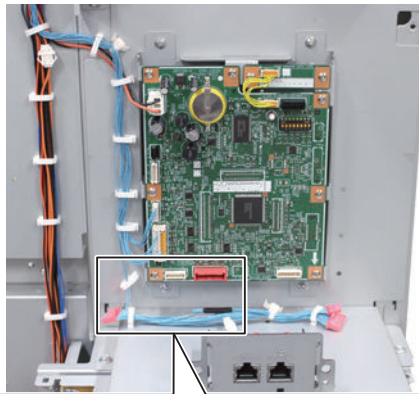
□

8. Free the 2 connectors from the Wire Saddle and connect them to the Option Controller PCB Unit (and close the Wire Saddle).





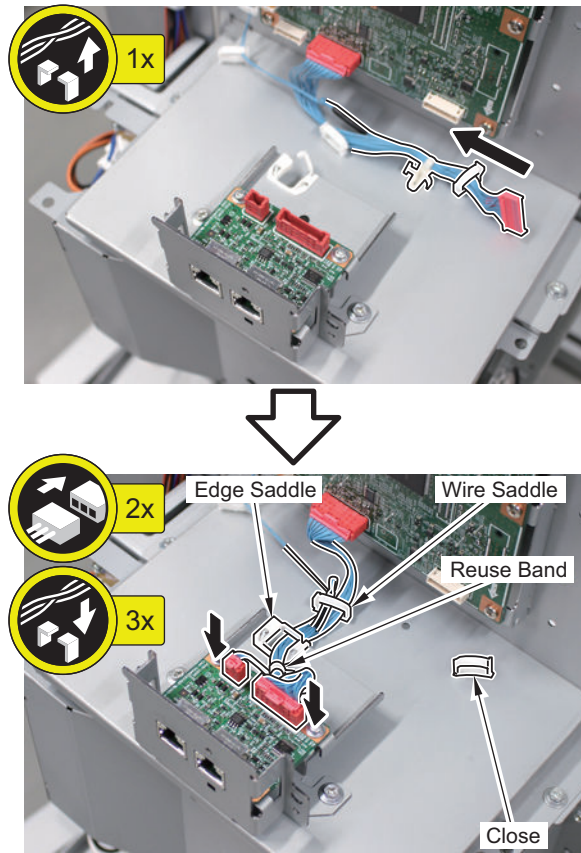
9. Free the connector from the Wire Saddle and connect it to the Option Controller PCB Unit (and close the Wire Saddle).





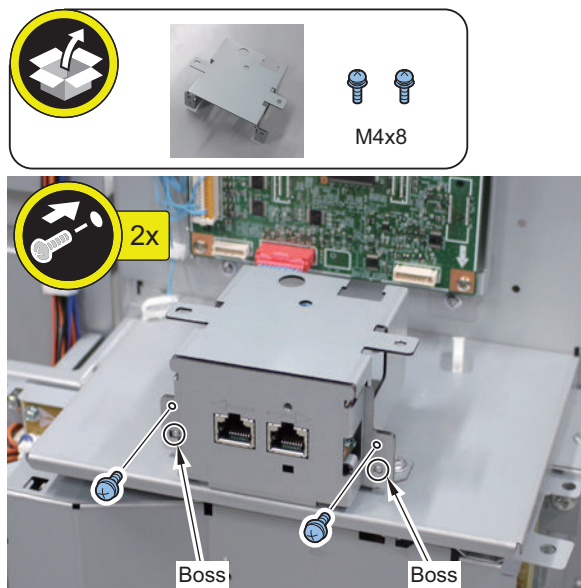
10. Free the 2 connectors from the Wire Saddle and connect it to the LAN Connection PCB Unit (and close the Wire Saddle).

- 1 Reuse Band
- 1 Edge Saddle
- 1 Wire Saddle



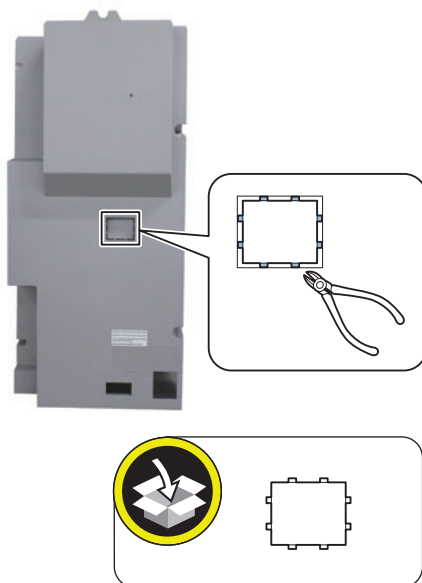
11. Install the LAN Connection PCB Cover.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (W Sems; M4x8)

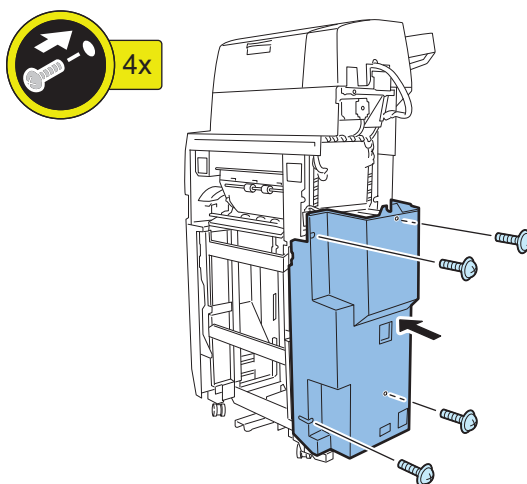


**12. Cut off the Face Plate of the Rear Lower Cover with side cutters.****CAUTION:**

When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.

**13. Install the Rear Lower Cover.(Binding; M4x6)**

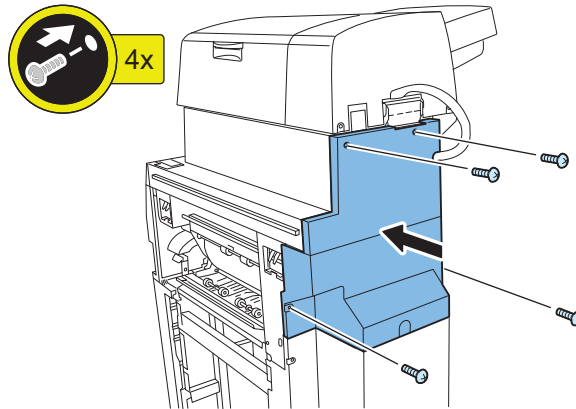
- 4 Screws





14. Install the Rear Upper Cover.(Binding; M4x6)

- 4 Screws



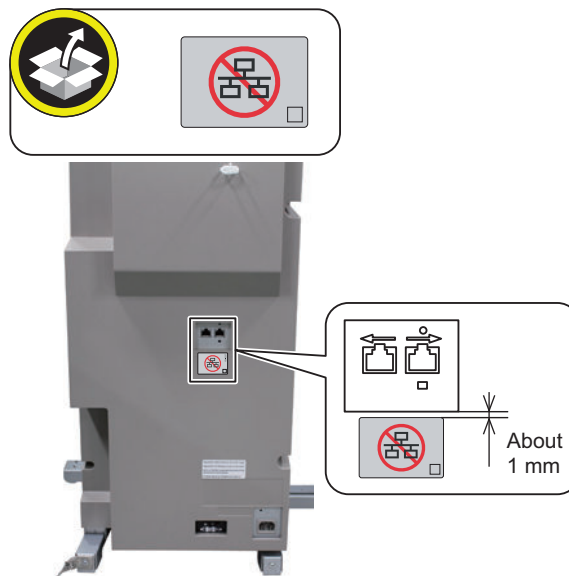
15. Affix the LAN Wrong Connection Prevention Label

NOTE:

Affixing position Vertical direction: About 1 mm below from the lower edge of the hole Horizontal direction: Center of the hole

CAUTION:

Do not connect the customer's network cable to a slot.

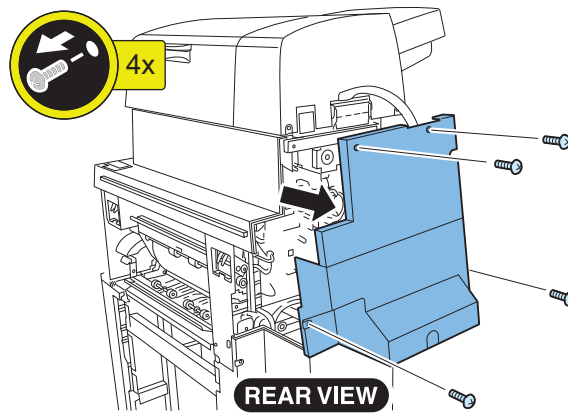


• Connecting the Interface Cable (for Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher-X1)



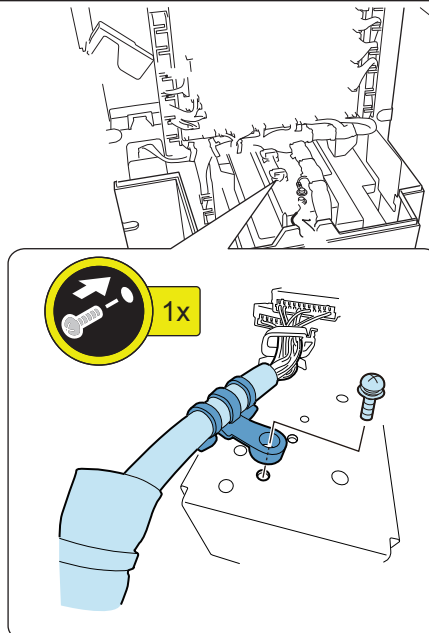
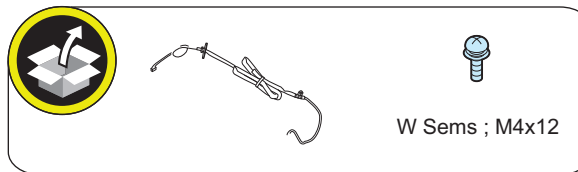
1. Remove the rear upper cover.

4 Screws



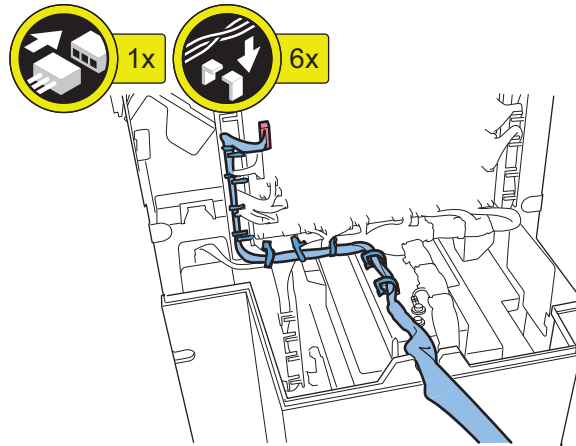
2. Fix the Interface Cable.

• 1 Screw (W Sems ; M4x12)

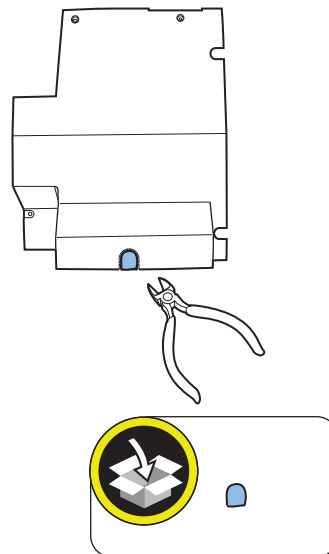


**3. Connect the Interface Cable Connector to the board.**

- 1 Connector
- 1 Guide
- 5 Wire Saddles

**4. Cut out the blindfold cover of the rear upper cover with side cutters.****CAUTION:**

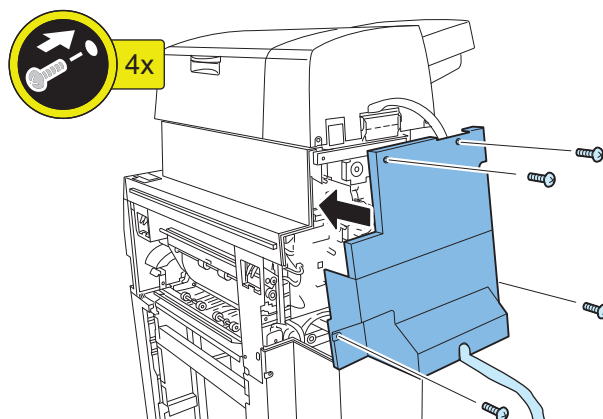
Be sure to check that there is no burr.



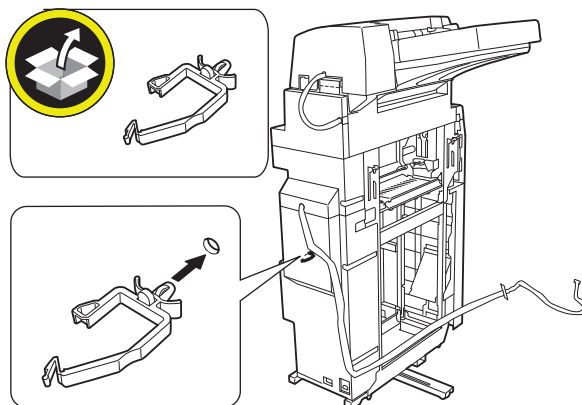


5. Put the Interface Cable through the hole which was cut in the previous step, and then restore the rear upper cover.

- 4 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)



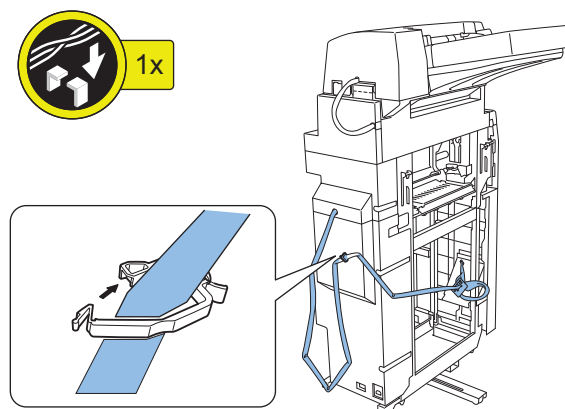
6. Fix the Wire Saddle to the rear lower cover.



7. To temporarily stow the Interface Cable into the Wire Saddle.

NOTE:

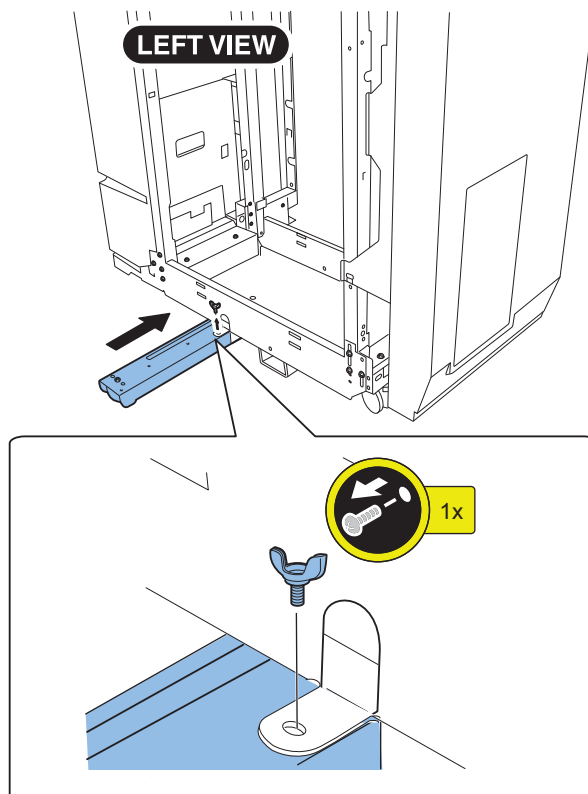
After installing the finisher, adjust length of the Interface Cable.



■ Connecting to Connection Machine



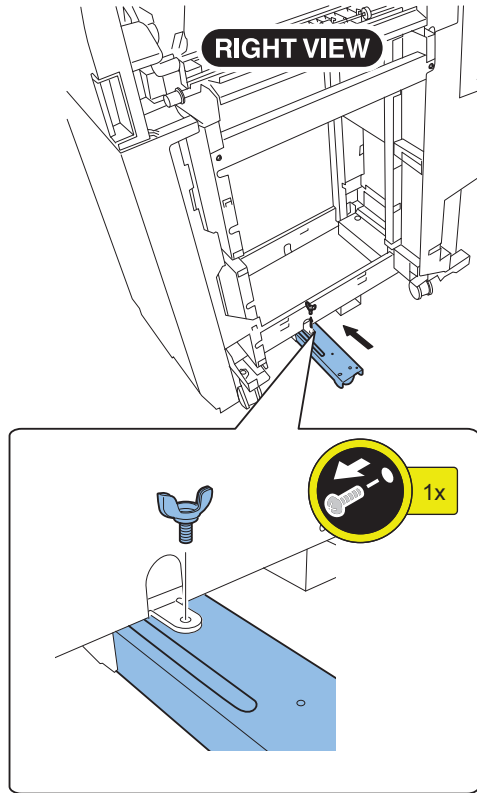
1. Stow the overturning prevention stay (left) by removing a wing screw and lifting the stay up.



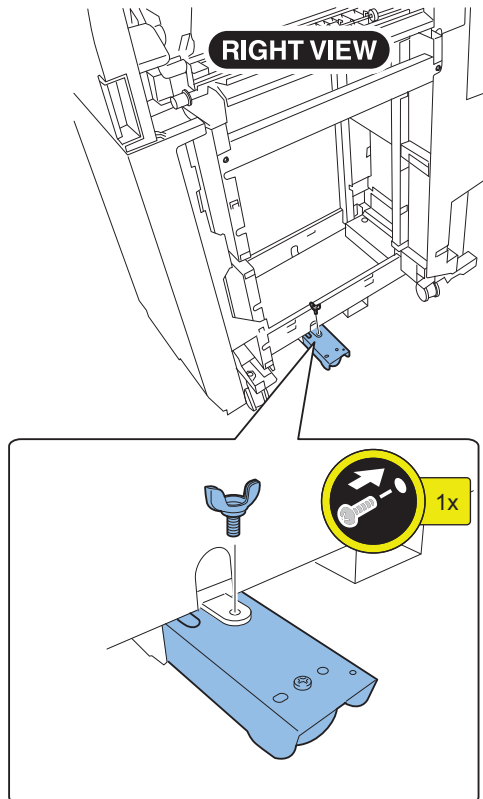
2. After stowing the overturning prevention stay (left), fix it with the removed wing screw.



3. Removing a wing screw. Then stow the overturning prevention stay (right) by lifting the stay up.

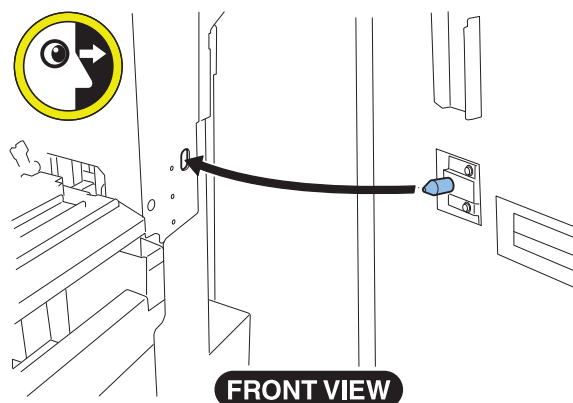


4. After stowing the overturning prevention stay (right), fix it with the removed wing screw.





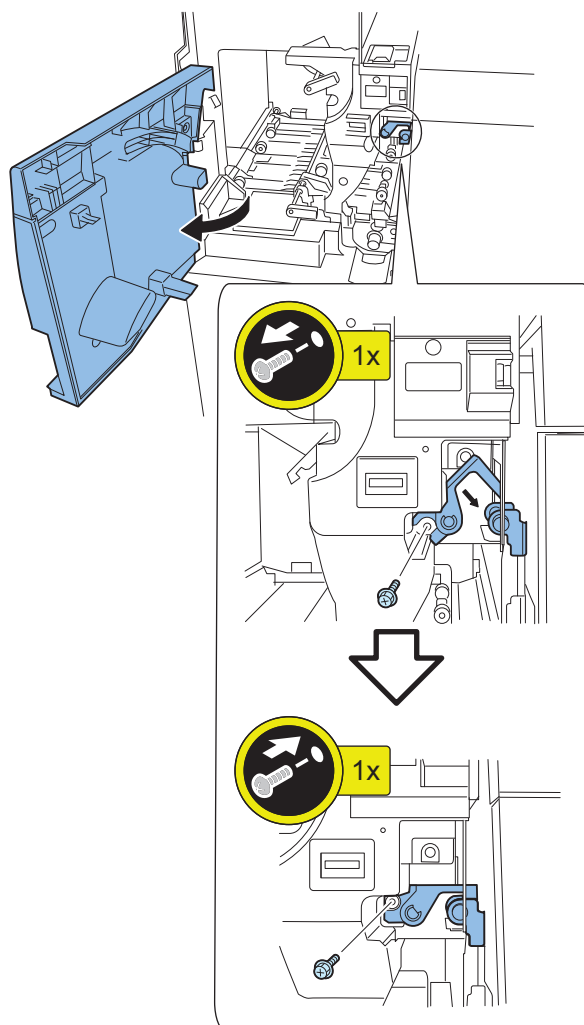
5. Fit the Document Insertion Unit to the host machine so the positioning pin gets in the hole of the Document Insertion Unit.



6. Open the front upper cover. Remove 1 screw and take down the lock lever, and hook it on the clamp plate. Fix the lock lever with removed screw.

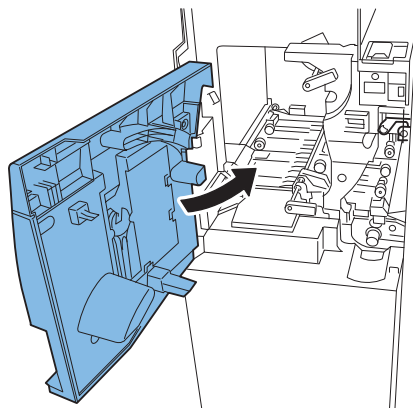
NOTE:

When it is hard to hook the lock lever to the clamp plate, use the screw driver or a like tool.





7. Close the front upper cover.



■ Connecting Communication Cable

● For Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher-X1

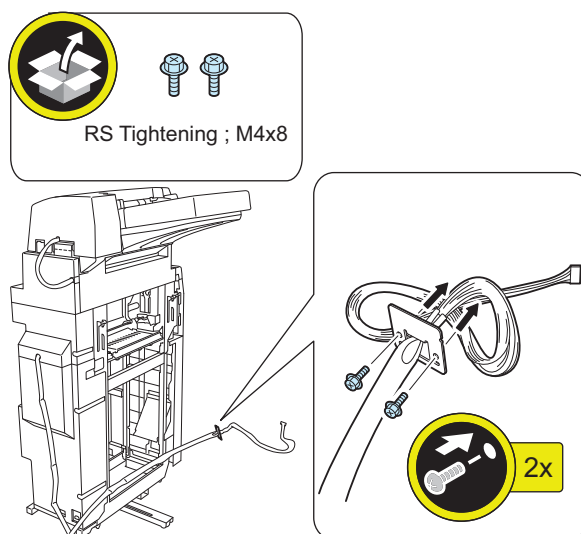


1. Connect the Interface Cable to the finisher.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)

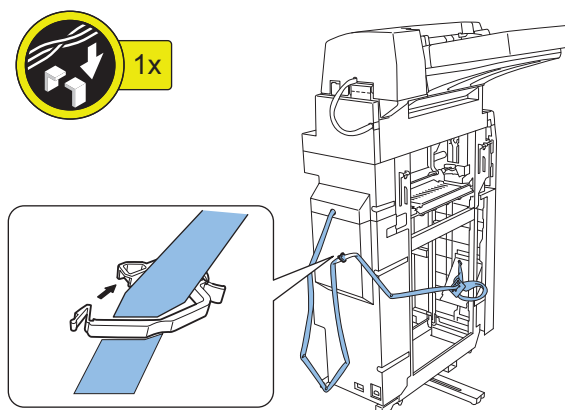
NOTE:

For connecting to the finisher, refer to the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 Installation Procedure.





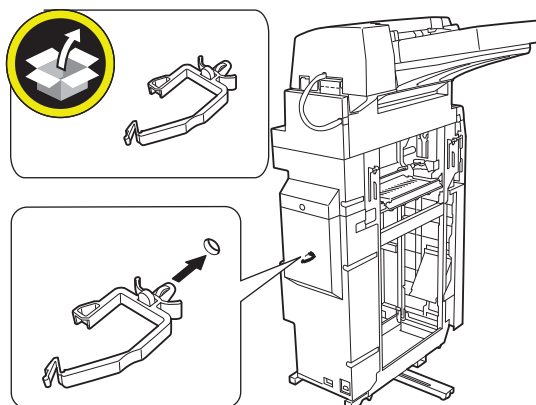
2. Stow the excess length of the Interface Cable connected to the finisher into the Wire Saddle.



• For Staple Finisher-W1/ Booklet Finisher-W1



1. Fix the Wire Saddle to the Rear Lower Cover.





2. Connect the supplied LAN Cable to the port of the host machine and the left port of this equipment. Wind the LAN Cable as shown in the figure and fix it with the Wire Saddle.



■ Connecting the Power Cord



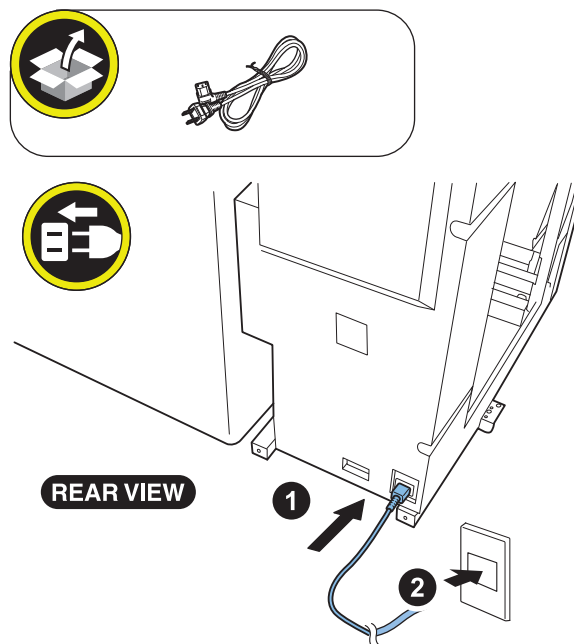
1. Insert the Power Cord into this equipment. Connect the plug end of the Power Cord into an external power outlet.

NOTE:

Illustrations used in this procedure are those of imagePRESS C10000VP series.

⚠ CAUTION:

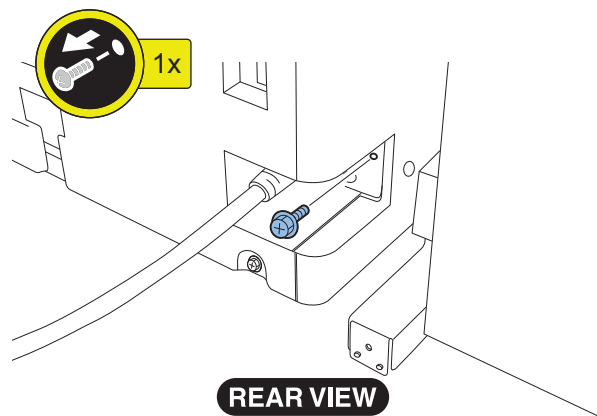
Make sure that the Intermediate power cable connects to the socket firmly. If connecting precariously, it may result in a smoke or fire.



■ Connecting the Shunt Cable



1. Remove the screw at the rear lower position of the Buffer Pass Unit.



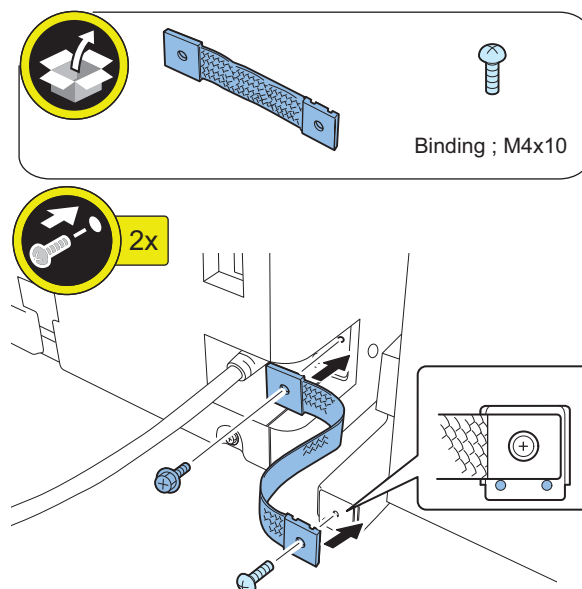


2. Fix the Shunt Cable at the rear bottom of the Buffer Pass Unit and this equipment.

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening ; M4x10) (removed in Step 1.)

NOTE:

When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



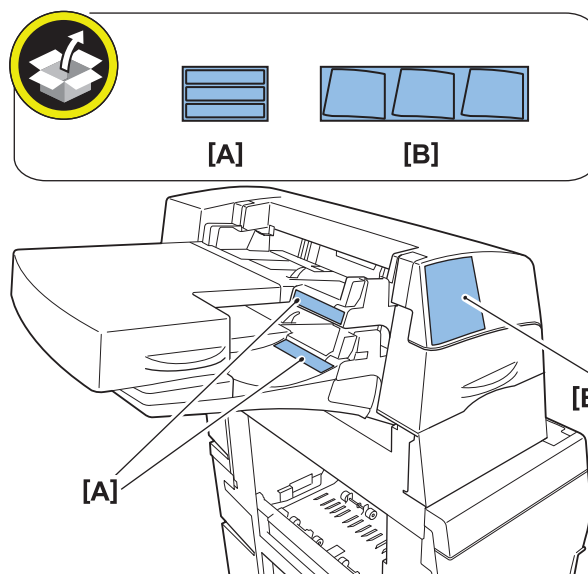
■ Labeling



1. Affix the supplied 3 labels.

[A] : Paper size label (2 sheets)

[B] : Prohibition Paper Label (1 sheet) (230V model only)



Adjustment

■ Height/ Inclination Checking and Adjustment

NOTE:

- The illustrations of "Height/Inclination Checking and Adjustment" procedure are those of imagePRESS C10000VP series.
- An improperly adjusted height or inclination could result in jams frequently occurring at the paper folding unit inlet.

CAUTION:

If the height and inclination of the equipment and the connected host machine are not within their standards, adjust them.

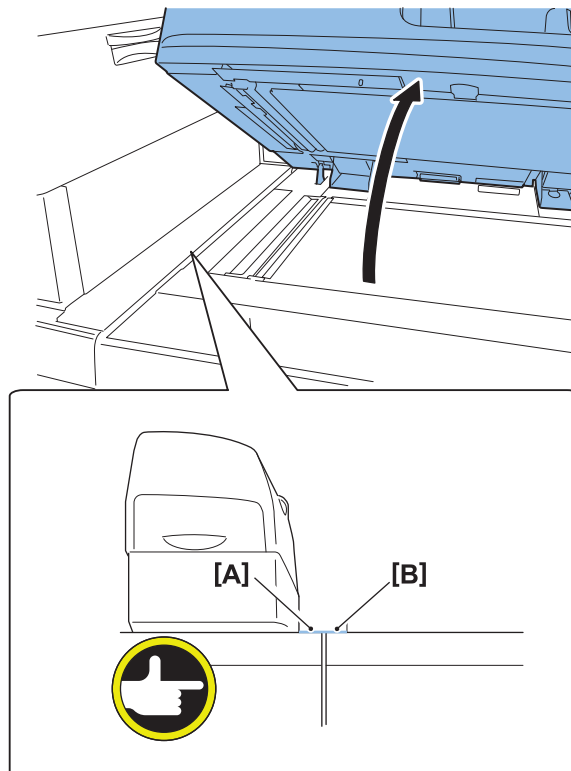
● Height Check



1. Open the ADF, check whether the difference of the height between [A] and [B] is 0 +/- 3mm.

[A] : Right upper surface of the inserter

[B] : Left upper surface of the host machine

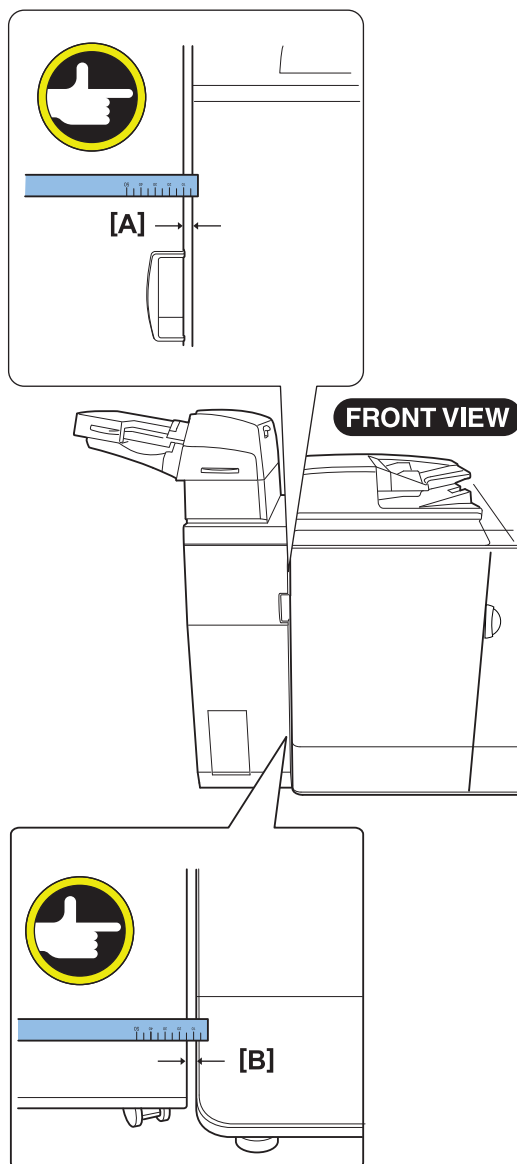


• Inclination Check



1. Check whether the difference of the gap between [A] and [B] is $0 \pm 2\text{mm}$ (front side).

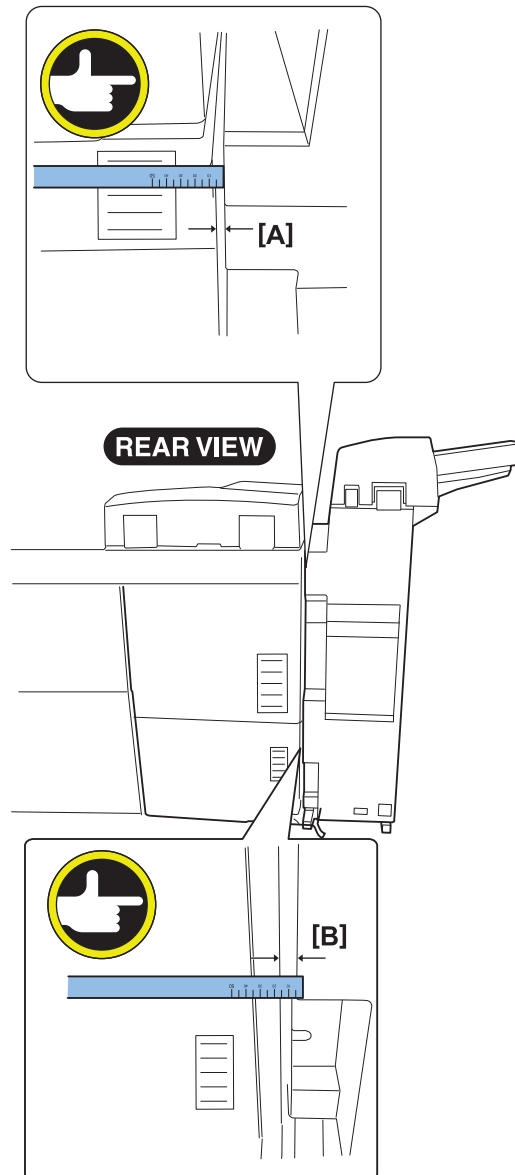
- [A]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (upper)
- [B]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (lower)





2. Check whether the difference of the gap between [A] and [B] is $0 \pm 2\text{mm}$ (rear side).

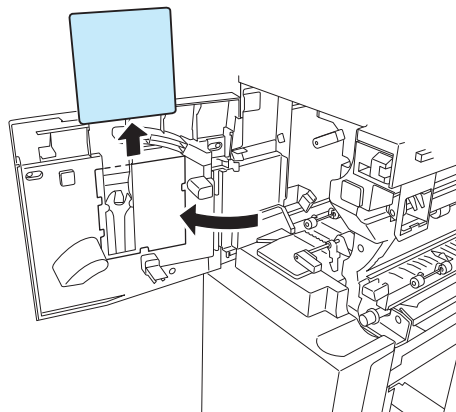
- [A]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (upper)
- [B]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (lower)



• Height Adjustment

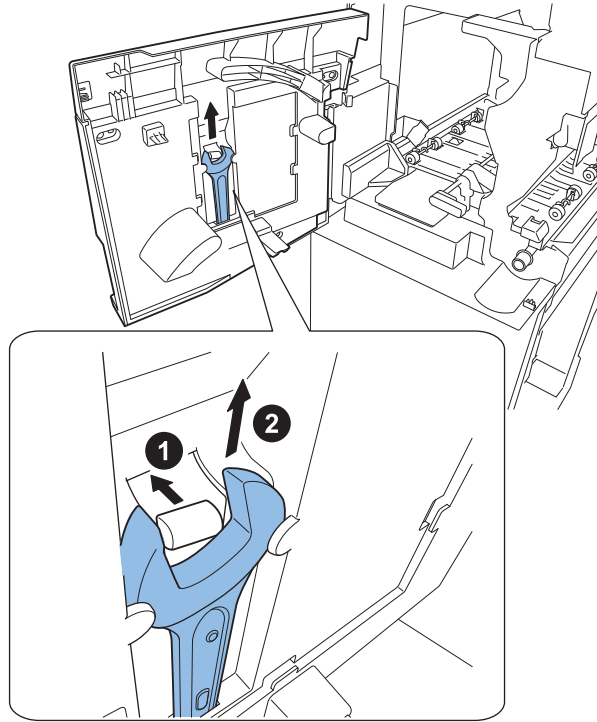


1. Open the front upper cover and remove the jam recovery map.





2. Remove the wrench from the front upper cover.

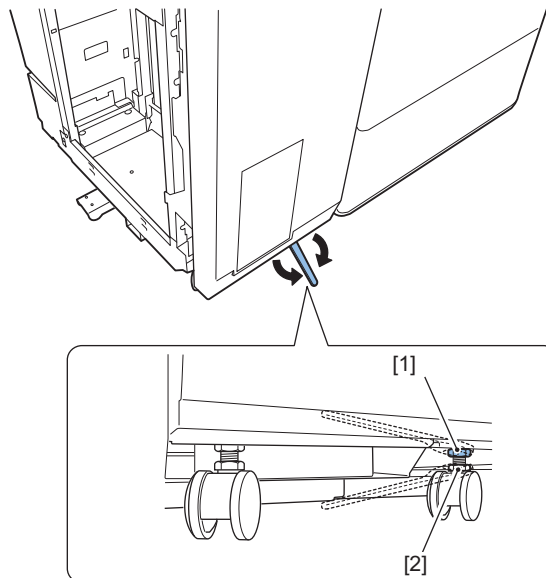


3. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the front side (host machine side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.

FRONT VIEW

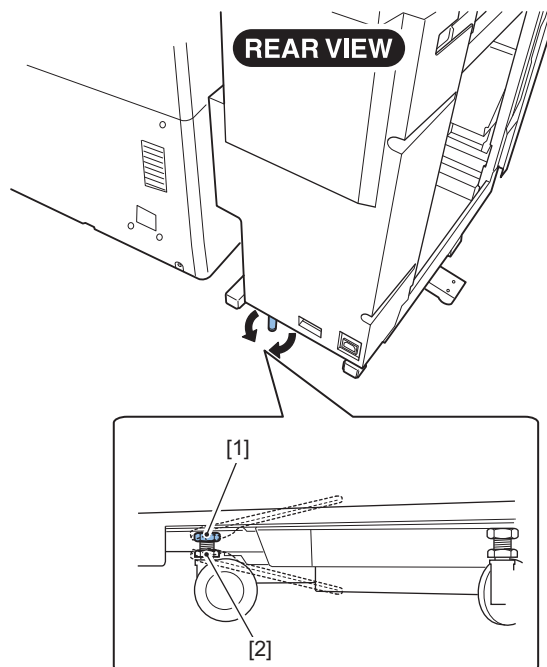




4. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the rear side (host machine side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.



5. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the inserter.

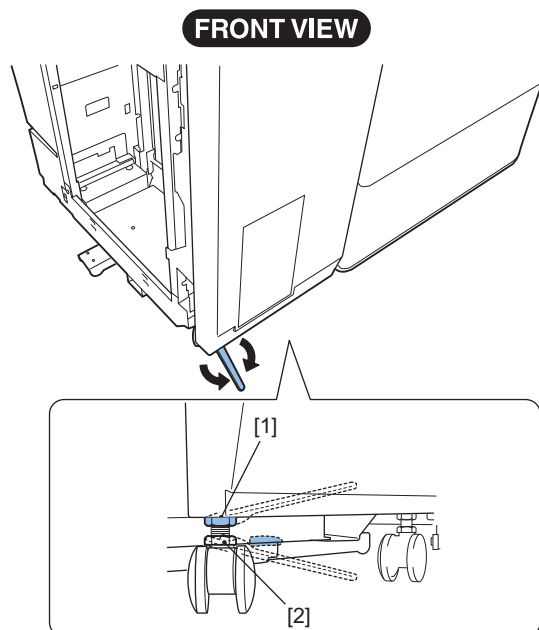
• Inclination Adjustment



1. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the front side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lean towards the paper ejection side and clockwise to lean towards the host machine side.

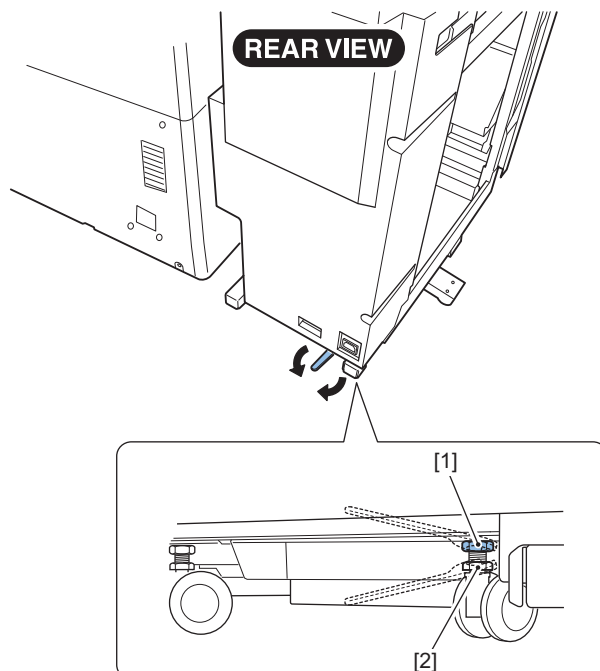




2. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the rear side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

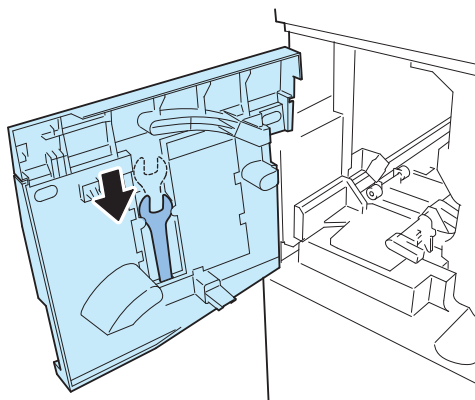
- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lean towards the paper ejection side and clockwise to lean towards the host machine side.



3. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the inserter.

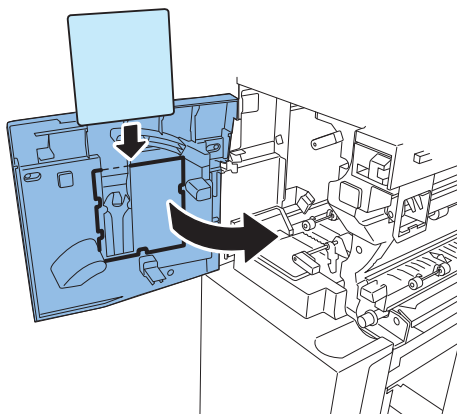


4. Return the wrench to the front upper cover.





5. Return the jam recovery map and close the front upper cover.



● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- When connected to the Staple Finisher-W1/ Booklet Finisher-W1

- [1] 3x Face Cover of the host machine
- [2] 1x Interface Cable
- [3] 1x Screw (Binding; M4x10)
- [4] 1x Screw (W Sems; M4x12)
- [5] 2x Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)
- [6] 1x Removed Face Cover

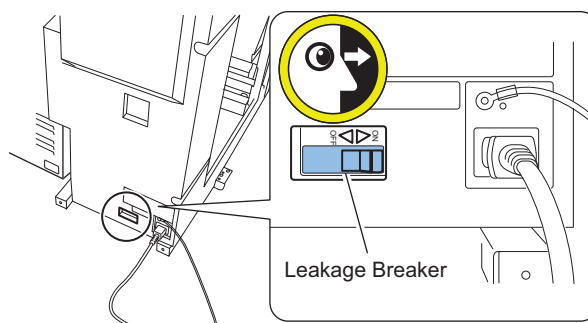
- When connected to the Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher-X1

- [1] 3x Face Cover of the host machine
- [2] 1x Screw (Binding; M4x10)
- [3] 1x Removed Face Cover

■ Operation Checks



1. When all the installations have completed, check that the Leakage Breaker is turned ON.



REAR VIEW



2. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. Check the insertion operation from the upper and lower trays.

Paper Folding Unit-J1

Checking before Installation

Following shows requirements for the installation site. Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in this equipment to the user's site.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install this equipment.
- Do not carry this equipment with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

■ Points to Note before Installation

When installing the machine, be sure to note the following points.

- Refer to "Order of Installation of options" when installing this equipment.
- The weight of this equipment is approx. 71kg. Be sure to work in a group of 2 persons or more.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281270

Unpacking

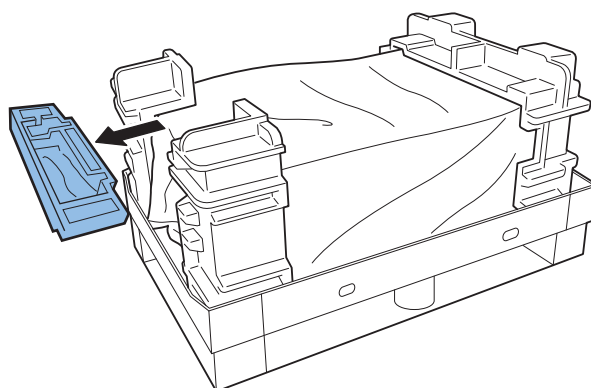
■ Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

The Equipment is secured by tapes, cushioning and other materials to protect it from vibration and impact during transit. Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials as instructed below before installing this equipment. Keep all fixings in a safe place for later reuse in reshipping this equipment, as for relocation and repairs.

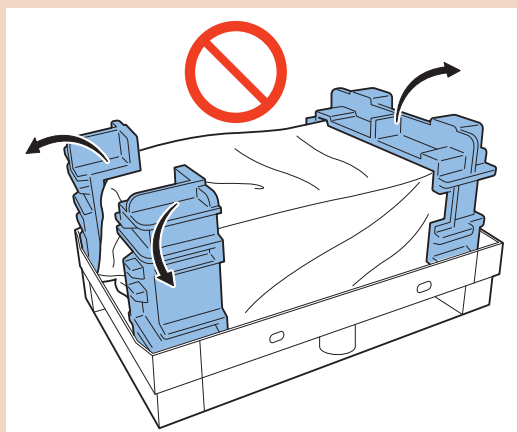


1. Take out the accessory box from the cushioning materials.



CAUTION:

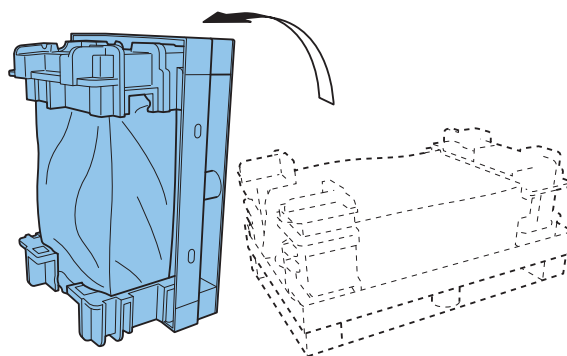
Do not remove 3 cushioning materials because it may cause to deform this equipment.



2. Lift the equipment together with the pallet.

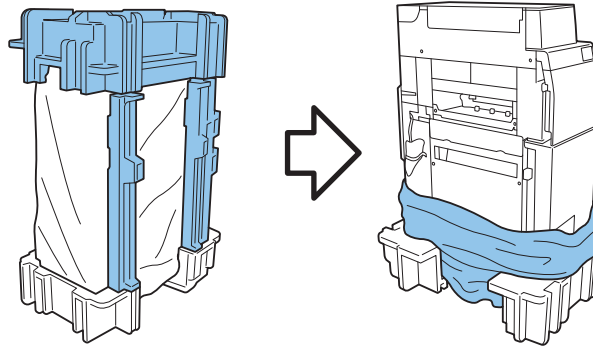
CAUTION:

- Be sure not to have the equipment itself because it may cause to deform or damage the equipment.
- This equipment is so heavy (weighing: approx. 71 kg). Be sure to work in a group of 3 persons or more.

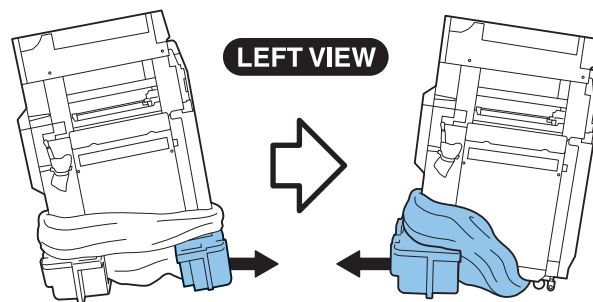




3. Remove the pallet and cushioning materials shown in the figure. Then, put the plastic cover down.



4. Lift the front and rear side lightly to remove the cushioning materials and plastic cover.



5. Remove the tapes used outside of this equipment.

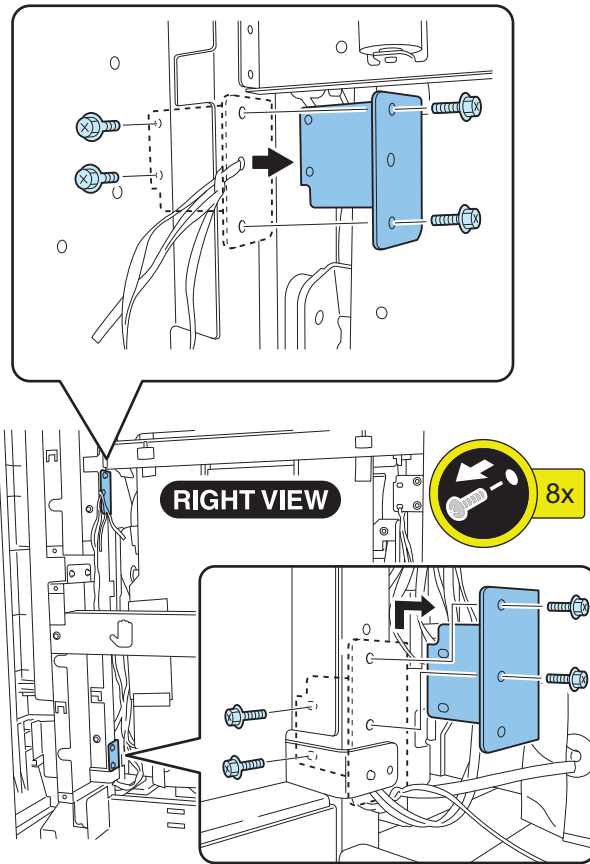
NOTE:

Be sure not to remove the tapes from the folder unit because removing them later.



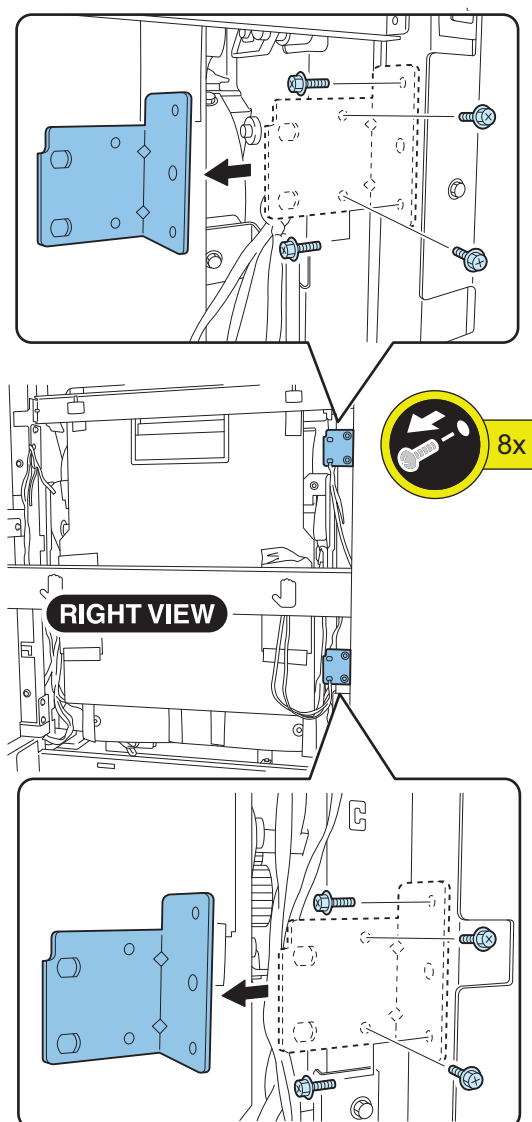
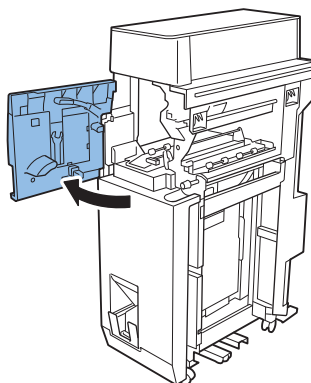
6. Remove each 4 fixing screws to remove 2 fixings on the front side of Folder unit.

- 8 Screws



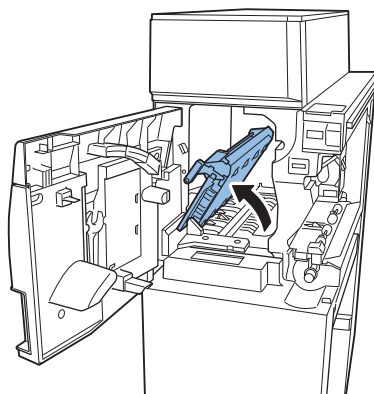
**7. Remove each 4 fixing screws to remove 2 fixings on the rear side of Folder Unit.**

- 8 Screws

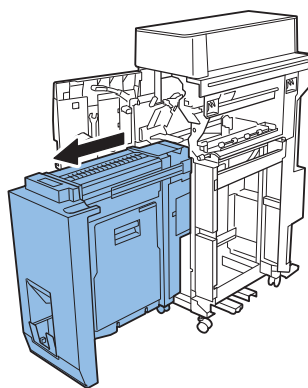
**8. Open Front Upper Cover.**



9. While holding Jam Handling Lever, open Transfer Guide.

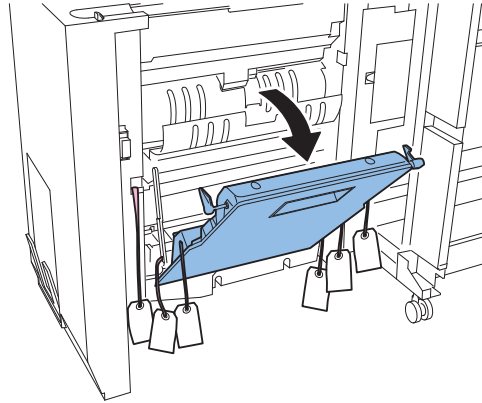


10. Pull out the folder unit.



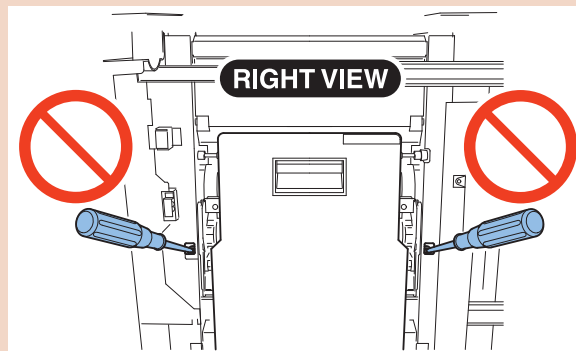


11. Remove all tapes from Folder Unit and open Folder Guide Plate (right) fully by two steps.



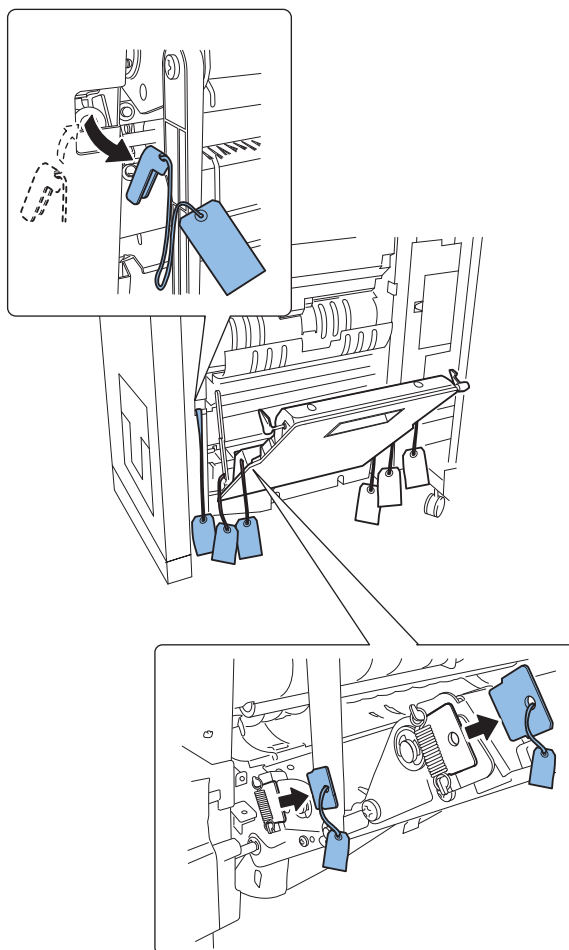
CAUTION:

The 2 screws (pointed by screwdrivers) at the front and rear are used to adjust the folding roller pressure. Never loosen these screws.



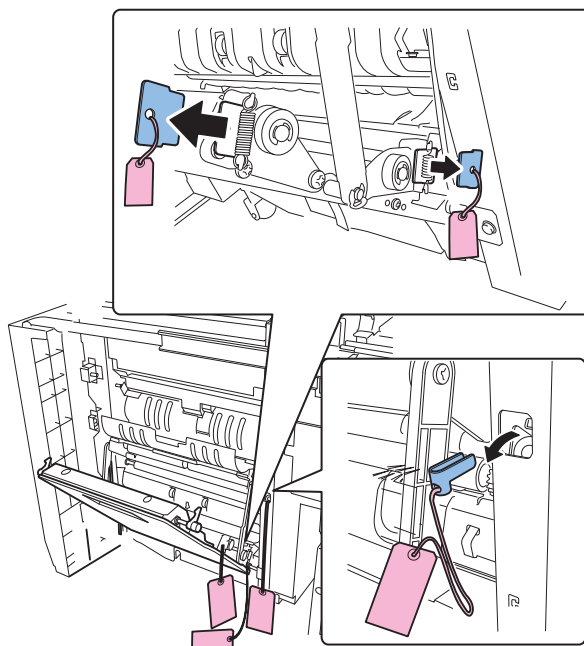
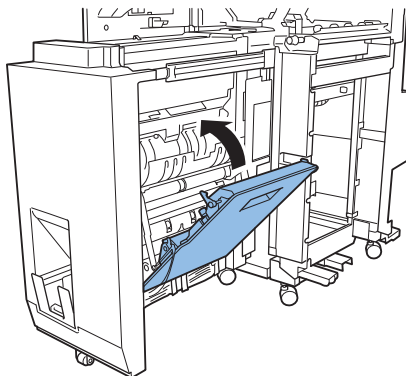
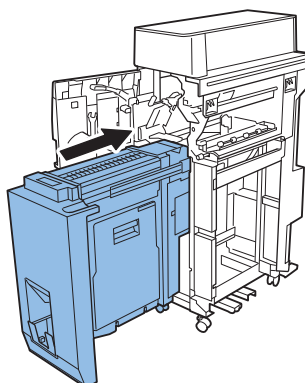
**12. Remove the 3 fixings on the front side of Folder Unit.****CAUTION:**

Folder Guide Plate (right) must be opened fully when removing the fixings. Do not pull them out forcibly.



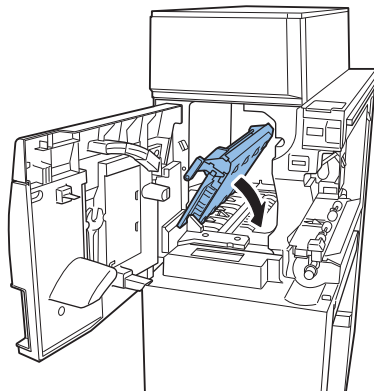
**13. Remove the 3 fixings on the rear side of Folder Unit.****CAUTION:**

Folder Guide Plate (right) must be opened fully when removing the fixings. Do not pull them out forcibly.

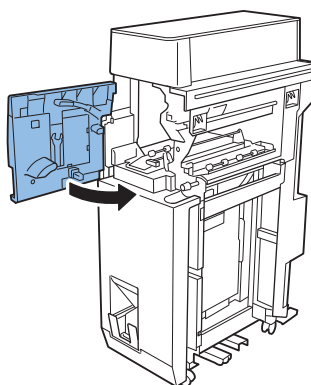
**14. Close Folder Guide Plate (right).****15. Return Folder Unit to the original position.**



16. While holding Jam Handling Lever, lower Transfer Guide.

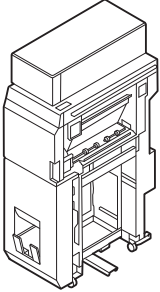


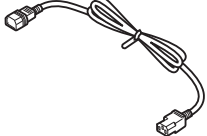
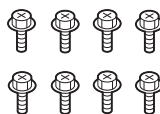

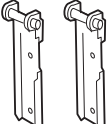


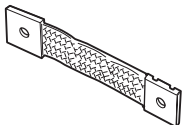
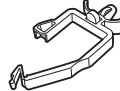
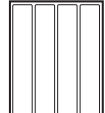
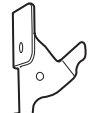


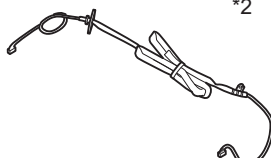



17. Close Front Upper Cover.






Checking the Contents

• Parts of Paper Folding Unit

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Paper Folding Unit x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Plug Cover x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (Binding; M4x7) x1 
	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Intermediate Power Cable x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) x8 *1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ground Plate x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Clamp Plate x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Positioning Pin x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (Binding; M4x10) x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Shunt Cable x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Wire Saddle x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Jam Handling Label x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Stopper (rear) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Stopper (front) x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Screw (Flat Head Screw; M3x5) x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Interface Cable x1 *2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Screw (W-Sems; M4x12) x1 *2 

• Parts of Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1 *3

<input type="checkbox"/> [18] Delivery Guide (Upper) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [19] Delivery Guide (Lower) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [20] Screw (P Tightening; M4x12) x2 
--	--	---

<Others>

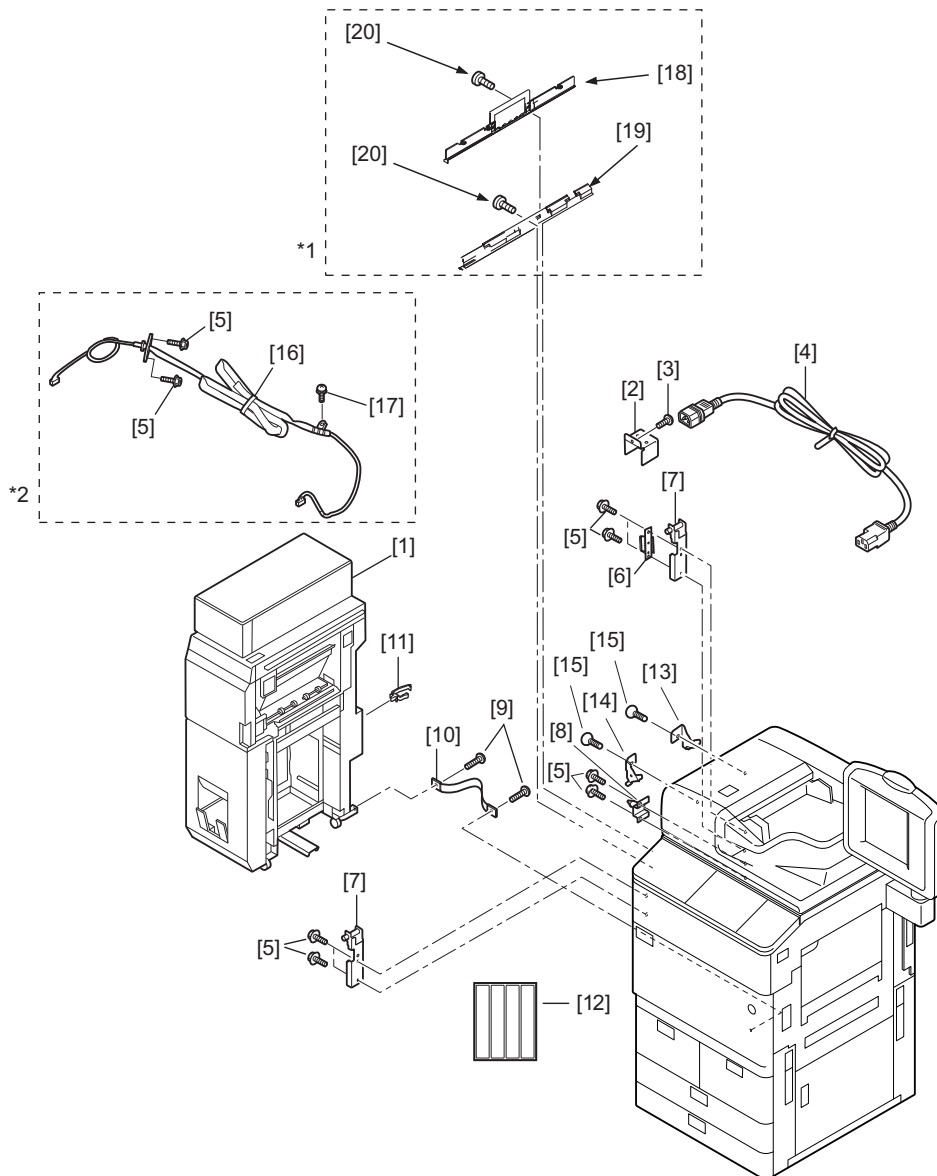
Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

*1: The 6 screws are used for Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1.

*1: The 8 screws are used for Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher- X1.

- *2: These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher- X1.
- *3: These are used when the Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1 is connected.

■ Installation Outline Drawing



- *1: These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1.
- *2: These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher-X1.

Installation Procedure

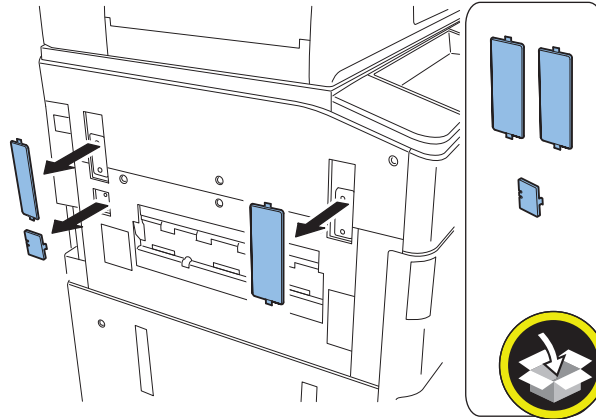
■ Preparation for Installation on Upstream Equipment

● Connecting to the Host Machine



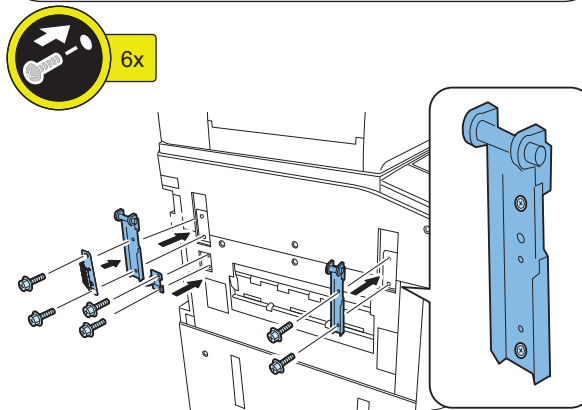
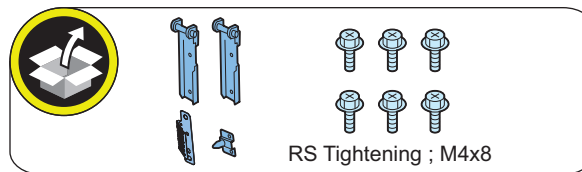
1. Remove the 3 face covers.

- 3 Claws



2. Fix the 2 Latch Catches and the Positioning Pin to the host machine. At this time, fix the supplied Ground Plate along with the rear Latch Catch in the rear side.

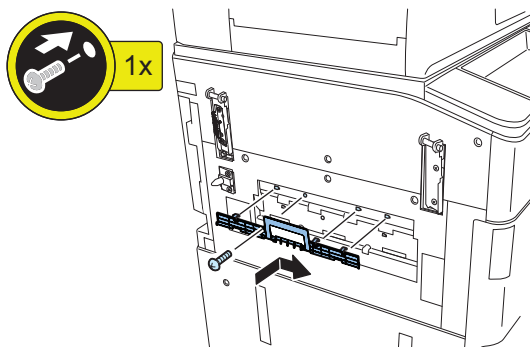
- 6 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)





3. When the Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1 is installed to the downstream side, fix the Delivery Guide (upper) which is supplied with the finisher.

- 3 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P Tightening ; M4x12)(supplied with the finisher)



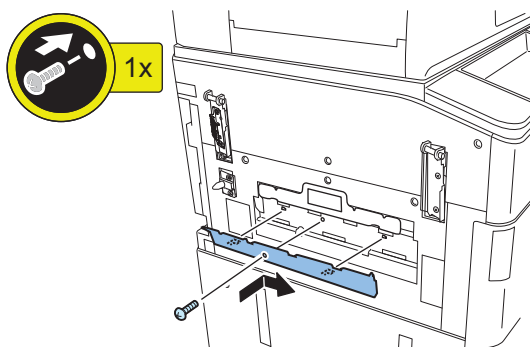
NOTE:

When the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 is installed to the downstream side, this step is unnecessary.



4. When the Staple Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1 is installed to the downstream side, fix the Delivery Guide (lower) which is supplied with the finisher.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M4x12)(supplied with the finisher)



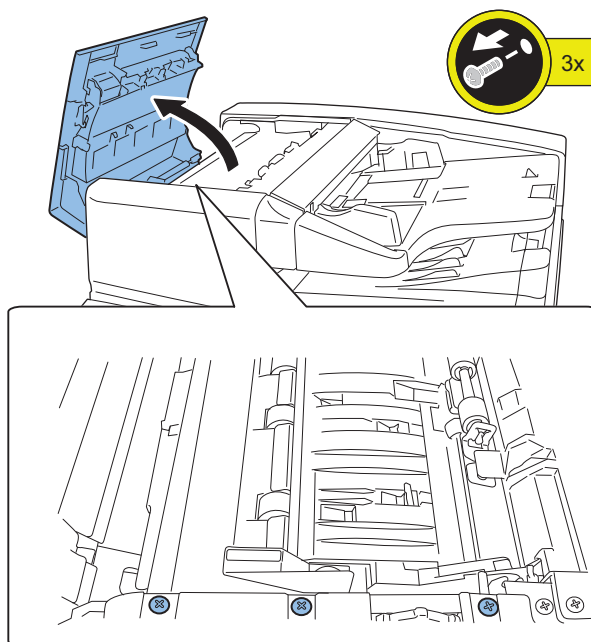
NOTE:

When the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 is installed to the downstream side, this step is unnecessary.

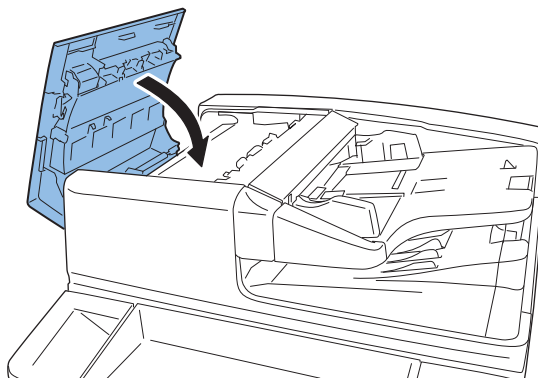


5. Open the feeder cover, and then remove screws.

- 3 Screws



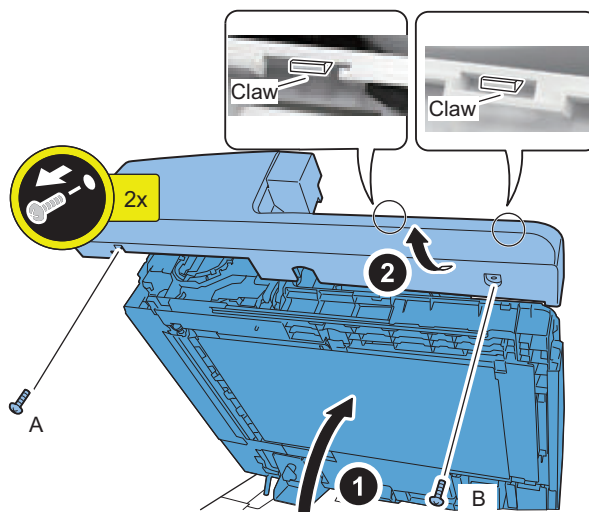
6. Close the feeder cover.





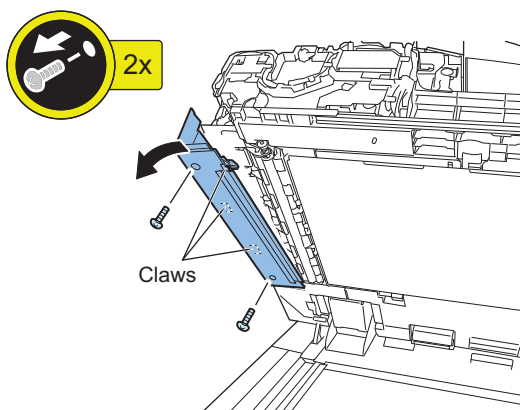
7. Open the ADF, and then remove the ADF front cover.

- 2 Screws [A]: Binding [B]: P Tightening
- 2 Claws



8. Remove the ADF left lower cover.

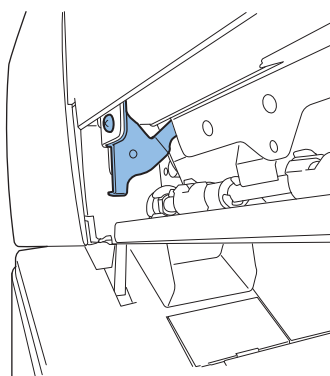
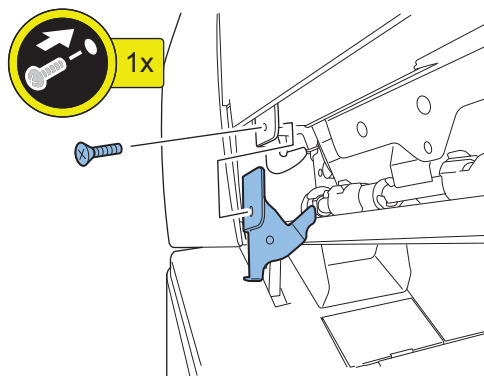
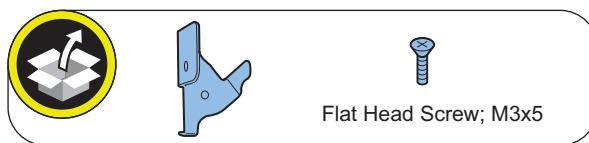
- 2 Screws
- 3 Claws





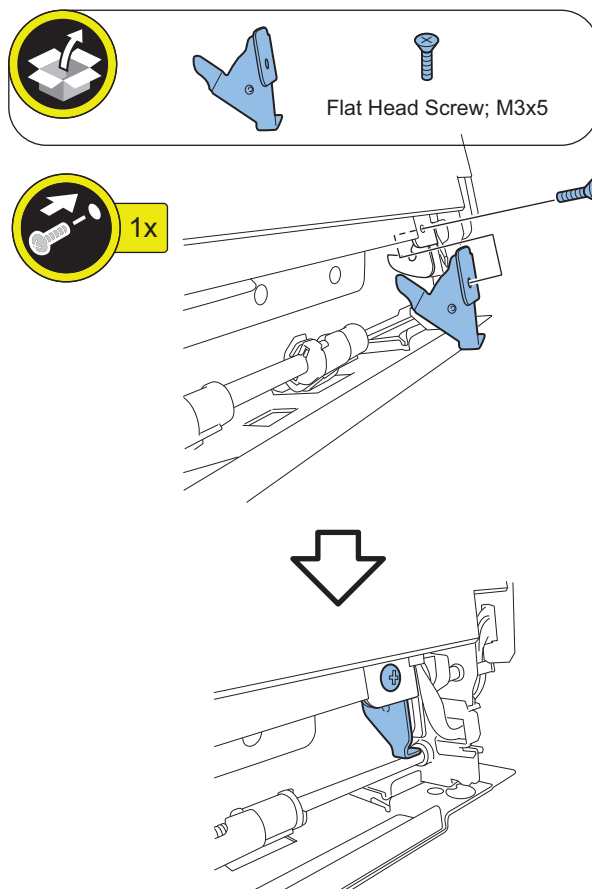
9. At the rear of the ADF, fix the Stopper (rear).

- 1 Screw (Flat Head screw ; M3x5)

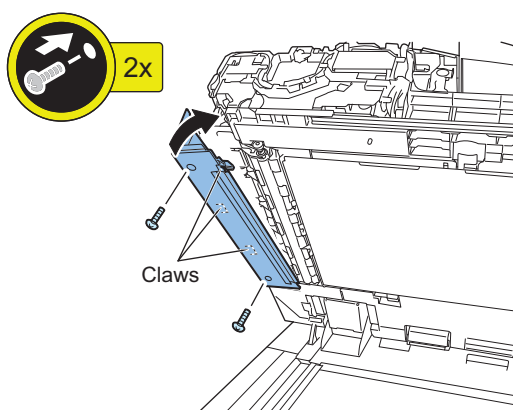


**10. At the front of the ADF, fix the Stopper (front).**

- 1 Screw (Flat Head screw ; M3x5)

**11. Install the ADF left lower cover.**

- 2 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)
- 3 Claws



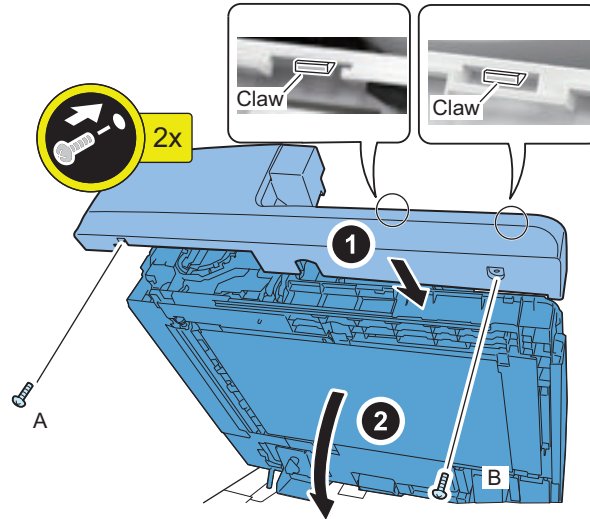


12. Install the ADF front cover, and then close the ADF.

- 2 Screws [A] Binding; M4x8, [B]P Tightening; M4x10
- 2 Claws

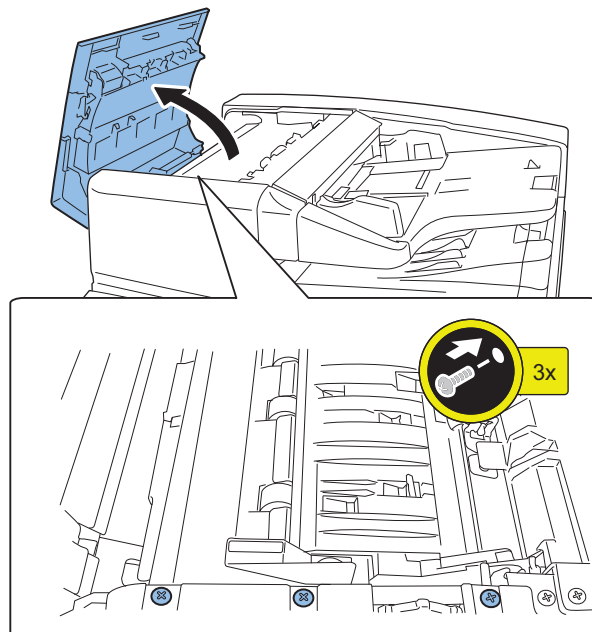
NOTE:

When the ADF front cover is fixed, be careful not to make a mistake in the screw to use.



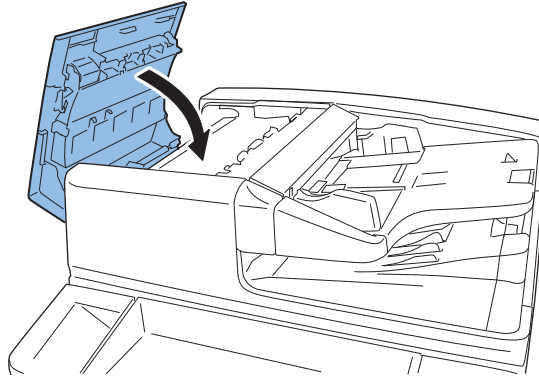
13. Open the feeder cover and install the screws.

- 3 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)





14. Close the feeder cover.

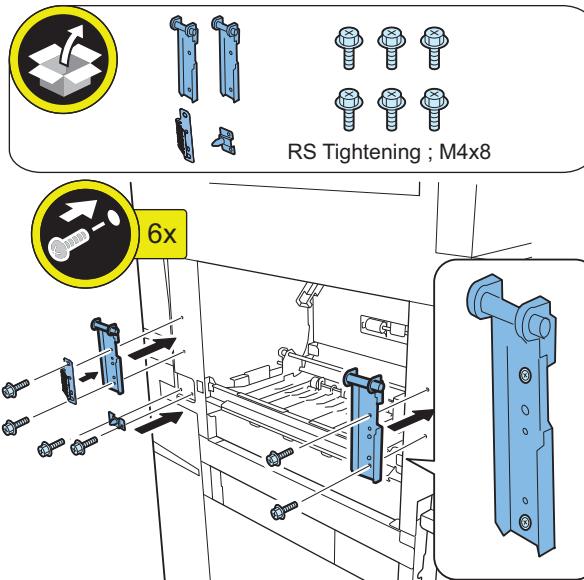


• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit



1. Fix the 2 Latch Catches and the Positioning Pin to the Document Insertion Unit. At this time, fix the Ground Plate along with the Latch Catch in the rear side.

- 6 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

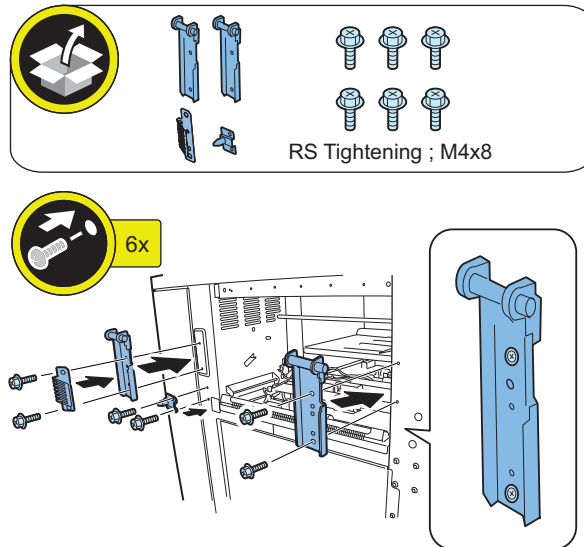


● Connecting to Multi Function Professional Puncher



1. Fix the 2 Latch Catches and the Positioning Pin to Multi Function Professional Puncher. At this time, fix the Ground Plate along with the Latch Catch in the rear side.

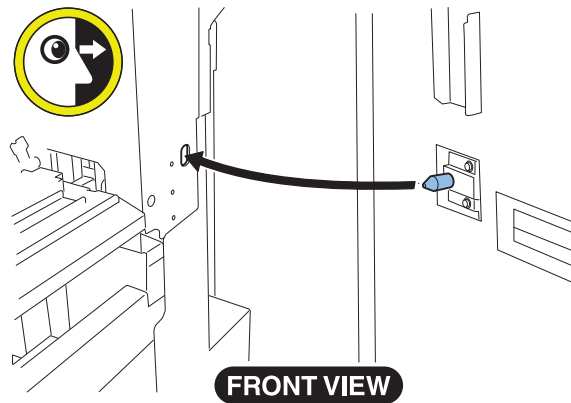
- 6 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)



■ Connecting to Upstream Equipment



1. Fit this equipment to the upstream equipment by inserting the Positioning Pin of the upstream equipment into the hole of this equipment.

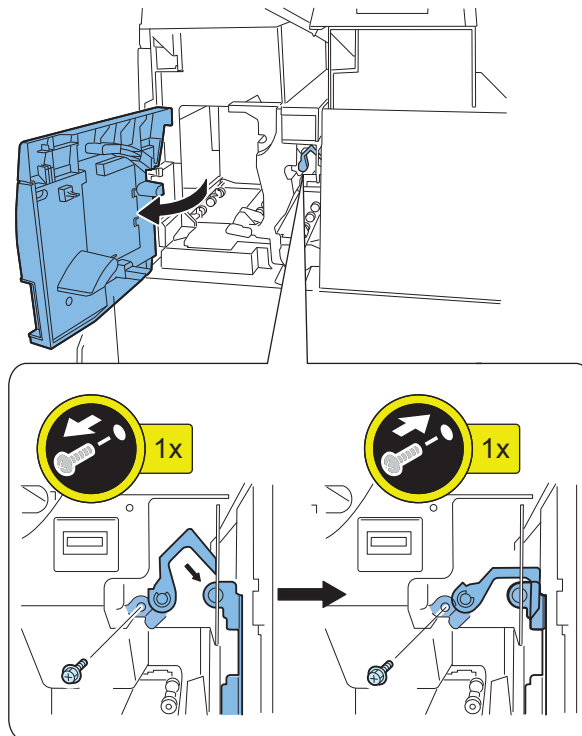




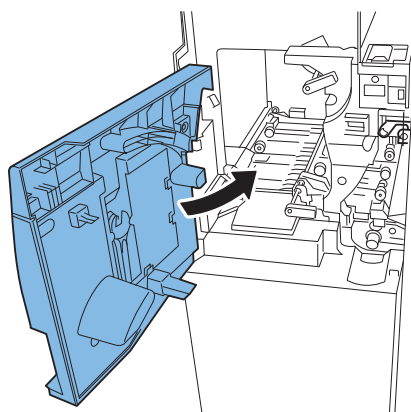
2. Open the front upper cover. Remove 1 screw and take down the lock lever, and hook it on the Latch Catch. Fix the lock lever with the removed screw.

NOTE:

When it is hard to hook the lock lever to the Latch Catch, use screw drivers.



3. Close the front upper cover.



■ Connecting the Interface Cable

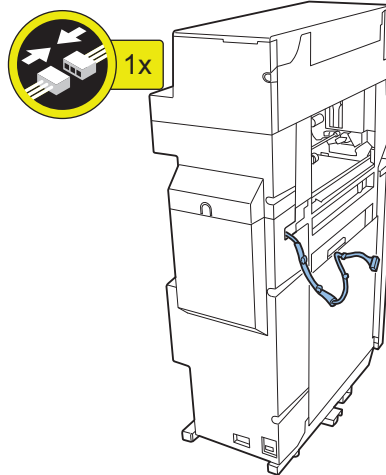
● Connecting to Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1

NOTE:

For connecting the Interface Cable, refer to the Finisher's Installation Procedure.



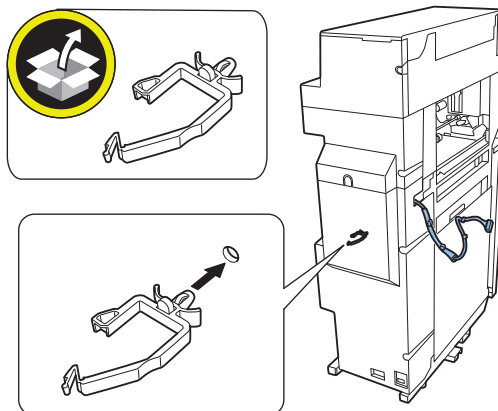
1. Connect the interface cable of this equipment to the finisher.



2. Install the wire saddle at the hole in the rear lower cover.

NOTE:

The Wire Saddle is used to stow the cable of the finisher.

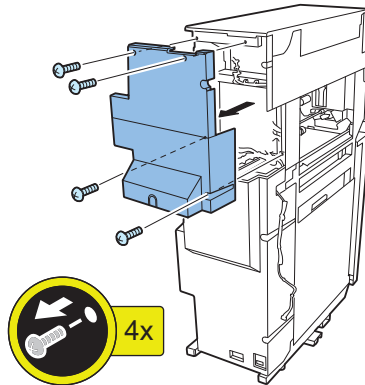


• Connecting to Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher-X1



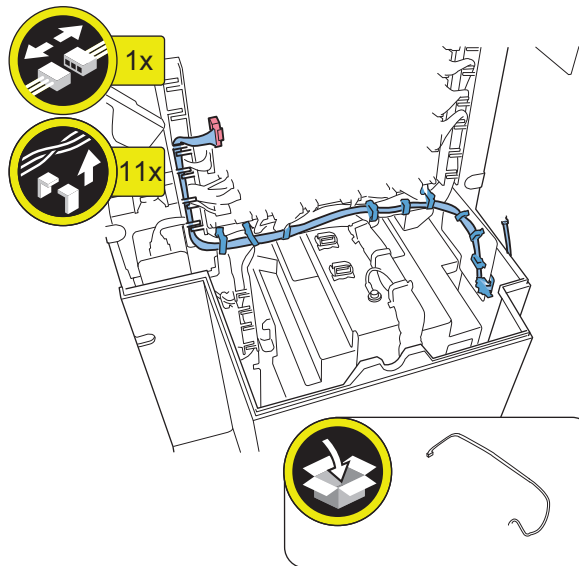
1. Remove the rear upper cover.

- 4 Screws



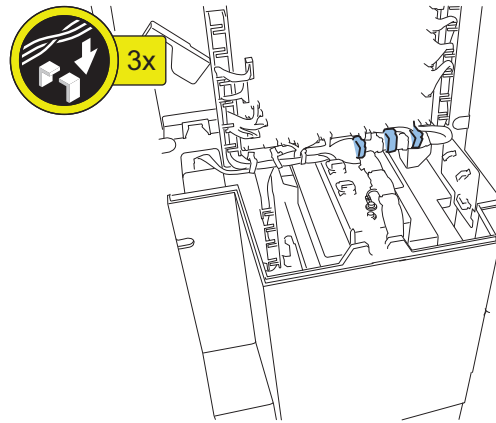
2. Disconnect the Interface Cable.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Guide
- 9 Wire Saddles
- 1 Edge Saddle



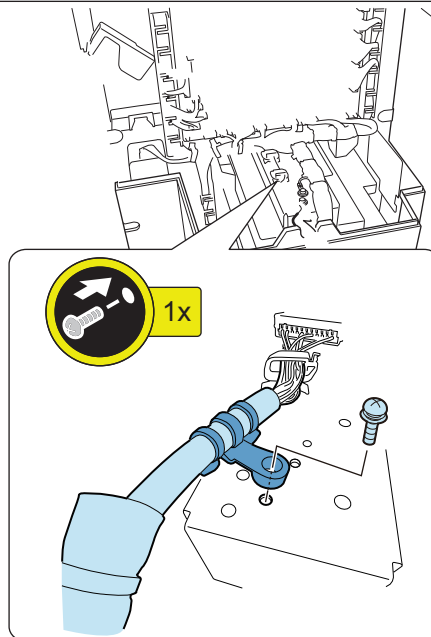
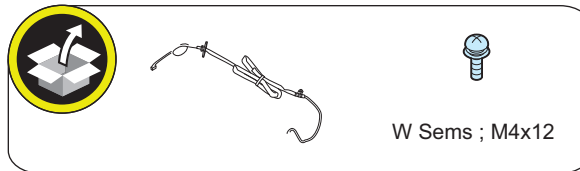


3. Close the 3 Wire Saddle removed in Step 2.



4. Fix the Interface Cable.

- 1 Screw (W-Sems ; M4x12)

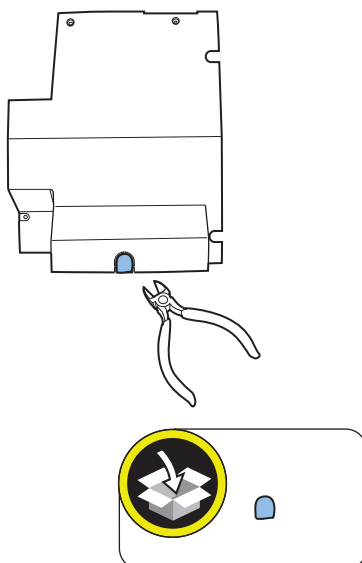


**5. Connect Interface Cable connector to the board.**

- 1 Connector
- 1 Guide
- 5 Wire Saddles

**6. Cut out the face cover of the rear upper cover with the side cutters.****CAUTION:**

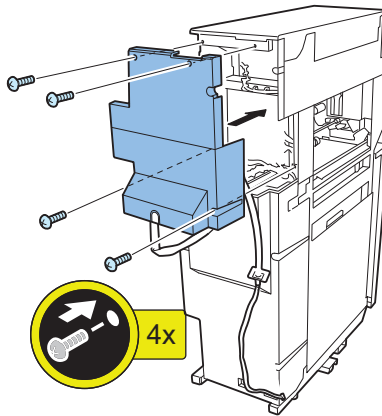
Be sure to check that there is no burr.



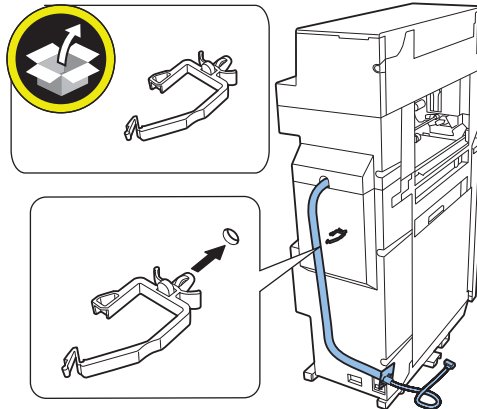


7. Put the Interface Cable through the hole which was cut in the previous step, and then restore the rear upper cover.

- 4 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)



8. Fix the Wire Saddle to the rear lower cover.

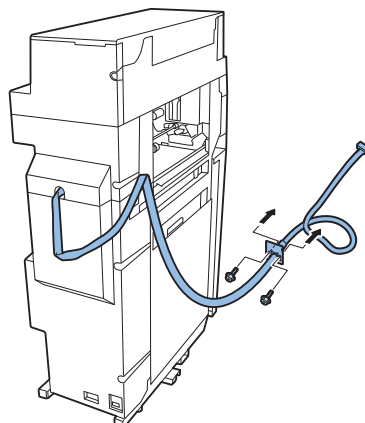


9. Connect the Interface Cable to the finisher.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)

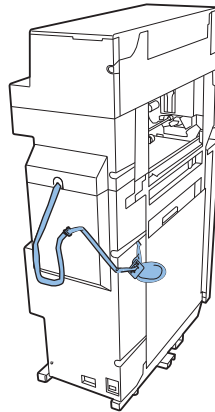
NOTE:

Perform this step and the next step 10 when this equipment is connected to the finisher. For connecting the Interface Cable, refer to the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 Installation Procedure.





10. Stow the excess length of the Interface Cable connected to the finisher into the Wire Saddle.



■ Connecting the Intermediate Power Cable

● Connecting to Finisher-W1/ Booklet Finisher-W1

NOTE:

Carry out these steps after connecting this equipment and the finisher.

⚠ CAUTION:

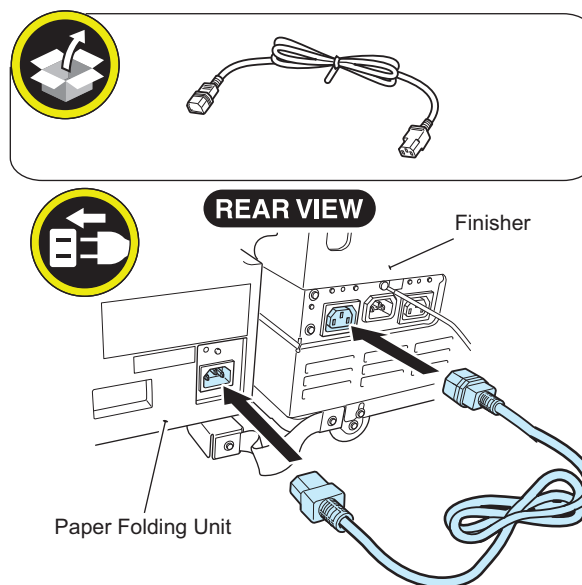
Make sure that the Intermediate Power Cable is fully connected to the outlet. Also, make sure to install the plug cover. If the connection is not right, an accident causing the smoke or fire may occur.



1. Connect both ends of the Intermediate Power Cable to the sockets on the equipment and the socket on the finisher.

NOTE:

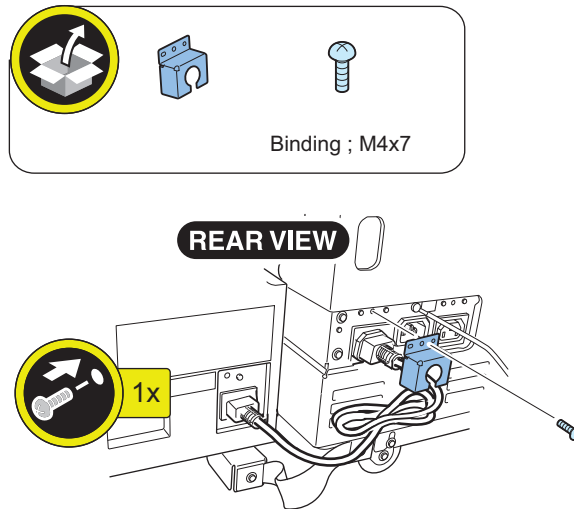
Use the outlet of this equipment side for connecting to the finisher.





2. Install the Plug Cover on the socket of the finisher.

- 1 Screw (Binding ; M4x7)



• Connecting to Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher-X1

NOTE:

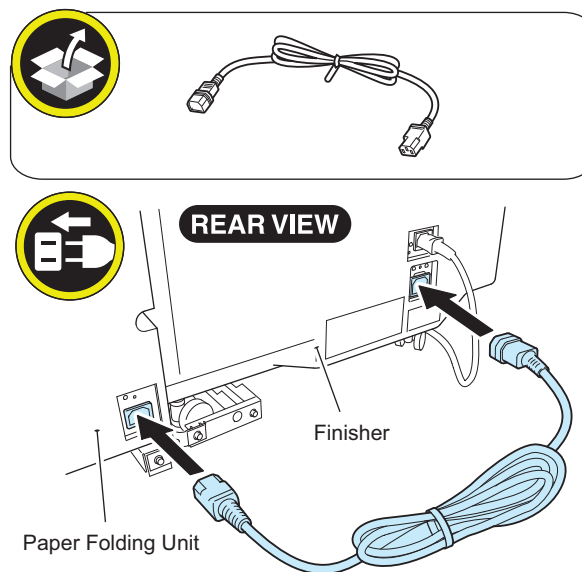
Carry out these steps after connecting this equipment and the finisher.

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the Intermediate Power Cable is fully connected to the outlet. Also, make sure to install the plug cover. If the connection is not right, an accident causing the smoke or fire may occur.



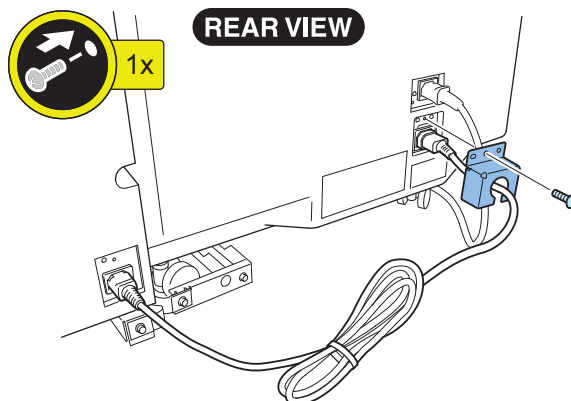
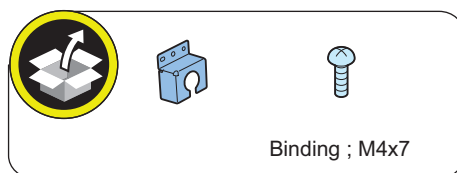
1. Connect both ends of the Intermediate Power Cable to the sockets on the equipment and the socket on the finisher.





2. Install the Plug Cover on the socket of the finisher.

- 1 Screw (Binding ; M4x7)

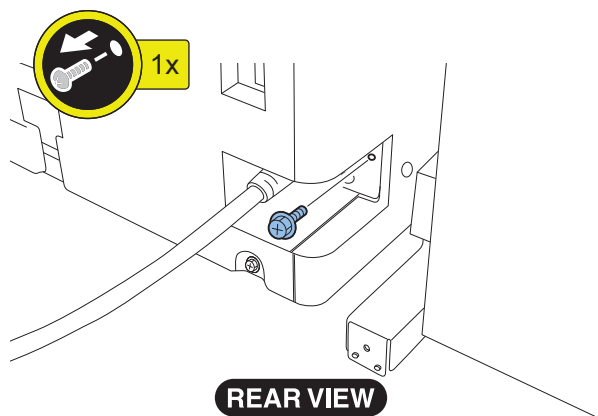


■ Connecting the Shunt Cable

● Connecting to the Host Machine



- 1. Remove the screw at the rear lower position of the host machine.**



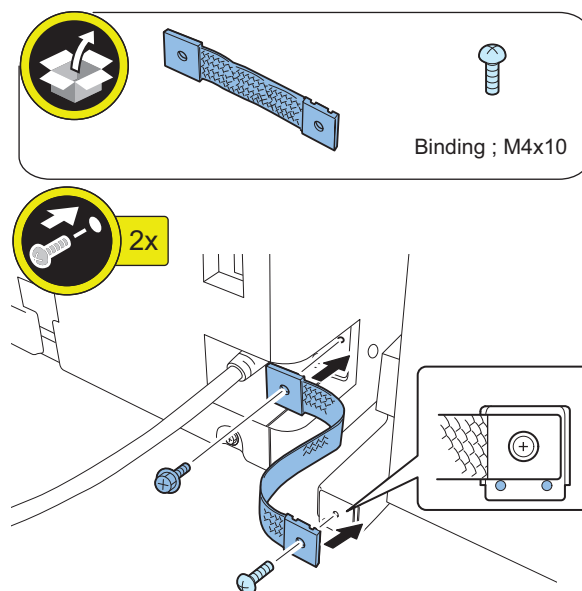


2. Fix the Shunt Cable at the rear bottom of the host machine and this equipment.

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening ; M4x10) (removed in Step 1.)

NOTE:

When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



• **Connecting to Document Insertion Unit**

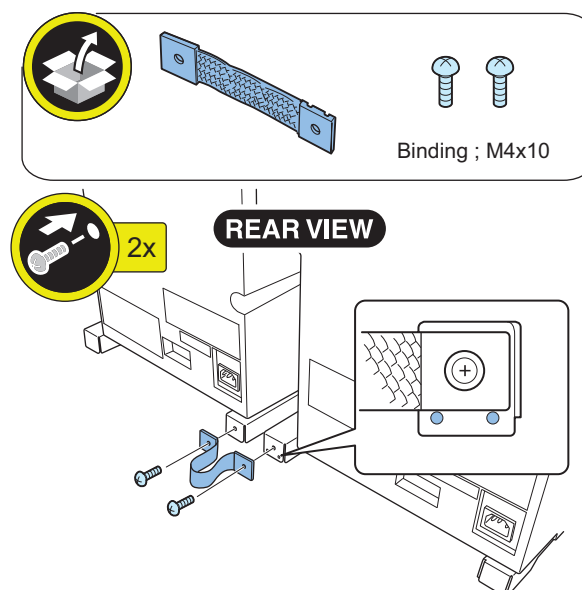


1. Fix the Shunt Cable to the rear bottom of this equipment and Document Insertion Unit.

- 2 Screws (Binding ; M4x10)

NOTE:

When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



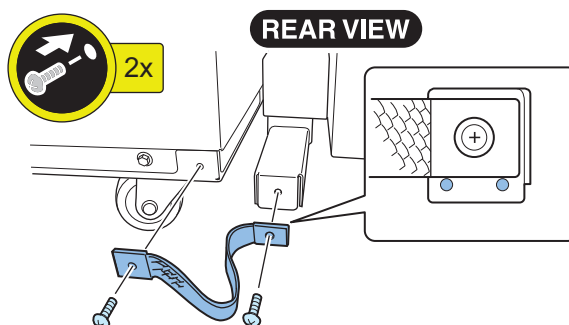
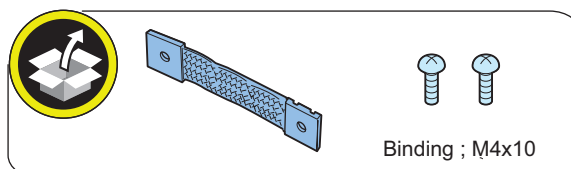
• Connecting to Multi Function Professional Puncher



1. Fix the shunt cable to the rear bottom of this equipment and Multi Function Professional Puncher.
 - 2 Screws (Binding, M4 x 10)

NOTE:

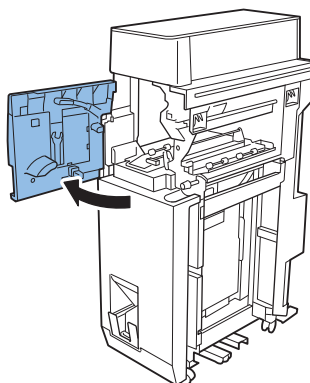
When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



■ Attaching the Label

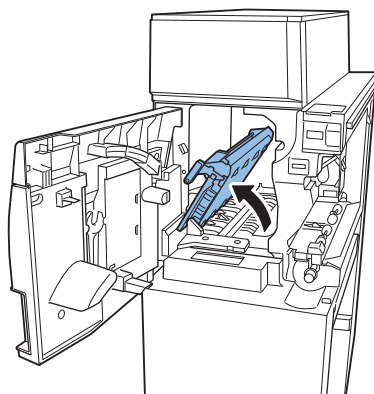


1. Open the front upper cover.

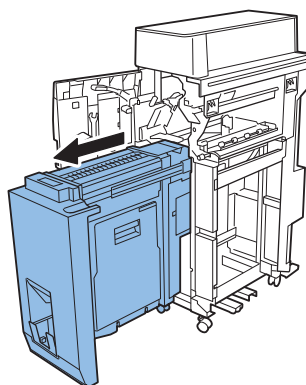




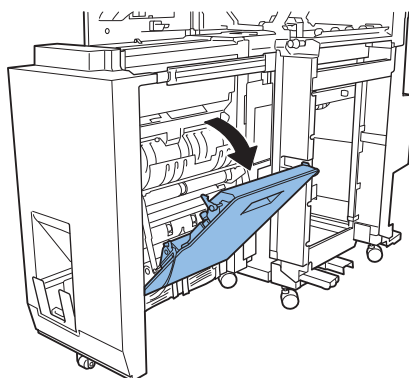
2. While holding the jam handling lever, open the transfer guide.



3. Pull out the folder unit.

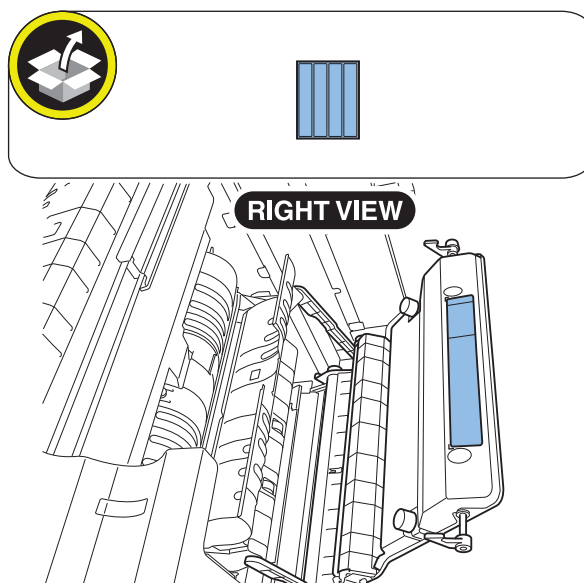


4. Open the folder guide plate (right) fully by two steps.

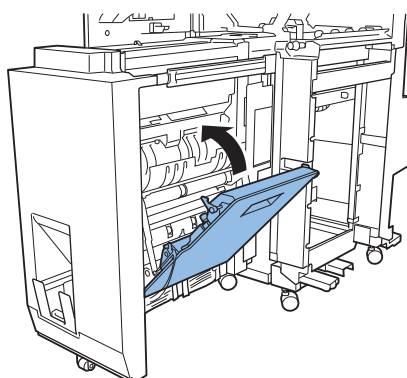




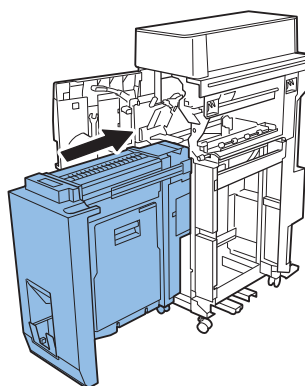
5. Affix the Jam Handling label fitting in the appropriate language to the notch as shown in the figure.



6. Close the folder guide plate (right).

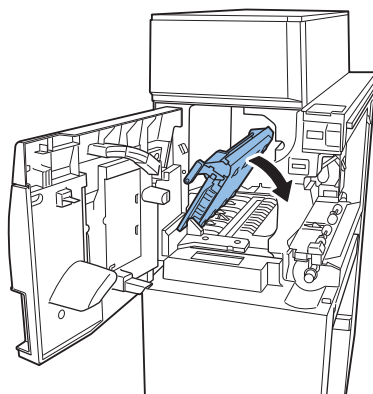


7. Return the folder unit to the original position.

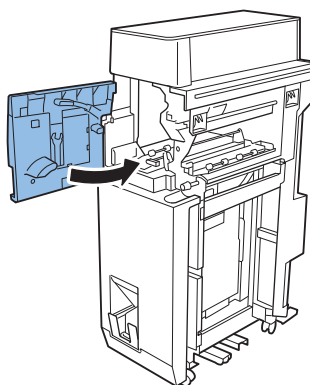




8. While holding the jam handling lever, open the transfer guide.



9. Close the front upper cover.



Adjustment

■ Height/ Inclination Checking and Adjustment

NOTE:

- An improperly adjusted height or inclination could result in jams frequently occurring at the paper folding unit inlet.

CAUTION:

If the height and inclination of the equipment and the connected host machine are not within their standards, adjust them.

• Height Check

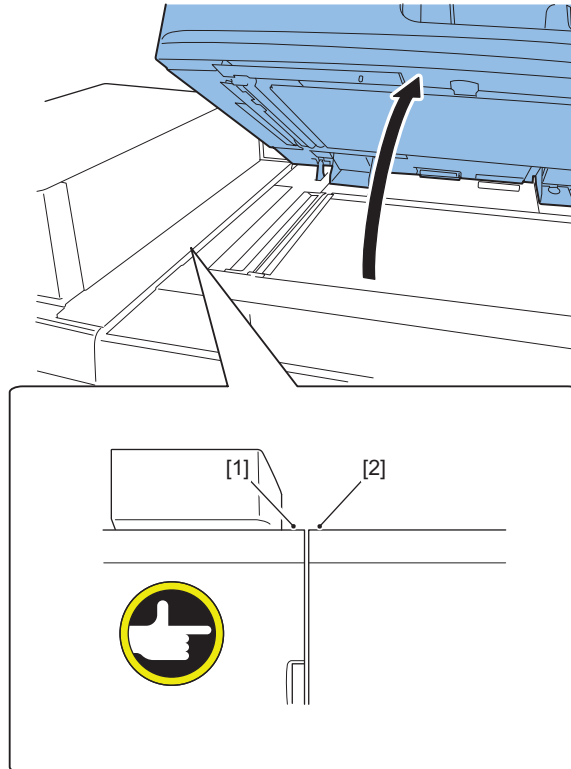
For Host Machine



1. Open the ADF, check whether the difference of the height between [1] and [2] is $0 \pm 3\text{mm}$.

[1]: Right upper surface of the inserter

[2]: Left upper surface of the host machine



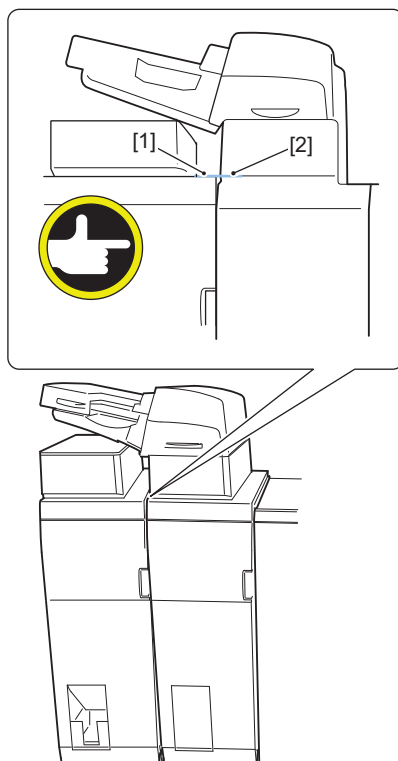
For Other Upstream Equipment



1. Check whether the difference of the height between [1] and [2] is $0 \pm 3\text{mm}$.

[1]: Right upper surface of this equipment

[2]: Left upper surface of the upstream equipment

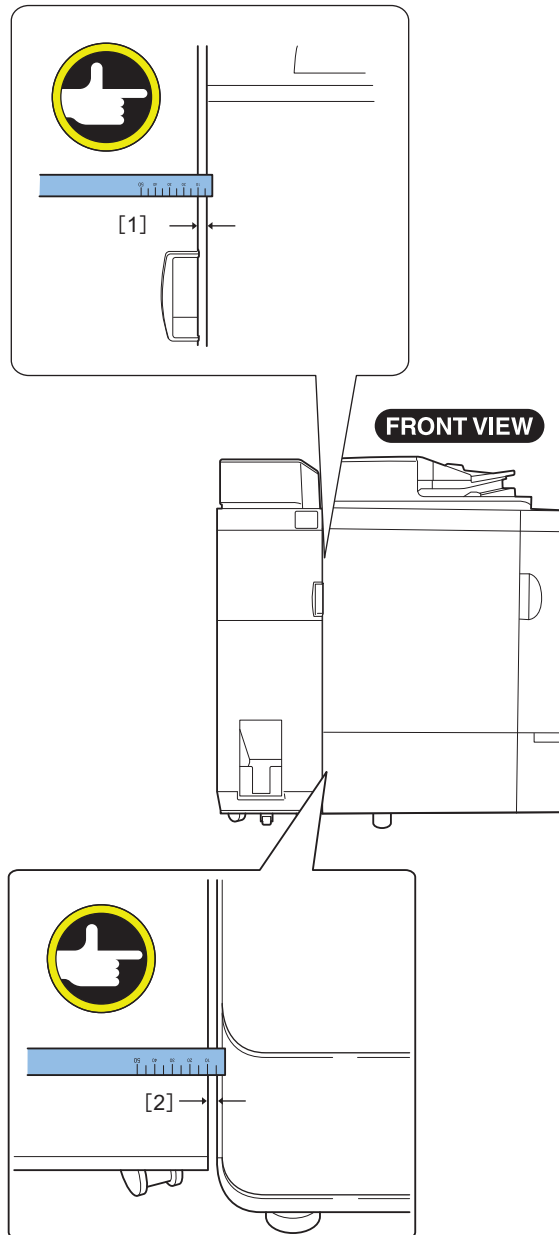


• Inclination Check



1. Check whether the difference of the gap between [1] and [2] is $0\pm 2\text{mm}$ (front side).

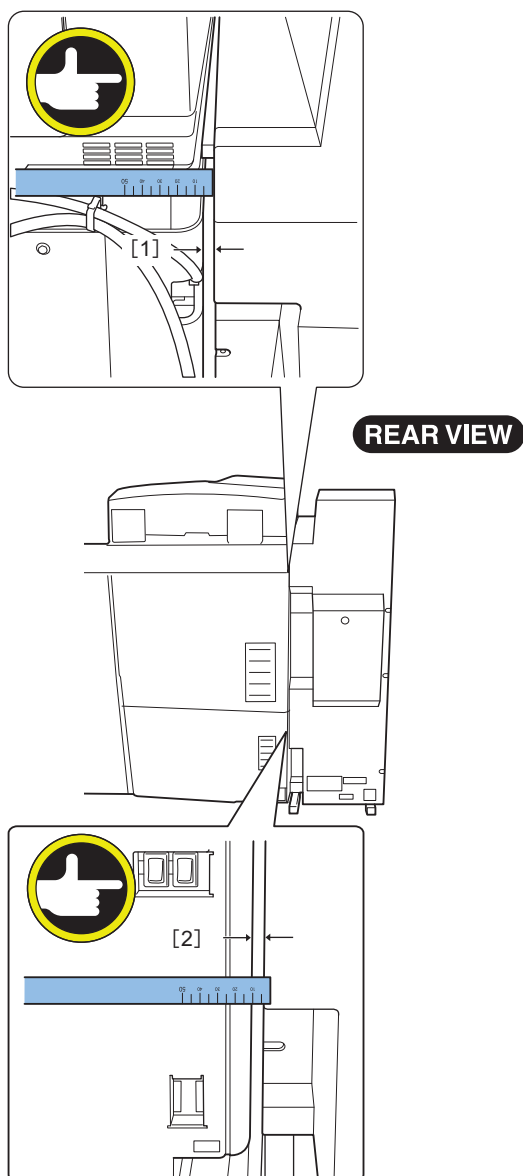
- [1]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (upper)
- [2]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (lower)





2. Check whether the difference of the gap between [1] and [2] is $0\pm 2\text{mm}$ (rear side).

- [1]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (upper)
- [2]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (lower)



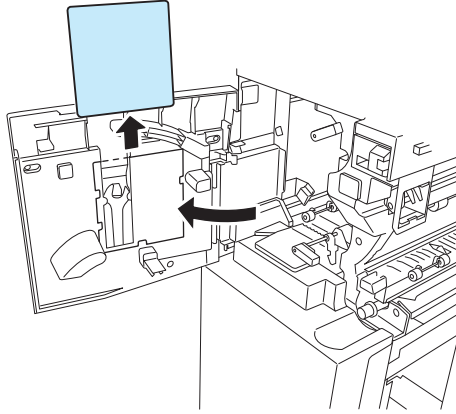
• Height Adjustment

NOTE:

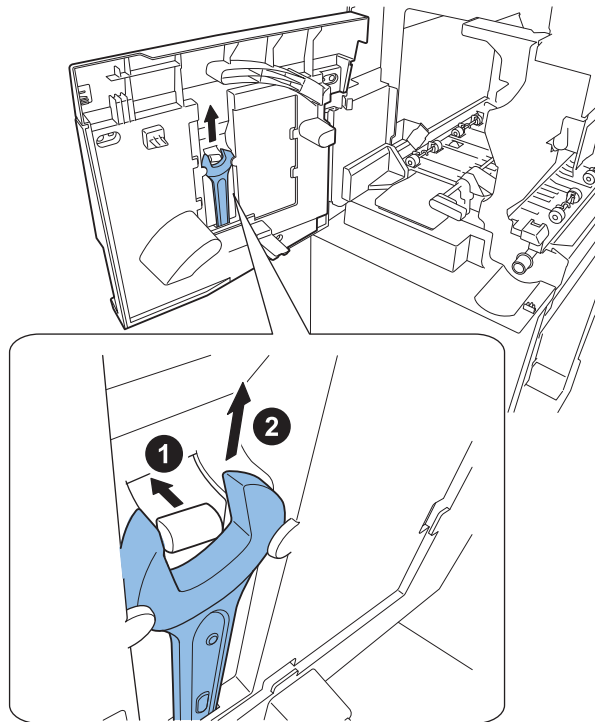
After completing this adjustment, be sure to perform the procedure of "Adjusting the Caster Roller Height of the Folder Unit".



1. Open the front upper cover and remove the jam recovery map.



2. Remove the wrench from the front upper cover.

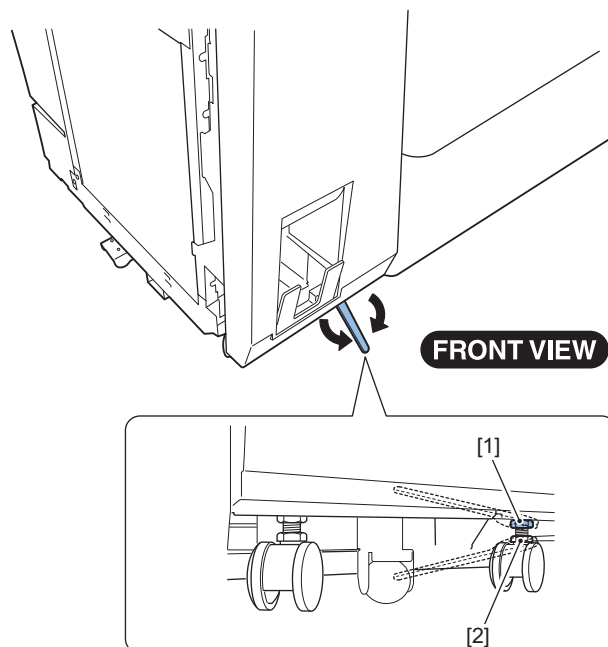




3. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the front side (upstream equipment side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

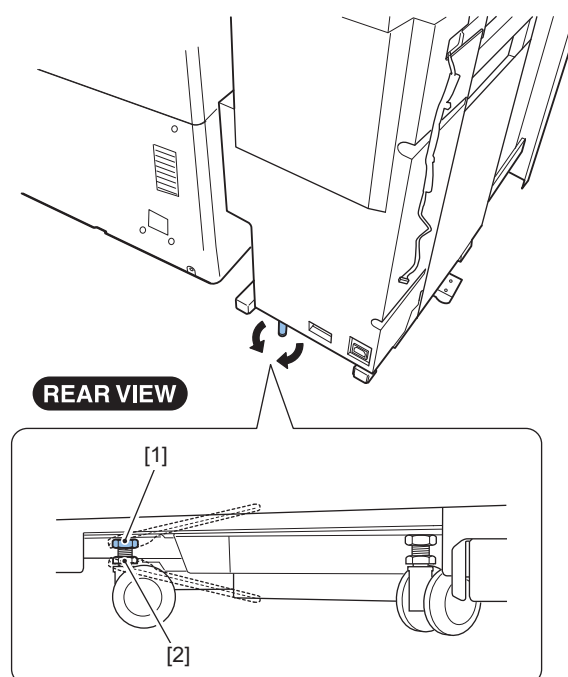
- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.



4. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the rear side (upstream equipment side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.





5. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the caster (upstream equipment side).

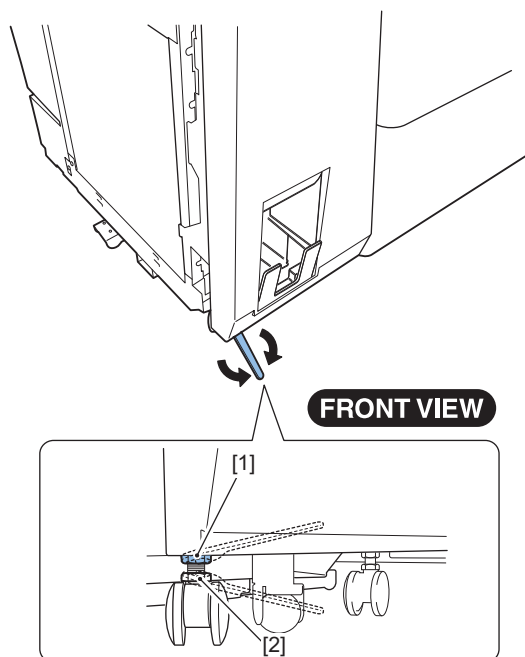
• Inclination Adjustment



1. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the front side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

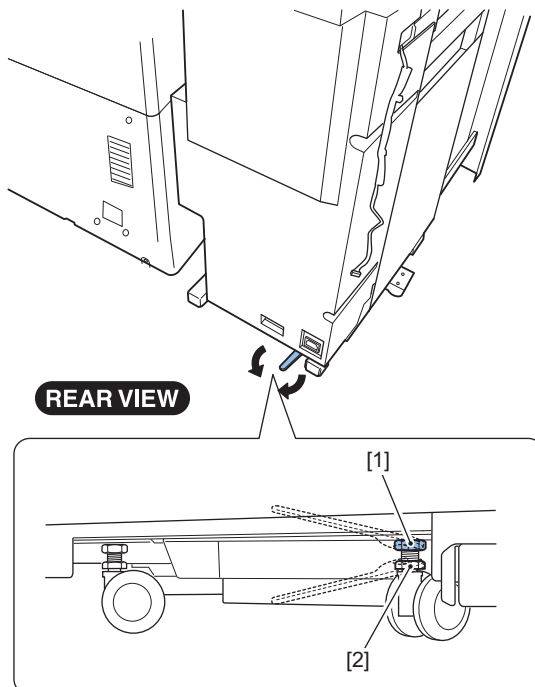
- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to incline toward the paper ejection side, and clockwise to incline toward the upstream equipment side.



-
2. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the rear side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

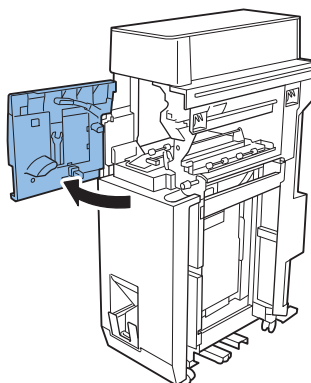
- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to incline toward the paper ejection side, and clockwise to incline toward the upstream equipment side.



-
3. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the caster (paper ejection side).

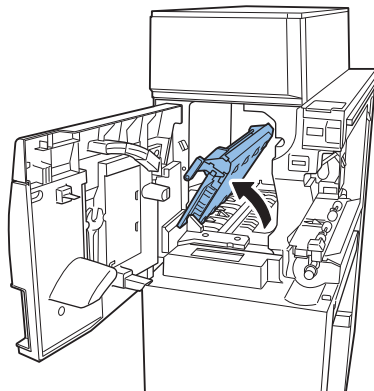
• **Adjusting the Caster Roller Height of the Folder Unit**

-
1. Open the front upper cover.

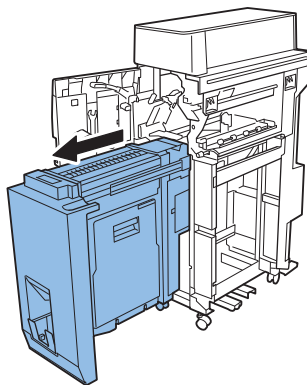




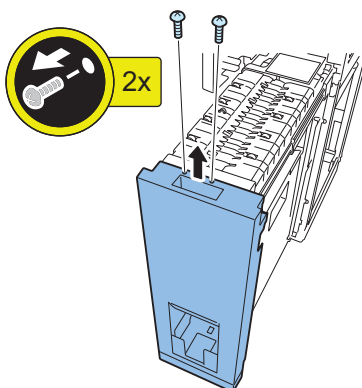
2. While holding the jam handling lever, open the transfer guide.



3. Pull out the folder unit.



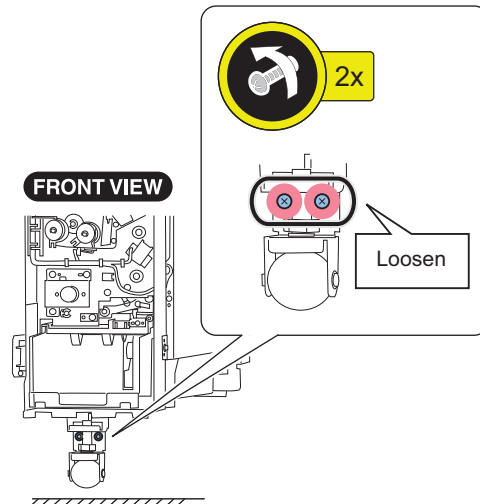
4. Remove the folder front cover.
• 2 Screws



5. Return the folder unit to the original position.



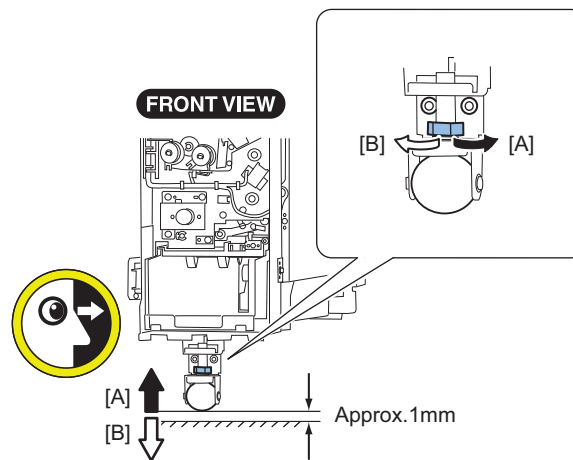
6. Loosen the 2 screws of the caster roller.



7. Adjust the height of the caster roller by turning the nut so that the space between the caster roller and the floor becomes about 1mm.

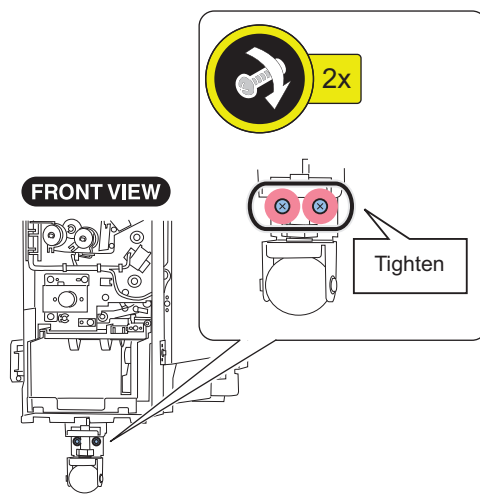
NOTE:

Turn the nut counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to increase the height of the caster roller, and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to reduce the height of the caster roller.



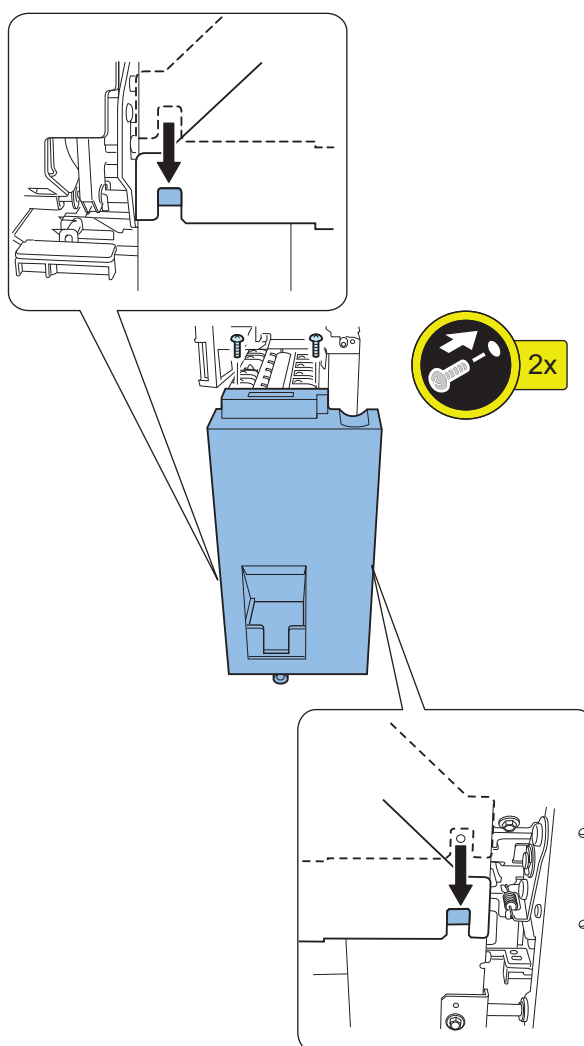


8. After adjustment, tighten the 2 screws of the caster roller.



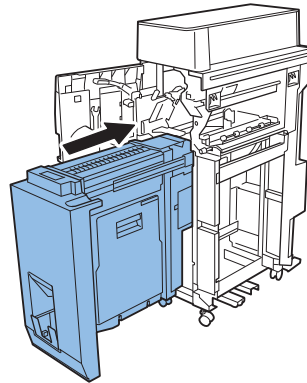
9. Pull out the folder unit. Fix the folder front cover while fitting it to both side of the hook.

- 2 Screws (Binding ; M4x7)

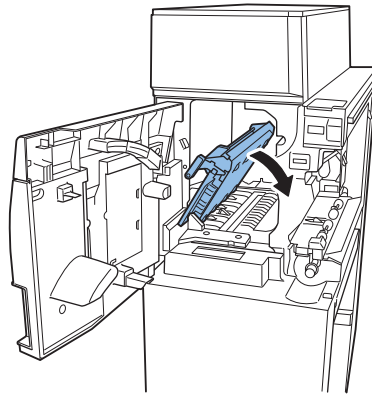




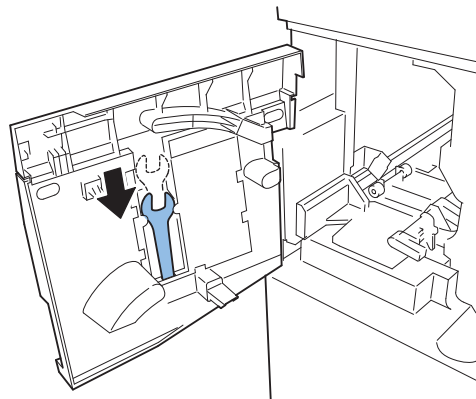
10. Return the folder unit to the original position.



11. While holding the jam handling lever, close the transfer guide.

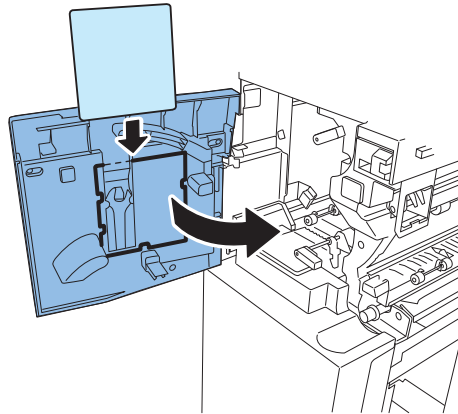


12. Return the wrench to the front upper cover.





13. Return the jam recovery map and close the front upper cover.



● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

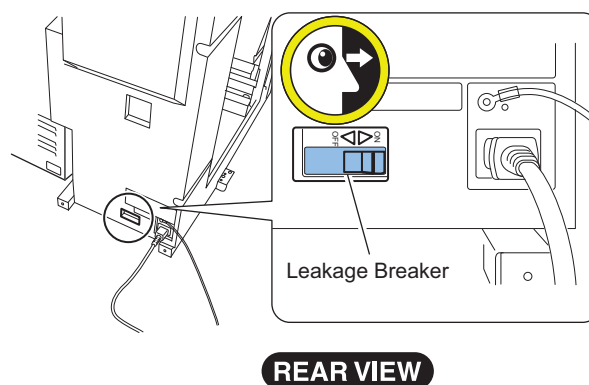
1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- When connected to Host Machine (upstream equipment)
 - [1] Face cover of the host machine 3pcs.
 - [2] Screw (Binding; M4x10) 1pc.
 - [3] Remaining Language Jam label 1pc.
- When connected to Insertion Unit (upstream equipment)
 - [1] Stopper (front) 1pc.
 - [2] Stopper (rear) 1pc.
 - [3] Screw (Flat Head Screw; M3x5) 2pcs.
 - [4] Remaining Language Jam label 1pc.
- When connected to the Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher-X1 (downstream equipment)
 - [1] Removed Interface Cable 1pc.
 - [2] Removed face cover 1pc.
- When connected to the Staple Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1 (downstream equipment)
 - [1] Interface Cable 1pc.
 - [2] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) 2pcs.
 - [3] Screw (W Sems; M4x12) 1pc

■ Operation Checks



1. When all the installations have completed, check that the Leakage Breaker is turned ON.





2. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. Check for Z-fold, C-fold, outer threefold, four-fold, and two-fold operations.

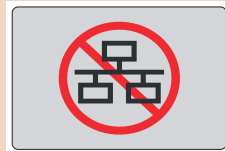
Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO

● Checking before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

CAUTION:

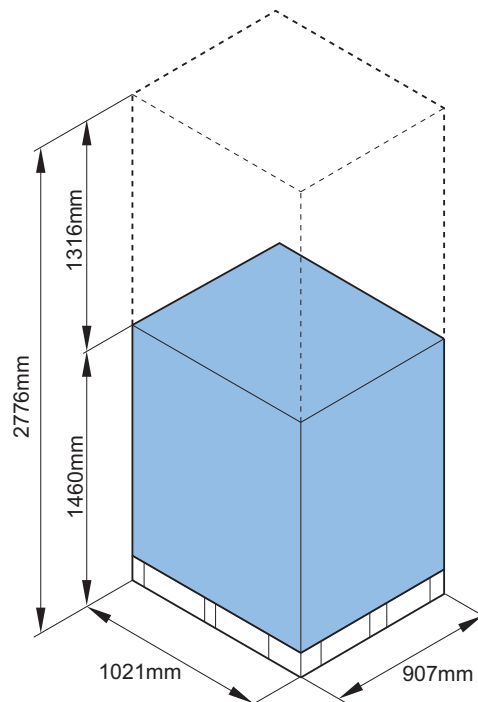
- When installing this equipment to the Puncher Unit, be sure to do so before connecting it to the host machine.
- The label shown below is attached to locations where connection of a network cable is prohibited. Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.



■ Checking the Unpacking Space

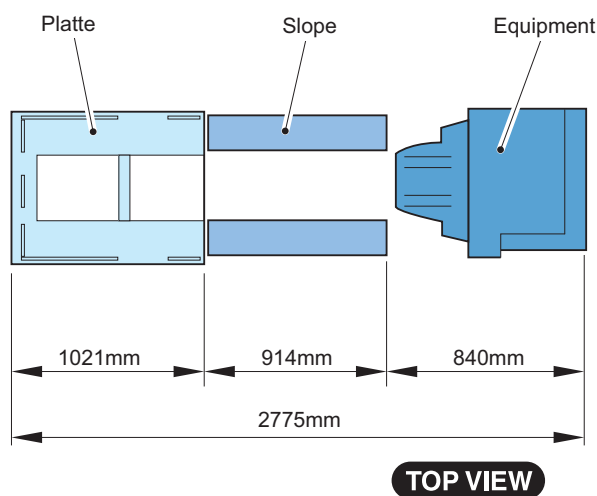
The dimensions shown in the figure below are the minimum space required. Thus it is desirable to secure more space for the work than shown in the figure below.

1. When unpacking in the room, the following space is required to remove the packaging box.



2. The following space is needed when the equipment is lifted down from pallet.

- Pallet
- Slope Plate
- This equipment



■ Check When Connecting the Power Plug to an Outlet

1. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
2. Be sure to install this equipment near an outlet so that the power plug can be disconnected right away in case of emergency, and do not put anything around the power plug.

■ Points to Note When Moving This Equipment

When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

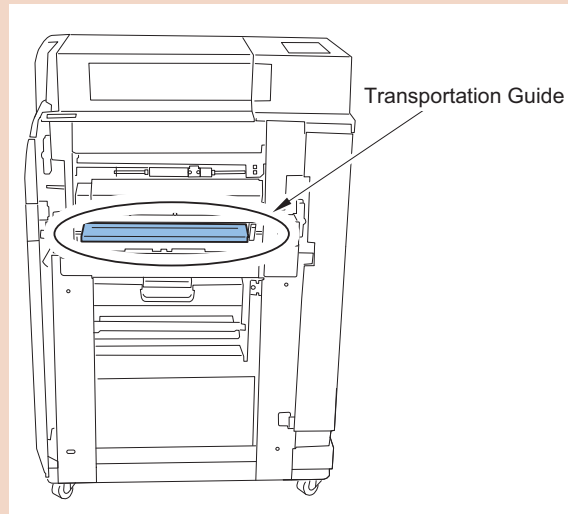
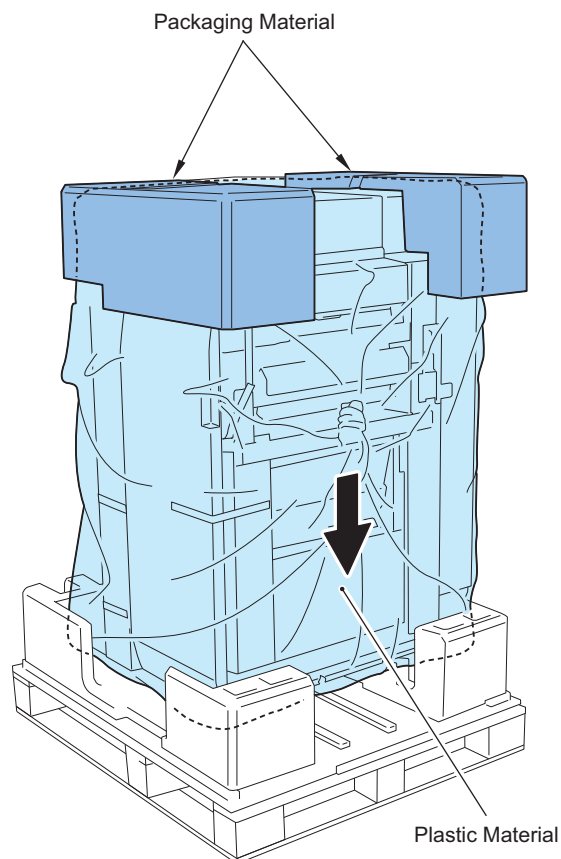
● Unpacking



1. Remove the packaging box.

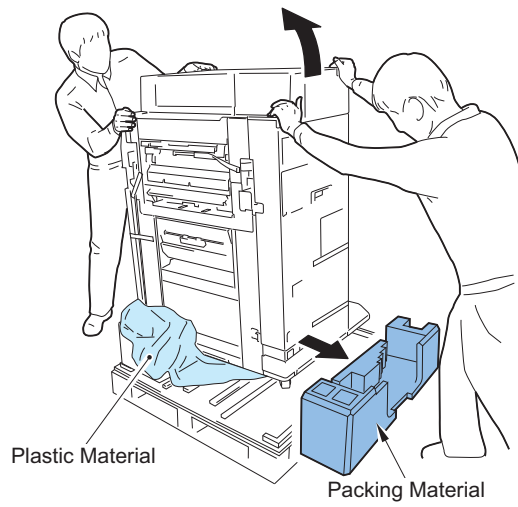
**2. Take out the included box.****CAUTION:**

When unpacking, do not hold the Feed Guides, otherwise, the equipment may be deformed or damaged depending on the holding positions.

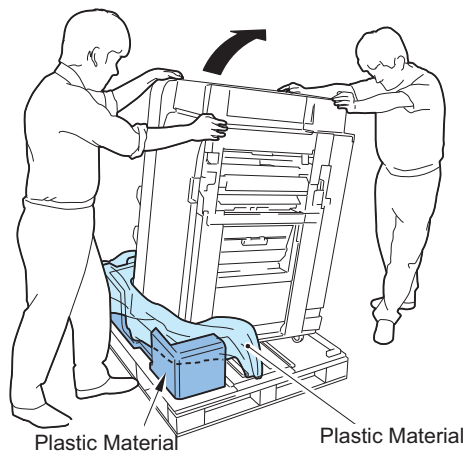
**3. Remove the packaging material at the top of the equipment and pull down the plastic material to the bottom.**



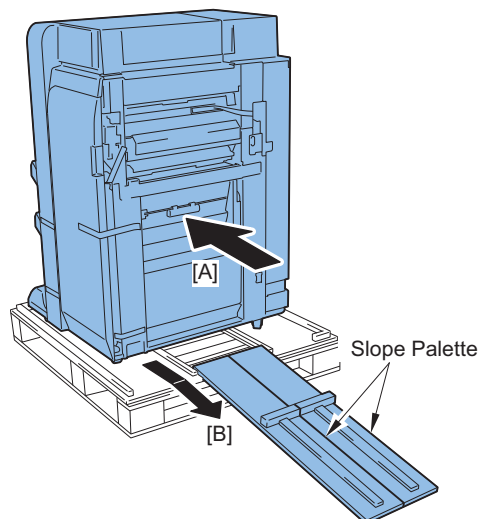
4. Lift up one side to remove the packaging material at the bottom, move the plastic material to one side, and then slowly lower the equipment to the floor.



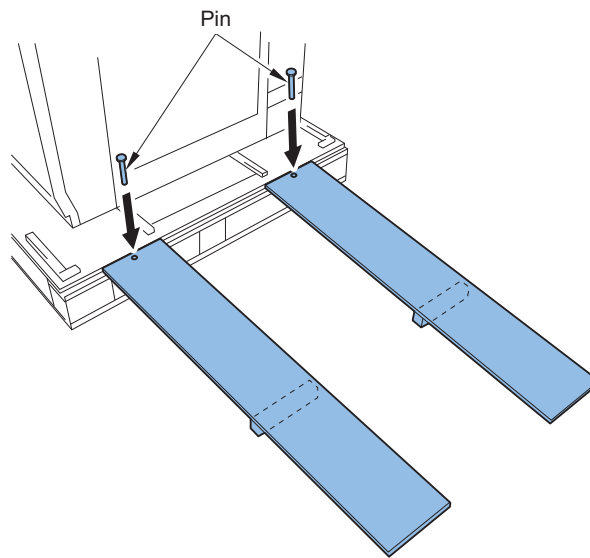
5. Lift up the other side in the same way, and remove the packaging material and plastic material.



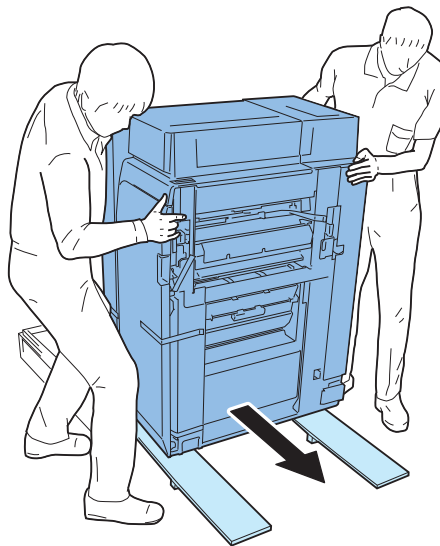
6. Move the equipment in the direction of the arrow [A], and pull out the 2 Slope Plates stored on the center of the pallet in the direction of the arrow [B].












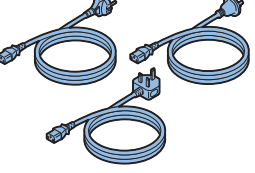

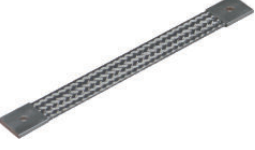



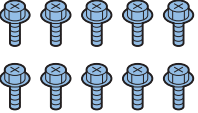






-
- 7. Remove the 2 pins attached to the backside of a Slope Plate with tape.**
-
- 8. Turn the Slope Plates over, and align the pin holes in the pallet and those in the Slope Plates to insert the 2 pins.**



-
- 9. Move the equipment off the pallet by sliding it slowly down the Slope Plates.**



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Finisher X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Latch Receiver (Front) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Latch Receiver (Rear) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Positioning Pin X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Delivery Guide Down X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] LAN Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cover Spacer X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Delivery Guide Up X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Main Body Staple Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Power Cord X 3 Included in Europe, Asia/Oceania 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Power Cord X 1 Included in USA 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Shunt Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Screw (P tightening; M4x12) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Guide Map Label X 1 For Staple Finisher 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Guide Map Label X 1 For Booklet Finisher 	<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Screw (RS tightening; M4x10) X 10 
<input type="checkbox"/> [20] Blind Sheet X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Wire Saddle X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] Saddle Staple Cartridge X 2 Booklet Finisher only 	<input type="checkbox"/> [19] Saddle Staple Cartridge X 3 
<input type="checkbox"/> [21] LED Lamp Label X 1 EUR only 	<input type="checkbox"/> [22] Saddle Return Attention Label X 1 Booklet Finisher only 		

NOTE:

[7], [8], [16]: Use them when the Delivery Guide (Upper/Lower) is not installed to the host machine.

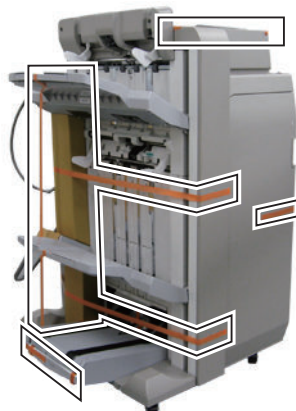
[15]: Use 8 screws (Use 2 screws when connecting the Shunt Cable.) or 7 screws (Use 1 screw when connecting the Shunt Cable.).

Installation Procedure

■ Preparing the Finisher for Installation



1. Remove all tapes attached to the equipment and packaging materials from the equipment.

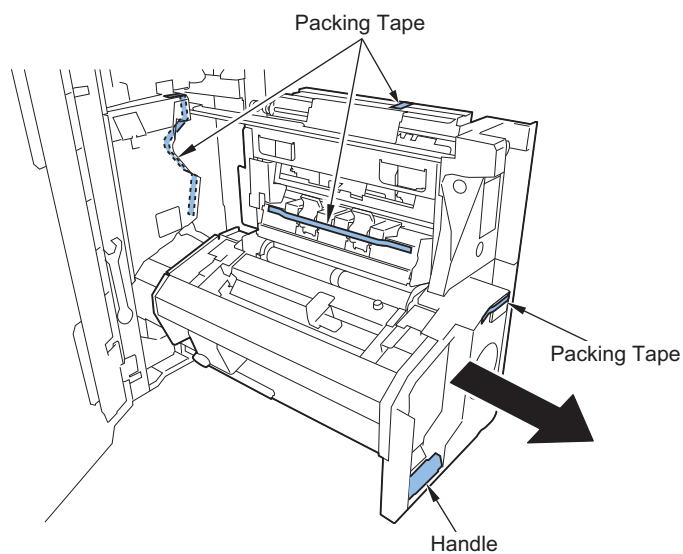


2. Open the Finisher Front Cover.
3. Remove the packing tapes.

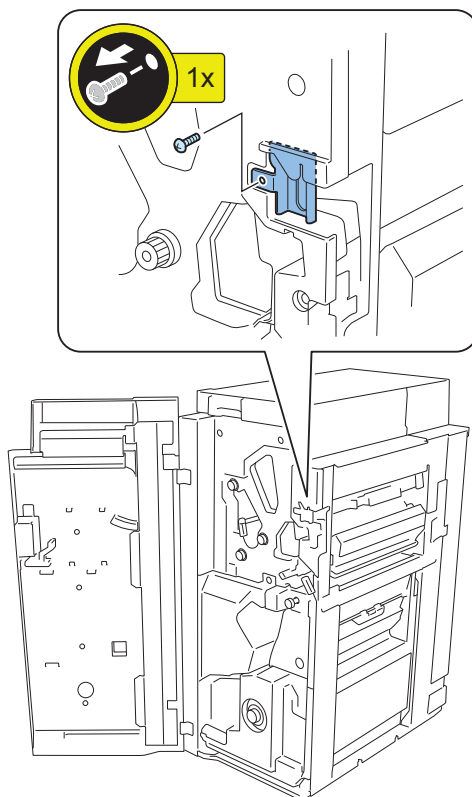
**NOTE:**

Steps 4 to 6 are only for the Booklet Finisher.

4. Release the handle and pull out the Saddle Unit.
5. Remove the packing tapes.

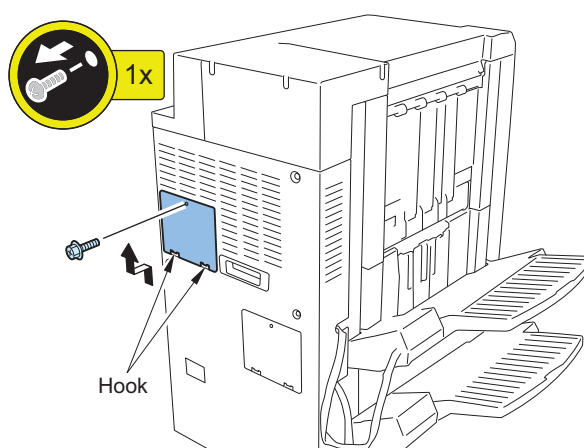


-
- 6. Reinsert the Saddle Unit.**
-
- 7. Remove the screw on the Latch Receiver (Front) (the removed screw will be used when connecting the upstream equipment).**



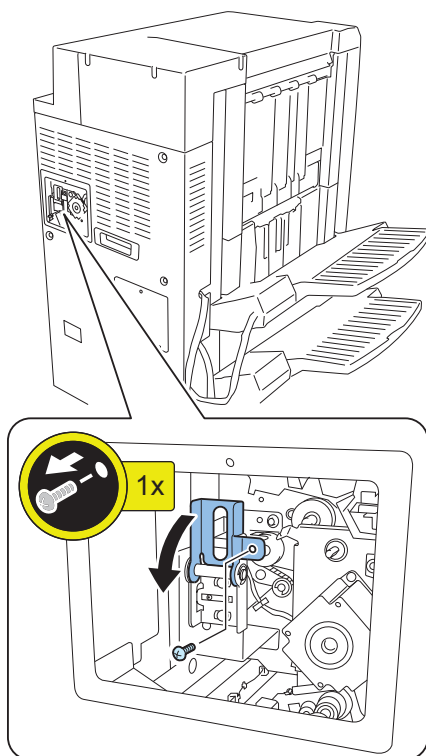
-
- 8. Remove the Rear Small Cover.**

- 1 Screw
- 2 Hooks





9. Remove the screw on the Latch Receiver (Rear) and then pull the Latch Receiver down toward the front (the removed screw will be used when connecting the upstream equipment).



■ Connecting to the Host Machine

NOTE:



1. Remove the 3 Face Plates.





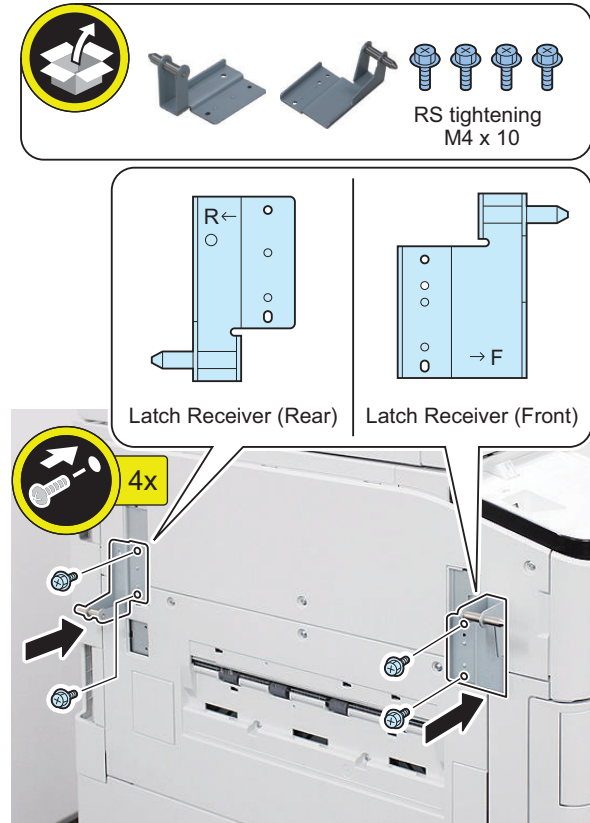
2. Install the Latch Receiver (Front) and Latch Receiver (Rear) to the host machine.

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x10) each

CAUTION:

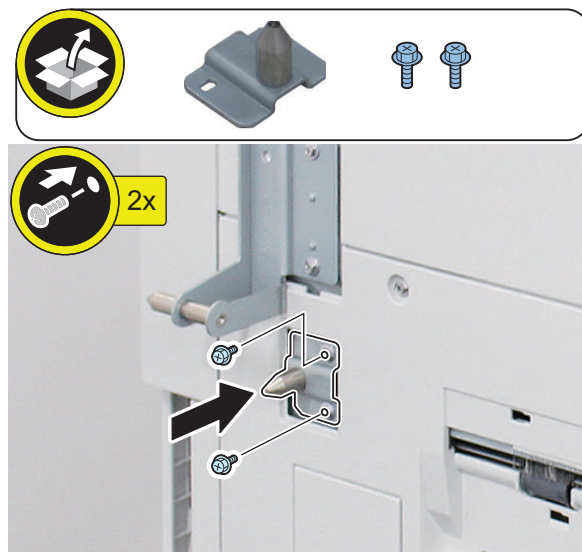
Be sure to check the marks on the Latch Receivers to ensure correct installation.

- Latch Receiver (Front): F
- Latch Receiver (Rear): R



3. Install the Positioning Pin.

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x10)



NOTE:

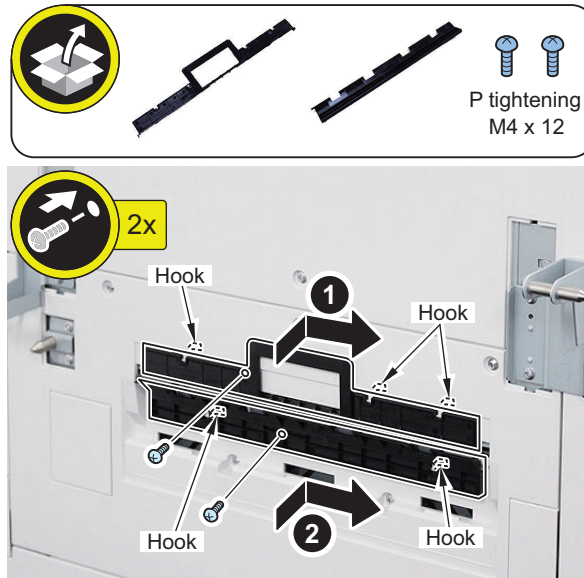
Perform steps 4 and 5 when the Delivery Guide (Upper/Lower) is not installed to the host machine.

4. Install the Delivery Guide (Upper) to the host machine.

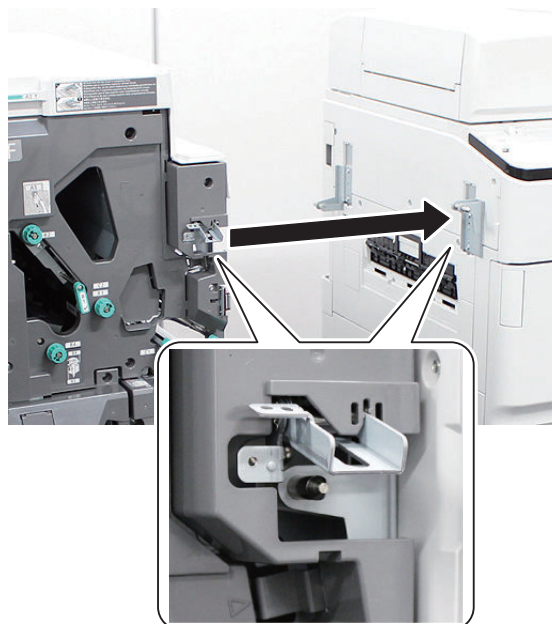
- 3 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P tightening; M4x12)

5. Install the Delivery Guide (Lower) to the host machine.

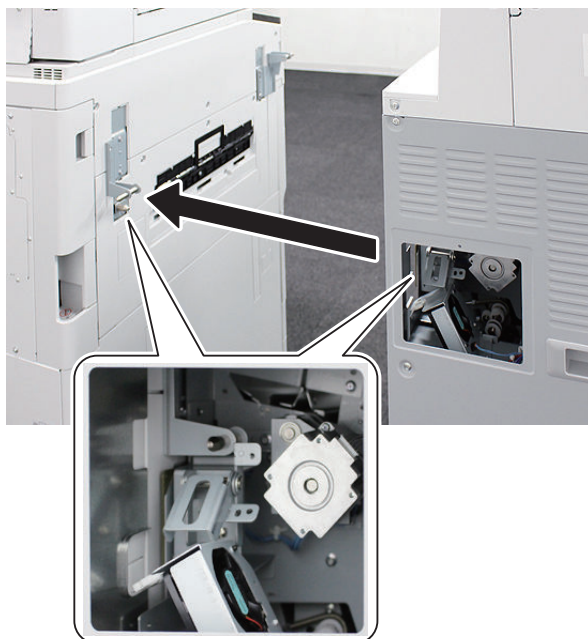
- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P tightening; M4x12)

**6. Raise the Latch Receiver (Front) to lock it to the cover, and align the Positioning Pin on the host machine side with the hole in the Positioning Plate of the Finisher to connect the Finisher and the host machine.**

< Front side >



< Rear side >



7. Lower the Latch Receiver (Front) to secure it.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 7 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")

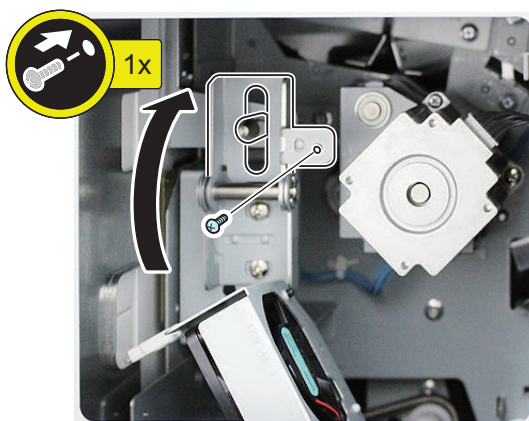


8. Close the Finisher Front Cover.



9. Move the Latch Receiver (Rear) in the direction of the arrow and slide it onto the pin to secure it.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 9 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")



10. Check the height of the finisher and the host machine.

CAUTION:

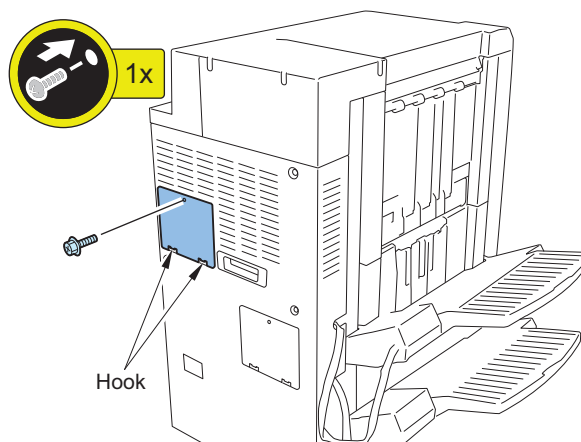
The height difference should be within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference is more than ± 2.0 mm, adjust the height as described in "Adjusting the Height".





11. Install the Rear Small Cover.

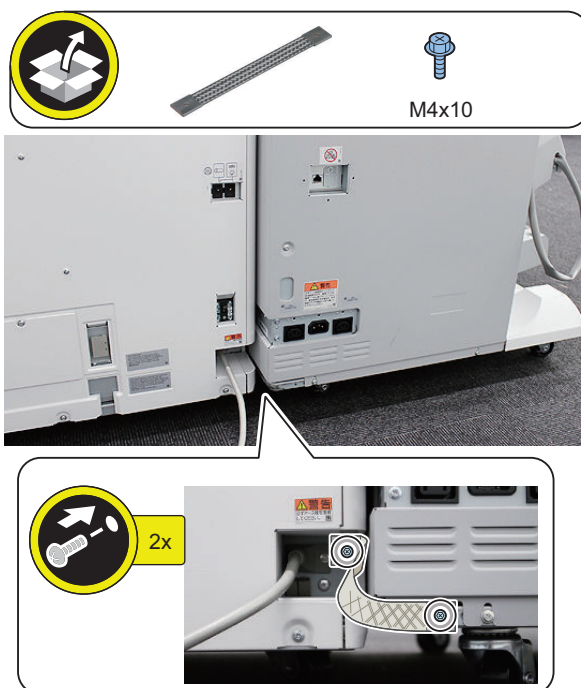
- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw



12. Remove the screw on the rear lower side of the host machine (the removed screw will be used in step 13).

13. Connect the Shunt Cable.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 12)
- 1 Screw (RS tightening; M4x10)



■ Connecting to the Paper Folding Unit

CAUTION:

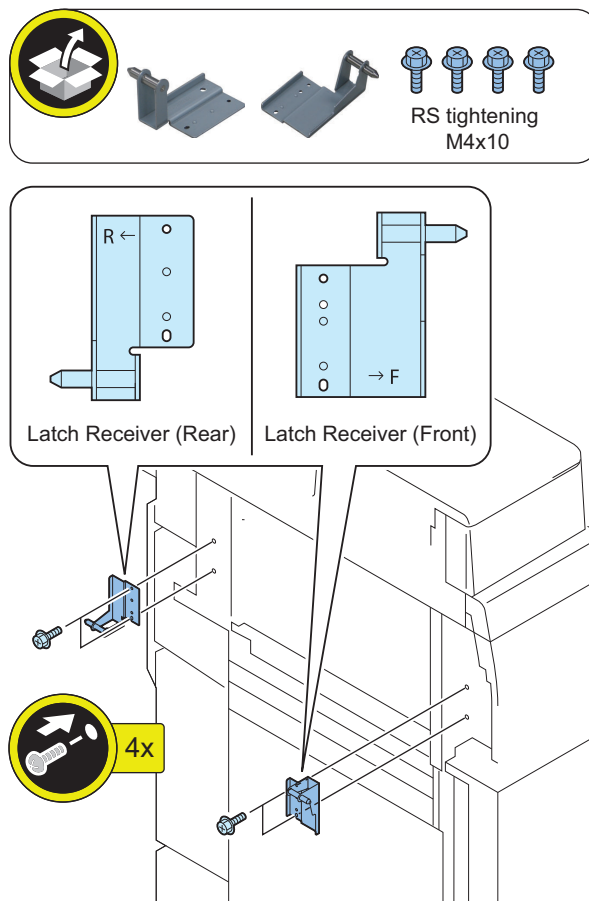
Check that the power of the host machine is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

**1. Install the Latch Receiver (Front) and Latch Receiver (Rear) on the left side of the Paper Folding Unit.****CAUTION:**

Be sure to check the marks on the Latch Receivers to ensure correct installation.

Latch Receiver (Front): F

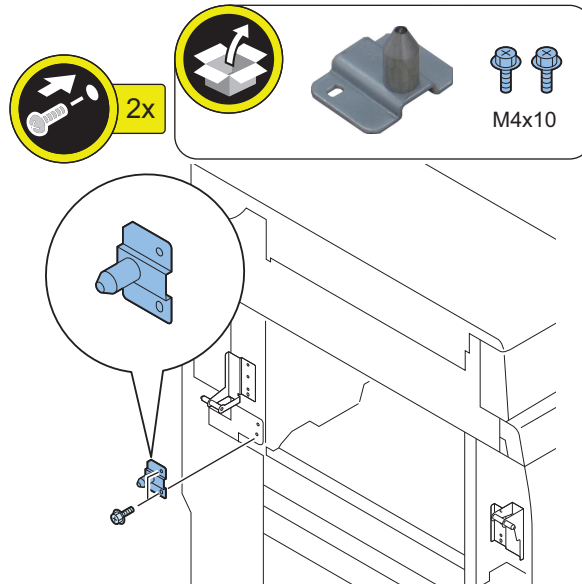
Latch Receiver (Rear): R





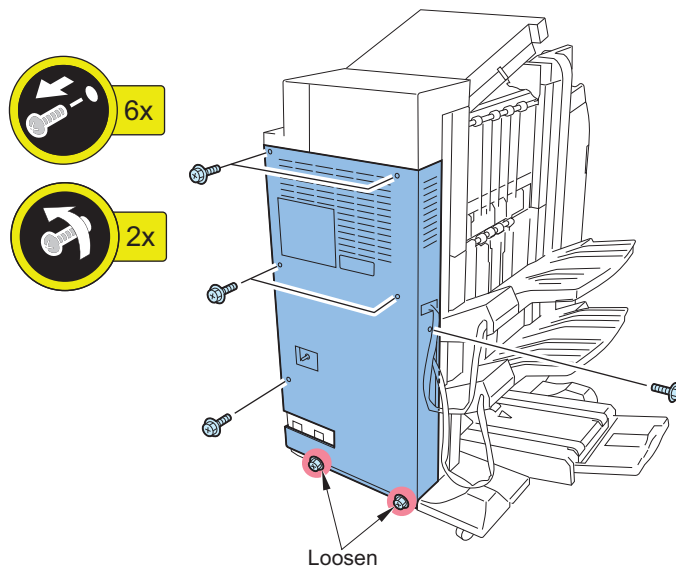
2. Install the Positioning Pin.

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x10)



3. Remove the Rear Cover.

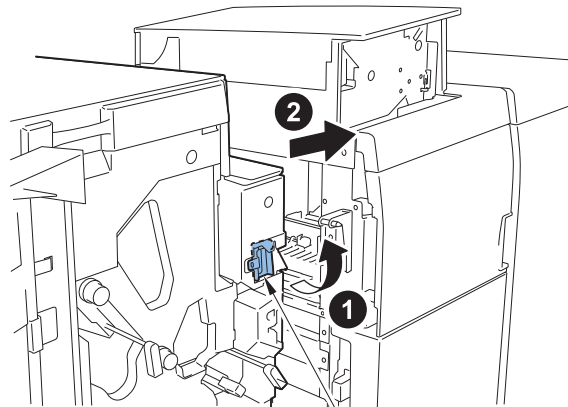
- 2 Screws (to loosen)
- 6 Screws





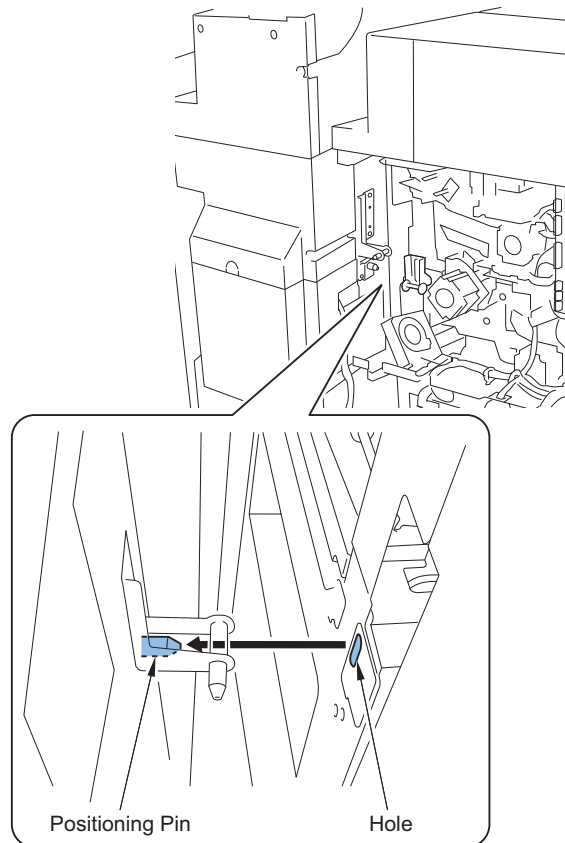
4. Raise the Latch Receiver (Front) to lock it to the cover, and align the Positioning Pin on the Paper Folding Unit side with the hole in the Positioning Plate of the Finisher to connect the Finisher and the Paper Folding Unit.

< Front side >



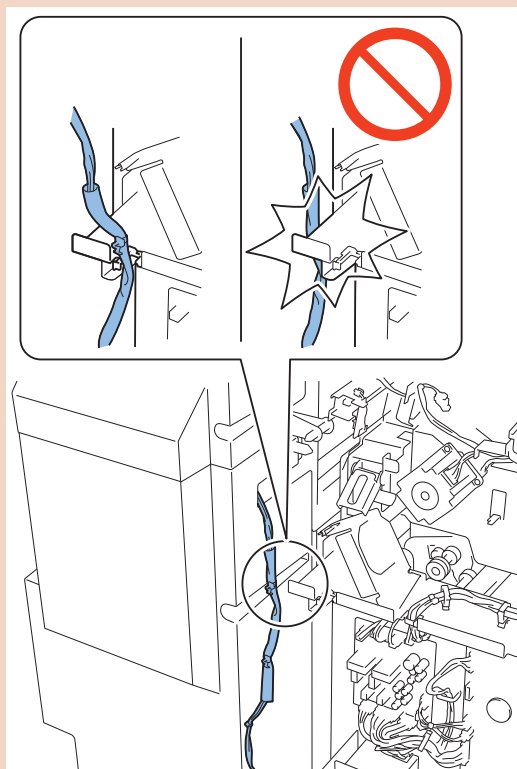
Latch Plate (Front).

< Rear side >



CAUTION:

When connecting the rear side, pay attention not to trap the cable.



5. Lower the Latch Receiver (Front) to secure it.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 7 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")

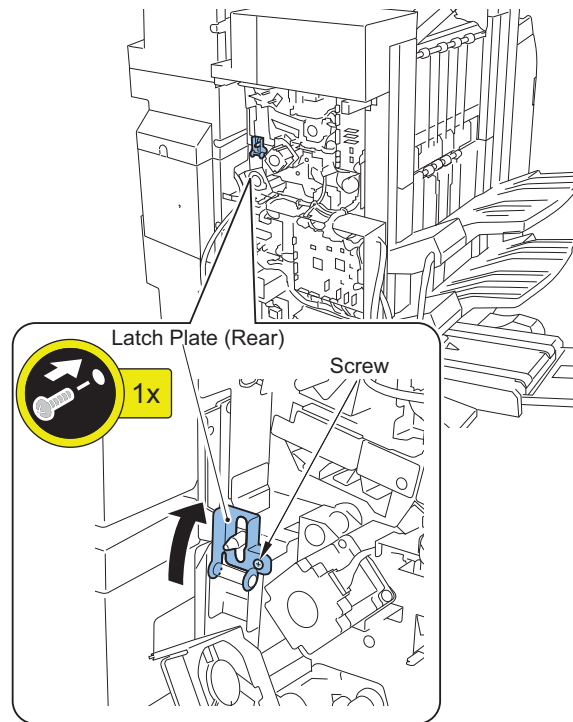


6. Close the Finisher Front Cover.



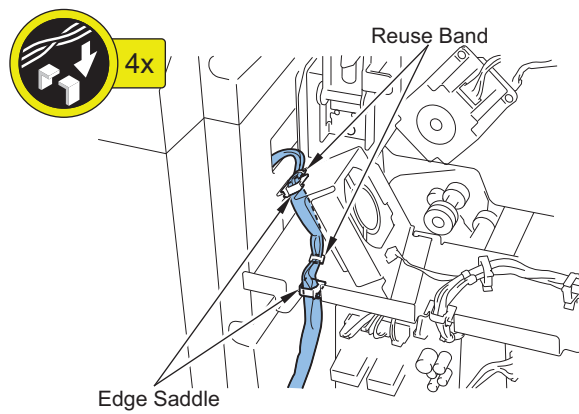
7. Move the Latch Receiver (Rear) in the direction of the arrow and slide it onto the pin to secure it.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 9 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")



8. Secure the cables in place.

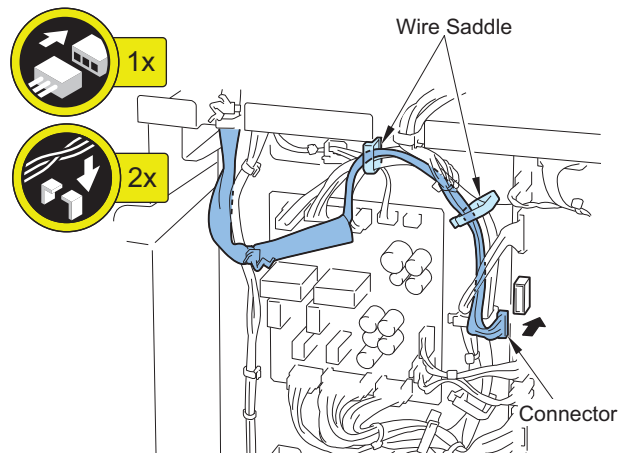
- 2 Reuse Bands
- 2 Edge Saddles





9. Insert the connector into the Finisher Controller PCB and secure the cable.

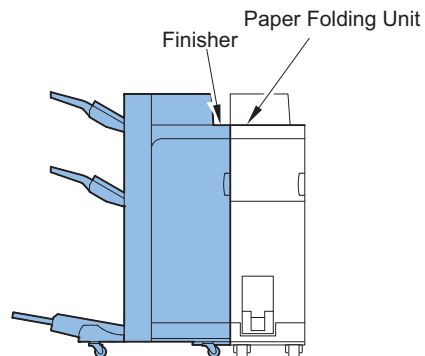
- 2 Wire Saddles



10. Check the height of the Finisher and the Paper Folding Unit.

CAUTION:

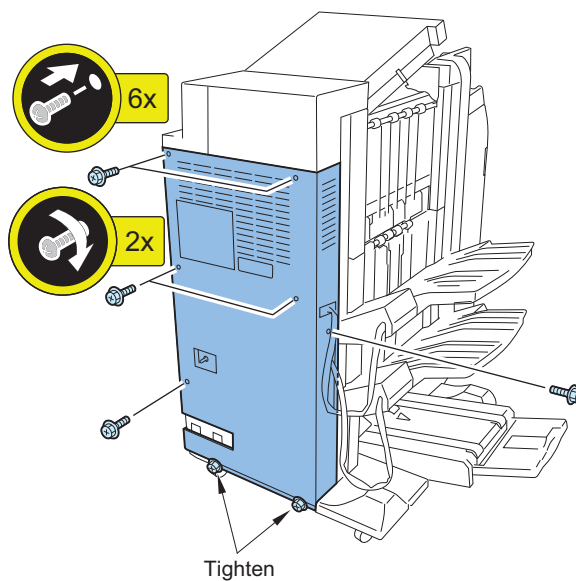
The height difference should be within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference is more than ± 2.0 mm, adjust the height as described in "Adjusting the Height".





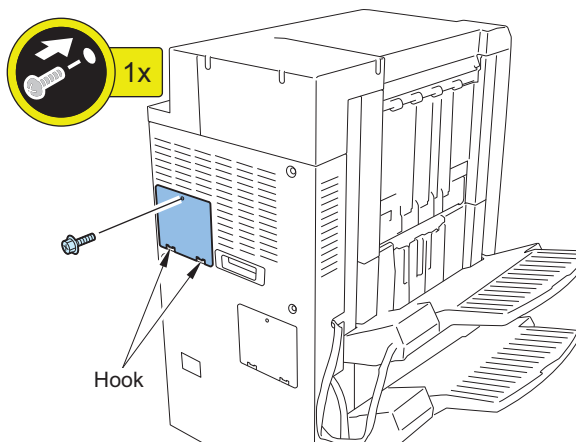
11. Install the Rear Cover.

- 8 Screws



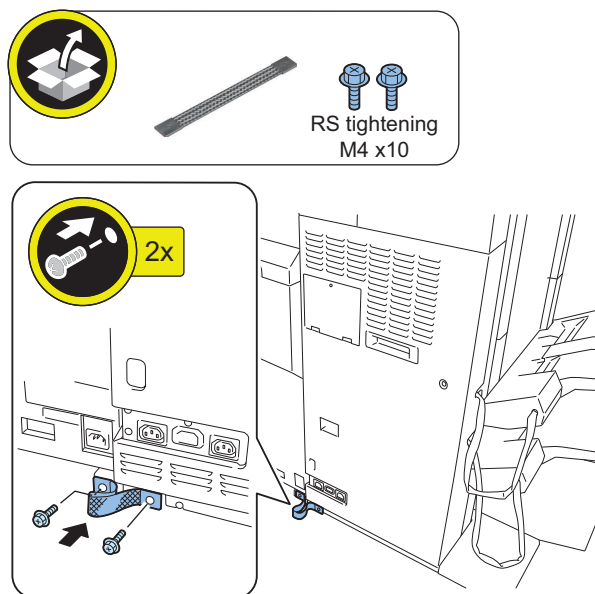
12. Install the Rear Small Cover.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw



**13. Connect the Shunt Cable.**

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)

**■ Connecting to the Document Insertion Unit****CAUTION:**

Check that the power of the host machine is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

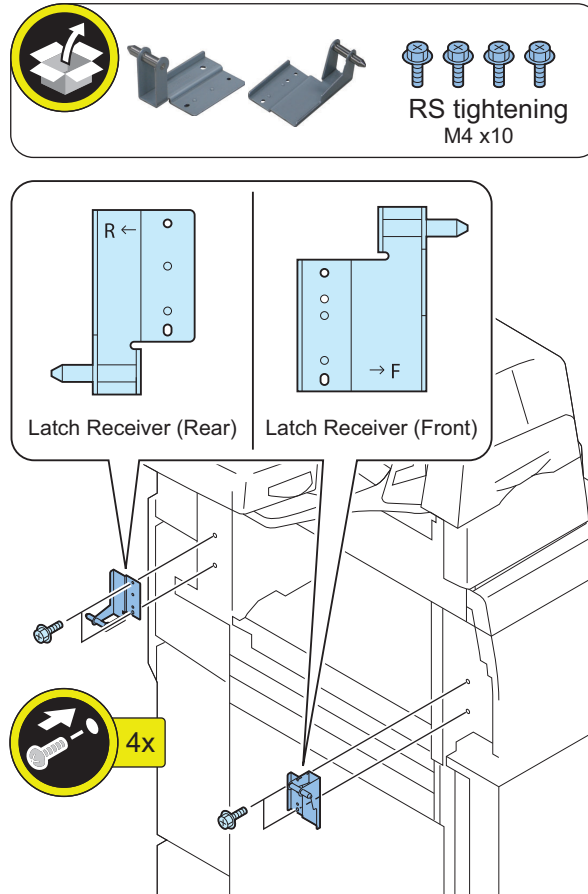
**1. Install the Latch Receiver (Front) and Latch Receiver (Rear) on the left side of the Document Insertion Unit.**

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x10) each

CAUTION:

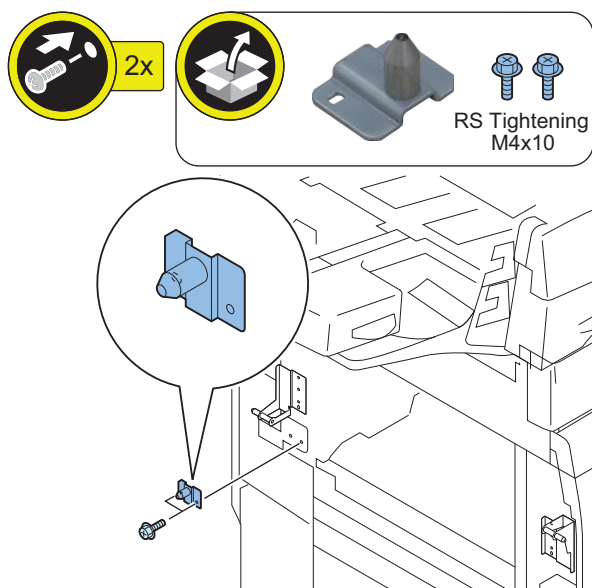
Be sure to check the marks on the Latch Receivers to ensure correct installation.

- Latch Receiver (Front): F
- Latch Receiver (Rear): R

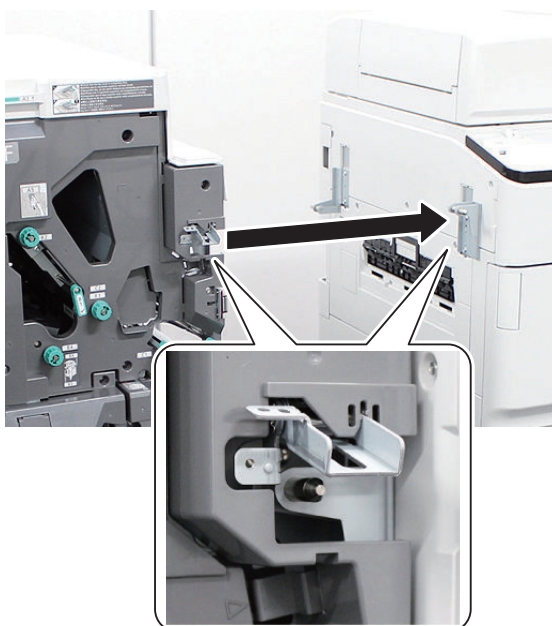


**2. Install the Positioning Pin.**

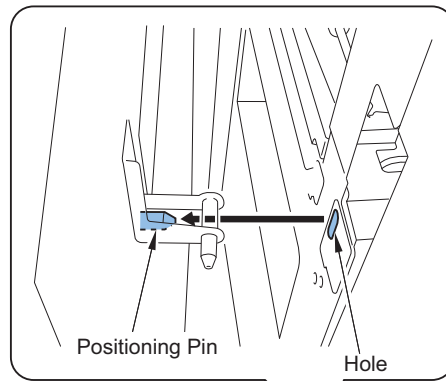
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)

**3. Raise the Latch Receiver (Front) to lock it to the cover, and align the Positioning Pin on the Document Insertion Unit side with the hole in the Positioning Plate of the Finisher to connect the Finisher and the Document Insertion Unit.**

<Front side>



<Rear side>



□

4. Lower the Latch Receiver (Front) to secure it.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 7 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")



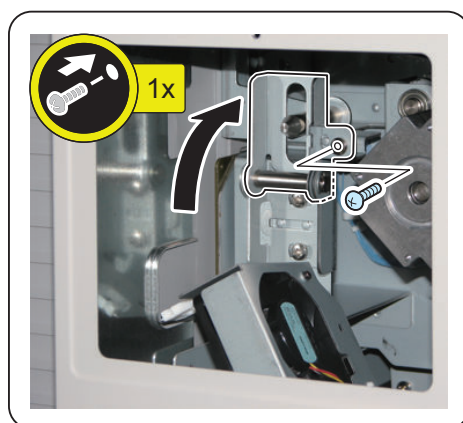
□

5. Close the Finisher Front Cover.



6. Move the Latch Receiver (Rear) in the direction of the arrow and slide it onto the pin to secure it.

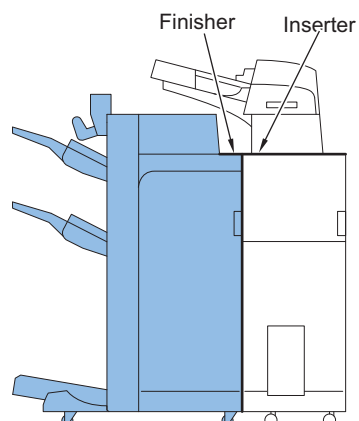
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 9 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")



7. Adjust the height of the Finisher and the Document Insertion Unit.

CAUTION:

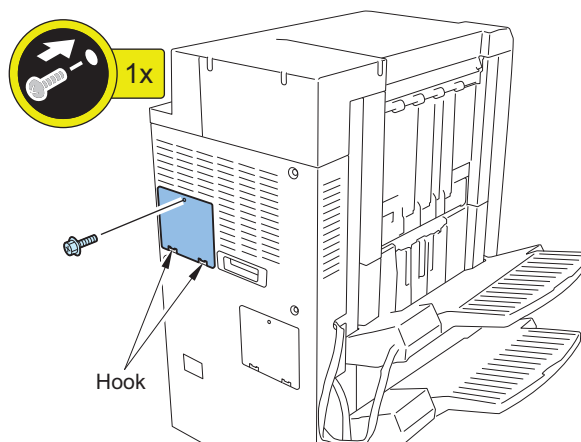
The height difference should be within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference is more than ± 2.0 mm, adjust the height as described in "Adjusting the Height".





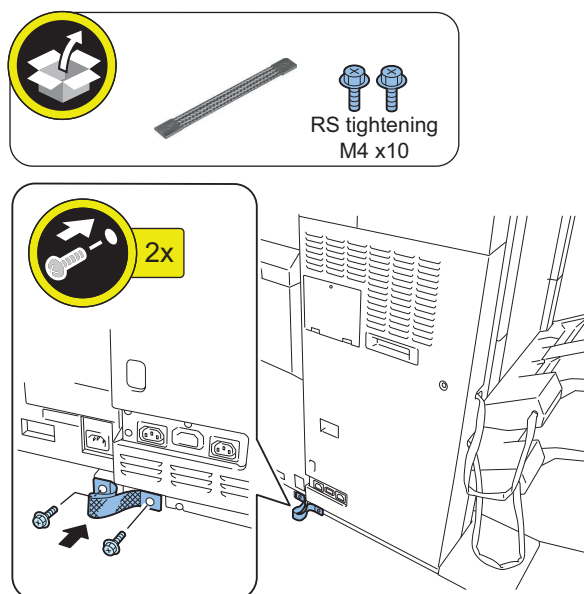
8. Install the Rear Small Cover.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw



9. Connect the Shunt Cable.

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x10)



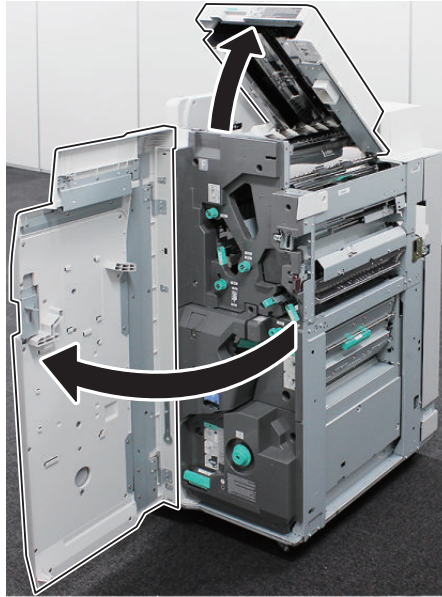
■ Connecting to the Multi Function Professional Puncher

NOTE:

Check that the power of the host machine is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

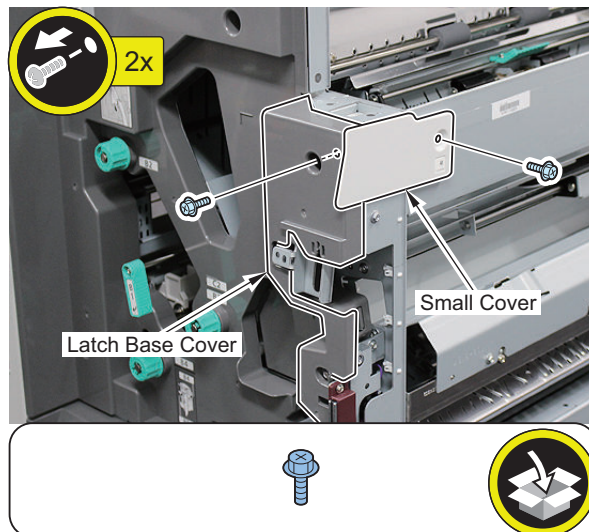


1. Open the Front Cover and Upper Cover.



2. Remove the Latch Base Cover and the screw of the Small Cover (the removed screw from the Small Cover will not be used).

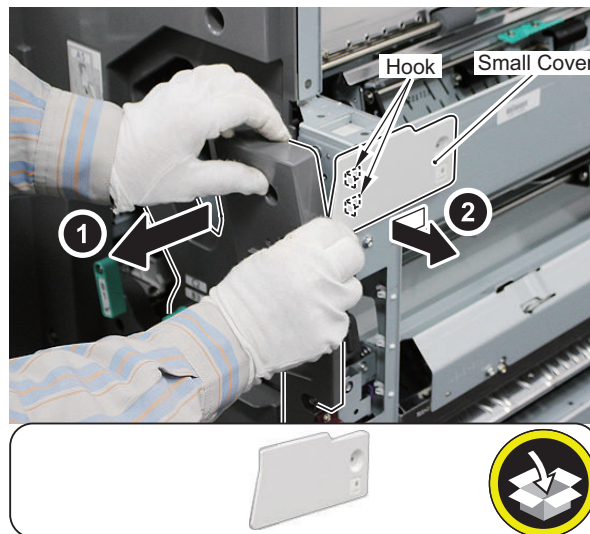
- 2 Screws





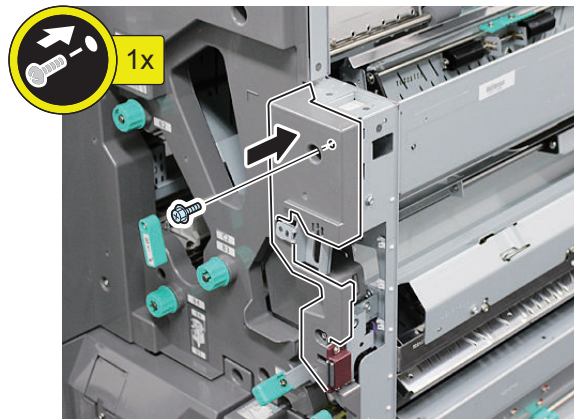
3. Pull the Latch Base Cover towards the front, and remove the Small Cover in the direction of the arrow.

- 2 Hooks



4. Install the Latch Base Cover.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 2)





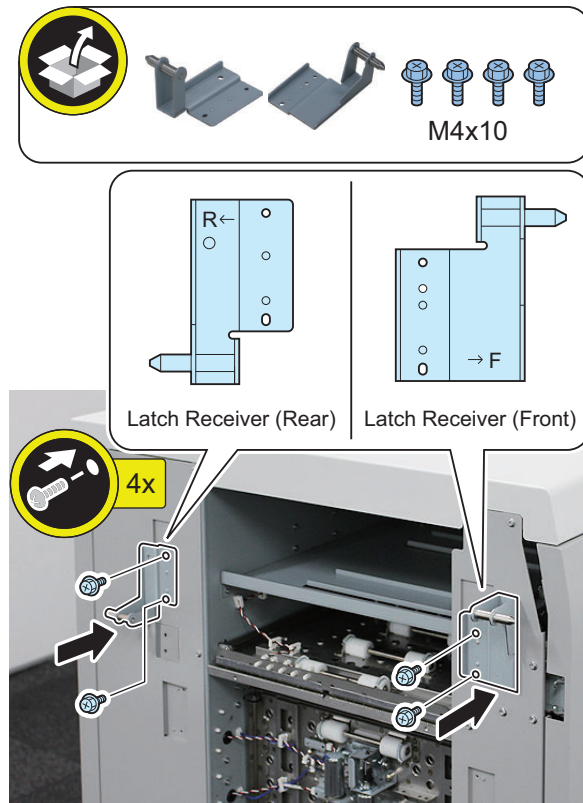
5. Install the Latch Receiver (Front) and Latch Receiver (Rear) on the left side of Multi Function Professional Puncher.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10) each

CAUTION:

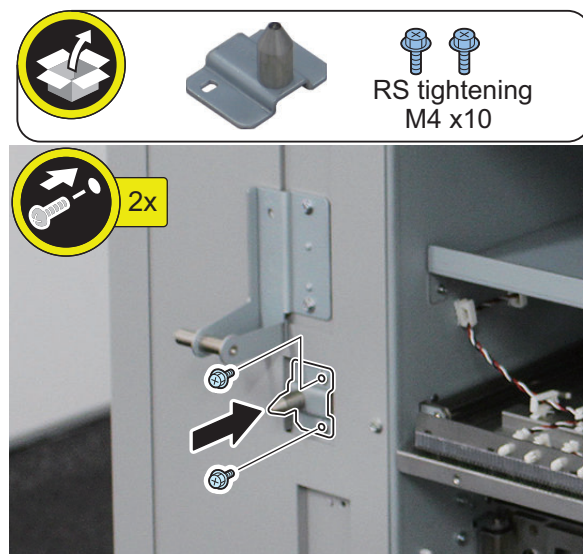
Be sure to check the marks on the Latch Receivers to ensure correct installation.

- Latch Receiver (Front): F
- Latch Receiver (Rear): R



6. Install the Positioning Pin.

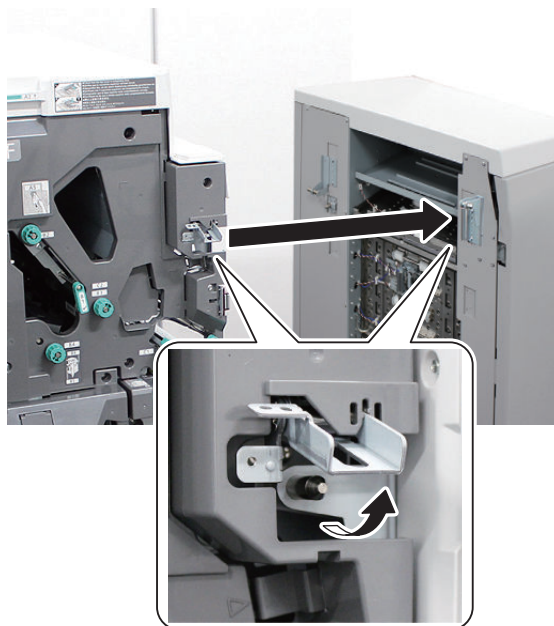
- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x10)



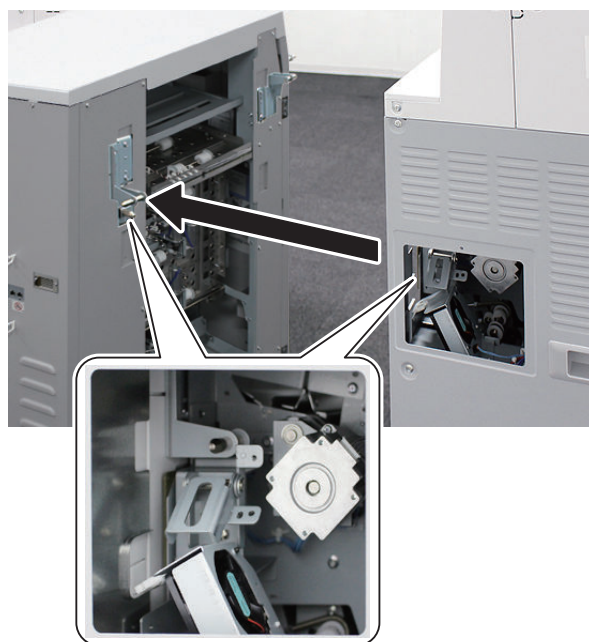


7. Raise the Latch Receiver (Front) to lock it to the cover, and align the Positioning Pin on the Multi Function Professional Puncher side with the hole in the Positioning Plate of the Finisher to connect the Finisher and the Multi Function Professional Puncher.

< Front side >



< Rear side >

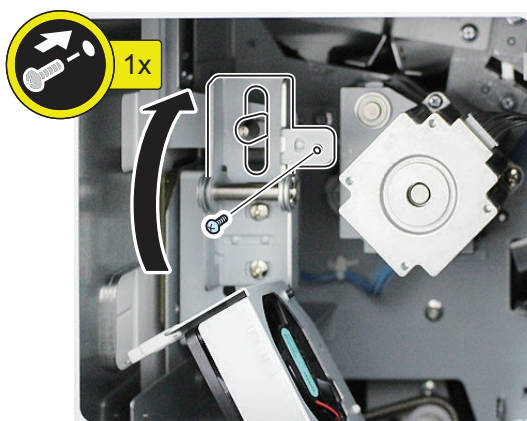


**8. Lower the Latch Receiver (Front) to secure it.**

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 7 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")

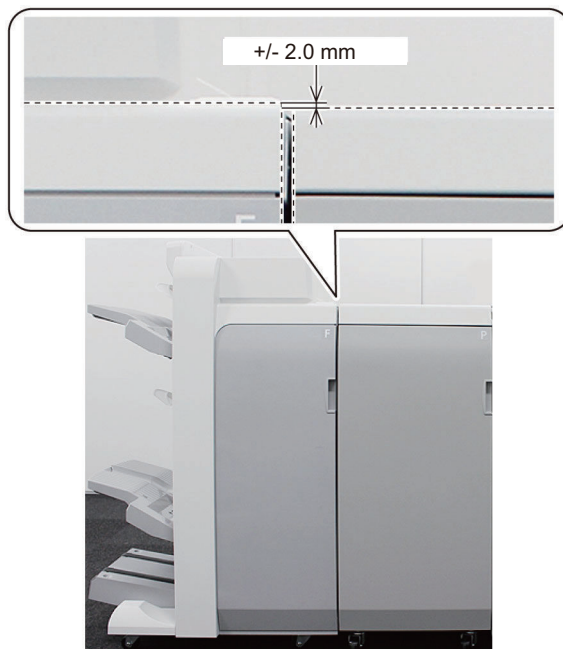
**9. Close the Finisher Front Cover and Upper Cover.****10. Move the Latch Receiver (Rear) in the direction of the arrow and slide it onto the pin to secure it.**

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 9 of "Preparing the Finisher for Installation")

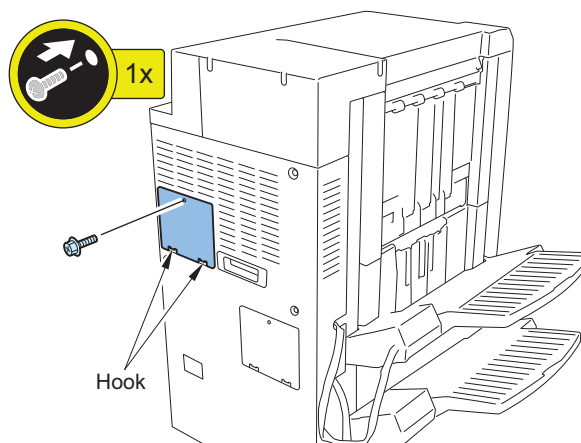


**11. Check the height of the finisher and Multi Function Professional Puncher.****CAUTION:**

The height difference should be within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference is more than ± 2.0 mm, adjust the height as described in "Adjusting the Height".

**12. Install the Rear Small Cover.**

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw

**13. Remove the screw of the Multi Function Professional Puncher (the removed screw will be used in step 14).**

14. Connect the Shunt Cable.

- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in step 13)
- 1 Screw (RS tightening; M4x10)



Adjusting the Height

Depending on the status of the floor of the installation site, the height of the finisher may need to be adjusted. If the height is not properly adjusted, trouble such as paper frequently jamming in the Finisher Pickup Assembly may occur. Follow the steps below to check the height and adjust it if necessary.

■ Checking the Height



1. Check the height of the finisher and the upstream equipment. Check that the height difference between the top right of the finisher and the top left of the upstream equipment is within ± 2.0 mm (the figure shows a case of connection with the host machine).

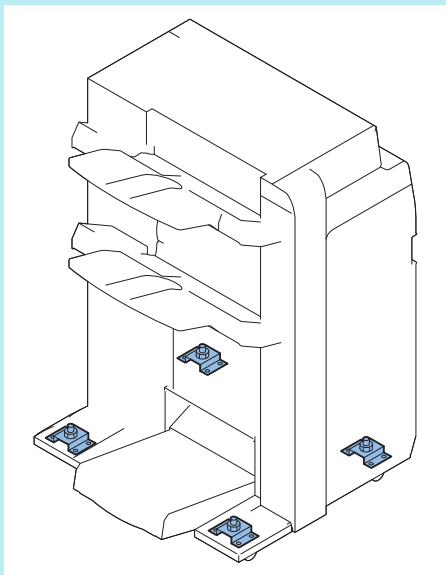




2. If the difference exceeds the +/-2.0 mm range, adjust the height.

NOTE:

Adjust the height with the 4 casters shown in the figure.



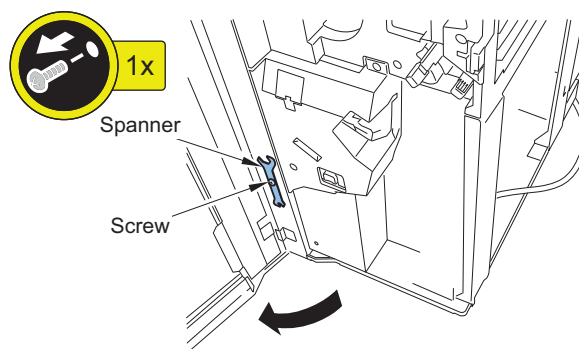
■ Adjusting the Height



1. Separate the finisher from the upstream equipment.

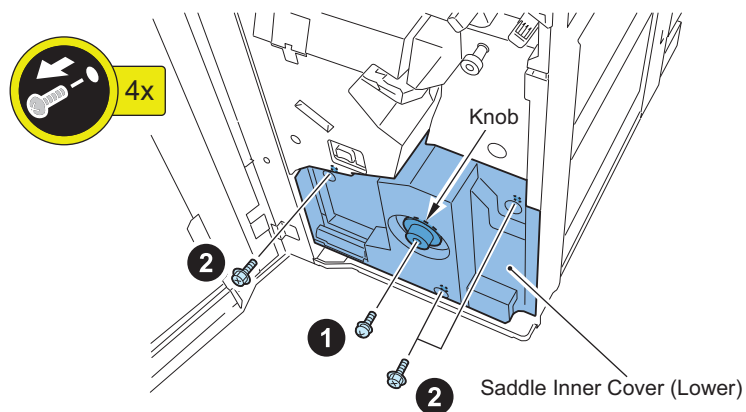


2. Open the Finisher Front Cover and remove the wrench.
 - 1 Screw

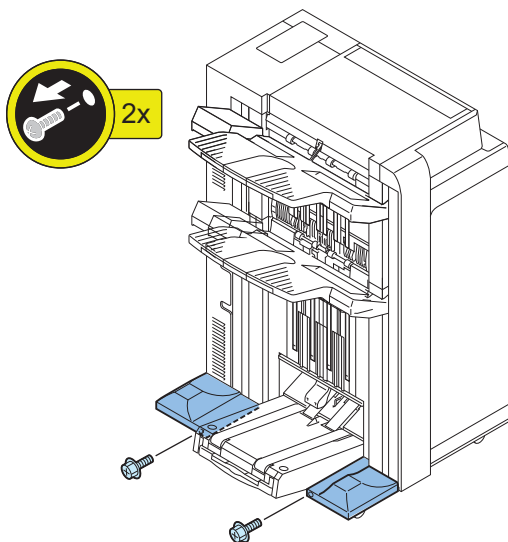


**3. In the case of the Booklet Finisher, remove the Saddle Inner Cover (Lower).**

- 4 Screws (3 RS Tightenings, 1 W Sems)
- 1 Knob

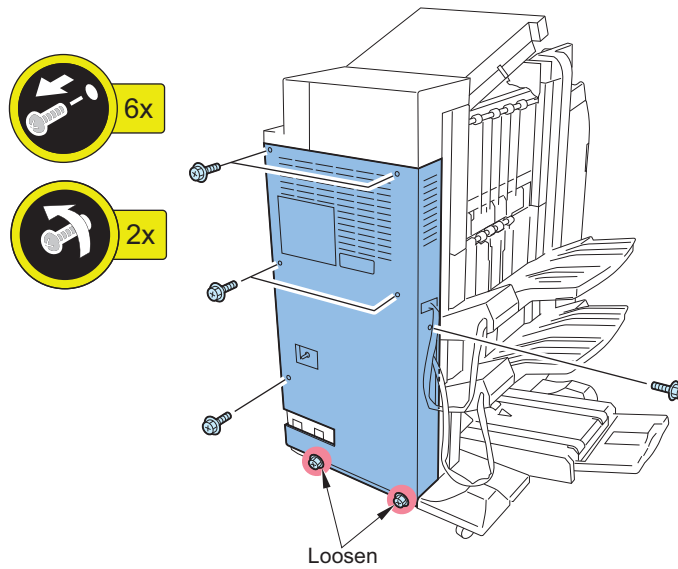
**4. Remove the 2 Caster Covers on the left side (the figure shows the case of using a Booklet Finisher).**

- 2 Screws

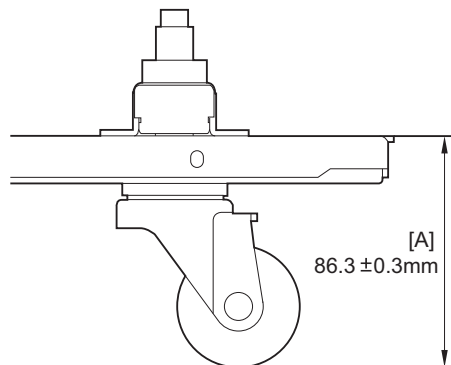


**5. Remove the Rear Cover.**

- 2 Screws (to loosen)
- 6 Screws

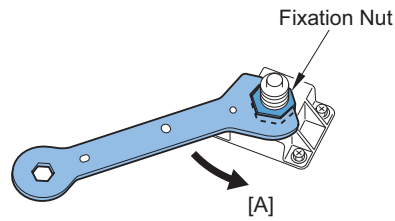
**6. Measure the height [A] from the caster installation surface (floor) to the upper surface of the Base Plate with a scale, etc. to check that the height is within 86.3 +/- 0.3 mm.**

If it is not within range, perform the procedure from step 7.



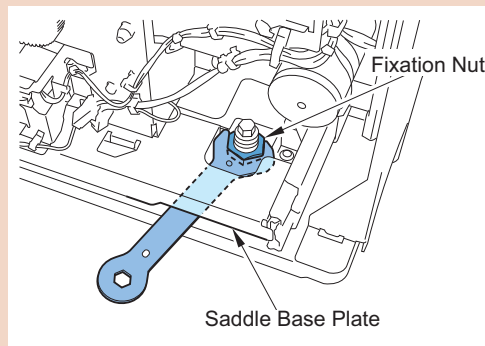


7. Loosen the Fixation Nut of the caster with the wrench in the direction of [A].



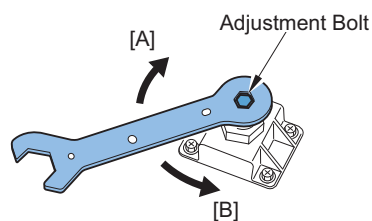
CAUTION:

When loosening the Caster Fixing Nut at the front side of the Booklet Finisher, be sure to insert the wrench into the gap just below the Saddle Base Plate.

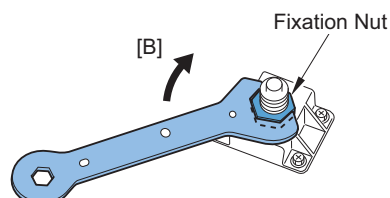


8. Turn the Adjustment Bolt with the wrench. Adjust the height (that was measured in step 6) to be within 86.3 +/- 0.3 mm.

- To make it higher: Turn in the [A] direction
 - To make it lower: Turn in the [B] direction
- (The height changes by approximately 1.75 mm per turn.)



9. Tighten the Fixation Nut in the direction of [B].



10. Adjust the other 3 casters in the same way.



11. Reconnect the finisher to the upstream equipment and check the height.

If it is out of range, adjust the height of upstream machines in order, from the finisher.



12. Return the wrench to its original position (1 screw).



13. Return the removed covers to their original positions.

- Front cover
- Saddle Inner Cover (Lower) (4 screws, 1 knob) (in the case of a Booklet Finisher)
- 2 Caster Covers (2 screws)
- Rear Cover (8 screws)

Connecting the Cable

CAUTION:

When connecting the LAN Cable, be sure to turn OFF the host machine and disconnect the power plug from the outlet beforehand.

■ Connection with the host machine

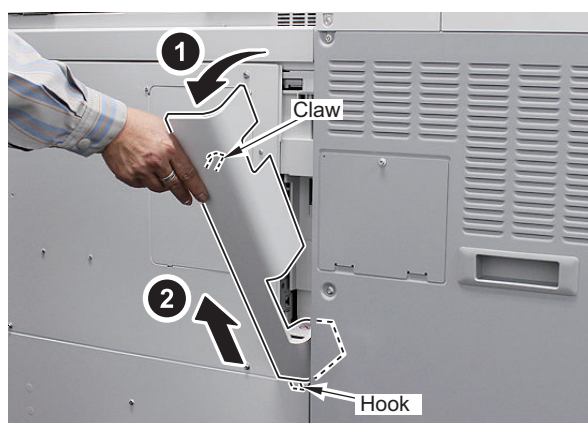
CAUTION:

Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.



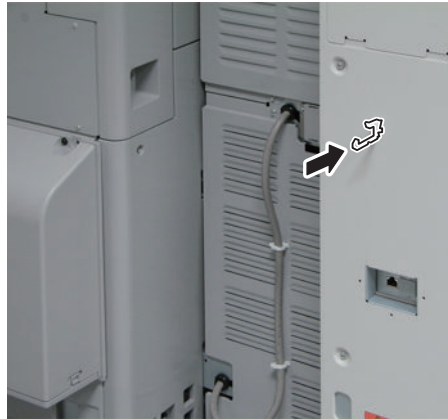
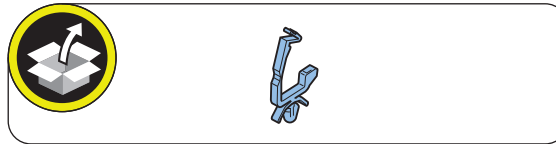
1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

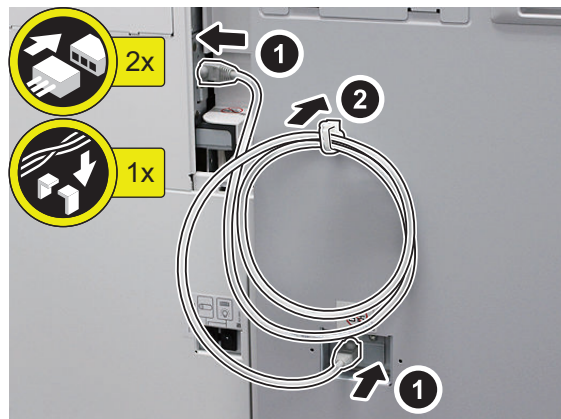




2. Install the Wire Saddle on the Rear Cover of the finisher.



3. Insert the LAN Cable into the host machine and this equipment, and route the cable.



4. Return the Left Rear Cover.

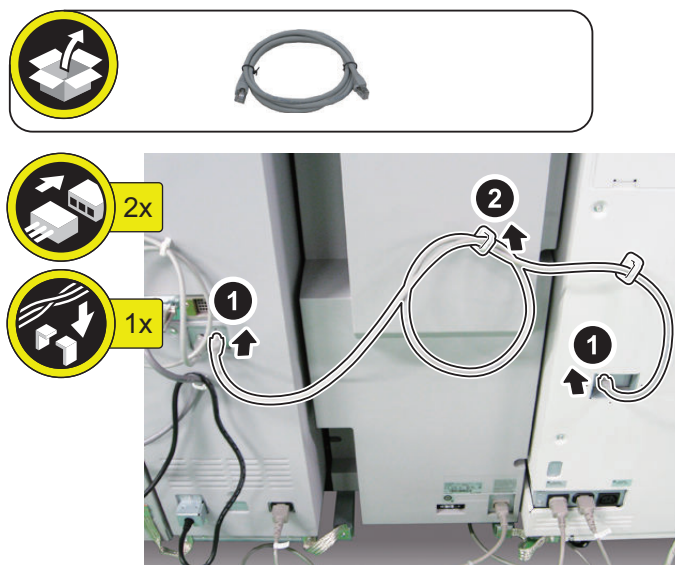
■ Connection with the Paper Folding Unit

NOTE:

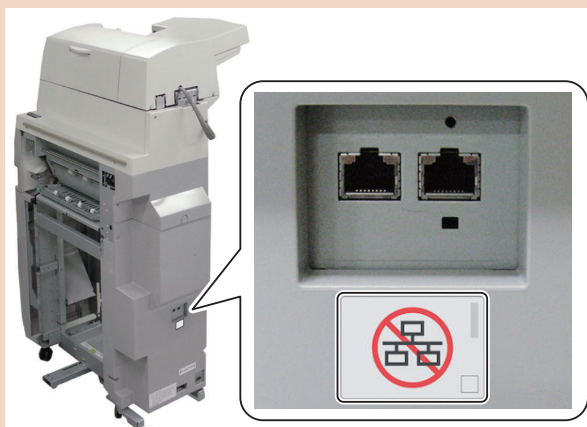
Since the Paper Folding Unit does not have a port for inserting the LAN cable, this connection is for relaying between the upstream equipment and downstream equipment.

**1. Connect the host machine and the upstream equipment with the LAN Cable, and secure the cable.**

- 2 Wire Saddle

**■ Connection with the Document Insertion Unit****CAUTION:**

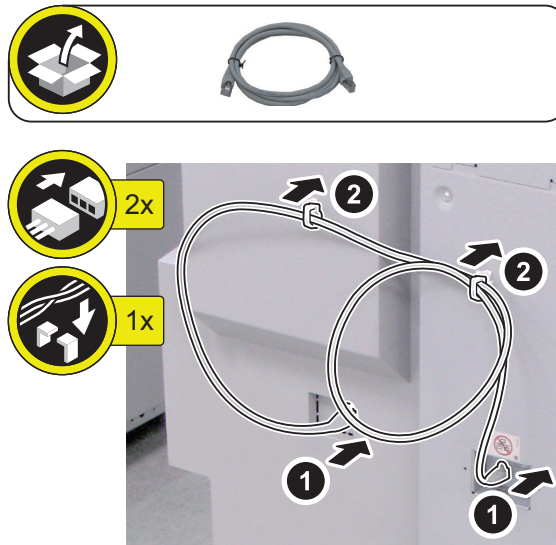
Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.





1. Connect the host machine and the upstream equipment with the LAN Cable, and secure the cable.

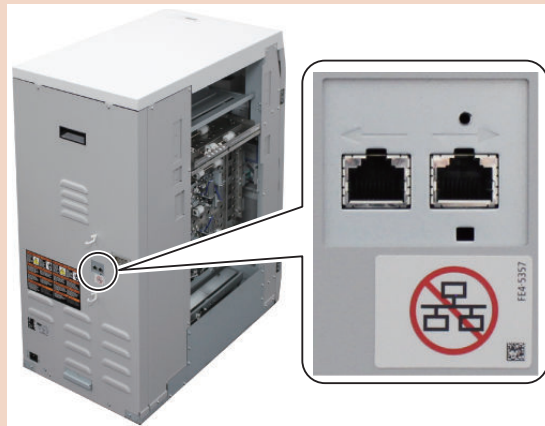
- 1 Wire Saddle



■ Connection with the Multi Function Professional Puncher

CAUTION:

Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.





1. Connect the host machine and the upstream equipment with the LAN Cable, and secure the cable.

- 1 Wire Saddle



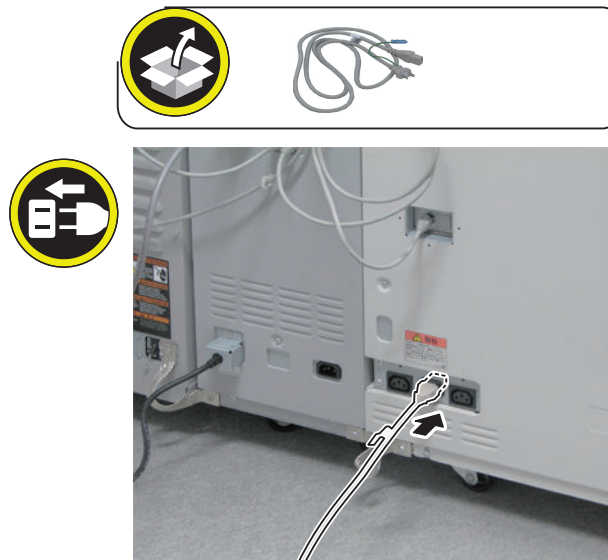
■ Connection Check

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the power cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is not right, an accident causing the smoke or fire may occur.



1. Connect the power supply cord to the finisher.



2. Insert the power plug of the finisher.



3. Insert the power plug of the host machine.



4. Turn ON the main power switch of the host machine.

-
5. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

-
6. Press the counter check key on the Control Panel.
- Check [Device Configuration > Option],
-
7. Check that the name of the Staple Finisher-W1/Booklet Finisher-W1 is displayed.
-
8. Check the operation of the paper feed, stapler, etc.

Side Registration/Skew Adjustment

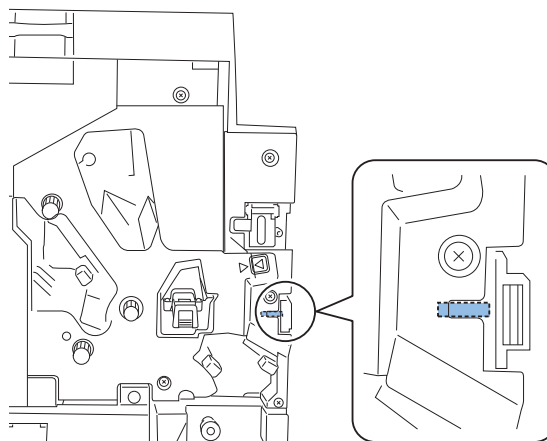
CAUTION:

Only when the Puncher Unit is installed to the Finisher, perform this item.

■ Checking the Adjusted Value

● Preparation

-
1. Open the Finisher Front Cover, and insert the Door Switch Tool in the door switch.





2. Remove the Switch Cover of the Inner Cover (Lower).

- 1 Screw



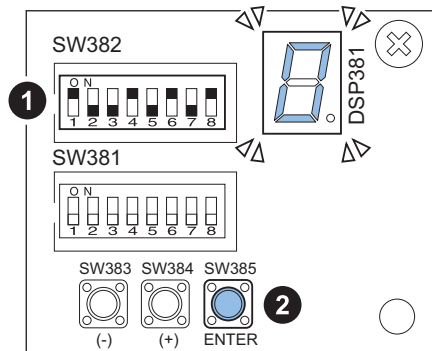
• Procedure



1. Be sure to write down the setting of DIP Switch (SW382) on the Switch PCB.

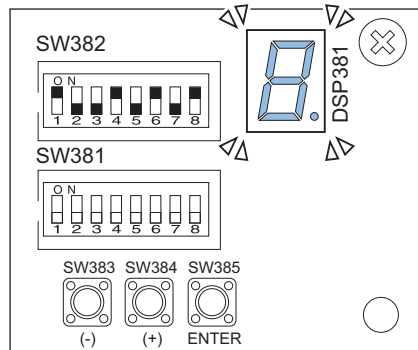


2. Set DIP Switch SW382 on the Switch PCB as shown in the figure (1, 4, 6, 8: ON), and press the ENTER button (SW385) so that "0" flashes on LED (DSP381).



3. Load a sheet of A4 or LTR paper onto the ADF or the copyboard, set "3" for the copy count, and then execute printing.

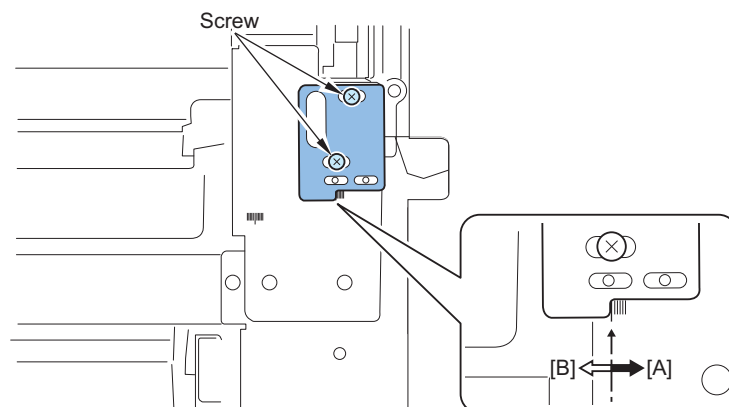
-
- 4. The side registration and skew adjustment values are displayed on the LED (DSP381).**
- The values are displayed in the order of "A" > "side registration value" > "b" > "skew adjustment value". Check the displayed values.
- Side registration adjustment range (rough guide): -3 to +3 mm (1 scale mark is equivalent to 1 mm)
 - Skew adjustment range (rough guide): -2 to +2 mm (1 scale mark is equivalent to 1 mm)



-
- 5. Press the ENTER button (SW385) to end adjustment mode.**
- If the adjustment values (rough guide) are within the range, restore the DIP Switch settings and install the removed covers and other parts.
- If the adjustment value (rough guideline) is out of the range, make the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Side Registration" or "Adjusting the Skew".

■ Side Registration Adjustment

-
- 1. Turn OFF the power switch of the host machine.**
-
- 2. Separate the finisher from the upstream equipment.**
- Disconnect the power plug from the outlet.
- Disconnect the power supply cord from the finisher.
 - Disconnect the LAN Cable.
 - Disconnect the Shunt Cable.
 - Remove the front and rear Latch Bases.
-
- 3. Loosen the 2 screws on the right side of the Positioning Plate.**
- If the value displayed in "Checking the Adjusted Value" was a "+" (positive) value, move the center line of the scale in the direction of [A] and then tighten the 2 screws.
- If it was a "-" (negative) value, move the center line of the scale in the direction of [B] and then tighten the 2 screws.





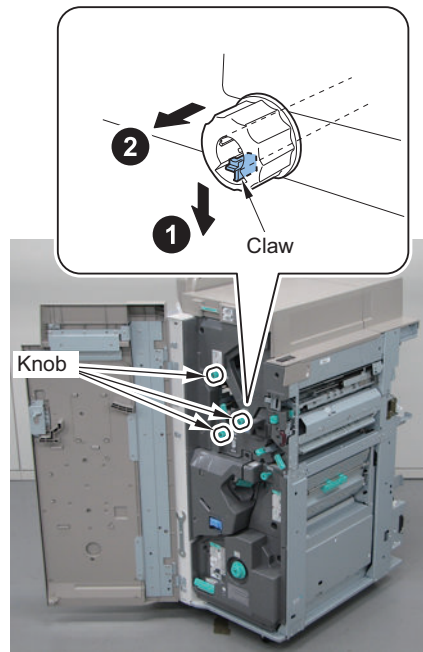
4. If the skew adjustment is within the specified range, start from step 6 of "Skew Adjustment".

■ Skew Adjustment



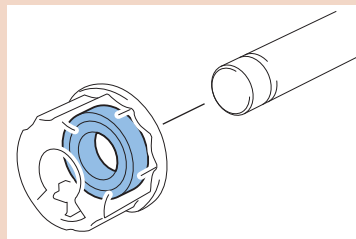
1. Remove the 3 knobs.

- 3 Claws



CAUTION:

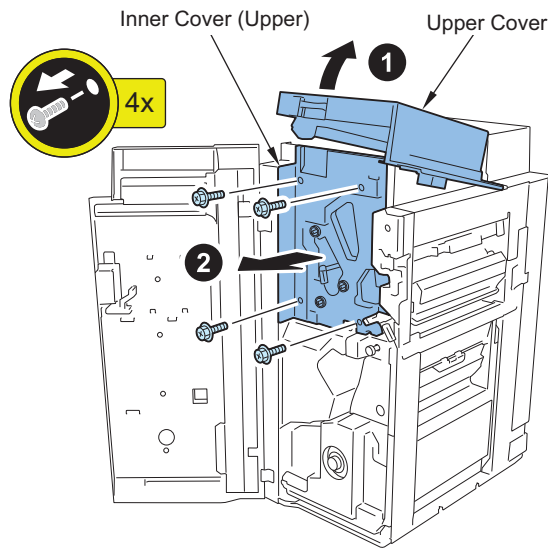
When the One-way Clutch inside the knob is removed, be sure to install it in the direction where the arrow marking of the One-way Clutch is visible.





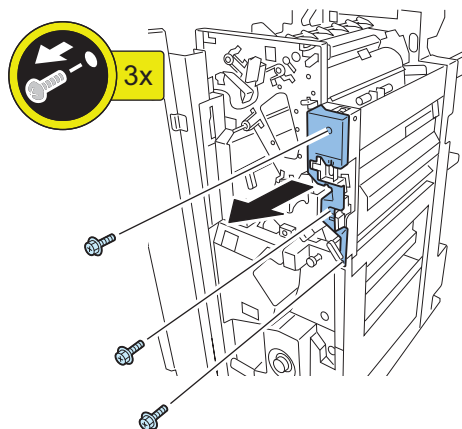
2. Lift up the Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow and remove the Inner Cover (Upper).

- 4 Screws



3. Remove the Latch Base Cover.

- 3 Screws



**4. Loosen the 2 screws of the Latch Base (Front).**

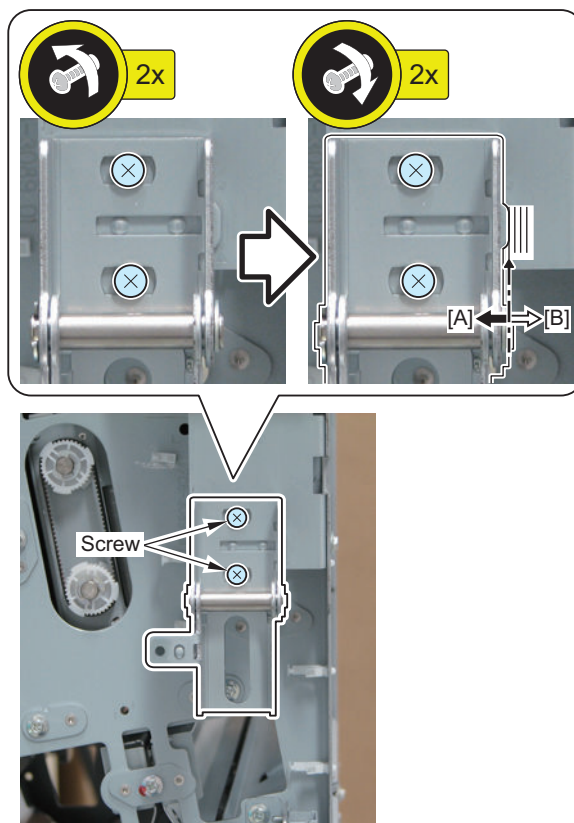
If the value displayed in "Checking the Adjusted Value" was a

"+" (positive) value, move the plate in the direction of [A] and then tighten the 2 screws.

If it was a "-" (negative) value, move the plate in the direction of [B] and then tighten the 2 screws.

CAUTION:

Perform adjustment so that the total of the shift amount (scale) of the Latch Bases (Front and Rear) is within -2 to +2 mm.



**5. Loosen the 2 screws of the Latch Base (Rear).**

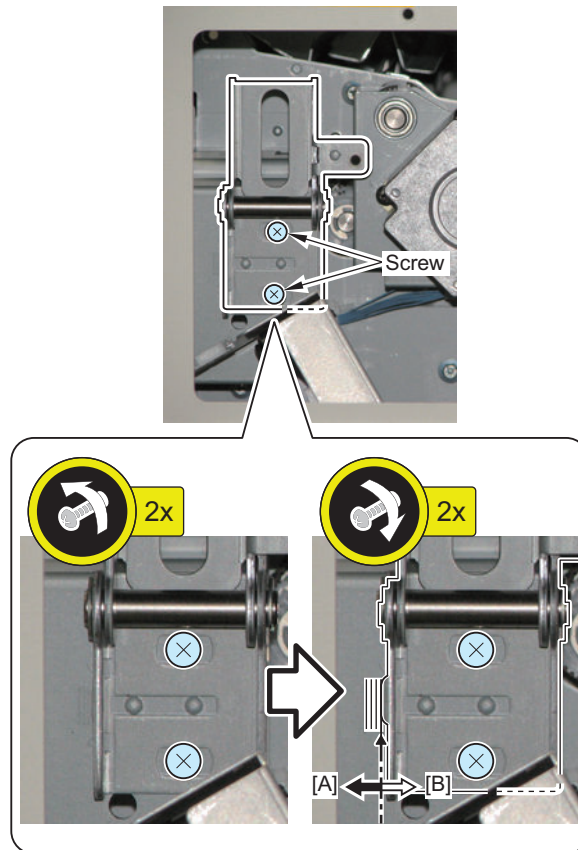
If the value displayed in "Checking the Adjusted Value" was a

"+" (positive) value, move the plate in the direction of [A] and then tighten the 2 screws.

If it was a "-" (negative) value, move the plate in the direction of [B] and then tighten the 2 screws.

CAUTION:

Perform adjustment so that the total of the shift amount (scale) of the Latch Bases (Front and Rear) is within -2 to +2 mm.

**6. Reconnect the finisher to the upstream equipment.****7. Turn ON the main power switch.****8. Check the adjusted values again.**

If the adjustment value indicated on LED (DSP381) is within the range, press ENTER button (SW385) to end adjustment mode.

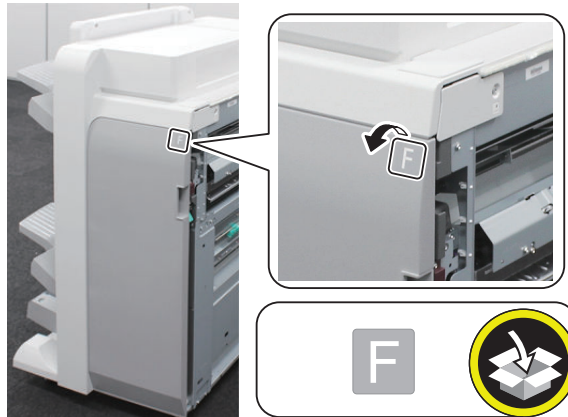
If it is out of the range, perform adjustment for the second time. It is OK to end adjustment mode if the value becomes close to the adjustment value (rough guideline).

**9. Restore the DIP Switch settings and install the removed covers and other parts.**

Peeling and Attaching the Labels



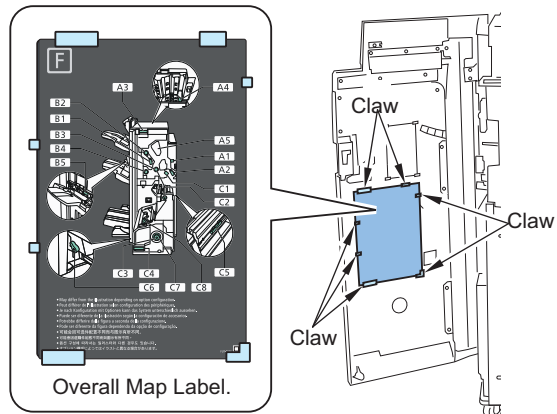
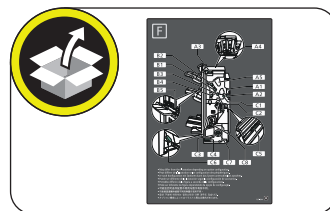
1. Peel off the F label which is attached to the Finisher Front Cover. (Do not use the removed label.)



2. Open the Finisher Front Cover.



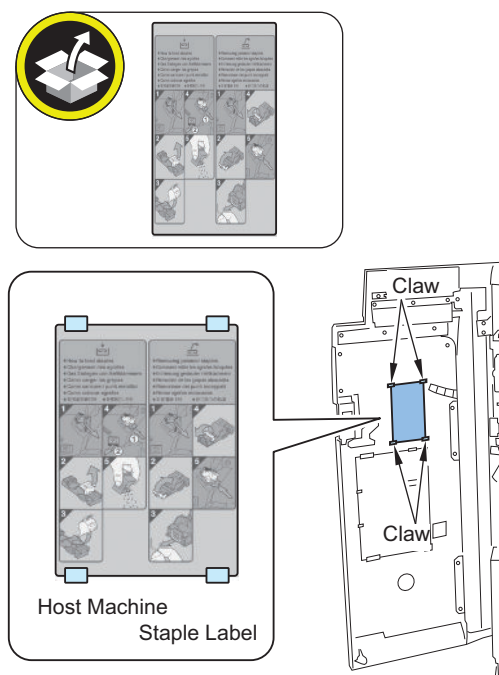
3. Attach the Overall Map Label.
 - 7 Claws





4. Attach the Host Machine Staple Label.

- 4 Claws

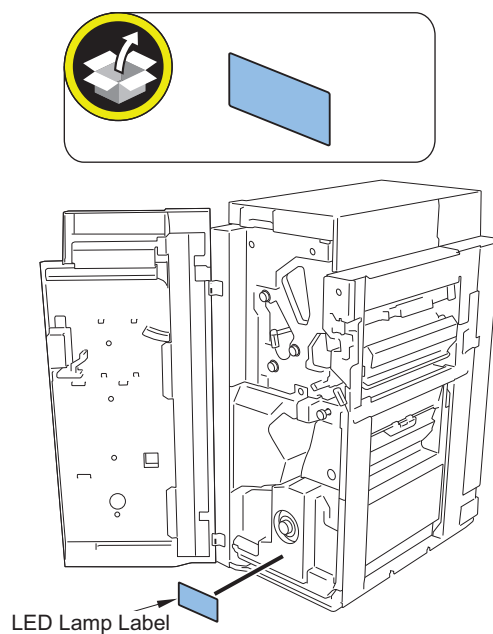


NOTE:

Step 5 to 7 are needed to be performed only for the Booklet Finisher.

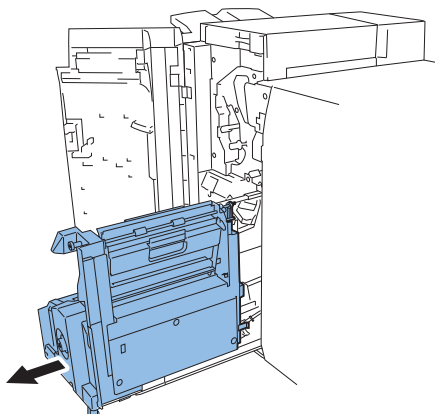


5. Affix over the LED Lamp Label. (EUR only)

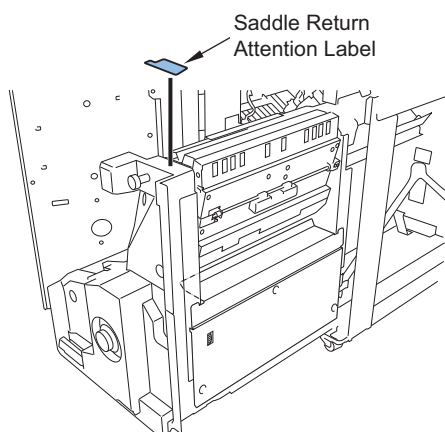
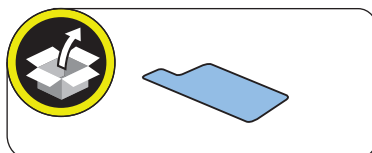




6. Pull out the Saddle Unit.



7. Affix the Saddle Return Attention Label according to the location over the existing ones.



8. Put the Saddle Unit back.



9. Close the Front Cover of the Finisher.

Puncher Unit-BT1/BS1/BU1

Points to Note at Installation

CAUTION:

Install the equipment, perform it before connecting the Host machine and a Finisher.

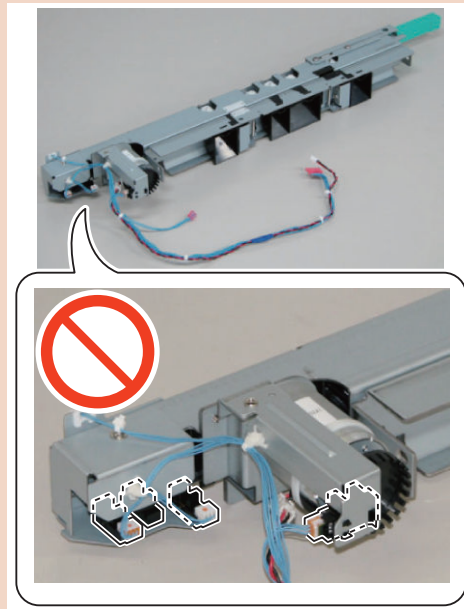
NOTE:

At the time of adjustment, prepare so that a Door Switch Tool is necessary.

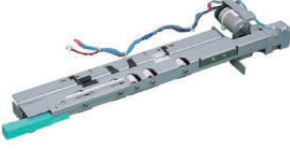
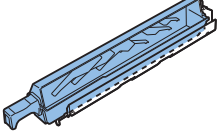
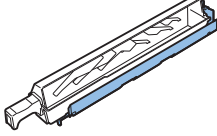
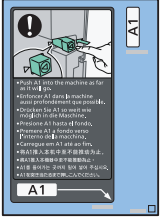

Points to Note before Installation

CAUTION:

Do not touch the sensor area when holding the puncher unit.



● Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Punch Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Punch Dust Box Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Punch Dust Box Frame Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] A1 Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (RS tightening; M4x8) X 1 	

Since [2] and [3] are integrated at the shipment, separate them to install when unpacking.

● Installation Procedure

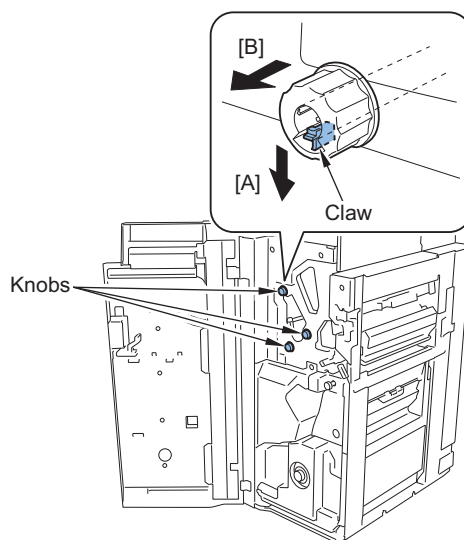
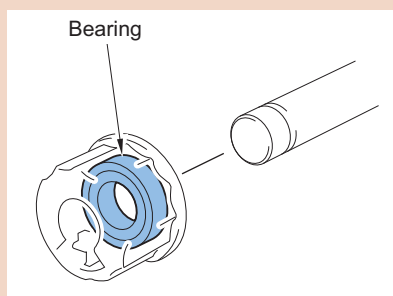
1. Open the Front Cover.



2. Push the claw in the direction of the arrow[A] and remove the 3 knobs in the direction of the arrow[B].

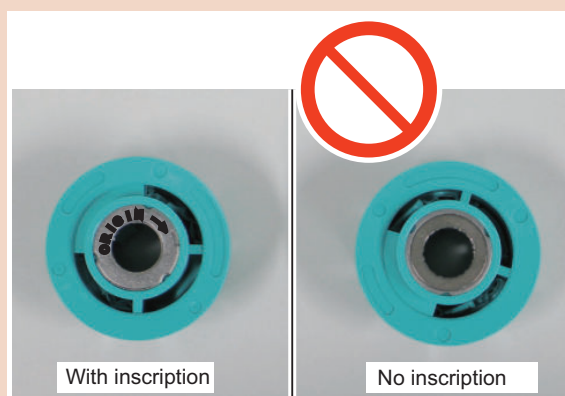
CAUTION:

Be careful not to drop the bearing inside the knob.



CAUTION:

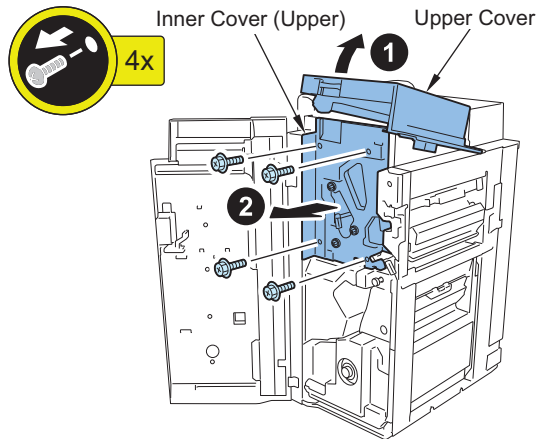
- If the bearing fell off from the knob, reattach it.
- A bearing has the orientation so make sure to install it in the correct direction.





3. Lift the Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow and remove the Inner Cover (upper).

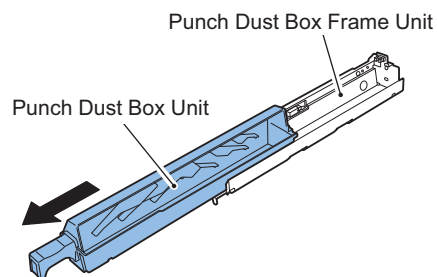
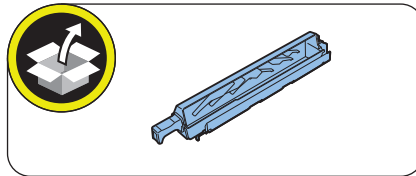
- 4 Screws



4. Remove tapes from Punch dust box unit.



5. Separate the Puncher Dust Box Frame Unit and Puncher Dust Box Unit and remove the tape.



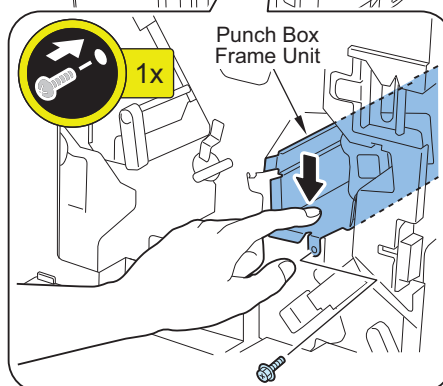
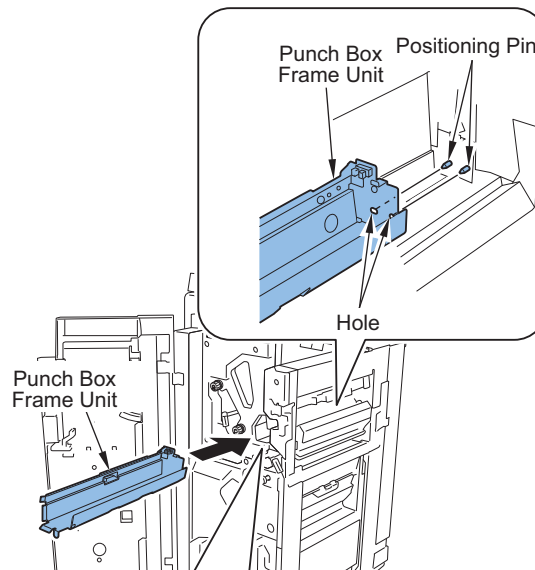
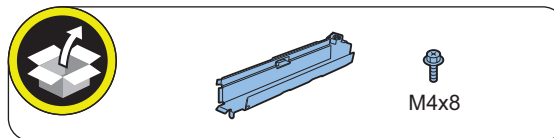
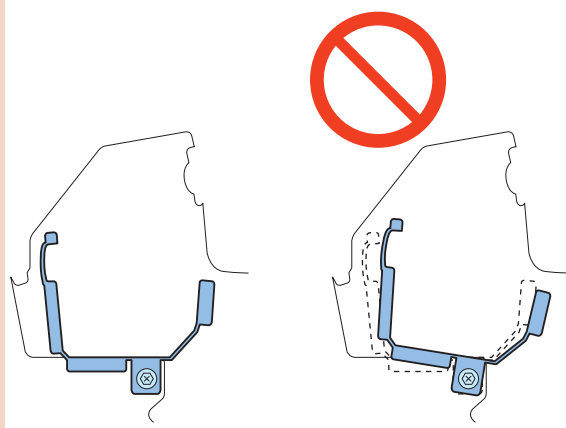


6. Align and insert the 2 holes on the Punch Dust Box Frame Unit to the 2 pins on the positioning pins inside the Finisher to install it.

- 1 Screw (RS tightening; M4 x 8)

CAUTION:

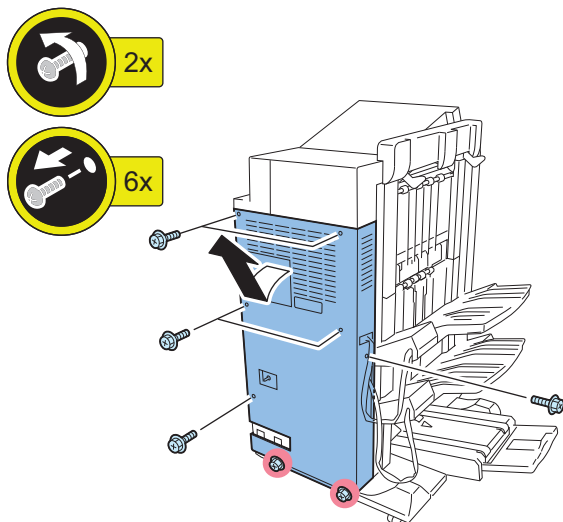
When tightening screws, press down with the finger to prevent the Puncher Dust Box Frame Unit from moving. If the Puncher Dust Box Frame Unit is installed at an angle, it will be difficult to install the Puncher Dust Box Unit due to the interference.





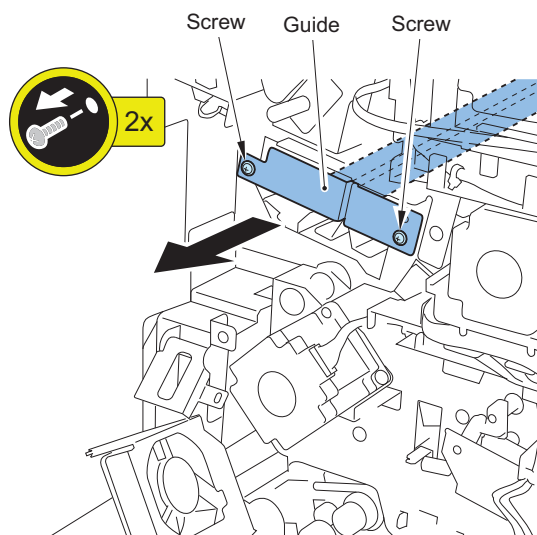
7. Remove the Rear Cover.

- 2 Screws (Loosen)
- 6 Screws

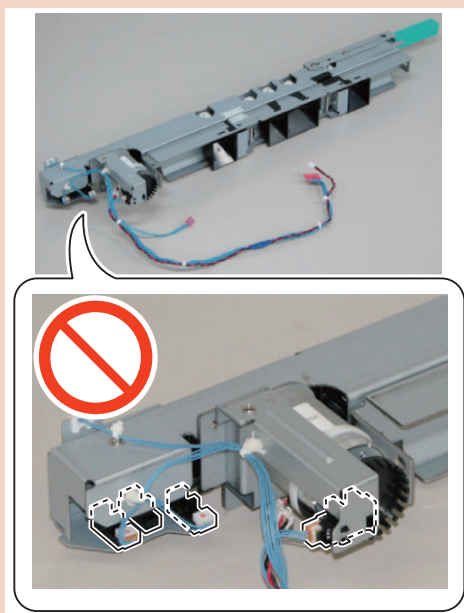


**8. Pull out the guide in the direction of the arrow (removed guide will not be used.).**

- 2 Screws (removed screws are used in step 10))

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the sensor area when holding the puncher unit.

**9. Removed the tape of the punch unit.**

**10. Insert the Punch Unit in the direction of the arrow from the back.**

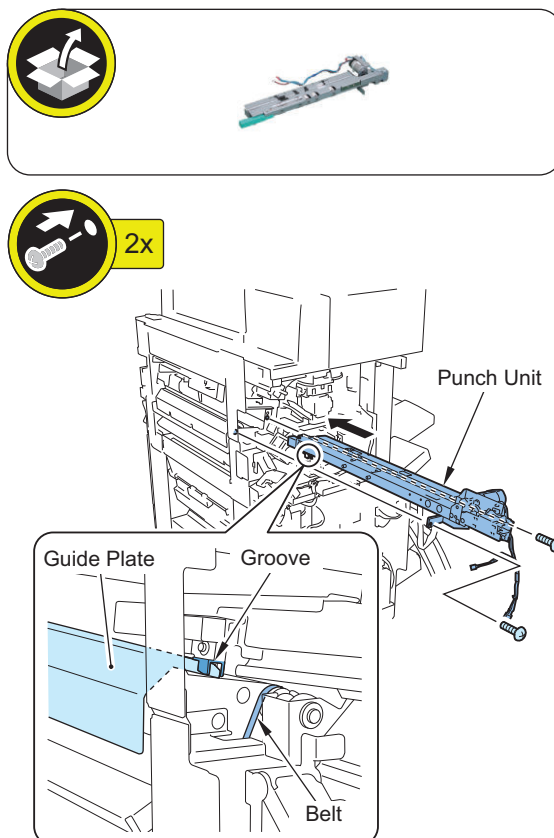
- 2 Screws (removed in step 8)

CAUTION:

When inserting the Punch Unit, avoid catching the belt with the Guide Plate.

NOTE:

- Align the Guide Plate of the Finisher with the groove of the Punch Unit.

**11. Connect the cable (Short) for the Punch Unit.**

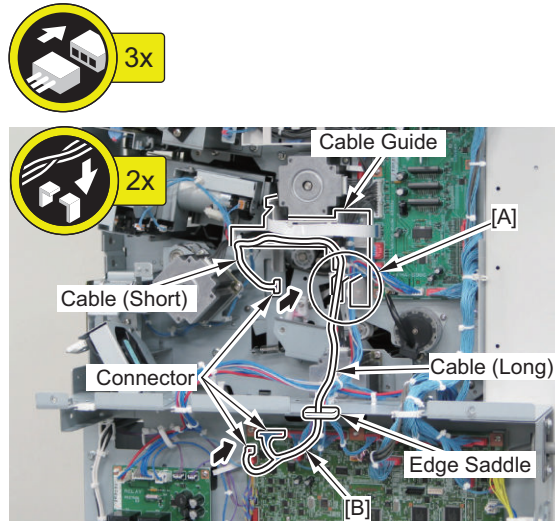
- 1 Connector

12. Work on and install cables (Long) for the Punch Unit in the order from top to bottom.

- 1 Cable Guide
- 1 Edge Saddle
- 2 Connectors

NOTE:

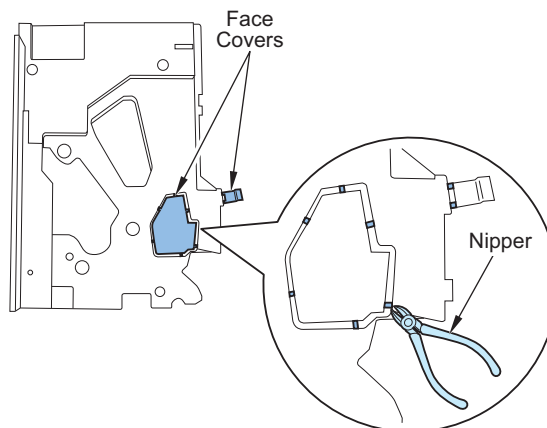
- Route the cable (Long) around the left side of the Cable Guide [A].
- The remaining length of the cable (Long) should be left to slack at the Controller PCB [B] side.



13. Cut the 2 Face Covers of the Inner Cover (upper) with nippers.

CAUTION:

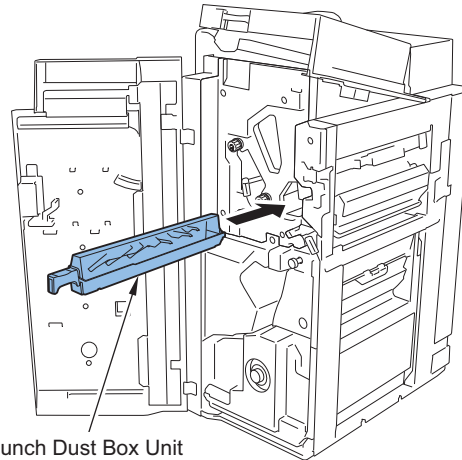
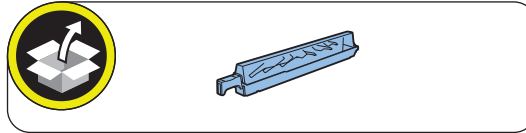
Be sure to remove the Face Covers thoroughly so that no bur is remained.



14. Install the Inner Cover (upper) and the 3 knobs. (4 Screws)



15. Insert the Punch Dust Box Unit in the direction of the arrow from the front.

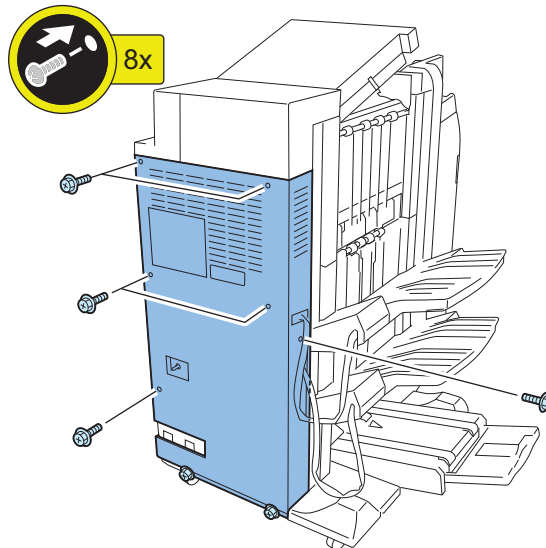


16. Close the Upper Cover.

17. Close the Front Cover.

18. Install the Rear Cover.

- 6 Screws
- 2 Screws(Tighten)



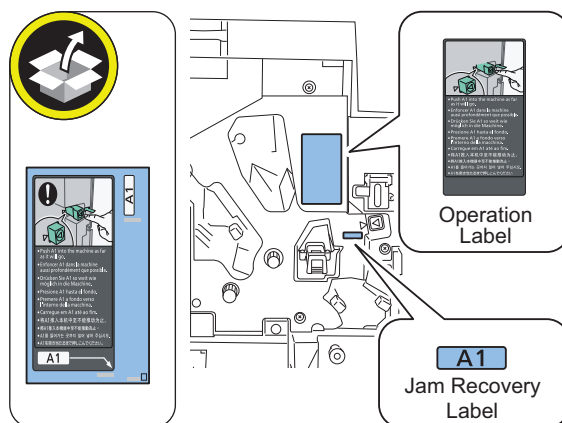
19. Connect the host Machine with the Finisher referring to Installation Procedure of the Finisher.

Affixing the A1 Labels



1. Open the Front Cover.

2. Affix the Operation Label and Jam Recovery Label to the Inner Cover (Upper).



3. Close the Front Cover.

Adjustments

■ Punching Operation Settings

NOTE:

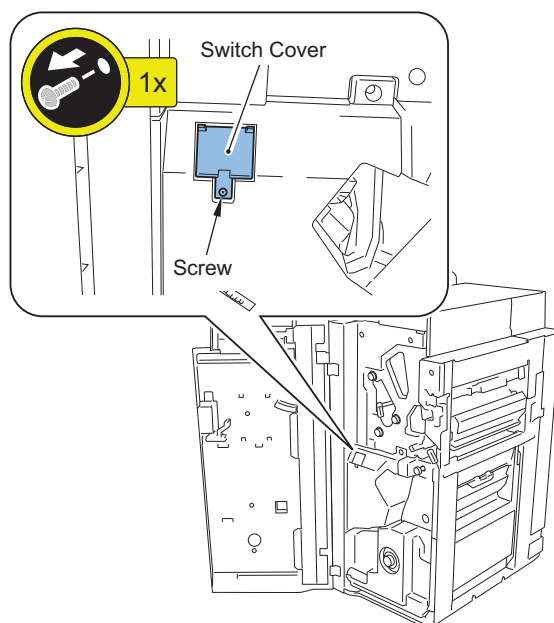
Depending on the Punch Unit to install, you may need to make settings of the DIP Switch on the switch PCB found in the Finisher.

● Preparations



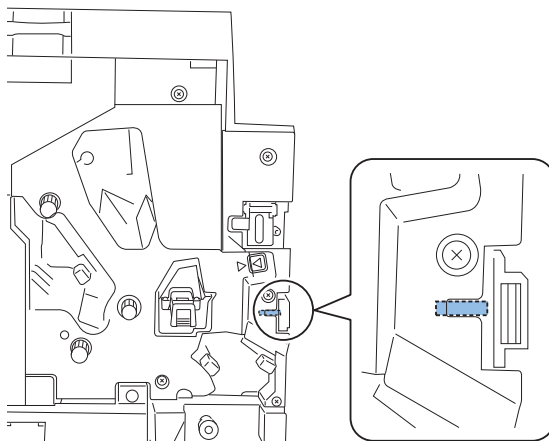
1. Open the Front Cover to remove the Switch Cover.

- 1 Screw





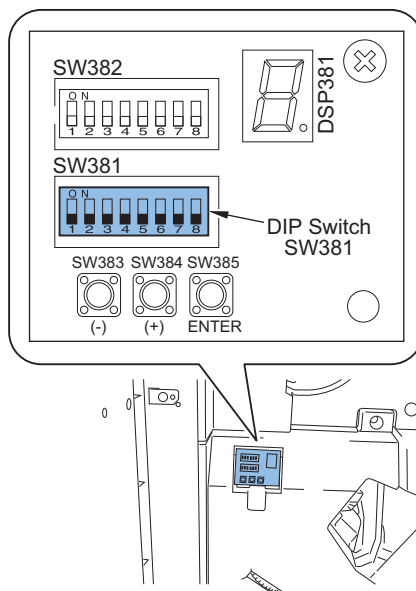
2. Open the Front Cover and put the Door Switch Tool into the door switch.



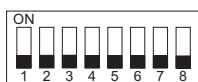
● Procedure



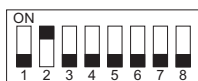
1. Specify the DIP Switch SW 381 on the switch PCB as follows.



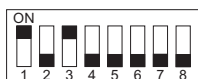
SW381



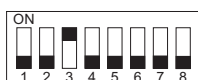
Puncher not used



for Puncher Unit-BS1
2/3-hole punch unit



for Puncher Unit-BT1
2/4-hole punch unit



for Puncher Unit-BU1
4-hole punch unit



2. Install the Switch Cover (1 Screw) and close the Front Cover.

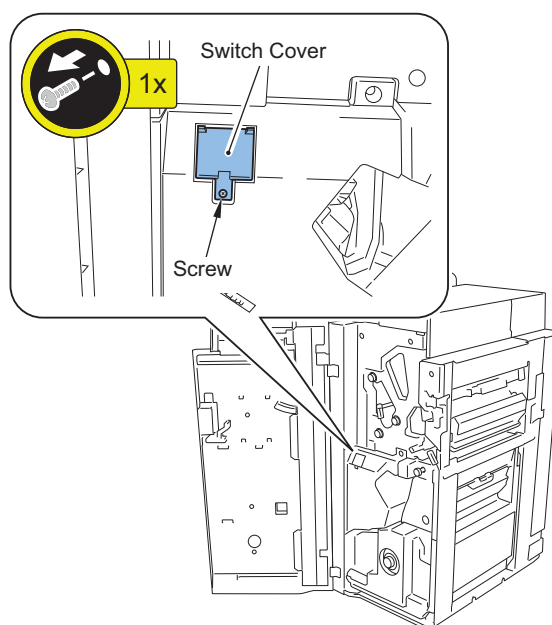
-
- 3. Connect the power plugs of the host machine and options to the outlet.
- 4. Turn ON the main power switch of the host machine first and then options.
-
- 5. Specify the punching operation on the control panel of the Host machine to confirm whether to execute punching operation.

■ Punch Blade Home Position Adjustment

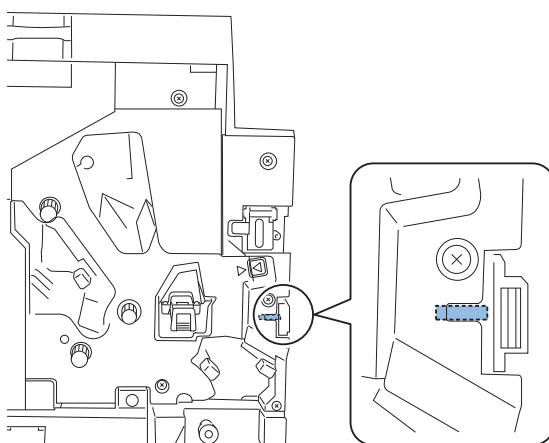
CAUTION:

When set it up for the Finisher, perform this adjustment. Because a Punch Blade Home Position Adjustment is not controlled normally unless adjust it, be careful.

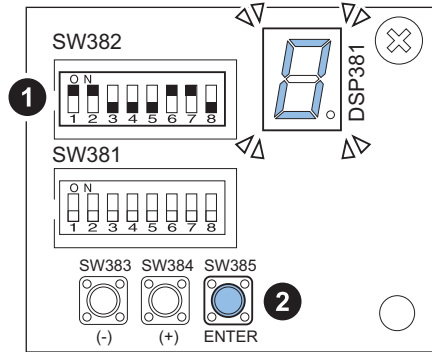
-
- 1. Open the Front Cover to remove the Switch Cover.
 - 1 Screw



-
- 2. Open the Front Cover and put the Door Switch Tool into the door switch.



-
- Write down the setting of DIP SW while the Switch Cover is removed.
 - Set DIP switch SW 382 on the Switch PCB as shown in the figure (1, 2, 6, 7 : ON), and press ENTER button (SW 385), resulting in "0" blinks on the LED.

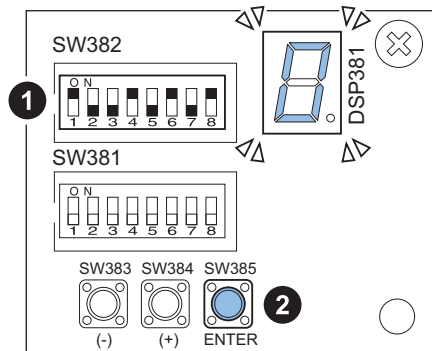


-
- Restore the DIP SW to the state of Step 3.

■ Side Registration/Skew Adjustment

● Checking Adjustment Value

-
- Write down the setting of DIP Switch (SW382) whose state is before being adjusted.
 - Set DIP switch SW 382 on the Switch PCB as shown in the figure (1, 4, 6, 8 : ON), and press ENTER button (SW 385), resulting in "0" blinks on the LED.

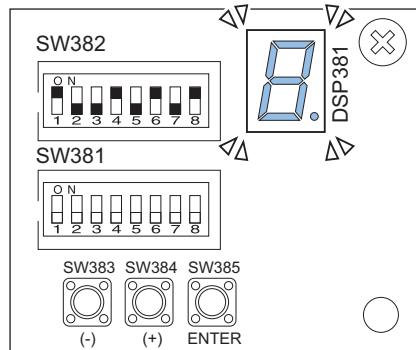


-
- Place a sheet of A4 or LTR paper and set in ADF or the copyboard mode, and set "3" for copy count to execute printing.

**4. The LED displays the adjustment value for side registration/skew.**

Check each value. The display shows values in the order of "A" > "side registration adjustment value" > "B" > "skew adjustment value".

- Side registration adjustment range (estimated value) : -3 to +3 mm (1 scale is equivalent to 1 mm)
- Skew adjustment range (estimated value) : -2 to +2 mm (1 scale is equivalent to 1 mm)

**5. Press ENTER button (SW 385) to complete the adjustment mode.****6. If the adjustment value (rough guideline) is within the range, restore the DIP Switch setting to the state of Step 1, and install the Switch Cover (with a screw) removed in the previous step.****7. Remove the door switch tool.****8. Close the Front Cover.****9. If the adjustment value (estimated value) is out of the range, execute "Side registration adjustment" or "Skew adjustment".**

• Side Registration Adjustment

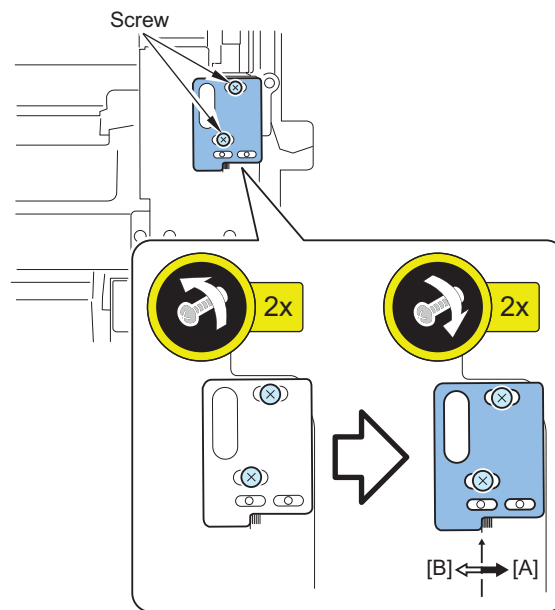
**1. Execute shutdown sequence, and then turn OFF the power of the host machine and options.****2. Separate the Finisher from the upstream equipment.**

- Disconnect the power plug from the outlet.
- Disconnect the power cable of the finisher.
- Disconnect the LAN cable.
- Remove the shunt cable.
- Remove the Latch Receivers (Front and Rear)

**3. Loosen the 2 screws on the Positioning Plate at the right side.**

4. If the value obtained at "Checking Adjustment Value" is "+ (positive)", move it in [A] direction and tighten the 2 screws.

If the value obtained at "Checking Adjustment Value" is "- (negative)", move it in [B] direction and tighten the 2 screws.



• Skew Adjustment

CAUTION:

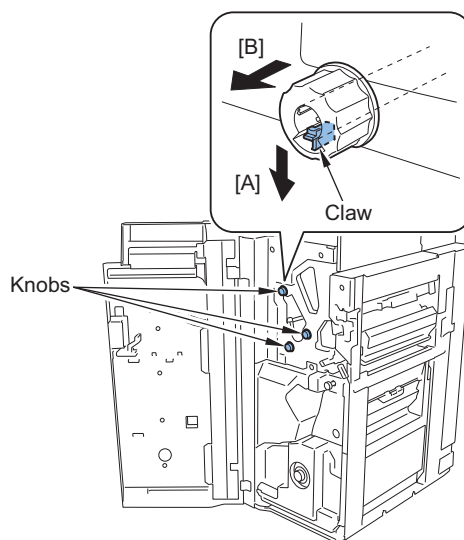
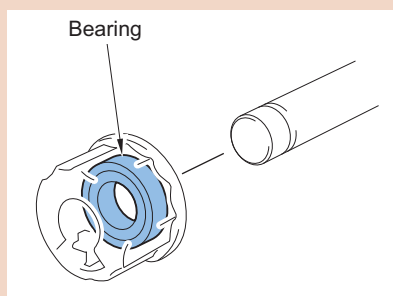
If the skew adjustment value is within the range, start from step 8).



1. Push the claw in the direction of the arrow [A] and remove the 3 knobs in the direction of the arrow [B].

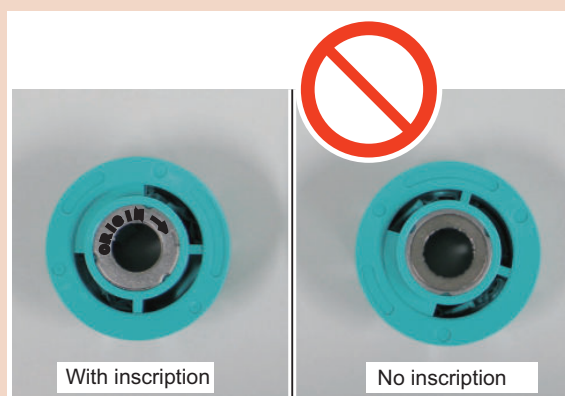
CAUTION:

Be careful not to drop the bearing inside the knob.



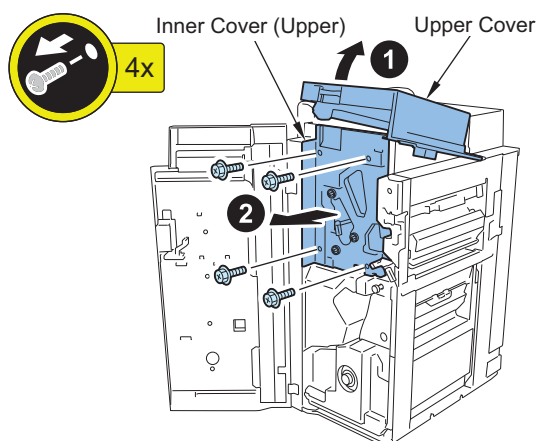
CAUTION:

- If the bearing fell off from the knob, reattach it.
- A bearing has the orientation so make sure to install it in the correct direction.

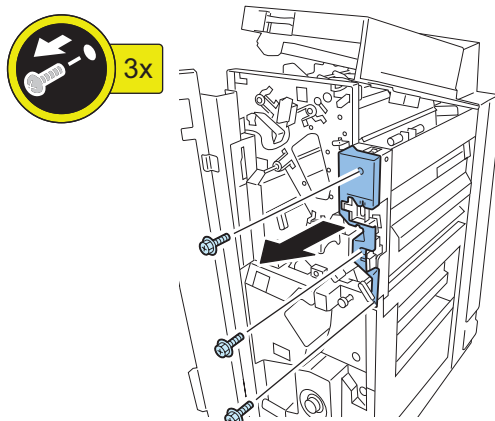


**2. Lift the Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow and remove the Inner Cover (upper).**

- 4 Screws

**3. Remove the Latch Base Cover.**

- 3 Screws

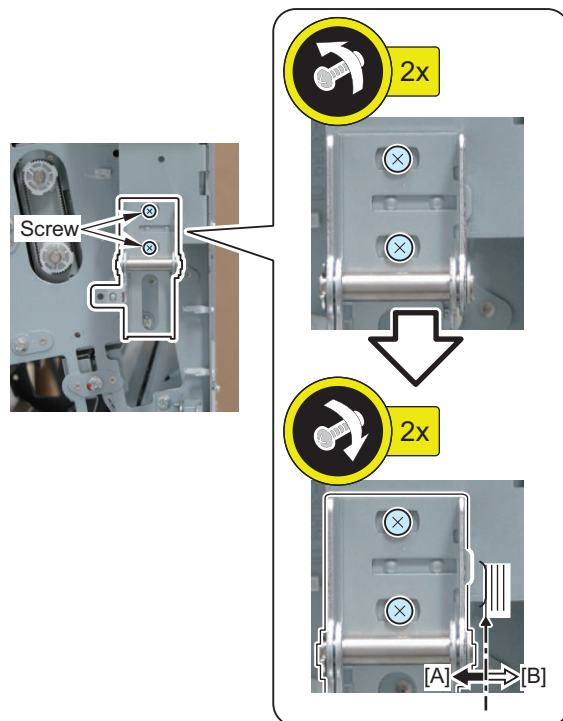
**4. Loosen the 2 screws on the Latch Plate (Front).**

5. If the value obtained at "Checking Adjustment Value" is "+ (positive)", move it in [A] direction and tighten the 2 screws.

If the value obtained at "Checking Adjustment Value" is "- (negative)", move it in [B] direction and tighten the 2 screws.

CAUTION:

Perform adjustment so that the total of the shifting amount (scale) of the Latch Plate (Front/Rear) is within -2 to +2 mm.



6. Remove the Rear Small Cover.

• 1 Screw



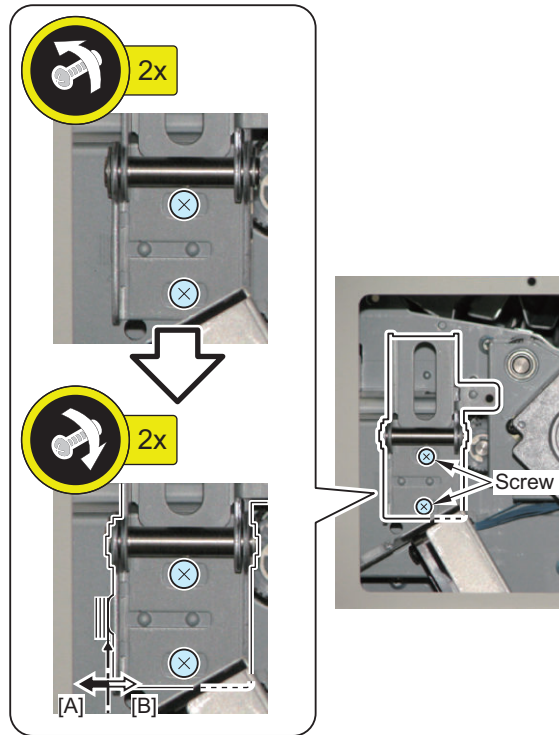
7. Loosen the 2 screws on the Latch Plate (Rear).

8. If the value obtained at "Checking Adjustment Value" is "+ (positive)", move it in [A] direction and tighten the 2 screws.

If the value obtained at "Checking Adjustment Value" is "- (negative)", move it in [B] direction and tighten the 2 screws.

CAUTION:

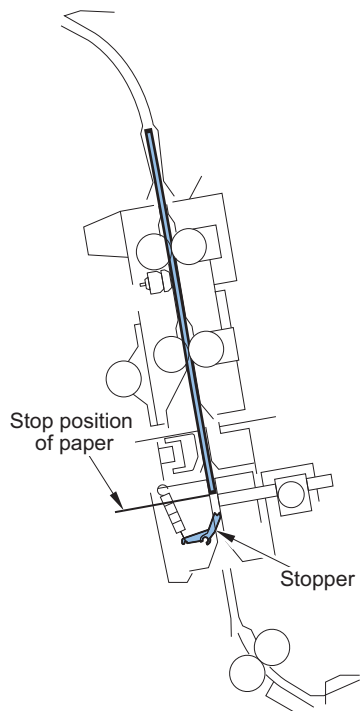
Perform adjustment so that the total of the shifting amount (scale) of the Latch Plate (Front/Rear) is within -2 to +2 mm.



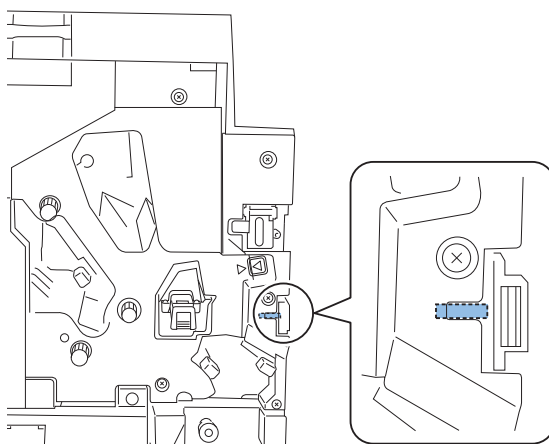
-
9. Reconnect the Finisher with the upstream equipment.
10. Turn ON the power of the options then the host machine.
-
11. Check the adjustment value again.
- If the adjustment value indicated on the LED is within the range, press ENTER button (SW385) to complete the adjustment mode.
- If the adjustment value indicated on the LED is out of the range, execute adjustment for the second time. Adjustment can be considered OK to complete if the value gets closer to the adjustment range (estimated value).
-
12. Put the DIP switch setting back and install the removed covers/parts.

■ Adjustment of Paper Stop Position

To ensure the skew correction for paper edge skew due to swithback, execute adjustment for paper-stop position before starting swithback from the stopper.



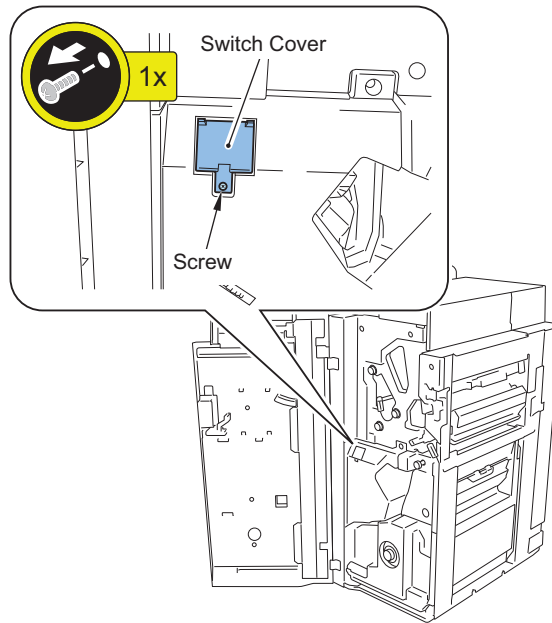
1. Open the Front Cover and insert the door-switch tool into the door switch.



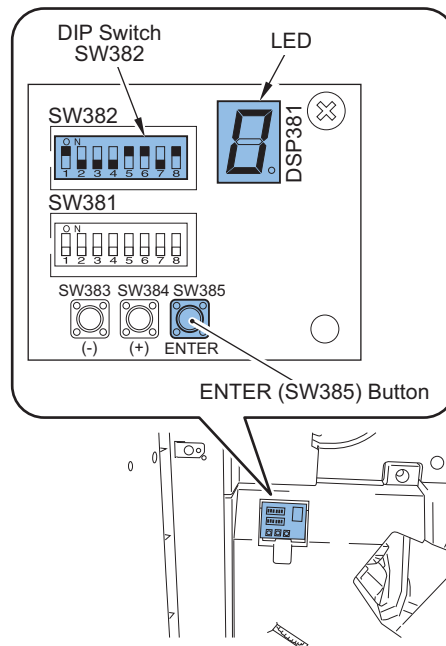


2. Remove the Switch Cover.

- 1 Screw



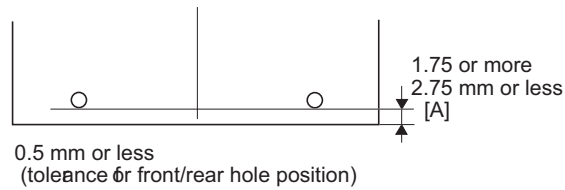
3. Set the DIP switch SW 382 on the switch PCB as shown in the figure below (1, 5, 6, 8 : ON) Once pressing the ENTER (SW 385) button, the LED shows "0".



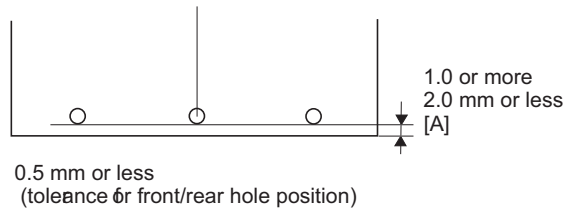
4. When executing punching operation in this condition, the paper stops without switchback and holes are punched.

-
- 5. Measure the dimension [A] between the hole position of the punched paper and the paper edge to check paper-stop position and adjust it using + (SW 384)/- (SW 383) button to be in the position as shown below.**

2-/4-Hole



2-/3-Hole



	Paper Stop Position	Adjustment value
+ (SW 384)	Increase	One press : 0.4 mm
- (SW 383)	Decrease	

-
- 6. Perform punching operation again to verify the paper-stop position.**
 < If the measured value is beyond the adjustment value/range >
 Repeat adjustment until the measured value is within the adjustment value/range.
 < If the measured value is within the adjustment value/range >
 Press the ENTER button to terminate the adjustment mode.

-
- 7. Remove the door switch tool.**

-
- 8. Restore the DIP switch settings, then attach the Switch Cover (1 Screw) and close the Front Cover.**

Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1

Checking Before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

Checking the Power Supply

1. Check that this equipment is connectable to the outlet independently which supplies the rated voltage within +10/-15% at the specified ampere or higher.
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this equipment near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

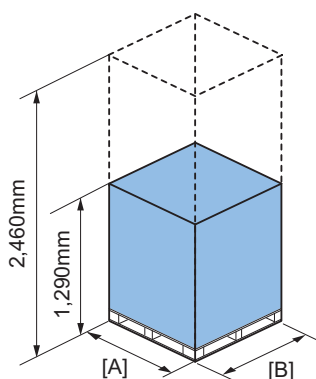
Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F281240
- F281250

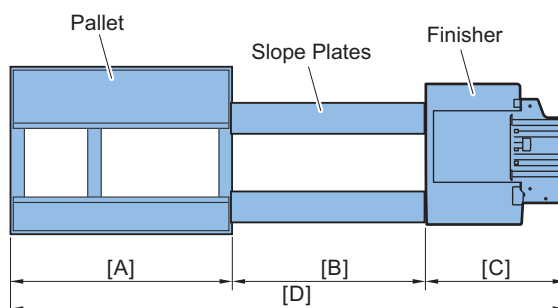
Checking the Unpacking Space

Be sure to unpack this equipment according to the figures in a wide area where there is enough space around it.



[A] Staple Finisher: Approx. 845mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 970mm

[B] Staple Finisher: Approx. 900mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 900mm



[A] Staple Finisher: Approx. 845mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 970mm

[B] Staple Finisher: Approx. 760mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 840mm

[C] Staple Finisher: Approx. 655mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 768mm

[D] Staple Finisher: Approx. 2,260mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 2,578mm

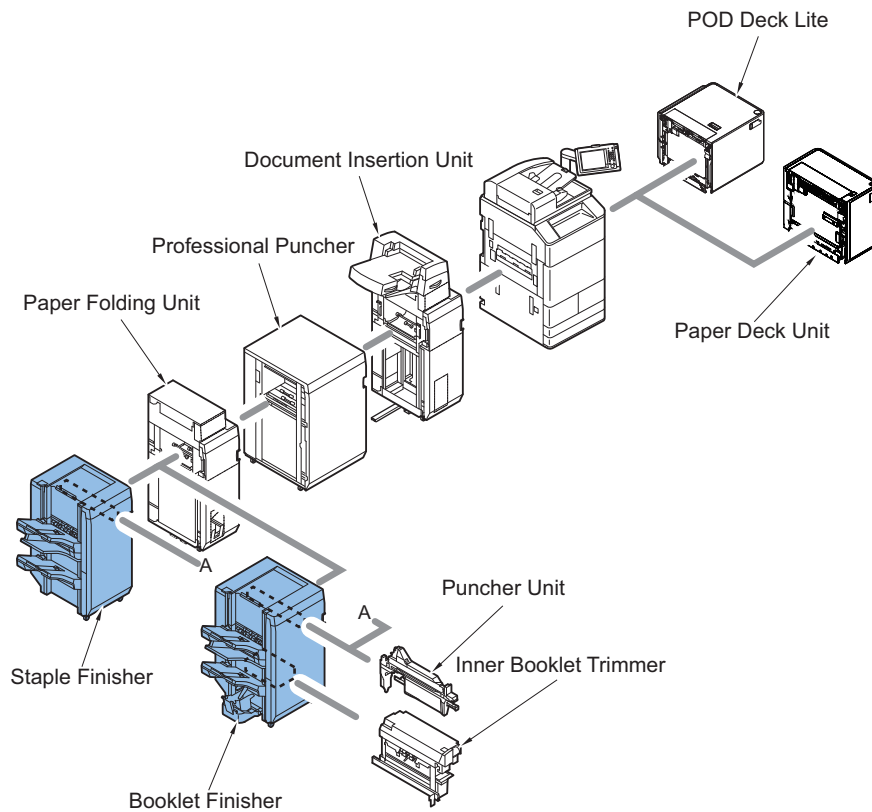
Points to Note on Installation

- Refer to "Order of Installation of options" when installing this Equipment.

- Staple Finisher weighs about 64 kg and Booklet Finisher weighs about 110 kg. 2 more persons are required to install it.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Order of Installation of Options

When installing this equipment together with other options, first install the host machine and then install options in the following order:



1. POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit
2. Document Insertion Unit
3. Professional Puncher
4. Paper Folding Unit
5. Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher
6. Puncher Unit *1
7. Inner Booklet Trimmer *1/*2

*1: The Puncher Unit and Inner Booklet Trimmer are to be installed in the finisher. Install these units together with the finisher or after installing the finisher.

*2: Booklet Finisher only

● Unpacking

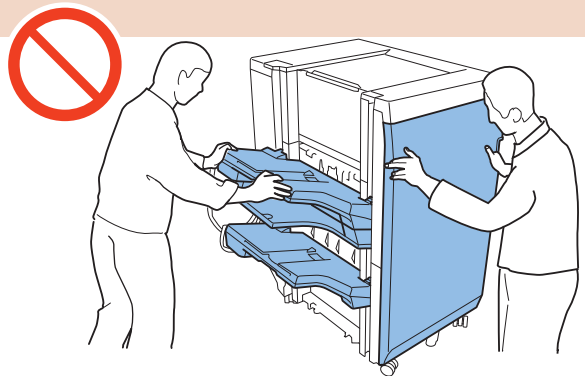
■ Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

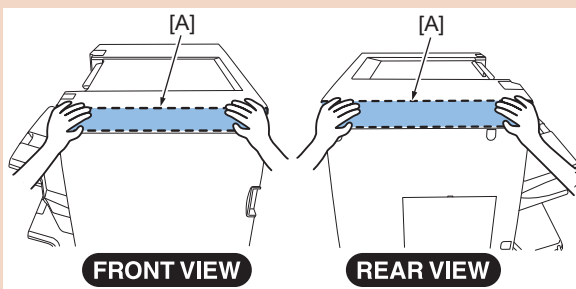
This equipment is packed using tapes, fixings and cushioning materials to be protected against vibration and shock during transportation. Be sure to remove them before starting to install this equipment. It is a good idea to store away the removed fixings and cushioning materials for possible relocation of this equipment, e.g., to a new site or for repairs.

CAUTION:

- Staple Finisher weighs about 64 kg and Booklet Finisher weighs about 110 kg. 2 more persons are required to install it.
- When unpacking this equipment, you can deform or damage it depending on the parts you hold. Do not hold the front cover or upper output tray unit or lower output tray unit.

**CAUTION:**

When removing the cushioning materials in steps 2 and 3 or moving this equipment from the pallet down to the floor along the slope boards in step 6, hold the top [A] of this equipment.

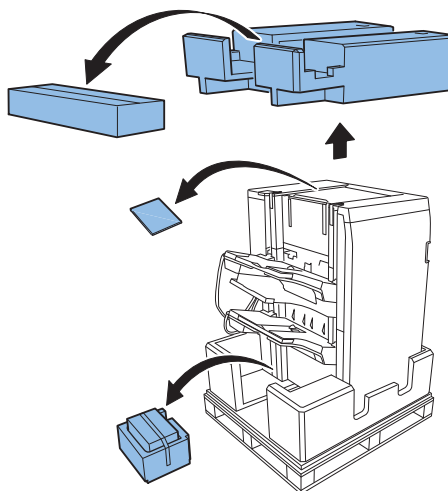


□

1. Open the container box, and then take out the accessory box and included parts, cushioning materials.

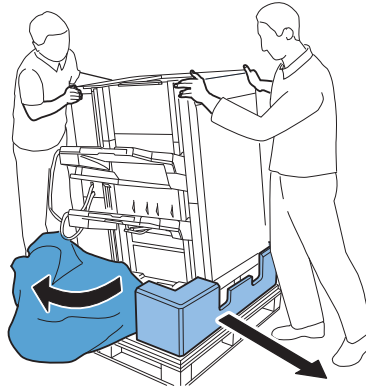
NOTE:

The Tray label and Tray setting label are attached to the plastic bag with the adhesive tape.

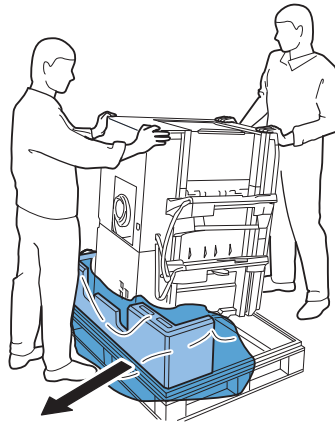




2. Pull down the plastic bag. While holding the top of this equipment, raise one side of this equipment to remove the cushioning material. Be sure to pull the plastic bag toward the other cushioning material completely.



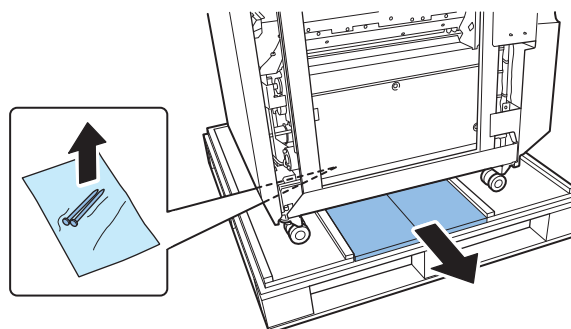
3. While holding the top of this equipment, raise the other side to remove the cushioning material and plastic bag.



4. Remove two slope boards and two fixing pins.

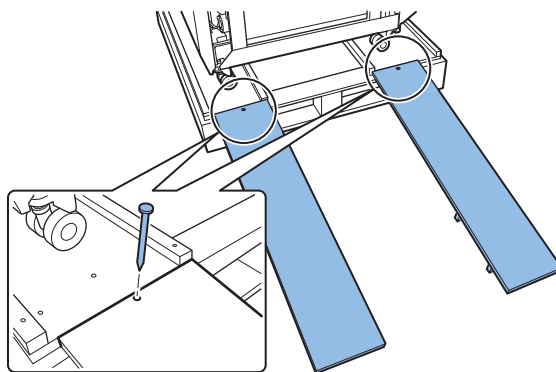
NOTE:

The fixing pins are attached to the slope board with the adhesive tape.

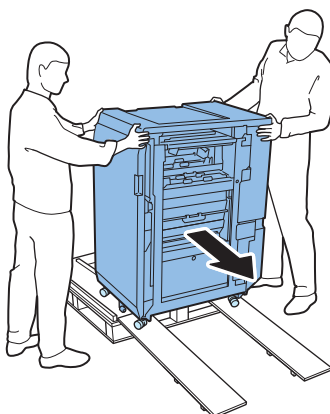




5. Using two fixing pins, secure the slope boards to the pallet.

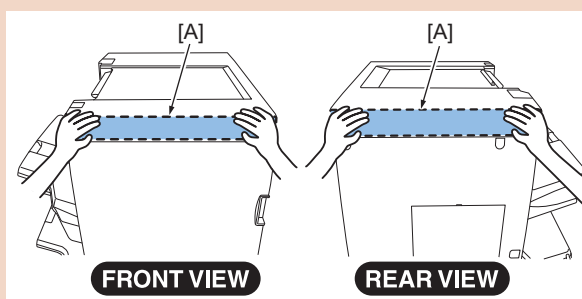


6. Place the casters of this equipment on the slope boards, and then move this equipment slowly from the pallet down to the floor.



CAUTION:

- Move this equipment down to the floor carefully so that the casters do not slip off the slope boards.
- Be sure to hold the top [A] of this equipment when moving this equipment from the slope boards down to the floor.



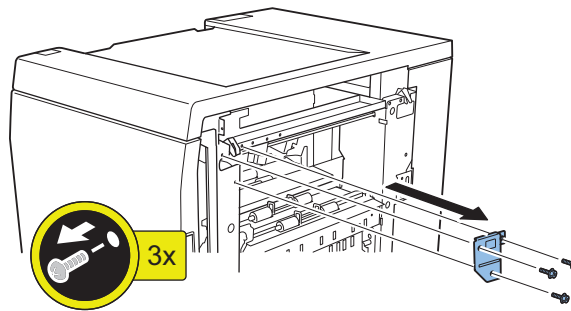
7. Remove all pieces of packing tape used outside this equipment.



8. For Booklet Finisher, remove the fixing.

- Screw 3pcs.

<Booklet Finisher>

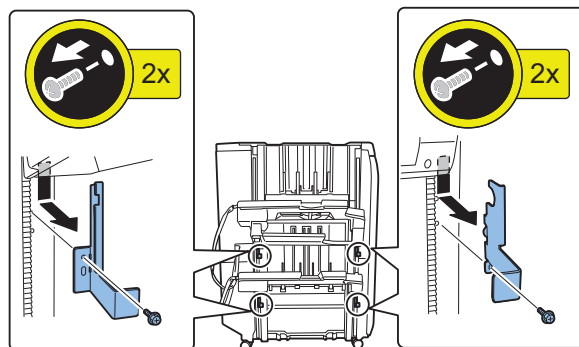
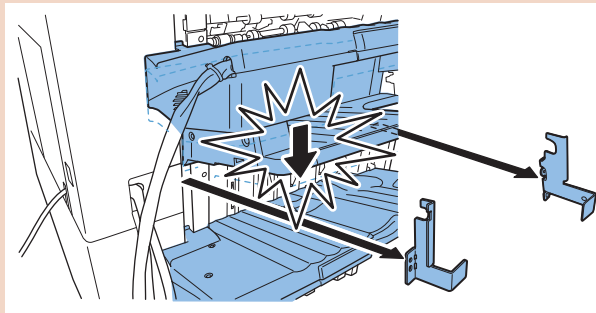


9. Remove four fixings of the upper output tray and lower output tray.

- Screw 4pcs.

CAUTION:

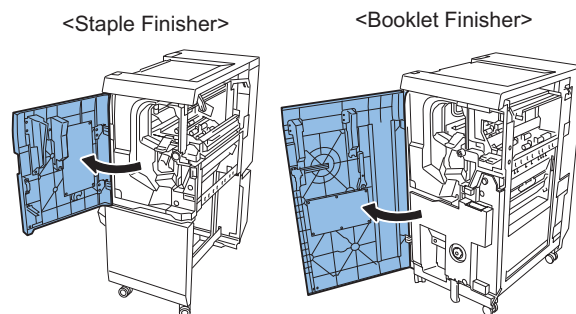
Hold the output tray while removing the fixings lest the output tray jerks.



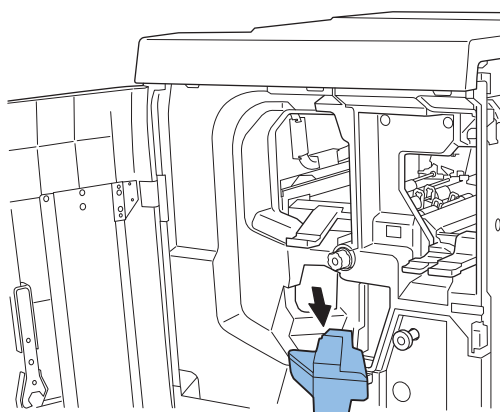
10. Refer to "Unpacking and Checking the Contents" to check that none of the included parts is missing.



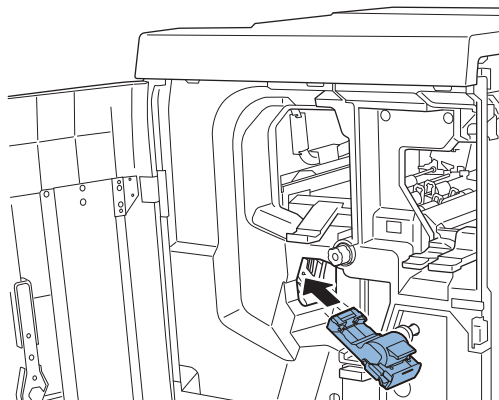
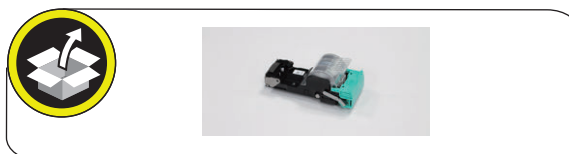
11. Open the front cover.



12. Remove all pieces of packing tape used inside this equipment, and then remove the cushioning material from the stapler unit.

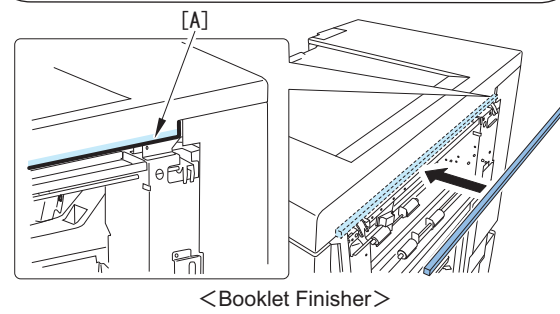
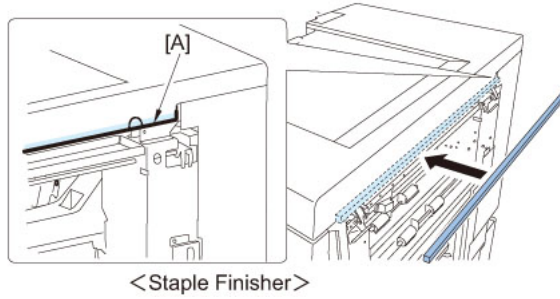


13. Attach the stapler unit staple case by pushing until it clicks.



□

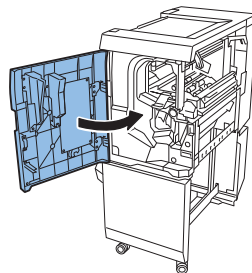
14. Take off the release paper from the spacer, and put the spacer on the upper cover of the finisher's right side (paper feeding inlet side), along the inside edge [A] of the upper cover.



□

15. For Staple Finisher, close the front cover and proceed to Section "Installation Procedure".

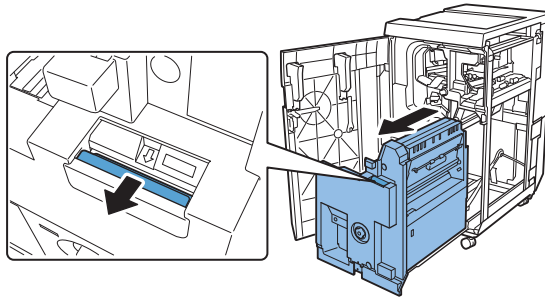
<Staple Finisher>



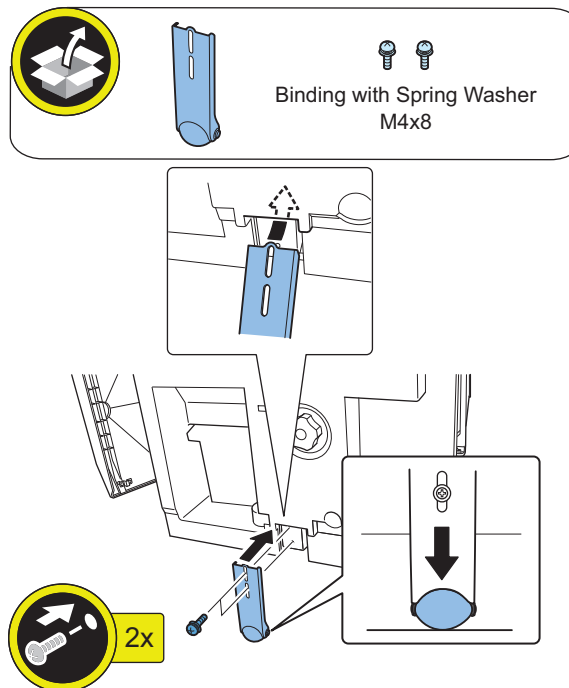
■ Unpacking Procedure of the Saddle Unit [Booklet Finisher Only]



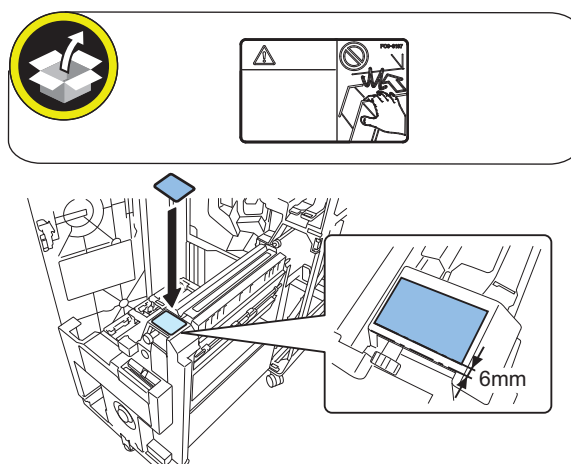
1. Gripping the hook of the handle, pull out the saddle stitcher unit gently until it stops, and then remove all pieces of packing tape.



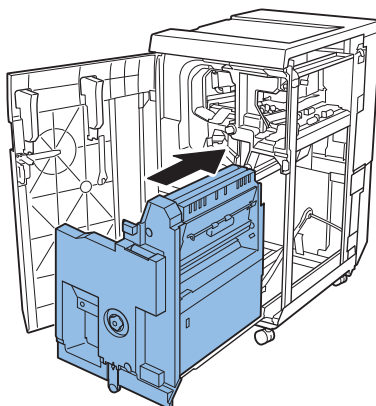
2. Attach the saddle stitcher unit auxiliary caster so that its caster can touch the floor.
 - Screw (Binding with Spring Washer ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



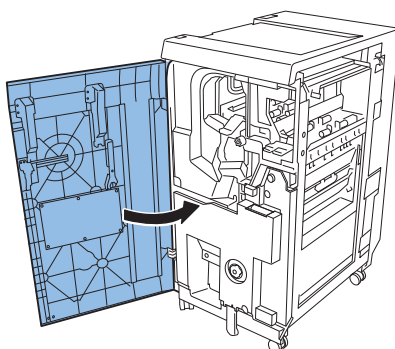
-
3. Affix the Saddle caution label (written in the language used by the customer) to the top of the saddle stitcher unit cover.



-
4. Push back the saddle stitcher unit gently into this equipment until it stops.



-
5. Close the front cover.

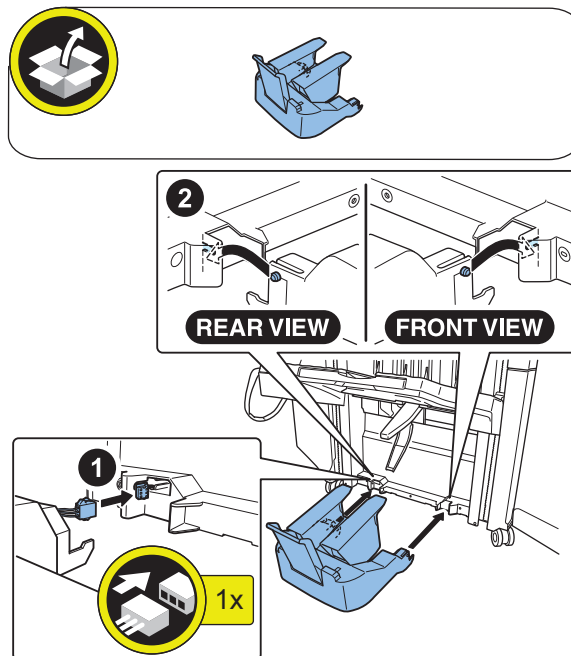




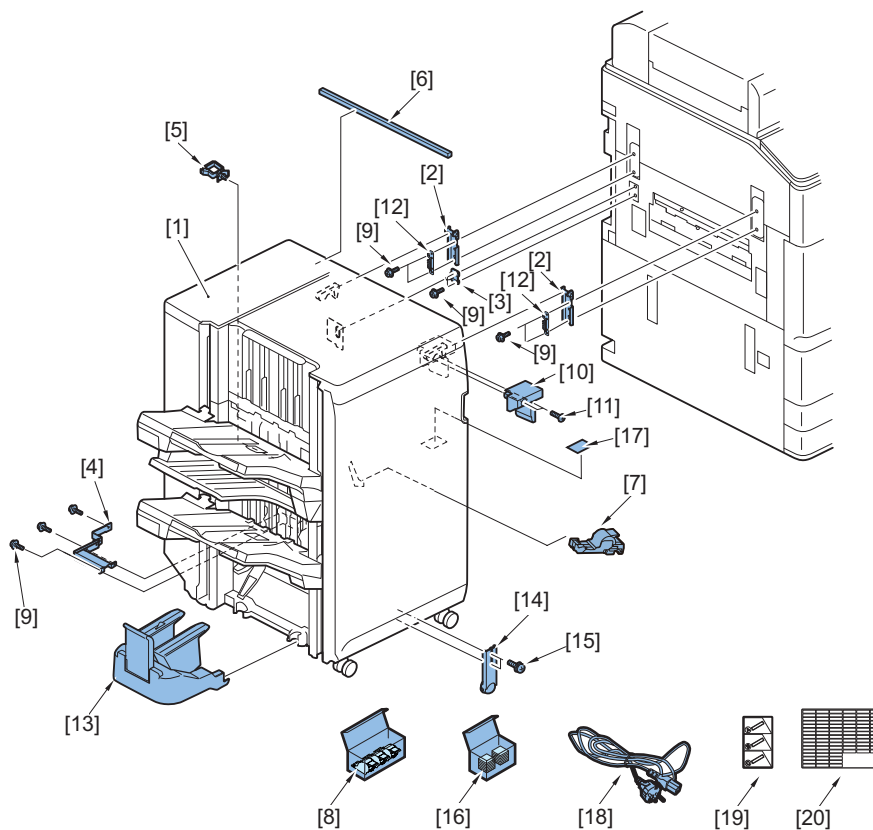
6. Remove the packing tape from the booklet tray. Connect the connector of the booklet tray to the connector on the lower left side, and then attach the booklet tray using its two hooks.

CAUTION:

When attaching the booklet tray, be careful not to pinch or damage the connector and the cable harness. After attaching the booklet tray, put the connector and the cable harness inside of this equipment. Do not put the connector and cable harness at outside of this equipment.



● Checking the Contents



<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	Finisher	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [11]*1	Screw (Binding ; M4 x 6)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	Latch catch	2pcs.	<input type="checkbox"/> [12]*2	Ground plate	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [3]	Positioning pin	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [13]*2	Booklet tray	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [4]	Shunt cable unit	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [14]*2	Saddle stitcher unit auxiliary caster	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [5]	Wire saddle	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [15]*2	Screw (Bind with Spring Washer ; M4 x 8)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [6]	Spacer	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [16]*2	Staple cartridge for saddle stitcher	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [7]	Stapler unit staple case	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [17]*2	Saddle caution label	
<input type="checkbox"/> [8]	Staple cartridge	3pcs.	<input type="checkbox"/> [18]*3	Power cord	
<input type="checkbox"/> [9]	Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8)	9pcs.	<input type="checkbox"/> [19]	Tray label	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [10]*1	Latch cover	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [20]	Tray setting label	1pc.

*1:Staple Finisher only

*2:Booklet Finisher only

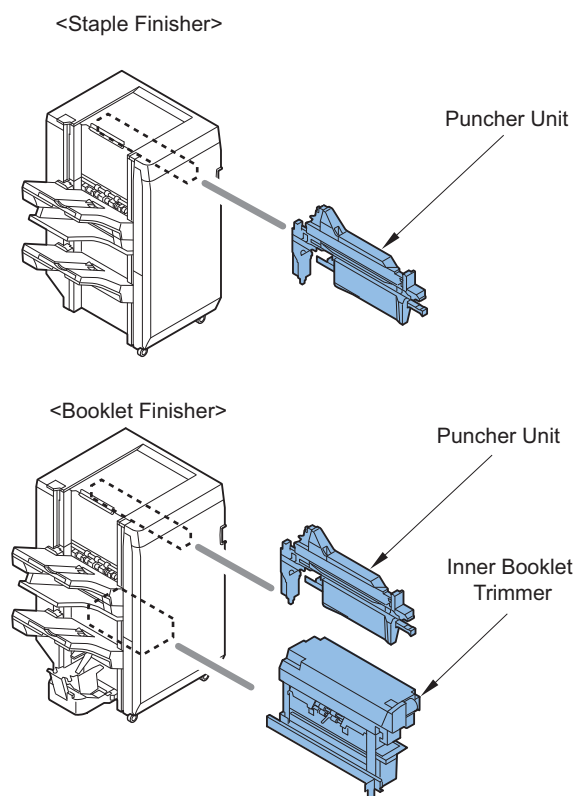
*3:The package may contain several power cords intended for use in Europe. Use the correct power cord to match the location/ area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

Installation Procedure

■ Installing Options

When installing the puncher unit and inner booklet trimmer together with this equipment, install them before connecting this equipment to the upstream connection machine.

For the procedures for installing the puncher unit and inner booklet trimmer, refer to their installation procedure manuals.

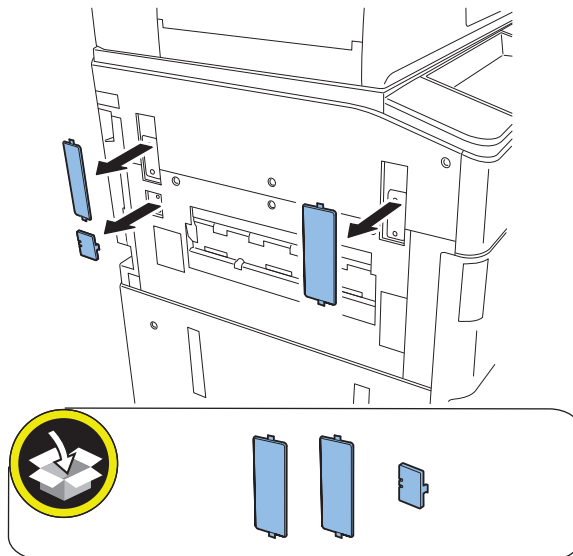


■ Preparation for Installation on Upstream Connection Machine Side [Staple Finisher only]

● Connecting to the Host Machine



1. Remove three covers on the left side of the host machine.

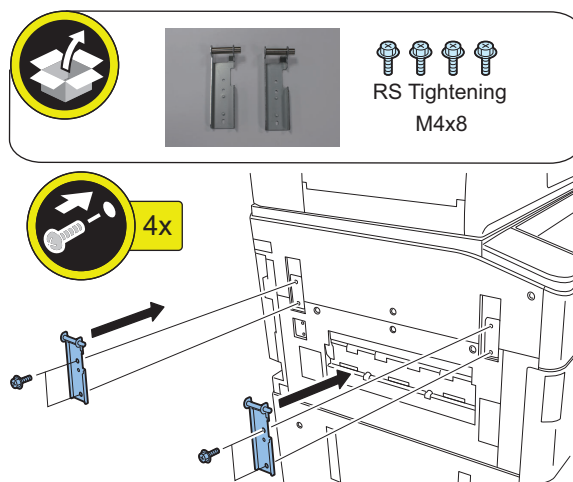


2. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the host machine.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

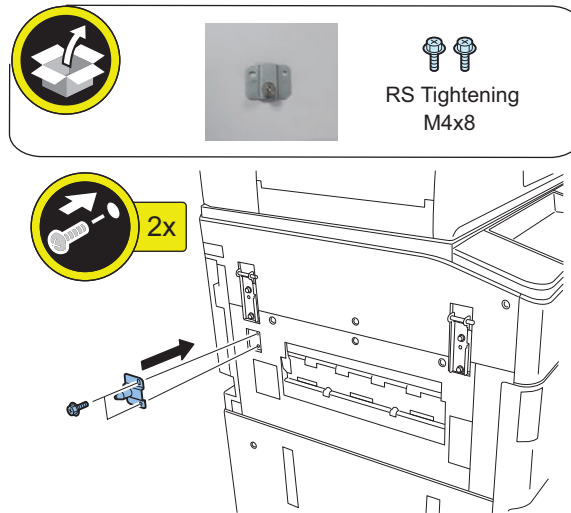
- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the host machine.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.





3. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit

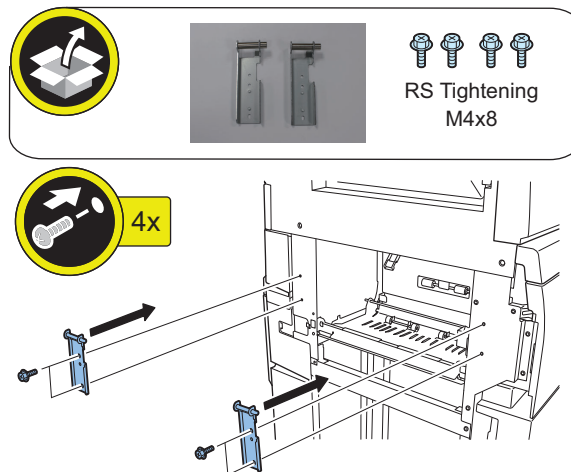


1. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the document insertion unit.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

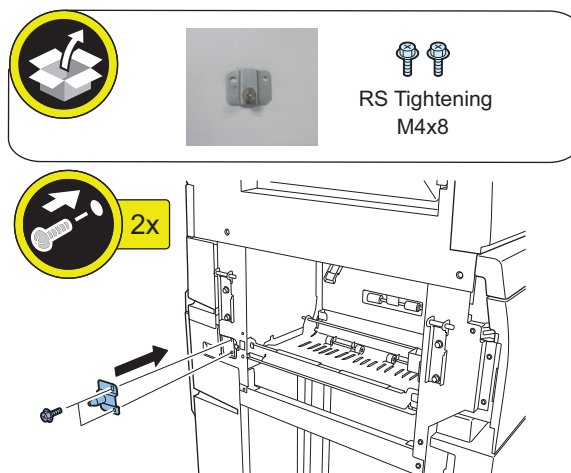
- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the document insertion unit.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.





2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Professional Puncher

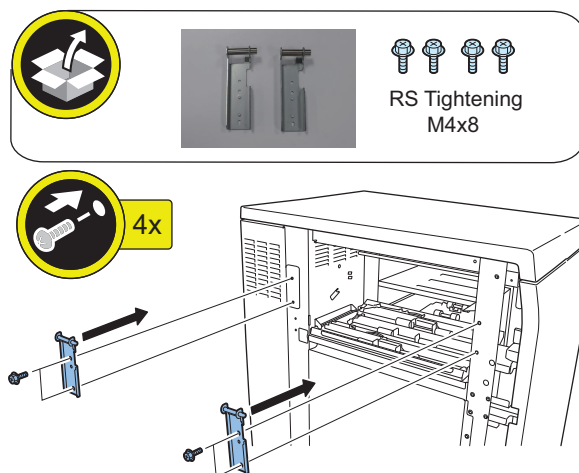


1. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the professional puncher.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

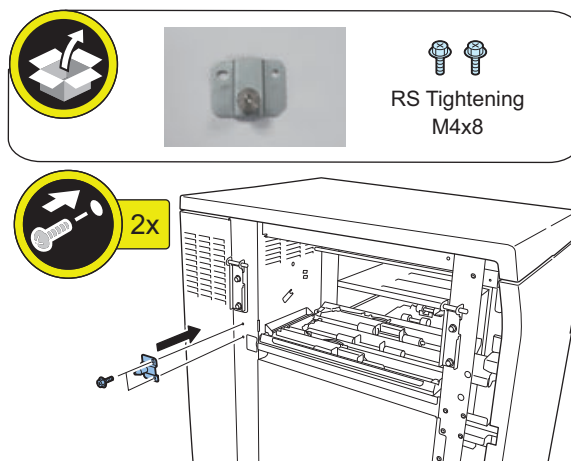
- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the professional puncher.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.





2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Paper Folding Unit

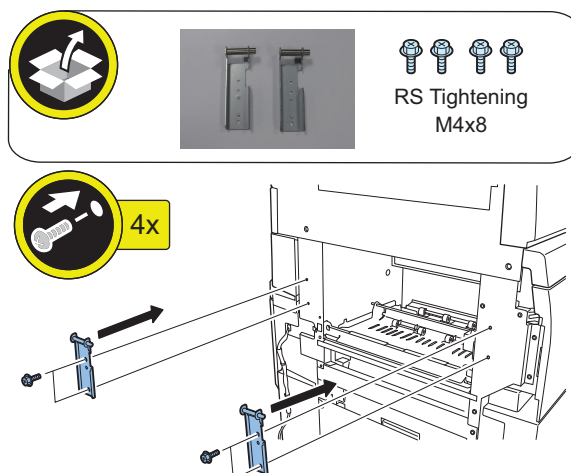


1. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the paper folding unit.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

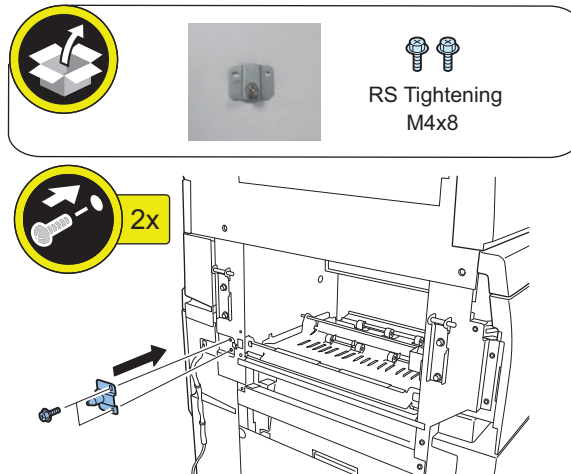
- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the paper folding unit.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.





2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.

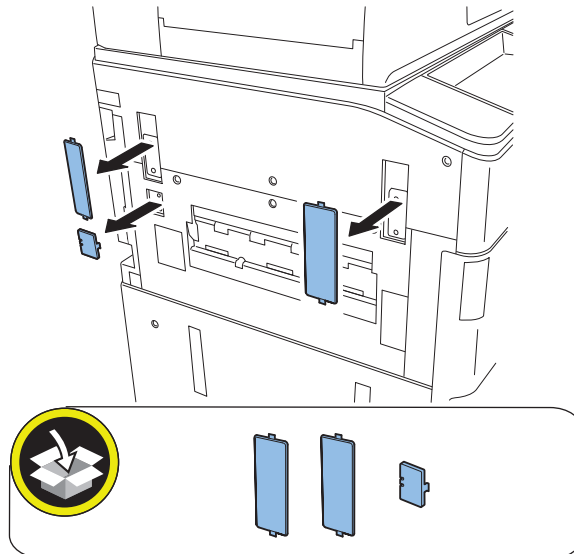


■ Preparation for Installation on Upstream Connection Machine Side [Booklet Finisher only]

● Connecting to the Host Machine



1. Remove three covers on the left side of the host machine.



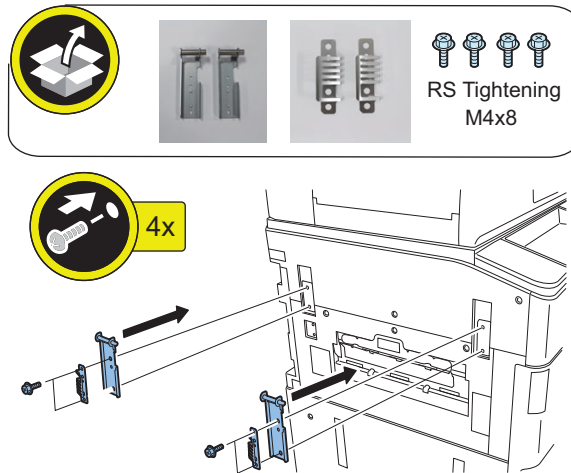


2. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the host machine together.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

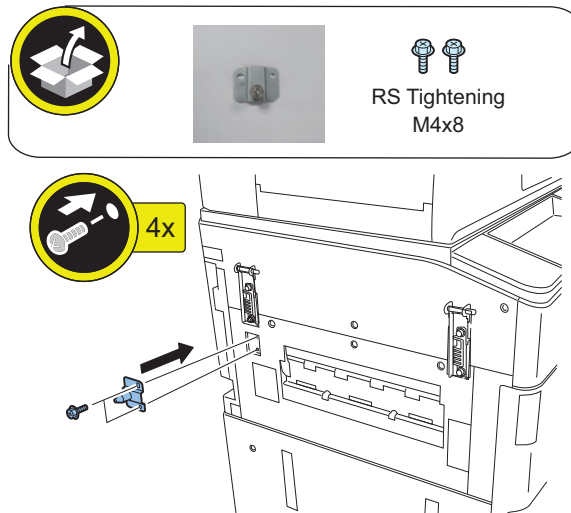
NOTE:

- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the host machine.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.



3. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit

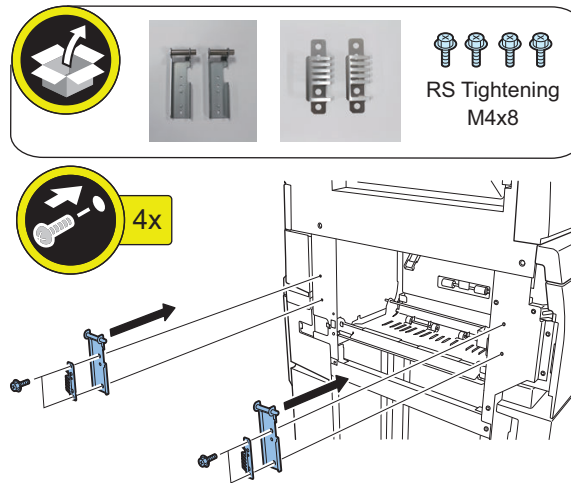


1. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the document insertion unit together.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

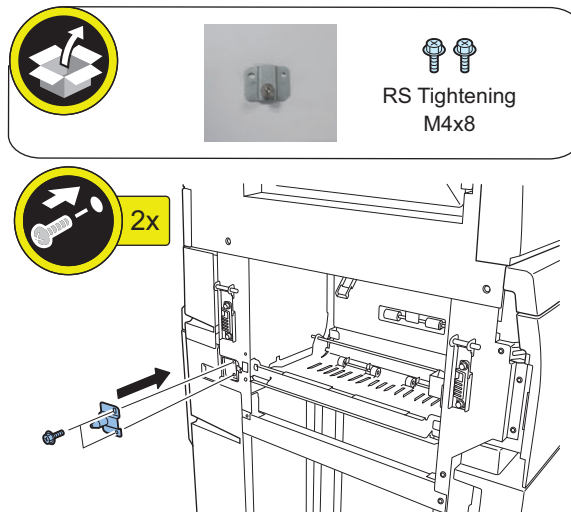
NOTE:

- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the document insertion unit.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.



2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



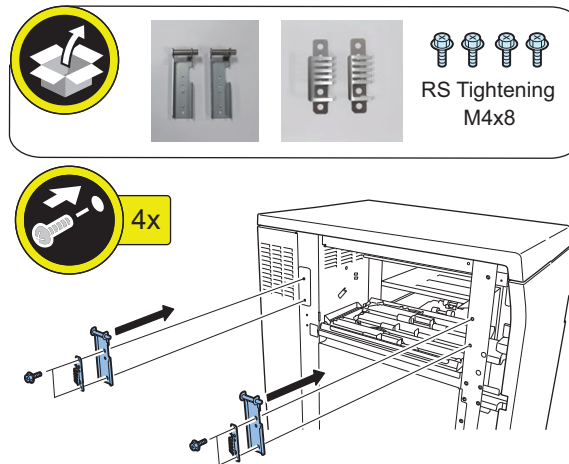
• Connecting to Professional Puncher



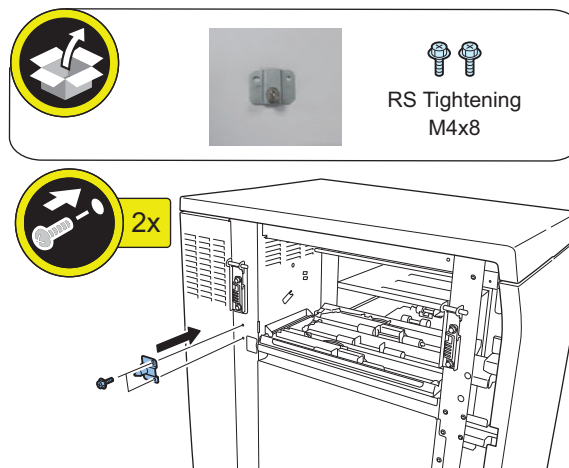
1. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the professional puncher together.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the professional puncher.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.



2. Attach the positioning pin.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



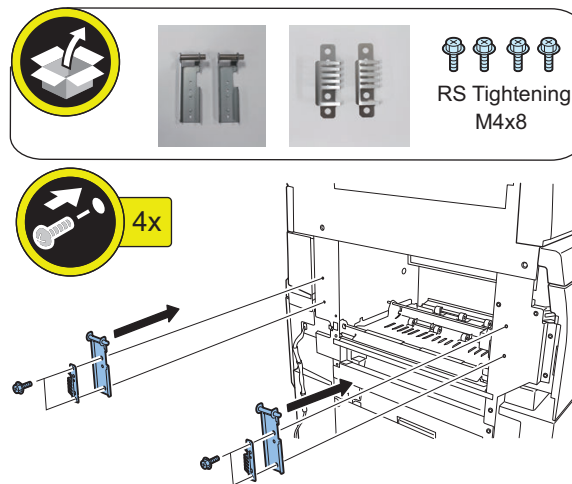
• Connecting to Paper Folding Unit



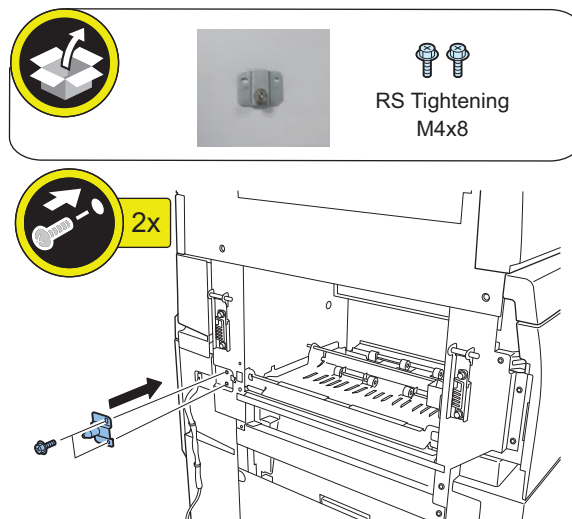
1. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the paper folding unit together.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the paper folding unit.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.



2. Attach the positioning pin.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.

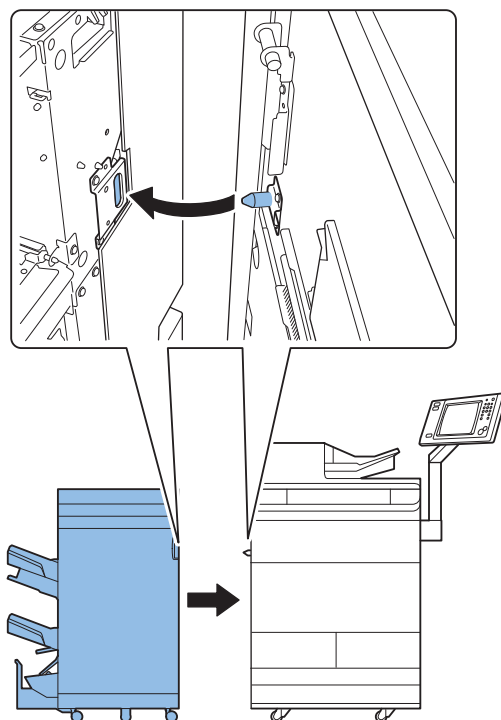


■ Connecting to the Upstream Connection Machine

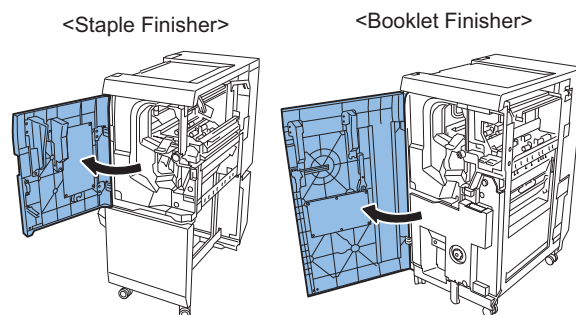
⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the host machine is turned off and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

-
1. Fit the positioning pin installed on the upstream connection machine in the positioning hole on this equipment to connect this equipment to the upstream connection machine fittingly.

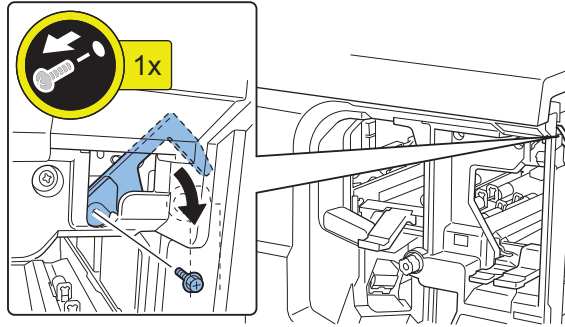


-
2. Open the front cover of this equipment.



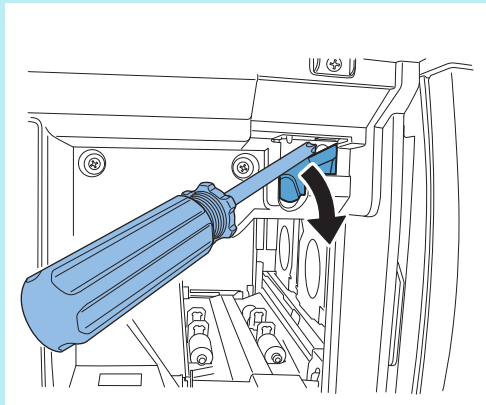


3. Remove the latch fixing screw, and then hang the latch (front and rear) on the latch catch.

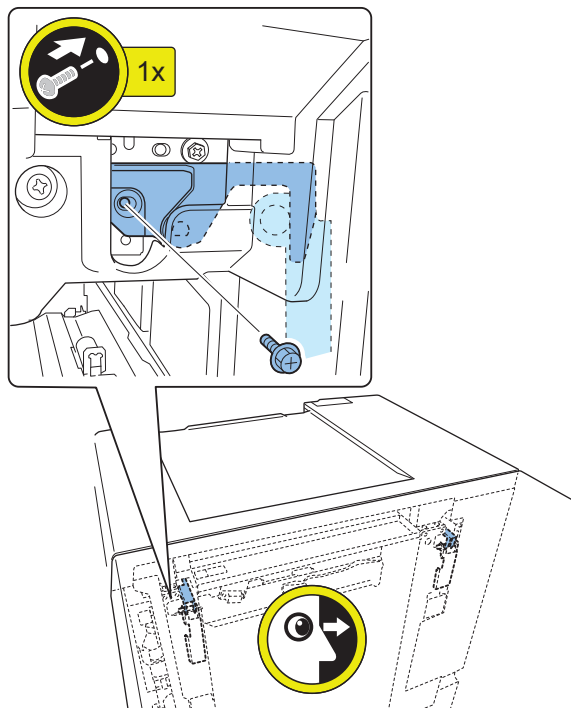


NOTE:

If the latch cannot be hung on the latch catch smoothly, use a screwdriver or the like as shown by the figure.



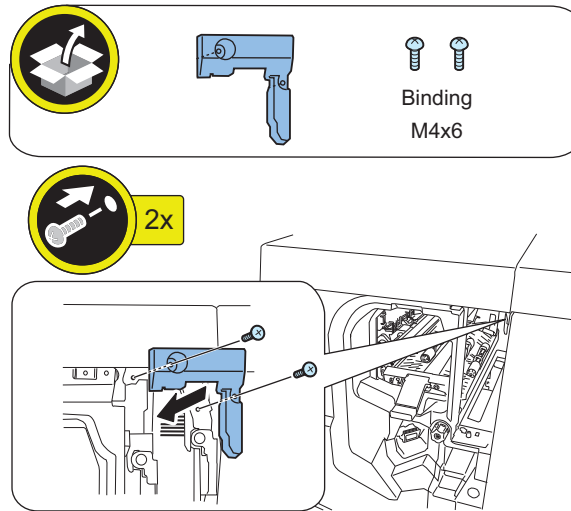
4. After making sure that the latch is firmly engaged with the latch catch, secure the latch using the latch fixing screw removed in step 3.



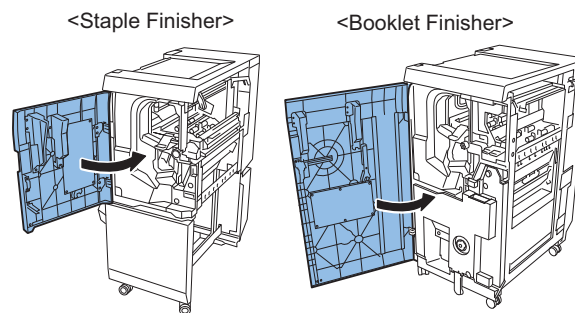


5. For Staple Finisher, attach the latch cover to the latch.

- Screw (Binding ; M4 x 6) 2pcs.

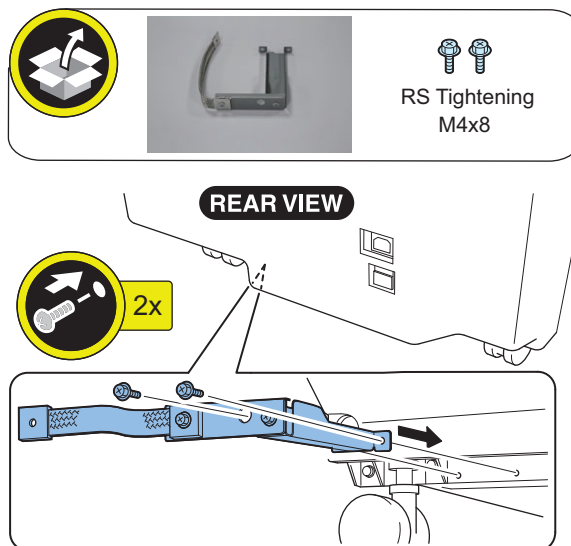


6. Close the front cover of this equipment.



7. Attach the shunt cable unit on the lower rear side.

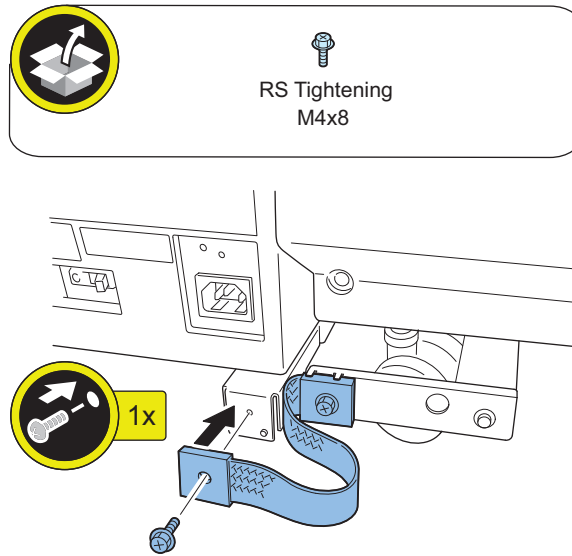
- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.





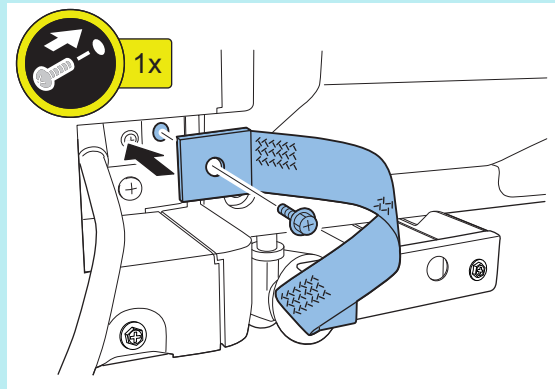
8. Secure the shunt cable to the upstream connection machine.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 1pc.

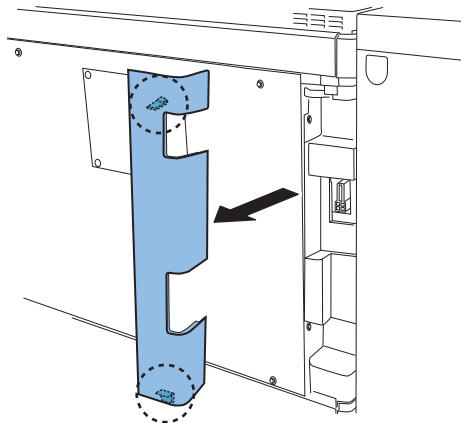


NOTE:

When attaching the shunt cable to the host machine, secure as shown by the following illustration.

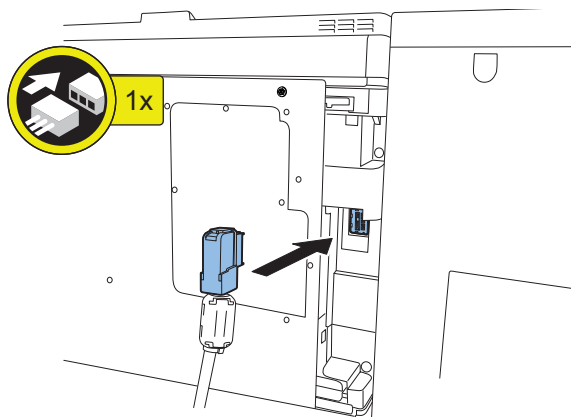


9. Release the two hooks to remove the interface cover.

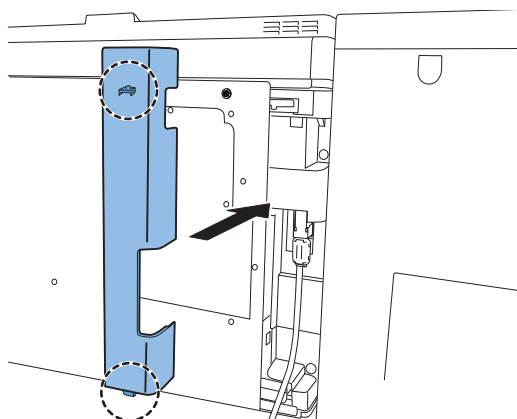


**10. Connect the interface cable to the host machine.****⚠ CAUTION:**

When connecting the interface cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet. If you do not do so, electric shock can result.

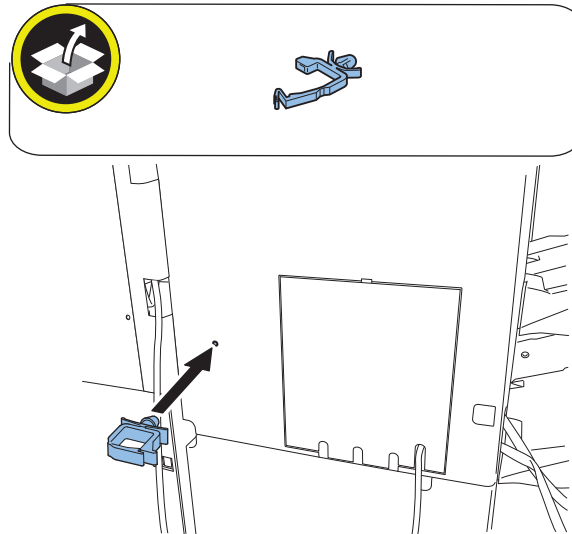
**11. Attach the interface cover removed in step 9 to the host machine by engaging its two hooks as putting the cables through the grooves of the cover.****CAUTION:**

When attaching the interface cover, be careful not to pinch or damage the cable harness.





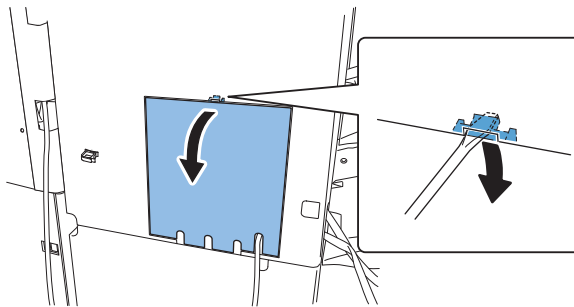
12. Attach the wire saddle to the upper rear cover.



13. When an optional paper folding unit, professional puncher, or document insertion unit is connected, follow the procedure below. If such an option is not connected, proceed to step 20.



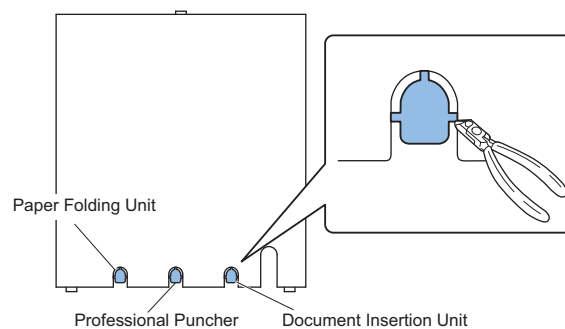
14. Release the hook with the flat head screwdriver, and then remove the PCB cover.



15. Using a side cutter, cut the PCB cover to make a cable groove for lacing the cable of the connected option.

CAUTION:

Be sure to cut the PCB cover properly so that no burr is formed.

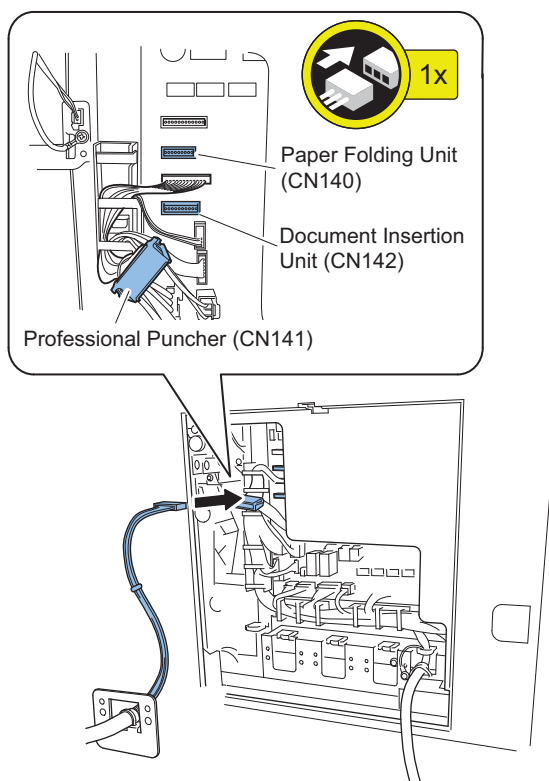




16. Connect the interface cable of the connected option to the connector on this equipment controller PCB.

NOTE:

Use the interface cable that included with the option.





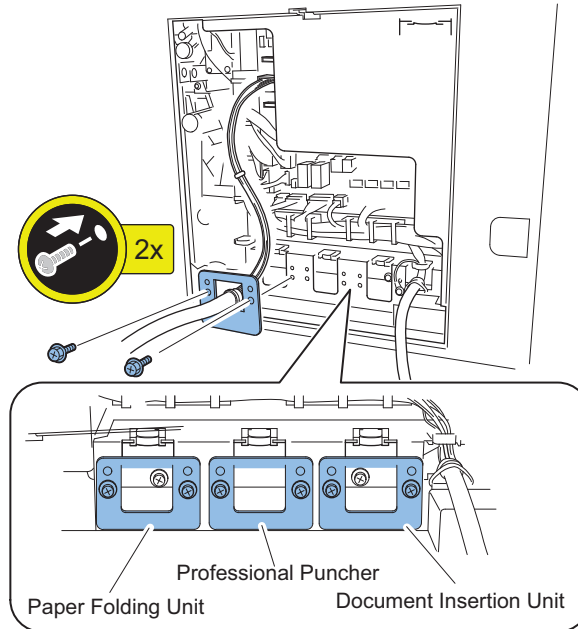
17. Attach the cable fixing plate.

(The figure shows the case where the interface cable of the paper folding unit is installed.)

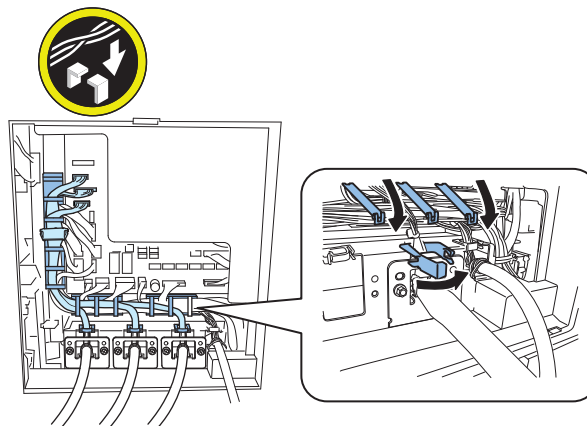
- Screw 2pcs.

NOTE:

Use the screws that included with the option.

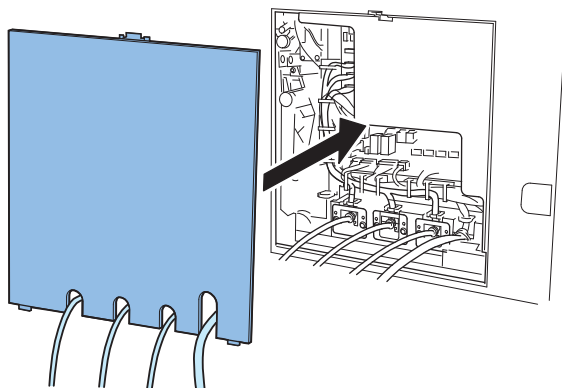


18. Put the interface cable in the harness guide so that it does not touch the PCB and cover.





19. Lace the interface cable in the groove, and then attach the PCB cover.

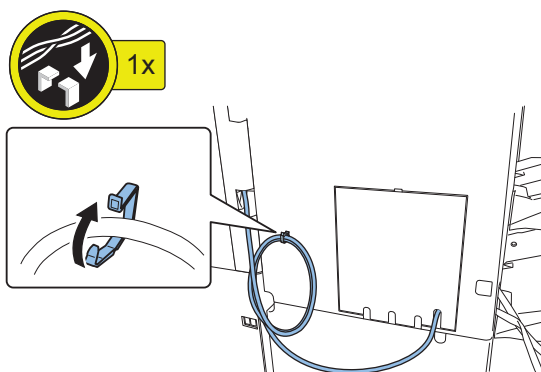


20. Secure the interface cable connected in step 10 using the wire saddle.

(The figure shows the case where bundle the interface cable forming the 2 loops.)

NOTE:

- Do not bundle the interface cable to form three or more loops.
- The interface cable connected to the option secures to the wire saddle of the option.



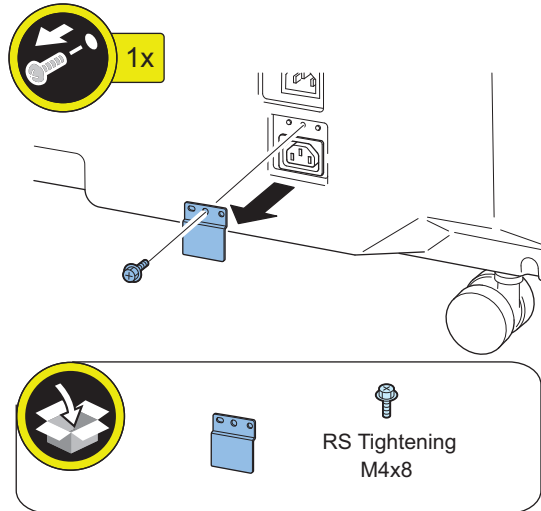


21. When connecting the power cord of the option to the connector on the finisher, and then remove the connector cover.

- Screw 1pc.

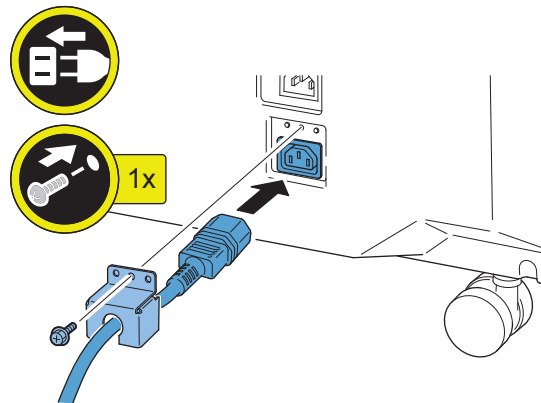
⚠ CAUTION:

Don't connect the power cord of the machine except the optional paper folding unit (Model: F281270).



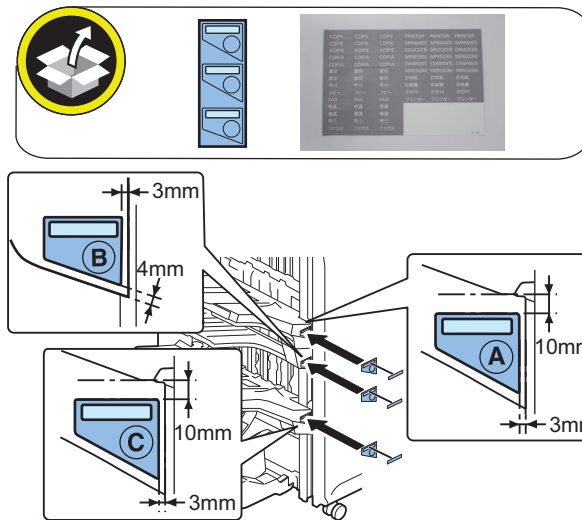
22. After connecting the power cord of the option to the connector, attach the plug cover which included with the option.

- Screw 1pc. (included with the option)





23. Affix the Tray labels to the each tray as shown in the figure. Affix the Tray setting labels which is specified by user on the frame line of tray labels.



Adjustment

Adjusting the Height and Tilt

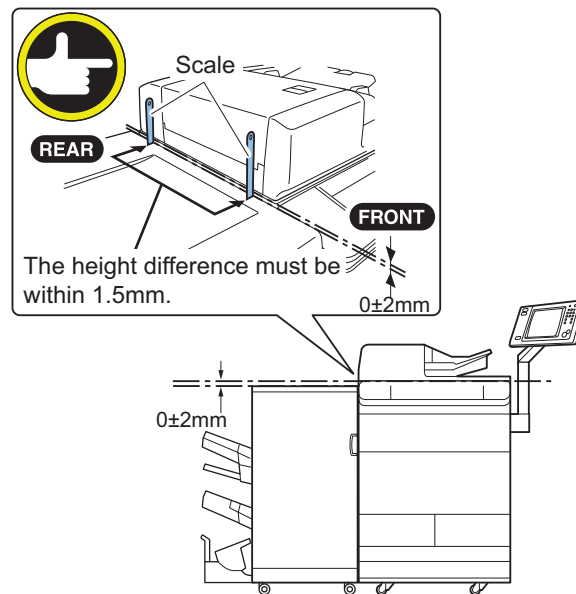
The difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine and the tilt of this equipment and the upstream connection machine need to be adjusted depending on the installation site floor condition. If the height or tilt are not adjusted properly, problems can occur (for example, a paper jam can occur frequently at the paper supply section of this equipment). Check the height and tilt and adjust it as required.

• Adjusting the Height and Tilt



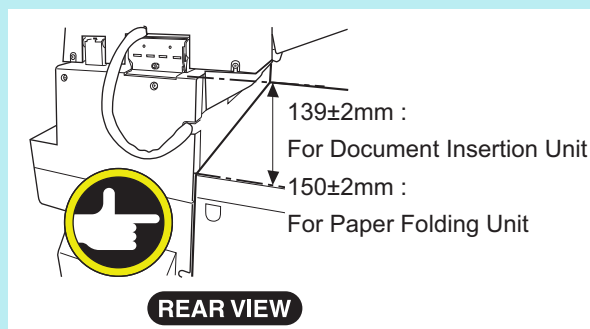
1. Check the difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine. Make sure that the difference in height between the top surface of this equipment and the top surface of the upstream connection machine is within $0\pm 2\text{mm}$.

Measure the difference in height at two points (at the front and rear), and then check that the difference in height between the front and rear is within 1.5mm.

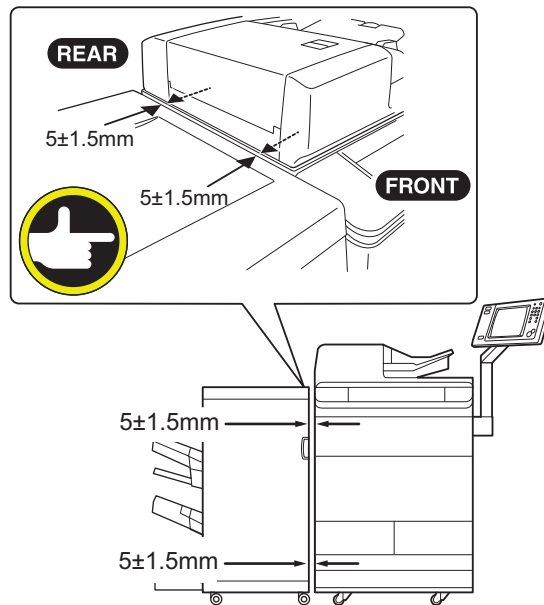


NOTE:

As for the difference in rear height between this equipment and the document insertion unit, make sure that it is within $139\pm 2\text{mm}$, or as for the difference in rear height between this equipment and the paper folding unit, make sure that it is within $150\pm 2\text{mm}$.



-
2. Check the relational tilting amount of this equipment for the upstream connection machine. Make sure that the gap between the right side of this equipment and the left side of the upstream connection machine is 5 ± 1.5 mm.



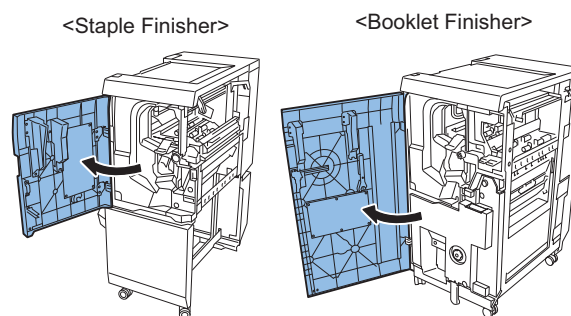
-
3. If the height and tilt of this equipment must be adjusted, go to "Adjusting the Height and Tilt".

● Adjusting the Height and Tilt

CAUTION:

If either of the difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine or the tilt of this equipment is not within the specifications, adjust them following the procedure explained below. Be sure to adjust the height before adjusting the tilt.

-
1. Open the front cover.

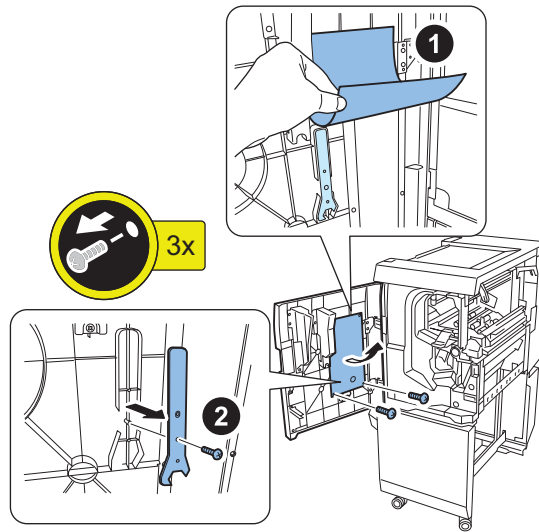




2. Remove the wrench as shown in the figure.

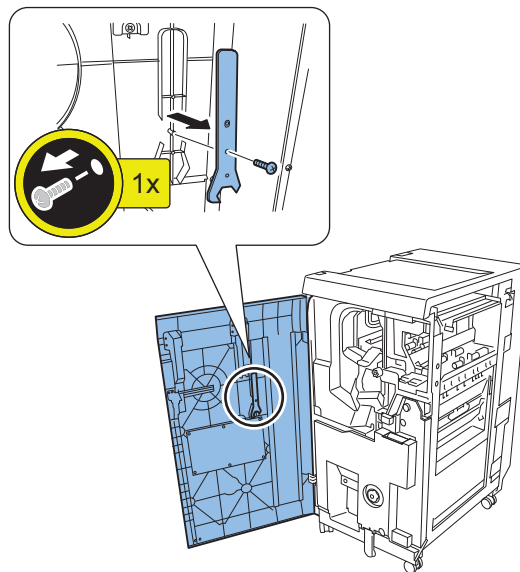
[Staple Finisher only]

- Screw 3pcs.

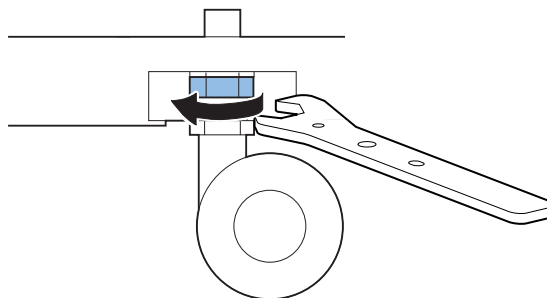


[Booklet Finisher only]

- Screw 1pc.



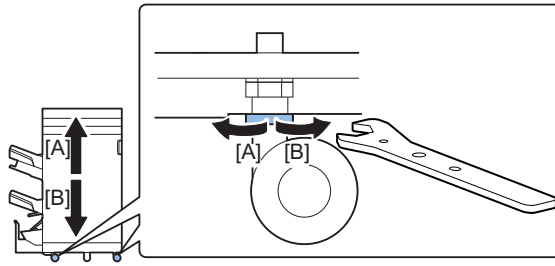
3. Using the wrench, turn the caster lock nut in the direction of the arrow to loosen the nut.



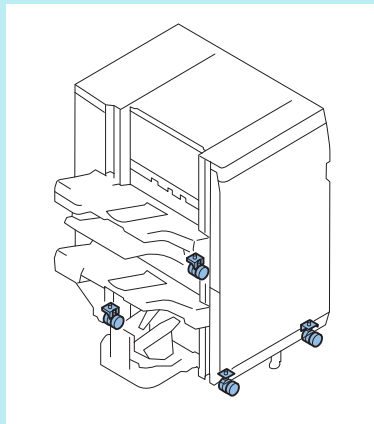
**4. Using the wrench, turn the height adjusting nut of the caster in the direction of the arrow.**

(A full turn of the adjusting nut changes this equipment height by 1.75 mm.)

- To increase the height of this equipment, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [A].
- To decrease the height of this equipment, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [B].

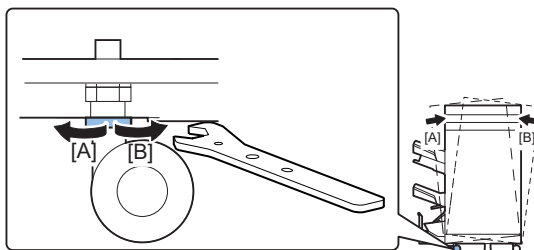
**NOTE:**

Adjust the height at four casters.

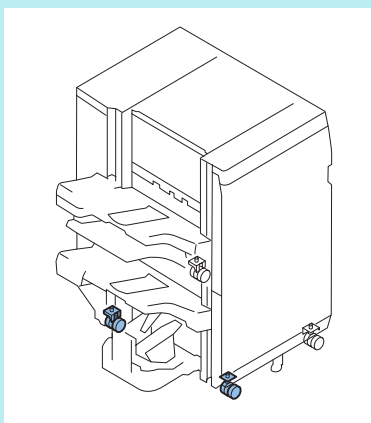


**5. Using the wrench, turn the tilt adjusting nut of the caster in the direction of the arrow.**

- To tilt this equipment to the right, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [A].
- To tilt this equipment to the left, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [B].

**NOTE:**

Adjust the tilt at two left casters.



■ Making Checks after Completion of Adjustments



1. Check to see that the difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine and the tilt are within the specifications. If they are not within the specifications, make adjustments again with reference to Section "Adjusting the Height and Tilt".



2. After making adjustments, attach the wrench to the back of the front cover and then close the front cover.

● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts



1. Take back the following parts which are no longer necessary.

- [1] Face cover of the host machine 3pcs.
- [2] Connector cover 1pc.
- [3] Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 1pc.
- [4] Tray setting label (remaining label) 1pc.
- [5] Saddle caution label (remaining label)(Booklet Finisher only)

■ Operation Check

CAUTION:

Make sure that all pieces of packing tape, cushioning materials and fixings have been removed. Operating this equipment without removing them can cause machine troubles.



1. **Connect the power plugs of the option and host machine to the outlets.**

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the power plug is connected to the outlet firmly. If connecting precariously, it may result in smoke or fire.



2. **Turn ON the main power of the host machine.**



3. **If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**

CAUTION:

The firmware for iR-ADV DX 8700 Series/iR-ADV 8500 Series is written in this equipment at the time of shipment. Be sure to update the version when connecting to the iR-ADV DX C7700 Series or iR-ADV C7500 Series. If the version is not updated, this machine does not operate normally.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. **Check the operation such as paper feed and stapling to make sure that problems such as a jam or malfunction do not occur.**

Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1

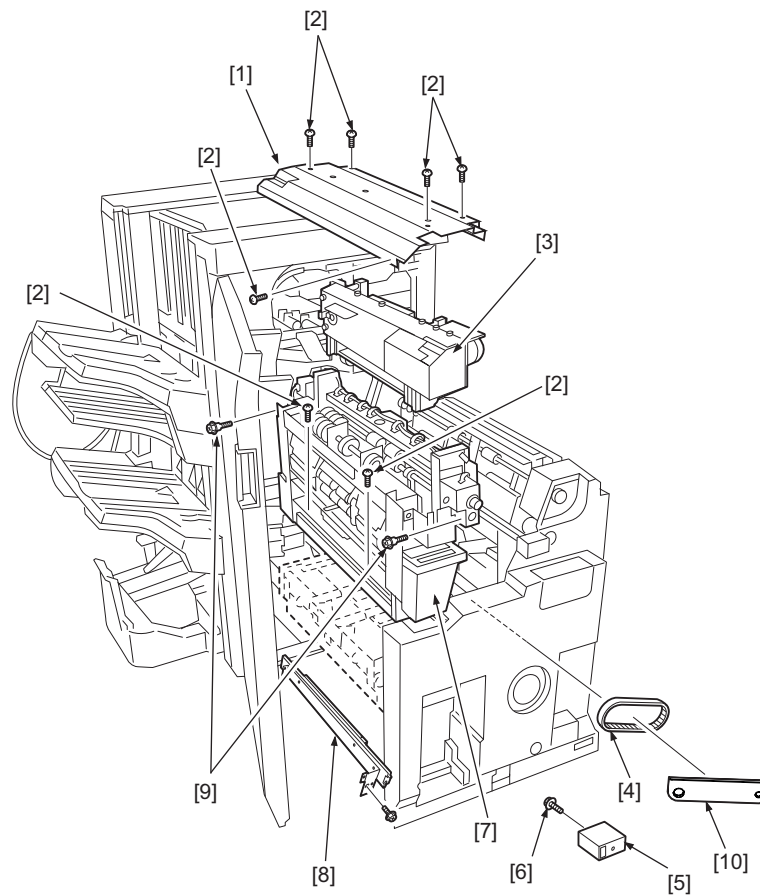
Checking before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

When installing this Equipment together with the Finisher, install this Equipment before installing the Finisher to the Upstream Connection Machine.

Checking the Supplied Parts

■ Checking the Supplied Parts



- [1] Upper cover 1 pc.
- [2] Screw (bind-head, M4 x 6) 7 pcs.
- [3] Cutter unit 1 pc.
- [4] Drive belt 1 pc.
- [5] Dust box retainer 1 pc.
- [6] Screw (P tightening, M4 x 6) 1 pc.
- [7] Trimmer unit frame 1 pc.
- [8] Accride rail 1 pc.
- [9] Stepped screw (M4 x 6) 2 pcs.
- [10] Metal plate 1 pc.

⚠ CAUTION:

The weight of cutter unit is approximately 16.0 kg. Be careful enough of handling.

Installation Procedure

■ Making Preparations for Installing the Finisher

NOTE:

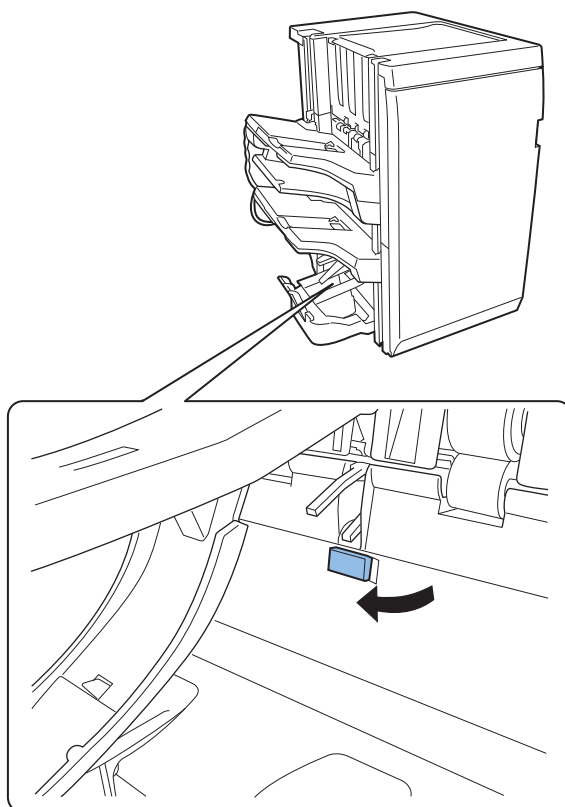
- When installing this machine after installing the finisher to the host machine, install this machine after releasing the finisher from the host machine.
- The equipment is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials before installing the equipment.



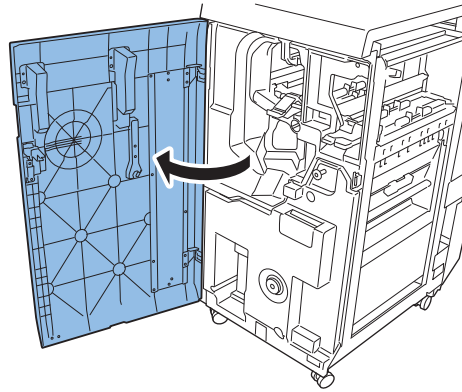
1. Before installing this equipment, pick up the plastic tab and peel off the sponge from the saddle delivery block of the finisher.

CAUTION:

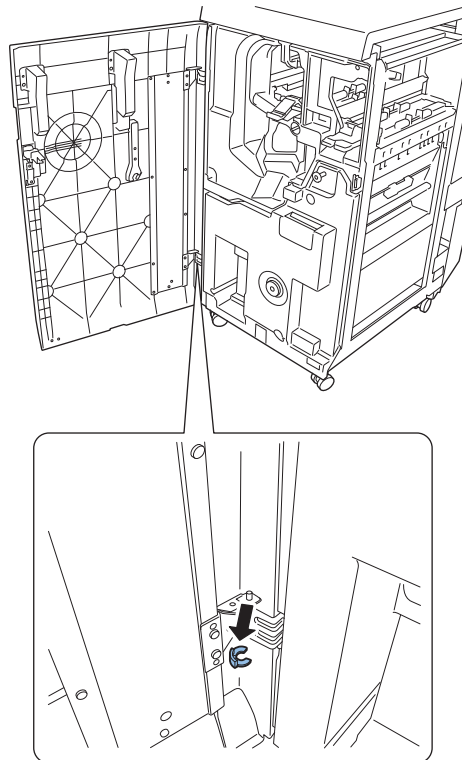
Peel off the sponge together with the plastic sheet completely in such a manner that the double-stick tape does not remain on the finisher surface. If you forget to peel off the sponge or the double-stick tape is remaining, the paper delivered to the saddle delivery block may get stuck with the sponge or the tape, resulting in a stacking failure.



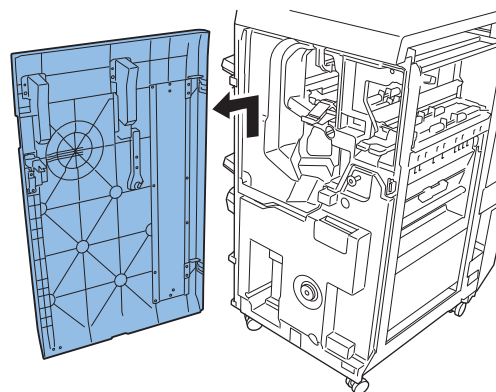
2. Open the front door of the finisher.



3. Remove the resin ring.

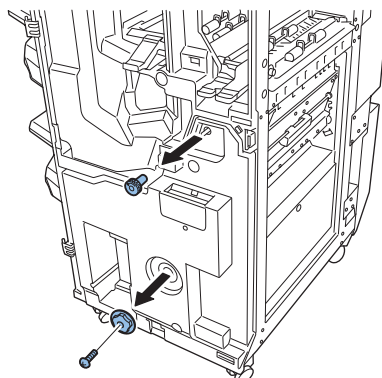


4. Remove the front door of the finisher in the direction of the arrow.

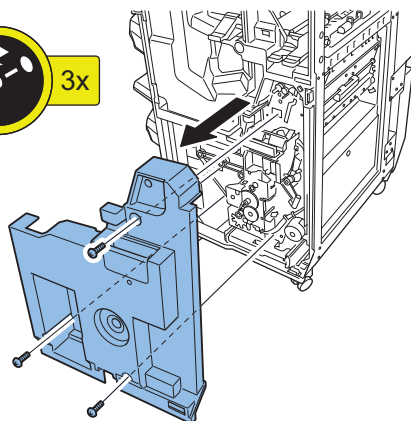




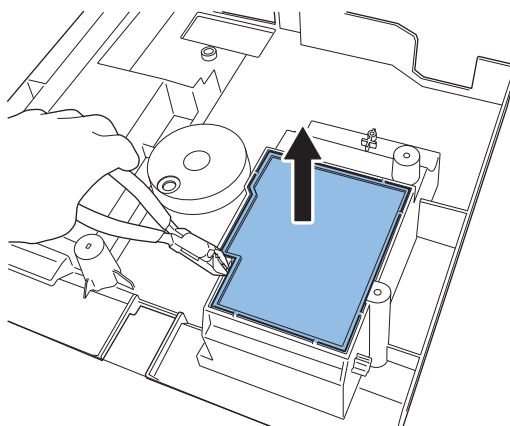
5. Remove the jam dial (upper). Remove one screw, and then remove the jam dial (lower).



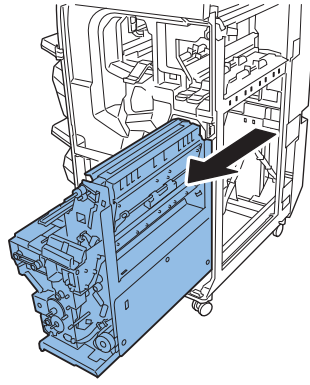
6. Remove three screws, and then remove the inner cover.



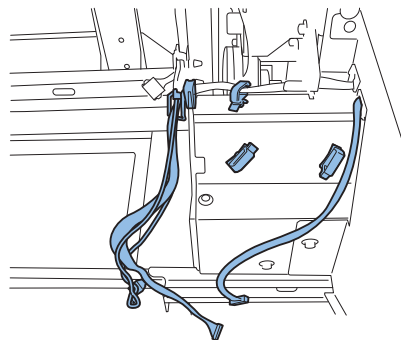
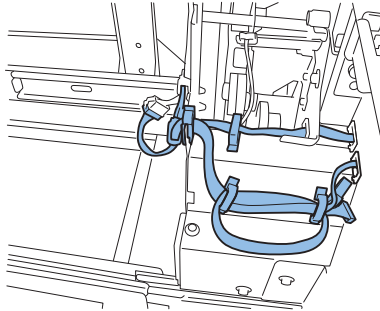
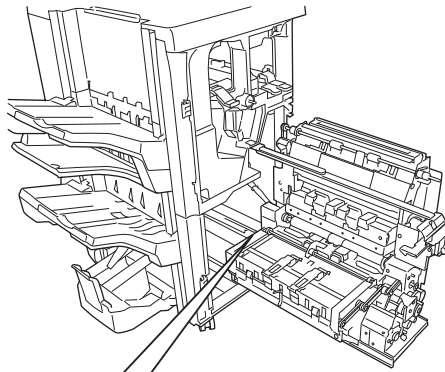
7. Using a nipper, cut out the face part of the waste paper box on the inner cover.



8. Draw out the saddle unit.

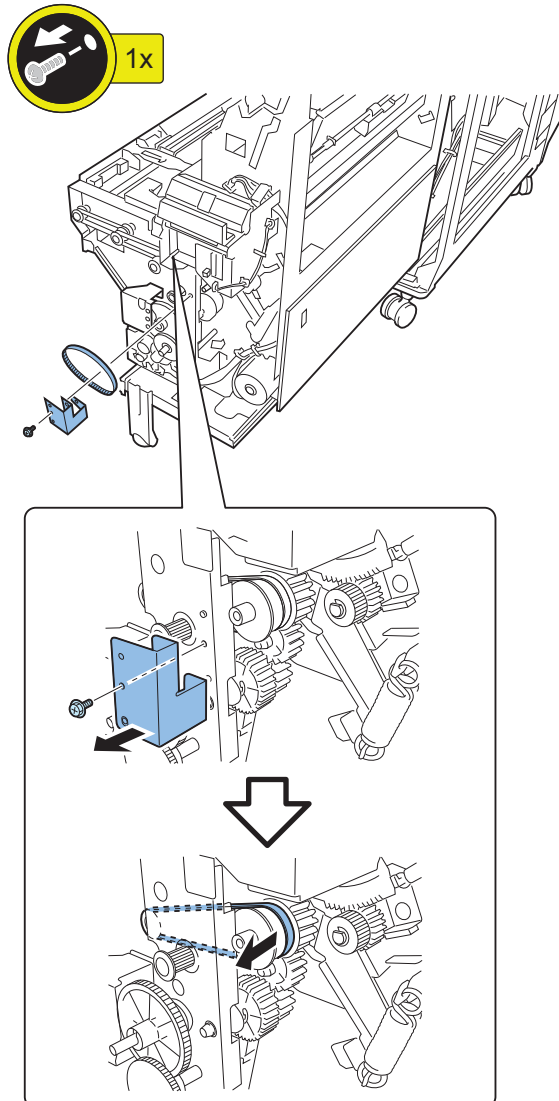


9. At the back of the saddle unit, pull out one connector, and then remove the harness from the harness guide. And then, close the five harness guides. (The closed five harness guides are no longer required.)

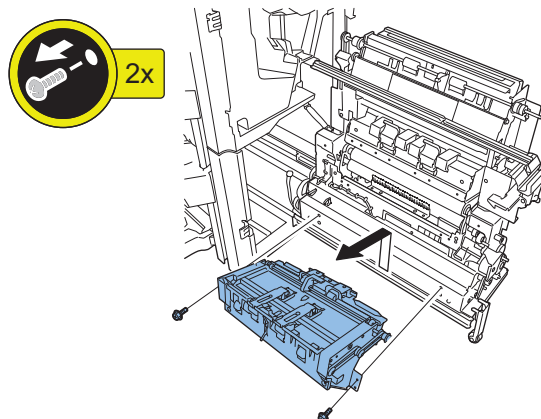


**10. Remove one screw, and then remove the metal plate.**

After removing the metal plate, move the pulley to the front and remove the belt.
The removed screw/metal plate are attached again at the rear step.
(The belt is no longer required.)

**11. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed unit.**

(The feed unit/the two screws are no longer required.)

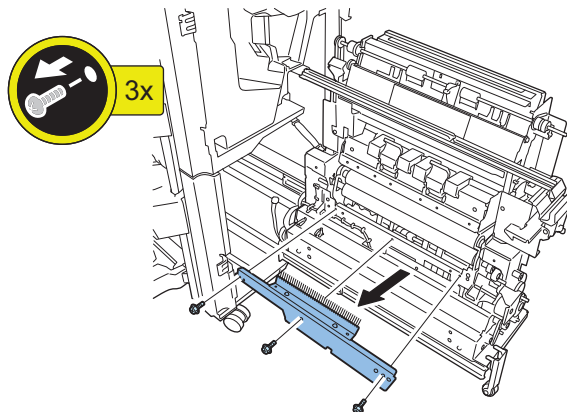




12. Remove three screws, and then remove the static eliminator unit.

The removed screw is used next step.

(The static eliminator/the two screws are no longer required.)



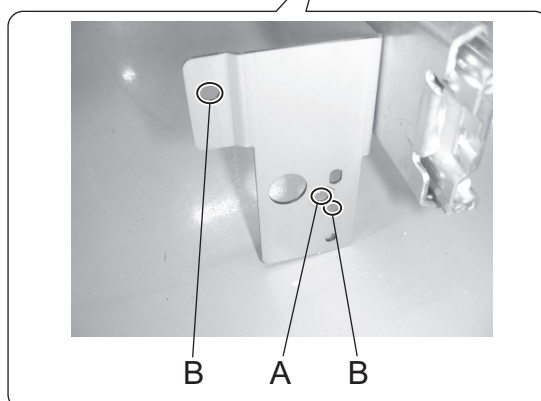
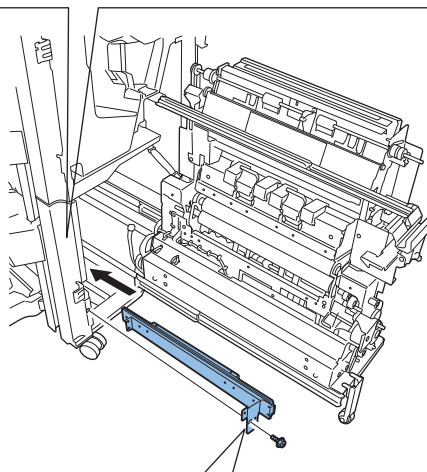
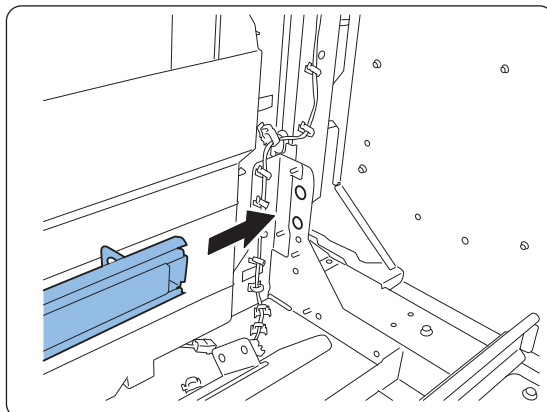
■ Installing the Trimmer Unit



1. Insert the pins at the back of the supplied accride rail to the hole at the back side of the finisher.

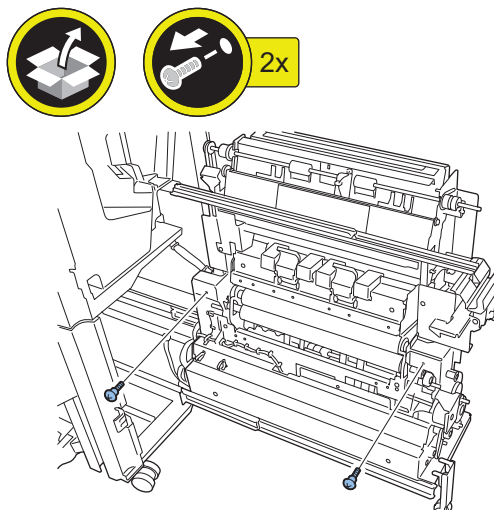
Install the accride rail the screw removed in step 12 discussed in "Making Preparations for Installing the Finisher".

(When there are screw holes "A" and "B" in the rail plate, use the "A" hole for fixing screw. Do not use the "B" holes.)

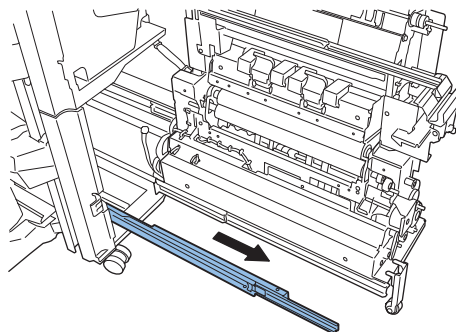




2. Install the supplied two stepped screws (M4 x 6).



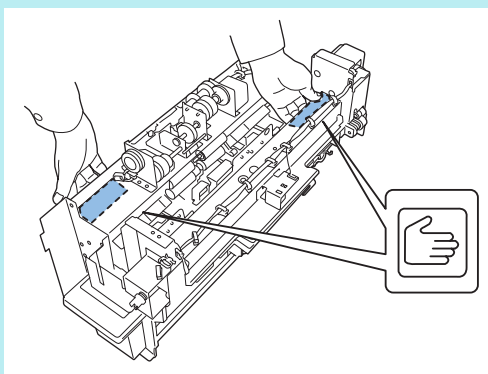
3. Draw out the Accride rail (installed in step 1) until it stops.

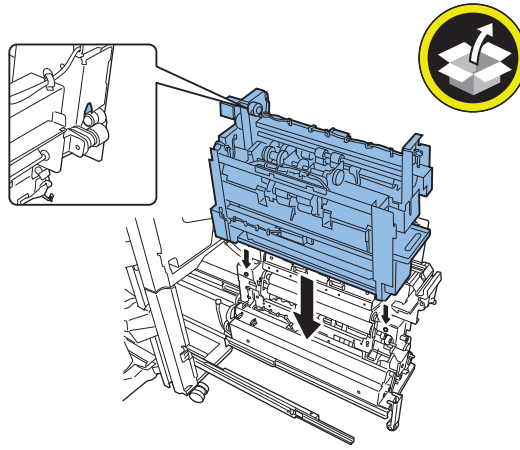


4. Hang the trimmer unit frame on the stepped screws installed in step 2.

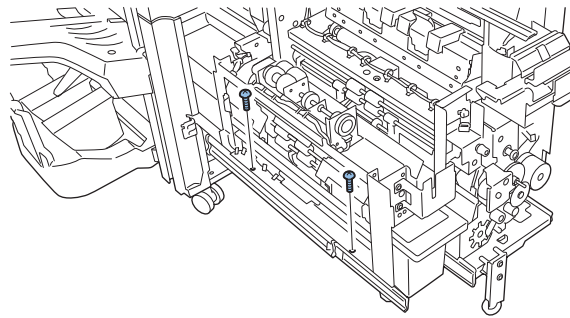
NOTE:

Hold the trimmer unit frame as shown below.



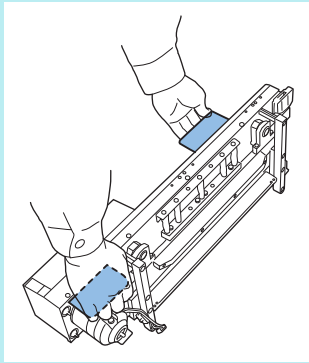


5. Using the two supplied screws (bind-head, M4 x 6), secure the trimmer unit frame to the accride rail.

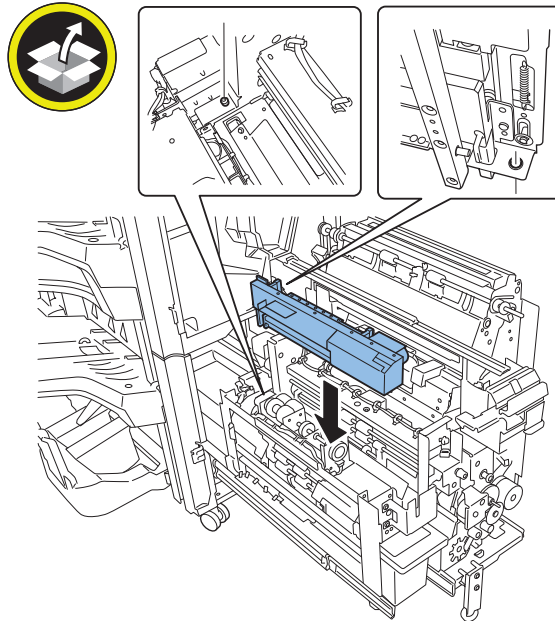


**6. Place the cutter unit on the trimmer unit frame.****NOTE:**

Hold the cutter unit as shown below

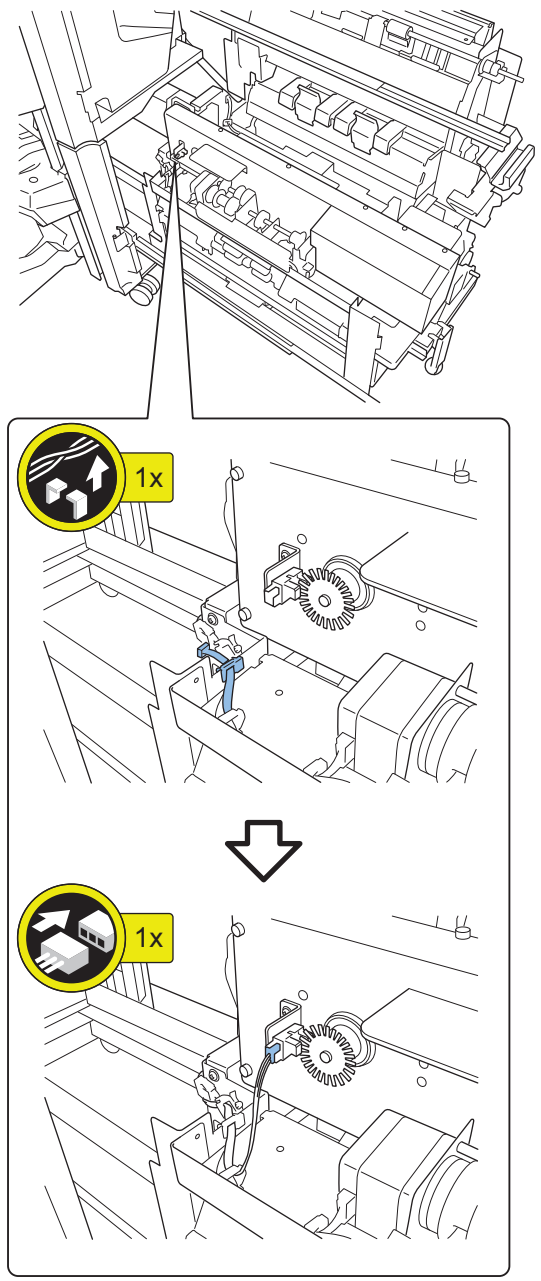
**NOTE:**

Align the hole at the back of the cutter unit with the pin at the back of the trimmer unit frame.



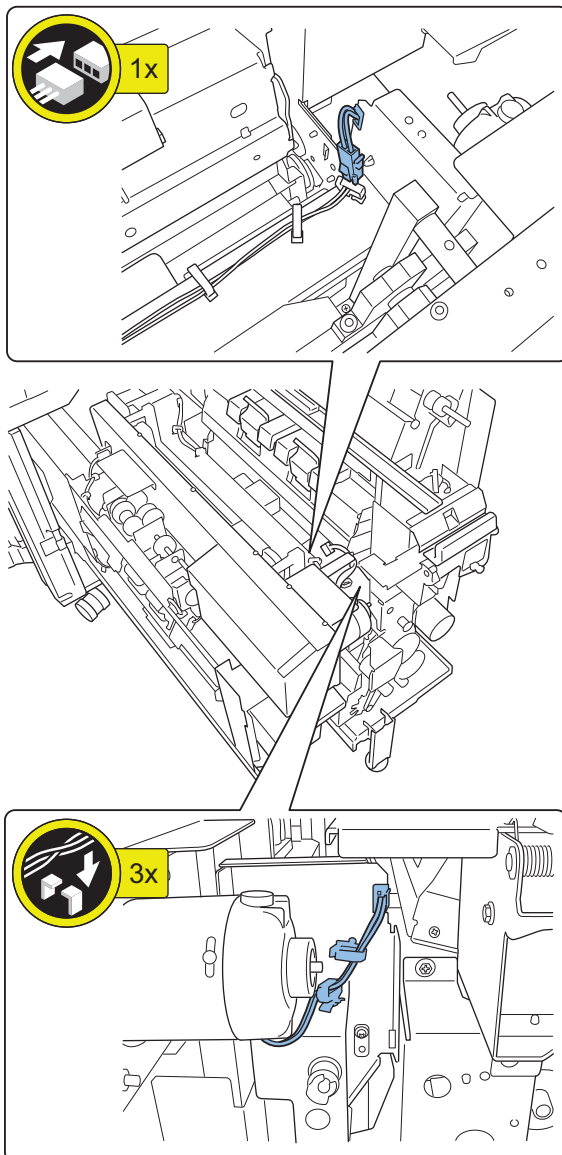


7. Remove the harness from the harness guide, and then connect one connector.

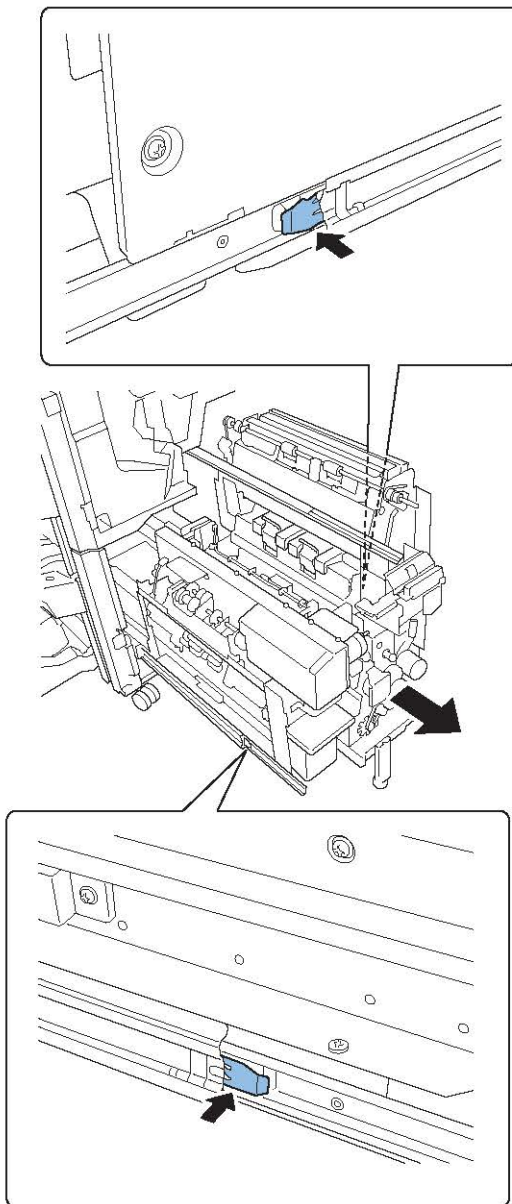




8. Connect one connector, and then put the harness in three wire saddles.

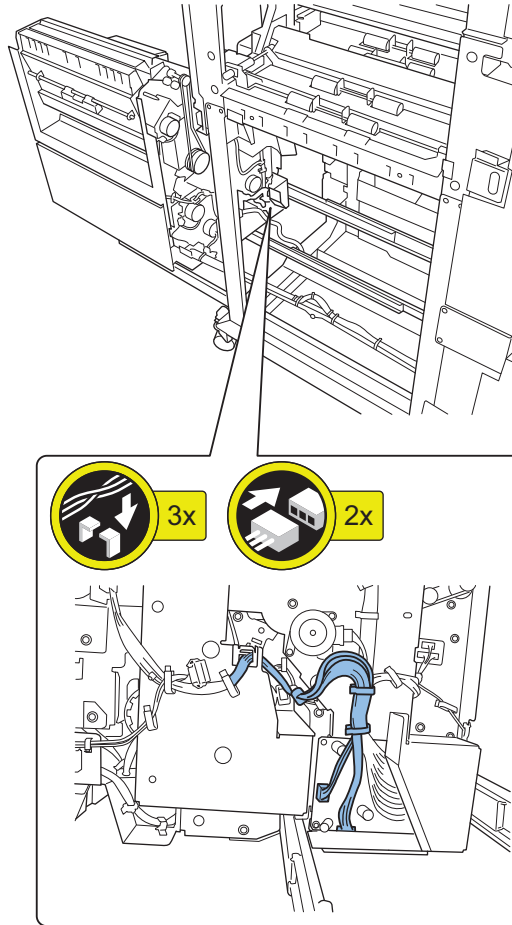


9. Push both stopper of the accride rail in the direction of the arrow to draw out the saddle unit as far as possible.



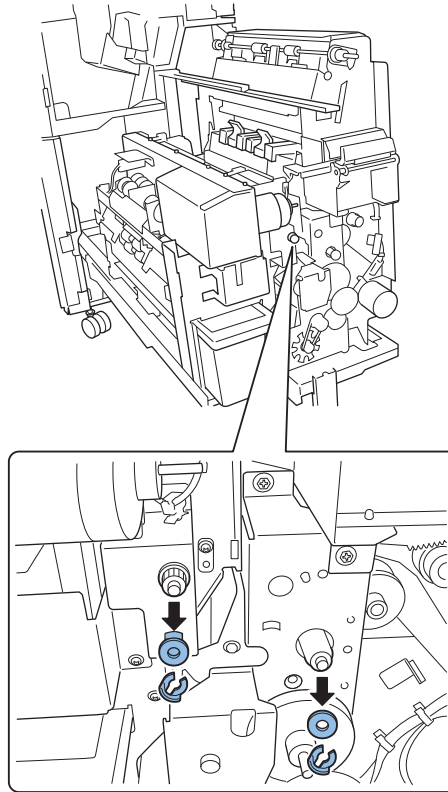


10. Put the harness in three wire saddles, and then connect two connectors.

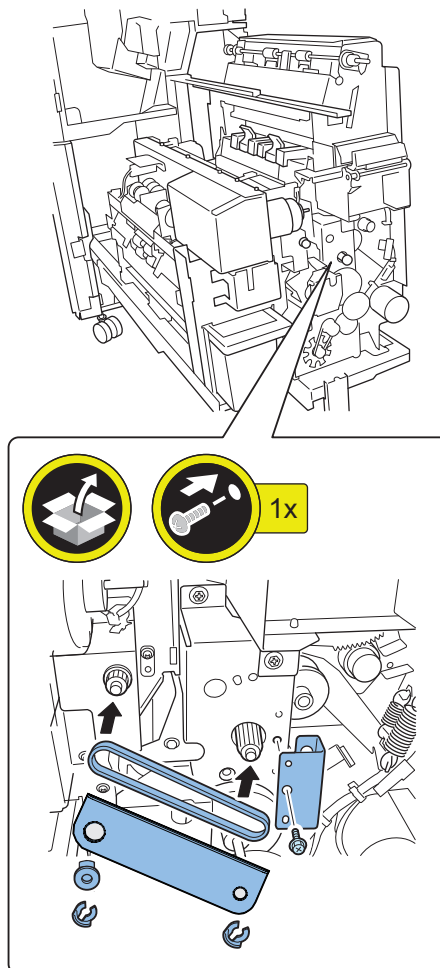


11. At the trimmer unit, remove one resin ring and one bushing not to drop the pin inside the gear. At the saddle unit, remove one resin ring and one resin washer.

(The resin washer is no longer required.)

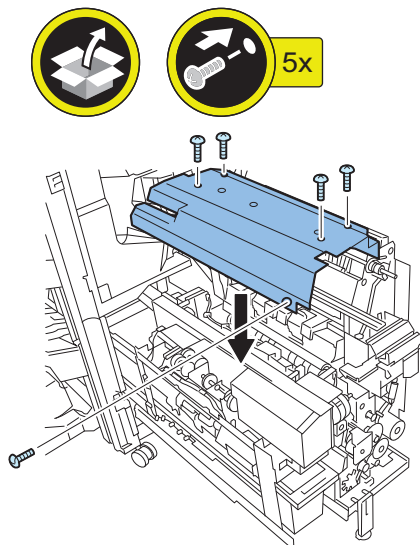


12. Install the supplied drive belt and the supplied metal platte. Then, attach the bushing and two resin rings removed in step11. Install the metal plate removed in step 10 discussed in " Making Preparations for Installing the Finisher" using one screw.



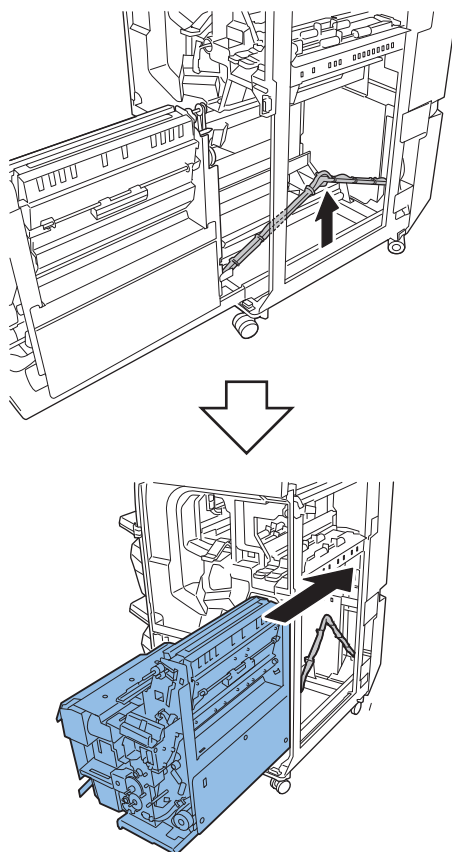


13. Attach the supplied upper cover using the supplied five screws (bind-head, M4 x 6).





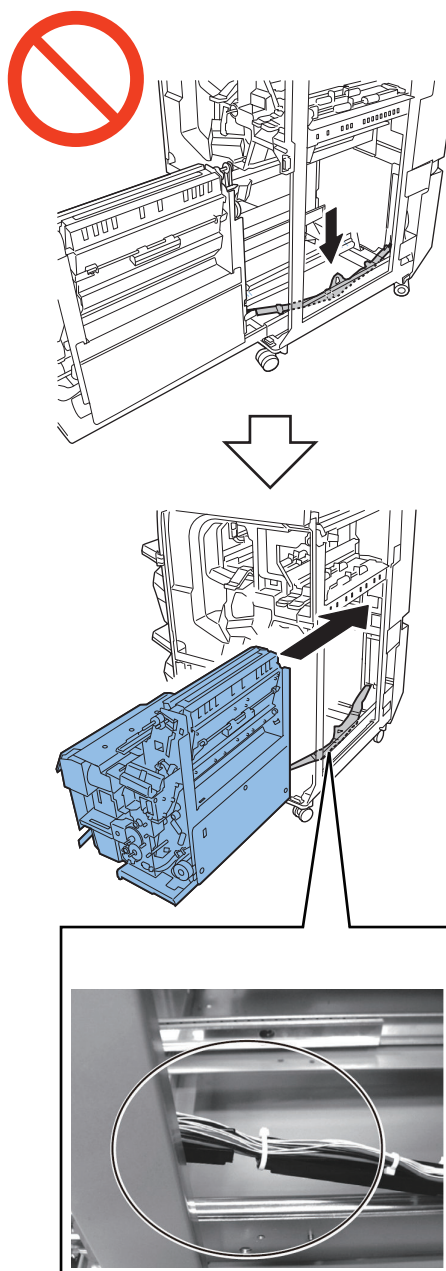
14. Lift up the joint part of the saddle unit - finisher communication cable, and then install the saddle unit at the original position.



CAUTION:

When installing the inner trimmer, pay full attention to the following notification:

When drawing out the saddle unit with releasing the rail stoppers as the saddle unit is required to be fully drawn out at installation, the cable guide may tense, which interferes housing the saddle unit. In such the case, the cable guide may break at its joint, if the saddle unit is forcibly slid in the finisher.



15. Install the inner cover using three screws.



16. Install the jam dial (lower) using one screw. Then, install the jam dial (upper).



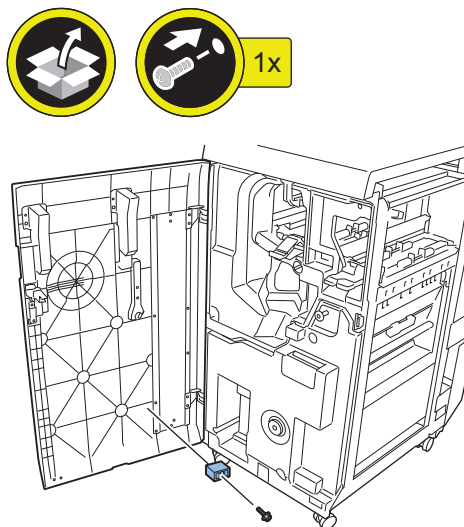
17. Attach the front door of the finisher.



18. Secure the front door of the finisher with one resin ring.



19. Attach the dust box retainer using one screw.

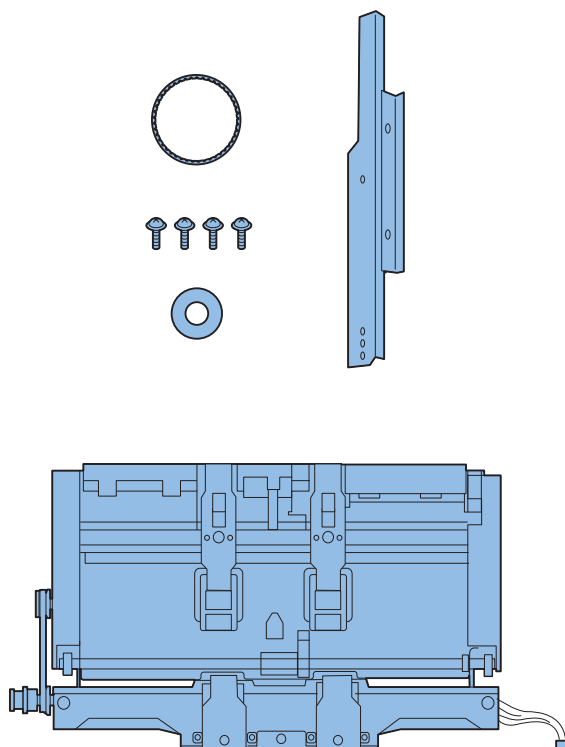


20. Close the front door of the finisher.



21. The following parts will be no longer needed once the inner trimmer has been installed.

- Belt
- Four screws (RS tightening)
- Resin washer
- Static eliminator
- Feed unit



Operation Check



1. After completion of installation, cut the fore edge by operating the console panel to see whether the trimmer unit operates normally.

Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1

● Checking before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

When installing this Equipment together with the Finisher, install this Equipment before installing the Finisher to the Upstream Connection Machine.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

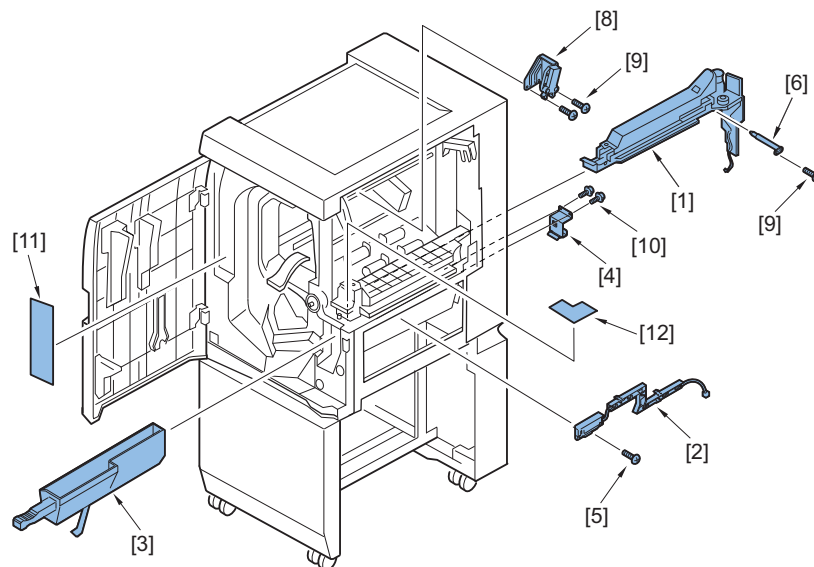
- F280260

● Unpacking and Checking the Contents

■ Checking the Contents

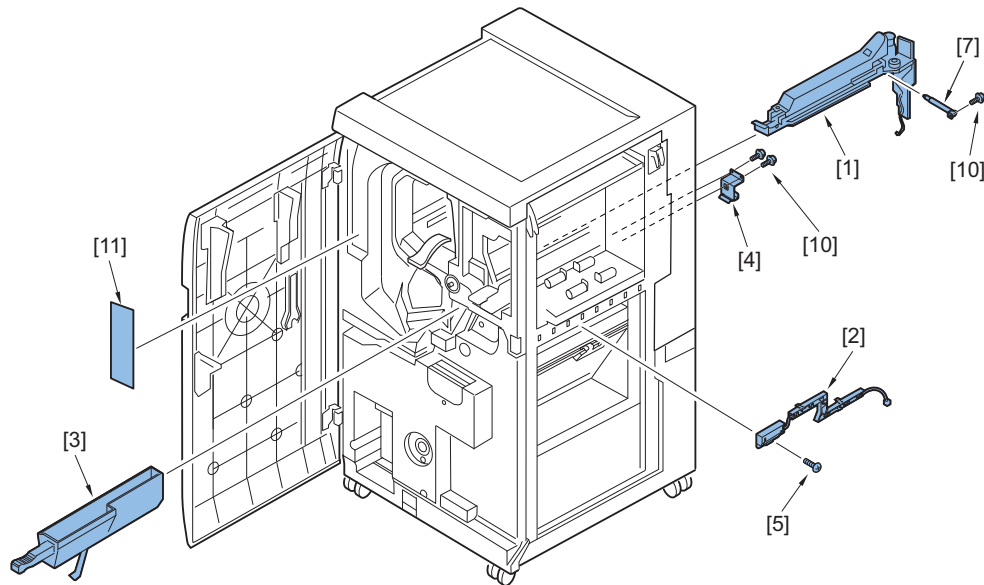
Open the container box and check that none of the included parts is missing.

● When installing to the finisher



<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	Punch unit	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	Punched waste paper full sensor unit	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [3]	Punched waste paper box	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [4]	Punched waste paper box stopper	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [5]	Screw (Bind, M3 x 6)	1 pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [6] *1	Punch unit fixing pin (for finisher)	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] *2	Punch unit fixing pin (for saddle finisher)	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [8] *1	Punch latch unit	1 pc.

• When installing to the saddle finisher



<input type="checkbox"/> [9] *1	Screw (Bind, M4 x 7)	3 pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] *3	Screw (TP, M3 x 6)	3 pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [11]	Punch jam label	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] *1	Punch lever caution label	1 pc.

*1: These are used only when installing this unit to the finisher.

*2: These are used only when installing this unit to the saddle finisher.

*3: Only two screws are used when installing this unit to the finisher, and three screws are used when installing this unit to the saddle finisher.

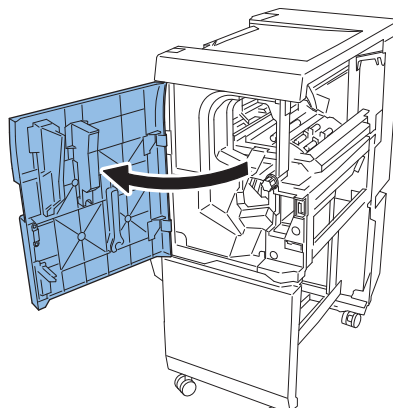
● Installation Procedure

■ When installing to the finisher

NOTE:

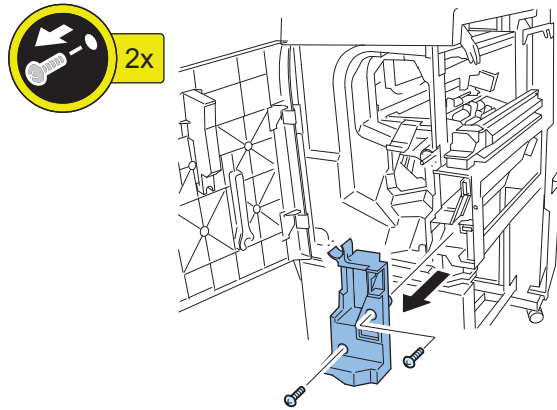
- The equipment is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials before installing the equipment.
- When installing to the saddle finisher, refer to "When installing to the saddle finisher"

1. Open the front cover of the finisher.

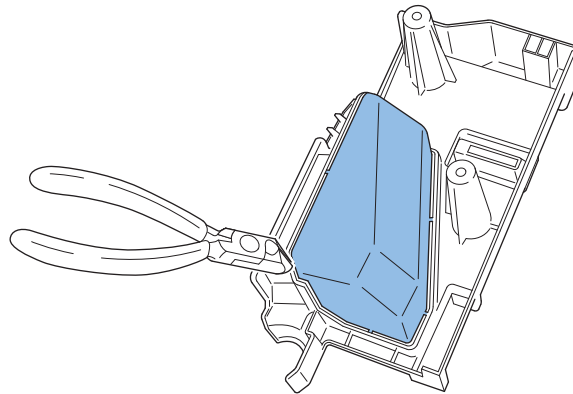




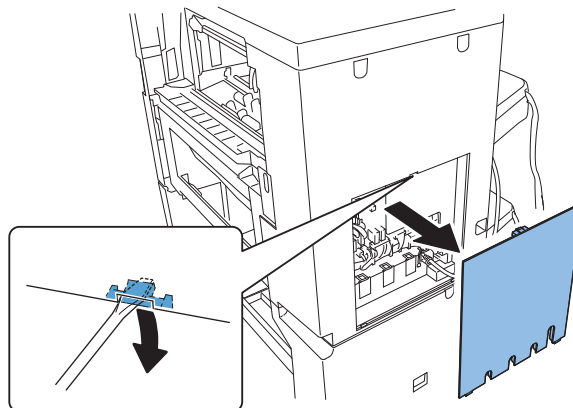
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the right inner cover of the finisher.



3. Using the nipper, cut out the face cover of the punched waste paper box from the right inner cover.

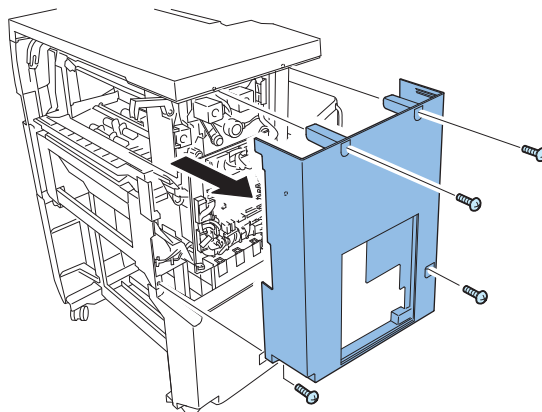


4. Release the hook with the flat head screwdriver, and then remove the PCB cover of the finisher.

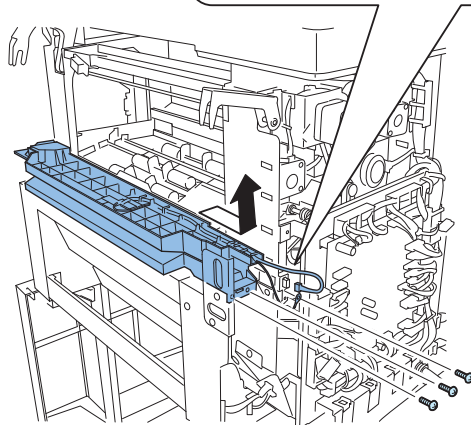
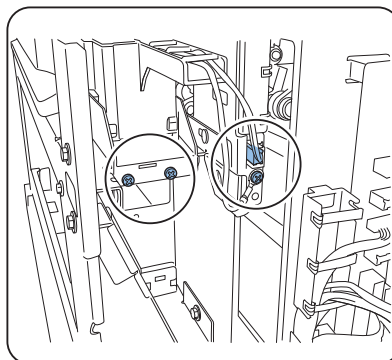




5. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover of the finisher.

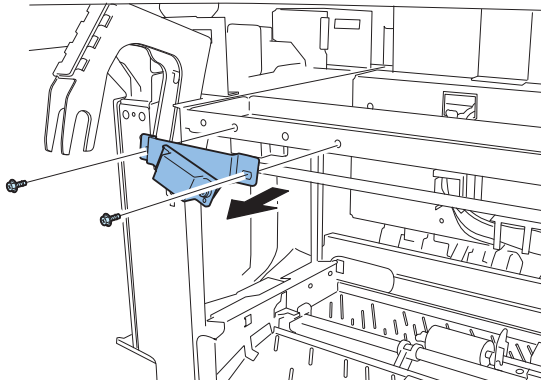


6. Disconnect a connector and remove three screws, and then remove the feed unit. (The removed feed unit and screws are no longer required.)

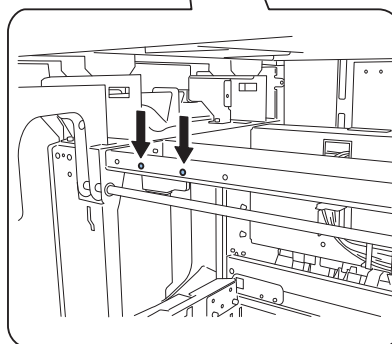
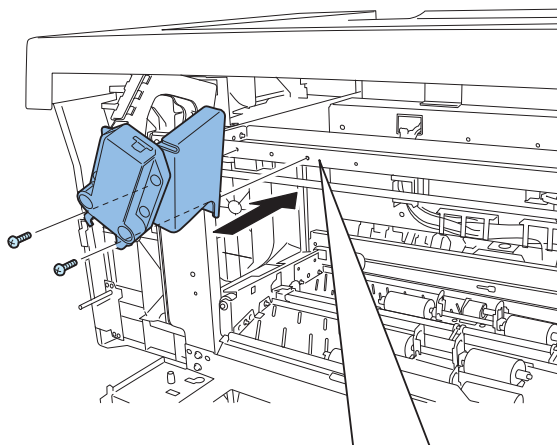




7. Remove two screws, and then remove the magnet unit. (The removed magnet unit and screws are no longer required.)

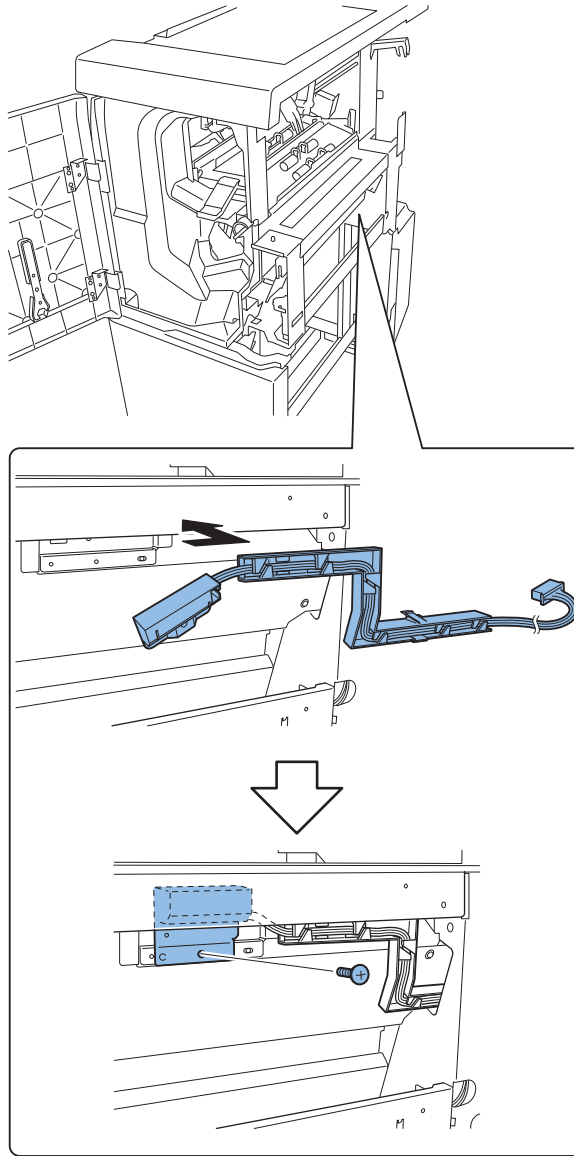


8. Using two supplied screws (Bind, M4 x 7), attach the included punch latch unit.



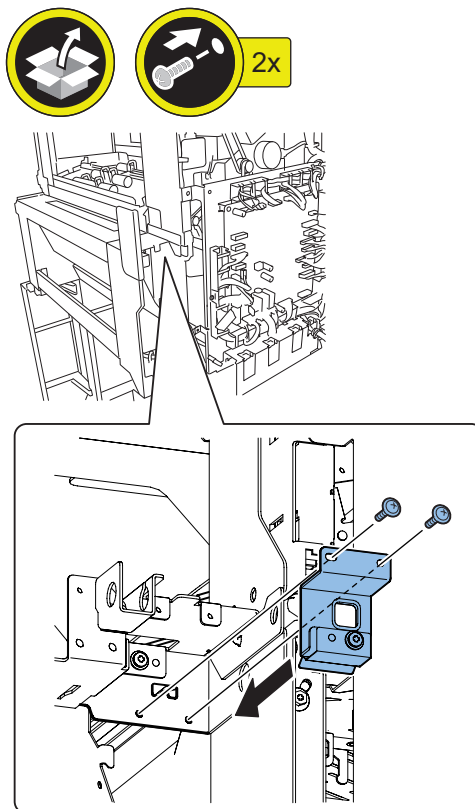


9. Using a supplied screw (Bind, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper full sensor unit.



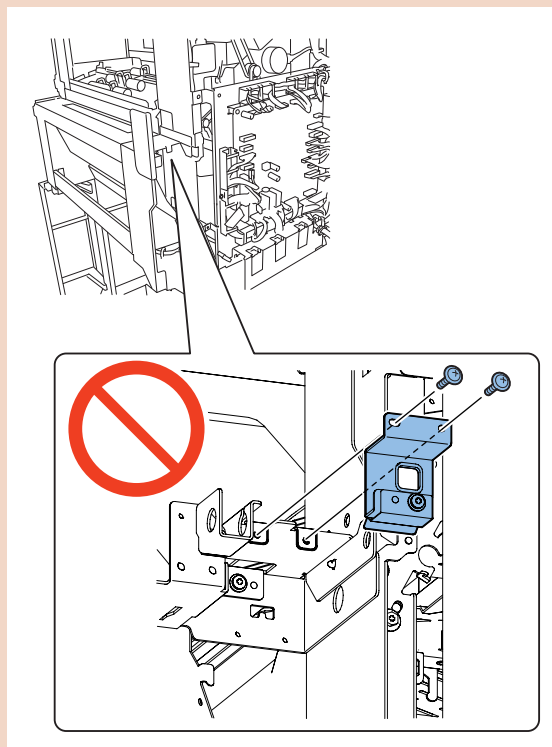


10. Using two supplied screws (TP, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper box stopper.



CAUTION:

If the attached location of the stopper is wrong, the punched waste paper box will be not secured by the stopper. This may result in the alarm of "Punched chips full or No waste paper box".

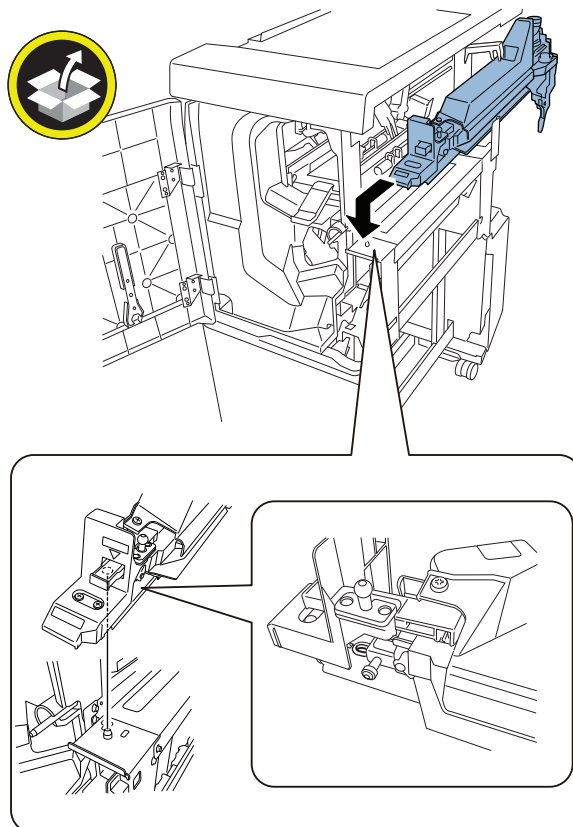
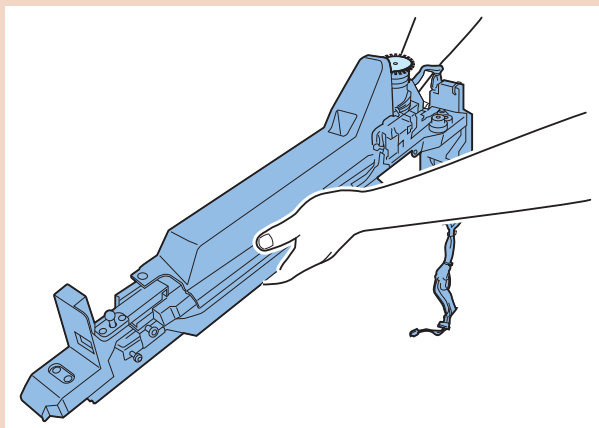




11. Attach the supplied punch unit to the finisher by matching the hole on the front side of the punch unit with the pin on the finisher.

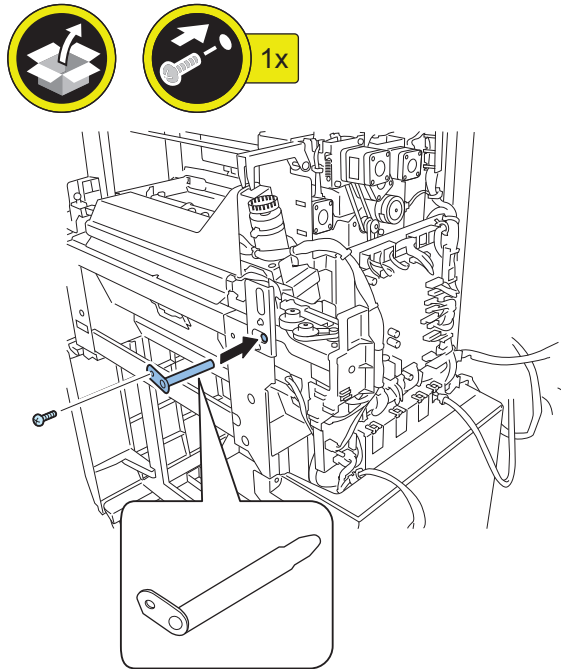
CAUTION:

Hold the punch unit as shown by the following illustration. Do not hold the motor gear assembly.

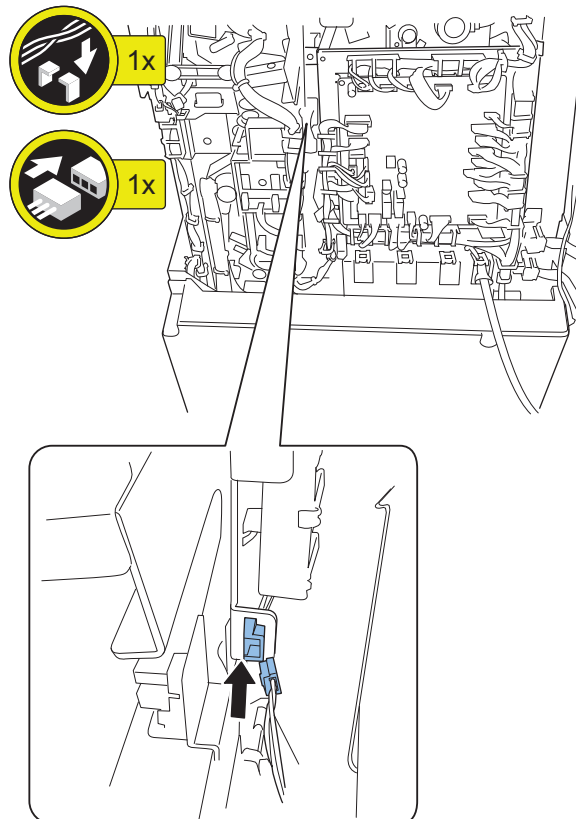




12. Attach the supplied punch unit fixing pin (for finisher), and then secure it with the supplied screw (Bind, M4 x 7).

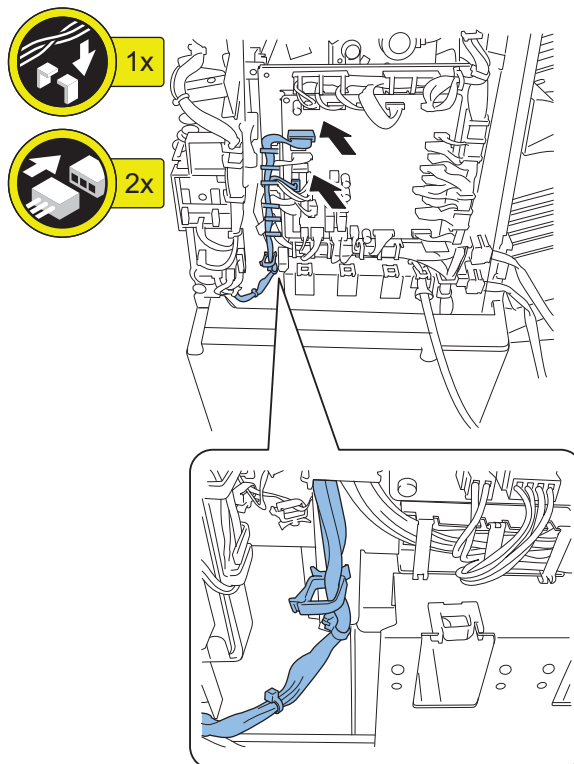


13. Connect a connector of the punch unit.

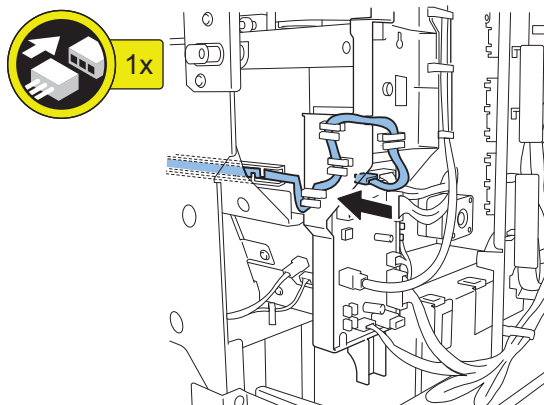


14. Put the harness of the punch unit in the harness guides, and then attach the re-use band.

Connect two connectors of the punch unit to the two connectors (CN127 and CN128) on the finisher controller PCB.



15. Connect a connector of the punched waste paper full sensor to the connector (CN4) on the puncher driver PCB.



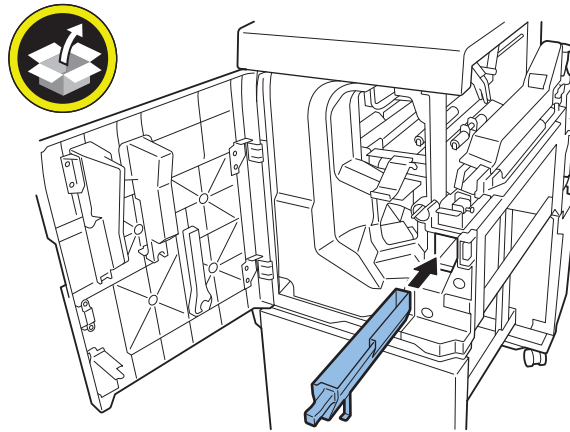
16. Using four screws, attach the rear cover of the finisher removed in step 5).

17. Attach the PCB cover of the finisher removed in step 4).

18. Using two screws, attach the right inner cover of the finisher removed in step 2).



19. Attach the supplied punch waste paper box.

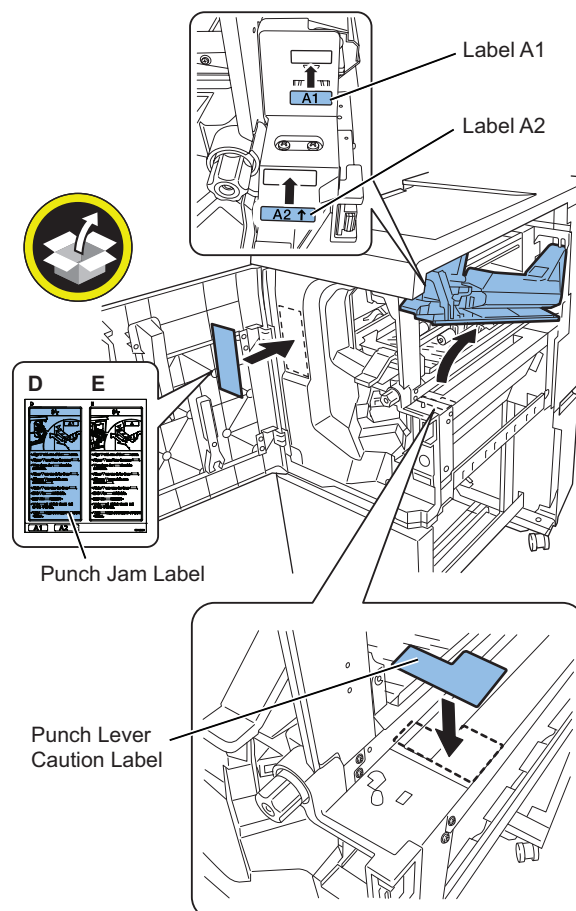


20. When the punch jam label is not supplied with the finisher, affix the supplied labels. And then lift up the punch unit to affix the supplied punch lever caution label.

- Affix the punch jam label of which "D" is printed on the label sheet to the left inner cover of the finisher. And then affix the label A1 and label A2 to the punch unit. (The punch jam label "E" is not used.)
- Affix the punch lever caution label having the language specified by user under the punch unit.

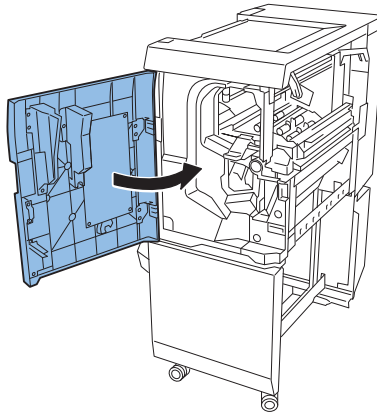
NOTE:

When the similar punch jam label is supplied with the finisher, do not use the punch jam label supplied with the puncher unit and follow the finisher installation procedure.





21. Close the front cover of the finisher.



22. The following parts will be no longer needed once the puncher unit has been installed.

<Included parts>

- Punch unit fixing pin (for saddle finisher): 1 pc.
- Screw (TP, M3 x 6): 1 pc.

<Removed parts from the finisher>

- Screw: 5 pcs.
- Magnet unit: 1 pc.
- Feed unit: 1 pc.
- Face cover of the right inner cover: 1 pc.

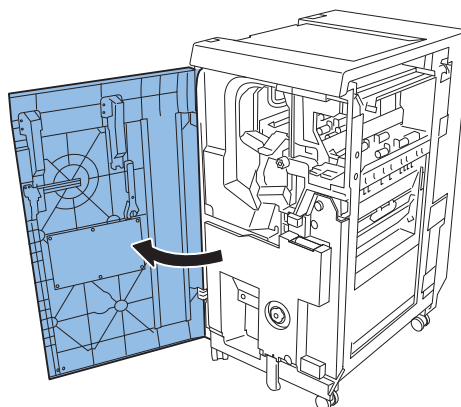
■ When installing to the saddle finisher

NOTE:

The equipment is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials before installing the equipment.

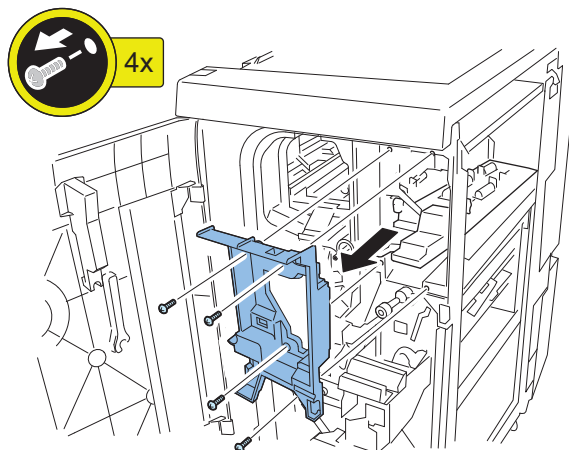


1. Open the front cover of the saddle finisher.

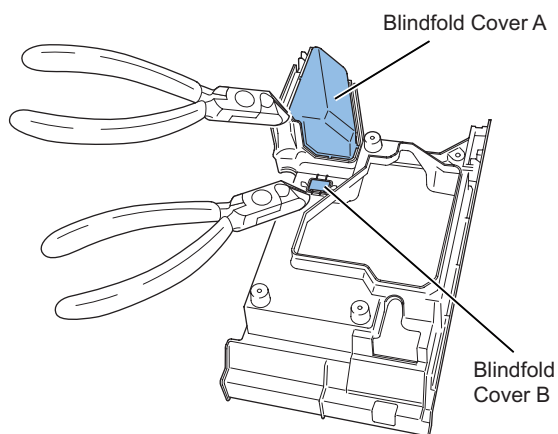




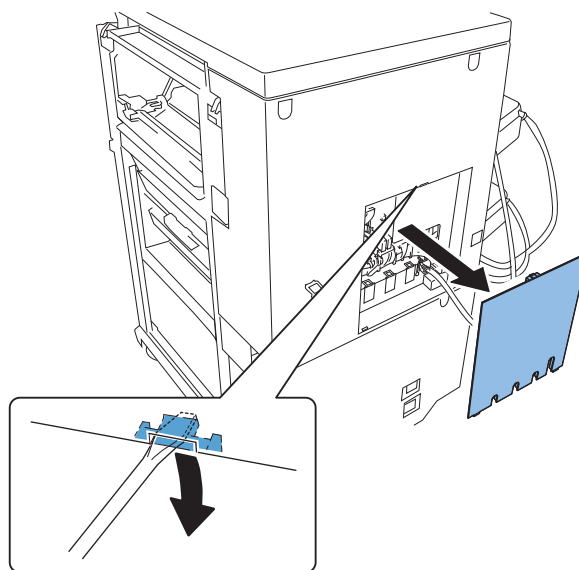
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right inner cover of the saddle finisher.



3. Using the nipper, cut out the blindfold cover A of the right inner cover. And then cut out the blindfold cover B if the blindfold cover B exists in the right inner cover.

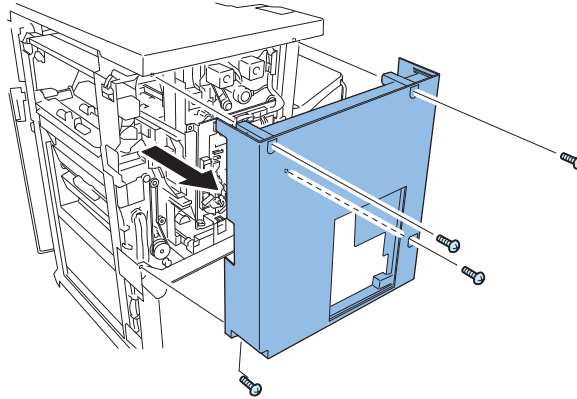


4. Release the hook with the flat head screwdriver, and then remove the PCB cover of the saddle finisher.

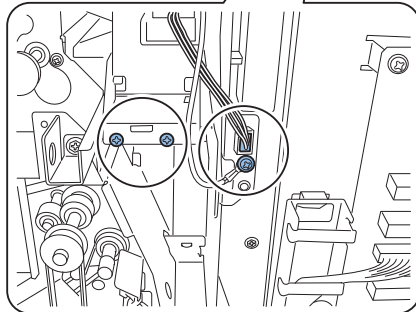
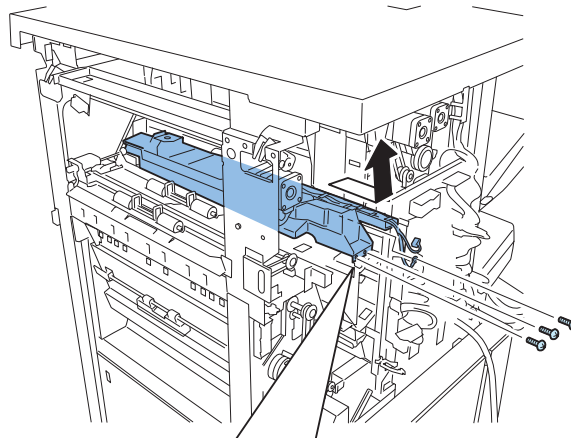




5. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover of the saddle finisher.

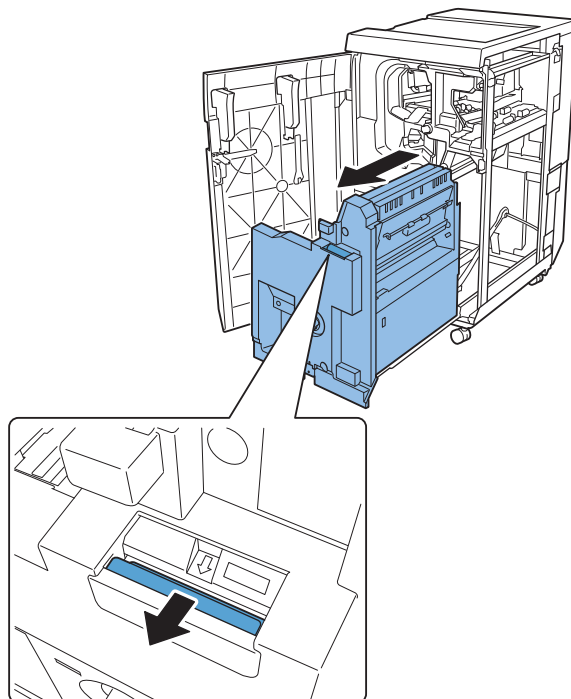


6. Disconnect a connector and remove three screws, and then remove the feed unit. (The removed feed unit and screws are no longer required.)



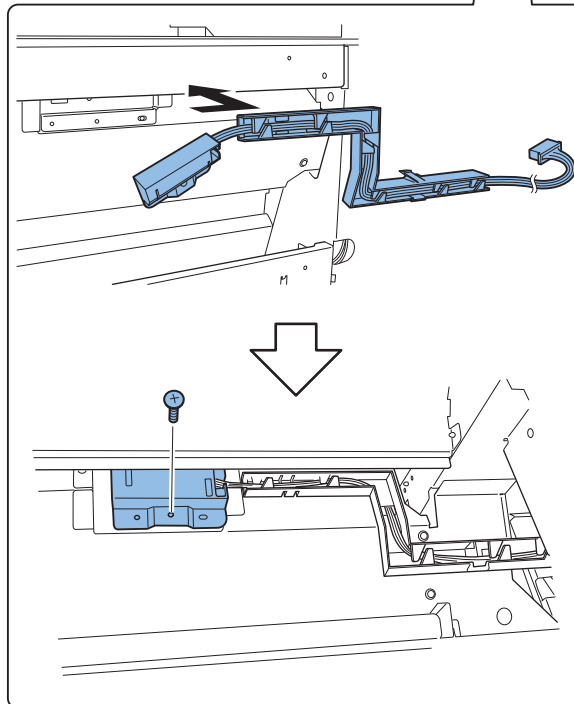
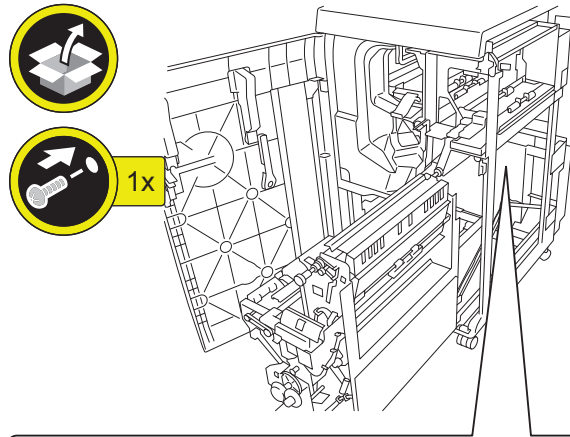


7. Gripping the hook of the handle, pull out the saddle stitcher unit gently until it stops.



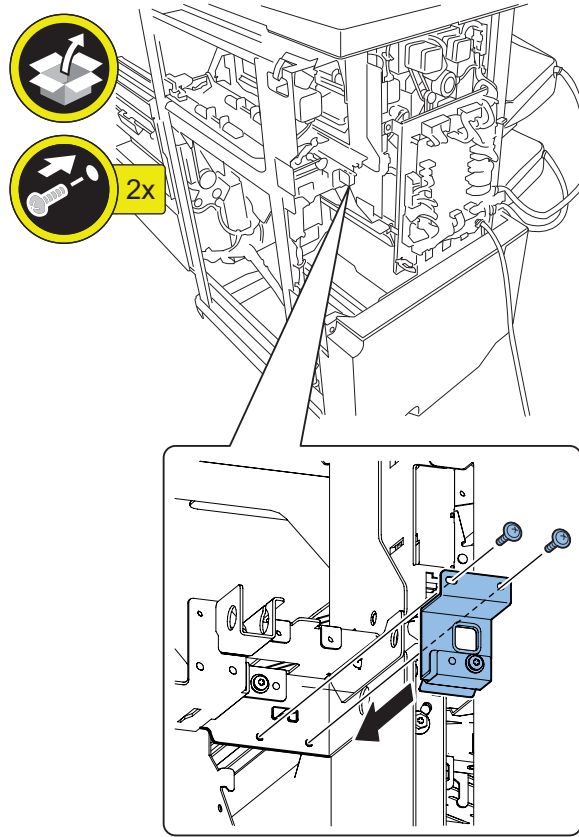


8. Using a supplied screw (Bind, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper full sensor unit.



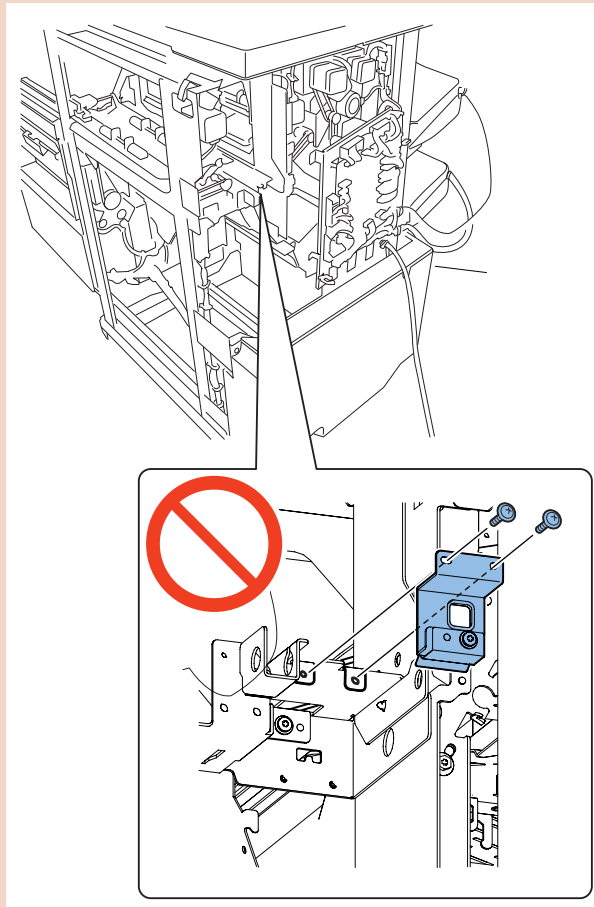


9. Using two supplied screws (TP, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper box stopper.



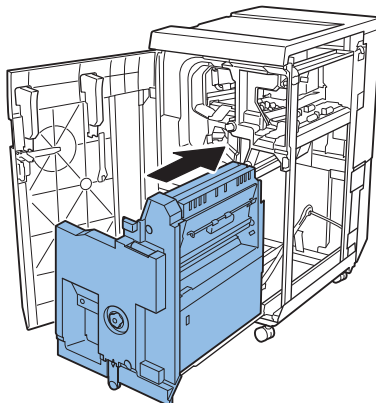
CAUTION:

If the attached location of the stopper is wrong, the punched waste paper box will be not secured by the stopper. This may result in the alarm of "Punched chips full or No waste paper box".



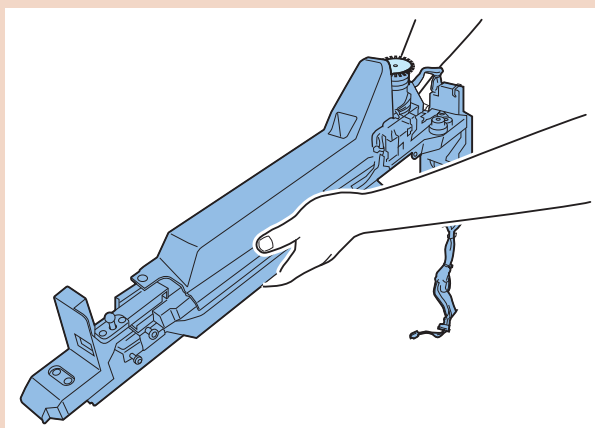


10. Push back the saddle stitcher unit gently into the finisher until it stops.

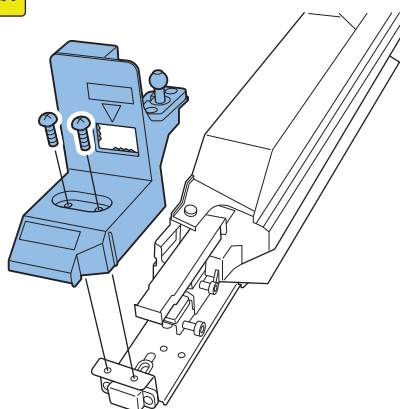


CAUTION:

Hold the punch unit as shown by the following illustration. Do not hold the motor gear assembly.

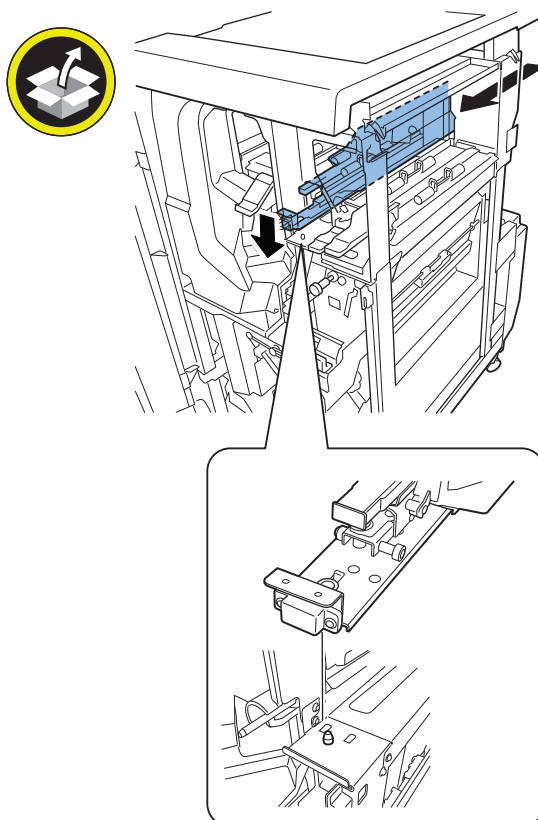


11. Remove the two screws of the supplied punch unit, and then remove the punch front cover. (The removed screws and the punch front cover are no longer required.)

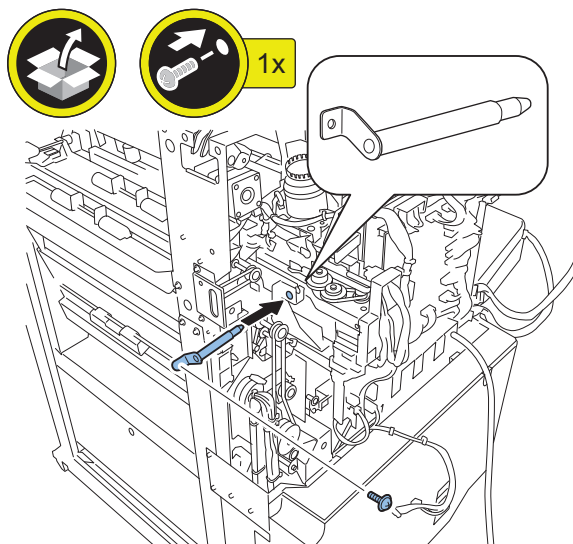




12. Attach the supplied punch unit to the saddle finisher by matching the hole on the front side of the punch unit with the pin on the finisher.

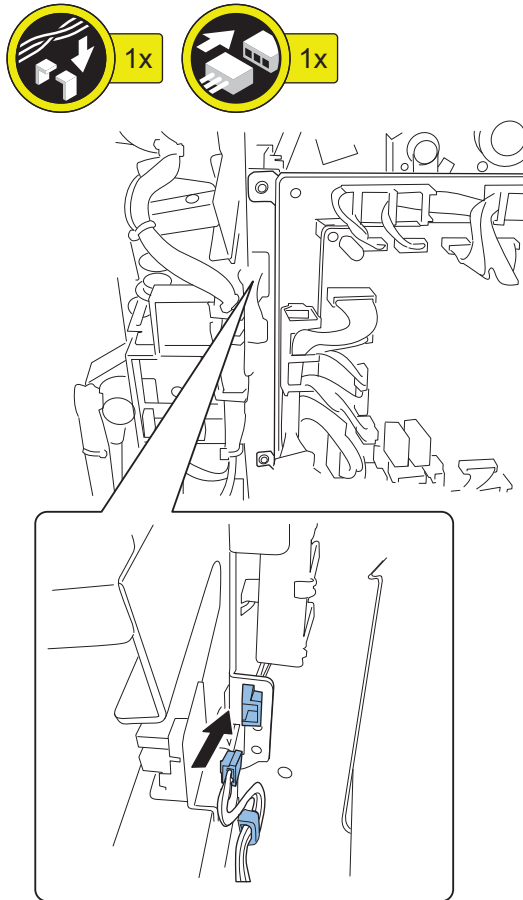


13. Attach the supplied punch unit fixing pin (for saddle finisher), and then secure it with the supplied screw (TP, M3 x 6).



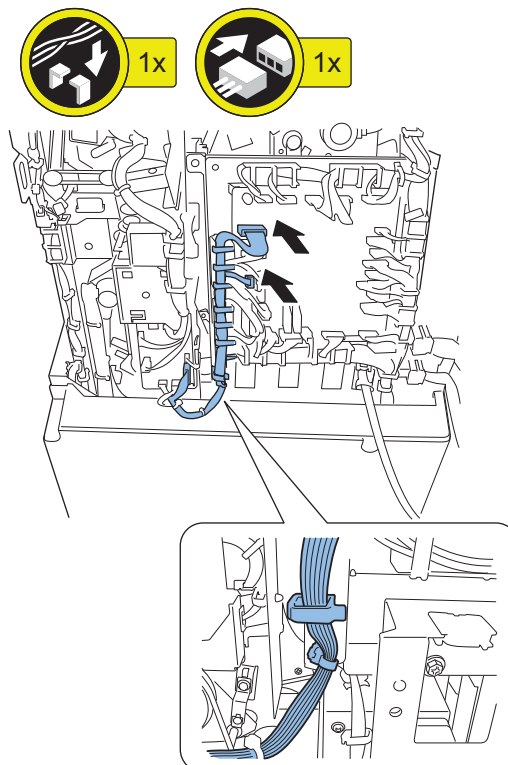


14. Connect a connector of the punch unit.



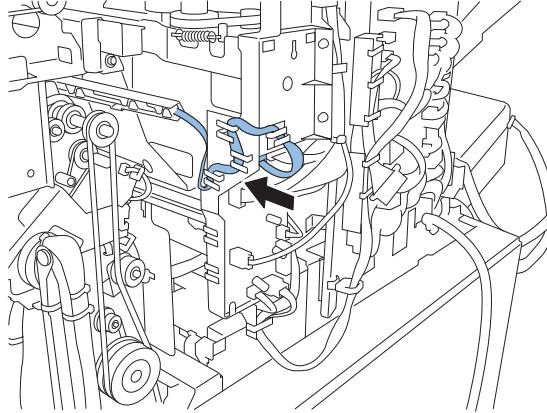
15. Put the harness of the punch unit in the harness guides, and then attach the re-use band.

Connect two connectors of the punch unit to the two connectors (CN127 and CN128) on the finisher controller PCB.





16. Connect a connector of the punched waste paper full sensor to the connector (CN4) on the puncher driver PCB.



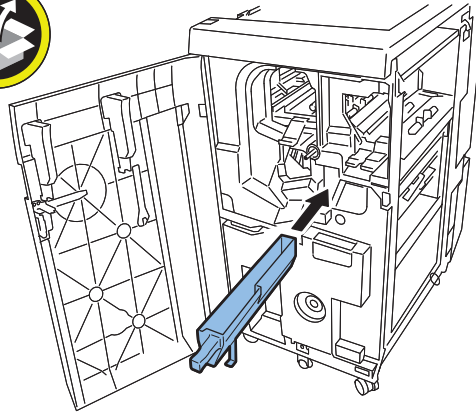
17. Using four screws, attach the rear cover of the saddle finisher removed in step 5).

18. Attach the PCB cover of the saddle finisher removed in step 4).

19. Using four screws, attach the right inner cover of the saddle finisher removed in step 2).



20. Attach the supplied punch waste paper box.

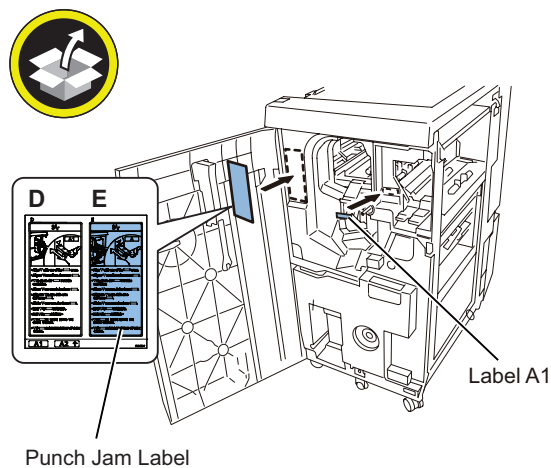




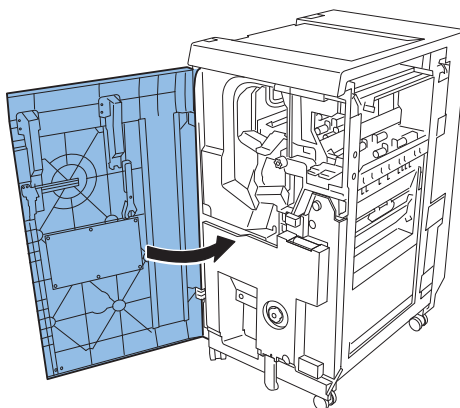
21. Affix the punch jam label of which “E” is printed on the label sheet to the left inner cover of the finisher, and also affix the label A1 to the right inner cover. (The punch jam label “D” and the label A2 are not used.)

NOTE:

When the similar punch jam label is supplied with the finisher, do not use the punch jam label supplied with the punch unit and follow the finisher installation procedure.



22. Close the front cover of the saddle finisher.



23. The following parts will be no longer needed once the puncher unit has been installed.

<Included parts>

- Punch unit fixing pin (for finisher): 1 pc.
- Punch latch unit: 1 pc.
- Screw (Bind, M4 x 7): 3 pcs.
- Punch lever caution label: 1 pc.
- Punch front cover and two screws removed from punch unit

<Removed parts from the saddle finisher>

- Screw: 3 pcs.
- Feed unit: 1 pc.
- Face cover of the right inner cover: 1 pc.

Adjustment

■ Adjusting the Output Level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor

After installing this unit, adjust the output level of the punched waste paper full sensor unit as follows.

**1. Perform the following item in the Service mode.**

- Service mode > SORTER > FUNCTION > FN-SENS2 Press the OK button on the screen.

2. When completing the output level adjustment successfully, indicate the "OK" show up on the screen. When indicated "OK" on the screen, adjustment is finished.**NOTE:**

If "NG" shows up on the screen at the step 2), retry the adjustment repeating the step 1) . Should "NG" be still indicated though retrying the adjustment, check the relative parts of the punched waste full sensor such as its attaching or connectors, etc.

Operation Check

After completion of installation, check whether punch unit operates normally by performing the punch operation from the operation panel of the host machine.

Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1

● Checking before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

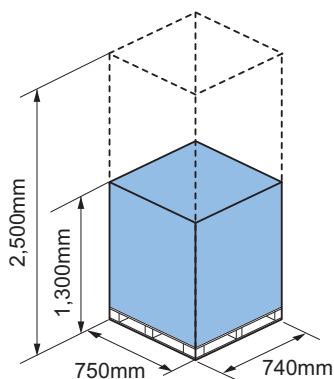
Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install this equipment.
- Do not carry this equipment with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

■ Checking the Unpacking Space

Be sure to unpack this equipment according to the illustrations in a wide area where there is enough space around it.



■ Points to Note on Installation

- Illustrations used in this procedure are those of the Booklet Finisher unless otherwise specified.
- Refer to "Order of Installation of Options" when installing this equipment.
- Since this machine is heavy (Staple Finisher: approx. 36kg, Booklet Finisher: approx. 60kg), 2 or more persons are required to install it. Be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

CAUTION:

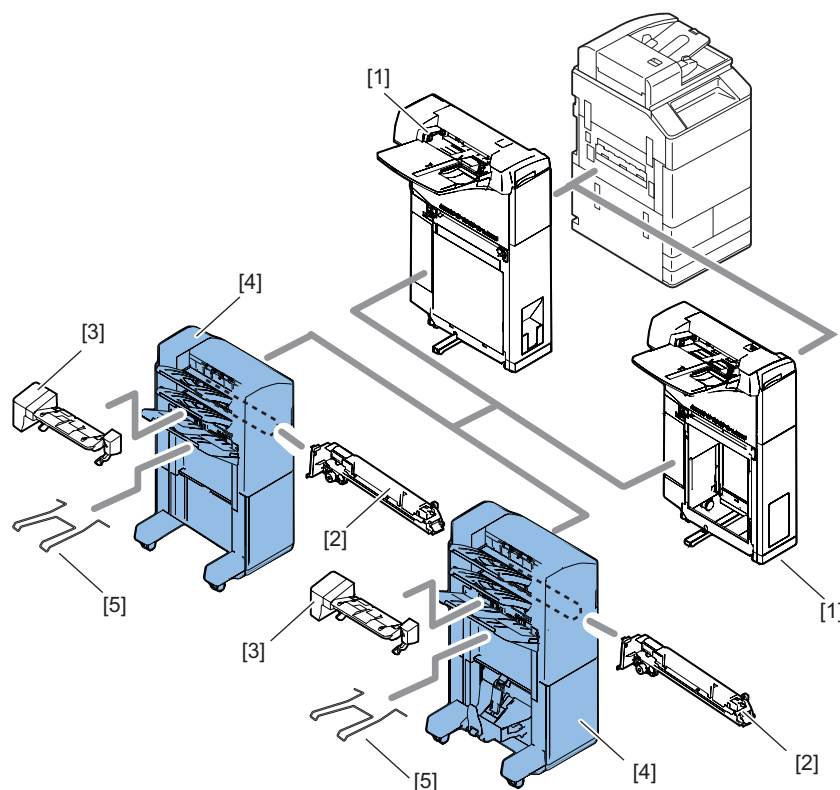
When tightening the screws, do not tighten them too tightly. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage and deformation of screw holes.



■ Order of Installation of Options

When installing this equipment together with the other options, first install the host machine and then install options in the following order:

1. Document Insertion Unit or Document Insertion/ Folding Unit
2. Puncher Unit
3. Jogger Kit
4. Staple Finisher or Booklet Finisher (This equipment)
5. Long Sheet Tray



■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281054
- F281059

● Unpacking

■ Unpacking Procedure

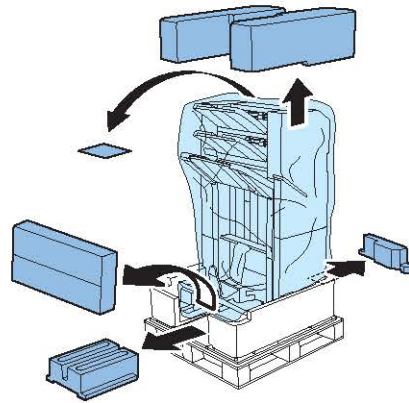
CAUTION:

This equipment is rather heavy. Be sure to work with a group of 2 or more people. Particularly when moving it over a step on the floor, be sure to take full care not to let it tumble over (Weight: Staple Finisher: approx. 36 kg, Booklet Finisher: approx. 60 kg).

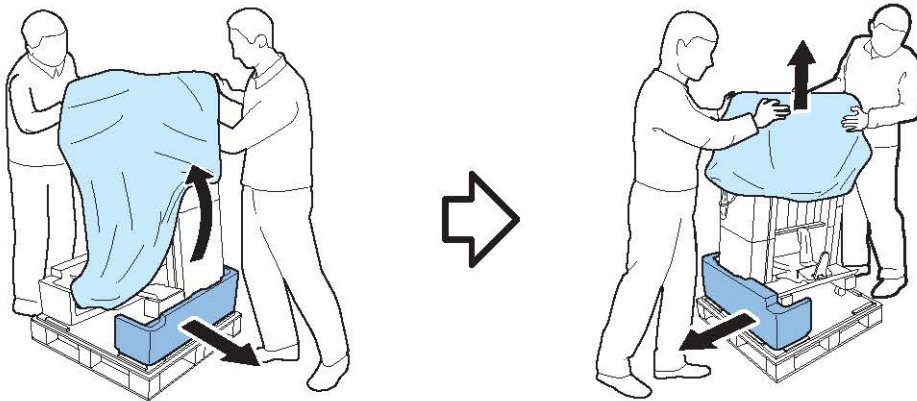
NOTE:

This equipment is packed using tapes, fixings and cushioning materials to be protected against vibration and shock during transportation. Be sure to remove them before starting to install this equipment. It is a good idea to store away the removed fixings and cushioning materials for possible relocation of this equipment, e.g., to a new site or for repairs.

□
1.

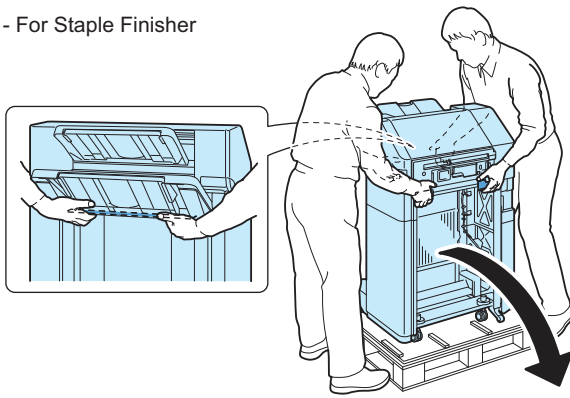


□
2.

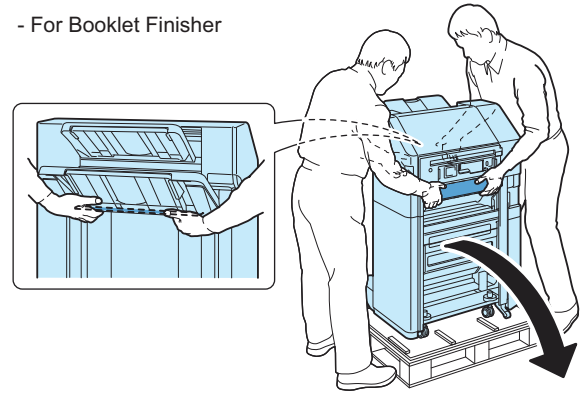


□
3. Hold the specified parts as shown and unload the finisher.

- For Staple Finisher



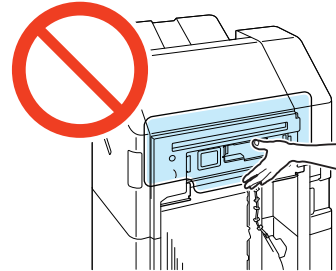
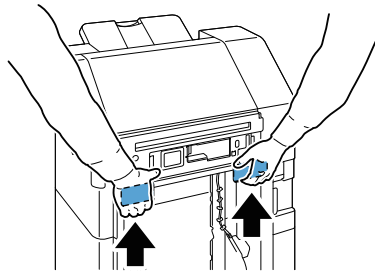
- For Booklet Finisher



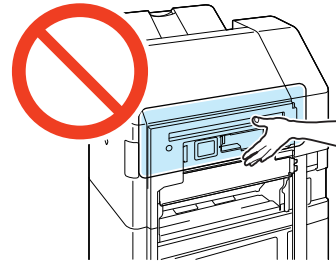
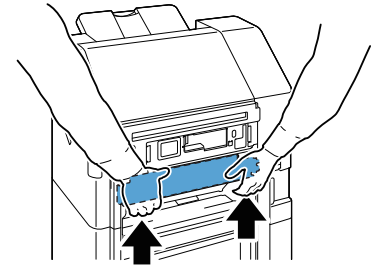
CAUTION:

Hold the specified parts as shown and do not hold the other parts to lift up the finisher.

- For Staple Finisher

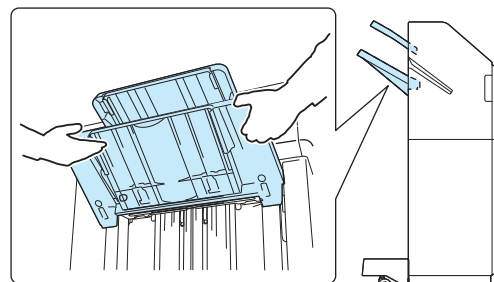
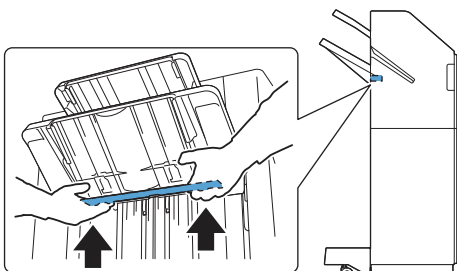


- For Booklet Finisher



CAUTION:

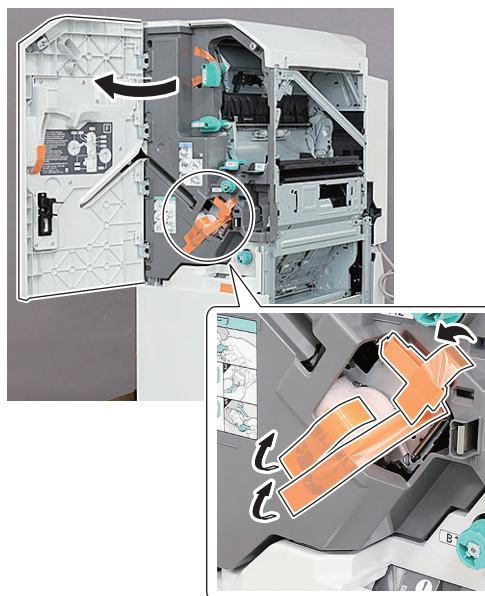
Hold the metal part as shown and do not hold the other tray parts.



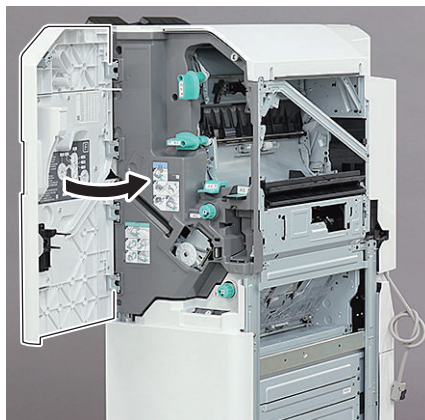
* Number of tray differs depending on the model type of finisher.

4. Remove all the tapes and cushioning materials outside this equipment.

5.

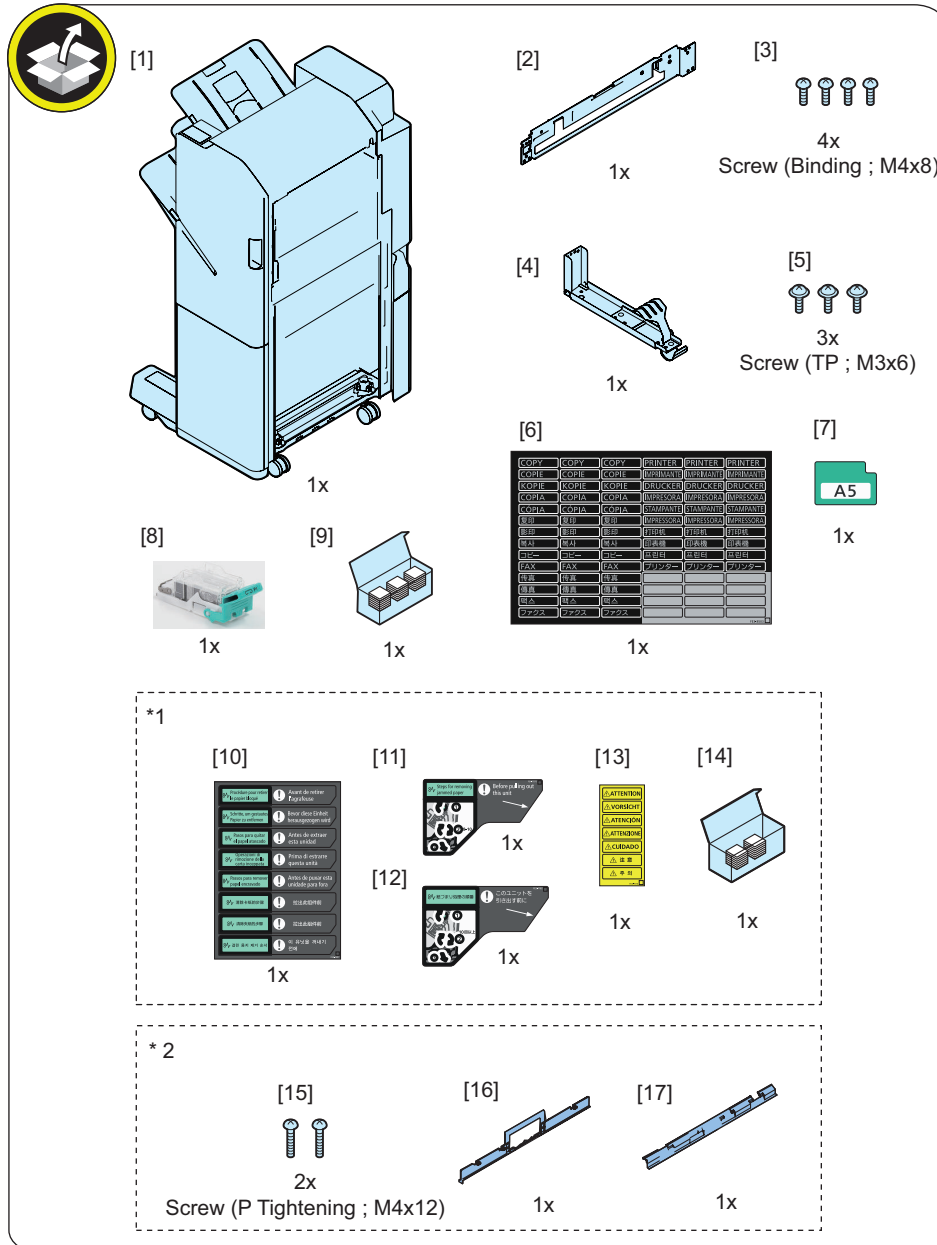


6.



Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.



NOTE:
*1 : Booklet Finisher only

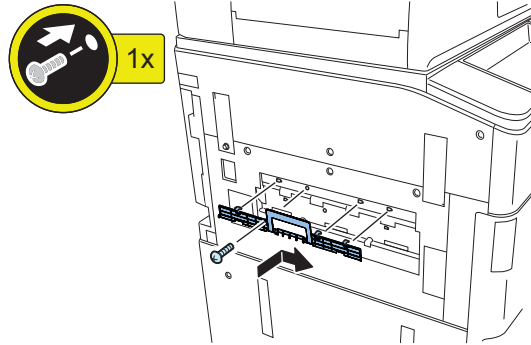
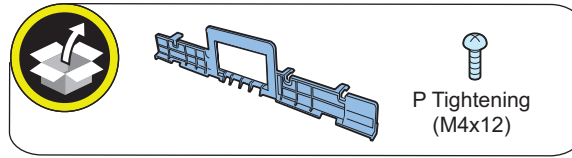
<Others>
Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

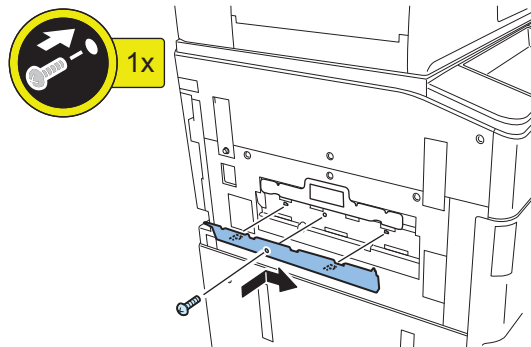
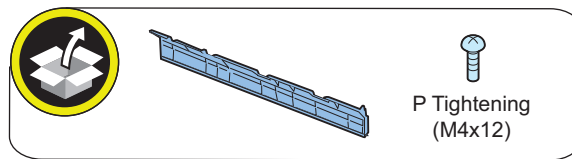
CAUTION:
Check that the main power switch is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

■ Connecting to the Host Machine

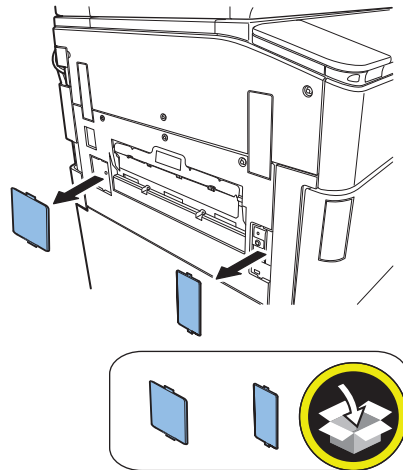
□
1.



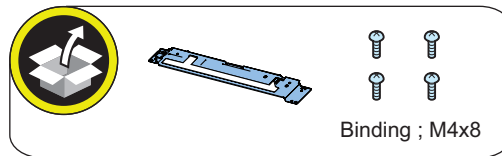
□
2.



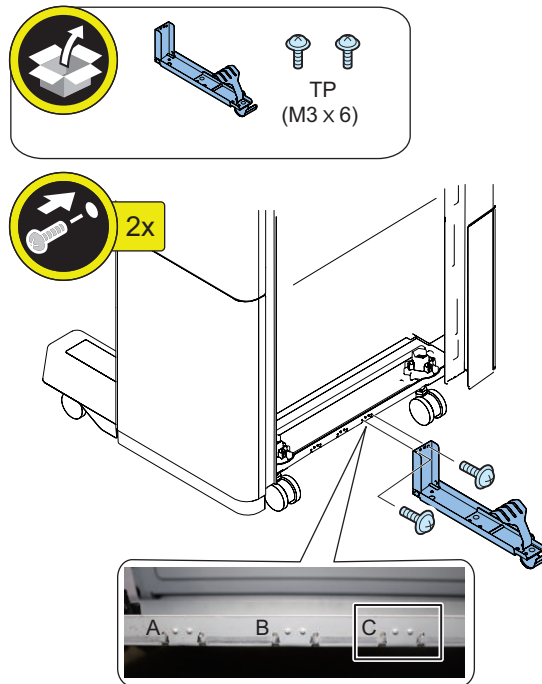
□
3.



□
4.



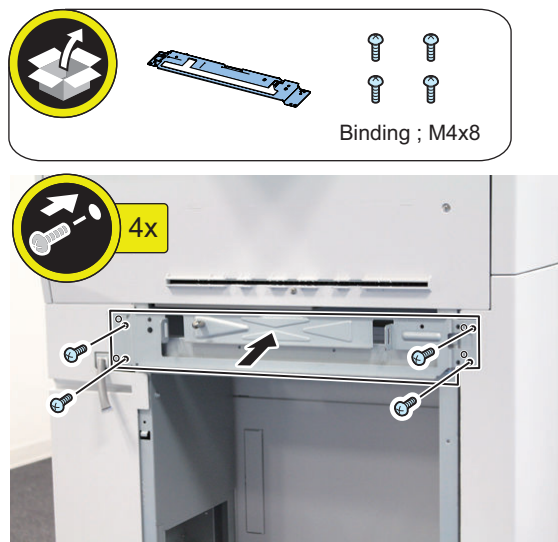
□
5.



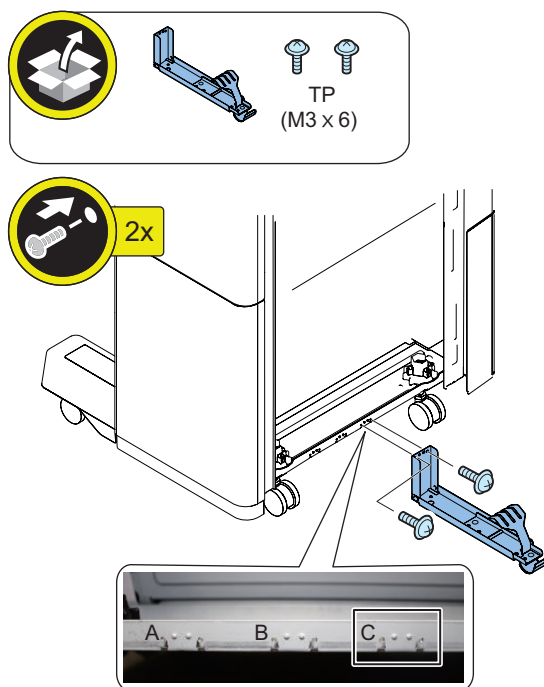
NOTE:
Install the Ground rail to the position [C].

■ Connecting to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit or Document Insertion Unit

□
1.

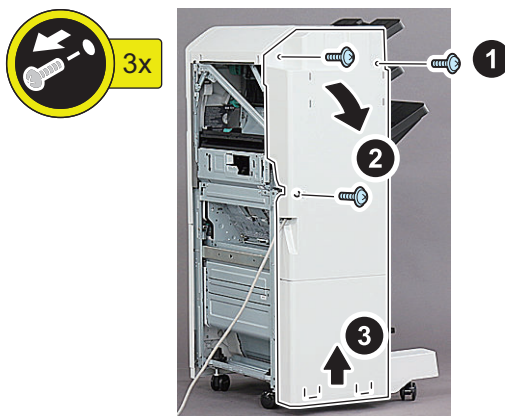


□
2.



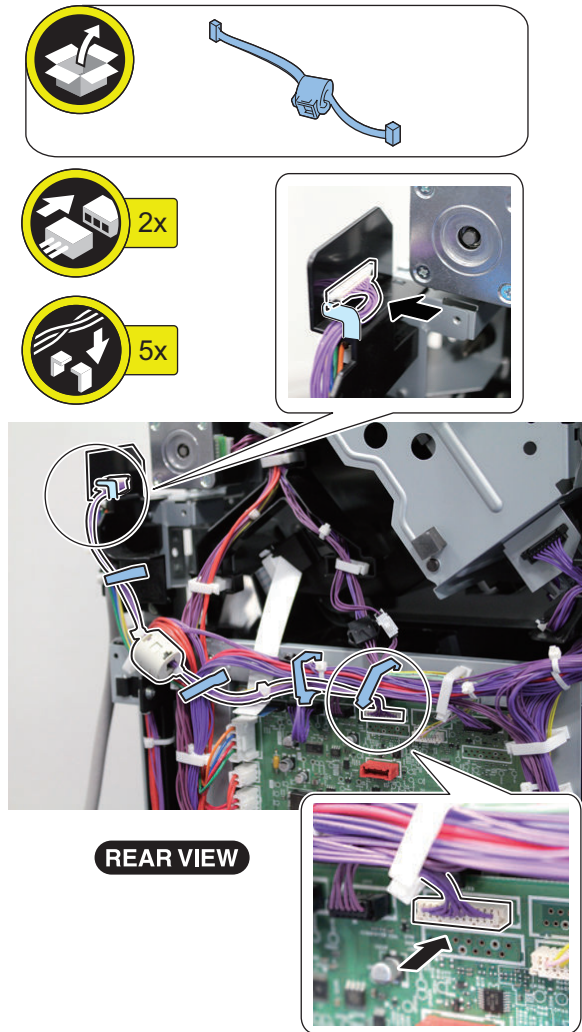
NOTE:
Install the Ground rail to the position [C].

□
3.

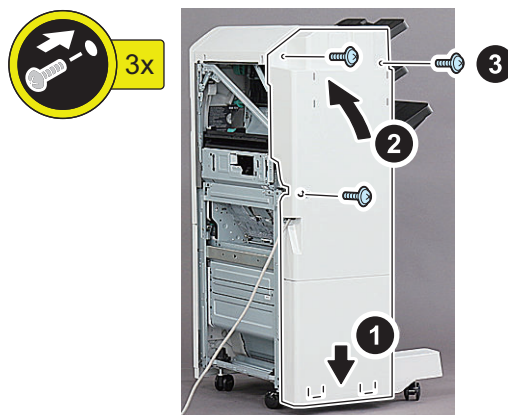




4. Install the Relay Connector supplied with the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit to the Finisher.



5.



□

- 6.** Connect the Relay connector of the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit to the Finisher.

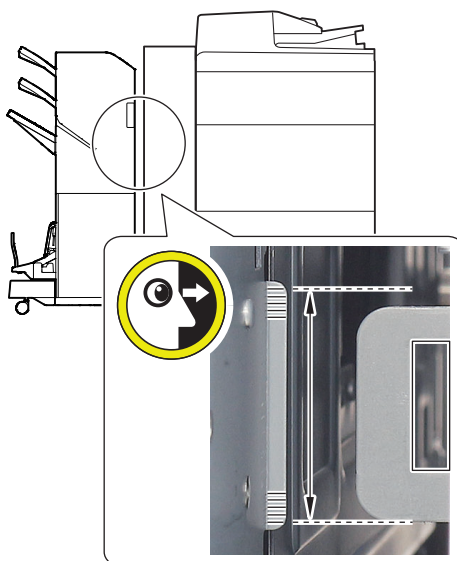


■ Connecting to the Upstream Connection Machine

□

- 1.** Check the height of the upstream connection machine and the Finisher.

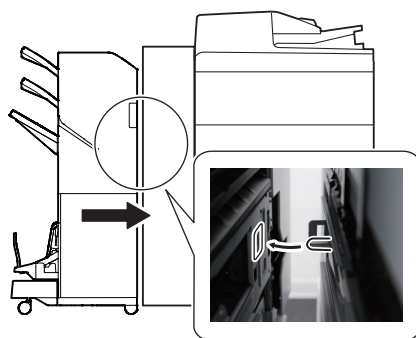
Check that the hole of the connection plate is positioned between the marking-off lines of the Finisher.



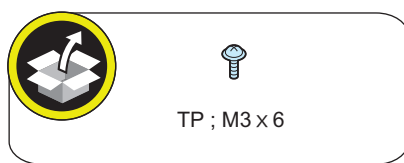
NOTE:

If the hole is not positioned between the marking-off lines, carry out the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Height."

□
2.



□
3.



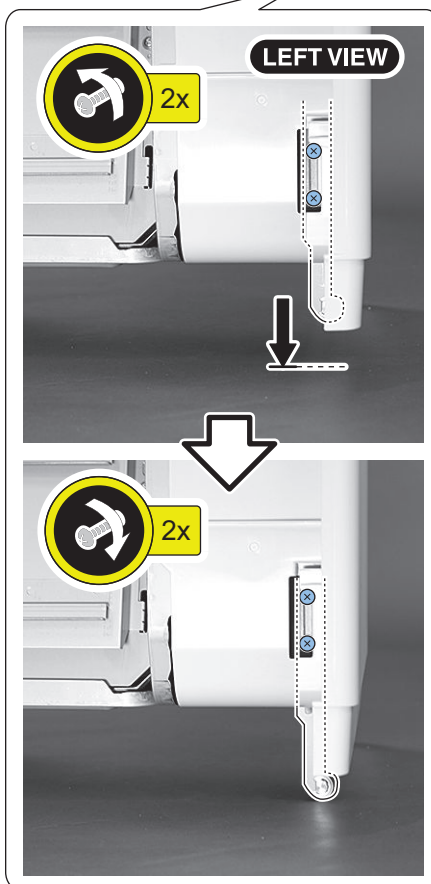


4. Pull out the Saddle Unit. (Booklet Finisher only)



□

- 5.** Loosen two screws, and then fix the Saddle Unit auxiliary caster so that its caster can touch floor. (Booklet Finisher only)



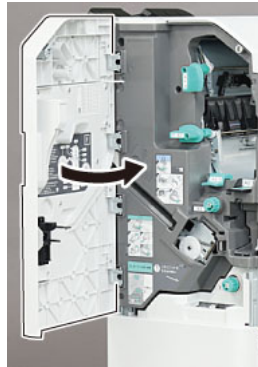
□

6. Put the Saddle Unit back. (Booklet Finisher only)



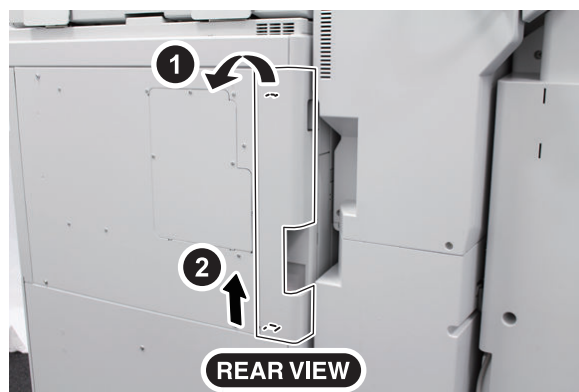
□

7.



□

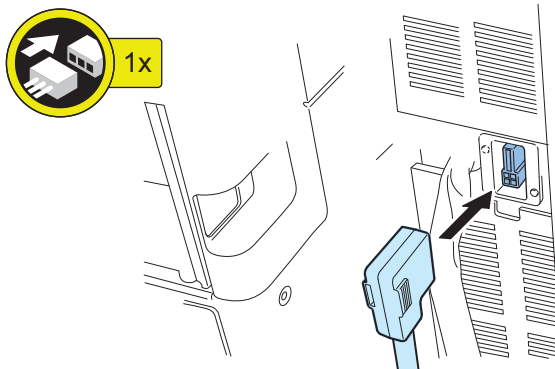
8.



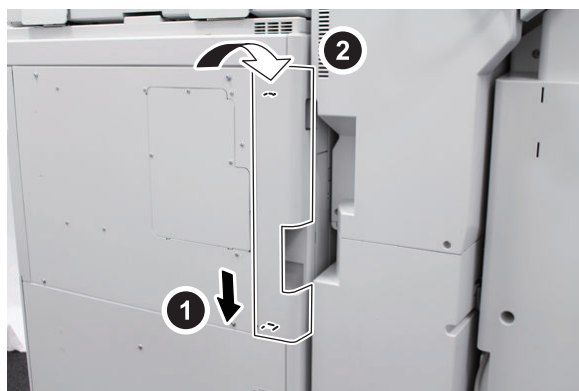
□
9.

⚠ CAUTION:

When connecting the interface cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet. If you do not do so, electric shock can result.



□
10.



● Affixing the Labels

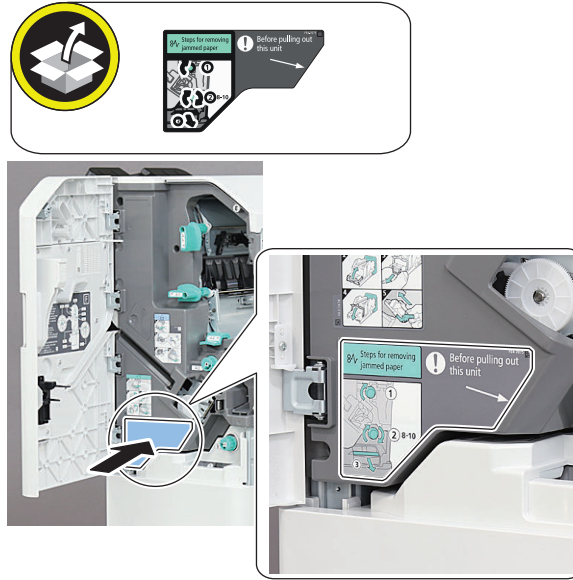
■ Affixing the Jam Label / Saddle Caution Label (Booklet Finisher only)

□
1.



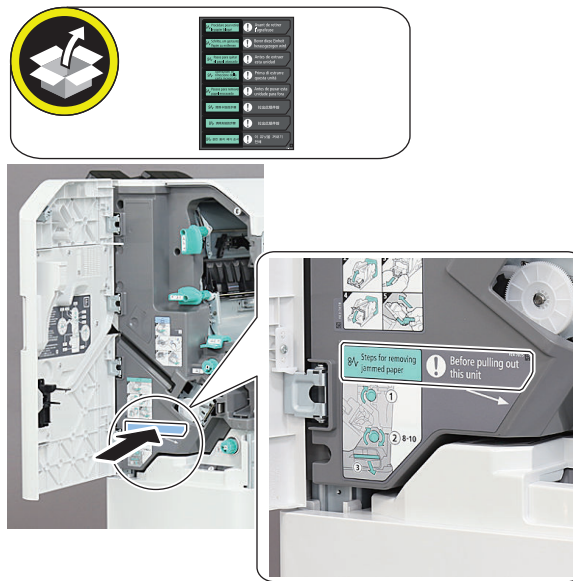
□

2. Affix the label in the appropriate language.



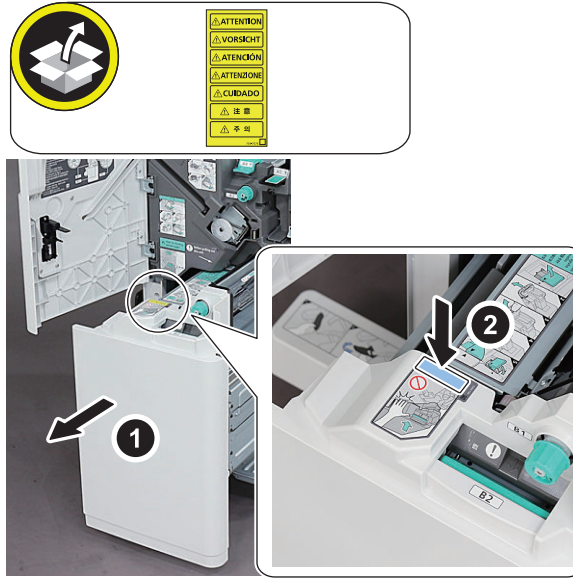
□

3. Affix the label in the appropriate language.

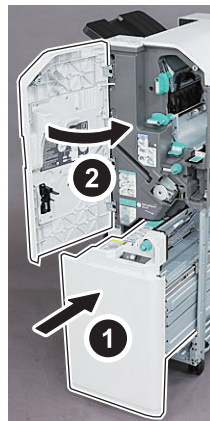




4. Affix the label in the appropriate language.



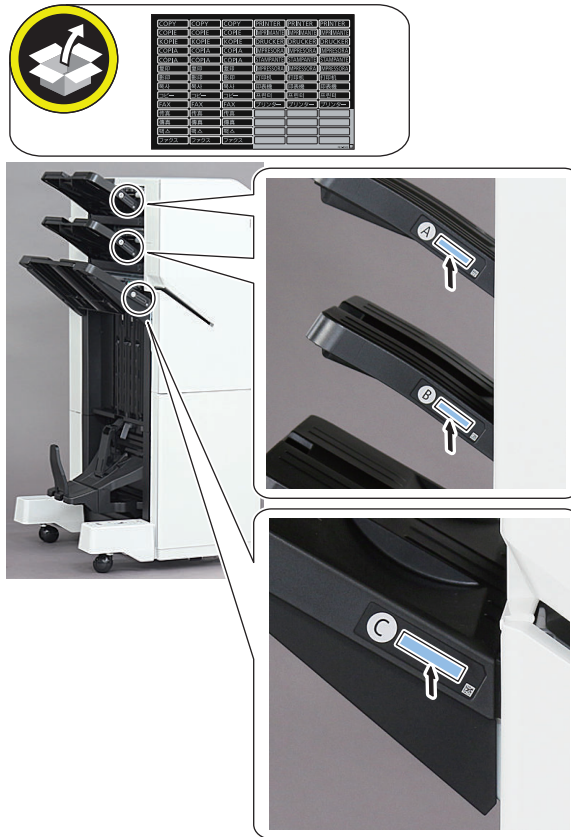
5.



■ Affixing the Tray Labels

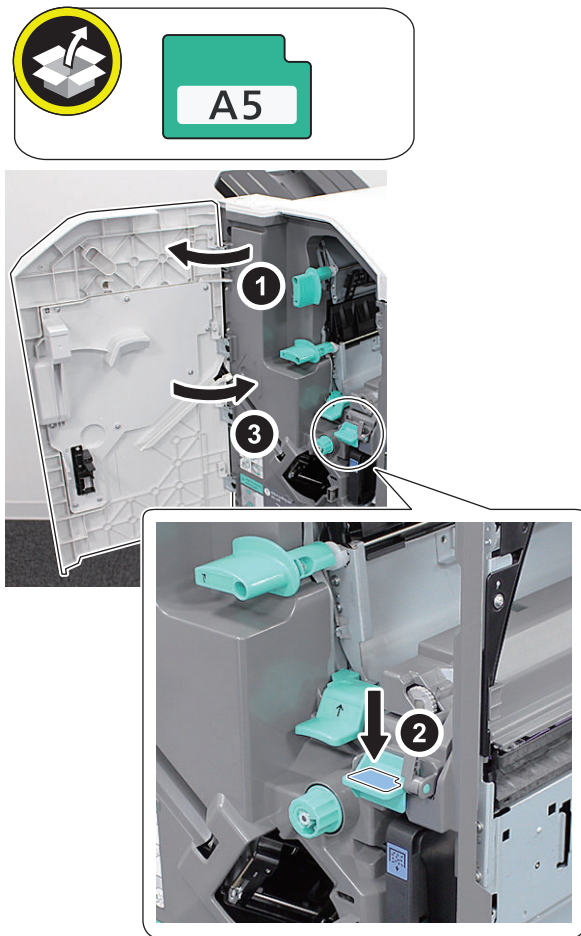


1. Affix the Tray labels which is specified by user.



■ Affixing the Puncher Label. (When Installing Puncher Unit.)

□
1.



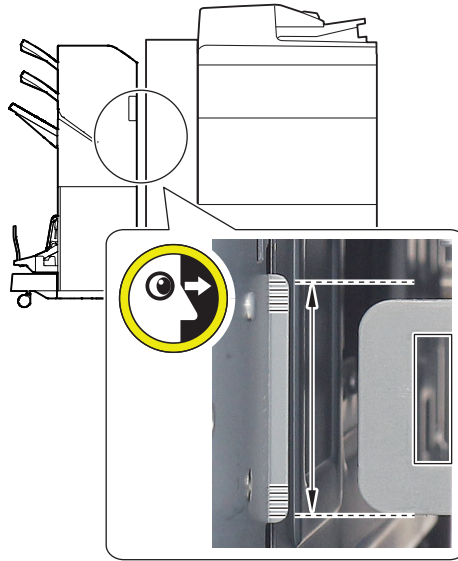
● Making Adjustments

The difference in height between the Finisher and the Host Machine and the tilt of the Finisher and the host machine need to be adjusted depending on the installation site floor condition. If the height or tilt is not adjusted properly, problems can occur (for example, a paper jam can occur frequently at the paper supply section of the Finisher). Check the height and tilt and adjust it as required. Be sure to adjust as necessary.

■ Checking the Height



1. Check that the hole of the connection guide plate is positioned between the marking-off lines of the Finisher.



2. When the adjustment of height is necessary, make adjustment by referring the "Adjusting the Height".

NOTE:

When the adjustment of height is not necessary, proceed to the "Checking the Difference in Tilt".

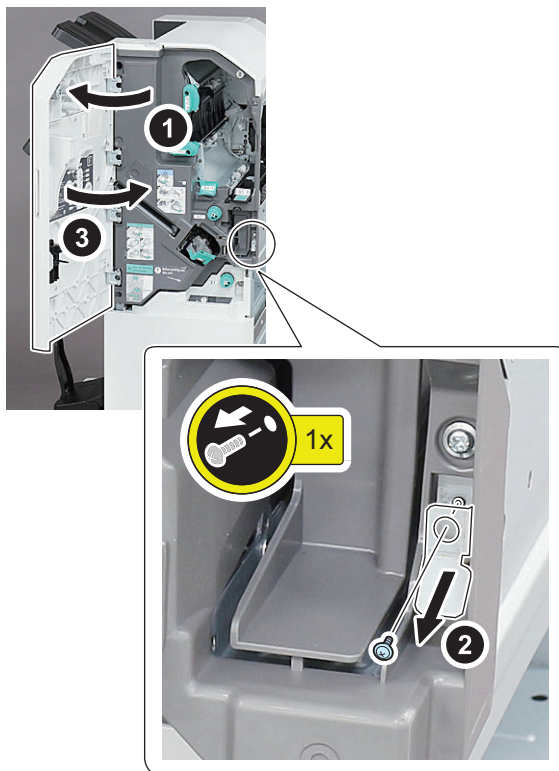
■ Adjusting the Height



1. When it is fixed to the upstream connection machine, it is detached by approx. 150 mm.

⚠ CAUTION:

Be careful with the interface cable when detaching.



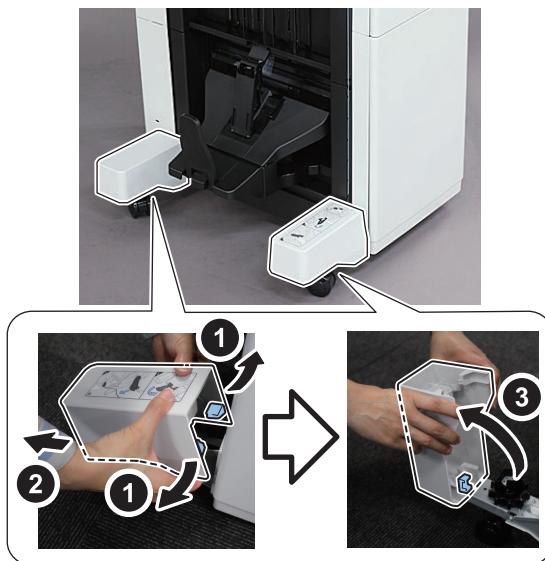
NOTE:

Disconnect the Relay connector when detaching the Finisher from the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





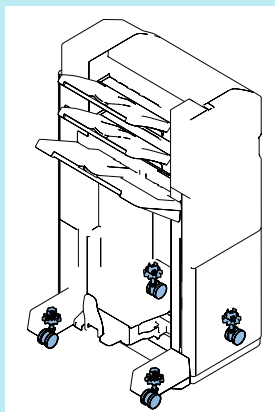
2. Remove the Caster covers (front/ rear).

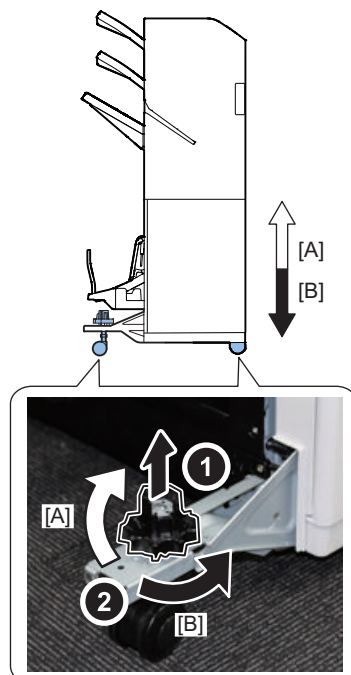


3. Turn the adjustment dial of the caster in the direction of the arrow by lifting the dial upward a little to adjust the height.

NOTE:

Adjust the height at 4 casters.

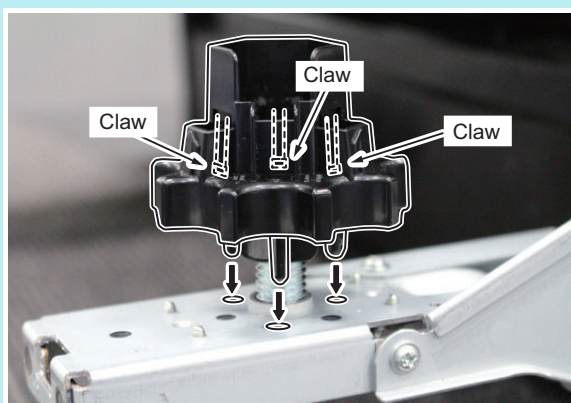




- To increase the height of the Finisher, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [A].
 - To decrease the height of the Finisher, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [B].
- A full turn of the adjustment dial changes the height of the Finisher by approx. 2.0 mm.

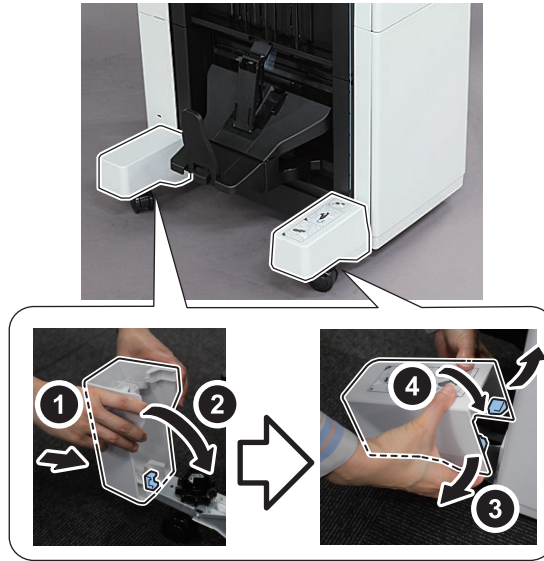
NOTE:

If the adjustment dial keeps lifting upward, lower the adjustment dial by releasing three claws. And be sure to insert the three pins of the adjustment dial to the hole of the caster support plate.

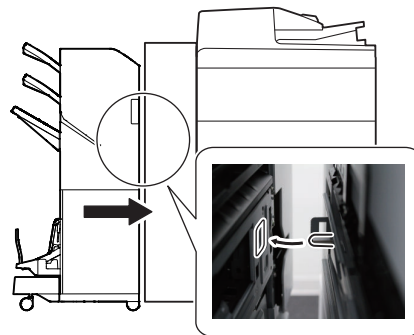




4. Install the Caster covers (Front / Rear).



5. Install the Finisher to the upstream connection machine.



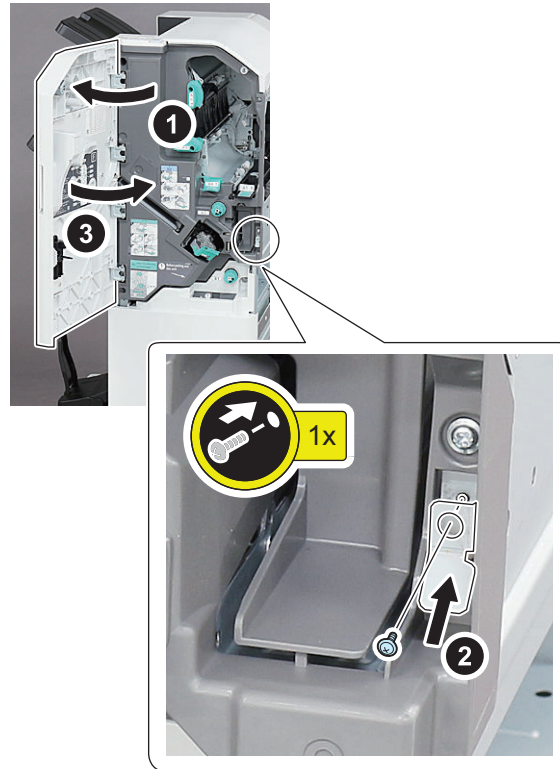
NOTE:

Connect the Relay connector when installing the Finisher to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





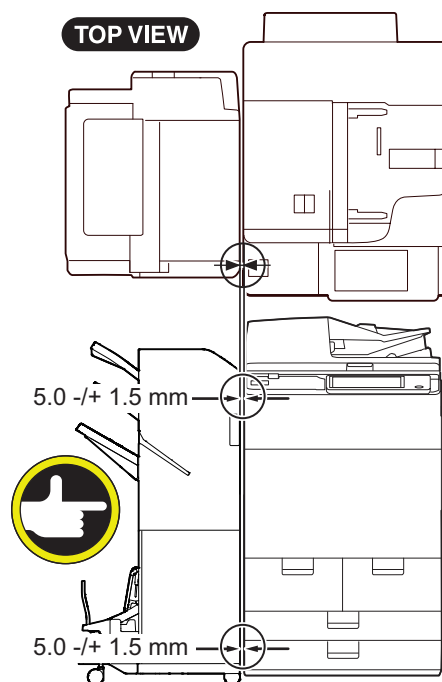
6. Fix to the upstream connection machine.

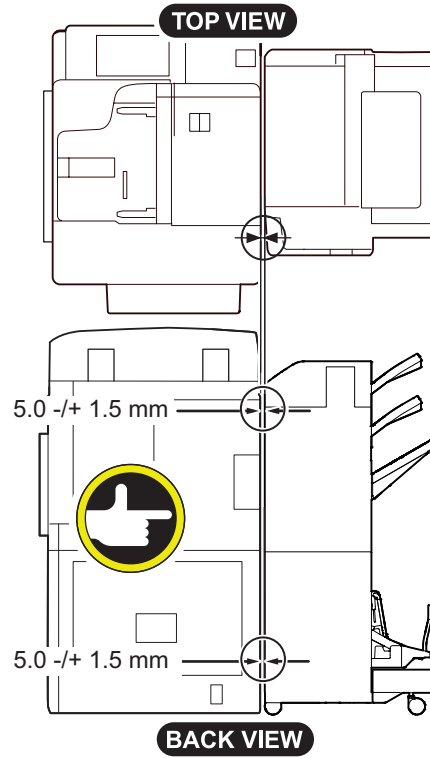


■ Checking the Difference in Tilt

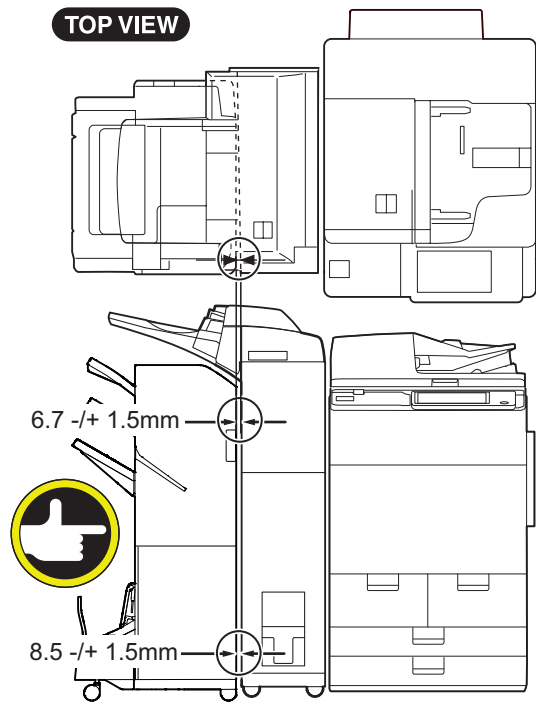
Check the relational tilting amount of the Finisher and the upstream connection machine. Make sure that the gap between the right side of the Finisher and the left side of the upstream connection machine is within the standard shown in the figure. In the case the gaps are within the specification, this adjustment is not required.

● Connecting to the Host Machine

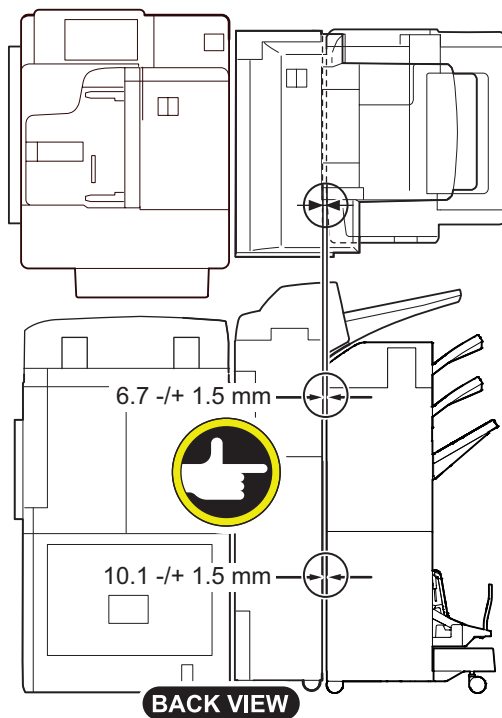




• Connecting to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit or Document Insertion Unit



TOP VIEW



BACK VIEW

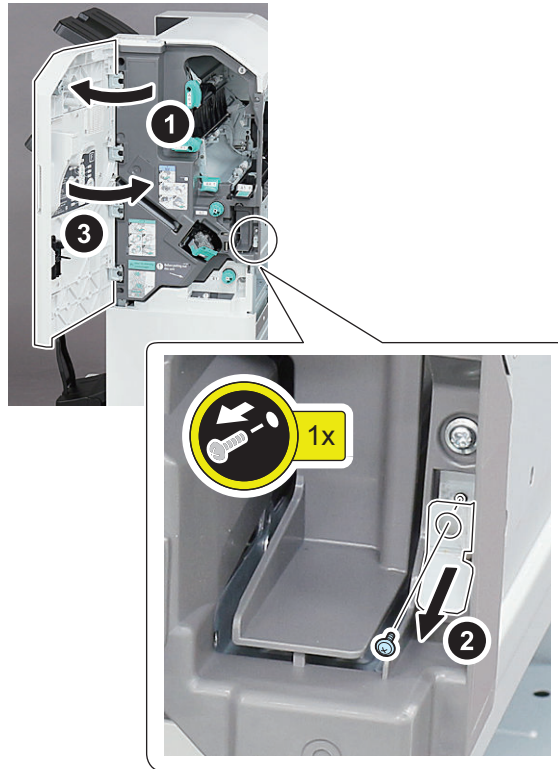
■ Adjusting the Tilt



1. When it is fixed to the upstream connection machine, it is detached by approx. 150 mm.

⚠ CAUTION:

Be careful with the interface cable when detaching.



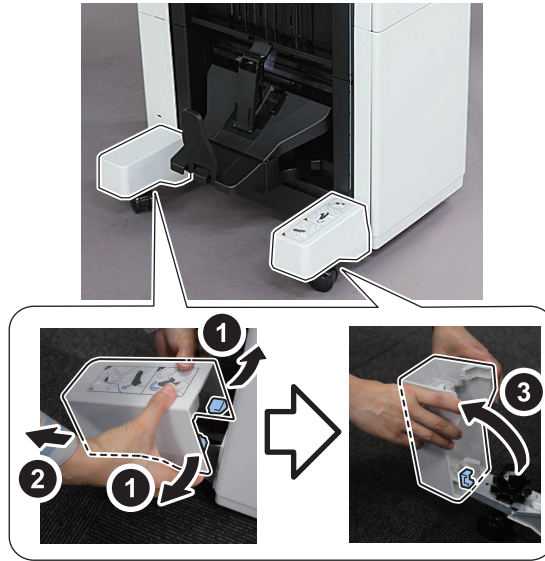
NOTE:

Disconnect the Relay connector when detaching the Finisher from the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





2. Remove the Caster Covers (Front/ Rear).

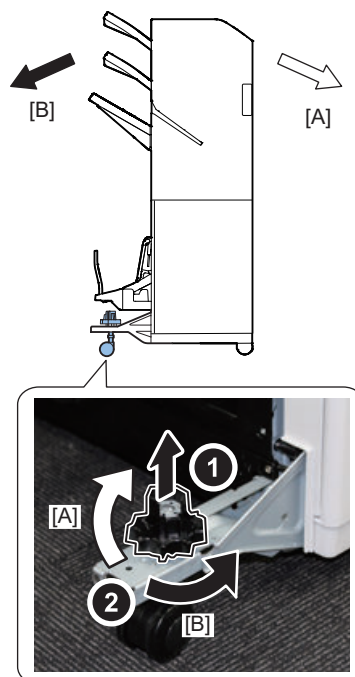
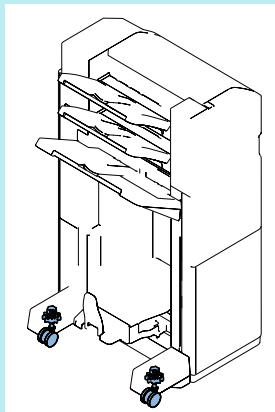




3. Turn the adjustment dial of the caster in the direction of the arrow by lifting the dial upward a little to adjust the tilt.

NOTE:

Adjust the tilt at 2 left casters.

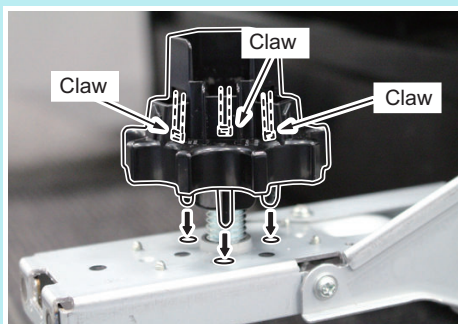
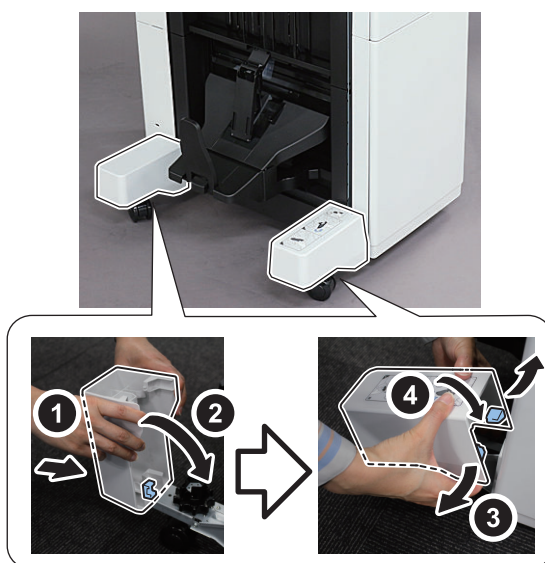


- To tilt the Finisher to the right, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [A].
- To tilt the Finisher to the left, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [B].

A full turn of the adjustment dial changes the height of the Finisher by approx. 2.0 mm.

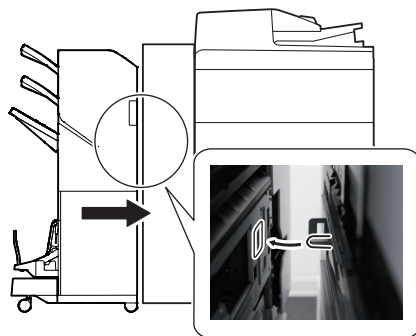
NOTE:

If the adjustment dial keeps lifting upward, lower the adjustment dial by releasing three claws. And be sure to insert the three pins of the adjustment dial to the hole of the caster support plate.

**4. Install the Caster covers (Front / Rear).**



5. Install the upstream connection machine.



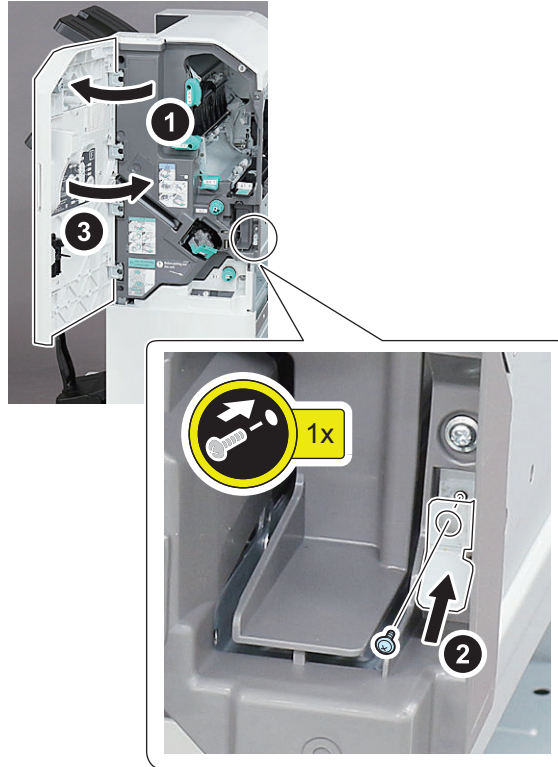
NOTE:

Connect the Relay connector when installing the Finisher to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





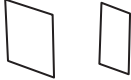

6. Fix to the upstream connection machine.



Making Checks After Completion of Installation Work

■ Disposal Parts Check

Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	 <p>2x Face Cover of the host machine</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	 <p>1x Puncher Label (When Puncher Unit is not installed)</p>

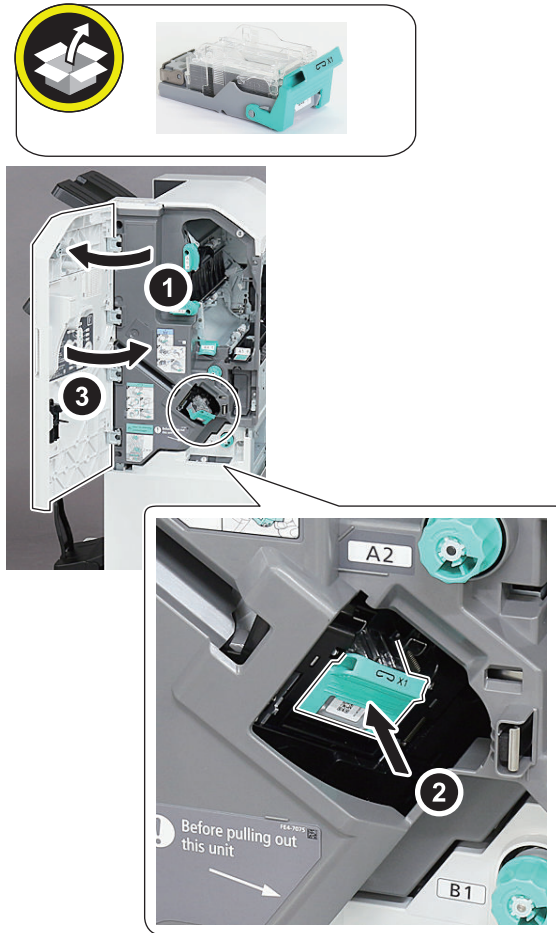
■ Operation Check



1. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.



2. Open the Front Cover, and then set the Staple Cartridge into the Stapler Unit.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

-
4. Check the operation such as paper feed and stapling to make sure that problems such as a jam or malfunction do not occur.

CAUTION:

Staple-free binding unit might be out of its correct position due to a mechanical shock during transportation. When the staple-free binding unit is out of the correct position, a paper stack is clinched at wrong position in the staple-free binding mode.

To avoid the above, make copies in the following condition after the installation of the finisher and correct the position of the staple-free binding unit:

- Staple mode: Stapling at rear corner
- Paper size: LTR or A4
- Number of sheet: 2
- Copy quantity: 1

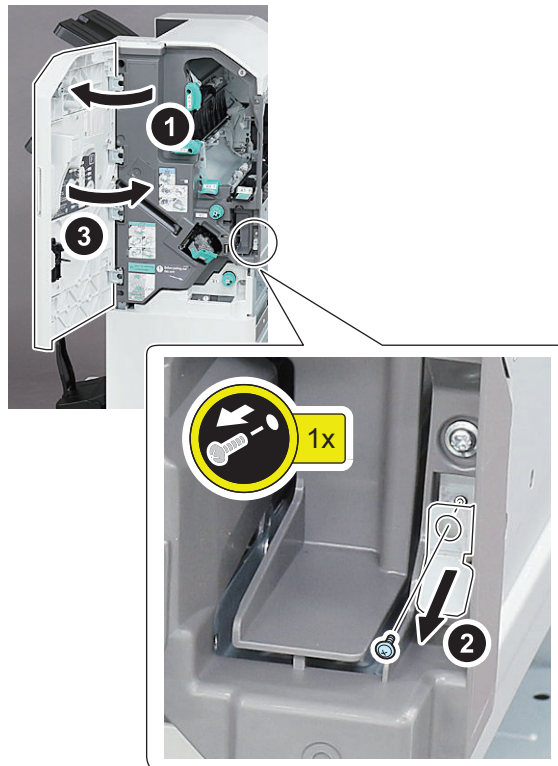
NOTE:

Mechanical drive of the staple-free binding unit is engaged with the stapler unit.

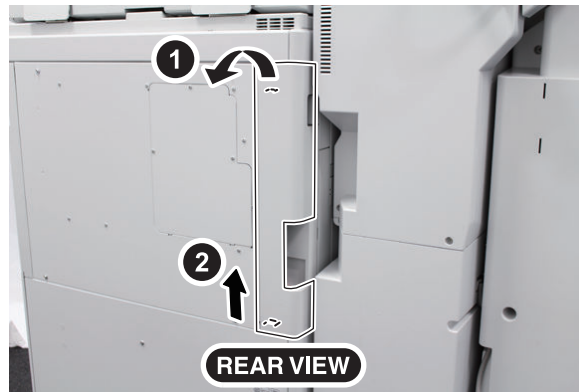
Making copies in the above condition will have the stapler unit returned to its home position and the staple-free binding unit stops at the correct position.

Detaching from the Upstream Connection Machine

-
- 1.



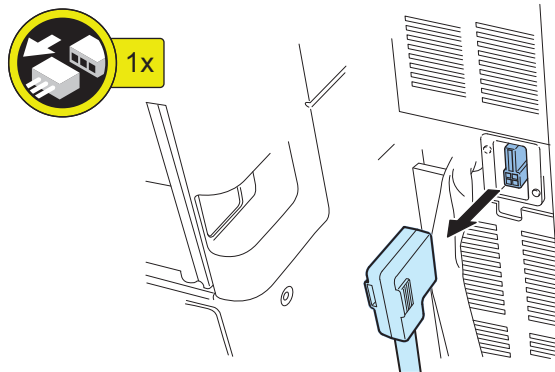
□
2.



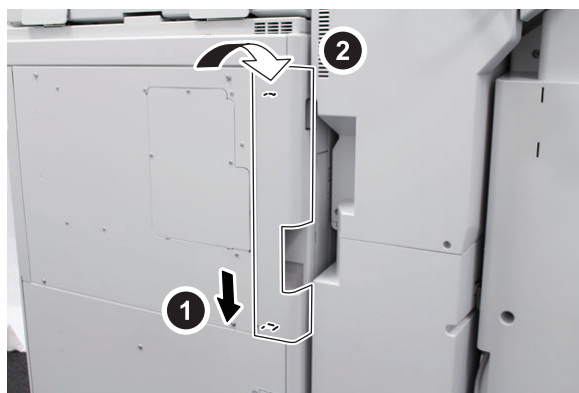
□
3.

⚠ CAUTION:

When disconnecting the Interface Cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet.



□
4.



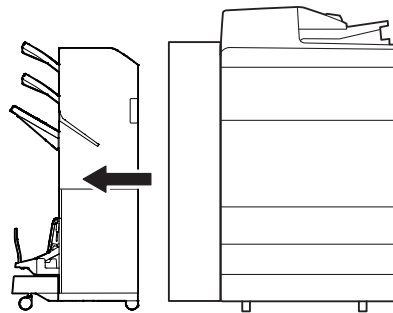
□

5. Disconnect the Relay connector when detaching the Finisher from the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.



□

6.



2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1

● Checking Before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

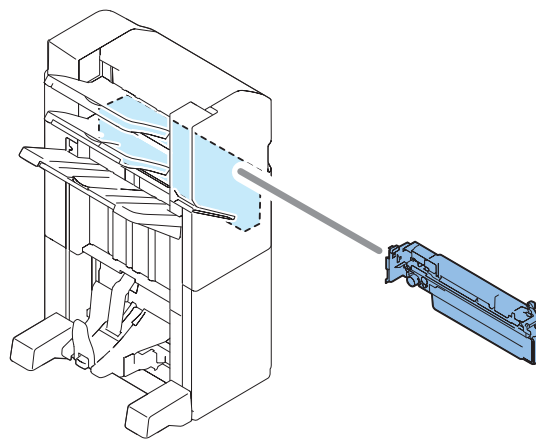
When installing this Equipment together with the Finisher, install this Equipment before installing the Finisher to the Upstream Connection Machine.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F281060

■ Installation Outline Drawing



● Unpacking Procedure



1. Open the container box, and then take out the Punch Unit and the contents.



2. Remove all cushioning materials and tapes from outside of the Punch Unit.

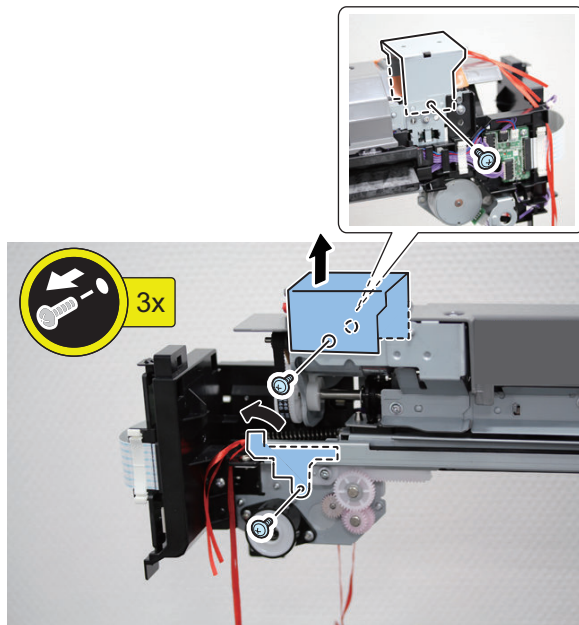


3. Remove the 2 fixtures.



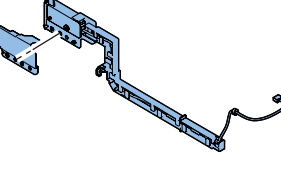





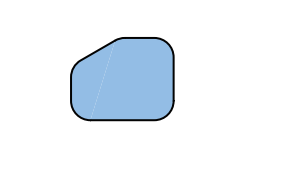


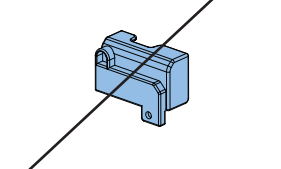
- 3 Screws

NOTE:

Removed screws are used in latter steps.



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Punch Unit x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Punch Waste Tray x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Punch Unit Open/ Close Guide x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Punch Unit Fixing Pin Holder x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Punch Unit Fixing Pin x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Punch Unit Positioning Guide x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Relay Harness x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Face Seal x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Rear Inner Cover (small) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (W Sems ; M3x6) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Punch Front Cover x1 

- Part [12] is not used for installation.

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the main power switch of the host machine is turned off and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

■ Installing the Punch Unit

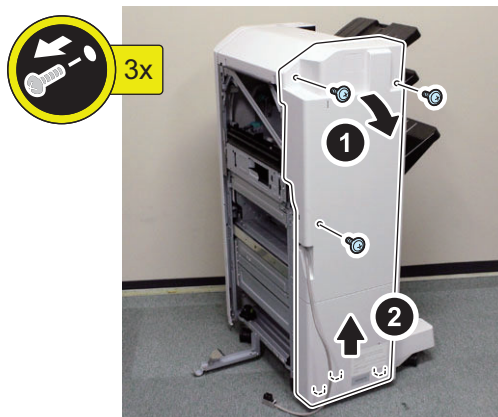


1. Open the Front Cover of the Finisher.



2. Remove the Rear Cover of the Finisher.

- 3 Screws
- 3 Claws



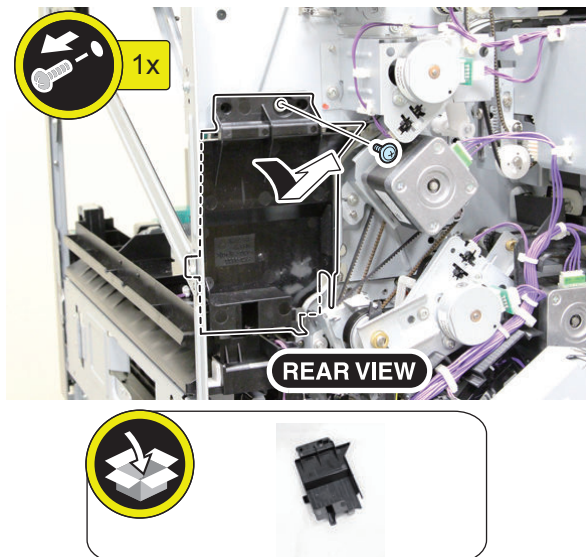


3. Remove the Rear Inner Cover.

- 1 Screw

NOTE:

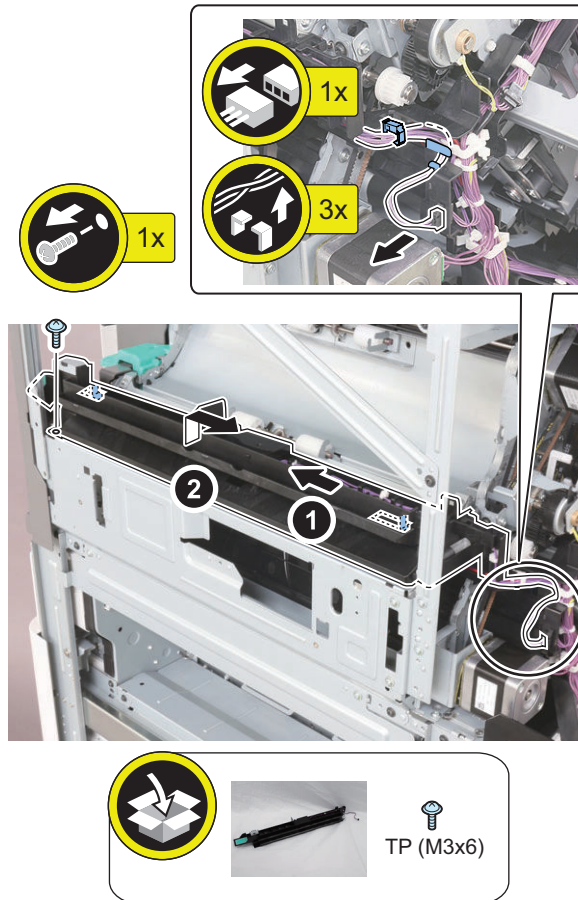
Removed screw is used in the procedure later.





4. Remove the Inlet Feed Guide.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Connector
- 1 Wire saddle
- 2 Harness guides



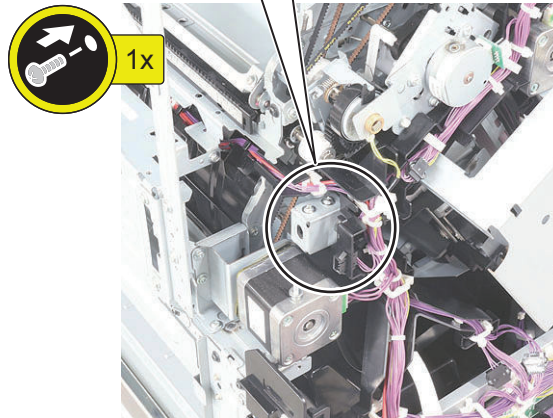
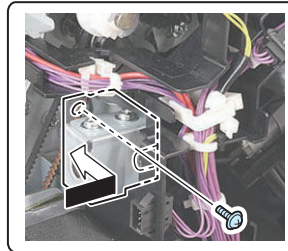


5. Install the Punch Unit Fixing Pin Holder.

- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)

NOTE:

Use the screw removed in Unpacking Procedure.



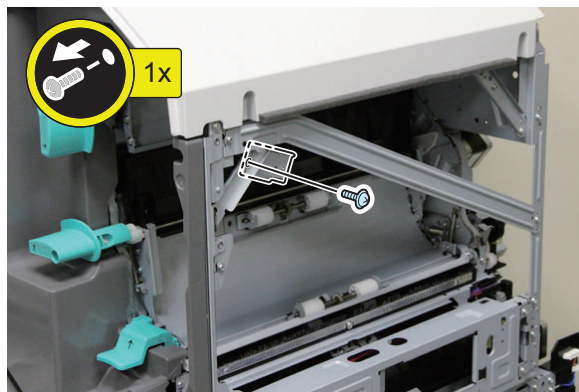


6. Remove the Magnet Unit.

- 1 Screw

NOTE:

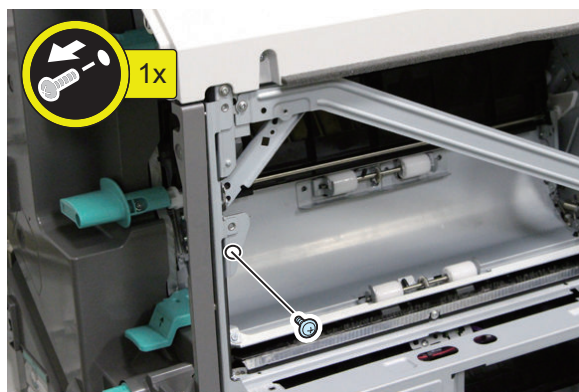
Removed screw is used in the procedure later.



7. Remove a Screw.

NOTE:

Removed screw is used in the procedure later.



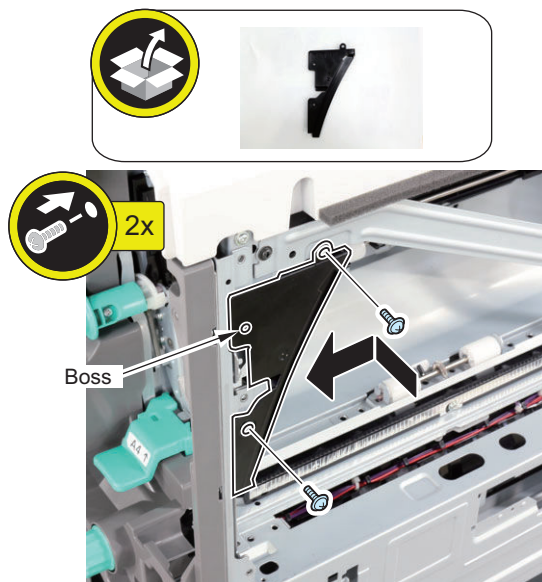


8. Install the Punch Unit Open/Close Guide.

- 2 Screws (TP ; M3x6)
- 1 Boss

NOTE:

Use screws removed in steps 6 and 7.



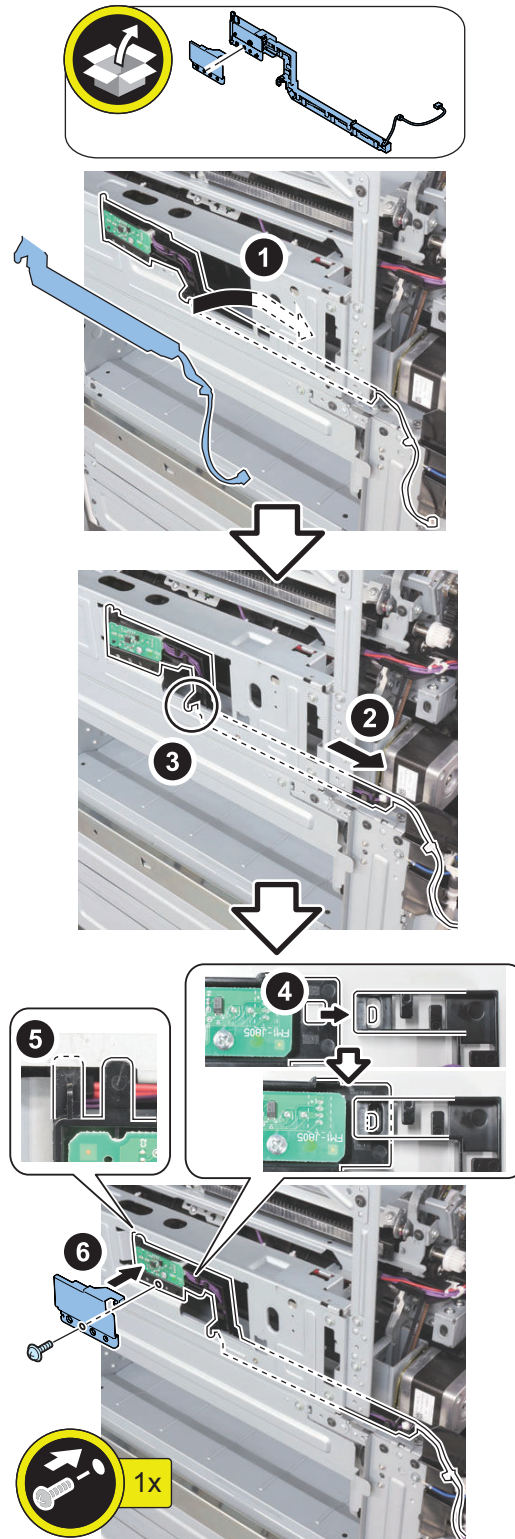


9. Install the Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit.

- 3 Hooks
- Sensor Cover
- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)

NOTE:

Use the screw removed in Unpacking Procedure.

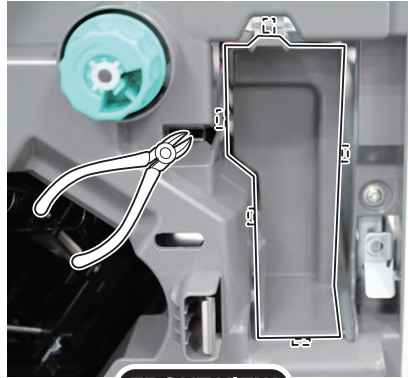




10. Cut out the face cover of the Inner Cover by using the side cutters.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the face cover properly so that no burr is formed.

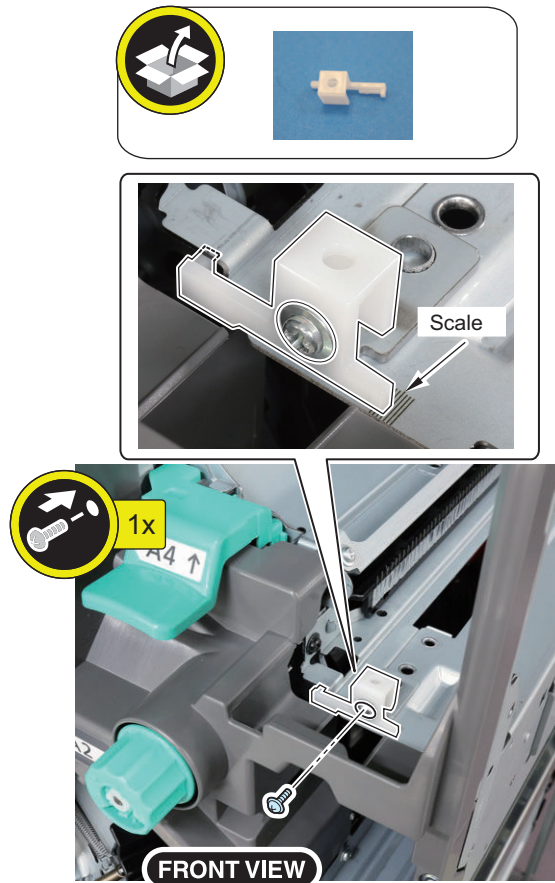


**11. Install the Punch Unit Positioning Guide so that the right edge of the guide can match the center of scale.**

- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)

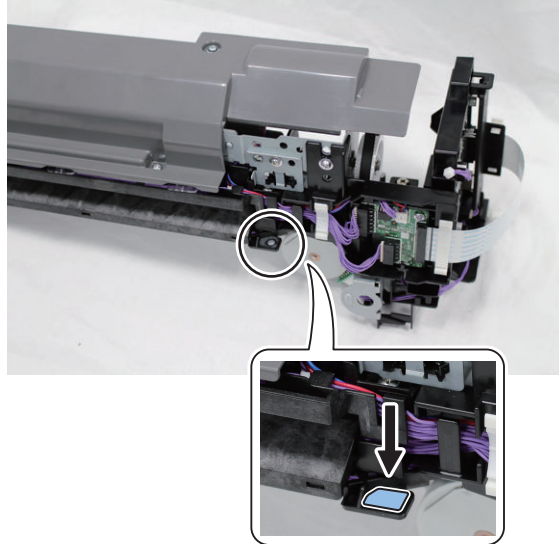
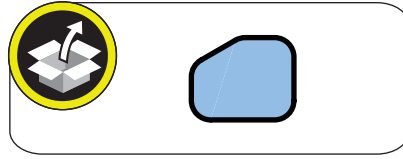
NOTE:

Use the screw removed in Unpacking Procedure.





12. Affix the Face Seal to the Punch Unit.

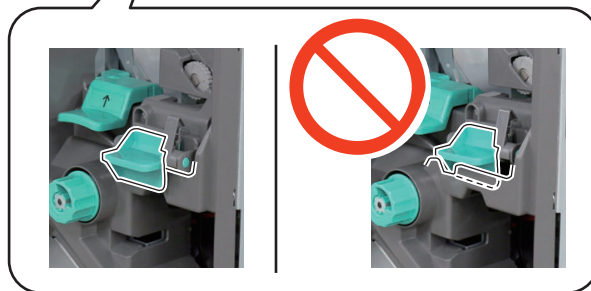
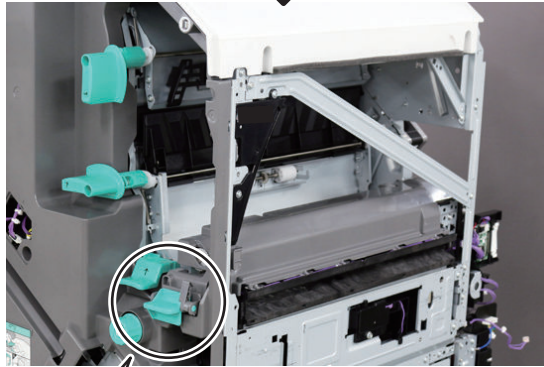
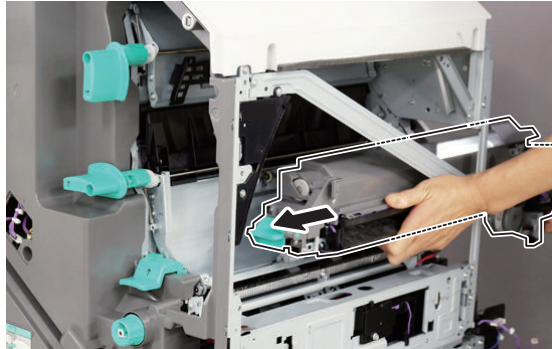
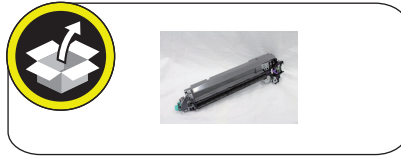


□

13. Install the Punch Unit from the back of the Finisher as shown in the figure.

CAUTION:

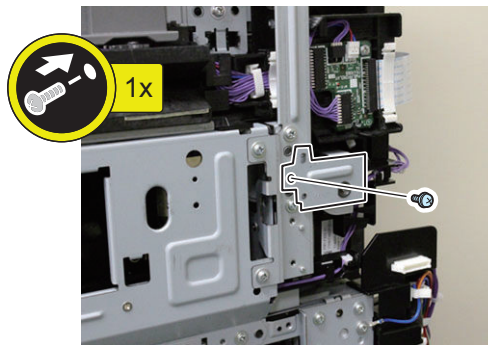
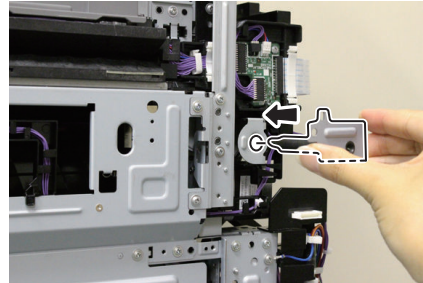
When having the Punch Unit, be careful not to have the PCB unit and its surrounding area.





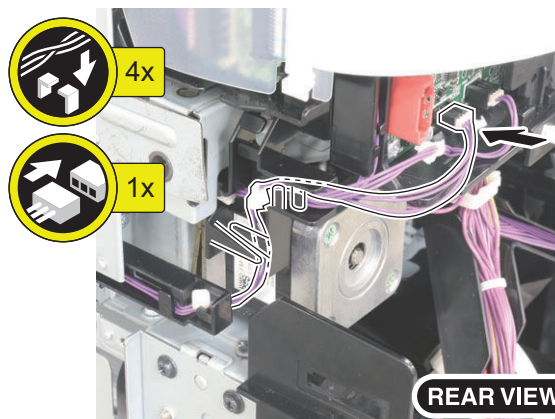
14. Install the Punch Unit Fixing Pin.

- 1 Screw (W Sems ; M3x6)



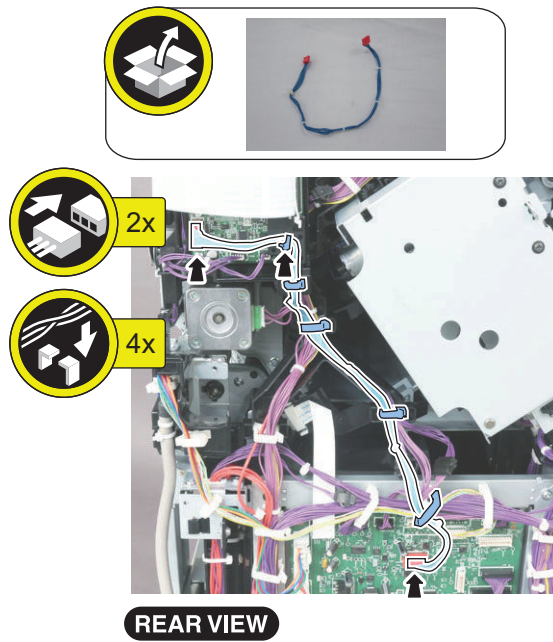
15. Connect the connector of the Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit to the Punch Unit.

- 4 Cable guides
- 1 Connector



**16. Connect the Relay Harness as shown in the figure.**

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Reuse band
- 4 Wire saddles



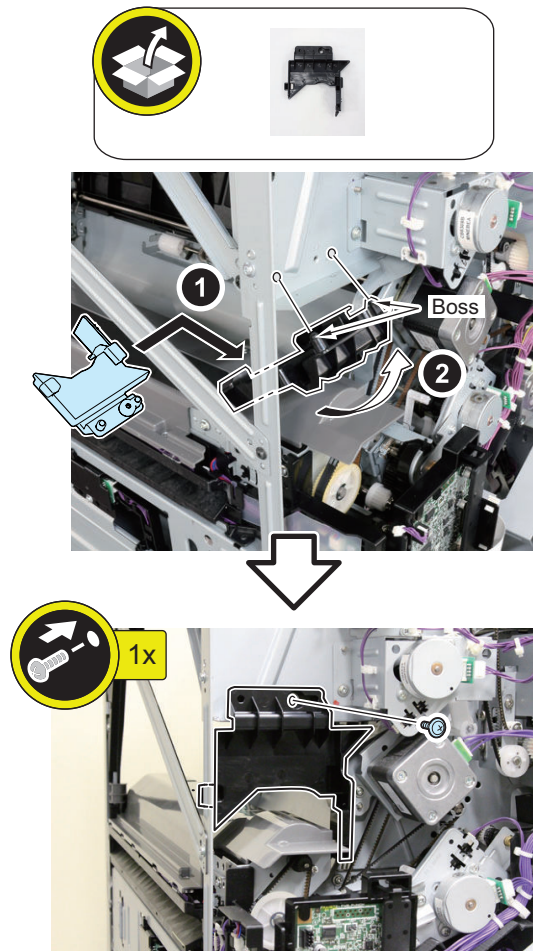


17. Install the Rear Inner Cover (small).

- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)
- 2 Bosses

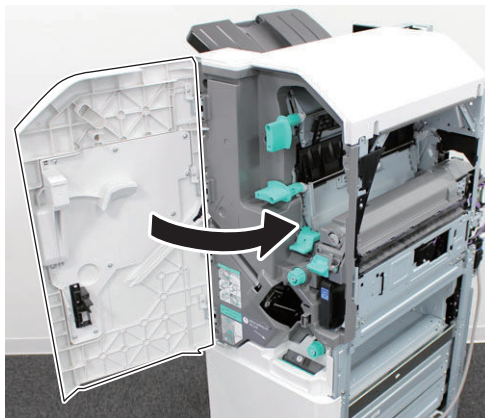
NOTE:

Use the screw removed in step 3.

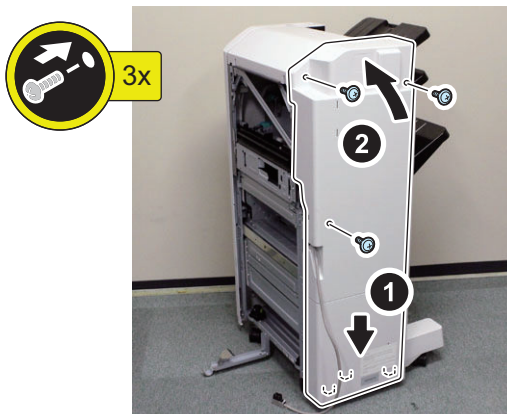


18. Insert the Punch Waste Tray in the direction of the arrow from the front.



**19. Close the Front Cover of the Finisher.****20. Install the Rear Cover of the Finisher.**

- 3 Screws
- 3 Claws

**21. Refer to the installation procedure of the Finisher to Install the Finisher in the Upstream Connection Machine.**

Disposal Parts Check

1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- [1] Inlet Feed Guide 1pc.
- [2] Rear Inner Cover 1pc.
- [3] Magnet Unit 1pc.
- [4] Screw (TP ; M3x6) 1pc.
- [5] Punch Cover (Front) 1pc.
- [6] Face Cover 1pc.

Operation Check

**1. Turn ON the main power of the Host Machine.**

-
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this Equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the Host Machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

(Level2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

-
3. Check the operation such as paper feed and punch operation to make sure that problems such as a jam or malfunction do not occur.

NOTE:

If the punch hole position of this Equipment needs to be adjusted, go to the "Checking and Adjusting the Punch Hole Position".

Adjusting the Output Level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor

After installing this Equipment, adjust the output level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor as follows.

-
1. Select the following item in the Service Mode and then press the OK button on the screen.
Service Mode (Level1) > SORTER > FUNCTION > FN-SENS2

-
2. When completing the output level adjustment successfully, the "OK" is indicated on the screen.

NOTE:

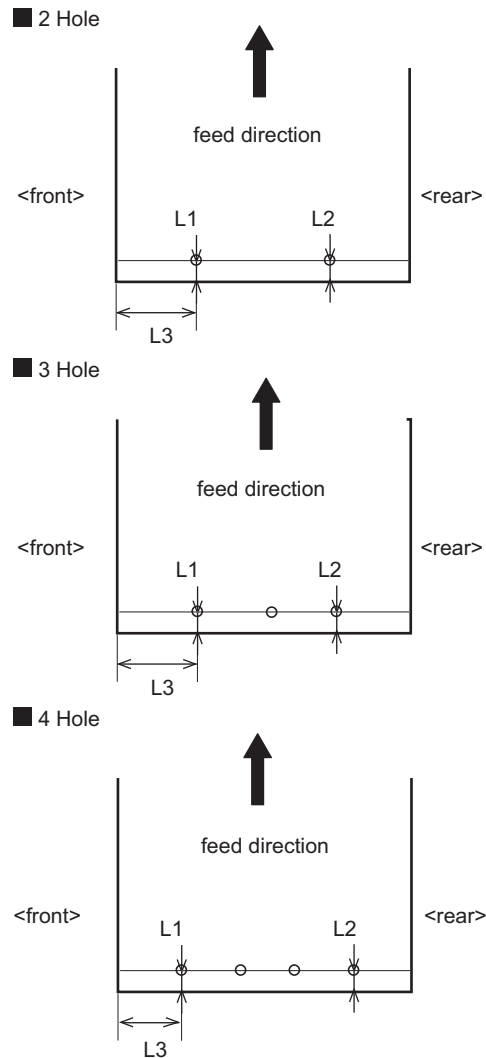
If the "NG" is indicated on the screen at the step 2, retry the adjustment by repeating the step 1. If the "NG" is indicated after retrying the adjustment, check whether there is not the malfunction in attachments and connections of the Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit and the surrounding area.

● Checking and Adjusting the Punch Hole Position

■ Checking the Punch Hole Position



1. Make a print with the punch mode and check whether the skew and side registration and the paper stop position are within the standard.



<Standard>

- 2/3 Hole Puncher Unit

L1 , L2	12 ± 1.5 mm
L3	2 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 73 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTRR) 3 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 31.5 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR) • 40.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4)

- 2/4 Hole Puncher Unit

L1 , L2	12 ± 1.5 mm
L3	2 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 108.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4) • 99.7 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR) 4 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 28.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4) • 19.7 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR)

- 4 Hole Puncher Unit

L1 , L2	12 ± 1.5 mm
L3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 92.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4) • 83.7 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR)

■ Skew Adjustment (Mechanical adjustment)

When the punch hole position is skew (when L1 is not equal to L2), make the adjustment according to the following procedure.

● Adjustment Procedure

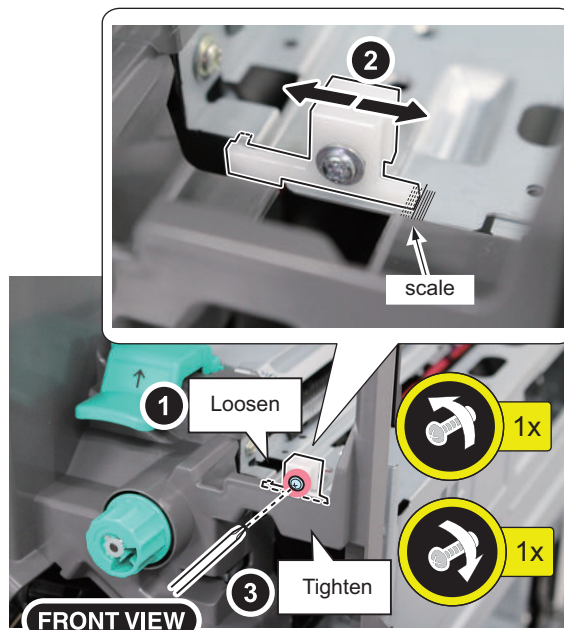


1. Open the Front Cover of the Finisher.

-
2. Lift the Punch Unit. Loosen the screw fixing the Punch Unit Positioning Guide, and then move the guide to adjust by referring the scale. After adjusting, tighten the screw.

NOTE:

When $L1 > L2$: Move the guide to the right.
 When $L1 < L2$: Move the guide to the left.



-
3. Lower the Punch Unit, and then close the Front Cover of the Finisher.

■ Side Registration Adjustment (Service mode adjustment)

When the side registration is not within the standard (when $L3$ is not within the standard), make the adjustment according to the following procedure.

-
1. Enter the following service mode to adjust the side registration.
 Service Mode (Level 1) > SORTER > ADJUST > PNCH-Y

NOTE:

When the setting value is increased by 1, $L3$ increases by 0.1mm.
 +: $L3$ increases. (The punch holes shift to the rear.)
 -: $L3$ decreases. (The punch holes shift to the front.)

-
2. Exit the service mode.

■ Paper Stop Position Adjustment (Service mode adjustment)



1. Enter the following service mode to adjust the paper stop position.

Service Mode (Level 1) > SORTER > ADJUST > PNCH-X

NOTE:

When the setting value is increased by 1, L1 and L2 increase by 0.1mm.

+: L1 and L2 increase. (The punch holes shift to the delivery direction.)

-: L1 and L2 decrease. (The punch holes shift to the inlet direction.)

-Settings/ Registration menu> Adjustment/ Maintenance> Adjust Action> Switch Finisher Puncher Mode



2. Exit the service mode.

Booklet Trimmer-F1

Pre-checks

Points to Note When Moving This Equipment

CAUTION:

- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
- When unpacking and moving this equipment, be sure to do so by pushing it from the side to which paper is delivered. Do not push it from the side to which the finisher is connected.



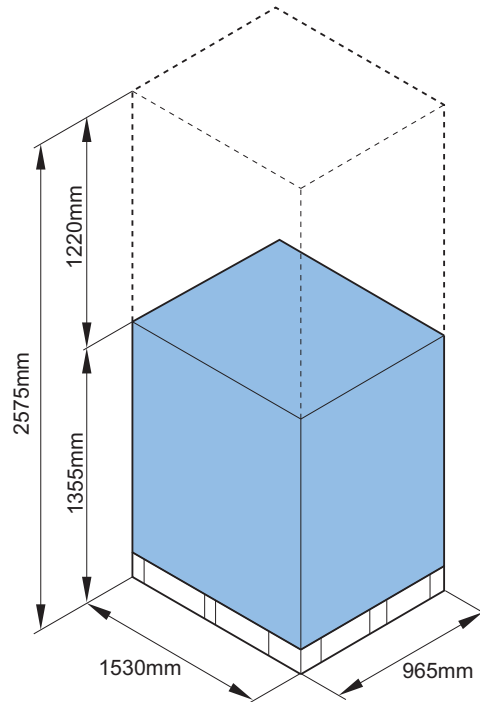
Selecting the Installation Site

- Refer to the "Checking the Installation Space" for the details of the space required to perform maintenance work.
 - Safety Precautions > Points to Note at Installation > Checking the Installation Space
- For emergency shutdown, be sure to secure 1,000 mm or more space on the sides and rear of the host machine.
- Be sure to install the finisher and the Booklet Trimmer on a level floor with no difference in height. Difference in height or level will cause paper feed failure.

Checking the Unpacking Space

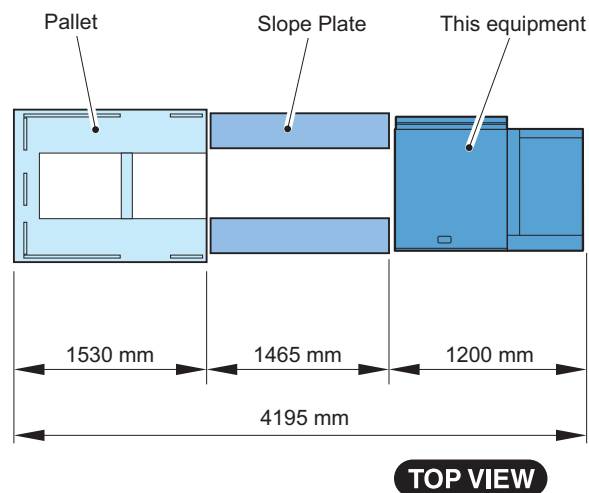
The dimensions shown in the figure below are the minimum space required. Thus it is desirable to secure more space for the work than shown in the figure below.

1. When unpacking in a room, the following space is required to remove the packaging box.



2. The following space is needed when the equipment is unloaded from the pallet:

- Pallet
- Slope Plate
- This equipment



Unpacking

NOTE:

The machine is shipped by being secured with tapes and cushioning materials, etc. to protect it from vibrations and impact during transportation.

Be sure to remove all the tapes and cushioning materials according to the procedure before installing the equipment. In addition, it is recommended to keep the removed cushioning materials as they will be used to transport this equipment for relocation or repair.



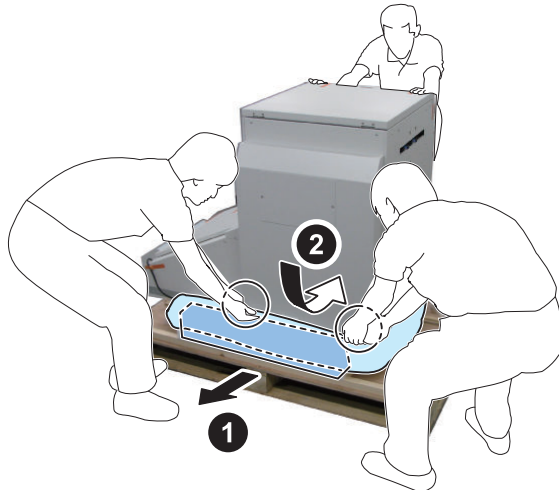
1. Remove the packaging box.
2. Cut the band, and bring down the included box from the pallet.



3. Pull down the plastic bag and the plastic wrap.



4. Lift the positions on the rear side as shown in the figure, remove the packaging materials to move the plastic bag toward the center, and then slowly lift down the equipment.



5. Remove the cardboard attached to the front.





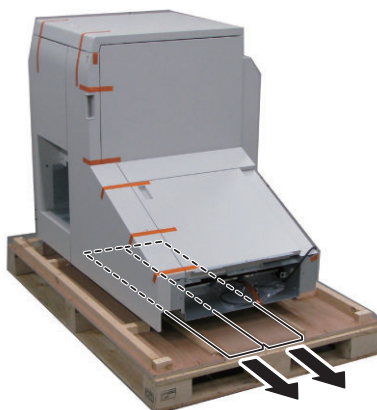
6. Remove the waste box.



7. Lift the positions on the front side as shown in the figure, remove the packaging materials and the plastic bag, and then slowly bring down the equipment.



8. Pull out the 2 Slope Plates stored in the pallet.

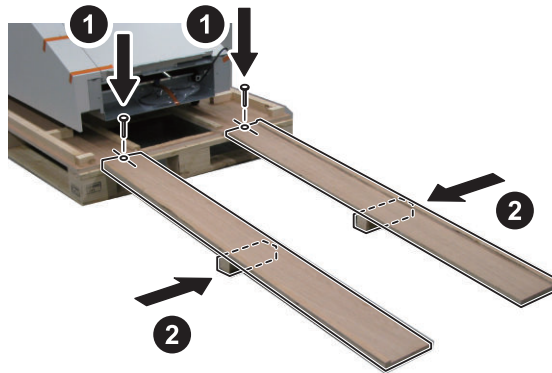


9. Remove the 2 pins and the blocks that are taped to the pallet.

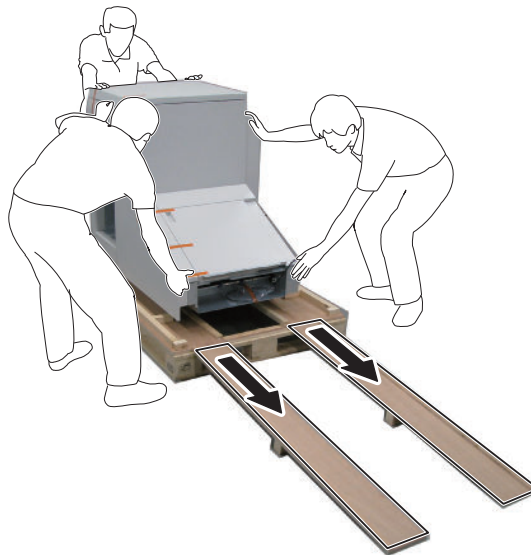


10. Align the pin holes in the pallet with those in the Slope Plates to insert the 2 pins.

11. Place the 2 reinforcement blocks under the Slope Plates.



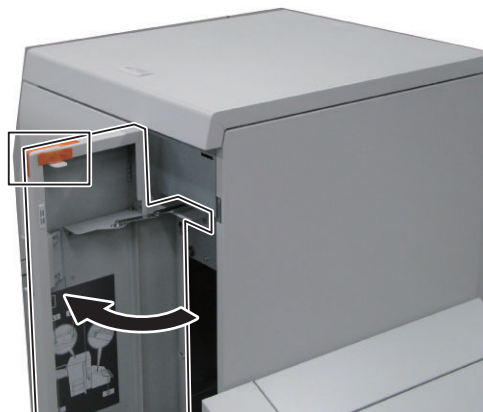
12. While supporting the equipment from its front side, slowly move it down on the Slope Plate.



13. Remove the external tapes.



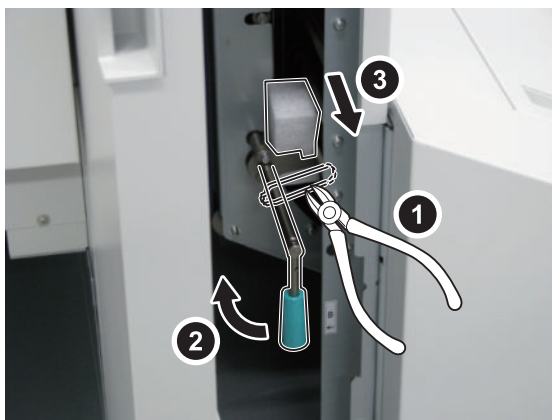
14. Open the Front Cover, and remove the tapes.





15. Cut the Harness Band securing the lever.

16. Open the lever, and remove the packaging materials.



17. Return the lever to the original position.

18. Close the Front Cover.



19. Open the Upper Cover, and remove the tapes.



20. Close the Upper Cover.

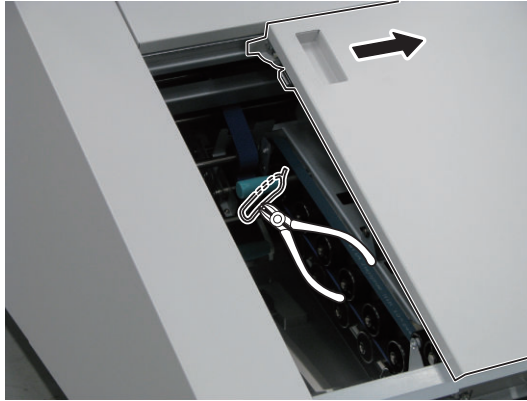


21. Pull out the cable, and remove the plastic material.





22. Open the Slide Cover, and cut the Harness Band securing the lever.



23. Close the Slide Cover.

Checking the Contents

NOTE:

- [3] Conveyer Stack Retainer Unit : Not used when the Two-Knife Booklet Trimmer is installed at the same time.
- [9] Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8) : Two of the 14 screws are taped to the Receiver Unit.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Booklet Trimmer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Receiver Unit / Conveyer Base X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Conveyer Stack Retainer Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Positioning Fixture A X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Positioning Fixture B X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Plug Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Caster Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Wire Saddle X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) X 14 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (Binding; M4x8) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Power Supply Cord X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Spanner (13 mm) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] L-wrench (6 mm) X 1 			

<Others>

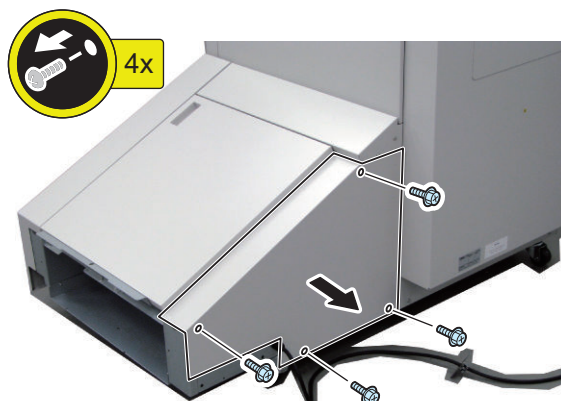
- Including guides

● Installation Procedure

■ Preparing for Installation on the Booklet Trimmer Side

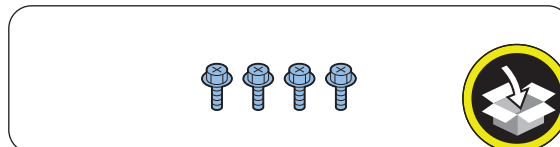
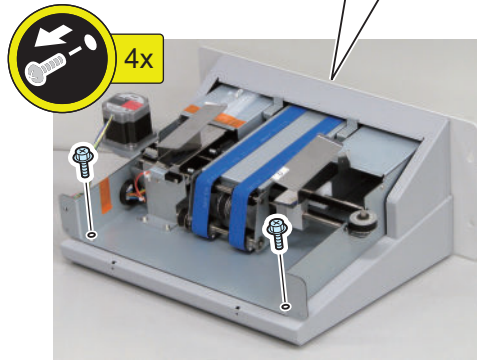
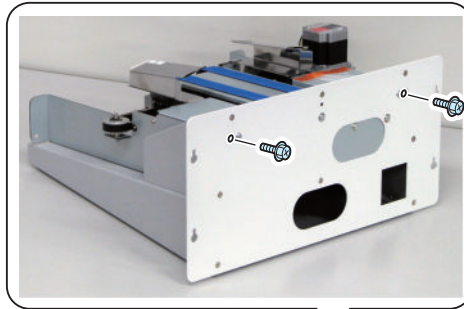
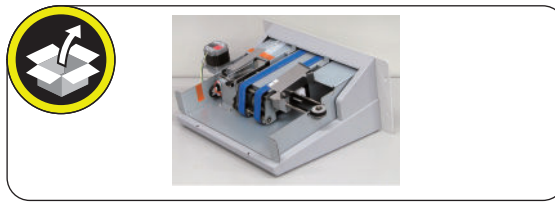
1. Remove the Rear Left Cover.

- 4 Screws



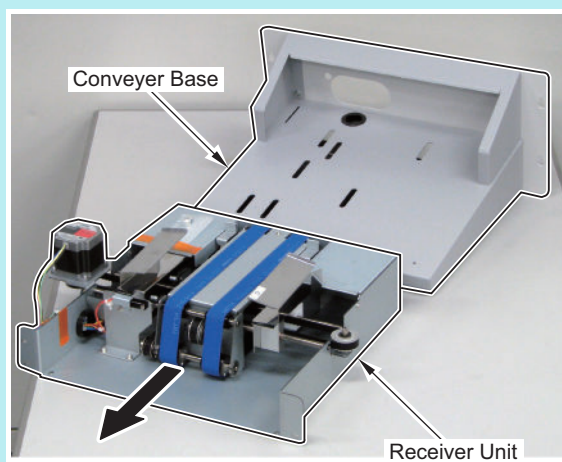
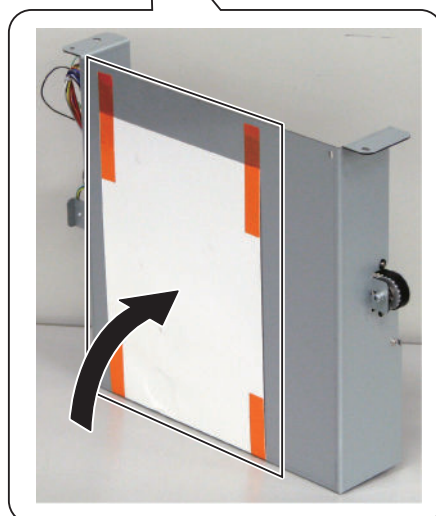
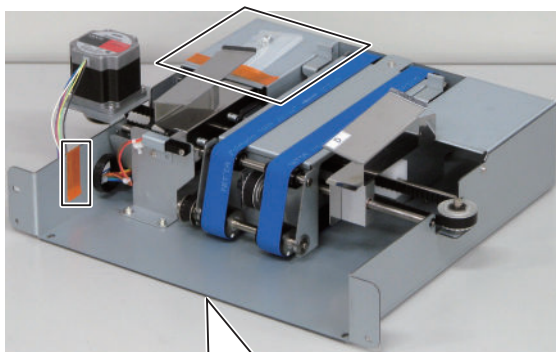
2. Remove the packaging material of the Receiver Unit/Conveyer Base.

3. Remove the 4 screws of the Receiver Unit/Conveyer Base (The removed screws will not be used).

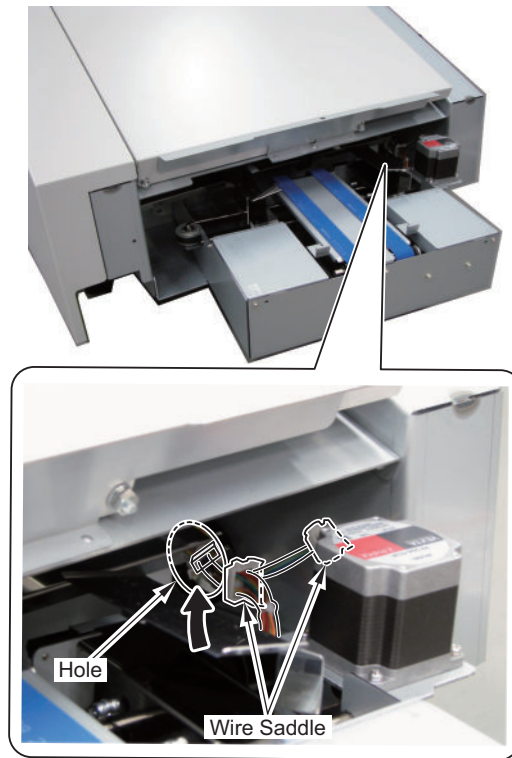


**4. Remove the Receiver Unit from the Conveyer Base.****NOTE:**

- The Conveyer Base is not used when the Two-Knife Booklet Trimmer is installed at the same time.
- The Conveyer Base is used in "Installing the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit" when the Two-Knife Booklet Trimmer is not installed.

**5. Remove the tapes securing the 2 screws from the Receiver Unit.****6. Remove all the tapes securing the cables and the Protection Sheets.**

-
7. Mount the Receiver Unit onto the Booklet Trimmer, secure the cables in place using the 2 Wire Saddles, and then put them through the hole on the side.

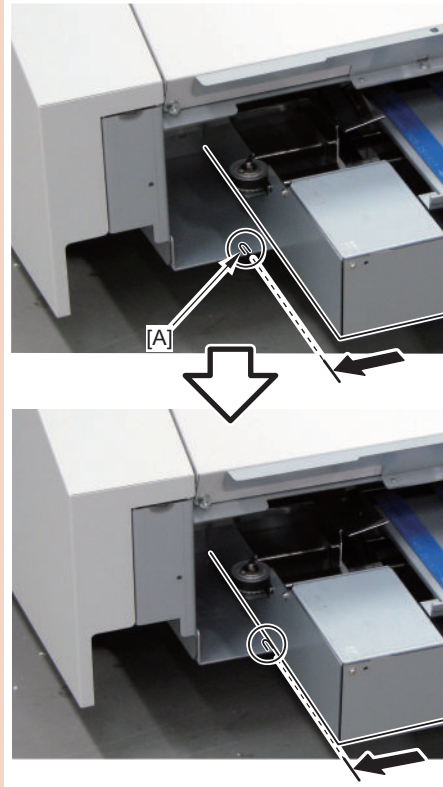


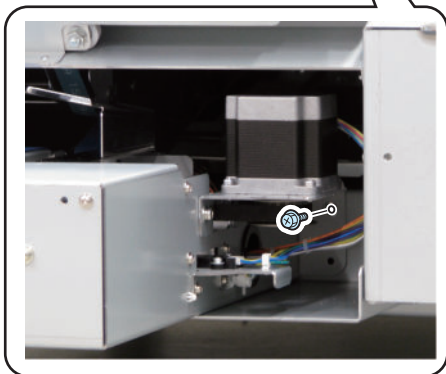
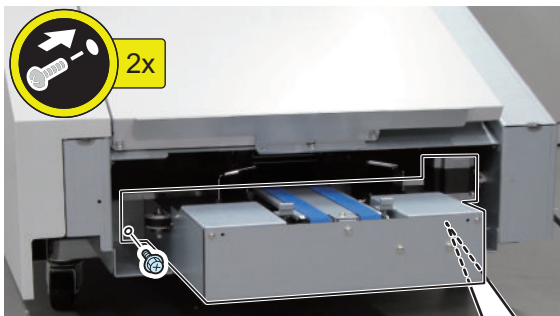
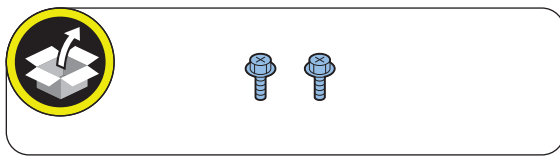
**8. Install the Receiver Unit.**

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

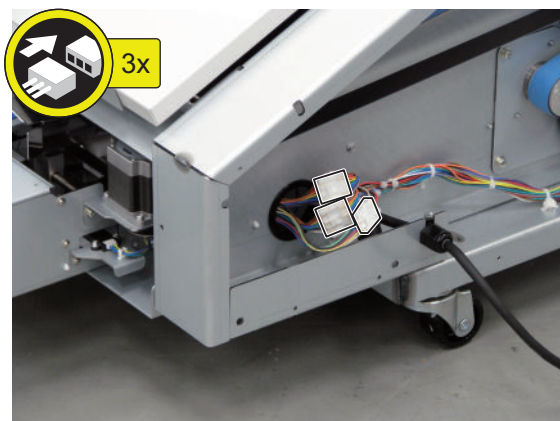
CAUTION:

When installing the Receiver Unit, be sure to align the right edge of the [A] part on the Booklet Trimmer's base plate with the edge of the Receiver Unit.





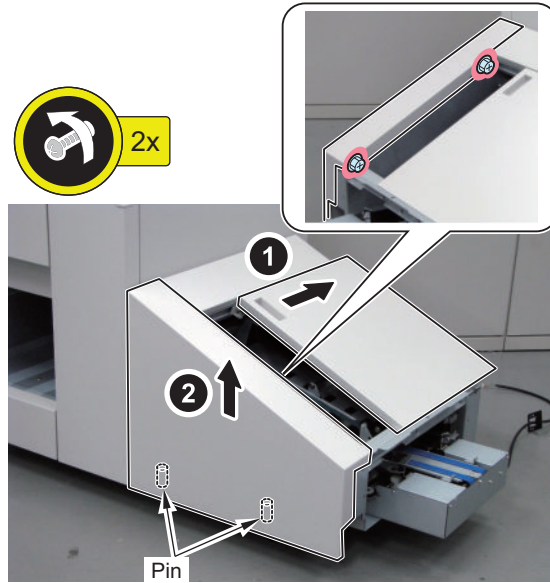
9. Connect the 3 connectors.



10. Open the Slide Cover.

11. Loosen the 2 screws, and remove the Front Right Cover.

- 2 Pins

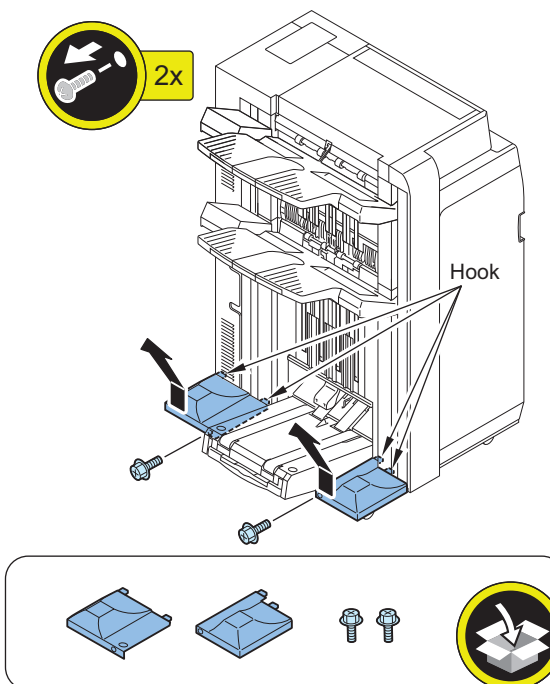


■ Preparing for Installation on the Finisher Side



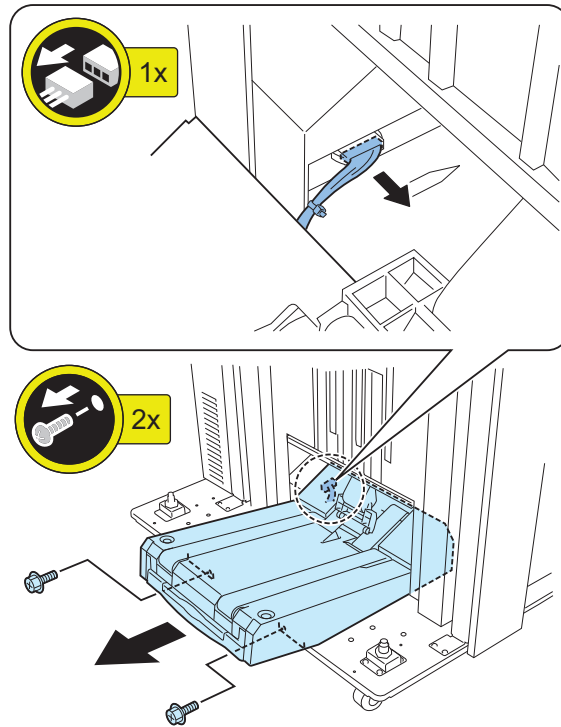
1. Remove the 2 Caster Covers. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 2 Screws
- 2 Hooks each



2. Remove the 2 screws, and pull out the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit.

3. Disconnect the connector, and remove the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit.

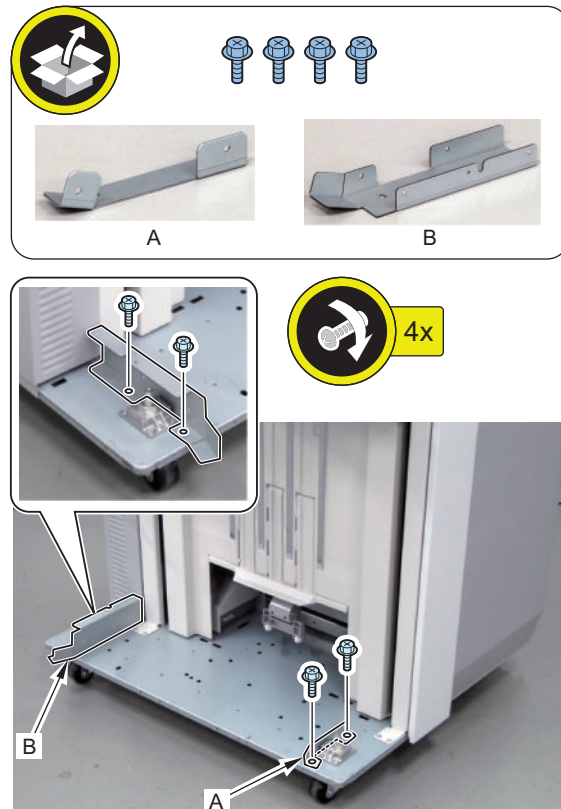


4. Install the Positioning Fixture A and the Positioning Fixture B.

- 4 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8) (to temporarily tighten)

NOTE:

Fully tighten the 4 screws after "Securing the Booklet Trimmer/Checking the Slant".



■ Adjusting the Height

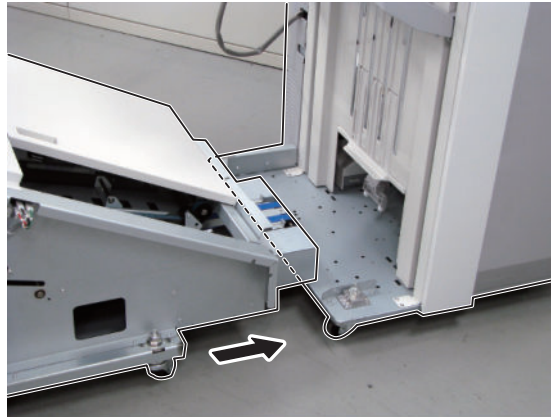
● Checking the Height

NOTE:

Depending on the condition of the floor of the installation site, the height of the Booklet Trimmer may need to be adjusted. If the height is not properly adjusted, trouble may occur such as frequent jam in the inlet of the Booklet Trimmer. Follow the procedure below to check the height, and adjust it if necessary.

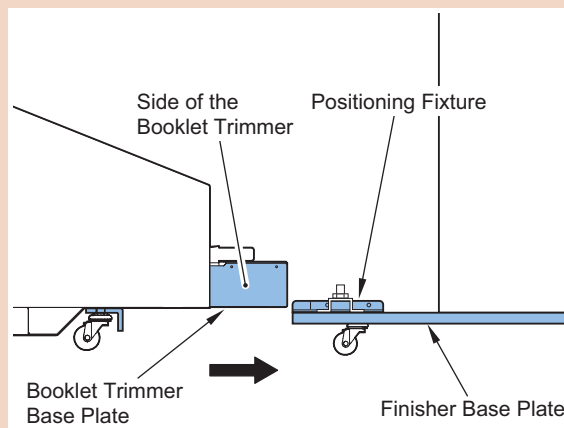


1. Move the Booklet Trimmer closer to the finisher in a way such that the Booklet Trimmer's Receiver Unit is over the base plate of the finisher.



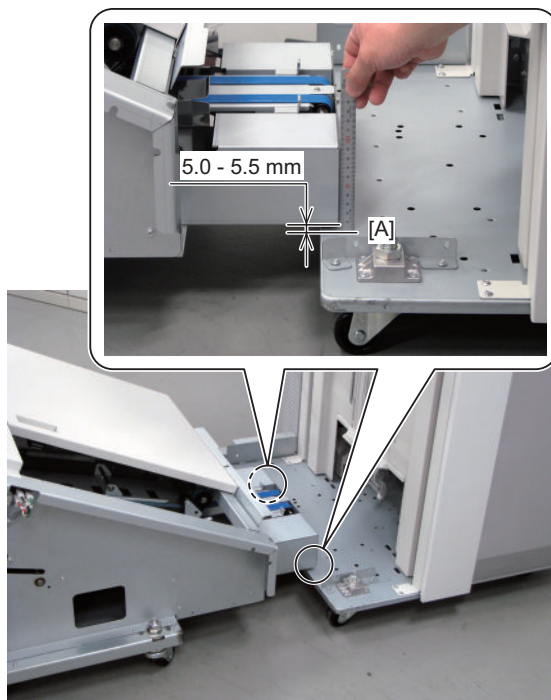
CAUTION:

Be sure to move the Booklet Trimmer closer to the finisher while ensuring that the base plate of the Booklet Trimmer does not hit the base plate of the finisher and that the side of the Booklet Trimmer does not hit the Positioning Fixture. When hitting with each other, be sure to raise the height of the Booklet Trimmer before moving it closer to the finisher.



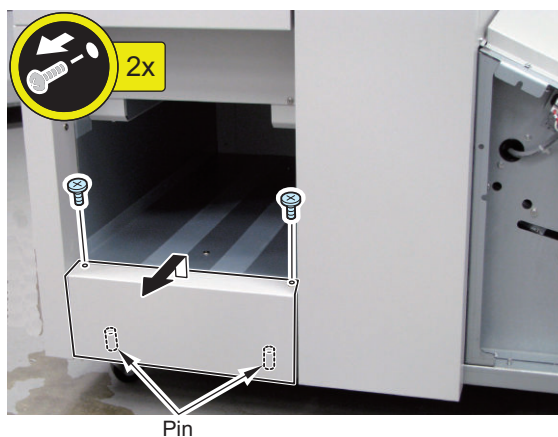


2. Check the 2 areas [A] on the front and the rear to see whether the gap between the base plates of the Booklet Trimmer and the finisher is between 5.0 mm and 5.5 mm.



3. Remove the Front Cover (Left Lower).

- 2 Screws
- 2 Pins





4. Store the included wrench (13 mm) and the L-wrench (6 mm) inside the Front Cover (Left Lower).

NOTE:

- If the height is correct, store the wrench and the L-wrench, and then install the Front Cover (Left Lower). (2 Screws)
- If the height needs to be adjusted, install the Front Cover (Left Lower) in step 8 of "Adjusting the Height".



5. If the height is correct, install the Front Cover (Left Lower) and then perform **"Securing the Booklet Trimmer/ Checking the Slant"** on page 843.

If the height needs to be adjusted, perform "Adjusting the Height".

• Adjusting the Height

When the height difference between the base plate of the Booklet Trimmer and the frame of the finisher is not between 5.0 mm and 5.5 mm, or when the Booklet Trimmer is not level, follow the procedure below to perform adjustment:

NOTE:

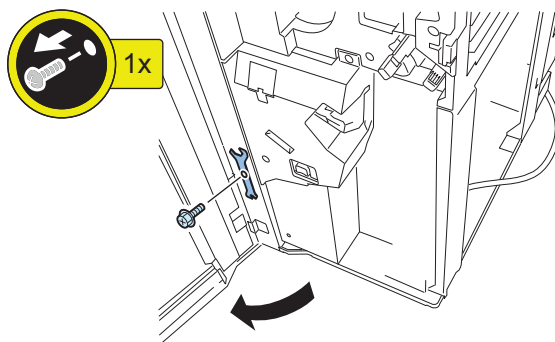
- When adjusting the height, use the wrench (24 mm) of the finisher.
- Adjust the height by adjusting the 4 casters shown in the figure.





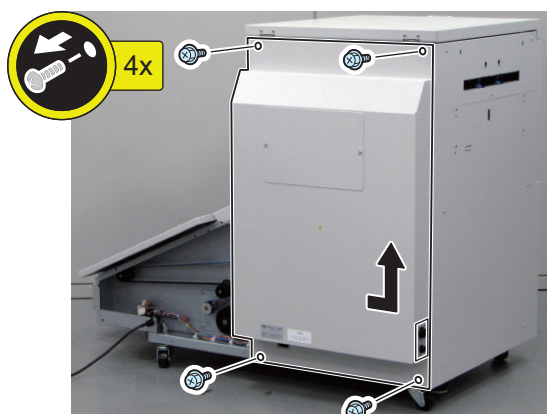
1. Open the Finisher Front Cover, and remove the wrench (24 mm).

- 1 Screw



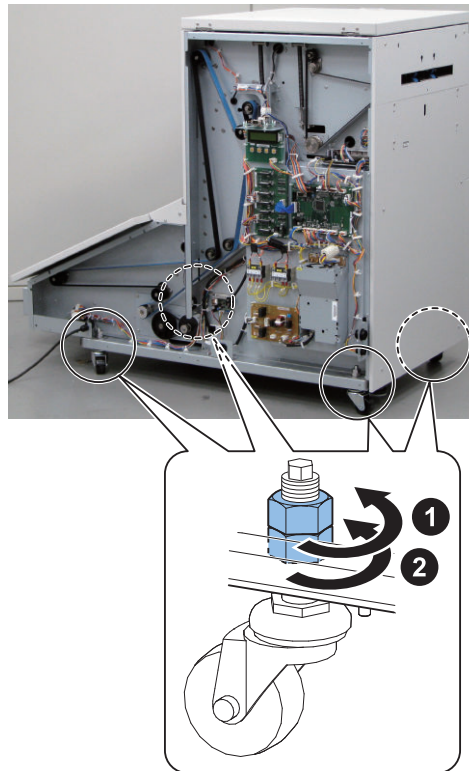
2. Remove the Rear Cover.

- 4 Screws

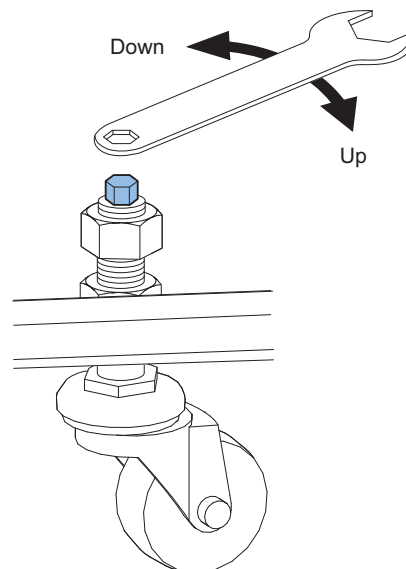




- Using the wrench (24 mm) of the Finisher, loosen the 2 Lock Nuts each of the 4 casters on the front and rear of the Booklet Trimmer.

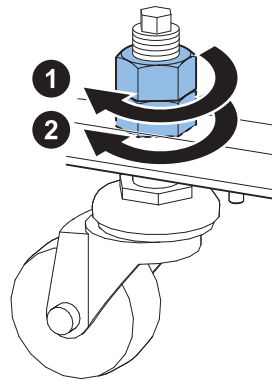


- Using the wrench (10 mm), turn the hexagonal shaft of the caster to adjust the height of the Booklet Trimmer.





5. Tighten the 2 Lock Nuts each.



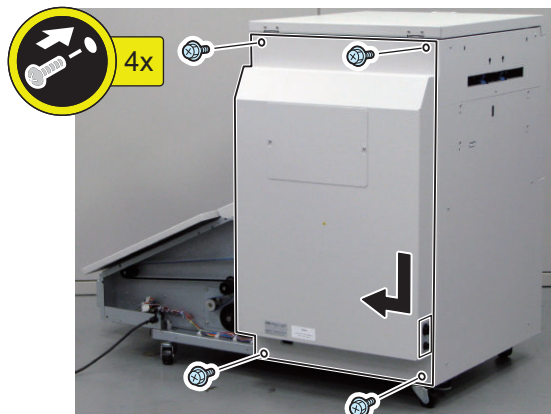
6. Check again whether the height difference between the Booklet Trimmer and the finisher is within the specified range.

If not, perform adjustment again.



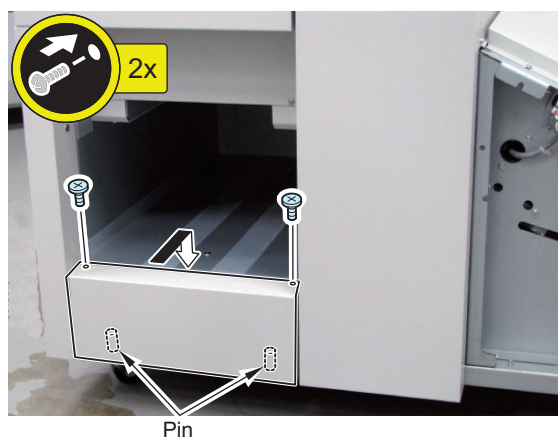
7. Install the Rear Cover.

- 4 Screws



8. Install the Front Cover (Left Lower).

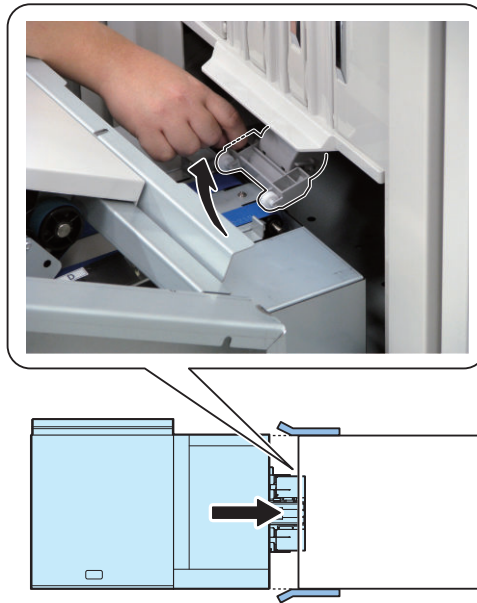
- 2 Pins
- 2 Screws



■ Securing the Booklet Trimmer/Checking the Slant

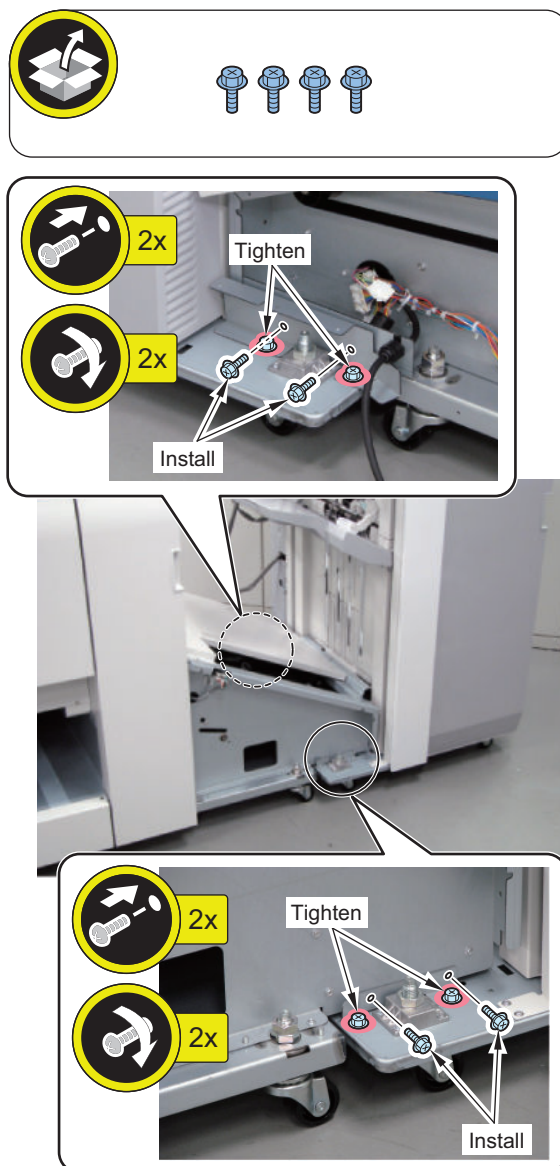


1. While lifting the Stack Retainer Guide, connect the Booklet Trimmer by fitting it along the inner sides of the 2 Positioning Fixtures installed to the finisher.

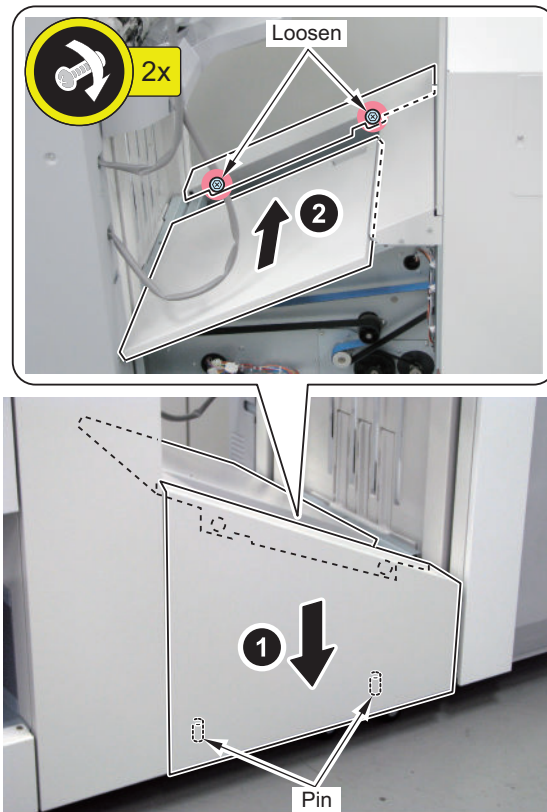


**2. Secure the Positioning Fixture A and the Positioning Fixture B.**

- 4 Screws (to tighten)
- 4 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

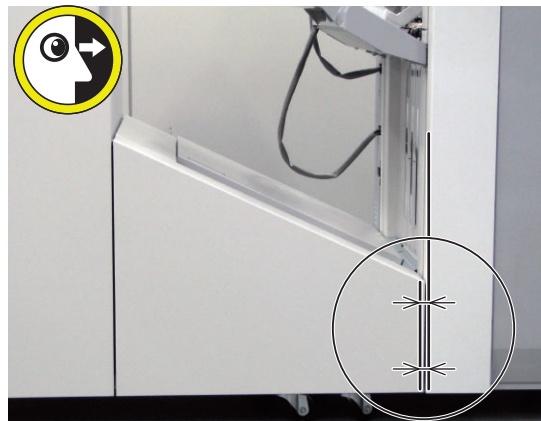
**3. Install the Front Right Cover, and tighten the 2 screws.**

4. Close the Slide Cover.

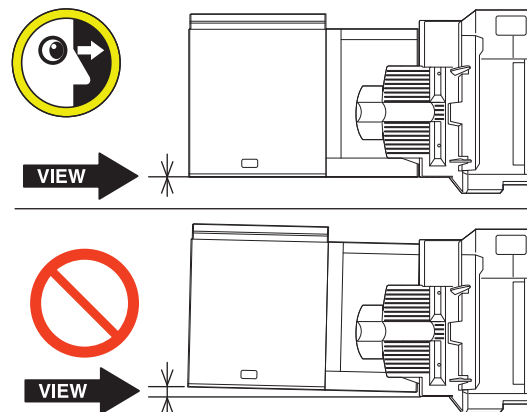


5. Check the slant of the following areas:

1. Measure the gap between the externals of the Booklet Trimmer and the finisher, and check that the gap from top to bottom is almost the same (parallel).



2. Check that the Front Covers of the Booklet Trimmer and the finisher are level when viewed from the left side.

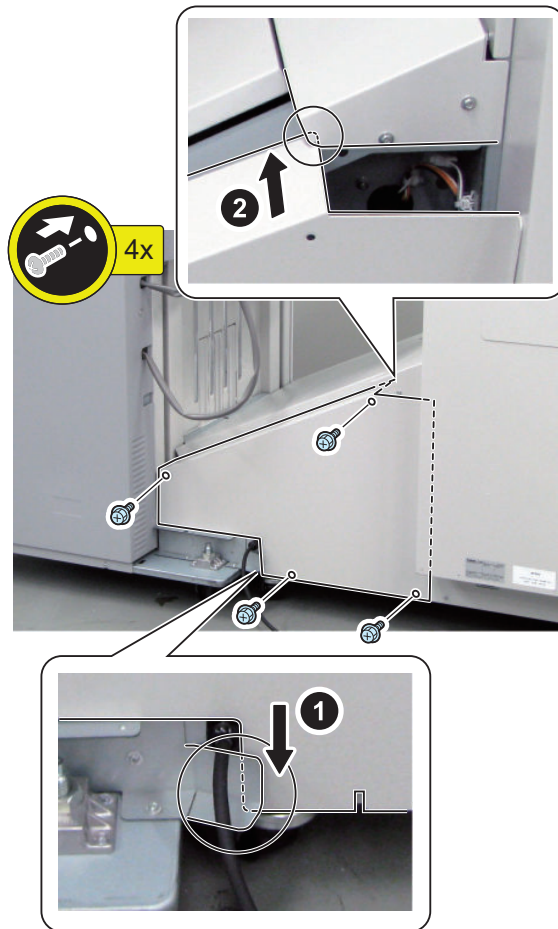


3. When the gap is not parallel, remove the cover of the position where adjustment is required, and adjust the gap by the 4 casters on the front and the rear (refer to "Adjusting the Height" on page 839 for the procedure).



6. Install the Rear Left Cover.

- 4 Screws



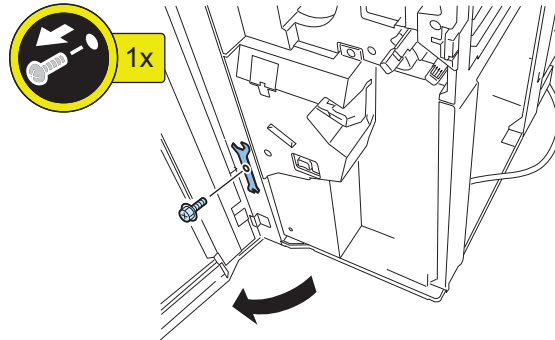
7. Put the waste box back.





8. If the wrench of the Finisher has not been removed, open the Front Cover of the Finisher and remove the wrench (24 mm).

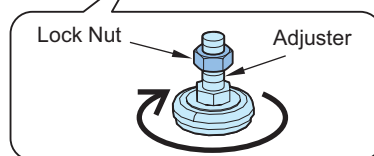
- 1 Screw



9. Loosen the Lock Nut, turn the adjuster by hand until the adjuster reaches the floor, and then tighten the Lock Nut.

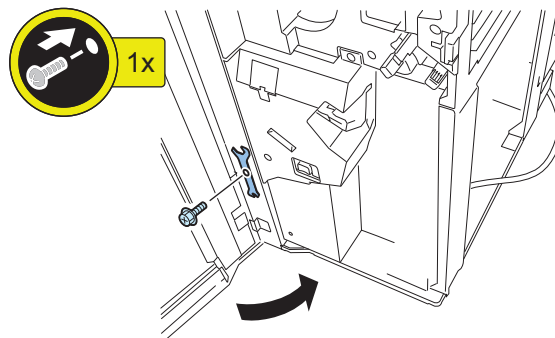
NOTE:

Securing of the adjuster is not for earthquake resistance.



10. Put the wrench back in the finisher, and close the Finisher Front Cover.

- 1 Screw





11. When installing the Two-Knife Booklet Trimmer at the same time: Proceed to “Connecting the Cable” on page 853.

When not installing the Two-Knife Booklet Trimmer: Proceed to "Installing the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit".

■ Installing the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit

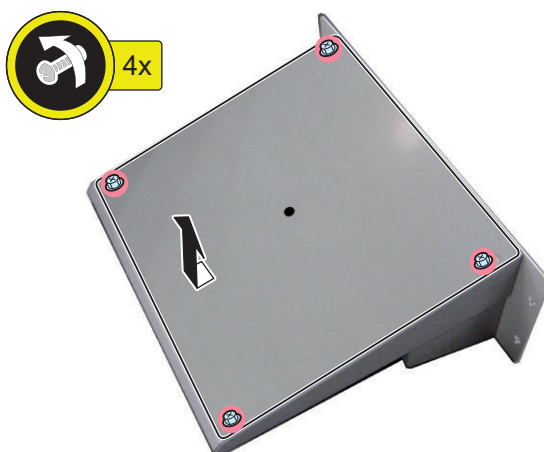
NOTE:

This procedure is not performed when the Two-Knife Booklet Trimmer is installed at the same time.

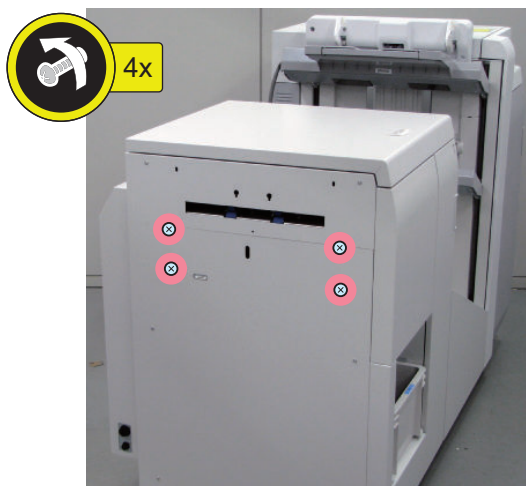


1. Remove the Lower Cover of the Conveyer Base.

- 4 Screws (to loosen)



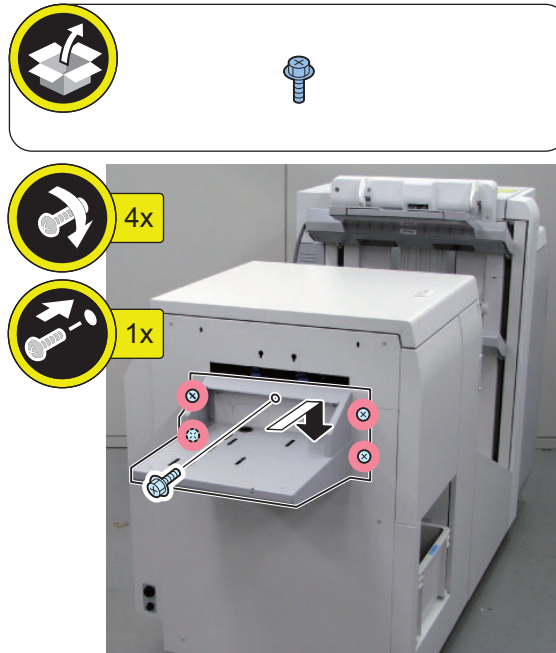
2. Loosen the 4 screws of the Booklet Trimmer.





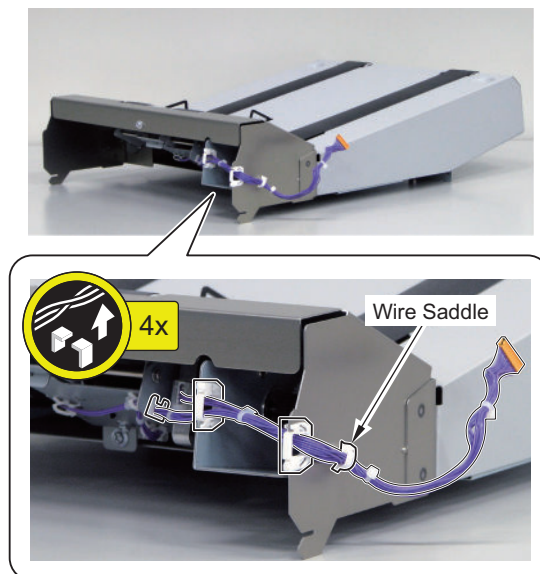
3. Hang the Conveyer Base on the loosened 4 screws to install it.

- 4 Screws (to tighten)
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)



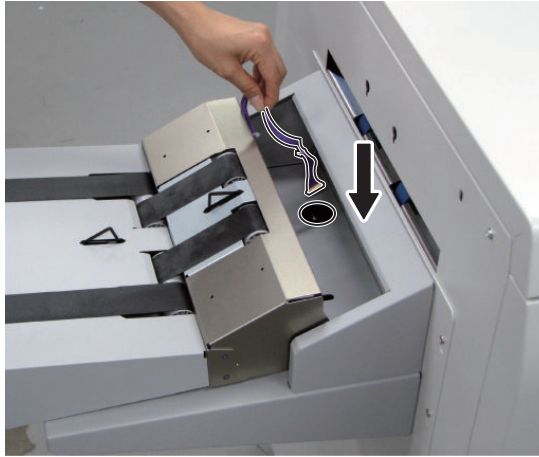
4. Disconnect the cable of the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit (close the Wire Saddle and the Edge Saddles).

- 1 Wire Saddle
- 3 Edge Saddles





5. Put the cable of the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit through the hole of the Conveyer Base.



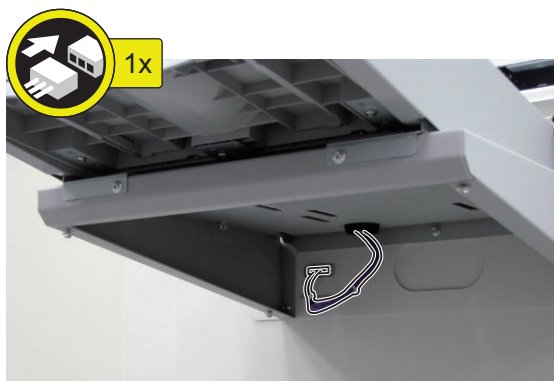
6. Install the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit.
• 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

NOTE:
Be careful not to trap the cable.

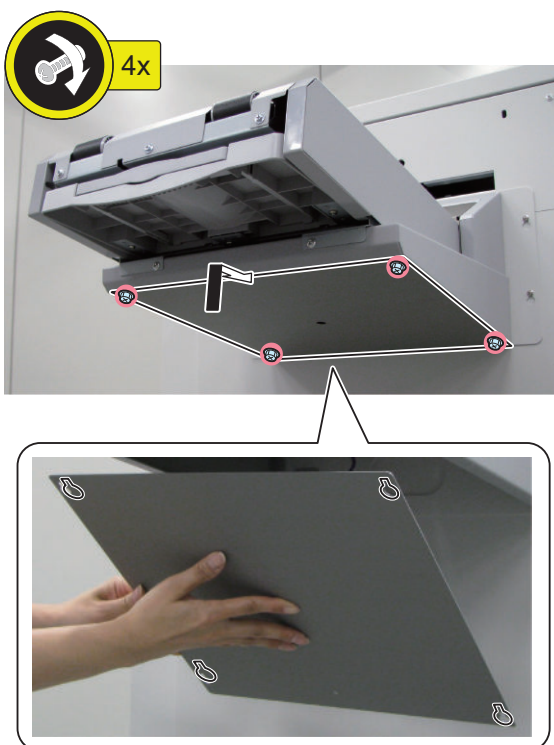


**7. Connect the cable of the Saddle Delivery Tray Unit to the Booklet Trimmer.****CAUTION:**

Do not forget to connect the cable as no error will occur even if the cable is disconnected.

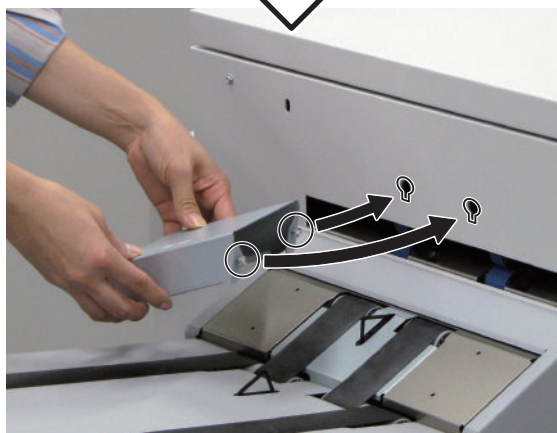
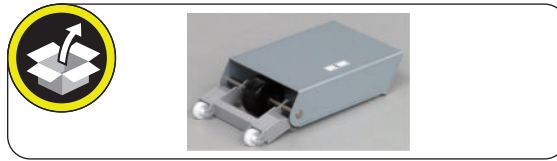
**8. Install the Lower Cover of the Conveyer Base.**

- 4 Screws (to tighten)

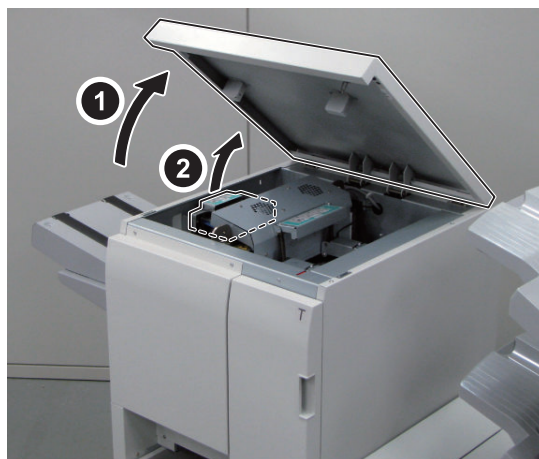




9. Loosen the 2 screws of the Conveyer Stack Retainer Unit, and hook them on the holes of the Booklet Trimmer.

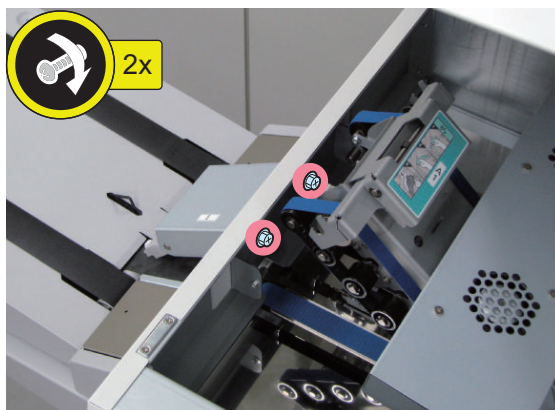


10. Open the Upper Cover, and raise the Trim Feed Upper Unit.





11. Tighten the 2 screws of the Conveyor Stack Retainer Unit.



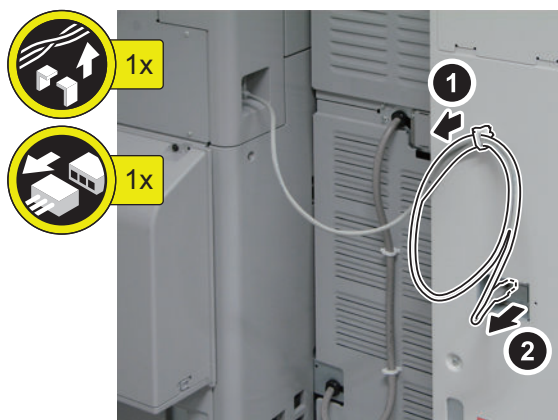
12. Lower the Trim Feed Upper Unit, and close the Upper Cover.

■ Connecting the Cable



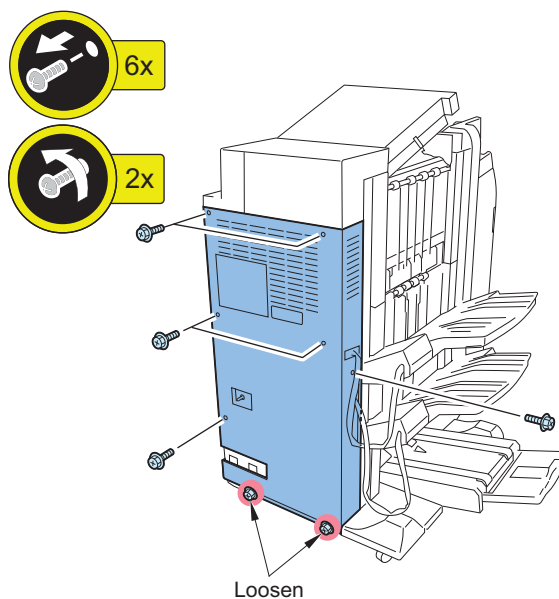
1. Disconnect the LAN Cable.

- 1 Wire Saddle



**2. Remove the Rear Cover of the finisher.**

- 6 Screws (to remove)
- 2 Screws (to loosen)

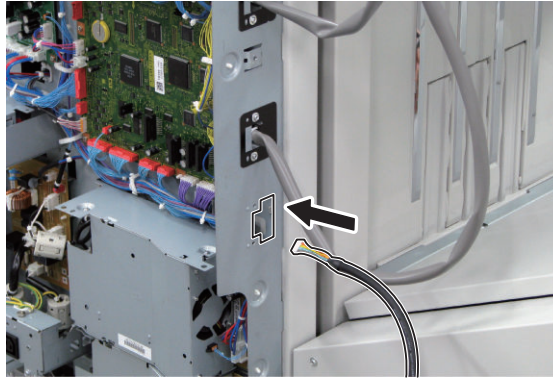
**3. Remove the Face Plate (The removed Face Plate will not be used).**

- 2 Screws (They will be used in step 5.)

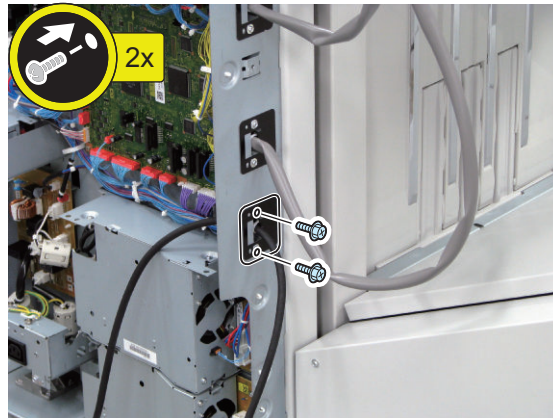




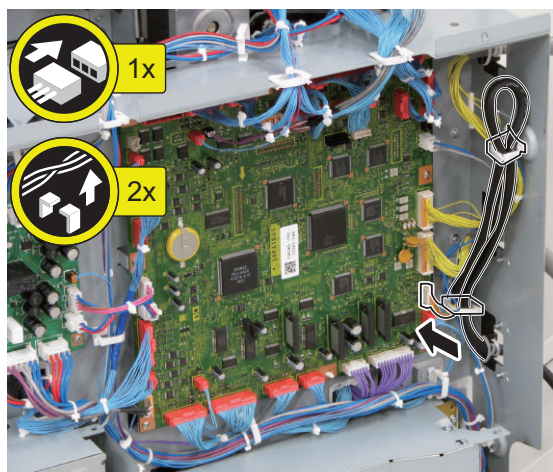
4. Put the Signal Cable of the Booklet Trimmer through the hole where the Face Plate was removed.



5. Install the Fixation Plate of the Signal Cable.
• 2 Screws (The screws removed in step 3)



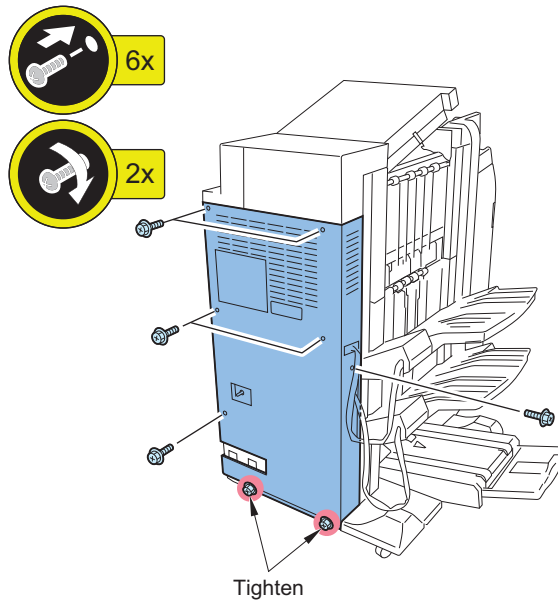
6. Connect the connector of the Signal Cable to J113 of the Finisher Controller PCB, and secure it in place using the 2 Wire Saddles.





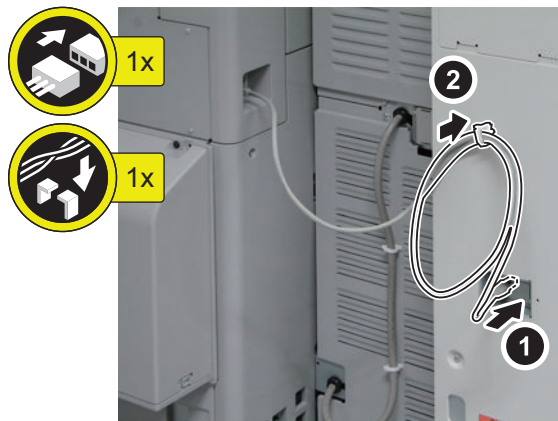
7. Install the Rear Cover of the finisher.

- 6 Screws (to install)
- 2 Screws (to loosen)



8. Connect the LAN Cable.

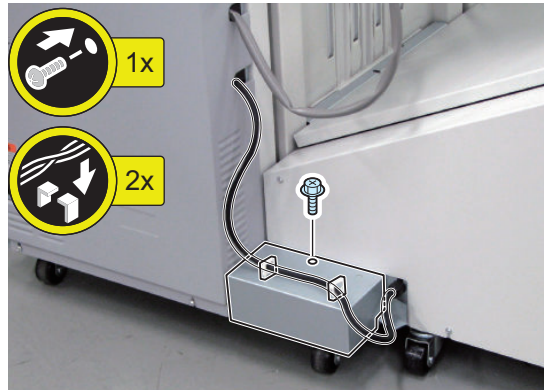
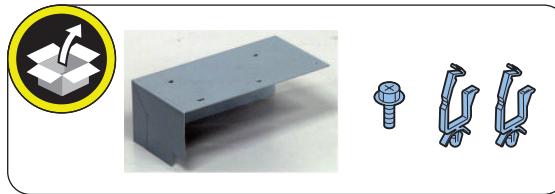
- 1 Wire Saddle



9. Install the Caster Cover.

- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)

10. Install the 2 Wire Saddles and secure the Signal Cable with them.



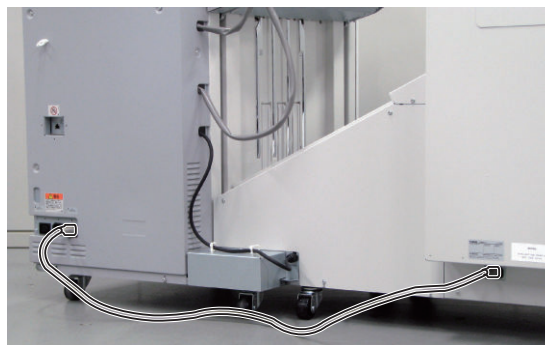
□

11. Connect the Power Supply Cord to the Booklet Trimmer and the finisher.

CAUTION:

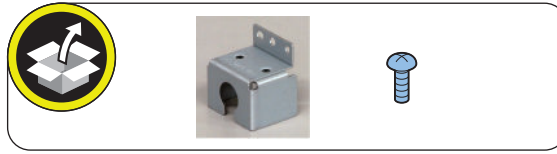
Check that the Power Supply Cord connector is securely inserted all the way into the outlet. In addition, ensure that the Plug Cover is securely installed.

If it is not connected properly, smoke, fire or other accident may occur.



**12. Install the Plug Cover.**

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x8)

**13. Connect the power plugs of the host machine and options to the outlets.****14. Turn ON the main power switch of the host machine.****15. Confirm that the firmware combination of the host machine and the Booklet Trimmer is appropriate.****16. Check the operations such as paper feed and trimming.**

Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1

Pre-checks

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F713300

Checking before Installation

- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- Be sure that the optional Accessory Interface Kit has been installed.
- When installing this equipment, purchase a Punch Die which is sold separately in advance.
- Prepare two wrenches (10mm and 24mm) to be used for height adjustment. Or, the wrench included in the package of the Finisher can be used.
- Before installing this equipment, check the firmware version of the host machine and this equipment. If the version is old, upgrade the version.
- The label shown below is attached to a location where connection of an Internet cable is prohibited. Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.



Check When Connecting the Power Plug to an Outlet

1. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
2. Be sure to install this equipment near an outlet so that the power plug can be disconnected right away in case of emergency, and do not put anything around the power plug.

Points to Note When Moving This Equipment

When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps.

If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Unpacking

CAUTION:

When installing this equipment, note the following points.

The host machine weighs maximum 102kg.

It is recommended to lift it with 4 people or more.

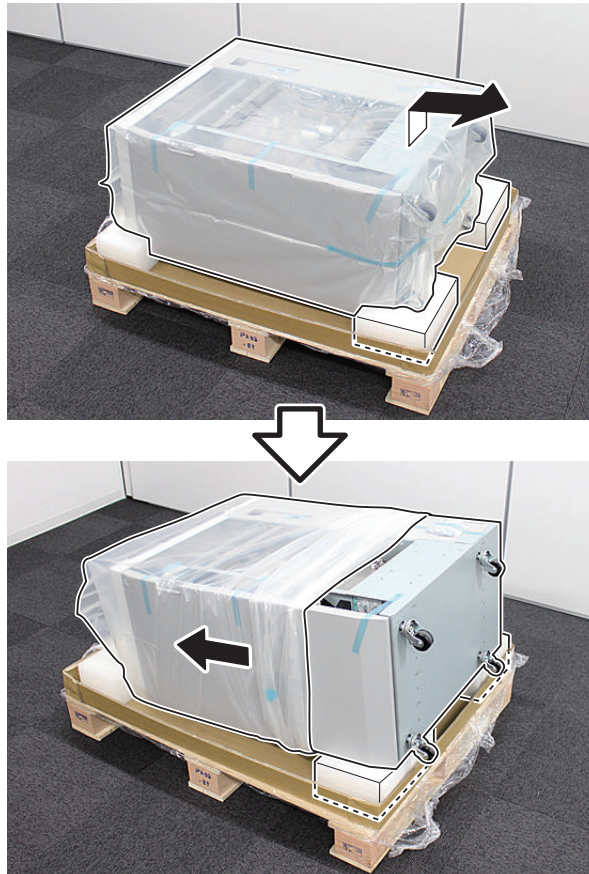
However, if there is a standard to handle a heavy load in each sales company, follow it for operation.



1. Cut the tapes, and remove the lid of the packaging box.
2. Remove the box containing the parts that come with the product.
3. Remove the packaging box.



4. Lifting the side having casters, tuck the plastic bag to the center, and shift this equipment as shown in the figure below.

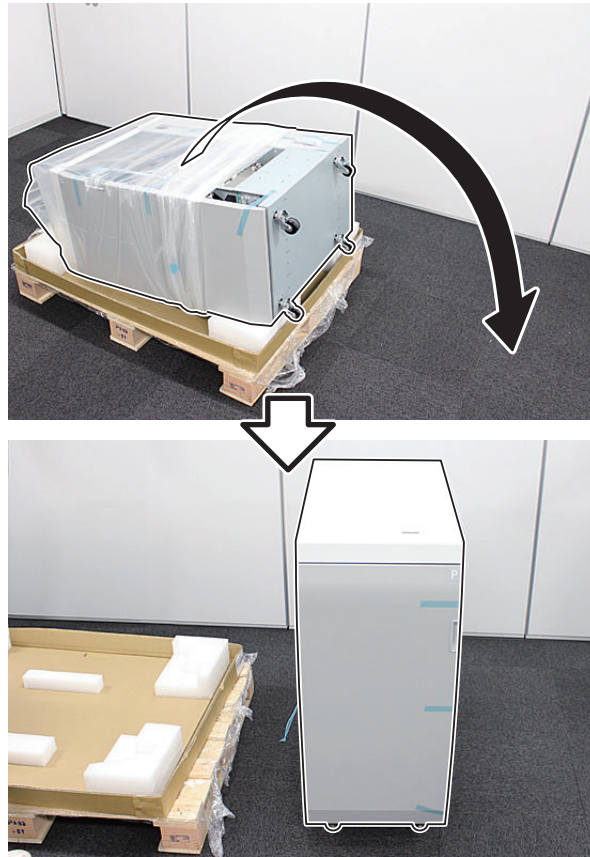




5. Make this equipment stand on its bottom, and remove the plastic bag.

CAUTION:

Do not lift this equipment too high.



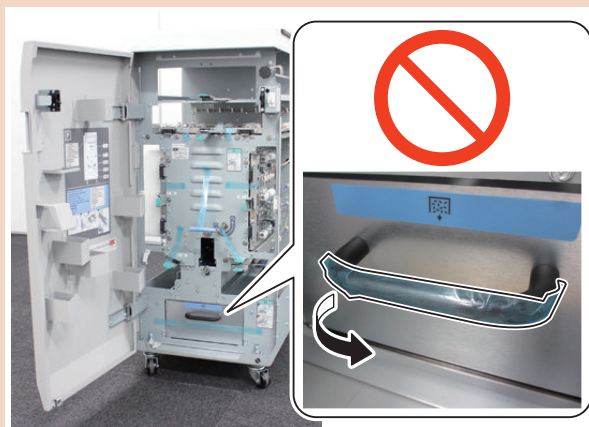
6. Remove the packing tapes.



7. Open the Front Cover and remove the tapes and packaging materials.

CAUTION:

- When delivering the pre-installed machine to the user site by a truck or other means, do not remove the tape shown below in order to keep the handle of the waste box unscratched.

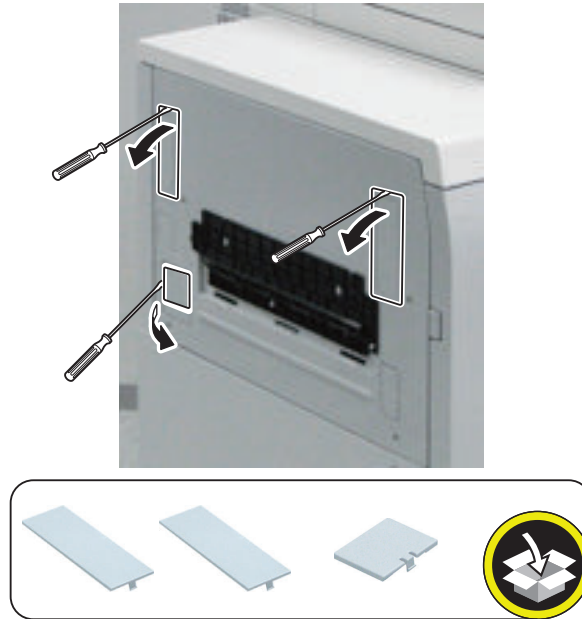


- Do not forget to remove the 2 tapes securing the waste box each at the bottom on the left and at the bottom on the right.



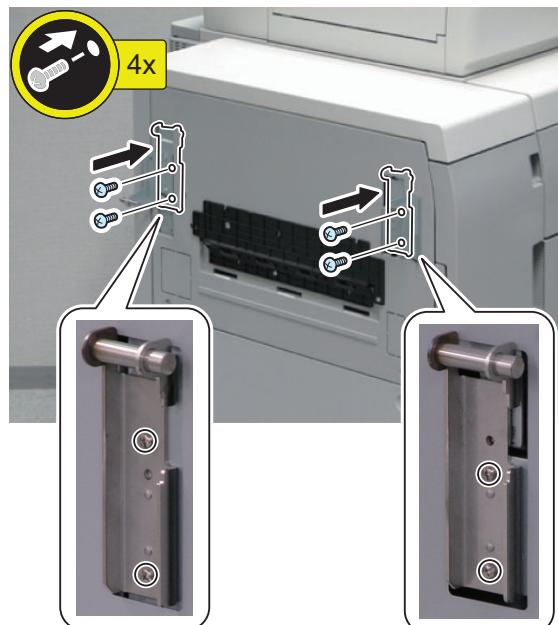


1. Remove covers (2 or 3 pcs) if any from the host machine.



2. Install the 2 Latch Plates to the host machine.

- 4 Screws (Binding; M4x10)





3. Install the Positioning Pin to the host machine.

- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x10)



4. Open the Front Cover of this equipment.

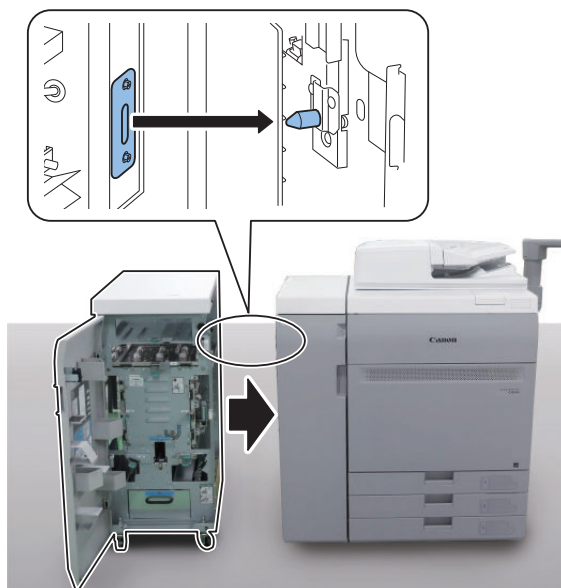


5. Loosen the screw, and turn the Connection Lever to raise the hook.





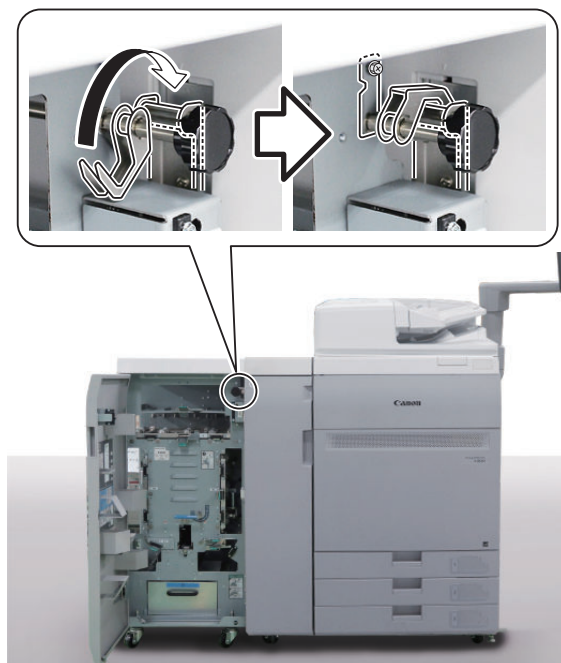
6. Align the Positioning Pin on the host machine side with the hole on this equipment where the Positioning Pin is to be fitted, and connect this equipment and the host machine.



7. Rotate the Connection Lever in the direction of the arrow to hook the hook on the screw.

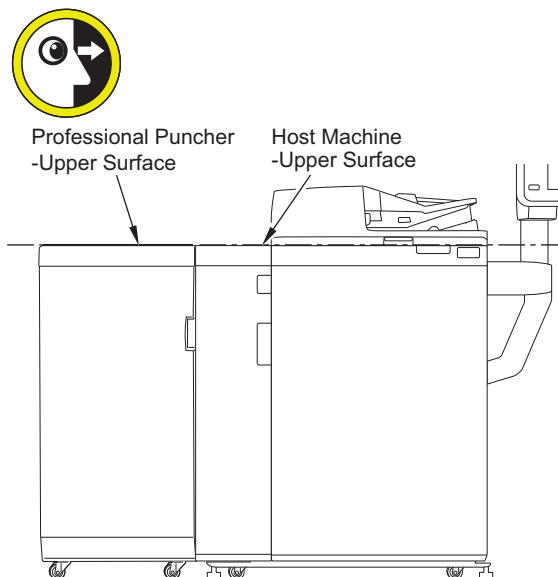
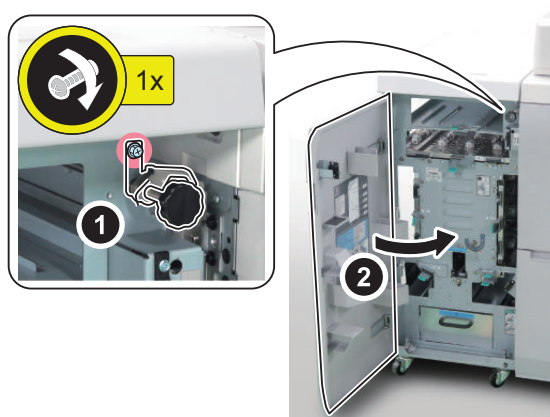
NOTE:

Do not tighten the screw in this step because the screw will be secured after the height is checked in a later step.



**8. Check the height of this equipment and that of the host machine.****NOTE:**

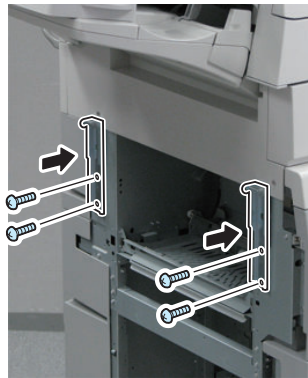
Check that the difference in height is within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference exceeds ± 2.0 mm, perform [“Adjusting the Height”](#) on page 871

**9. Fully tighten the screw of the Connection Lever and close the Front Cover.**

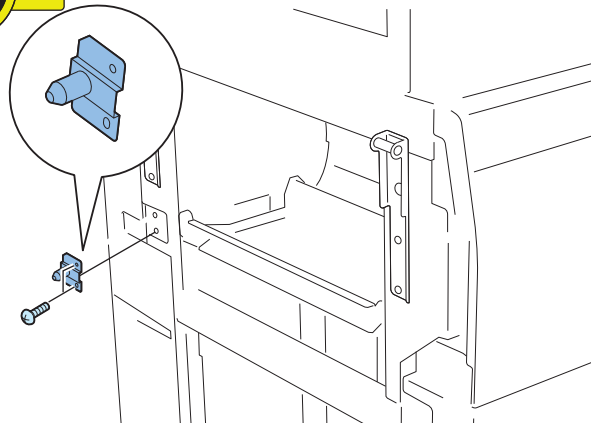
■ Connecting to the Document Insertion Unit



1. Install the 2 Latch Plates to the Document Insertion Unit.
 - 4 Screws (Binding; M4x10)



2. Install the Positioning Pin.
 - 2 Screws (Binding; M4x10)





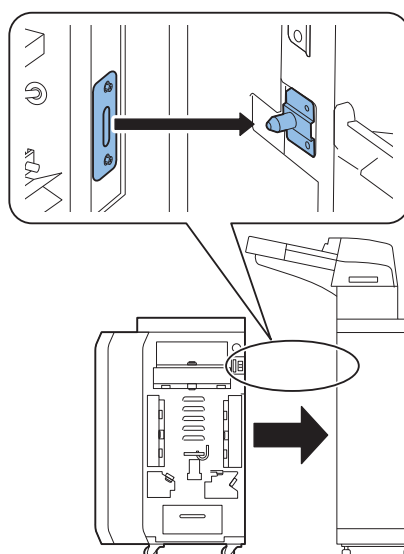
3. Open the Front Cover of this equipment.



4. Loosen the screw, and turn the Connection Lever to raise the hook.



5. Align the Positioning Pin on the Document Insertion Unit side with the hole on this equipment where the Positioning Pin is to be fitted, and connect the equipments.

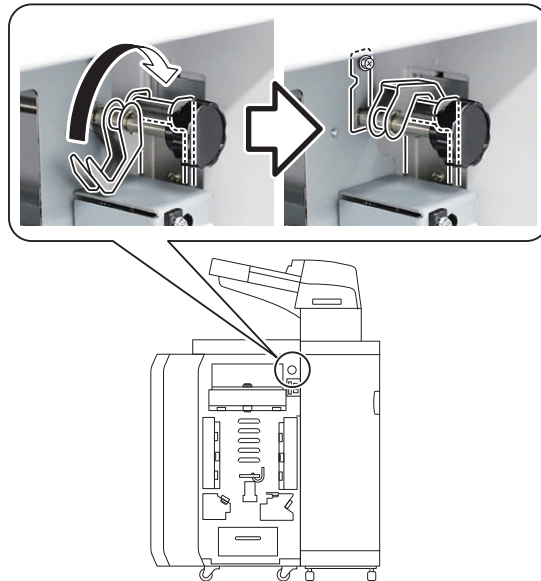




6. Rotate the Connection Lever in the direction of the arrow to hook the hook on the screw.

NOTE:

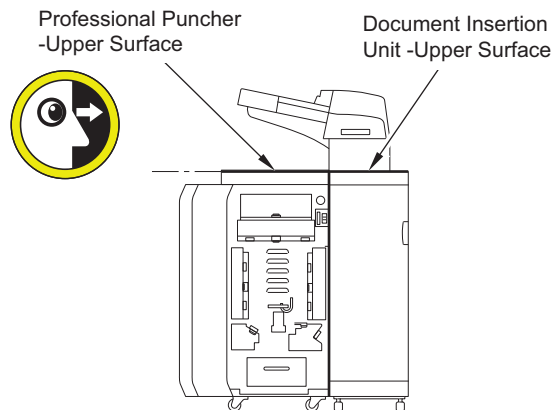
Do not tighten the screw in this step because the screw will be secured after the height is checked in a later step.



7. Check the height of this equipment and that of the Document Insertion Unit.

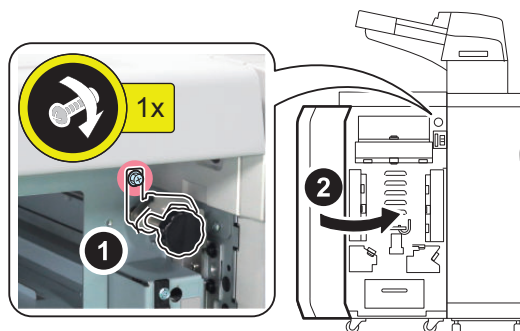
NOTE:

Check that the difference in height is within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference exceeds ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height" on page 871.





8. Fully tighten the screw of the Connection Lever, close the Front Cover.



■ Adjusting the Height

NOTE:

- Depending on the status of the floor of the installation site, the height of this equipment may need to be adjusted. If the height is not properly adjusted, trouble such as paper frequently jamming may occur. Follow the steps below to check the height and adjust it if necessary.
- When adjusting the height, prepare two wrenches (10 mm and 24 mm) in advance. Or, the wrench of the Finisher can also be used. Or, the wrench included in the package of the Finisher can be used.
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

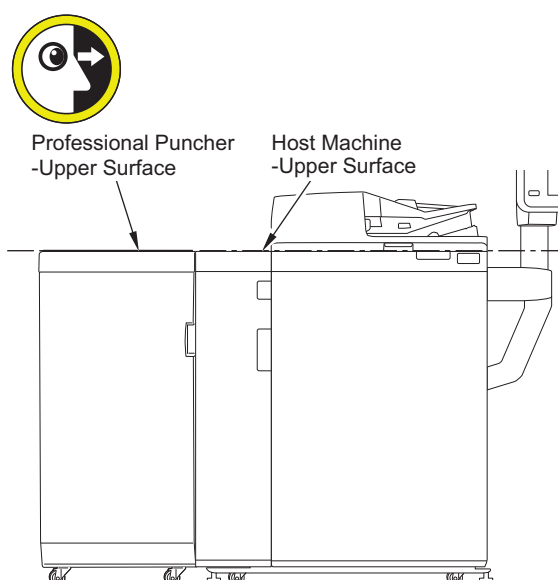
● Checking the Height



1. Check the height of this equipment and that of the upstream equipment.

NOTE:

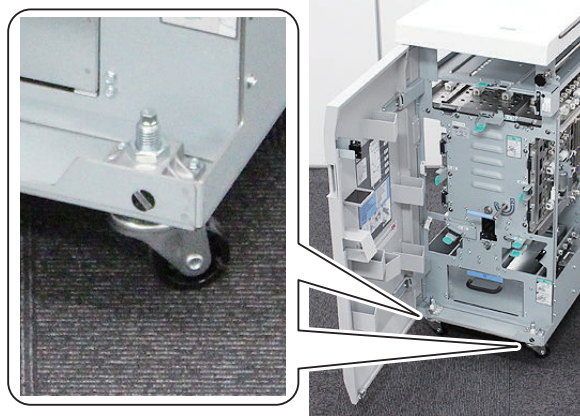
Check that the difference in height is within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference exceeds ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height" on page 871.



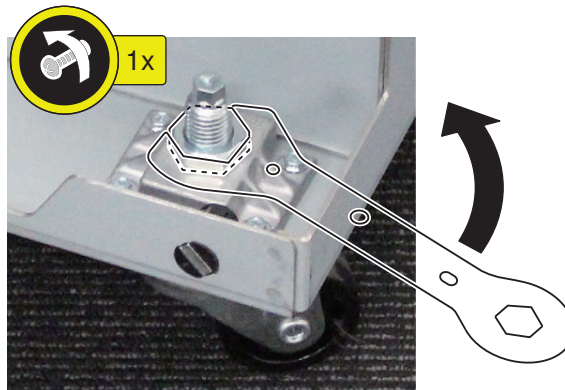
2. If the difference exceeds the range of ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height".

• Adjusting the Height

Adjusting the Front Casters



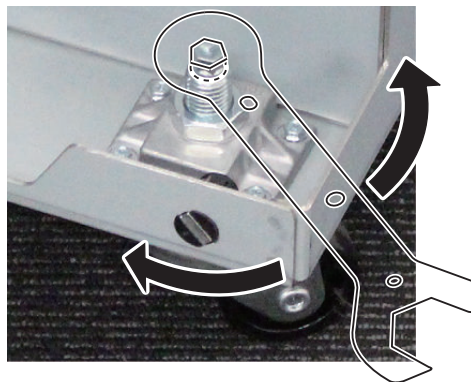
1. Open the Front Cover of this equipment, and loosen the Lock Nut with the 24 mm wrench.



2. Adjust the height by turning the end of the hexagonal shaft with the 10 mm wrench.

NOTE:

- Turn clockwise to raise the height.
- Turn counterclockwise to lower the height.



3. Tighten the Lock Nut you loosened.

4. Check the height again. If the height has been adjusted appropriately, perform "Adjusting the Rear Casters".

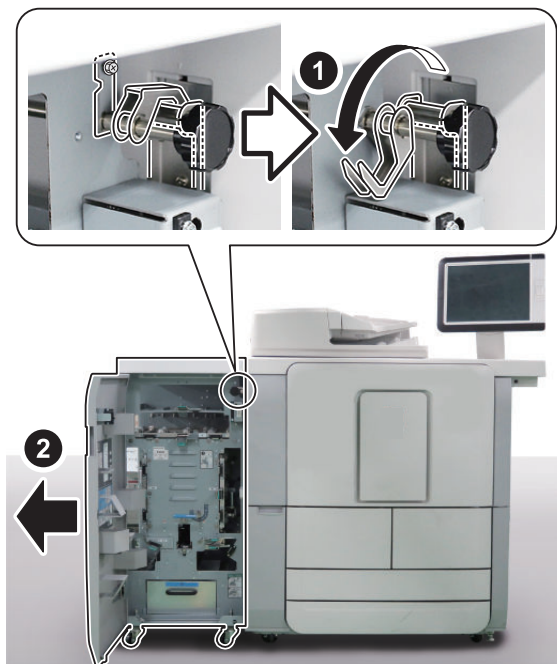
Adjusting the Rear Casters

NOTE:

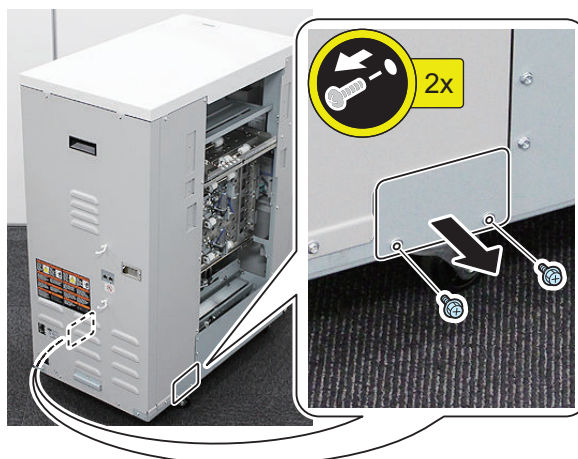
The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.



1. If the screw of the Connection Lever is secured, loosen it.
2. Turn the Connection Lever to raise the hook, and release the connection from the upstream equipment.

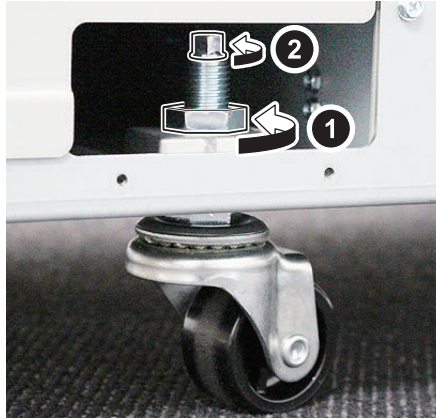


3. Remove the Cover Plates (Left and Right).
 - 2 Screws each





4. Adjust the Rear Casters in the same way as the Front Casters.



5. Tighten the Lock Nut you loosened.

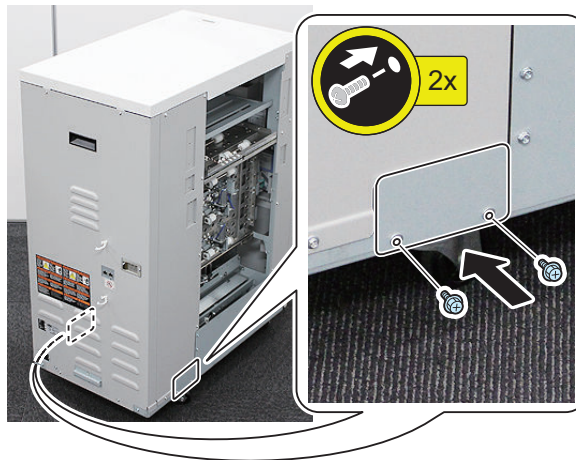


6. Connect this equipment to the upstream equipment.



7. Check the height. If the height has been adjusted appropriately, release the connection from the upstream equipment, and return the Cover Plates (Left and Right) to their original positions.

- 2 Screws each

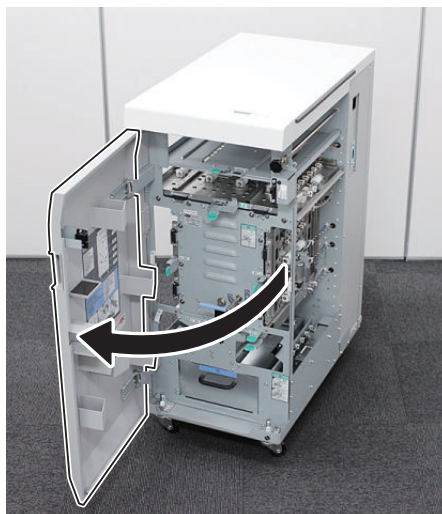


8. Connect this equipment and the upstream equipment again, hook the Connection Lever, and secure the screw.

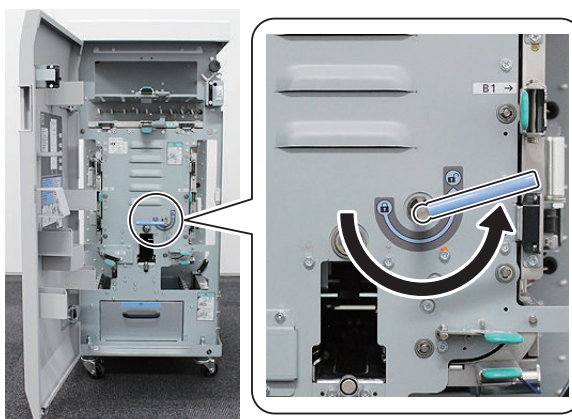
● Installing the Punch Die



1. Open the Front Cover.



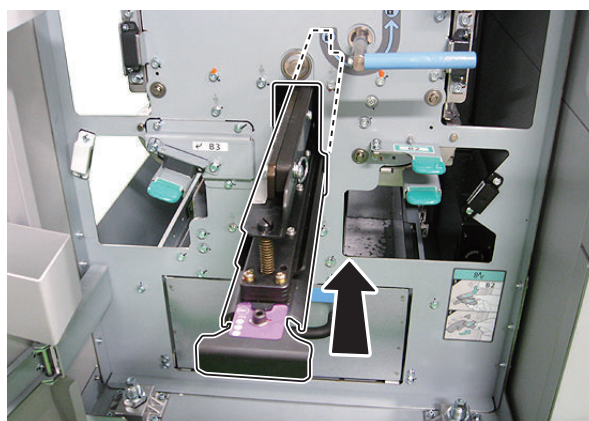
2. Hold the Punch Die Lock Handle, and turn it in the direction of the arrow to the unlock position shown on the label.



3. Hold the Punch Die with both hands, and slowly insert it until it stops.

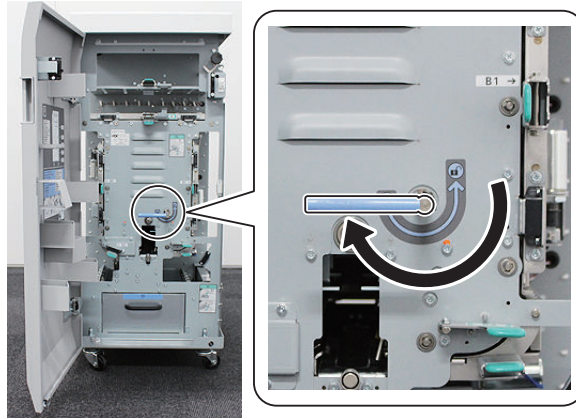
CAUTION:

Do not touch the PCB on the rear side facing the end of the Punch Die. When inserting the Punch Die into the equipment, be sure not to give a shock to the PCB.

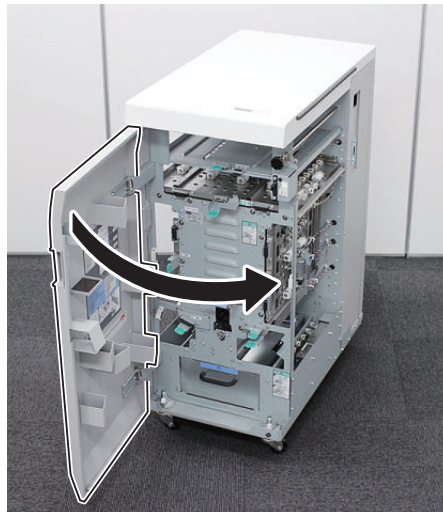




4. Turn the handle in the direction of the arrow until it securely stops and the Punch Die is locked.



5. Close the Front Cover.



Connecting the Cables

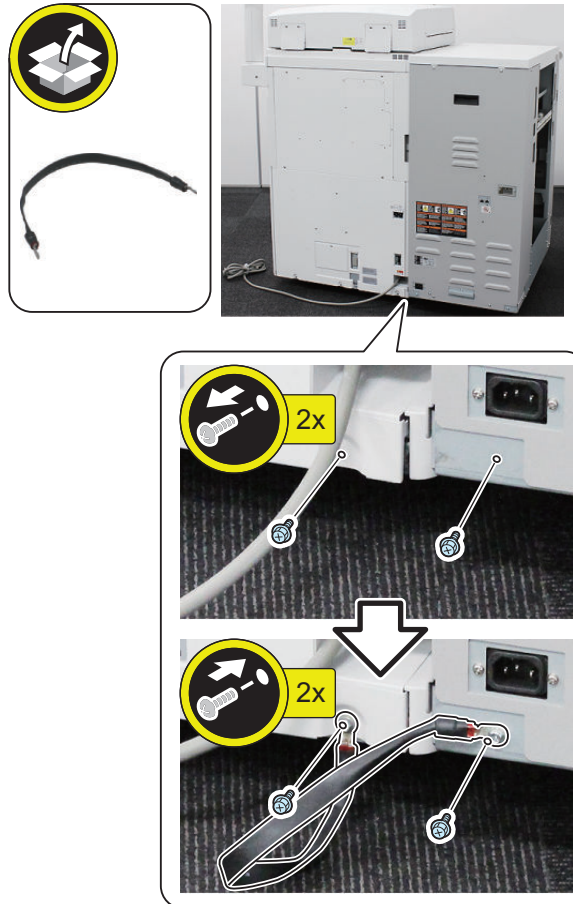
In the Case of the Host Machine



1. Connect the Shunt Cable.

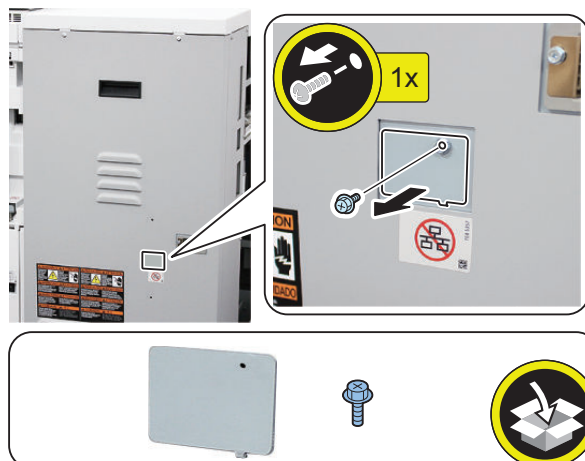
Remove the 2 screws from this equipment and the host machine, and connect the Shunt Cable to them with the removed 2 screws.

- 2 Screws (the removed screw)



2. Remove the Face Cover on the rear side of this equipment. (The removed Face Cover and screw will not be used.)

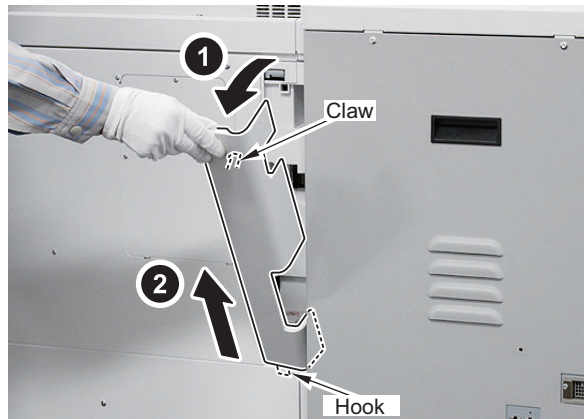
- 1 Screw





3. Remove the Left Rear Cover of the host machine.

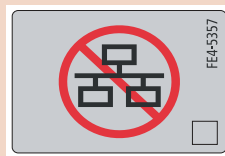
- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



4. Insert the LAN Cable to the host machine and this equipment (the port for connection with the upstream equipment), and install the 2 Wire Saddles.

CAUTION:

Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.





5. Secure the LAN Cable as shown in the figure.



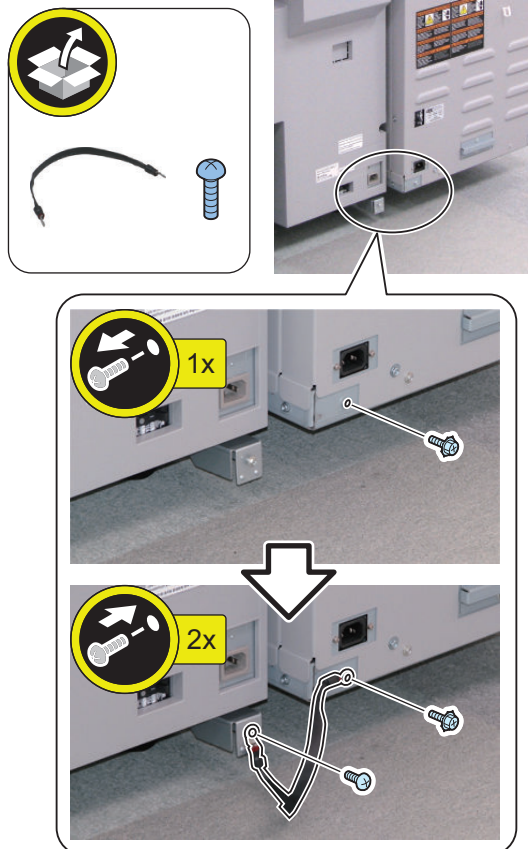
6. Return the Left Rear Cover of the host machine to its original position.

■ In the Case of the Document Insertion Unit

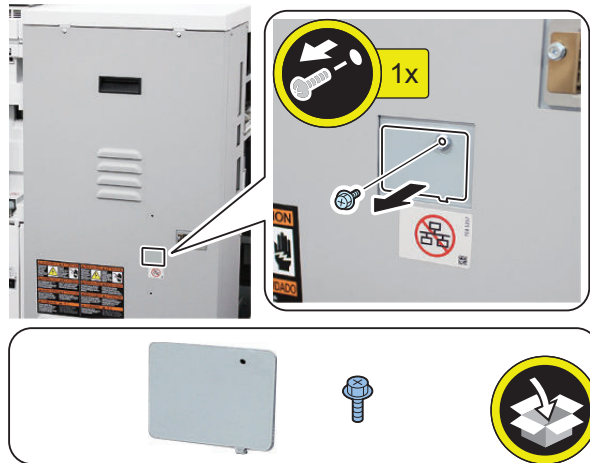


1. Remove the screw from this equipment, and connect the Shunt Cable.

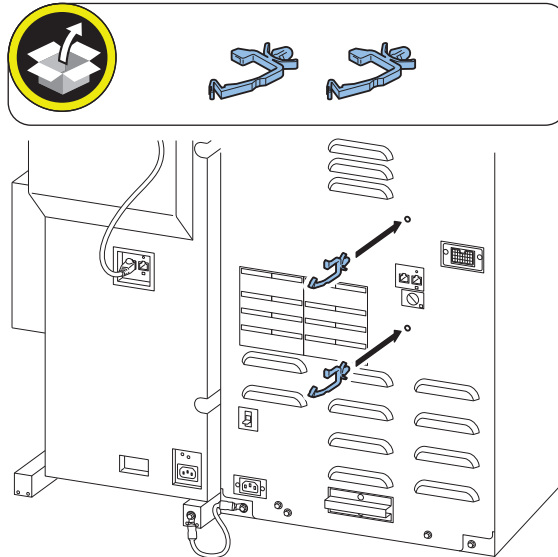
- 1 Screw (the removed screw)
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)



-
- 2. Remove the Face Cover on the rear side of this equipment. (The removed Face Cover and screw will not be used.)
 - 1 Screw



-
- 3. Install the 2 Wire Saddles to the back of this equipment.

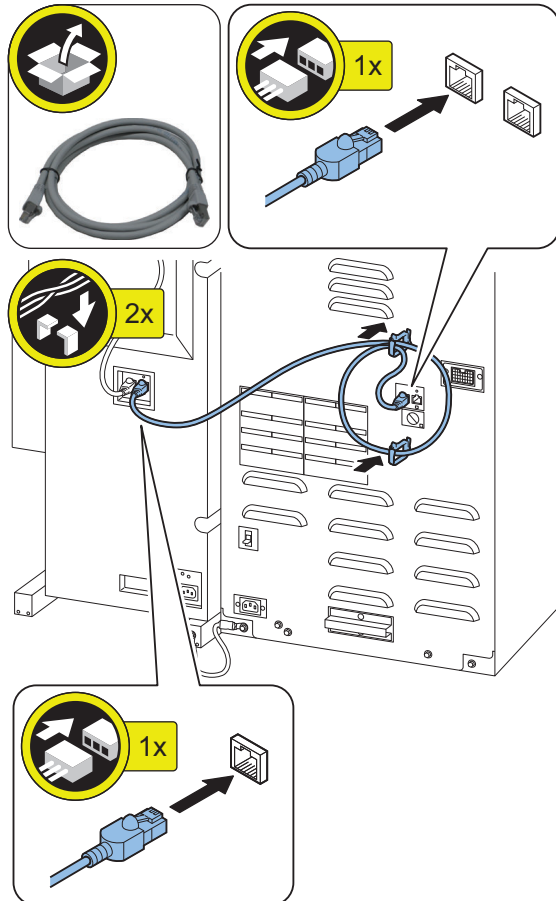
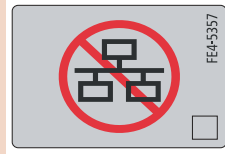




4. Connect the LAN Cable to the Document Insertion Unit and this equipment, and secure the cable in place using the 2 Wire Saddles as shown in the figure.

CAUTION:

Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.



■ Connecting the Power Cord



1. Connect the Power Cord to this equipment.

CAUTION:

Use the appropriate Power Cord according to the country/region, and bring back the remaining Power Cords.



2. Connect the downstream equipment.

CAUTION:

For details on the procedure for connecting the downstream equipment, refer to the Installation Procedure of the downstream equipment.



3. Connect the power plugs of the host machine and the options to the outlets.



4. Turn ON the main power switch of the host machine.



5. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



6. Check such operation as paper feed and punching.

Finisher Jogger Kit-A1

Checking Before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

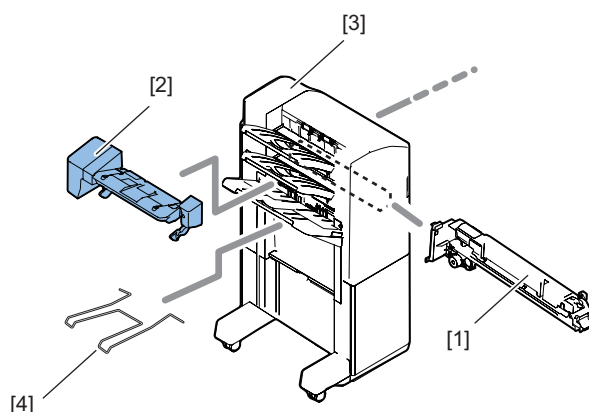
■ Points to Note on Installation

- Refer to "Order of Installation of Options" when installing this equipment.
- This equipment weighs approx. 3 kg.

■ Order of Installation of Options

When installing this equipment together with the other options, first install the host machine and then install options in the following order:

1. Puncher Unit
2. Jogger Kit (This equipment)
3. Staple Finisher / Booklet Finisher
4. Long Sheet Tray



■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281370

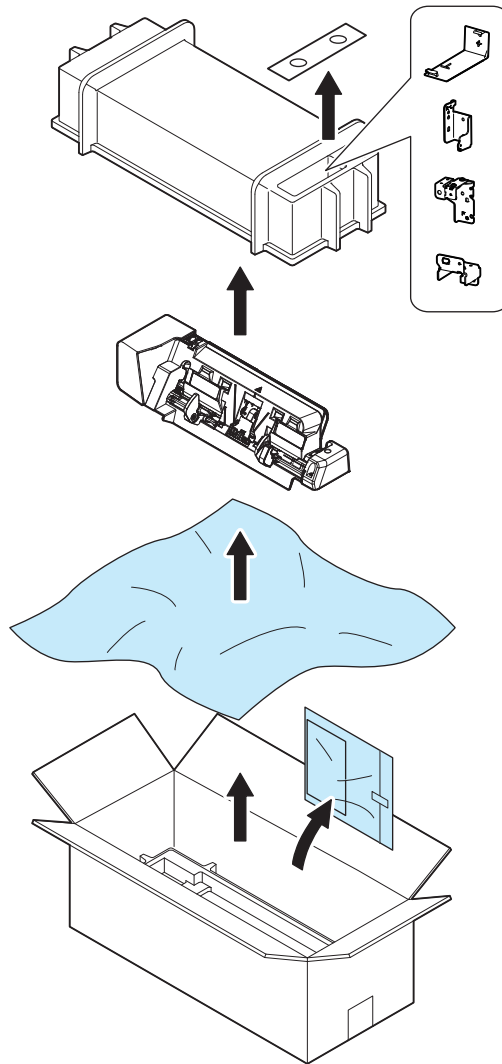
Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

This equipment is packed using tapes, fixings and cushioning materials to be protected against vibration and shock during transportation.

Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials before installing this equipment.

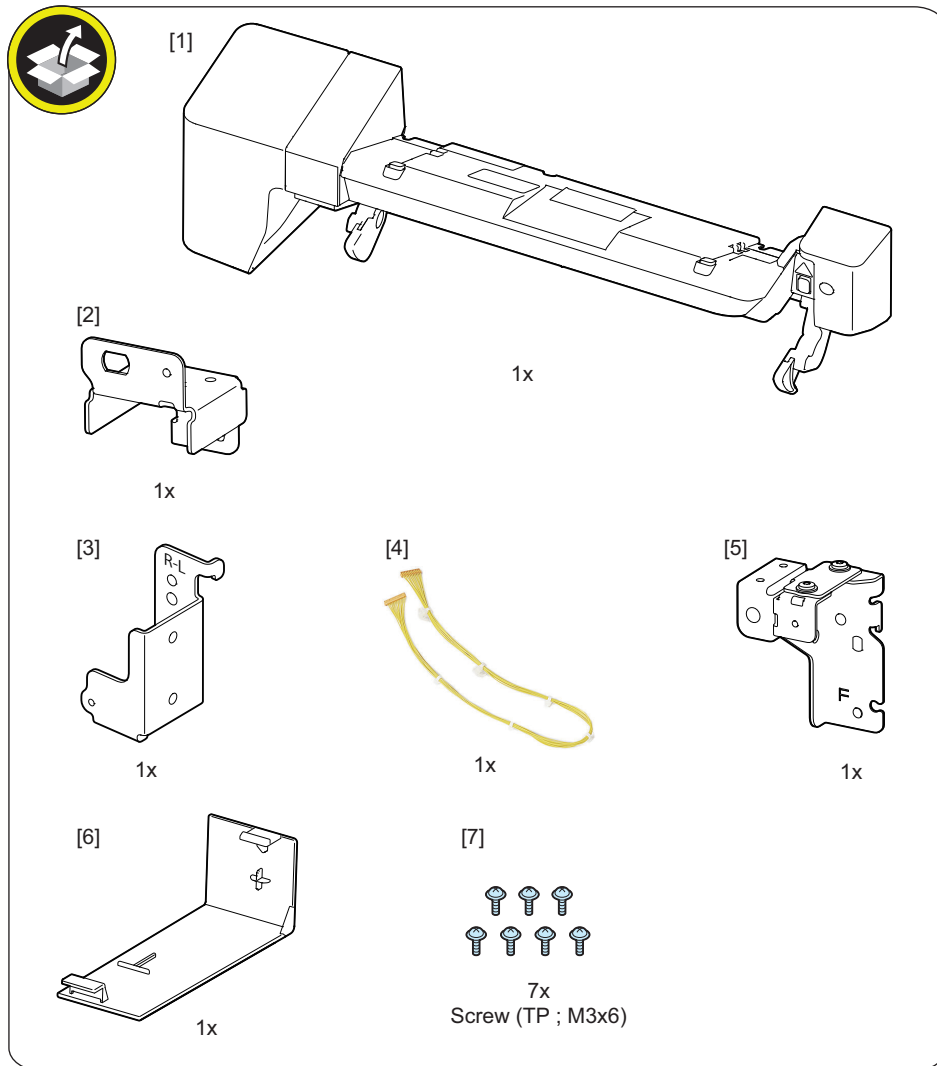
□
1.



□
2. Remove all the tapes and cushioning materials outside this equipment.

Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.



<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

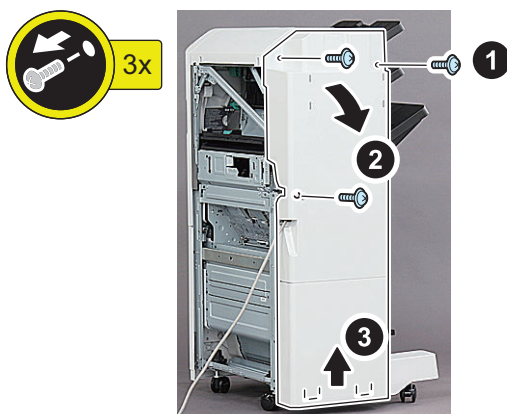
Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

Check that the main power switch is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

■ Preparing the Finisher for Installation

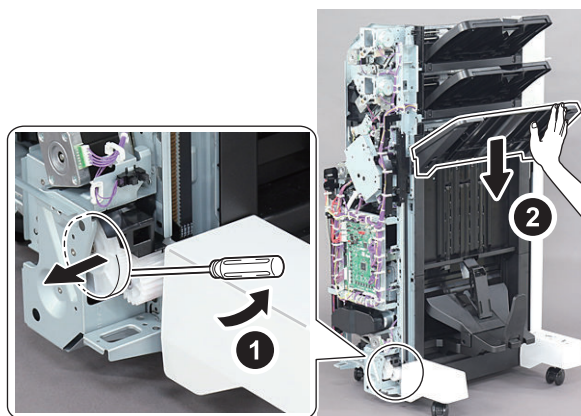
□
1.



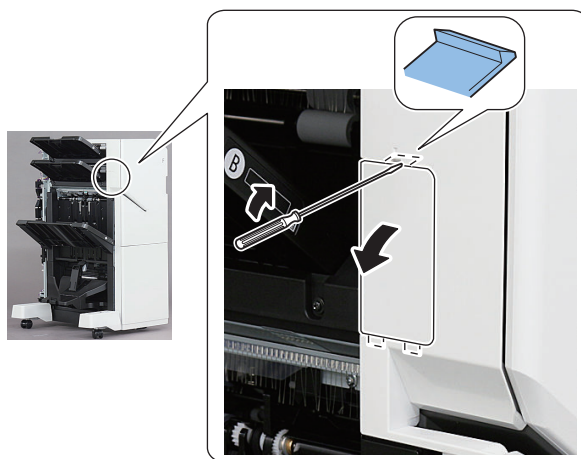
□
2. Disengage the ratchet gear to lower the Stack Tray by approx. 150mm for securing the room for the Jogger Kit.

CAUTION:

Hold the Stacking Tray by hand while disengaging the ratchet gear to avoid its free-fall.

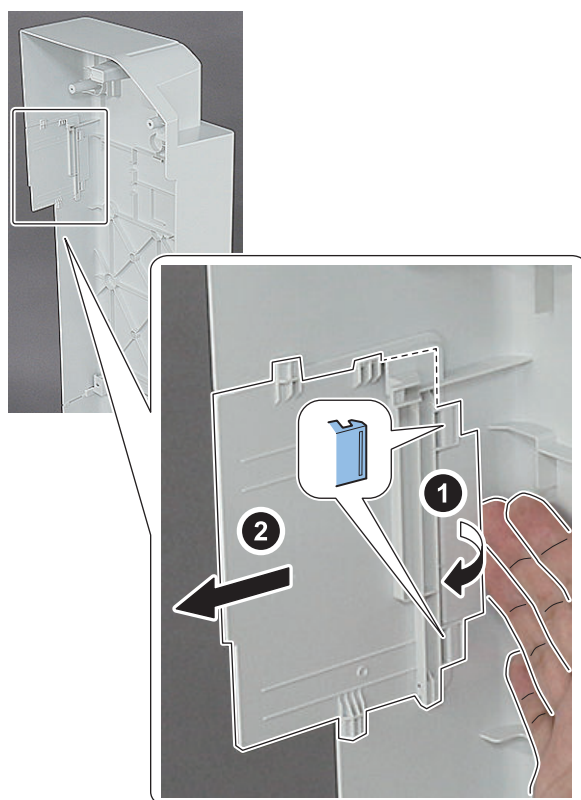


□
3.



NOTE:
The removed face cover is stored in Rear Cover in a later step.

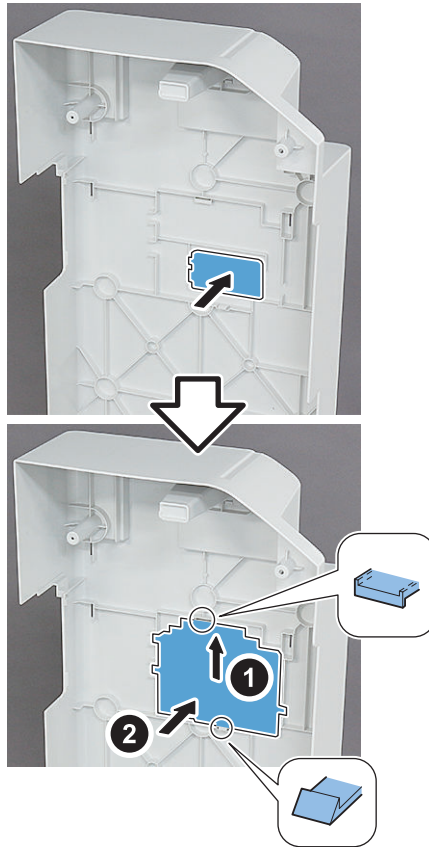
□
4.



NOTE:
The removed face cover is stored in Rear Cover in a later step.

□

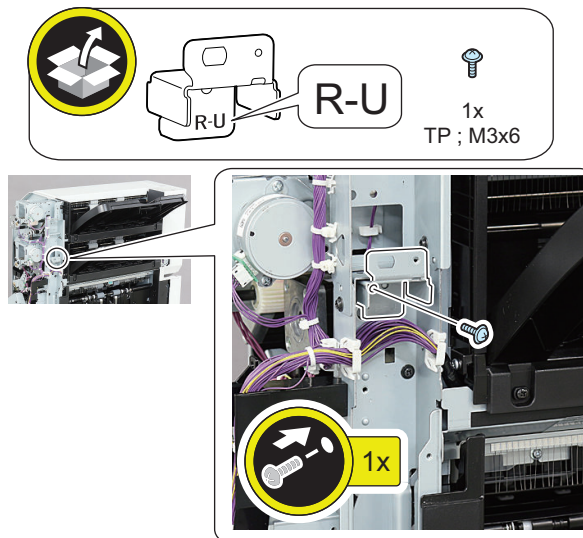
5. Store the removed face covers (2 pcs.) in the Rear Cover.



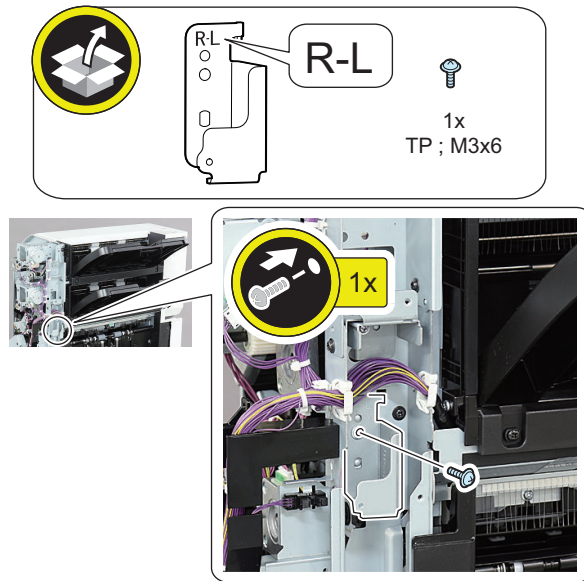
■ Installation Procedure

□

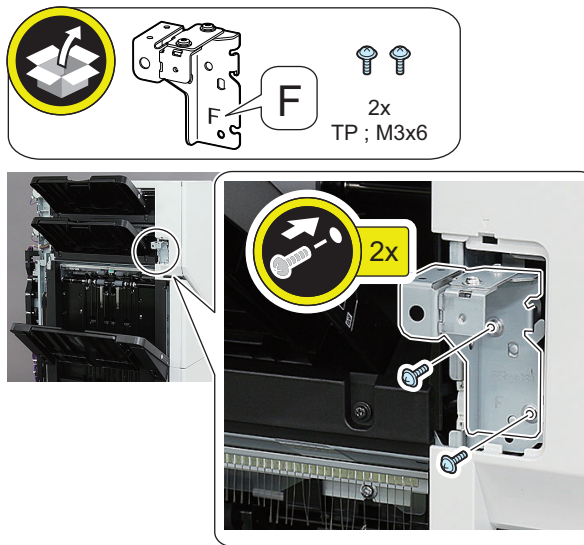
1.



□
2.

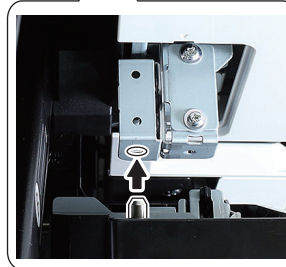
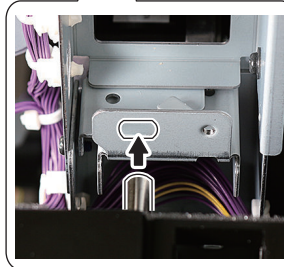
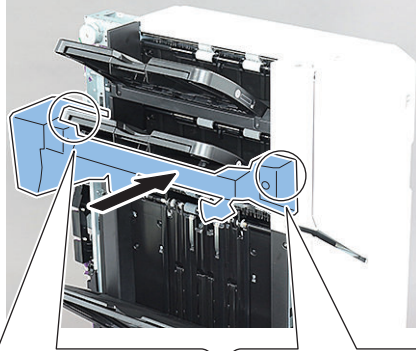
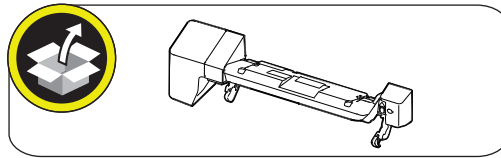


□
3.



□

4. Place the Jogger Kit on Finisher.

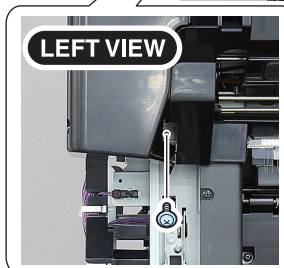
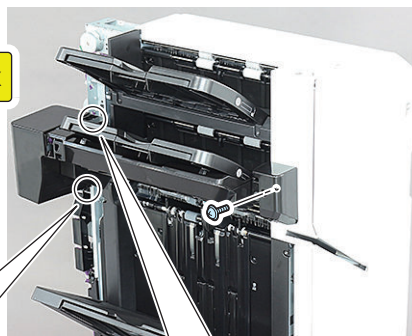


□

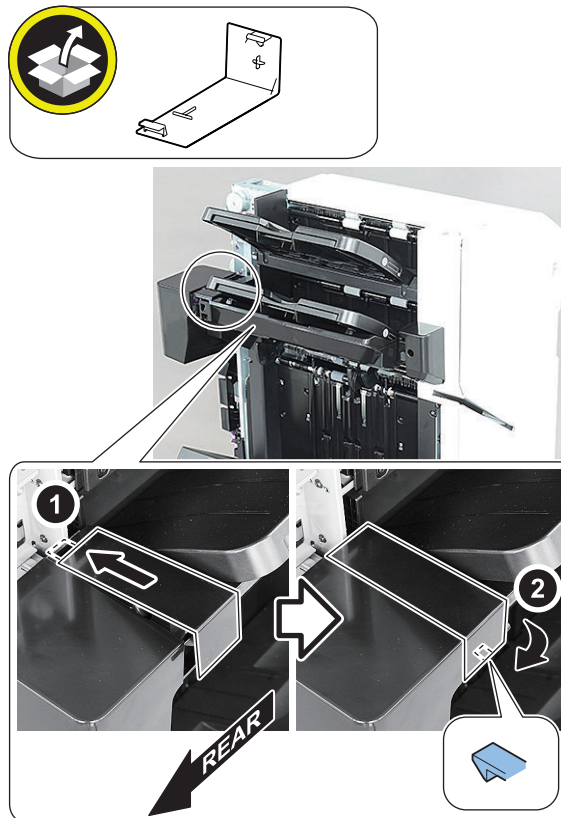
5.



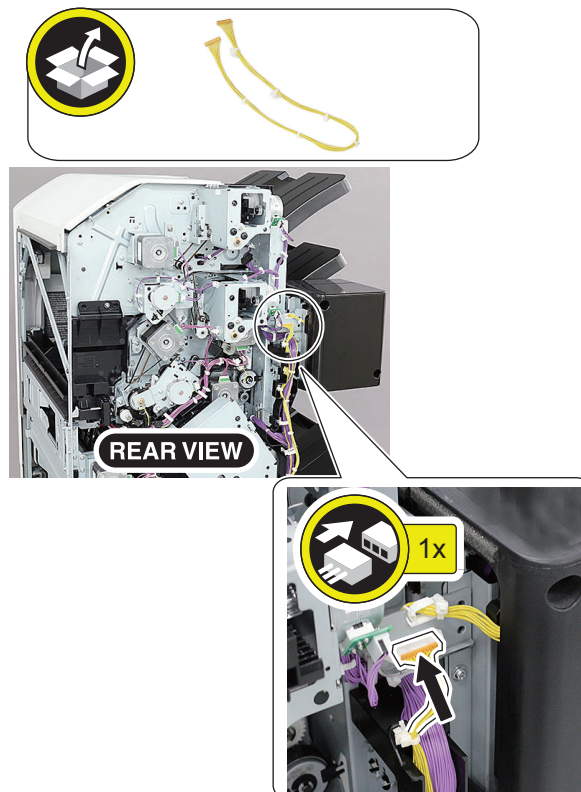
3x
TP ; M3x6



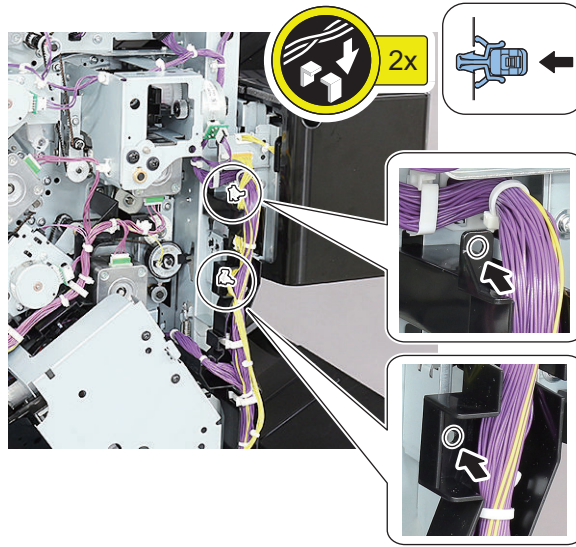
□
6.



□
7.



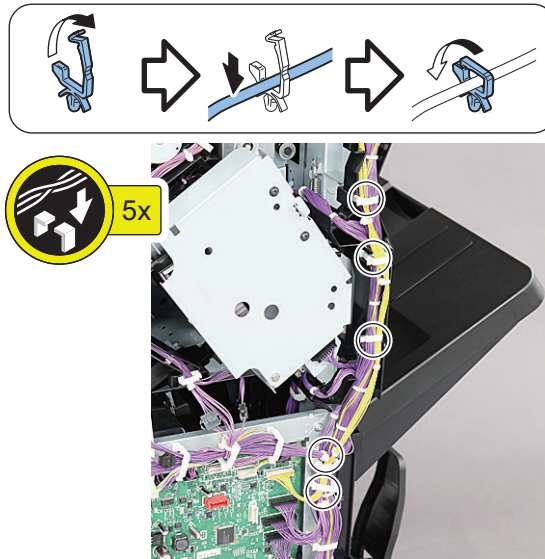
□
8.



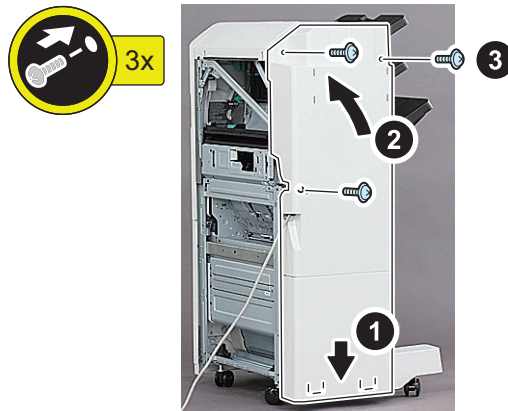
□
9.



10.



11.



● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts Check

There are no parts left after installation work.

■ Operation Check

1. Install the Finisher.

2. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. Perform function checks for jogging operation, etc.

Revision

Rev	Chapter		Category	Product Name	Reference	Remarks
1.0	-	-	First Edition	Installation manual	-	-
2.0	2	Host Machine	Add Con- tents	Installing the Scanner	"Installing the Scanner(Only for Ma- chines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit) " on page 28	